

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**AMHARIC – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

መፅሐፈ ሞርሞን

ከኔፊ ስሌዳዎች ተወስዶ በሞርሞን እጅ በስሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፈ መዝገብ

ስለዚህ፣ ይህ የኔፊ ህዝብ፣ እናም ደግሞ የላማናውያን አጭር ታሪክ ነው—የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪት ለሆኑት ለላማናውያን፣ እናም ደግሞ ለአይሁድና ለአህዛብ የተፃፈ—በትዕዛዝ መሰረት፣ እናም ደግሞ በትንቢት መንፈስና በመገለጥ የተፃፈ—እንዲያጠፋ ሲባል ተፅፏልና ታሸገው በጌታ የተደበቁ—ለነበረው ትርጉም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰጦታ ይመጡ ዘንድ—በአህዛብ በኩል በትክክለኛው ጊዜ ይመጡ ዘንድ፣ በሞርኒ እጅ ታሸጉ፣ እናም ለጌታ የተደበቁ—ትርጉሙም በእግዚአብሔር ሰጦታ ነው።

ጌታ ወደ ሰማይ ለመድረስ ግንብ ሲገነቡ ቋንቋቸውን በደባለቀባቸው ጊዜ የተበተኑት የያሬድ ህዝቦችን ታሪክ ከያዘው ከመፅሐፈ ኤተር የተወሰደ አጭር ታሪክ—ይህም ጌታ ለእስራኤል ቤቶች ቅሪት ለአባቶቻቸው ሞን ያህል ታላላቅ ነገሮችን እንዳደረገ ለማሳየት ነው፤ እናም የጌታን ኪዳን ያውቁ ዘንድ፣ ለዘለዓለምም እንደማይጣሉ ያውቁ ዘንድ—እናም ደግሞ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እንደሆነ፣ ዘለዓለማዊ አምላክ እንደሆነ፣ እራሱንም ለሁሉም ሀገሮች እንደገለፀ፣ ለአይሁድና ለአህዛብ እስከማሳመን—እና አሁን፣ ሰህተቶች ካሉ ሰህተቶቹ የሰዎች ሰህተቶች ናቸው፣ ስለዚህ፣ በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ያለ እንከን ትሆኑ ዘንድ የእግዚአብሔር የሆኑትን አትኮንኑ።

ከስሌዳዎቹ የመጀመሪያው የእንግሊዝኛ ትርጉም በጆሴፍ ስሚዝ፣ ዳግማዊ።

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.

የሶስቱ ምስክሮች ምስክርነት

ይህ ስራ ለሚደርሳቸው ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎች፣ እና ህዝቦች በሙሉ፣ እኛ በእግዚአብሔር ኦብና በጌታችን በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ፀጋ፣ ይህንን የኔሬ ህዝብ እናም ደግሞ የወንድሞቻቸውን የላማናውያንን፣ እናም ደግሞ ተነግሮበት ከነበረው ግንብ የመጡትን የያሬድ ህዝብ ታሪክ የያዘውን መዝገብ እንዳየን የታወቀ ይሁን። እናም እኛ ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰጦታ እንደተተረጎሙ የእርሱ ድምፅ ነግሮናልና እናውቃለን፤ ስለዚህ ስራው እውነተኛ እንደሆነ በእርግጠኝነት እናውቃለን። እናም ደግሞ በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ የነበሩትን የተቀረፁ ጽሑፎች እንዳየን እንመስክራለን፤ እናም እነርሱ ለእኛ የታዩን በሰው ሳይሆን በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ነው። እናም እኛ እንደ የእግዚአብሔር መልእክ ወርዶ እናም በዐይኖቻችን ፊት እንዳሰቀመጠው፣ በዚያ ላይ የነበሩትን ሰሌዳዎችና የተቀረፁትን እንደተመለከትንና እንዳየን በጥሞና ቃላት እንናገራለን፤ እናም እኛ እነዚህን ነገሮች አይተን እውነት እንደሆኑ የምንመዘግበው በእግዚአብሔር ኦብ እና በጌታችን በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ፀጋ እንደሆነ እናውቃለን። እናም በእኛ አመለካከት ይህ ድንቅ ነው። ይሁን እንጂ፣ የጌታ ድምፅ ስለዚህ ነገር ምስክርነት ቃል እንድንሰጥ አዘናል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ለእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ ለመታዘዝ፣ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ምስክርነት እንሰጣለን። እናም በክርስቶስ ታማኞች ከሆንን፣ ልብሶቻችንን ከሰዎች ሁሉ ደም በማንፃት፣ እናም በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ያለ እንከን እንደምንገኝ እናውቃለን፣ እናም ከእርሱ ጋር በሰማያት ለዘለዓለም እንኖራለን። እናም እንደ አምላክ ለሆኑት ለኦብ፣ እናም ለወልድ፣ እናም ለመንፈስ ቅዱስ ክብር ይሁን። አሜን።

ኦሊቨር ካውድሪ
ዴቪድ ዊትመር
ማርቲን ሀርስ

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY
DAVID WHITMER
MARTIN HARRIS

የሰምንቱ ምስክሮች ምስክርነት

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

ይህ ስራ ለሚደርሳቸው ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎችና ህዝቦች በሙሉ፣ ወርቅ የሚመስሉትን ስሌዳዎች የእዚህ ስራ ተርጓሚ፣ ጆሴፍ ስሚዝ፣ ዳግማዊ፣ እንዳሳየን፣ እናም የተባለው ስሚዝ የተረጎማቸውን ብዙዎቹን ገጾች በእጆቻችን እንደደሰሰናቸው የታወቀ ይሁን፤ እናም ደግሞ በዚያም ላይ የተቀረጹትን ተመልክተናል፣ ሁሉም የጥንት ስራ፣ እና በብልሃት የመሰራት ገፅታ አላቸው። እናም የተባለው ስሚዝ ለእኛ እንዳሳየን፣ እናም አይተን እንዳነሳን እናም የተባለው ስሚዝ ያልናቸውን ስሌዳዎች እንዳለው በእርግጥ ማወቃችንን በጥሞና ቃላት ምስክርነት እንሰጣለን። ያየነውም ለዓለም ሁሉ ምስክር ይሆን ዘንድ ስማችንን ለዓለም እንሰጣለን። እናም አልሞሽንም፣ አግዚአብሔርም ስለዚህ ይመስክራል።

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

ክርስቲያን ዊትመር
 ጆክብ ዊትመር
 ፒተር ዊትመር፣ ዳግማዊ
 ጆን ዊትመር
 ሀይረም ፔጅ
 ጆሴፍ ስሚዝ፣ ቀዳማዊ
 ሀይረም ስሚዝ
 ሳሙኤል ሔሪስን ስሚዝ

CHRISTIAN WHITMER
 JACOB WHITMER
 PETER WHITMER, JUN.
 JOHN WHITMER
 HIRAM PAGE
 JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.
 HYRUM SMITH
 SAMUEL H. SMITH

የመጀመሪያው የኔፊ መጽሐፍ ንግሰ እና አገልግሎቱ

The First Book of Nephi His Reign and Ministry

የሌሂና የሚሰቱ የሳርያ፣ እንዲሁም የእርሱ አራት ልጆች (ከበኩር ጀምሮ) ላማን፣ ልሙኤል፣ ሳምና፣ ኔፊ ተብለው የሚጠሩት መዝገብ። ኔታ ሌሂን ከኢየሩሳሌም ሞድር እንዲወጣ አስጠነቀቀው፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ የህዝቡን ክፋት በተመለከተ ሰለተነበየ እነርሱ ህይወቱን ሊያጠፋ ፈለገ። ከቤተሰቡም ጋር የሶስት ቀን ጉዞ ወደ ሞድረብዳ አደረገ። ኔፊ የአይሁዶችን መዝገብ ለመውሰድ ወንድሞቹን ይዞ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ሞድር ተመለሰ። ሰለስቃያቸው ታሪክ። እነርሱም የእስማኤልን ሴት ልጆች አገቡ። ቤተሰቦቻቸውንም ይዘው ወደ ሞድረብዳ ሄዱ። በሞድረብዳ ውስጥ የነበራቸው ሰቃያቸውና መከራቸው። የጉዞአቸውም አቅጣጫ። ወደ ትልቁ ውሃ መጡ። የኔፊ ወንድሞች በእርሱ ላይ አመጹ። እርሱም እነርሱን ዝም አሰኛቸው፣ እና መርከብን ሰራ። የቦታውንም ስም ለጋሰ ብለው ጠሩት። ታላቁን ውሃ ተሻግረው ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ሞድር ቀጠሉ። ይህ በኔፊ አመዘገብ መሰረት ነው፣ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ ይህን ታሪክ ጻፍኩ።

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

፩ ኔፊ ፩

1 Nephi 1

፩ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ከመልካም ወላጆች የተወለድኩ በመሆኔ አባቴ ከሚያውቃቸው በመጠኑ ተማርኩ፤ እናም በዘመኔም ብዙ መከራን ብመለከትም፣ በጊዜዬ ሁሉ ከጌታ ድጋፍን በማግኘቴ፣ አዎን የእግዚአብሔርን ቸርነትና ሚስጥሮች ታላቅ ዕውቀት በማግኘቴ፣ በጊዜዬ የተፈጸሙ ድርጊቶቼን እመዘግባለሁ።

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

፪ አዎን፣ የአይሁዶችን ትምህርት እና የግብፃውያንን ቋንቋ በያዘው በአባቴ ቋንቋ እጽፋለሁ።

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

፫ የምፅፈው ታሪክ እውነት እንደሆነ አውቃለሁ፣ በገዛ እጄም እፅፈዋለሁ፣ እናም እንደዕውቀቴም እፅፈዋለሁ።

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በይሁዳ ንጉሥ ሴዳቅያስ በአንደኛ የንግስ ዓመት መጀመሪያ (አባቴ ሌሂ በህይወቴ ሁሉ በኢየሩሳሌም ውስጥ ኖሯል)፤ እና በዚያም አመት ህዝቡ ንስሀ መግባት እንዳለባቸው አለበለዚያ ታላቋ ከተማ ኢየሩሳሌም መጥፋት እንዳለባት የሚተነብዩ ብዙ ነቢያት ተነሱ።

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

፳፭ ስለዚህ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ሌሂ በወጣ ጊዜ፣ አዎን በሙሉ ልቡ በእርግጥ ስለህዝቡ ወደጌታ ይፀልይ ነበር።

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ጌታ ሲፀልይ የአሳት አምድ ወረደና በፊቱ በአለት ላይ አረፈ፣ ብዙ አየ፣ ሰማም፤ እናም ባያቸውና በሰማቸው ነገሮች ምክንያት እጅግ ፈራና ተንቀጠቀጠ።

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኢየሩሳሌም ወደ ሚገኘው ቤቱ ተመለስ፤ እናም በመንፈስና ባያቸው ነገሮች ተዳክሞ እራሱን በአልጋው ላይ ወረወረ።

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

፳፰ እና በመንፈስ እንዲህ ተዳክሞ፣ በራዕይ ተወሰደ፣ እንዲሁም ሰማያት ተከፍተው አየ፤ እግዚአብሔርንም በዙፋኑ ተቀምጦ አምላካቸውን ሲያምግሱና ሲዘምሩ በሚታዩት ስፍር ቁጥር በሌላቸው መላእክት ተከብሮ ማየቱን ተገነዘበ።

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ ከሰማይ መካከል አንድ ሰው ሲወርድ አየ፣ ድምቀቱም ከቀትር ፀሐይ ይበልጥ እንደነበር ተመለከተ።

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

፲ እናም ሌሎች አስራ ሁለት እሱን ሲከተሉት አየ፣ ብርሃናቸውም ከጠፈር ውስጥ ከዋክብት የሚልቅ ነበር።

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

፲፩ እነርሱም ወረዱና ወደ ምድር ገፅ መጡ፤ አንደኛውም መጣና በአባቴ ፊት ቆሞ፣ መፅሐፍ ሰጠውና ማንበብ እንዳለበት ነገረው።

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

፲፪ እንዲህ ሆነ እያነበበ ሳለ በጌታ መንፈስ ተሞልቶ ነበር።

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

፲፫ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ ብሎ አነበበ፣ ወዮ፣ ወዮ፣ ለኢየሩሳሌም፣ ያንቺን ርኩሰት አይቻለሁና፣ አዎን እናም አባቴም ኢየሩሳሌም መጥፋት እንዳለባት ብዙ ነገሮችን እንብቃል—ነምሪዎችዋ ብዙዎቹ በሰይፍ ይጠፋሉ እንዲሁም አብዛኞቹ ወደ ባቢሎን በምርኮ ይወሰዳሉ።

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ብዙ ታላቅና አስደናቂ ነገሮችን ባነበበና ባየ ጊዜ ለጌታ ብዙ ነገሮችን በመገረም ተናገረ፤ እነዚህም አቤቱ ሁሉን የምትገዛ ጌታ አምላክ ስራዎችህ ታላቅና አስደናቂ ናቸው! ዙፋንህ ከፍ ብሎ በሰማይ ነው። እንዲሁም ኃይልህ፣ ቸርነትህና ምህረትህ በምድር ባሉ ፍጡራን ሁሉ ላይ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም አንተ መሀሪ በመሆንህ ወደ አንተ የሚመጡት እንዲጠፉ አትፈቅድምና! የመሳሰሉትን ነበር።

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

፲፭ እናም አምላኩን ያመሰግን የነበረበት የአባቴ አነጋገር እንዲህም ነበር፤ ባያቸው ነገሮች፣ አዎን፣ ጌታ ለእርሱ ባሳየውም፣ ነፍሱ ተደስታለች፣ ልቡም በሙሉ በመንፈስ ተሞልታለች።

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

፲፮ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፌ አባቴ የፃፋቸውን ነገሮች በሙሉ አልመዘግብም፣ በራዕይና በህልም ያያቸውን ብዙ ነገሮች ፅፏልና፤ እና ይኸውም እኔ አጠቃልዬ የማልመዘግባቸውን የተነበያቸውንና ለልጆቹ የተናገራቸውን ብዙ ነገሮች ደግሞ ፅፏል።

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

፲፯ ነገር ግን እኔ በዘመኔ የፈጸምኳቸውን እመዘግባለሁ። እነሆም የአባቴን ታሪክ በእጄ በስራሷቸው ሰሌዳዎች ላይ አሳጥሬ ፅፌአለሁ፤ ስለዚህ የአባቴን ታሪክ ካሳጠርኩ በኋላ የራሴን የሕይወት ታሪክ እፅፋለሁ።

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

፲፰ ስለዚህ ጌታ ብዙ ድንቅ ነገሮችን፣ አዎን፣ ስለኢየሩሳሌም መጥፋትን ስለሚመለከት፣ ለአባቴ ሌሂ ካሳየው በኋላ፣ እነሆ በህዝቡ መካከል ሄደ እናም ስላየውና ስለሰማቸው ነገሮች ለእነርሱ መተንበይና ማወጅ እንደጀመረ እናንተ እንድታውቁት አፈልጋለሁ።

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእነርሱ ላይ በመስከራቸው ነገሮች ምክንያት አይሁዶች ተሳለቁበት፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በእውነት ስለክፋታቸውና ስለእርኩስታቸው መስክሯል፤ እንዲሁም ያያቸውና የሰማቸው ነገሮች፣ ደግሞም በመፅሐፉ ውስጥ ያነበባቸው ነገሮች በግልጽ ስለመሲሕ መምጣትና ደግሞም ስለአለም ቤዛነት እንደሚገልጹ መስከረ።

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

እና አይሁዶች ይህንን በሰሙ ጊዜ በእርሱ ተቆጡ፤
 አዎን እንዲሁም ልክ እንዳሳደዱ አቸውና
 እንደወገሩ አቸው፣ እንደገደሉባቸውም የጥንት ጊዜ
 ነቢያት፤ ይገድሉትም ዘንድ የእርሱንም ሕይወት ደግሞ
 ሊወስዱ ፈለጉ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ኔፊ የጌታ ምህረቶች
 ርህራሄ በእምነታቸው ምክንያት ለመዳን ሀይል
 እስኪኖራቸው ድረስ ሀያል እንዲሆኑ በመረጣቸው ላይ
 ሁሉ እንደሆነ አሳያችኋለሁ።

And when the Jews heard these things they were
 angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of
 old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain;
 and they also sought his life, that they might take it
 away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that
 the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those
 whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to
 make them mighty even unto the power of deliver-
 ance.

፩ ኔፊ ፪

፩ እነሆ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ጌታ ለአባቴ ተናገረው፣ አዎን በህልሙም እንኳን እንዲህ አለው፣ ሌሂ፣ ባደረግሃቸው ነገሮች ምክንያት የተባረክህ ነህ፣ እንዲሁም እንተ ታማኝ በመሆንህና ለዚህ ሕዝብ ያዘዘኩህን ነገሮች በመግለፅህ ምክንያት እነሆም ሕይወትህን ሊያጠፋ ይፈልጋሉ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ጌታ አባቴን በህልሙም ጭምር ቤተሰቡን ይዞ ወደ ምድረበዳ እንዲሄድ አዘዘው።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ ለጌታ ቃል ታዛዥ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ ጌታ እንዳዘዘው አደረገ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ምድረበዳ ሄደ። እናም ቤቴን፣ የወረሰውን መሬት፣ ወርቁንና ብሩን፣ ውድና የከበሩ ነገሮቹን ተወ፣ እንዲሁም ከቤተሰቡ፣ ከሰንቆችና፣ ከድንኳኖች በስተቀር ከእርሱ ጋር ምንም ሳይወስድ ወደ ምድረበዳ ሄደ።

፭ እናም በቀይ ባሕር ወዳለው ዳርቻ መጣ፤ ለቀይ ባሕር ቅርብ በሆነው ዳርቻ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ተጓዘ፣ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ እናቴን ሳርያንና ታላቅ ወንድሞቹ የነበሩት ላማን፣ ልሙኤልና ሳምን ያካተተውን ቤተሰቦቹን ይዞ ወደ ምድረበዳ ተጓዘ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሶስት ቀን በምድረበዳ ከተጓዘ በኋላ፣ የወንዝ ውሃ ባለበት ሸለቆ አጠገብ ድንኳኑን ተከለ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የድንጋይ መሠዊያን ሠራ፣ ለጌታም መስዋዕትን አደረገ፣ እናም ለጌታ ለእምላካችን ምስጋና አቀረበ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወንዙንም ስም ላማን ብሎ ጠራው፣ እና ወደ ቀይ ባሕር ይፈስ ነበር፤ ሸለቆውም በወንዙ ዳርቻ አጠገብ ጫፍ ላይ ነበር።

፱ እናም አባቴ የወንዙ ውሃ ወደ ቀይ ባሕር ምንጭ መፍሰሱን ባየ ጊዜ ለላማን እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረው፣ አንተ ልክ እንደዚህ ወንዝ የሁሉም ፅድቅ ምንጭ ወደሆነው ያለማቋረጥ እንድትፈስ ዘንድ ምን ያህል እመኛለሁ!

፲ እናም ለልሙኤልም ተናገረው፣ አንተ ልክ እንደዚህ እንደሸለቆ የጌታን ትዕዛዝ በመጠበቅ ጠንካራ፣ ፅኑና፣ የማትነቃነቅ እንድትሆን እመኛለሁ!

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

16 በላማንና በልሙኤል አንገተ ደንዳናነት ምክንያት እርሱ ይህንን ተናግሯል፤ እነሆም እነርሱ በአባታቸው ላይ በብዙ ነገሮች አገረሞርመዋል፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ባለራዕይ ሰው ስለነበረ፤ እና የውርስ ምድራቸውንና ወርቃቸውንና፣ ብራቸውንና፣ የከበሩ ነገሮቻቸውን ትተው በምድረበዳ እንዲጠፉ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር እንዲወጡ ስላደረገ ነበር። እናም እርሱ ይህን ያደረገው በከንቱ የልቡ ሀሳብ ምክንያት ነው አሉ።

17 እናም ላማንና ልሙኤል ታላቅ በመሆናቸው በአባታቸው ላይ አገረመረሙ። እና ይህንን ያገረመረሙት የዚያን የፈጠራቸውን አምላክ ሥራዎች ስላላወቁ ነበር።

18 እንደ ነቢያት ቃል ታላቋ ከተማ ኢየሩሳሌም እንደምትጠፋ አላመኑም ነበር። እናም እነርሱ ልክ በኢየሩሳሌም የአባቱን ሕይወት ለማጥፋት እንደፈለጉት አይሁዶች ነበሩ።

19 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ በልሙኤል ሸለቆ ውስጥ በመንፈስ በመሞላቴ ምክንያት ሰውነታቸው እስኪንቀጠቀጥ ድረስ በኃይል ተናገራቸው። እናም እርሱን ለማናገር ድፍረት እስኪያጡ ድረስ ዝም አስኛቸው፤ ስለዚህ እርሱ እንዳዘዛቸው አደረጉ።

20 እናም አባቴ በድንኳን ውስጥ ኖረ።

21 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ እጅግ ወጣት ነበርኩ፣ ሆኖም በአቋጫ ትልቅ ነበርኩ፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ሚስጥሮች የማወቅ ፍላጎቴ ትልቅ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ ወደ ጌታ ጮህኩ፤ እናም እነሆ እርሱ ጎበኘኝ፣ እኔም አባቴ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት ሁሉ እንዳምን ዘንድ ልቤንም አባባው፤ ስለዚህ፣ እኔ እንደ ወንድሞቼ በእርሱ ላይ አላመፅኩም።

22 እናም ጌታም በቅዱስ መንፈሱ አማካኝነት ለእኔ ስለገለፃቸው ነገሮች እንዲያውቅ በማድረግ ሳምን እነጋገርኩት። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእኔ ቃላት አመነ።

23 ነገር ግን እነሆ ላማንና ልሙኤል የእኔን ቃላት አላዳመጡም፤ እናም በልባቸው ጠጣርነት የተነሳ አዝኜ ለእነርሱ ወደ ጌታ ጮህኩ።

24 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፡ በእምነትህ የተነሳ በትሁት ልብህ አጥብቀህ ፈልገኻልና እንተ ኔፊ የተባረክህ ነህ።

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

፳፮ እና ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቅህ ድረስ ትበለፅጋለህ፣ ወደ ቃል ኪዳንም ምድር፣ አዎን እንዲያውም እኔ ወደ አዘጋጀሁልህ ምድር፣ አዎን ከሌሎች ምድር ሁሉ በላይ ወደተመረጠች ምድር ትመራለህ።

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

፳፬ እናም ወንድሞችህ በአንተ ላይ እስከወመጡ ድረስ ከጌታ ፊት ይለያሉ።

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

፳፭ እናም አንተ ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቅህ ድረስ በወንድሞችህ ላይ አለቃና መምህር ትሆናለህ።

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

፳፫ እነሆ እነርሱ በእኔ ላይ በሚያምጡበት ጊዜ በከባድ እርግማን እረግማቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እነርሱ በእኔም ላይ ካላመጡ በቀር፣ በዘርችህ ላይ ምንም ኃይል አይኖራቸውም።

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

፳፬ እናም እነርሱ በእኔ ላይ የሚያምጡም ከሆነ፣ ለማስታወስ እንዲያነሳሷቸው፣ ለዘርህ የሚያውኩ ጅራፍ ይሆናሉ።

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

፩ ኔፊ ፫

፩ እና እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ ከጌታ ጋር ከተነጋገርኩ በኋላ ወደ አባቴ ድንኳን ተመለስኩ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፤ እነሆ ሕልምን አልሜአለሁ፣ በእርሱም ጌታ አንተና ወንድሞችህ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም እንድትመለሱ አዘኛል።

፫ እነሆም ላባን የአይሁዶችን መዝገብና ደግሞም የቅድመ አባቶቼን የትውልድ ሐረግ መጽሐፍ አለው፣ እናም እነርሱ በነሐስ ሰሌዳ ላይ የተቀረጹ ናቸው።

፬ ስለዚህ አንተና ወንድሞችህ ወደ ላባን ቤት ሄዳችሁ መዝገቦቹን ፈልጋችሁ ወደዚህ ወደ ምድረበዳ እንድታመጡዋቸው ሲል ጌታ አዘኛል።

፭ እናም አሁን እነሆ ወንድሞችህ ከእነርሱ የፈለግሁትን ነገር ከባድ ነው በማለት አጉረመረሙ፣ ነገር ግን እነሆ ይህን ከእነርሱ የፈለኩት እኔ አይደለሁም፣ ነገር ግን ይህ የጌታ ትዕዛዝ ነው።

፮ ስለዚህ ሂድ ልጄ፣ አንተ ስላላጉረመረሙክ በጌታ የተደገፍክ ትሆናለህ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ አባቴን እንዲህ አልኩት፣ እሄዳለሁ፣ ጌታ ያዘዘኝንም ነገሮች አደርጋለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ያዘዘቸውን ትዕዛዛት የሚሟሉበትን መንገድ ካላዘጋጀ በቀር ለሰው ልጆች ትዕዛዛትን እንደማይሰጥ አውቃለሁና።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ እነዚህን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ አጅግ ተደስተ፣ እኔም በጌታ መባረኬን አወቁልና።

፱ እና እኔ፣ ኔፊና ወንድሞቼ ድንኳናችንን ይዘን ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ለመሄድ በምድረበዳ ጉዞአችንን ጀመርን።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ምድር በሄድን ጊዜ እኔና ወንድሞቼ እርስ በእርስ ተመካከርን።

፲፩ እናም ማን ወደ ላባን ቤት መሄድ እንዳለበት ዕጣ ተጣጣልን። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዕጣው በላማን ላይ ወደቀ፤ እናም ላማን ወደ ላባን ቤት ሄደ፣ በቤቱም ተቀምጦ ሳለ አናገረው።

፲፪ እና ላባንን በነሐስ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረጹትንና የአባቴን ትውልድ ሐረግ የያዙትን መዝገቦች ጠየቀው።

1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላባን ተናደደ፣ እናም ከፊቱም አባረረው፣ እና መዝገቦቹን እንዲወሰድ አላደረገውም፣ ስለሆነም አለው፣ እነሆ አንተ ወንበዴ ነህ እናም እገድልሁለሁ።

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

፲፬ ነገር ግን ላማን ከእርሱ ፊት ሸሸ፣ ላባን ያደረገውንም ነገር ለእኛ ነገረን። እኛም እጅግ አዘንን እና ወንድሞቼ ወደ አባቴ ዘንድ ወደ ምድረበዳው ለመመለስ ተዘጋጁ።

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

፲፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ እኔ ለእነርሱ እንዲህ አልኳቸው፣ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ እኛም እስካለን ድረስ ጌታ ያዘዘንን ሳናከናውን ወደአባታችን ወደ ምድረበዳ እንመለስም።

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

፲፮ ስለዚህ የጌታን ትዕዛዝ በመጠበቅ ታማኝ እንሁን፣ ስለዚህ ወደ አባታችን ርስት ምድር እንውረድ፣ እነሆ ወርቅን፣ ብርንጥራትን ሁሉን ሁብቶችን ትቷልና። እናም ይህን ሁሉ ያደረገው በጌታ ትዕዛዛት ምክንያት ነው።

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

፲፯ ኢየሩሳሌም በህዝቡ ክፋት ምክንያት መጥፋት እንዳለባት ያውቅ ነበርና።

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

፲፰ እነሆም እነርሱ የነቢያትን ቃላት አልተቀበሉም፣ ስለዚህ አባቴ ከምድሪቱ እንዲወጣ ከታዘዘ በኋላ በዚያ ሀገር ቢቆይ ፍሮ እነሆ እርሱም ደግሞ ይጠፋ ነበር። ስለዚህ፣ ከምድሪቷ መውጣት ነበረበት።

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

፲፱ እናም የአባቶቻችንን ቋንቋ ለልጆቻችን እናቆይ ዘንድ እነዚህን መዝገቦች ማግኘታችን የእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ ነው

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

፳ እናም ደግሞ ዓለም ከተፈጠረች ጀምሮ እስከ አሁን ጊዜ ድረስ በመንፈስና በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ተሰጥቷቸው በቅዱሳን ነቢያት የተነገሩትን ቃላት ሁሉ እንድንጠብቅላቸው ዘንድ ነው።

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ አይነት አነጋገር ነበር የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ በመጠበቅ ታማኝ እንዲሆኑ አሳመንኳቸው።

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ርስታችን ምድር ወረድንና ወርቃችንንና፣ ብራችንን፣ እንዲሁም የከበሩ ነገሮቻችንን በእንድንት ሰበሰብን።

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

፳፫ እና እነዚህን ነገሮች ከሰበሰብን በኋላ ወደ ላባን ቤት ተመልስን ሄድን።

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላባን ቤት ገባንና በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረጹትን መዛግብት እንዲሰጠን ለዚህም ወርቃችንን፣ ብራችንንና፣ ሁሉንም የከበሩ ነገሮቻችንን እንደምንሰጠው ነገርነው።

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላባን ንብረታችን እጅግ ታላቅ እንደሆነ ባየ ጊዜ ተመኘው፣ በዚህም ምክንያት ወደ ውጪ አባረረንና ንብረታችንን ይወስድ ዘንድ አገልጋዮቹን እንዲገድሉን ላከብን።

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኛ ከላባን አገልጋዮች ፊት ሸሽን ንብረታችንን ከኋላችን ትተን እንድንሄድ ተገደድን፣ እና ይህም በላባን እጆች ውስጥ ወደቀ።

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ምድረበዳ ሸሸን፣ የላባን አገልጋዮች ሊይዙን አልቻሉም፣ እናም እራሳችንን በአለት ዋሻ ውስጥ ደበቅን።

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማን በእኔም ሆነ በእባቴ ተናደደ፣ ልሙኤልም እንደዛው የላማንን ቃላት አድምጦአልና። ስለዚህ ላማንና ልሙኤልም እኛን ታናናሽ ወንድሞቻቸውን ብዙ እስፈሪ ቃላት ተናገሩን፣ በበትርም መቱን።

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ በበትር በመቱን ጊዜ፣ እነሆም የጌታ መልእክ መጥቶ በፊታቸው ቆመ፣ እንዲህም ብሎ ተናገራቸው፣ ለምን ታናሽ ወንድማችሁን በበትር ትመታላችሁ? ጌታ እርሱን በእናንተ ላይ ገዢ ይሆን ዘንድ እንደመረጠውና ይህም በእመፃችሁ ምክንያት እንደሆነ አታውቁምን? እነሆ እንደገና ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ትመለሳላችሁ፣ እናም ጌታ ላባንን አሳልፎ በእጃችሁ ላይ ይጥለዋል።

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

፴ እናም መልእኩ ለእኛ ከተናገረ በኋላ ሄደ።

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

፴፩ እናም መልእኩም ከሄደ በኋላ ላማንና ልሙኤል እንዲህ ሲሉ ማጉረምረም ጀመሩ፣ ጌታ ላባንን አሳልፎ በእጃችን ይጥለው ዘንድ እንዴት ይቻላል? እነሆ እርሱ ሀይለኛ ነው፣ እናም አምሳዎችን ሰዎችን ሊያዝ ይችላል፣ አዎን፣ አምሳዎችንም መግደል ይችላል፣ እኛንስ መግደል እንዴት አይቻለውም?

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

፩ ኔፊ ፬

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለወንድሞቼ እንዲህ ሰል ተናገርኩ፡ ተመልሰን ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም እንሂድ፡ እናም የጌታን ትዕዛዝ በመጠበቅ ታማኝ እንሁን፡ እነሆም እርሱ ከምድር ላይ ካለው ሁሉ ኃያል ነው፡ ከላባንና ከአምሳዎቹ ሰዎች፡ አዎን፡ ወይንም ከአሰር ሺዎቹ እንኳ ለምን የበለጠ ኃያል አይሆንምን?

፪ ስለዚህ እንሂድ፡ ልክ እንደ ሙሴ ጠንካሮች እንሁን፡ እነሆ እርሱ በእውነት የቀይ ባሕርን ውሃ ተናገረው፡ ውሃውም ወዲያና ወዲህ ተከፈለ፡ አባቶቻችንም በውስጡ ተሻገረው ከግዛት በደረቅ ምድር ወጡ፡ እናም የፈርዖን ሰራዊት ተከተሉትና፡ በቀይ ባሕር ውሃ ውሰጥ ሰጠው።

፫ አሁን እነሆ ይህ እውነት እንደሆነ አውቃችኋል፡ እናም ደግሞ መልእክ እንደተናገሩት ታውቃላችሁ፡ ስለዚህ፡ ልትጠራጠሩ ትችላላችሁን? እንሂድ ጌታ እኛን እንደአባቶቻችን ሊያድንን ላባንን እንደግብፃውያን ሊያጠፋ ይቻላል።

፬ አሁን እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገርኩ ጊዜ፡ እንደተቆጡና አሁንም ማጉረምረማቸውን እንደቀጠሉ ነበር፡ ይሁን እንጂ እስከ ኢየሩሳሌም ግንብ ውጪ እስከደረሰን ድረስ ተከተሉኝ።

፭ እና ይህም በምሽት ነበር፤ እራሳቸውን ከግንቡ ውጪ እንዲደብቁ አደረጋቸው። እነርሱም ራሳቸውን ከደብቁ በኋላ እኔ ኔፊ ወደ ከተማው ሾለኩና፡ ወደ ላባን ቤት ሄድኩ።

፮ እናም ማድረግ ያለብኝን ነገሮች ቀድሜ ሳላውቅ በመንፈስ ተመራሁ።

፯ ይሁን እንጂ፡ እኔም ወደፊት ሄድኩ፡ እናም ወደ ላባን ቤት እየቀረብኩ ሰሄድ እንድ ሰው አየሁ፡ እና የወይን ጠጅ ጠጥቶ ሰክሮ ስለነበረ ከፊቱ በመሬት ላይ ወድቆ ነበር።

፰ እና ወደ እርሱ በመጣሁ ጊዜ ይህም ላባን እንደሆነ አወቅኩኝ።

፱ የእርሱን ጎራዴ አየሁ፡ ከአፍቱም መዘዝኩት፡ የጎራዴውም መያዣ የተሰራው ከንፁህ ወርቅ ነበር፤ አሰራሩም እጅግ ያማረ ነበር፤ እናም ስለቱ በጣም ከከበረ ብረት መሆኑን አየሁ።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላባንን እገድለው ዘንድ በመንፈስ ተገፋፋሁ፤ ነገር ግን በልቤ፡ በማንኛውም ጊዜ የሰው ደም አፍሰሼ አላውቅም አልኩ። እና እኔ ተሸማቀቅሁና፡ እርሱን ላለመግደል ፈለግሁ።

1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

16 እናም መንፈስ በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ እነሆ ጌታ እርሱን በእጆቹህ አሳልፎ ሰጥቶሁል። አዎን፣ እኔም ደግሞ ሕይወቴን ሊወስድ እንደፈለገ አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን የጌታን ትዕዛዝ እያዳምጥም፤ እናም ንብረታችንንም ደግሞ ወስዷል።

17 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መንፈስ ለእኔ እንደገና እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ግደለው፣ ጌታ በእጆቹህ አሳልፎ ሰጥቶሁልና፤

18 እነሆ ጌታ ጻድቃዊ ዓላማውን ያሟላ ዘንድ ክፋዎችን ይገድላል። አንድ አገር እምነት በማጣት ከሚመነምንና ከሚሞት አንድ ሰው ቢሞት ይሻላል።

19 እናም አሁን፣ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት ሰሰማ ጌታ በምድረበዳ እንዲህ ብሎ የተናገረኝን ቃላት አስታወሰኩ፡ ዘርህ ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቁ ድረስ በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ላይ ይበለፀጋሉ።

20 አዎን ሕጉ ከሌላቸው በሰተቀር በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ሊጠብቁ እንደማይችሉ ደግሞ አስብኩ።

21 እናም እኔ ደግሞ ህጉ በነሀስ ሰሌዳው ላይ እንደተቀረጸም አውቃለሁ።

22 እናም እንደገና ጌታ በትዕዛዙ መሰረት መዝገቦቹን አገኝ ዘንድ ላባንን በእጄ አሳልፎ የሰጠኝ ለዚህ ምክንያት መሆኑን አወቅሁ።

23 ስለዚህ ለመንፈሰም ድምፅ ታዘዝኩ፣ እና ላባንን የራሱን ፀጉር ይዞ በራሱ ጎራዳ እንገቱን ቆረጥኩት።

24 እናም በራሱ ጎራዳ እንገቱን ከቆረጥኩ በኋላ፣ የላባንን ልብስ ወስጄ ለበሰኩት፣ አዎን፣ አንድ ነገር ሳይቀር፣ እናም የእርሱን ጥሩር በወገቤ ላይ ታጠቅሁት።

25 ይህን ካደረግሁ በኋላ ወደ ላባን ግምጃ ቤት ተጓዝኩ። ወደ ላባን ግምጃ ቤት ስሄድ፣ እነሆም የግምጃ ቤቱን ቁልፍ የያዘውን የላባንን አገልጋይ አየሁ። እናም በላባን ድምፅ ወደ ግምጃ ቤቱ ከእኔ ጋር እንዲሄድ አዘዝኩት።

26 እናም እርሱ የላባንን ልብስና ጎራዳውን በወገቤ መታጠቁን በማየቱ የእርሱ አለቃ መሰልኩት።

27 እናም እርሱ አለቃው ላባን ሌሊቱን ከአይሁድ ሽማግሌዎች ጋር መሆኑን ሰላሚያውቅ፣ ስለእነርሱ እነጋገረኝ።

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

፳፫ እናም እኔ ልክ ላባን እንደሆነኩኝ አሰመሰዬ ከእርሱ ጋር ተነጋገርኩ።

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

፳፬ እኔ ከግንቡ ውጭ ወደ ሚገኙት ታላላቅ ወንድሞቼ በነሀሰ ሰሌዳ ላይ የተቀረጹትን ተሸክሜ መውሰድ እንዳለብኝ ተናገርኩት።

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

፳፭ እናም እኔ ደግሞ ሊከተለኝ እንደሚገባው አዘዘኩት።

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

፳፮ እርሱ የተናገርኩት ሰለቤተክርስቲያን ወንድሞች መሰለው፣ እና እውነት እኔ የገደልኩትን ላባንን መሰልኩት፣ ሰለዚህም ተከተለኝ።

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

፳፯ እናም እርሱ ከግንቡ ውጭ ወዳሉት ወንድሞቼ ሰንዝ ብዙ ጊዜ አይሁዶች ሽማግሌዎችን በተመለከተ ተናገረኝ።

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማን ባየኝ ጊዜ እጅግ ፈራ፣ እንዲሁም ልሙኤልና ሳምም። እናም እነርሱም ላባን ነው ብለው ሰላሰቡ እኔንም የገደለኝና የእነርሱንም ህይወት የሚያጠፋ ሰለመሰላቸው ከፊቴ ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔም ጠራኋቸው፣ እናም ሰሙኝ፤ ሰለዚህ ከፊቴ መሸሻቸውን አቆሙ።

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላባን አገልጋይ ወንድሞቼን ሲያይ መንቀጥቀጥ ጀመረና፣ ከእኔ ሸሽቶ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ሊመለስ ፈለገ።

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

፴፩ እናም እሁን እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ በአቋሜ ግዙፍ በመሆኔና ከጌታም ጥንካሬን በማግኘቴ የላባንን አገልጋይ እንዳይሸሽ ያዘኩት።

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ እኔም እስካለሁ ድረስ የእኔን ቃላት ከሰማ እንዲሁም ቃላታችንን ለመሰማት ፈቃደኛ ከሆነ ሕይወቴን እኛ እንደምናተርፍለት ተናገርኩት።

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

፴፫ እናም እርሱ ከእኛ ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳ የሚሄድ ከሆነ መፍራት እንደሌለበት ልክ እንደ እኛ ነፃ ሰው እንደሚሆን በመሃላ ጭምር ተናገርኩት።

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

፴፬ እናም እኔ እንዲህ ብዬ ተናገርኩት፦ በእርግጥ ጌታ ይህን እንድናደርግ አዘናል፣ እናም የጌታን ስራ ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ መትጋት የለብንምን? ሰለዚህ አንተ ወደ ምድረበዳ ወደ አባቴ የምትወርድ ከሆነ ከእኛ ጋር ትኖራለህ።

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘራም እኔ በተናገርኳቸው ቃላት ተበረታታ። ዘራም የአገልጋዩ ስም ነበር፤ እናም እርሱ ወደ ምድረበዳ ወደ አባታችን እንደሚሄድ ቃል ገባ። አዎን፣ ደግሞም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ እርሱ ከእኛ ጋር እንደሚቆይ ማለልን።

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

፲፮ እሁን እርሱ ከእኛ ጋር እንዲቆይ የፈለግንበት ለዚህ ምክንያት ነበር፣ አይሁዶች እኛን እንዳያሳድዱን እናም እንዳያጠፉን በመፍራት ወደ ምድረበዳ መሸሽታችንን እንዳያውቁ ዘንድ ነው።

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘራም መሃላ ሲገባልን እርሱን በተመለከተ የነበሩን ፍርሃቶች አቆሙ።

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የነሀሰ ስሌዳዎችንና የላባንን አገልጋይ ወሰድንና፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄድን፣ እንዲሁም ወደ አባታችን ድንኳን ተጓዝን።

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

፩ ኔፊ ፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ አባታችን ወደ ምድረቦዳ ከመጣን በኋላ እነሆ እርሱ በደስታ ተሞላ፣ እንዲሁም እናቴ ሳርያም እጅግ ተደስተች፣ በእውነት በእኛ ምክንያት አዝና ነበርና።

፪ እርሷም እኛ በምድረቦዳ ውስጥ እንደጠፋን አሰባ ነበር፤ እና እርሷም በአባቴ ላይ እርሱ ባለራዕይ እንደሆነ በመንገር ቅሬታዋን ገልጸ ነበር፤ እንዲህም አለች፡ እነሆ ከርሱት ምድራችን መርተህ አውጥተንሁል፣ ወንዶች ልጆቼም ከእንግዲህ የሉም፣ እናም እኛም በምድረቦዳ ውስጥ እንጠፋለን።

፫ በእንዲህ ዓይነት አነጋገር ነበር እናቴ በአባቴ ላይ ቅሬታዋን የገለጸችው።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገራት፡ ባለራዕይ ሰው መሆኔን አውቃለሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ነገሮች በራዕይ ባላይ ኖሮ የእግዚአብሔርን ቸርነት አላውቅም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን በኢየሩሳሌም እቆይ ነበር፣ እና ከወንድሞቼ ጋር አጠፋ ነበር።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ የቃልኪዳኑን ምድር አገኛለሁ፣ በነዚህም ነገሮች እደስታለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ጌታ የእኔን ወንዶች ልጆች ከአባን እጅ ነፃ እንደሚያወጣቸው እንዲሁም ወደ እኛ ወደ ምድረቦዳው ዳግመኛ እንደሚያመጣቸው አውቃለሁ።

፮ እናም በዚህ ዓይነት አነጋገር ነበር አባቴ ሌሂ እኛ በምድረቦዳ ውስጥ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ምድር፣ የአይሁዶችን መዝገብ ለማግኘት ሰንጓዝ፣ እናቴ ሳርያን እኛን በተመለከተ ያፀናናት።

፯ እናም እኛ ወደ አባቴ ድንኳን ሰንመለስ እነሆ የእነርሱ ደስታ የተሟላ ነበር፣ እናቴም ተፀናናች።

፰ እናም እርሷ እንዲህ በማለት ተናገረች፡ ጌታ ባለቤቴን ወደ ምድረቦዳው እንዲሸሽ እንዳዘዘው አሁን በእርግጥ አወቅሁ፣ አዎን እንዲሁም ደግሞ ጌታ ወንዶች ልጆቼን እንደጠበቀልኝ እንዲሁም ከአባን እጆች ነፃ እንዳወጣልኝና፣ ጌታ ያዘዛቸውን ነገር ማከናወን እንዲችሉ ኃይልን እንደሰጣቸው በእርግጥ አወቅሁ። በእንዲህ ዓይነት ነበር እርሷ የተናገረችው።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነሱ እጅግ ተደስቱ፣ መስዋዕት አቀረቡ፣ የሚቃጠል መስዋዕት ለጌታ አቀረቡ፣ እናም የእስራኤል አምላክንም አመሰገኑ።

1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

፲ እናም ለእስራኤል አምላክ ሞሰጋናውን ካቀረቡ በኋላ፣ አባቴ ሌሂ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረፀውን መዝገብ ወስደው፣ እናም ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ መረመራቸው።

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

፲፩ እናም እርሱም እነርሱ ስለዓለም አፈጣጠር፣ እንዲሁም የመጀመሪያ የእኛ ወላጆች የሆኑትን የአዳምና የሔዋን ታሪክ የሚገልጹትን አምስቱን የሙሴ መፅሐፍት እንደያዙ አየኝ፤

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ የአይሁዶችን መዝገብ፣ ከመጀመሪያው እስከ የይሁዳ ንጉስ ሴዴቅያስ የንግሥ ዓምት መጀመሪያ ድረስ ይዘው ነበር፤

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

፲፫ እናም ደግሞ የቅዱሳን ነቢያት ትንቢቶች፣ ከመጀመሪያ እስከ ሴዴቅያስ የንግሥ መጀመሪያ ድረስ እንዲሁም ደግሞ በኤርምያስ እና የተነገሩ ብዙ ትንቢቶችንም ይዘው ነበር።

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ሌሂ ደግሞ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎቹ ላይ የአባቶቹን የትውልድ ሐረግ ታሪክ አገኘ፤ ስለዚህ እርሱ ከዮሴፍ ትውልድ እንደሆነ አወቀ፤ እዎን፣ በእርግጥ ዮሴፍ የያዕቆብ ልጅ የሆነው ወደግብፅ የተሸጠው፣ እናም እርሱ አባቴን ያዕቆብንና ሁሉንም ቤተሰቦቹን በረሃብ ከመጥፋት ያድናቸው ዘንድ በጌታ እጅ የተጠበቀው ነበር።

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

፲፭ እናም እነርሱ ደግሞ ከምርኮ ከግብፅ ምድር ከዚህ በፊት በጠበቃቸው አምላክ ተመርተው የዳኑ ናቸው።

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

፲፮ እናም እንደዚህ ነበር አባቴ፣ ሌሂ፣ የአባቶቹን የትውልድ ሐረግ ያገኘው። ላባንም የዮሴፍ ትውልድ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ እርሱና አባቶቹ መዝገቦችን ጠብቀው አቆዩ።

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

፲፯ እናም አሁን አባቴ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ባየ ጊዜ፣ በመንፈስ ተሞላና፣ ስለዘርጅ መተንበይ ጀመረ—

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

፲፰ እነዚህ የነሀስ ስሌዳዎች የእርሱ ዘርች ለሆኑት ለሁሉም ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎችና ህዝቦች ሁሉ መሄድ ይኖርባቸዋል።

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

፲፱ ስለዚህ እነዚህ የነሀስ ስሌዳዎች በፍፁም መጥፋትም ሆነ ከጊዜ ብዛት ሊደበዝዙም አይገባም አለ። እናም ዘርጅን በተመለከተ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተነበየ።

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እስከአሁን እኔና አባቴ ጌታ ያዘዘንን ትዕዛዛት ጠበቅን።

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

፳፩ እናም እኛ ጌታ እንድናገኝ ያዘዘንን መዝገቦች
አግኝተናልና መርምረናቸዋል፤ እነሱም ጠቃሚ እንደሆኑ፣
አዎን፣ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ለልጆቻችን ማቆየት እስኪቻለን
ያህል ለእኛ ትልቅ ዋጋ ያላቸው እንደሆኑ አግኝተናቸዋል።

፳፪ ስለዚህ እኛ ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር በምድረበዳ ውስጥ
ሰንገዝ ከእኛ ጋር ይዘናቸው እንሄድ ዘንድ የጌታ ጥበብ
ነበር።

And we had obtained the records which the Lord
had commanded us, and searched them and found
that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth
unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the com-
mandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we
should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the
wilderness towards the land of promise.

፩ ኔፊ ፮

፩ እና አሁን እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ የአባቶቼን የትውልድ ሀረግ በዚህ የመዝገብ ክፍል አልፎም፣ በማንኛውም ጊዜ ቢሆን በዚህ በምፅፍበት ሰሌዳ ላይ አልፎም፤ አባቴ ባቆየው መዝገብ ላይ ተፅፏልና፤ ስለዚህ በዚህ ሥራ ውስጥ አልፎም።

፪ እኛ የዮሴፍ ትውልዶች ነን ማለት ብቻ ይበቃኛል።

፫ ሁሉንም የአባቴን ነገሮች በመፃፍ ጥንቁቅ መሆኔ ልዩነት አያመጣም፣ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳ ላይ መፃፍ አይችሉምና፣ እኔ የእግዚአብሔርን ነገሮች ለመፃፍ ቦታውን አፈልገዋለሁና።

፬ ሙሉ አላማዬም ሰዎችን ወደ አብርሃም አምላክ፣ ወደ ይሰሀቅ አምላክና፣ ወደ ያዕቆብ አምላክ እንዲመጡና እንዲደኑ ለማሳመን ነውና።

፭ ስለዚህ፣ ለዓለም አሰደሳች የሆኑትን ነገሮች እኔ አልፎም፣ ነገር ግን ለእግዚአብሔርና ከዓለም ላልሆኑት የሚያሰደሱት ነገሮችን አፅፋለሁ።

፮ ስለዚህ ሰሌዳዎቼን ለሰው ልጆች ዋጋ በሌላቸው ነገሮች እንዳይሞላቸው ለዘርቼ ትዕዛዝን አሰጣለሁ።

1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

፩ ኔፊ ፯

፩ እና አሁን ይህንን እንድታውቁት አፈልጋለሁ፣ አባቴ፣ ሌሂ፣ ስለ ዘሩ መተንበይን ከጨረሰ በኋላ እንዲህ ሆነ፤ ሌሂ ቤተሰቦቹን ብቻ ወደ ምድረበዳ መውሰድ እንደማይገባው ነገር ግን ወንድ ልጆቹ ሴት ልጆችን ለሚሰትነት እንዲወሰዱና፣ ለጌታ ዘርን በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር እንዲያሳድጉ ጌታ በድጋሚ ነገረው።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊና፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ተመልሰን ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ምድር መሄድ እንዳለብን፣ እናም እስማኤልንና ቤተሰቡን ወደ ምድረበዳ እንድናመጣቸው ጌታ አዘዘው።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ እንደገና ከወንድሞቼ ጋር፣ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ለመመለስ ወደ ምድረበዳ ወጣን።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ እስማኤል ቤት ድረስ ሄድን፣ በእስማኤልም ፊት ታላቅ ሞገስን በማግኘታችን፣ የጌታን ቃል ለእርሱ ተናገርን።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ የእስማኤልንና የቤተሰቦቹን ልብ ከማራራቱ የተነሳ ወደ ምድረበዳ ወደ አባታችን ድንኳን ከእኛ ጋር ተጓዘ።

፮ እናም በምድረበዳ ሰንጓዝ፣ እነሆ ላማንና ልሙኤል፣ ሁለቱ የእስማኤል ሴት ልጆች፣ ሁለቱ የእስማኤል ወንዶች ልጆቹና ቤተሰቦቻቸው በእኛ ላይ አዎን፣ በእኔ፣ በኔፊና፣ በሳም፣ በአባታቸው በእስማኤልና በሚሰቱና በሌሎች ሶስት ሴቶች ልጆቹ ላይ አመፀ።

፯ እናም በዚህ በአመፃቸው የተነሳ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ለመመለስ ፈለጉ።

፰ እና አሁን እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ በልባቸው ጠጣርነት በማዘን፣ እንዲህ ስል ተናገርኳቸው፣ አዎን፣ ለላማንና ለልሙኤልም እንኳ፤ እነሆ እናንተ የእኔ ታላቅ ወንድሞቼ ናችሁ፣ እንዴት በልባችሁ ጠጣር፣ በአዕምሮአችሁ እውር ሆናችሁ፣ እና እኔ ታናሽ ወንድማችሁ ለእናንተ ልናገርና፣ አዎን፣ እና ምሳሌን ላስቀምጥላችሁ ይገባኛልን?

፱ እንዴት ነው የጌታን ቃል ያላዳመጣችሁት?

፲ እንዴት ነው የጌታን መልእክ ማየታችሁን የረሳችሁት?

1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

፲፩ አዎ፣ ጌታ ከላባን እጅ ሲያወጣን፣ እና ደግሞ መዝገቦቹን እንድናገኝ ሲል ምን ታላላቅ ነገሮችን እንዳደረገልን እንዴት ረሳችሁት?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

፲፪ አዎን፣ ጌታ ለሰዎች ልጆች፣ በእርሱ ታማኝ እስከሆኑ ድረስ፣ ሁሉንም ነገሮች በፈቃዱ ለማድረግ እንደሚችል እንዴት እረሳችሁ? ስለዚህ ለእርሱ ታማኞች እንሁን።

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

፲፫ እኛም ለእርሱ ታማኞች ከሆንን የቃልኪዳኗን ምድር እናገኛለን፤ እናም ወደ ፊት አንድ ቀን የኢየሩሳሌምን መጥፋት በተመለከተ የጌታ ቃል እንደሚሟላ እናንተ ታውቃላችሁ፤ ሁሉም ሰለኢየሩሳሌም መጥፋት ጌታ የተናገራቸው ነገሮች መፈጸም አለባቸውና።

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

፲፬ እነሆም የጌታ መንፈስ ከእነርሱ ጋር መሰራትን በቅርብ ያቆማል፤ እነሆ እነርሱ ነቢያትን ተቃውመዋል፣ ኤርምያስን ወደ ወህን ጨምረዋል። እናም ከምድሪቱ እስከማባረር ድረስም የአባቴን ህይወት ለማጥፋት ፈልገዋል።

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

፲፭ አሁንም እነሆ አላችኋለሁ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ብትመለሱ እናንተም ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር ትጠፋላችሁ። አሁንም በምርጫችሁ ወደ ምድሪቱም ሂዱ፣ እናም እኔ ለእናንተ የተናገርኩትን ቃላቶች እስታውሱ፣ የምትሄዱ ከሆነ ትጠፋላችሁ፤ ይህንንም እናገር ዘንድ የጌታ መንፈስ ገፋፍቶኛልና።

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፌ እነዚህን ቃላት ለወንድሞቼ ስናገር በእኔ ተቆጡ። እነሆም እንዲህ ሆነ በእጆቸው ያዙኝ፣ እነሆ፣ እጅግ ተናደው ነበር፣ እና በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ትተውኝ በዱር አውሬ እንድበላ ዘንድ ህይወቴን ለማጥፋት ስለፈለጉ በገመድም አሰሩኝ።

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

፲፯ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ለጌታ እንዲህ ብዬ ጸለይኩ፣ አቤቱ ጌታ በአንተ ባለኝ አምነት መሰረት ከወንድሞቼ እጅ ታድነኛለህ፤ አዎን የታሰርኩበትንም እስር እበጣጥሰው ዘንድ ጥንካሬን ሰጠኝ።

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገርኩ ጊዜ እስሩ ከእጆቼና ከእግሬ ላይ ተፈታ፣ እናም ከወንድሞቼ ፊት ቆምኩና፣ እንደገና ተናገርኳቸው።

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ እንደገና በእኔ ላይ ተቆጡ፣ እናም እጆቻቸውን ሊያሳርፉብኝ ፈለጉ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ከእስማኤል ሴት ልጆች አንዷ፣ አዎን፣ ደግሞም እናቷና ከእስማኤል ወንዶች ልጆች አንዱ፣ የእኔ ወንድሞች ልባቸው እስኪራራ ድረስ ለመኑዋቸው፤ ህይወቴንም ለማጥፋት መፈለጋቸውን አቆሙ።

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ በክፋታቸው፣ ሞክንያት አዘኑ፣ ስለዚህ በእኔ ላይ ባደረጉት ነገር ይቅርታ እንዲደርግላቸው በፊቴ አጎንብሰው ለመኑኝ።

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ባደረጉት ነገር ሁሉ በእውነት ይቅርታ አደረኩላቸው፣ እናም ይቅር ይላቸው ዘንድ ለጌታ ለአምላካቸው እንዲጸልዩ መከርካቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም እንዲሁ አደረጉ። እናም ወደ ጌታ ከጸለዩ በኋላ እንደገና ወደአባታችን ድንኳን ጉዞአችንን አደረግን።

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ አባታችን ድንኳን ወረድን። እናም እኔና ወንድሞቼና የእስማኤል ሴት ሁሉ ወደ አባቴ ድንኳን ከወረድን በኋላ እነርሱ ለጌታ ለአምላካቸው ሞስጋናን አቀረቡ፤ መስዋዕትንና የሚቃጠለውንም መስዋዕት አቀረቡለት።

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

፩ ኔፊ ፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሁሉም ዓይነት ዘርች ሁሉንም የእህል ዓይነትና፣ ከሁሉም ዓይነት የፍራፍሬ ዘርች በእንድነት ስበሰብን።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ በምድረበዳ በቆየበት ጊዜ እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረን፣ እነሆ ህልምን አልሜአለሁ፣ ወይም በሌላ አባባል፣ ራዕይን አይቻለሁ።

፫ እናም እነሆ ባየሁት ነገር የተነሳ በኔፊና ደግሞም ስለሳም በጌታ የምደሰትበት ምክንያት አለኝ፣ እና እነርሱና ብዙዎቹ ዘርቻቸው እንደሚደኑ ለመገመት ምክንያት አለኝ።

፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ ላማንና ልሙኤል፣ በእናንተ ምክንያት እጅግ እፈራለሁ፤ እነሆ በህልሜ ውስጥ ጨለማና የማያሰደስት ምድረበዳ ማየቴን ተረዳሁ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደ ሰው አየሁ፣ ነጭ ልብስ ለብሶ ነበር፤ እናም መጥቶ በፊቴ ቆመ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ተናገረኝ፣ እናም እንድከተለው ጋበዘኝ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱን እንደተከተልኩት ራሴንም በጭለማ እና በማያሰደስት ባድማ ውስጥ እንደነበርኩ ተመለከትኩ።

፰ እናም ለብዙ ሰዓታት በጨለማ ውስጥ ከተጓዘኩ በኋላ እንደምህረቱም ብዛት ጌታ በእኔ ላይ ምህረትን ያደርግ ዘንድ ፀለይኩ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለጌታ ከፀለይኩ በኋላ፣ ትልቅና ሰፊ የሆነን ሜዳ ተመለከትኩ።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ፍሬዋ አንድን ሰው ደስተኛ ለማድረግ መልካም የሆነችን ዛፍ ተመለከትኩ።

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሄጄ ከፍሬዋ ተካፈልኩ፤ ከዚህ በፊት ከቀመስኩት ሁሉ ጣፋጭ እንደሆነች አየሁ። አዎን፣ ፍሬዋም ከዚህ በፊት ካየሁትም ንጣት ሁሉ በላይ ነጭ የሆነች ፍሬ እንደሆነች ተመለከትኩ።

፲፪ ከዚህች ፍሬ ሰካፈልም ይህም ነፍሴን በደስታ ሞላው፣ ስለሆነም ቤተሰቦቼም ደግሞ ይካፈሉት ዘንድ መመኘት ጀመርኩ፤ ከሌላው ፍሬ ሁሉ በላይ አስፈላጊ እንደሆነ አውቃለሁና።

1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

፲፫ እናም ቤተሰቤን ደግሞ ማግኘት እችላለሁ፤ ዘንድ በዙሪያው ስመለከት፣ የወንዝ ውሃን ተመለከትኩ፤ ይወርድም ነበር፤ እና እኔ ፍሬውን ከበላሁበት ዛፍ አቅራቢያ ነበር።

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

፲፬ እናም ከየት እንደመጣላቸው ለማየት ተመለከትኩ፤ ትንሽ ራቅ ብሎም ምንጩን አየሁ፤ እናታችሁ ሳርያን፣ ሳምንና፣ ኔፊን፣ በዚያው በምንጩ አየሁ፤ እነርሱም ወዳት መሄድ እንዳለባቸው እንደማያውቁ ሆነው ቆሙ።

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ጠቆምኳቸው፣ ወደ እኔ እንዲመጡና ከሌሎች ፍሬዎች ሁሉ በላይ መልካም የሆነውን ፍሬ፣ እንዲበሉ በከፍተኛ ድምፅ ነገርኳቸው።

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ወደ እኔ መጡና ደግሞ ፍሬውን በሉ።

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማንና ልሙኤልም እንዲመጡና ደግሞ ፍሬውን እንዲበሉ ተመኘሁ፤ ስለሆነም እንዲያቸው ዘንድ አይናቸውን ወደ ወንዙ ምንጭ ጣልኩኝ።

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ አየሁአቸው፣ ነገር ግን እነርሱ ወደ እኔ አልመጡም፣ ፍሬውንም አልበሉም።

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

፲፱ እናም የብረት በትር ተመለከትኩ፣ በወንዙም ዳርቻ፣ እኔ ወደ ቆምኩበት ዛፍ ድረስ እንዲወሰድ የተዘረጋ ነበር።

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

፳ እናም እኔ ወደ ቆምኩበት ዛፍ ከብረት በትሩ ጋር የሚወሰድ የጠበበና የቀጠነ መንገድ ተመለከትኩ፣ ይህም ደግሞ በፏፏቴውም ምንጭ፣ ዓለምን ወደሚመስለው ትልቅና ሰፊ ሜዳ ያመራል።

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

፳፩ ስፍር ቁጥር የሌላቸው ሰዎችን አየሁ፣ እኔ ወደ ቆምኩበት ዛፍ የሚያደርስውን መንገድ ለማግኘት አብዛኞቹ ወደፊት ይገፉ ነበር።

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መጡ፣ እና ወደዛፉ በሚያመራው መንገድ ወደፊት ተጓዙ።

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጨለማ ጭጋግ ተነሳ፣ አዎን በመንገዱ ጉዞ የጀመሩት መንገዳቸውን አስኪሰቱና ተንከራተው እስኪጠፉ ድረስ እጅግ ታላቅ የጨለማ ጭጋግ ተነሳ።

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሎች ደግሞ ወደፊት ሲጋፉ አየሁ፤ እናም እነርሱም ወደፊት መጡና የብረት በትሩን ጫፍ ያዙ፤ የብረቱን በትር ተጠግተው በጨለማው ጭጋግ ውስጥ ወደፊት መጥተው የዛፉን ፍሬ እስኪካፈሉ ድረስ ወደፊት ገፉ።

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

፳፭ እናም ከዛፉ ፍሬ ከተካፈሉ በኋላ ያፈሩ በመሞሰል አይኖቻቸውን ወደ እዚህና ወደ እዚያ ጣሉ።

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

፳፮ እኔም ደግሞ አይኖቼን በዙሪያው ጣልኩኝ፤ እና ከውሃው ወንዝ ባሻገር፣ ትልቅና ሰፊ ህንፃን ተመለከትኩ፤ ከምድር ከፍ ብሎ በአየር ላይ የቆመ ይመስል ነበር።

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

፳፯ እናም በአረጋውያን ጎልማሳም፣ በወንድም በሴትም ሰዎች ተሞልቶ ነበር፤ አለባባሳቸውም እጅግ ያማረ ነበር፤ ፍሬውንም መጥተው ወደቡሉት ላይ እጃቸውን እየጠቆሙና እየተሳላቁባቸው ነበር።

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

፳፰ በእነዚያ በሚያላገጡባቸውም ምክንያት፣ ፍሬውን ከቀመሱ በኋላ አፈሩ፤ ወደተከለከለውም መንገድ ገቡና ጠፉ።

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

፳፱ እና አሁን እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ የአባቴን ቃላት በሙሉ አልናገርም።

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

፴ እነርግን፣ ፀሁፉን ለማሳጠር፣ እነሆ ብዙ ሌሎችም ወደፊት ሲጋፉ አየኝ፤ መጥተው የብረት በትሩን ጫፍ ያዙ፤ እና ወደፊት መጥተው እስኪወድቁና የዛፉን ፍሬ እስኪካፈሉና እስኪወድቁ ድረስ መንገዳቸውን ወደፊት በመቀጠል ያለማቋረጥም የብረቱን በትር አጥብቀው ያዙ።

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

፴፩ እና ደግሞ ሌሎችም ብዙዎች ወደትልቁና ሰፊው ህንፃ መንገዳቸውን ሲያቀኑ አየኝ።

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙዎች ወደ ፏፏቴው ጥልቅ ሲመጡ፤ እና ብዙዎች ደግሞ በማይታወቅ መንገድ ገብተው ሲቅበዘበዙ ከፀይታው ጠፉ።

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

፴፫ እና ወደ ማይታወቀው ህንፃ የገቡት ታላቅ ብዛት ነበራቸው። ወደ ህንፃው ከገቡም በኋላ በእኔና ፍሬውን ይካፈሉ በነበሩት ላይ ደግሞ የፊዝ ጣታቸውን ይጠቁሙ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እኛ አላደመጥናቸውም።

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

፴፬ እነዚህ የአባቴ ቃላት ነበሩ፣ ያደመጡባቸው በሙሉ ጠፍተዋል።

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

፴፭ እና አባቴ ላማንና ልሙኤል ፍሬውን አልተካፈሉም አለ።

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

፲፮፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ብዙ የነበሩትን የህልሙን ወይም የራዕዩን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ፣ ለእኛ እንዲህ አለን፣ በራዕዩ ባየው ነገር የተነሳ፣ ለላማንና ለልሙኤል በእጅጉ ፈራላቸው፣ አዎ፣ ከጌታ ፊት እንዳይጣሉ ፈራላቸው።

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

፲፮፮ እና ምናልባት ጌታ ለእነርሱም መሐሪ እንዲሆንላቸውና እንዳይጣላቸው ዘንድ፣ የእርሱን ቃላት እንዲሰሙ በአፍቃሪ ወላጅ ሙሉ ሰሜት መከራቸው፤ አዎን፣ አባቴ ለእነርሱ ሰበከላቸው።

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

፲፮፯ እናም ለእነርሱ ከሰበከላቸውና፣ ብዙ ነገሮችን ለእነርሱ ከተነበየላቸው በኋላ፣ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት እንዲጠብቁ አዘዛቸው፣ እናም ለእነርሱ መናገርን አቆመ።

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

፩ ኔፊ ፱

፩ እና አባቴ በልሙኤል ሸለቆ፣ ውስጥ በድንኳን ሲኖር፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉና፣ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ ሊፃፉ የማይችሉትን፣ ብዙ ትላልቅ ነገሮችን እየ፣ እንዲሁም ሰማ፣ ተናገረም።

፪ እናም አሁን፣ እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች በተመለከተ እንደተናገርኩት፣ እነሆ እነርሱ የህዝቤን ታሪክ በሙሉ የፃፍኩባቸው ሰሌዳዎች አይደሉም፤ የእኔን ህዝቦች ታሪክ በሙሉ የፃፍኩባቸው ሰሌዳዎች ኔፊ የሚል ስም ስጥቻቸዋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ እነርሱ በእኔ ስም የኔፊ ሰሌዳዎች ተብለው ይጠራሉ፤ እናም እነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ደግሞ የኔፊ ሰሌዳዎች ተብለው ይጠራሉ።

፫ ሆኖም፣ እኔ ለተለየ ዓላማ ስለህዝቦቼ አገልግሎት ታሪክ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች በመቅረፅ እንድፅፍ ከጌታ ትዕዛዝ ተቀብያለሁ።

፬ በሌሎቹም ሰሌዳዎች ላይ የንጉሶቹን የንግስ ታሪክ፣ እናም የጦርነትና የእኔ ህዝቦች ፀብ መቀረፅ አለበት፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች በይበልጥ ስለአገልግሎት የሚቀረጹበት፤ እናም ሌሎች ሰሌዳዎች ስለንጉሶቹ ንግስና የእኔ ህዝቦች ፀብና ጦርነቶች የሚቀረጹበት ናቸው።

፭ ስለዚህ ጌታ እነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ለብልህ ዓላማው እንድስራው አዘዘኝ፣ ይህንም አላማ እኔ አላውቀውም።

፮ ነገር ግን ጌታ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ያውቃል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉንም የእርሱን ስራዎች በሰው ልጆች መካከል ለመፈፀም መንገድ ያዘጋጃል፤ እነሆም፣ የእርሱ ቃላት በሙሉ የሚያሟላበት ሁሉም ኃይል አለው። እናም ይህ ነው። አሜን።

1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

፩ ኔፊ ፲

፩ እና አሁን እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ የእኔን ድርጊትና ንግስና አገልግሎት ታሪኬን በመፃፍ እቀጥላለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በእኔ ታሪክ ለመቀጠል፣ የአባቴን ደግሞም የወንድሞቼን ነገሮች በመጠኑ መናገር አለብኝ።

፪ እነሆም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ስለህልሙ መናገሩን፣ እናም እነርሱን በሙሉ ትጋት መምከር ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ አይሁዶችን በተመለከተ ተናገራቸው—

፫ እነርሱም ከጠፉ በኋላ፣ እንዲሁም ያቺ ታላቁቷ ከተማ ኢየሩሳሌምና ብዙዎች ሕዝቦቿ በምርኮ ወደ ባቢሎን ከተወሰዱ በኋላ፣ ጌታ በጊዜው መሰረት እንደገና ይመለሳሉ፣ አዎን፣ ከምርኮ ወጥተው ይመለሳሉ፤ እናም ከምርኮም ወጥተው ከተመለሱ በኋላ፣ እንደገናም የርሱት ምድራቸው ባለቤት ይሆናሉ።

፬ አዎን፣ አባቴ ኢየሩሳሌምን ከለቀቀ ከስድስት መቶ ዓመታት በኋላ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ከአይሁዶች መካከል ነቢይን፣ እንዲሁም መሲሁን ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር የዓለምን መድኃኒት ያስነሳል።

፭ እናም፣ ደግሞ እርሱ ነቢያትን በተመለከተ፣ እርሱ ስለተናገረበት መሲህን ወይም ይህ የአለም አዳኝን በሚመለከት ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች እንዴት ታላቅ ቁጥር ያላቸው እንደመሰከሩ ተናገረ።

፮ ስለዚህ በዚህ መድሐኒት ካልታመኑ በስተቀር ሁሉም የሰው ዘር በመሳትና በውድቀት ላይ ነበሩ፣ እናም ለዘለአለምም ይሆናሉ።

፯ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ ከመሲሁ፣ በፊት የጌታን መንገድ ለማቅናት ስለሚመጣው ነቢይ ተናገረ—

፰ አዎን፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄዶ እንዲህ በማለት ይጮሃል፡ የጌታን መንገድ አቅኑ፣ ጥርጊያውንም አዘጋጁ፣ እናንተ የማታውቁት አንዱ ከመካከላችሁ ቆሟልና፤ እናም እርሱም የጫማውን ጠፍሮ ለመፍታት ብቁ ያልሆነኩ ከእኔ የበረታ ነው። እናም ይህንን ነገር በተመለከተ አባቴ ብዙ ተናገረ።

፱ እናም አባቴ ከዮርዳኖስ ባሻገር ቤተ ባራ ውስጥ እርሱ እንደሚያጠምቅ ተናገረ፣ ደግሞም እርሱ በውሃ እንደሚያጠምቅ ተናገረ፤ መሲሁንም ቢሆን በውሃ ያጠምቀዋል።

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

፲ እናም እርሱ መሲሁን በውሃ ካጠመቀ በኋላ፣ የዓለምን ኃጢያት የሚያስወግደውን የእግዚአብሔርን በግ ማጥመቁን እርሱ እንዲሁም ይመሰክራል።

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ በአይሁዶች መካከል ስለሚሰበከው ወንጌል፣ ደግሞም ስለአይሁዶች እምነት በማጣት መመንመን ለወንድሞቼ ነገራቸው። እናም ዳግም የሚመጣውን መሲሕ ከገደሉ በኋላና እርሱም ከተገደለ በኋላ፣ ከሞት ይነሳል፣ እናም እራሱን በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ለአህዛብ ይገልጣል።

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

፲፪ አዎን፣ አባቴ አህዛቦችን በሚመለከትና የእስራኤልን ቤት በሚመለከት፣ እነርሱንም ልክ ቅርንጫፎቹ እንደወደባቸው ወይራ ዛፍ በመነፃፀርና በምድር ላይ ሁሉ መበታተን እንደሚገባቸው ብዙ ተናገረ።

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

፲፫ የጌታ ቃል ይፈፀም ዘንድ፣ በምድር ላይ ሁሉ መበተን አለብን፣ ስለዚህ እኛ ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር በአንድነት ሆነን መኮከል እንደሚያስፈልገን ተናገረ።

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

፲፬ እናም የእስራኤል ቤቶች ከተበተኑ በኋላ እንደገና በአንድ ላይ መሰብሰብ አለባቸው፤ ወይም አህዛብ የወንጌልን ሙሉነት ከተቀበሉ በኋላ፣ የወይራው ዛፍ ተፈጥሮአዊ ቅርንጫፎች፣ ወይም በአጠቃላይ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪት ይጣበቃሉ፣ ወይም የእነርሱ መድሐኒትና ጌታ ወደሆነው እውነተኛ መሲሕ እውቀት ይመጣሉ።

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

፲፭ እናም አባቴ በዚህ አይነት አነጋገር ተነበየ፣ እንዲሁም ለወንድሞቼና በዚህ መፅሐፍ ላይ ያልጻፍኳቸውን ሌሎች ብዙ ነገሮች ተናገረ፣ እኔ ግን ለእኔ የሚያስፈልጉኝን ነገሮች በሌላኛው የራሴ መፅሐፍ ፅፌአለሁ።

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

፲፮ እናም እነዚህ ሁሉ እኔ የተናገርኳቸው ነገሮች የተደረጉት አባቴ በልሙኤል ሸለቆ በድንኳን ተቀምጦ ሳለ ነበር።

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ የአባቴን ቃላት ሁሉ ከሰማሁ በኋላ፣ እርሱ በራዕይ ሰላያቸው ነገሮችና ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ባለው እምነት በተቀበለው መንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ስለተናገራቸው ነገሮች፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሚመጣው የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ መሲሁ ነው፤ እኔም፣ ኔፊ ደግሞ በትጋት እርሱን ለፈለጉት ሁሉ እንደ ጥንት ጊዜው አሁንም ቢሆን እራሱን ለሰው ልጆች በሚገልጥበት በእግዚአብሔር ስጦታ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል እነዚህን ነገሮች አመለከት እንዲሁም እሰማና እውቅ ዘንድ ፈለግሁ።

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

፲፰ እርሱ ትናንትም ዛሬም እስከዘለዓለም ያው ነውና፤ ንስሀ የሚገቡና ወደ እርሱ የሚመጡ ከሆነ፣ መንገዱ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ለሰዎች ሁሉ ተዘጋጅቷል።

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

፲፱ በትጋት የሚፈልግ ያገኛልና፣ የእግዚአብሔር ሚስጥሮች ለእነርሱ እንደጥንቱም ጊዜ ቢሆን በሚመጡትም ጊዜያት በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ይገለጻላቸዋል፣ ስለዚህ፣ የጌታ መንገድ አንድ ዘለዓለማዊ ዙሪያ ነው።

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

፳ ስለዚህ የሰው ልጅ ሆይ፣ አስታውስ፣ ለሥራህ ሁሉ ወደፍርድ ትቀርባለህና።

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

፳፩ ስለዚህ በሙከራ ዘመንህ መጥፎ ነገሮችን ማድረግ ከፈለግህ በእግዚአብሔር የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ሳትፀዳ ትገኛለህ፣ እናም ምንም እርኩስ ነገር ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ሊኖር አይቻለውም፣ ስለዚህ ለዘለዓለም ትጣላለህ።

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

፳፪ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስ እነዚህን ነገሮች እናገርና እንዳልደብቃቸው ዘንድ ስልጣን ሰጥቶኛል።

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ያየውን ነገሮች ለማወቅ ከፈለግሁ በኋላ፣ እናም ጌታ ሊያሳውቀኝ እንደሚችል በማመን በልቤ እያሰላሰልኩ ተቀምጬ ሳለሁ በጌታ መንፈስ፣ አዎን፣ በፊት አይቼው ወደማላውቀውና ከዚህ በፊት በእግሮቼ ቆሜበት ወደማላውቀው እጅግ ከፍ ያለ ተራራ ተወሰድኩ።

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

፪ እነሆ መንፈስ፣ ምን ትፈልጋለህ? አለኝ።

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

፫ እና እኔም አልሁ፣ አባቴ ያያቸውን ነገሮች ማየት አፈልጋለሁ።

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

፬ እና መንፈስም አለኝ—አባትህ የተናገረውን ዛፍ እንዳየ ታምናለህን?

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

፭ እናም እኔ አልኩ—አዎን፣ የአባቴን ቃላት በሙሉ እንደማምን አንተ ታውቃለህ።

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

፮ እናም እነዚህን ቃላት ሰናገር መንፈስ በታላቅ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፣ ሆሳዕና ለጌታ ለልዑል እግዚአብሔር፤ እርሱ በምድር ሁሉ ላይ፣ አዎን፣ ከሁሉም በላይ አምላክ ነው። እናም አንተ፣ ኔፊ፣ የተባረክህ ነህ፣ ምክንያቱም አንተ በልዑል እግዚአብሔር ልጅ አምነህልና፣ ስለዚህ የተመኘህቸውን ነገሮች ታያለህ።

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

፯ እና እነሆ እነዚህ ነገሮች ለአንተ ለምልክት ይሰጡህል፣ አባትህ የቀመሰውን ፍሬ የሚሰጠውን ዛፍ ካየህ በኋላ ደግሞም አንድ ሰው ከሰማይ ሲወርድ ታያለህ፣ እናም አንተ እርሱን ታያለህ፤ እናም ካየኸውም በኋላ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እንደሆነ ትመሰክራለህ።

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መንፈስ እንዲህ አለኝ—ተመልከት! ተመልከትኩና ዛፍን አየሁ፤ አባቴም እንዳየው አይነት ዛፍ ነበር፤ ውበቱም አዎን ከሁሉም ውብ ነገር የላቀ ነበር፤ ንጣቱም ከሚገፋው በረዶ ንጣት የላቀ ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዛፉን ካየሁ በኋላ፣ ለመንፈሱ፣ ከሁሉ በላይ የከበረውን ዛፍ እንዳሳየኸኝ ተመልከትኩ አልኩት።

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

፲ እናም እርሱ፣ አንተ ምን ትፈልጋለህ? አለኝ።

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

፲፩ እናም እኔ ለእርሱ፣ ትርጓሜውን ለማወቅ ነው አልኩት—እኔም ሰው እንደሚናገረው ለእርሱ ተናገርኩት፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በሰው አምሳል እንደነበር ስለተመለከትኩ ነው፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የጌታ መንፈስ መሆኑን አውቅ ነበር፣ እናም ሰው ከሌላ እንደሚነጋገር እርሱ እኔን ተናገረኝ።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ እኔን፣ ተመልከት! አለኝ፣ እኔም እርሱን ለመመልከት ዘርኩ እናም አላየሁትም ከእኔ ዘንድ ሄዶ ነበርና።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ተመልከትኩ፣ እናም ታላቂቷን የኢየሩሳሌም ከተማ፣ ደግሞም ሌሎች ከተሞችን አየሁ። የናዝሬትንም ከተማ ተመልከትኩ፣ በናዝሬትም ከተማ እንዲት ድንግል ተመልከትኩ፣ እርሷም እጅግ ውብና ያማረች ነበረች።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰማያት ሲከፈቱ አየሁ፤ እናም አንድ መልአክ ወረደና በፊቴ ቆመ፤ እንዲህም አለኝ፣ ኔፊ፣ ምን ትመለከታለህ?

፲፭ እናም እንዲት ከድንግሎች ሁሉ በላይ መልካም፣ በጣም ቆንጆ ድንግል፣ በማለት ተናገርኩት።

፲፮ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ትህትና ታውቃለህ? አለኝ።

፲፯ እናም እርሱ ልጆቹን እንደሚወድ አውቃለሁ፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የሁሉን ነገሮች ትርጉም አላውቅም አልኩት።

፲፰ እነሆ የተመለከትካት ድንግል በሰጋ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እናት ናት አለኝ።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እርሷ በመንፈስ እንደተወሰደች ተመልከትኩ፤ እና ለጥቂት ጊዜ በመንፈስ ከተወሰደች በኋላ መልአኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ ተመልከት!

፳ እናም በድጋሚ ድንግሊቷ፣ በክንዲ ልጅ ይዛ አየሁ፣ እንዲሁም ተመልከትኩ።

፳፩ እናም መልአኩ እንዲህ አለኝ፣ እነሆ የእግዚአብሔር በግ፣ አዎን እንዲያውም የዘላለማዊው አባት ልጅ! አባትህ ያየውን ዛፍ ትርጉም ታውቃለህ?

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ስል መለስኩለት፤ አዎን፣ ይህ በሰው ልጆች ልብ ውስጥ ሁሉ ራሱን በሰፋት የሚያፈስ የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ነው፤ ስለዚህ ከሁሉ ነገሮች በላይ መልካም ነው።

፳፫ እርሱም፣ አዎን፣ ለነፍሱም በጣም ደስ የሚያሰኝ ነው አለኝ።

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

፳፬ እነዚህንም ነገሮች ካለ በኋላ፣ እንዲህ አለኝ—
ተመልከት! እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በሰው ልጆች
መካከል ሲሄድ ተመልከትኩ፤ ብዙዎችም በእግሩ ስር
ሲወድቁና ሲሰግዱለት ተመልከትኩ።

And after he had said these words, he said unto
me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God
going forth among the children of men; and I saw
many fall down at his feet and worship him.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ያየው የብረት በትር፣ ወደ
ህይወት ውሃዎች ምንጭ፣ ወይም ወደ ህይወት ዛፍ፣
የሚመራው የእግዚአብሔር ቃል እንደሆነ ተመልከትኩ፤
ውሃዎቹም የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ምልክት ናቸው፤
ደግሞም የህይወት ዛፍም የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ምልክት
መሆኑን አየሁ።

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of
iron, which my father had seen, was the word of
God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to
the tree of life; which waters are a representation of
the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life
was a representation of the love of God.

፳፮ እናም መልአኩ እንደገና እንዲህ አለኝ—
የእግዚአብሔርን ትህትና እይ እንዲሁም ተመልከት አለኝ።

And the angel said unto me again: Look and be-
hold the condescension of God!

፳፯ እናም እኔ ተመልከትኩና አባቴ የተናገረለትንም የዓለም
መድኃኒት ተመልከትኩ፤ ደግሞም ከእርሱ በፊት
መንገዱን የሚያዘጋጀውን ነቢይ ተመልከትኩ።
የእግዚአብሔርም በግ ሄዶ በእርሱ ተጠመቀ፣
ከተጠመቀም በኋላ፣ ሰማያት ሲከፈቱና መንፈስ ቅዱስ
ከሰማይ ሲወርድና በእርግብ አምሳል በእርሱ ላይ ሲያርፍ
ተመልከትኩ።

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the
world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also be-
held the prophet who should prepare the way before
him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was bap-
tized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the
heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of
heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

፳፰ እናም እርሱ ህዝቡን በኃይልና በታላቅ ክብር እያገለገለ
ሲሄድ ተመልከትኩ፤ ብዙ ህዝብም ሊያዳምጡት
ተሰበሰቡ፤ ከመካከላቸው ሲያሰወጡትም ተመልከትኩ።

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto
the people, in power and great glory; and the multi-
tudes were gathered together to hear him; and I be-
held that they cast him out from among them.

፳፱ እናም ደግሞ ሌሎች አስራ ሁለት ሲከተሉት
ተመልከትኩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከፊቴ በመንፈስ
ተወሰዱም ተሰወሩብኝም።

And I also beheld twelve others following him.
And it came to pass that they were carried away in
the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልአኩ በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለኝ፣
ተመልከት! እናም ተመልከትኩና፣ ሰማያት እንደገና
ሲከፈቱ ተመልከትኩ፣ መላዕክትም በሰው ልጆች ላይ
ሲወርዱ አየሁ፤ እነርሱንም አገለገሏቸው።

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me
again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the
heavens open again, and I saw angels descending
upon the children of men; and they did minister
unto them.

፴፩ እንደገናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ ተመልከት! እኔም
ተመልከትኩ፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔር በግ በሰው ልጆች
መካከል ሲሄድ ተመልከትኩ። ብዛት ያላቸው የታመሙ
እና በብዙ በሽታዎች፣ በእጋንንትና በርኩሳን መናፍሶት
የሚሰቃዩ ሰዎችንም ተመልከትኩ፣ መልአኩም እነዚህን
ሁሉ ነገሮች ለእኔ ተናገረም አሳየኝም። እነርሱም
በእግዚአብሔር በግ ኃይል ተፈወሱ፣ እናም እጋንንትና
ርኩሳን መናፍሶትም ወጥተዋል።

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I
looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth
among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes
of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with
all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean
spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these
things unto me. And they were healed by the power
of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean
spirits were cast out.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልአኩ በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሲል
ተናገረ—ተመልከት! እኔም የእግዚአብሔር በግ በሰዎች
ሲወሰድ ተመልከትኩ፣ አዎን፣ የዘለዓለማዊው
እግዚአብሔር ልጅ በዓለም ተፈረደበት፤ እኔም አየሁ፣
ምስክርም ሰጠሁ።

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me
again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the
Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea,
the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the
world; and I saw and bear record.

፴፫ እናም እኔ ኔፊ፣ ለዓለም ኃጢአት በመስቀል ላይ ሲሰቀልና ሲገደል ተመለከትኩ።

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

፴፬ እናም እርሱ ከተገደለ በኋላ የምድሪቱ ሰዎች የበጉን ሐዋርያት ለመዋጋት ሲሰበሰቡ ተመለከትኩ፣ ምክንያቱም እንደዚህ ነበር አሰራ ሁለቱ በጌታ መልእክ የተጠሩት።

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

፴፭ እናም ብዙ የምድሪቱ ሰዎች በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ፤ አባቴም እንዳየው ህንፃ አይነት ትልቅና ሰፊ ህንፃ ውስጥ እንደነበሩ ተመለከትኩ። እናም የጌታ መልእክ እንዲህ ሲል እንደገና ተናገረኝ፣ እነሆ ዓለምና በውስጧ ያለው ጥበብ፣ አዎን፣ እነሆ የእስራኤል ቤት የበጉን አሰራ ሁለት ሐዋርያት ለመዋጋት በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ።

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ትልቅና ሰፊው ህንፃ የዓለም ኩራት መሆኑን አየሁ፣ መሰከርኩም፤ ይህም ወደቀ፣ ውድቀቱም እጅግ ታላቅ ነበር። በድጋሚም የጌታ መልእክ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ አሰራ ሁለቱን የበጉን ሐዋርያት የሚዋጉ ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎችና ህዝቦች ሁሉ ውድቀት እንዲህ ይሆናል።

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልአኩ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ተመልከት፡ እነሆ ያንተን ዘሮች፡ ደግሞም የወንድሞችህን ዘሮች እይ። እኔም ተመልከትኩ የቃል ኪዳንን ምድር አየሁ፤ አዎን፡ ቁጥራቸው እንደባህር አሸዋ እንደሆነ ያህል ብዛት ያላቸውን ህዝቦች ተመልከትኩ።

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዛት ያላቸው ህዝቦች እርስ በእርስ ለመዋጋት በአንድነት ተሰባሰበው አየሁ፤ እናም በህዝቦቹ መካከል ጦርንና የጦር ወሬን፡ እና በጎራዴ ታላቅ የሆኑ ግድያዎችን አየሁ።

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በፀብና በጦርነት ሁኔታ ውስጥ በምድሪቱ ብዙ ትውልድ ሲያልፍ አየሁ፤ እናም፡ አዎን፡ ብዙ ያልቆጠርኳቸውን ከተማዎችን እንኳን ተመልከትኩ።

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ላይ የጨለማ ጭጋግን ተመልከትኩ፤ መብረቅንም አየሁ፤ የነጎድጓድንም ድምፅ፣ የመሬት መንቀጥቀጥና የተለያዩ አስቃቂ የሆኑ ድምፆችን ሁሉ ሰማሁ፤ ምድርና አለቶች ሲሰነጠቁም አየሁ፤ ተራሮች እየተሸረሩ ሲንከባለሉም አየሁ፤ ለጥ ያሉ የምድር ሜዳዎች ሲሰባበሩም አየሁ፤ የሰመጡ ብዙ ከተሞችም አየሁ፤ በአሳት የተቃጠሉ ብዙዎችንም አየሁ፤ በመሬት መንቀጥቀጥ ምክንያት የፈረሱ ብዙዎችንም አየሁ።

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ካየሁ በኋላ፡ የጨለማ ጭጋግ ከምድር ገፅ ሲጠፋ አየሁ፤ እናም እነሆ በጌታ ታላቅና አስፈሪ ፍርድ ምክንያት ያልጠፉ ብዙዎችን ተመልከትኩ።

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

፮ እናም ሰማያት ሲከፈቱና የእግዚአብሔር በግ ከሰማይ ሲወርድ አየሁ፤ እርሱም ወረደና እራሱን አሳያቸው።

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

፯ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስ በሌሎች አስራ ሁለት ላይ እንደወረደም ተመልከትኩም፤ እመስክራለሁም፤ እነርሱም በእግዚአብሔር የተሾሙና የተመረጡ ነበሩ።

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

፰ እናም መልአኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ—እነሆ የእንተን ዘር እንዲያገለግሉ የተመረጡትን አስራ ሁለቱን የበጉን ደቀመዛሙርት ተመልከት።

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

፱ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለኝ—የበጉን አስራ ሁለት ሐዋርያት ታስታውሳለህን? እነሆ የእስራኤል አስራ ሁለቱን ነገዶች የሚፈርዱት እነርሱ ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ እናንተ ከእስራኤል ቤት ናችሁና አስራ ሁለቱ የዘርህ አገልጋዮች በእነርሱ ይፈረዳሉ።

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

፲ እናም ያየህቸው እነዚህ አሰራራ ሁለቱ አገልጋዮች በዘርህ ላይ ይፈርዳሉ። እናም እነሆ ለዘለዓለም ዓድቃን ናቸው፤ በእግዚአብሔር በግ ባላቸው እምነት ምክንያት ልብሳቸው በደሙ ነፅቶአልና።

፲፩ መልአኩም አለኝ—ተመልከት! እኔም ተመልከትኩ፤ እናም እነሆ ሶስት ትውልዶች በፅድቅ ሲያልፉ ተመልከትኩ፤ ልብሳቸውም እንደ እግዚአብሔር በግ ነጭ ነበር። መልአኩም አለኝ—እነዚህ በአርሱ ባላቸው እምነት ምክንያት በበጉ ደም ነፅተዋል።

፲፪ እናም እኔ ኔሬ ደግሞ በፅድቅ ያለፉትን የአራት ትውልዶች ብዙዎችን ተመልከትኩ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የምድር ብዙዎች በአንድ ላይ ተሰብስበው አየሁ።

፲፬ መልአኩም እንዲህ አለኝ—ዘርህን፣ እንዲሁም ደግሞ የወንድሞችህን ዘርች ተመልከት።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነሆ የእኔ ዘር የሆኑትን በብዛት በወንድሞቼ ዘር ላይ በአንድ ላይ ተሰብስበው ተመልከትኩ፤ እናም እነርሱ በአንድ ላይ ለመዋጋት ተሰብስበው ነበር።

፲፮ መልአኩምም እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረኝ—እነሆ አባትህ ያየው መጥፎ ውሃ ምንጭ፣ አዎን፣ የተናገረው ወንዙ፤ የእዚህም ጥልቀት እንደ ሲኦል ጥልቅ ነው።

፲፯ ዐይኖችንም የሚያሳውሩና የሰው ልጆችን ልብ የሚያጠጥሩ፣ እና እንዲሰቱና እንዲጠፉ ወደ ሰፊው ጎዳና እነርሱን የሚመሩ የጨለማው ጭጋጋት የዲያብሎስ ፈተናዎች ናቸው።

፲፰ እናም አባትህ ያየው ትልቁና ሰፊው ህንፃ የሰው ልጆች ከንቱ ሀሳብና ኩራት ነው። እናም ትልቅ አሰፈሪ ገደል፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የዘለዓለማዊው አምላክ ፍትህ ቃል፣ መንፈስ ቅዱስ ከዓለም መጀመሪያ ጀምሮ እስከ አሁንና፣ ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ ለዘለአለም የሚመሰክርለት፣ የእግዚአብሔር በግ የሆነው መሲህ ይለያቸዋል።

፲፱ መልአኩም እነዚህን ቃላት ሲናገር፣ መልአኩ ይሆናሉ ብሎ እንደተናገረው የወንድሞቼ ዘር ከእኔ ዘር ጋር ሲቃረን አየሁ፤ በእኔ ዘር ኩራትና በዲያብሎስ ፈተናዎች ምክንያት የወንድሞቼ ዘር የእኔን ዘር ህዝቦች ሲያሸንፉ አየሁ።

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የእኔን ዘር ያሸነፉትን የወንድሞቼን ዘር ህዝቦች ተመለከትኩ፣ እየሁም፤ እነርሱም በምድር ላይ በብዛት ሆነው ሄዱ።

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

፳፩ እናም እነርሱ በብዛት በእንደ ላይ ተሰብሰበው ተመለከትኩ፤ በእነርሱም መካከል ጦርነትና የጦርነት ወሬዎችን ተመለከትኩ፤ በጦርነትና በጦርነት ወሬዎችም ብዙ ትውልዶች ሲያልፉ ተመለከትኩ።

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

፳፪ እናም መልአኩ እንዲህ አለኝ—እነርሱ እምነት በማጣት ይመነጥሉ።

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነሆ እነርሱ እምነት በማጣት ከመነመኑ በኋላ ስራፈትና በሁሉም አይነት ርኩሰቶች የተሞሉ፣ የጠቆሩና፣ አፀያፊና መጥፎ ሰዎች ሆኑ።

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

፩ ኔፊ ፲፭

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልእኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ— ተመልከት! እናም እኔ ብዙ ሀገሮችንና መንግሥታትን ተመልከትኩ።

፪ መልእኩም ምን አየህ? አለኝ፣ እናም ብዙ ሀገሮችና መንግሥታትን ተመልከትኩ አልኩት።

፫ እናም እርሱ እነዚህ የአህዛብ ሀገሮችና መንግሥታት ናቸው አለኝ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአሕዛብ ሀገሮች መካከል ትልቅ ቤተክርስቲያን ሲቋቋም አየሁ።

፭ መልእኩም አለኝ፣ ከሌሎች ቤተክርስቲያኖች ሁሉ በላይ የርኩስቱን ቤተክርስቲያን አመሰራረት ተመልከት፣ ይኸውም የእግዚአብሔርን ቅዱሳን የሚገድለውን፣ አዎን፣ ያሰራቸዋልም፣ ያሰቃያቸዋልም፣ በብረት ቀንበርም ይጠምዳቸዋል፣ በጎይልም ይማርካቸዋል።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህን ታላቋና የርኩስቱን ቤተክርስቲያን ተመልከትኩ፤ መሰራቹም ዲያብሎስ እንደሆነም አየሁ።

፯ ደግሞም ወርቅ፣ ብር፣ ሐርና፣ ቀይ ግምጃዎች እናም የተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታ፣ እንዲሁም ሁሉም አይነት የከበሩ ልብሶችን አየሁ፤ ብዙ ጋለሞታዎችንም አየሁ።

፰ መልእኩም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ—እነሆ ወርቁና፣ ብርና፣ ሐርና፣ ቀይ ግምጃዎችና፣ የተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታን፣ እንዲሁም የከበሩት ልብሶችና ጋለሞታዎች፣ የዚህ ታላቋና የርኩስት ቤተክርስቲያን ፍላጎቶች ናቸው።

፱ እናም ደግሞ ለዓለም ምሰጋና ሲሉ የእግዚአብሔርን ቅዱሳን ያጠፋሉ፣ ወደ ምርኮም ያመጧቸዋል።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነሆ ተመልከትኩና ብዙ ውኃዎችን አየሁ፤ እናም እነርሱም አህዛቦችን ከወንድሞቹ ዘር ያለያያሉ።

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልእኩ አለኝ፣ እነሆ የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ በወንድሞችህ ዘር ላይ ነው።

፲፪ እናም ከወንድሞቹ ዘር በብዙ ውሀዎች ተለይተው ከነበሩ አህዛብ መካከል አንድ ሰው አየሁና ተመልከትኩ፤ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ወርዶ በሰውየው ላይ ሲሰራም አየሁ፤ እናም የወንድሞቹ ዘር ወዳለበት ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር እንኳን በብዙ ውኃዎች ላይ ሄደ።

1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የእግዚአብሔርን መንፈስ በሌሎች አህዛቦች ላይ እንደሰራ ተመለከትኩ፤ እናም እነርሱ ከምርኮ ወጥተው በብዙ ውኃዎች ላይ ተጓዙ።

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከአህዛብ ብዙ ሰዎችን በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ላይ ተመለከትኩ፤ የእግዚአብሔርም ቁጣ በወንድሞቹ ዘር ላይ እንደነበረ ተመለከትኩ፤ እነርሱም በአህዛቦች ፊት የተበተኑ፤ እና የተመቱም ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

፲፭ እናም የጌታ መንፈስ በአህዛቦች ላይ እንደነበረ ተመለከትኩ፤ እነርሱም በለፀጉ፤ ምድሪቱንም ለርስታቸው ያዙ፤ እነርሱም የነጡና ልክ ከመገደላቸው በፊት እንደነበሩት እንደ ህዝቦቹ እጅግ ያማሩ እንደነበሩ ተመለከትኩ።

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔሬ ከምርኮ ወጥተው የሄዱት አህዛቦች በጌታ ፊት እራሳቸውን እንዳዋረዱ ተመለከትኩ፤ እናም የጌታ ኃይልም ከእነርሱ ጋር ነበር።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

፲፯ እናም የአህዛቦች እናት ሀርቶ በውኃዎቹ ላይ እንዲሁም ደግሞ በምድሩ ላይ ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት በአንድ ላይ ተሰብስበው እንደነበር አየሁ።

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

፲፰ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ከእነርሱ ጋር እንደነበር፤ ደግሞም የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ እነርሱን ለመዋጋት በአንድ ላይ በተሰበሰቡት ላይ ሁሉ እንደነበር ተመለከትኩ።

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

፲፱ እናም እኔ ኔሬ ከምርኮ የወጡት አህዛብ ከሌሎች ሀገሮች እጆች በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል የዳኑ እንደሆነ አየሁ።

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔሬ በምድሪቱ እነርሱ በልፅገው አየሁ፤ እናም መጽሐፍን አየሁ፤ በመካከላቸውም ይዘውት እየሄዱም ነበር።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

፳፩ እናም መልአኩ እንዲህ አለኝ—የመፅሐፉን ትርጉም ታውቃለህን?

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

፳፪ እናም አላውቀውም አልኩት።

And I said unto him: I know not.

፳፫ እርሱም አለ—እነሆ ይህ ከአይሁድ አፍ የወጣ ነው። እኔ ኔሬም ተመለከትኩ፤ እርሱም እንዲህ አለኝ—እንተ ያየኸው መፅሐፍ የአይሁዶች መዝገብ ነው፤ ይህም እርሱ ከእስራኤል ቤት ጋር ያደረገውን የጌታን ቃልኪዳኖች የያዘ ነው፤ እናም ደግሞ የቅዱሳን ነቢያትን ብዙ ትንቢቶች የያዘ ነው፤ ይህም ብዙ ትንቢቶች ካለመኖራቸው በስተቀር ልክ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ እንደተቀረፁት እይነት መዝገብ ነው፤ ሆኖም ጌታ ለእስራኤል ቤት የገባውን ቃልኪዳኖች ይዘዋል፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ ለአህዛብ ታላቅ ዋጋ አላቸው።

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

፳፬ የጌታ መልአክም አለኝ—ከአይሁድ እፍ የወጣውን መጻሕፍ ተመልክተህል፤ እናም ከአይሁድ እፍ በወጣ ጊዜ አሰራ ሁለቱ ሐዋርያት የመሰከሩለትን የጌታን ወንጌል ሙሉነት ይዟል፤ እነርሱም በእግዚአብሔር በግ ውስጥ ባለው እውነታ መሰረት መሰከሩ።

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

፳፭ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ነገሮች በእግዚአብሔር ውስጥ ባለው እውነታ መሰረት ከአይሁዶች ወደ አህዛብ በገፅህና ይተላለፋሉ።

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

፳፮ እናም ከአይሁዶች ወደ አህዛብ በአሰራ ሁለቱ የበጎ ሐዋርያት እጆች ከተላለፈ በኋላ ከሌሎች ሁሉ ቤተክርስቲያኖች በላይ የበለጠ የረከሰውን ታላቋና የርኩሰቱን ቤተክርስቲያን መመሰረት ተመልክተህል፤ እነሆም እነርሱ ከበጎ ወንጌል ግልፅና እጅግ የከበሩትን ብዙ ክፍሎች ወስደዋል፤ ደግሞም ብዙ የጌታን ቃል ኪዳኖች አጥፍተዋል።

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

፳፯ እናም ይህን ሁሉ ነገር ያደረጉት የጌታን መንገድ ያጣምሙ ዘንድ፣ የሰው ልጆች ዐይናቸውን ያሳውሩና፣ ልባቸውን ያጠጥሩ ዘንድ ነበር።

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

፳፰ ስለዚህ መጻሕፍ በታላቋና በርኩሰቱ ቤተክርስቲያን እጆች ውስጥ ካለፉ በኋላ የእግዚአብሔር በግ መጻሕፍ ከሆነው መጻሕፍ ውስጥ ብዙ ግልፅና የከበሩ ነገሮች መወሰዳቸውን ተመልክተህል።

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

፳፱ እናም እነዚህ ግልፅና የከበሩ ነገሮች ከተወሰዱ በኋላ ወደ አህዛቦች ሀገሮች ሁሉ ተወሰዷል፤ ለሁሉም የአህዛብ ሀገሮች፣ እዎን፣ እንዲሁም በብዙ ውኃዎች አቋርጠው ሲሄዱ እንተ ካየህቸው ከምርኮ ከወጡት ከአህዛብ ጋር ከተወሰደ በኋላ—ይኸውም በእግዚአብሔር በግ ውስጥ በሆነው ግልፅነት መሰረት ለሰው ልጆች ግንዛቤ ግልፅ የነበሩት ብዙ ግልፅና የከበሩ ነገሮች ከመጻሕፍ በመወሰዳቸው ምክንያት—ከበጎ ወንጌል እነዚህ ነገሮች በመወሰዳቸው ምክንያት እጅግ ታላቅ ብዙዎችም፣ እዎን፣ ስይጣንም እንኳን በእነርሱ ላይ ትልቅ ኃይል እስኪያገኝ ድረስ ተሰናከሉ።

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

፴ ሆኖም ከምርኮ የወጡትን አህዛብ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ከአባትህ ጋር ዘርቹ የርሰት ምድር ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ቃል ኪዳን የገባለት ምድር በሆነው፣ ከሌሎች ምድር ሁሉ በላይ በመረጠው የምድር ገፅ ላይ በእግዚአብሔር ሀይል ከሌሎች ሀገሮች ሁሉ በላይ ጠንካራ እንደተደረጉ ተመልክተሃል፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ከወንድሞችህ ዘርቹ ጋር የተቀላቀሉትን ያንተን ዘርቹ አህዛብ ፈፀሞ እንዲያጠፏቸው እንደማይፈቅድም አይተሀል።

፴፩ አህዛብም የወንድሞችህን ዘር እንዲያጠፉ እርሱ አይፈቅድም።

፴፪ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር አህዛብ፣ ይኸውም የነበሩበትን እንደተመለከትከው፣ ግልፅና እጅግ የከበረው የበጎ ወንጌል ክፍል ሲሰራ ባየኸው በርኩሰቱ ቤተክርስቲያን ወደኋላ በመያዛቸው ምክንያት፣ በዚያ አስቃቂ በሆነው እውርነት ለዘለዓለም እንዲቀሩም አይፈቅድም።

፴፫ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔር በግ አለ—የእስራኤልን ቤት ቅሪት በታላቅ ፍርድ በመጎብኘት ለአህዛብ ምህረትን አደርጋለሁ።

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ መልአክ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ—እነሆ የእግዚአብሔር በግ አለ፣ የእስራኤልን ቤት ቅሪት ከጎበኘኋቸው በኋላ፤ እናም እኔ የተናገርኩት ይህ ቅሪት የአባትህ ዘር ነው—ስለዚህ እነርሱንም በፍርድ ከጎበኘኋቸው በኋላና በአህዛብም እጅ ከመታኋቸው በኋላ፣ እንዲሁም ይበልጥ ግልፅና የከበሩ የበጎ ወንጌል ክፍሎችን የጋለሞታዎች እናት በሆነችው የርኩሰት ቤተክርስቲያን በመወሰዳቸው ምክንያት አህዛብ እጅግ ከተሰናከሉ በኋላ ይላል በጉ፤ በዚያን ቀን ለአህዛብ መሀሪ እሆናለሁ፣ በዚህም ለእነርሱ በእኔ ኃይል ግልፅና የከበረ የሚሆነውን ብዙውን ወንጌሉን ለእነርሱ አመጣለሁ ይላል በጉ።

፴፭ እነሆም በጉ አለ—እኔ ራሴን ለዘርቹህ አገልጻለሁ፣ እነርሱም የማሰተምረውን ግልፅና የከበሩ ነገሮች ይፀፋሉ፣ የእንተም ዘርቹ ከጠፉና እምነት በማጣት ከመነመኑ በኋላ፣ ደግሞም የወንድሞችህ ዘርቹ እምነት በማጣት ከመነመኑ በኋላ፣ እነሆ እነዚህ ነገሮች ለአህዛብ በበጎ ስጦታና ኃይል ይገለጡ ዘንድ ይደበቃሉ።

፴፮ እናም በጉ በእነዚህ ነገሮች ውስጥ የእኔ ወንጌልና፣ አለትና ደህንነት ይጻፋሉ አለ።

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

፴፯ በእዚያም ቀን የእኔን ፅዮን ለማምጣት የፈለጉት የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ እነርሱም የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይልና ሰጦታ ይኖራቸዋልና፤ እንዲሁም እስከ መጨረሻ የሚፀኑ ከሆነ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ ይደረጋሉ፤ በዘለአለማዊው የበጎ መንግሥት ውስጥ ይድናሉም፤ እናም ሰላምን የሚያወሩ፤ አዎን የመልካምንም ወሬ የምሰራች የሚናገሩ፤ በተራሮች ላይ እንዴት ያማሩ ይሆናሉ።

፴፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወንድሞቼ ዘር ቅሪት የሆኑትን እናም ደግሞ ከአይሁድ አንደበት የወጣው የእግዚአብሔር በግ መጽሐፍን፤ ይህም ለወንድሞቼ ዘር ቅሪት ከእህዛብ እንደመጣ ተመለከትኩ።

፴፱ እናም ይህም ለእነሱ ከመጣ በኋላ፤ እህዛብን፤ የወንድሞቼን ዘር ቅሪት፤ ደግሞም በምድር ገፅ ላይ የተበተኑት አይሁዶችን ሁሉ፤ የነቢያት መዝገቦችና የበጎ አሰራር ሁለት ሐዋርያት እውነት እንደሆኑ ለማሳመን በበጎ ኃይል ከእህዛብ ለእነሱ ሌሎች መጽሐፎች ሲመጡ አየሁ።

፵ እናም መልአኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ—ከእህዛቦች መካከል ያየህቸው እነዚህ የመጨረሻው መዝገቦች፤ ከበጎ አሰራር ሁለት ሐዋርያት የሆኑትን የመጀመሪያውን እውነት ያረጋግጣሉ፤ ከእነርሱ የተወሰዱትን ግልፅና የከበሩ ነገሮች እንዲታወቁም ያደርጋሉ፤ የእግዚአብሔርም በግ የዘለአለማዊው አባት ልጅና የአለም አዳኝ እንደሆነ፤ እንዲሁም ሁሉም ሰዎች ወደ እርሱ መምጣት እንዳለባቸው ወይም መዳን እንደማይችሉ ለሁሉም ነገዶች፤ ቋንቋዎችና ህዝቦች እንዲታወቁ ያደርጋሉ።

፵፩ እናም እነርሱ በበጎ በተመሰረቱት ቃላት መሰረት መምጣት አለባቸው፤ የበጎም ቃላት በአንተ ዘሮች መዝገቦች ውስጥ፤ እንዲሁም በአሰራሩ ሑሉቱ የበጎ ሐዋርያት መዝገቦች ውስጥ ይታወቃሉ፤ ስለዚህ ሁሉም በአንድነት ይመሰረታሉ፤ በምድር ላይ ሁሉ አንድ አምላክ እና አንድ እረኛ አለና።

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

እናም ለሁሉም ሀገር፣ ለእይሁዳኛና ደግሞ ለእስላም፣
እራሱን የሚገልጥበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፣ እርሱም እራሱን
ለእይሁዳኛና ደግሞ ለእስላም ከገለፀ በኋላ እራሱን
ለእስላምና ደግሞ ለእይሁዳኛ ይገልጻል፣ እንዲሁም
የኋለኞች ፊተኞች፣ ፊተኞችም ኋለኞች ይሆናሉ።

And the time cometh that he shall manifest him-
self unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also
unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested him-
self unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he
shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also
unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first
shall be last.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ የእግዚአብሔርን በግ የማስናከያውን ድንጋይ በመውሰድ እራሱን በቃል፣ ደግሞም በሀይል፣ እንዲሁም በሰራው፣ ለእነርሱ በሚገልፅበት ጊዜ እህዛብ እርሱን ካዳመጡ—

፪ እናም በአባትህ ዘርኝ መካከል እንዲቆጠሩ ዘንድ በእግዚአብሔር በግ ላይ ልባቸውን ካላጠጠሩ፣ አዎን፣ ከእስራኤልም ቤት መካከልም ይቆጠራሉ፤ እነርሱም በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ለዘለለም የተባረኩ ህዝቦች ይሆናሉ፤ ከዚህ ወዲያም ወደምርኮ አይመጡም፤ ከዚህም ወዲያ የእስራኤል ቤት ከሌሎች ህዝቦች ጋር አይደባለቁም።

፫ እናም በዲያብሎስና በልጆቹ በተቋቋመው በታላቋና በርኩሰቱ ቤተክርስቲያን የሰዎችን ነፍስ ወደ ሲኦል ይወስድበት ዘንድ የተቆፈረው ትልቁ ጉድጓድ—አዎን፣ ሰዎችን ለማጥፋት የተቆፈረው ታላቁ ጉድጓድ በፍጹም እንዲጠፋ ዘንድ በቆፈሩት ይሞላል ይላል የእግዚአብሔር በግ፤ መጨረሻ ወደሌለው ወደዚያ ሲኦል ካልጣላቸው በሰተቀር፣ የነፍስ መጥፋት አይደለም።

፬ እነሆም ይህ በዲያብሎስ ምርኮ፣ እናም ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ መሰረት በእርሱ ፊት ኃጢአትንና እርኩሰትን ባደረጉት ላይ ሁሉ ነው።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልአክ እንዲህ ብሎ ለእኔ ለኔፊ ተናገረኝ—አንተ እህዛብ ንስሀ ከገቡ መልካም እንደሚሆንላቸው አይተሀል፣ አንተም ደግሞ ጌታ የእስራኤልን ቤት በተመለከተ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ታውቃለህ፣ እናም ማንም ንስሀ የማይገባ መጥፋት እንዳለበት ሰምተሀል።

፮ ስለዚህ፣ በእግዚአብሔር በግ ላይ ልባቸውን ቢያጠጥሩ ለእህዛብ ወዩው።

፯ በአንድም መንገድ ይሁን በሌላ ዘለዓለማዊ በሚሆነው ስራ—እነርሱ ስላምና ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትን እንዲመርጡ፣ ወይም እነርሱን ልባቸው በማጣጠርና አዕምሮአቸው በማሳወር ወደ ምርኮ፣ እናም ደግሞ እኔ በተናገርኩት በዲያብሎስ ምርኮ መሰረት እነርሱን ወደጊዜያዊና መንፈሳዊ ጥፋት እንዲሰጡ በሚያደርገው ስራ፣ እኔ ታላቅና ድንቅ ስራን በሰው ልጆች መካከል የምሰራበት ጊዜው ይመጣል፣ ይላል የእግዚአብሔር በግ።

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልአኩ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ እንዲህ አለኝ፡- ኦብ ለእስራኤል ቤት የገባውን ቃልኪዳኖች ታሰታውሳለህን? እኔም አዎን አልኩት።

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፡ እንዲህ አለኝ—የኃጢአት እናትን፣ መስራቿ ዲያብሎስ የሆነውን ታላቋና የርኩሰት እናት የሆነችው የርኩሰት ቤተክርስቲያን ተመልከት።

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

፲ እርሱም እንዲህ አለኝ—እነሆ ሁለት ቤተክርስቲያናት ብቻ አሉ፤ አንዱ የእግዚአብሔር በግ ቤተክርስቲያን ናት፣ ሌላውም የዲያብሎስ ቤተክርስቲያን ናት፤ ስለዚህ ማንኛውም የእግዚአብሔር በግ ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ያልሆነ የርኩሰት እናት ከሆነችው የታላቋ ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ይሆናል፤ እናም እርሷ የምድር ሁሉ ጋለሞታ ነች።

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የምድርን ሁሉ ጋለሞታ አየሁና ተመለከትኩ፡ እርሷም በብዙ ውኃዎች ላይ ተቀምጣ ነበር፤ እናም እርሷ በሁሉም ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎችና ህዝቦች መካከል በምድር ላይ ሁሉ ትገዛለች።

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የእግዚአብሔር በግ ቤተክርስቲያንን ተመለከትኩ፡ እናም በብዙ ውኃዎች ላይ በተቀመጠችው ጋለሞታ ክፋትና ርኩሰቶች ምክንያት ቁጥሯ ጥቂት ነበሩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ የእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሳን የሆኑት የበጉ ቤተክርስቲያን አባላቶቿም ደግሞ በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ እንደነበሩ ተመለከትኩ፤ እናም በተመለከትኳት ትልቅ ጋለሞታ ክፋት ምክንያት በምድር ገፅ ላይ የሚገዙት ቦታዎች ትንሽ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ታላቁ የርኩሰት እናት ከእግዚአብሔር በግ ጋር ለመዋጋት በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ ከሁሉም የአህዛብ ሀገሮች መካከል ብዛትን በአንድ ላይ እንደሰበሰበች ተመለከትኩ።

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ በበጉ ቤተክርስቲያን ቅዱሳንና በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ በተበተኑት የጌታ የቃል ኪዳን ህዝቦች ላይ የእግዚአብሔር በግ ኃይል ሲወርድ ተመለከትኩ፤ እነርሱም ፅድቅንና የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል በታላቅ ክብር የታጠቁ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ በታላቋና በርኩሰት ቤተክርስቲያን ላይ ፈሰሶ በዚያም በምድር ባሉ ሀገሮችና ነገዶች ሁሉ መካከል ጦርነቶችና የጦርነት ወሬዎች እንደነበሩ ተመለከትኩ።

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

፲፮ እናም ጦርነቶችና የጦርነት ወሬዎች በሁሉም የርኩስት እናት በሆነችው በሚመሩት ሀገሮች መካከል ሲጀመር መልእኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ—እነሆ የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ በጋለሞታዎች እናት ላይ ነው፤ እናም እነሆ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ትመለከታለህ—

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

፲፱ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ በጋለሞታዎች እናት፣ በምድር ሁሉ ታላቋና በተረኮሰች በዲያብሎስ በተመሰረተች ቤተክርስቲያን ላይ የሚፈሰበት ቀን ሲመጣ፣ ከዚያም በእዚያ ቀን የእስራኤል ቤት ለሆኑት ለህዝቦቹ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳኖች ለማሟላት መንገድን በማዘጋጀት የአብ ስራ ይጀምራል።

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መልእኩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፡ ተመልከት!

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

፳፱ እናም ተመልከትኩና፣ አንድ ሰው አየሁ፣ እርሱም ነጭ ካባ ለብሶ ነበር።

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

፳፻ እናም መልእኩ አለኝ፡ እነሆ ከበጉ አስራ ሁለት ሐዋርያት አንዱ።

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

፷ እነሆ እርሱ ከእነዚህ ነገሮች ቀሪዎቹን ይመለከታል፣ እንዲሁም ይፅፋል፣ አዎን፣ ደግሞም ብዙ ነገሮችን ተመልክቶም ይፅፋል።

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

፷፩ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ ስለ ዓለም ፍፃሜ ይፅፋል።

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

፷፪ ስለዚህ እርሱ የሚፅፋቸው ነገሮች ትክክልና እውነት ናቸው፤ እናም እነሆ እነርሱ ከእይሁድ አፍ ሲወጡ በተመለከትካቸው መፅሐፍ ውስጥ የፃፉት ናቸው፣ ከእይሁድም አፍ በወጡበት ጊዜ ወይም መፅሐፍ በእይሁድ አፍ በወጡበት ጊዜ የተፃፉት ነገሮች ግልፅና የጠሩ እንዲሁም እጅግ የከበሩና ለሰዎች ሁሉ ለመረዳት ቀላል ነበሩ።

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

፷፫ እናም እነሆ ይህ የበጉ ሐዋርያ የሚፅፋቸው ነገሮች አንተ ያየህቸው ብዙ ነገሮች ናቸው፤ እነሆ ቀሪዎቹን አንተም ትመለከታለህ።

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

፷፬ ነገር ግን ከዚህ በኋላ የምታያቸውን ነገሮች እንዳትፅፍ፣ የእግዚአብሔር በግ ሐዋርያ የሆነው መፃፍ እንዳለበት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ሾሞታልና።

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

፷፭ እናም ደግሞ ለነበሩም ሌሎች ሁሉንም ነገሮች አሳይቶአቸዋል፣ እነርሱም ፅፈዎቻቸዋል፤ እንዲሁም በጉ ውስጥ ካሉት እውነታ መሰረት፣ ጌታ በፈቀደ ጊዜ ለእስራኤል ቤት በንፅህና ይመጡ ዘንድ ታትመዋል።

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

፳፯ እናም እኔ ኔፊ በመልአኩ ቃል መሰረት የበጉ ሐዋርያ ስም ዮሐንስ መሆኑን ስምቴአለሁም እመሰክራለሁም።

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

፳፰ እናም እነሆ እኔ ኔፊ፣ የተቀሩትን ያየሁአቸውንና የሰማሁአቸውን ነገሮች እንዳልፀፍ ተከልክዬአለሁ፣ ስለዚህ እኔ የፃፍኳቸው ነገሮች በቂ ናቸው፤ እናም እኔ ካየሁአቸው ጥቂት ነገሮች ብቻ ጽፌአለሁ።

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

፳፱ እኔም አባቴ ያያቸውን ነገሮች እንዳየሁ እመሰክራለሁ፣ እናም የጌታ መልአክ እንዳውቃቸው አደረገኝ።

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

፴ እሁንም እኔ በመንፈስ በተወሰድኩ ጊዜ ስላየኋቸው ነገሮች መናገሪን አቆማለሁ፤ እናም ምንም እንኳን ያየሁአቸው ነገሮች ሁሉ ባይፃፉም የፃፍኳቸው ነገሮች እውነት ናቸው፣ እናም ይህ ነው። አሜን።

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

፩ ኔፊ ፲፭

1 Nephi 15

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ በመንፈስ ከተወሰድኩና እነዚህን ሁሉ ነገሮች ካየሁ በኋላ ወደአባቴ ድንኳን ተመለስኩ።

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወንድሞቼን ተመለከትኩ፣ እነርሱም አባቴ ለእነርሱ የተናገራቸውን ነገሮች በተመለከተ እርስ በእርሳቸው እየተከራከሩ ነበር።

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

፫ ሰው ጌታን ካልጠየቀ በቀር ለመረዳት የሚያስቸግሩ ብዙ ታላቅ ነገሮችንም ነበር በእውነት ለእነርሱ ነግሯቸዋል፤ እነርሱ በልቦቻቸው መጠጠር የተነሳ ማድረግ እንደነበረባቸው ወደጌታ አልተመለከቱም።

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

፬ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ በልባቸው ጠጣርነት፣ ደግሞም ባየሁአቸው ነገሮች ምክንያትና በሰዎች ልጆች ታላቅ ኃጢያት ምክንያት ሊወገዱ በማይችሉ መምጣት እንዳለባቸው ስላወቅሁ አጅግ አዘንኩ።

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በራሴ ሀዘን ምክንያት ተሸነፍኩ፣ ምክንያቱም ውድቀታቸው እንዴት እንደሚሆን ስለተመለከትኩ፣ በህዝቤ ጥፋት ምክንያት የእኔ ሀዘን ከማንኛውም በላይ ታላቅ እንደነበር ተሰማኝ።

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጥንካሬን ካገኘሁ በኋላ ወንድሞቼን የክርክራቸው ምክንያት ምን እንደነበር ለማወቅ ተናገርኳቸው።

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

፯ እናም እነሆ የተፈጥሮ ወይራ ዛፍን ቅርንጫፎችና፣ ደግሞም አህዛብን በተመለከተ አባታችን የተናገራቸውን ነገሮች ለመረዳት እንችልም አሉ።

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

፰ እናም እንዲህ አልኳቸው፣ እናንተ ጌታን ጠይቃችኋልን?

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

፱ እናም እንዲህ አሉኝ—አልጠየቅንም፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ አኛን እንዲህ ያሉ ነገሮችን አያሳውቅንም።

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

፲ እነሆ እነርሱን አልኳቸው—እንዴት ነው እናንተ የጌታን ትዕዛዝ የማትጠብቁት? እንዴት ነው በልባችሁ ጠጣርነት የተነሳ የምትጠፉት?

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

፲፩ ጌታ የተናገራቸውን ነገሮች አታስታውሱምን? —ልባችሁን ባታጠጥሩ እናም መልስ እንደምታገኙም በማመን ትዕዛዛቴን ለመጠበቅ በመትጋት በእምነት ብትጠይቁኝ፣ በእርግጥ እነዚህ ነገሮች ለእናንተ ግልፅ ይሆናሉ።

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

፲፪ እነሆ እላችኋለሁ የእስራኤል ቤት ከወይራው ዛፍ ጋር የተመሳሰለው በአባታችን ውስጥ በነበረው በጌታ መንፈስ ነበር፤ እናም እነሆ እኛ ከእስራኤል ቤት የተሰበረን አይደለንም? ደግሞ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅርንጫፎች አይደለንም?

፲፫ እናም አሁን በአህዛብ ሙሉት የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎች መጣበቅ በተመለከተ አባታችን የተናገረው ነገር በኋለኛው ቀናት ዘርቻችን እምነት በማጣት ሲመነምኑ፣ አዎን፣ ለብዙ ዓመታት፣ እንዲሁም መሲሁ ለሰዎች ልጆች እራሱን ከገለፀ ከብዙ ትውልዶች በኋላ፣ ከዚያም የመሲህ ወንጌል ሙሉነት ለአህዛብ፣ ከአህዛብም ወደ ዘርቻችን ቅሪት ይመጣል—

፲፬ እናም በዚያ ቀን የዘርቻችን ቅሪት ከእስራኤል ቤት መሆናቸውን፣ እነርሱም የጌታ የቃል ኪዳን ህዝቦች መሆናቸውን ያውቃሉ፤ ከዚያም እነርሱ ቅድመ አባቶቻቸው ወደማወቅ፣ ደግሞም በእርሱ አባቶቻቸው የተማሩትን የመድኃኒታቸውን ወንጌል ያውቃሉም፣ ለእውቀትም ይደርሳሉ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ ወደ መድኃኒታቸው እውቀትና፣ ወደእርሱ እንዴት እንደሚመጡና እንደሚድኑ ያውቁ ዘንድ ወደ ትምህርቱ እያንዳንዱ ነጠቦች በእውቀትም ይደርሳሉ።

፲፭ በዚያም ቀን አይደሰቱምን እና አለታቸውና አዳኛቸው ለሆነው ለዘላለማዊው አምላክ ምስጋናን እያቀርቡም? አዎን፣ በዚያ ቀን እነርሱ ከእውነተኛው ወይን ጥንካሬንና ጥቅም እያገኙም? አዎን፣ ወደ እውነተኛው የእግዚአብሔር በረት አይመጡምን?

፲፮ እነሆ እላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ እነርሱ በድጋሚ በእስራኤል ቤት መካከል ይታወሳሉ፤ ምክንያቱም የወይራ ዛፍ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎች በመሆናቸው ከእውነተኛው የወይራ ዛፍ ጋር ይጣበቃሉ።

፲፯ አባታችንም ይህን ማለቱ ነው፤ እንዲሁም በአህዛብ እስከሚበተኑም ድረስ አይሆንም ማለቱ ነው፤ እና ማለቱም ጌታ ለአህዛብ ኃይሉን ያሳያቸው ዘንድ፣ ይህም በአህዛቦች አማካኝነት ይመጣል፣ ምክንያቱም በአይሁዶች ወይም እስራኤል ቤት ተቀባይነት አያገኝምና።

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

፲፰ ስለዚህ አባታችን ስለ እኛ ዘር ብቻ ሳይሆን ነገር ግን ስለ እስራኤል ቤት ሁሉ ተናገሯል፣ በኋለኛው ቀን የሚፈጸመውን ቃል ኪዳን አመልክቷል፤ ይኸውም ጌታ ለአባታችን አብርሃም እንዲህ በማለት የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ነው። በዘርህ የምድር ወገኖች ሁሉ ይባረካሉ።

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፌ ለእነርሱ እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ብዙ ተናገርኩ፤ አዎን፣ በኋለኛው ቀን ስለእይሁዶች በዳግም መመለስን በሚመለከትም ለእነርሱ ተናገርኩ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

፳ እናም ለእነርሱ ስለ እይሁዶች ወይም ስለ እስራኤል ቤት መመለስ ኢሳይያስ የተናገረውን ቃል፣ እንዲሁም እነርሱ ከተመለሱ በኋላ ከሌሎች ህዝቦች ጋር እንደማይቀላቀሉ፣ በድጋሚያም እንደማይበተኑ አስረዳኳቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለወንድሞቼ እንዲረጋገጡና በጌታ ፊት እራሳቸውን ትሁት እንዲያደርጉ ብዙ ቃል ነገርኳቸው።

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚያም እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩኝ— አባታችን በህልሙ ያየው ይህ ነገር ምን ማለት ነው? እርሱ ያየው ዛፍ ስ ምን ማለት ነው?

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

፳፪ እናም አልኳቸው—እሱ የህይወት ዛፍ ምልክት ነበር።

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ አሉኝ—ወደዛፉ የሚመራን አባታችን ያየው የብረት በትር ምን ማለት ነው?

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

፳፬ ይህም የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ነበር አልኳቸው፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል የሚሰሙ ሁሉና፣ እርሱን አጥብቆ የያዘ በፍፁም እይጠፋም፤ ፈተናዎችና የጠላት ክፉ ፍላግ እነርሱን ወደጥፋት ለመውሰድ በማሳወር ሊያሸንፏቸው አይችሉም።

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

፳፭ ስለዚህ እኔ ኔፌ የጌታን ቃል በጥብቅ እንዲያዳምጡ አበረታታኳቸው፤ አዎን፣ በውስጤ ባለው ኃይል ሁሉ እናም ባለኝ ችሎታ ሁሉ የጌታን ቃል በጥብቅ ያዳምጡ ዘንድ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ነገሮች ሁል ጊዜ ትዕዛዛቱን በመጠበቅ እንዲያስታውሱት መከርኳቸው።

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

፳፮ እናም ተናገሩኝ—አባታችን የተመለከተው የወንዙ ውሃ ምን ማለት ነው?

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

፳፯ እናም አባቴ ያየው ውኃ ርኩሱን ነገር ነበር አልኳቸው፤ እእምሮውም ሌሎች ነገሮችን በማሰብ የተሞላ ስለነበር የውሀውን ርኩሱን ልብ አላለውም ነበር።

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

፳፰ እናም ኃጢአተኞችን ከህይወት ዛፍ፣ እናም ደግሞ ከእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሳን የሚለያይ አስቃቂ ገደል ነበር አልኳቸው።

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

፳፱ እናም ይህ የአስቃቂው ሲኦል ምልክት ነበር፣ እርሱም መልአኩ እንደነገረኝ ለኃጢአተኞች የተዘጋጀ ነበር አልኳቸው።

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

፴ እናም አባታችን የእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ ደግሞ ኃጢአተኞችን ከፃድቃን እንደሚለይ እንዳየ፣ ድምቀቱም በመቀጠል ለዘለዓለም ወደ እግዚአብሔር እንደሚመጣና መጨረሻ እንደሌለው ልክ እንደነበረው አሳት ደምቆ እንደነበር ነገርኳቸው።

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

፴፩ እናም እነርሱ ለእኔ አሉኝ—ይህ ነገር በምድር የሙከራ ጊዜያችን በሚች የሰውነታችን ሰቃይ ማለት ነው፣ ወይስ ይህ ከጊዜያቸው ሰውነት ሞተ በኋላ የመጨረሻው የነፍስ ሁኔታ ማለት ነው፣ ወይስ የሚናገረው ነገር ጊዜያቸው ስለሆኑት ነገሮች ነው?

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንዲህ አልኳቸው—ይህ ለጊዜያዊና ለመንፈሳዊ ነገሮች ምልክት ነበር፣ በሰራዎቻቸው አዎን፣ እንዲሁም በሙከራ ጊዜያቸው በሚች ሰውነታቸው በተደረጉት ሰራዎች፣ ሊፈረድባቸው ይገባል።

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

፴፫ ስለዚህ በኃጢአታቸው የሚሞቱ ከሆኑ፣ ከፅድቅነት ጋር ከተገናኙ መንፈሳዊ ነገሮች መገለል ደግሞ ይገባቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ በሰራቸው እንዲፈረድባቸውም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ለመቆም መምጣት አለባቸው፤ እናም ሰራቸው የረከሰ ከሆነ እነርሱም የረከሱ መሆን አለባቸው፤ የረከሱ ከሆኑም ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ውስጥ መኖር አይችሉም፤ እንዲህም ከሆነ፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ደግሞ የረከሰ መሆን አለበት።

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

፴፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ አላችኋለሁ የእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት የረከሰ አይደለም፣ እናም ማንኛውም እርኩስ ነገር ወደ እግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ሊገባ አይችልም፤ ስለዚህ ርካሽ ለሆነው የተዘጋጀ የረከሰ ቦታ ሊኖር ይገባዋል።

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

፴፭ እናም የተዘጋጀ ቦታ፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የተናገርኩት አስቃቂው ገሀነም አለ፣ የዚህም አዘጋጅም ዲያብሎስ ነው፤ ስለዚህ የሰዎች ነፍሶች የመጨረሻ ሁኔታ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ውስጥ መኖር፣ ወይም በተናገርኩት ፍትህ ምክንያት ወደውጭ መጣል ነው።

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

ሰለዚህ ኃጢአተኞች ከፃድቃን ጋር እናም ደግሞ ፍሬው
እጅግ ያማረና ከሌሎች ፍሬዎች በላይ እጅግ ተፈላጊ
ከሆነው የህይወት ዛፍ ይለያሉ፤ አዎን፣ ይህ
ከእግዚአብሔር ሰጦታዎች ሁሉ የበለጠ ነው።
እንደዚህም ነበር ለወንድሞቼ የተናገርኩት። አሜን።

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the right-
eous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is
most precious and most desirable above all other
fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God.
And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

፩ ኔፊ ፲፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ወንድሞቼን ማነጋገር ከጨረሰኩኝ በኋላ፣ እነሆ እነርሱ አንተ እኛ ልንጸናው ከምንችለው የበለጠ አስቸጋሪ ነገሮችን ነገርከን አሉኝ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እውነትን በተመለከተ ለጎጠኝነቶች የተናገርኳቸው ነገሮች አስቸጋሪ እንደሆኑ አውቃለሁ አልኩ፤ እናም ፃድቃን ከጥፋት ነፃ መሆናቸውን ተናገርኩ፣ በመጨረሻውም ቀን ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ከፍ እንደሚደረጉም መሰከርኩ፤ ስለዚህ ጥፋተኞች እውነትን ከባድም አድርገው ይወሰዱታል፣ ከመሀከላቸው ይለያቸዋል።

፫ እናም ወንድሞቼ፣ አሁን እናንተ ፃድቃን እንዲሁም እውነትን ለማዳመጥ ፈቃደኞች ብትሆኑ ኖሮ፣ በእግዚአብሔርም ፊት በቅንነት ትራመዱ ዘንድ በጥብቅ ከተከተላችሁት፣ በእውነት ምክንያት አታጉረመርሙም፣ ከባድ ነገሮችን በእኛ ላይ ትናገራለህ አትሉም።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ ወንድሞቼ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት እንዲጠብቁ በሙሉ ትጋት አበረታታኋቸው።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ እነርሱ በፅድቅ ጎዳና ይራመዱ ዘንድ ደስታና ታላቅ ተስፋ እስኪኖረኝ ድረስ በጌታ ፊት አራሳቸውን ዝቅ አደረጉ።

፮ አሁን እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ የተባሉትና የተደረጉት አባቴ ልሙኤል ብሎ በጠራው ሸለቆ በድንኳን በነበረበት ጊዜ ነው።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ ከእስማኤል ሴቶች ልጆች አንዷን ለማግባት ወሰድኳት፤ እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቼ የእስማኤልን ሴቶች ልጆች ለማግባት ወሰዱ፤ ደግሞም ዞራም የእስማኤልን ትልቁን ሴት ልጅ ለማግባት ወሰደ።

፰ አባቴም የተሰጡትን የጌታን ትዕዛዛት በሙሉ ፈፀመ። እናም ደግሞ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ በጌታ እጅግ ተባረክሁ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ ድምፅ አባቴን በምሽት ተናገረው፣ እናም በማግሰቱ ወደ ምድረበዳው መጓዝ እንዳለበት አዘዘው።

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ በጠዋት ተነሳ፤ እናም ወደ ድንኳኑ በር ሄደ፤ በመሬቱ ላይ በጥበብ የተሰራውን ክብ ኳስ በአድናቆት ተመለከተ፤ ይህም የተሰራው ከንጹህ ነሐስ ነበር። በኳሱም ላይ ሁለት እንዘርቶች ነበሩ፤ እናም እንደኛው በምድረበዳ ውስጥ መሄድ ያለብንን አቅጣጫ ይጠቁማል።

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ምድረበዳ መሸከም የሚያስፈልገንና ማንኛውንም ነገሮች፣ እናም ጌታ የሰጠንን ቀሪ ቀለብ ሁሉ በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰብን፤ እንዲሁም ከሁሉም ዓይነት ዘርች ወደ ምድረበዳው መሸከም የምንችለውን ወሰድን።

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ድንኳናችንን ይዘን የላማንን ወንዝ በማቋረጥ ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄድን።

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለአራት ቀን በሰተደቡብ በደቡብ-ምስራቅ አቅጣጫ ተጓዝን፤ እናም እንደገና ድንኳናችንን ተከልን፤ ቦታውንም ሻዘር ብለን ጠራነው።

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለቤተሰቦቻችን ምግብ የዱር እንሰሳቶችን ለማደን ቀስቶቻችንንና ደጋኖቻችንን ወሰደን ወደ ምድረበዳ ተጓዝን፤ ለቤተሰቦቻችንም ምግብ ካደንን በኋላ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በድጋሚ ወደቤተሰቦቻችን ሻዘር ወደሚባለው ቦታ ተመለስን። እናም በድጋሚ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ያንኑ አቅጣጫ በመከተል በምድረበዳው ይበልጥ ለም በሆነው በቀይ ባህር ዳርቻ አጠገብ ተጓዝን።

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ቀናት ለምግብ የዱር አውሬዎችን በቀስቶቻችንና፣ በደጋኖቻችንና፣ በድንጋይ እንዲሁም በወንጭፋችን በመግደል ተጓዝን።

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

፲፮ እናም የኳሱን አቅጣጫ ተከተልን፤ እርሱም በምድረበዳ ይበልጥ ለም ወደሆነው ሰፍራዎች የሚመራን ነበር።

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

፲፯ እናም ለብዙ ቀናት ከተጓዝን በኋላ፣ እራሳችንን ለማሳረፍና ለቤተሰቦቻችንም ምግብ ማግኘት እንድንችል ለጊዜው ድንኳናቸንን ተከልን።

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ ምግብ ለማደን ሰሄድ፤ እነሆ፣ ከንጹህ ብረት የተሰራውን ደጋኔን ሰበርኩ፤ እናም ደጋኔን ከሰበርኩ በኋላ፣ ምግብ ስላላገኘን እነሆ ደጋኔን በመሰበሬ ወንድሞቼ በእኔ ተናድደው ነበር።

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ያለምንም ምግብ ወደቤተሰቦቻችን ተመለሰን፣ እናም በጉዞአቸው ምክንያት በጣም ደክሟቸው፣ በምግብ ፍላጎት ምክንያት የበለጠም ተሰቃዩ።

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ላማንና ልሙኤል እንዲሁም የእስማኤል ወንዶች ልጆች በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በሰቃያቸውና በመከራቸው ምክንያት እጅግ ማጉረምረም ጀመሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ አባቴ በጌታ አምላኩ ላይ ማጉረምረም ጀመረ፤ አዎን ሁሉም እጅግ አዝነው ነበር፤ በጌታም ላይ እንኳን አጉረምርመው ነበር።

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

፳፩ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ቀስቴን በማጣቴ ከወንድሞቼ ጋር ተሰቃየሁ፣ እናም ቀስታዎቻቸውም መለጠጥ ባለመቻላቸው እጅግ አስቸጋሪ፣ አዎን ምግብ ማግኘት እስከማይቻለን ድረስም ሆነ።

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ እነርሱ በጌታ አምላካቸው ላይ በማጉረምረም እንኳን ልባቸውን እንደገና በማጠጠራቸው ምክንያት፣ ወንድሞቼን ብዙ ተናገርኳቸው።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ከእንጨት ቀስት እናም ቀጥ ካለ ዱላ ደጋንን ሰራሁ፣ ሰለዚህ በቀስትና ደጋን፣ በወንጭፍና በድንጋይ ታጠቅሁ። አባቴንም ምግብ ለማግኘት ወዴት ለሂድ? አልኩት።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ በእኔ ቃላት ምክንያት እራሳቸውን ትሁት በማድረግ፣ ጌታን ጠየቁ፤ እኔም ብዙ ነገሮችን በነፍሴ ኃይል ሁሉ ተናገራለቸው ነበርና።

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ የጌታ ድምፅ ወደአባቴ መጣ፤ እናም እርሱ በጌታ ላይ በማጉረምረሙ በእውነት ተገሰፀ፣ ሰለዚህም እጅግ ሀዘን ተሰማው።

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ የጌታ ድምፅ፣ ወደኳሱ ተመልከት፣ እናም የተፃፉትን ነገሮች አስተውል አለው።

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ አባቴ በኳሱ ላይ የተፃፉትን ነገሮች ሲያስተውል እርሱ፣ እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቼና የእስማኤል ወንዶች ልጆች እንዲሁም ሚስቶቻችን፣ እጅግ ፈሩና ተንቀጠቀጡ።

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ በኳሱ ላይ ያሉት አመልካቾች የሚሰሩት፣ ለእነርሱ በምንሰጣቸው እምነት፣ እናም ትጋትና፣ ትኩረት እንደሆነ ተመልከትኩ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

፳፱ እናም ደግሞ በእነርሱ ላይ ለማንበብ ግልፅ የነበሩ፤ የጌታን መንገድ በተመለከተም ግንዛቤን የሚሰጡ አዲስ ፅሁፎች ተፀፎ ነበር፤ ለእነርሱም በምንሰጠው እምነትና ትጋት መሰረት ከጊዜ ወደ ጊዜ ይጻፋልም ይለወጣልም። በዚህም እኛ በቀላል ዘዴ ጌታ ትላልቅ ነገሮችን ለማምጣት እንደሚችል እናያለን።

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ በኳሱ ላይ በተሰጠው እቅጣጫ መሰረት፣ ወደተራራው ጫፍ ሄድኩ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የዱር እንስሳትን በመግደል ለቤተሰቦቻችን ምግብ አገኘሁ።

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, in-somuch that I did obtain food for our families.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ወደ ድንኳናችን የገደልኳቸውን እንስሳት ተሸክሜ ተመለሰኩ፤ እናም አሁን እነርሱ ምግብ ማግኘትን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ደስታቸው ምን ያህል ነበር! እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እነርሱ በጌታ ፊት እራሳቸውን ዝቅ አደረጉና ምስጋናን ለእርሱ አቀረቡ።

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እንደገና ተጓዝን፣ በመጀመሪያ እንደተጓዝነው በዚያው እቅጣጫ እቅራቢያ ተጓዝን፤ እናም ለአጭር ጊዜ ቆይታ እናደርግ ዘንድ ለብዙ ቀናት ከተጓዝን በኋላ እንደገና ድንኳናችንን ተከልን።

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እስማኤል ሞተ፤ እናም ናሆም ተብሎ በሚጠራው ቦታ ተቀበረ።

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ የእስማኤል ሴት ልጆች አባታቸውን በማጣታቸውና በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በመሰቃታቸው የተነሳ እጅግ አዘኑ፤ እናም ከኢየሩሳሌም እንዲወጡ ስለደረገ በአባቴ ላይ አጉረመረሙ፣ እንዲህም አሉ— አባታችን ሞቷል፤ አዎን፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ብዙ ተንከራተትን፣ እንዲሁም በብዙ መከራ፣ ረሃብ፣ ጥማትና ድካም ተሰቃየን፤ ከእነዚህ ሁሉ ሰቃዮች በኋላም በረሃብ የተነሳ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ እንጠፋለን።

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

፴፮ እናም እነርሱ በአባቴ ላይና ደግሞ በእኔ ላይ አጉረመረሙ፣ ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም እንደገና ለመመለስም ፈለጉ።

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

፴፯ እናም ላማን ለልሙኤል ደግሞም ለእስማኤል ወንዶች ልጆች እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ እነሆ አባታችንን፣ እናም ደግሞ እራሱን በእኛ በታላላቅ ወንድሞቹ ላይ ገዢ እንዲሁም አስተማሪ ያደረገውን ወንድማችን ኔፊን እንግደላቸው።

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

፴፰ አሁን ኔሬ ጌታ ከእርሱ ጋር መነጋገሩን እናም ደግሞ መላዕክቶች እንደገቡትና እንደሰተማሩት ተናግሯል። ነገር ግን እነሆ እርሱ እንደዋሸን እናውቃለን፤ እነዚህንም ነገሮች የሚነገረንና፣ በብልህ ዘዴዎቹ ብዙ ነገሮችን ያደረገው፣ እኛንም እንዲያሞኘን ዘንድ፣ ምናልባትም እኛን እንግዳ ወደ ሆነው ምድረበዳ ሊመራን እንዲችል በማሰብ ነው፤ እናም በእኛ ላይ ማንኛውንም በፍላጎቱና በሚያስደስተው መሰረት ያደርግ ዘንድ እኛን ከወሰደ በኋላ በእኛ ላይ እራሱን ንጉሱና ገዢ ለማድረግ አስቦአል። በዚህም መንገድ ወንድሜ ላማን በእነርሱ ልብ ቁጣን አነሳሳ።

፴፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ጌታ ከእኛ ጋር ነበር፤ አዎን የጌታ ድምፅ መጣ፣ ብዙ ቃላትም ተናገራቸው፣ እናም በብርቱ ገሰፃቸው፤ በጌታም ድምፅ ከተገሰፁ በኋላ ቁጣቸውን አቆሙና፣ ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሀ ገቡ፣ በዚህም ጌታ እንደገና ምግብ ማግኘት እንድንችል ባረከን፣ ስለዚህ አልጠፋንም።

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደገና በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ጉዟችንን እደረግን፤ እናም ከዚያ ጊዜ በኋላ ወደ ምስራቅ አቅጣጫ ተጓዝን። በምድረበዳው ውስጥም በብዙ ሰቃይ ተገፋን፤ ሴቶቻችንም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ልጆችን ወለዱ።

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

፪ እናም የጌታ በረከት በእኛ ላይ ታላቅ ሰላነበር በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ለመኖር ስንል ጥሬ ስጋ ብንበላም ሴቶቻችን ልጆቻቸውን በበቂ ሁኔታ አጠቡአቸው፤ እነርሱም ጠንካራ አዎን፤ ልክ እንደወንዶችም ነበሩ፤ ካለምንም ማጉረምረም ጉዞአቸውን መታገስ ጀመሩ።

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

፫ በዚህም የእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት መፈፀም እንዳለባቸው ተመለከትን። እናም የሰዎች ልጆች የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ ከጠበቁ እርሱ ይመግባቸዋል፤ ያበረታታቸዋልም፤ እንዲሁም እርሱ ያዘዛቸውን ነገር መፈፀም የሚችሉበትን ዘዴ ያቀርብላቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ እኛ በምድረበዳ በተቀመጥን ጊዜ እርሱ የሚያሰፈልገንን ነገሮች አቀረበልን።

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

፬ እናም እኛ ለብዙ አመታት፣ አዎን፣ ለሰምንት ዓመታትም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ተቀመጥን።

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

፭ እናም በበርካታ ፍራፍሬዎቹና በዲር ማሩ ምክንያት ለጋስ ብለን ወደጠራነው ምድር መጣን፤ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በጌታ የተዘጋጁልን እንዳንጠፋ ነበሩ። እናም ባህርን ተመለከትን፤ ኢሬክንቱም ብለን ጠራነው፤ ትርጓሜውም ብዙ ውኃዎች ማለት ነው።

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በባህሩ ዳርቻ ድንኳኖቻችንን ተከልን፤ እናም በብዙ መከራና ችግሮች ብንሰቃይም፣ አዎን፣ ብዙ ሆነው ሁሉንም እንኳን መፃፍ ባንችልም፣ ወደ ባህሩ ዳርቻ ስንመጣ እጅግ ደስተኞች ነበርን፤ እናም በብዙ ፍሬዎቹ ምክንያት ቦታውን ለጋስ ብለን ጠራነው።

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ፣ በለጋሱ ምድር ለብዙ ቀናት ከቆየሁ በኋላ የጌታ ድምፅ ወደእኔ መጥቶ እንዲህ አለኝ—ተነስ እናም ወደ ተራራው ውጣ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ተነስኼ ወደ ተራራው ወጣሁ፤ እናም ወደጌታ ጮህኩ።

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ— ህዝብህን በዚህ ውኃ ላይ አሻግረው ዘንድ እኔ በማሳይህ ቅርፅና ዘዴ መርከብ ስራ።

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

፱ እናም አልኩ—ጌታ ሆይ፣ መርከቡን አንተ ባሳየኸኝ ቅርፅና ዘዴ ለመሰራት መሳሪያዎችን እሰራበት እንድትል ዘንድ የማቀልጠው የብረት አፈር ለማግኘት ወዴት ልሂድ?

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መሳሪያዎችን እሰራበት ዘንድ የብረት አፈሩን ለማግኘት ወዴት መሄድ እንዳለብኝ ጌታ ነገረኝ።

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ እሳት ለማቀጣጠል ከዱር እንሰሳት ቆዳ ወናፍ ሰራሁ፤ እናም እሳቱን ለማቀጣጠል የምትልበት ወናፍን ከሰራሁ በኋላ፣ እሳት አገኝ ዘንድ ሁለት ድንጋዮችን በአንድ ላይ አጋጩሁ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

፲፪ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በምንጓዝበት ከዚህ ጊዜ በፊት ጌታ ይህንን ያህል እሳት እንድናቀጣጥል አልፈቀደም ነበር፤ እንዲህም አለ—ምግባችሁን እኔ ስለማጣፍጥላችሁ ይህን ማብሰል እያሰፈልጋችሁም፤

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

፲፫ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ እኔ ብርሃን አሆናችኋለሁ፤ እናም ትዕዛዛቴን ከጠበቃችሁ መንገዱን በፊታችሁ አዘጋጅላችኋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ትዕዛዛቴን እሰከጠበቃችሁ ድረስ ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ትመራላችሁ፤ እናም የተመራችሁት በእኔ እንደሆነም ታውቃላችሁ።

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

፲፬ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ጌታ እንዲህ አለ—ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ከደረሳችሁ በኋላ፣ እኔ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር መሆኔን ታውቃላችሁ፤ እናም እኔ ጌታ ከጥፋት አዳንኳችሁ፤ አዎን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድርም አወጣኋችሁ።

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

፲፭ ስለዚህ እኔ ኔፊ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ተጋሁ፣ እናም ወንድሞቼን ታማኝና ትጉ እንዲሆኑ አበረታታኋቸው።

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከድንጋይ ባቀለጥኩት የብረት አፈር መሳሪያዎችን ሰራሁ።

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

፲፯ እናም ወንድሞቼ መርከብ ለመሰራት ዕቅዴን ባዩ ጊዜ በእኔ ላይ እንዲህ ብለው ማጉረምረም ጀመሩ፣ ወንድማችን ሞኝ ነው፣ መርከብ ለመሰራት ያሰባልና፤ አዎን እናም ደግሞ ይህንን ታላቅ ውሃዎች ማቋረጥ ይችላል ብሎ ያሰባል።

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

፲፰ እናም ወንድሞቼ በእኔ ላይ ተማረሩ፣ እናም ለመሰራት አልፈለጉም ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም እኔ መርከብ መሰራት በመቻሌ እምነት አልነበራቸውም፤ እናም በጌታ ታዘዘኩ እንደነበርኩም አላመኑም ነበርና።

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

፲፱ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ በልባቸው ጠጣርነት ምክንያት እጅግ አዝኜ ነበር፤ እናም አሁን ማዘኔን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በልባቸው ደስተኞች ነበሩ፤ እንዲህም ሲሉ በእኔ ላይ ተሳለቁ፤ መርከብ መሰራት እንደማትችል እናውቃለን፤ ምክንያቱም ሚዛናዊነት እንደሌለህ እናውቃለን፤ ስለዚህ አንተ እንደዚህ ያለ ታላቅ ሰራ ለማከናወን አትችልም።

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

፳ እና አንተ ልክ በከንቱ የልቡ ሀሳብ እንደተሳሳተ እንደ አባታችን ነህ፤ አዎን፤ እርሱ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር መርቶ አስወጣን፤ እናም በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ለእነዚህ በርካታ ዓመታት ተንከራተትን፤ እናም ሴቶቻችንም እርጉዝ በነበሩበት ጊዜ ለፋ፣ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ልጆችን ወለዱ፤ እናም ከሞት በስተቀር በሁሉም ነገሮች ተሰቃዩ፤ እናም በእነዚህ ነገሮች ከመሰቃየት ከኢየሩሳሌም ሳይወጡ ቢሞቱ ይሻል ነበር።

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

፳፩ እነሆ በንብረታችን እና በውርስ ምድራችን ደስተኞች መሆን፤ አዎን እንዲሁም በሀሴት ልንኖር፤ በምንችልባቸው በእነዚህ በርካታ ዓመታት በሙሉ በምድረበዳ ተሰቃዩን።

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

፳፪ እናም በኢየሩሳሌም ምድር የነበሩ ሕዝቦች ፃድቅ ሕዝቦች እንደነበሩ እናውቃለን፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የጌታን ህግና ውሳኔ እንዲሁም በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት ሁሉንም ትዕዛዛት ጠብቀዋልና፤ ስለዚህ እነሱ ፃድቅ ሕዝቦች እንደሆኑ አወቅን፤ እናም አባታችን ፈረደባቸው፤ እናም እኛ ቃላቱን ስለምንሰማ እንደንወጣ አደረገ፤ አዎን ወንድማችንም ልክ እንደ እርሱ ነው። እናም በእንደዚህ አይነት አነጋገር ነበር ወንድሞቼ ያጉረመረሙትና በእኛ የተማረሩት።

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ እንዲህ ስል ተናገርኳቸው—የእስራኤል ልጆች የነበሩት አባቶቻችን፤ የጌታን ቃላት ባይሰሙ ኖሮ ከግብፃውያን እጅ ይወጡ ነበር ብላችሁ ታምናላችሁን?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

፳፬ አዎን፤ ጌታ ሙሴን እነርሱን ከባርነት እንዲያወጣቸው ባያዘው ኖሮ ከባርነት ይወጣሉ ብላችሁ ትገምቱ ነበርን?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

፳፭ አሁን የእስራኤል ልጆች በባርነት እንደነበሩ ታውቃላችሁ፤ እናም ለመጽናት አስቸጋሪ የሆኑ ሰራዎችን እንደተሸከሙ ታውቃላችሁ፤ ስለዚህ ከባርነት መውጣታቸው ለእነርሱ የሚያስፈልግ ጥሩ ነገር እንደነበርም ታውቃላችሁ።

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

፳፮ አሁን ሙሴ ያንን ታላቅ ሰራ እንዲሰራ በጌታ መታዘዙን ታውቃላችሁ፤ እናም በእርሱ ቃል የቀይ ባህር ውሃ ወዲህና ወዲያ ተከፍሎ እንደነበርና፣ በደረቁ መሬት እንደተጓዙ ታውቃላችሁ።

፳፯ ነገር ግን የፈርዖን ወታደሮች የሆኑት ግብፃውያን በቀይ ባህር ውስጥ እንደሰጠሙ ታውቃላችሁ።

፳፰ እናም እነርሱ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ መና እንደበሉ ደግሞ ታውቃላችሁ።

፳፱ አዎን እናም ሙሴ በእርሱ ያለውን የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በመጠቀም ቃል እንደተናገረ፣ ድንጋዩን እንደመታና የእስራኤል ልጆች ጥማታቸውን ማርካት እንዲችሉ ውሃን እንዳወጣላቸው ታውቃላችሁ።

፴ እናም በጌታ አምላካቸው መድኃኒታቸው ቢመሩም፣ ከፊታቸው በመሄድ በቀን ቢመራቸውም፣ እናም በጨለማም ብርሃን ቢሰጣቸው፣ እናም ሰዎች እንዲቀበሉት አስፈላጊ የሆኑትን ሁሉንም መልካም ነገሮችን ቢሰራም ልባቸውን አጠጠሩበት፣ እንዲሁም እእምሮአቸውን አሳወሩ፣ እናም በሙሴ ላይ እንዲሁም በእውነተኛውና በህያው እግዚአብሔር ላይ ክፉ ተናገሩ።

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደቃሉ አጠፋቸው፤ እናም እንደቃሉ መራቸው፣ እናም እንደቃሉ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ለእነርሱ አደረገ፤ እናም እንደቃሉ ያልሆነን በስተቀር የተደረገ ምንም ነገር አልነበረም።

፴፪ እናም የዮርዳኖስን ወንዝ ካቋረጡ በኋላ በምድሪቱ ያሉትን ልጆች እንዲያሰወጡ፣ አዎን፣ እነርሱን እንዲያጠፋላቸውና እንዲበትኑላቸው ብርቱ አደረጋቸው።

፴፫ እናም አሁን በአባቶቻችን እንዲወጡ የተደረጉት፣ በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ውስጥ ይኖሩ የነበሩት የዚህ ምድር ልጆች፣ ፃድቃን ናቸው ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እነሆ እኔ አይደሉም እላችኋለሁ።

፴፬ እነርሱ ፃድቃን ቢሆኑ አባቶቻችን ከእነርሱ የበለጠ የተመረጡ ይሆናሉ ብላችሁ ታሰባላችሁን? እኔ አይሆኑም እላችኋለሁ።

፴፭ እነሆ ጌታ ሁሉንም ሕዝብ በአንድ ዐይን ይመለከታል፤ ፃድቅ የሆነ በእግዚአብሔር የተወደደ ነው። ነገር ግን እነሆ እነዚህ ሕዝቦች የእግዚአብሔርን ማንኛውንም ቃል አልተቀበሉም፣ እናም እነርሱ ሙሉ በሙሉ በኃጢአት ጠውልገው ነበር፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔር የቁጣው ሙሉት በእነርሱ ላይ ነበር፤ እናም ጌታ ምድሪቷን በእነርሱ ላይ ረገማት፣ እንዲሁም ለአባቶቻችን ባረካት፤ አዎን፣ እነርሱ ይጠፋ ዘንድ በእነርሱ ላይ ረገማት፣ እናም አባቶቻችን በእርሷ ላይ ኃይል ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ባረከላቸው።

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

፴፮ እነሆ ጌታ ሰዎች መኖር እንዲችሉባት ምድርን ፈጠረ፤ እናም ልጆቹ የእነርሱ ያደርጓት ዘንድ ፈጠራቸው።

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

፴፯ እናም ፃድቃን የሆኑትን ሀገሮች ያሰነሳል፤ እናም ኃጢአተኞች የሚኖሩባትን ሀገር አጠፋ።

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

፴፭ እናም ፃድቃንን በጣም አሰፈላጊ ወደሆነው ምድር መራ፤ እናም ኃጢአተኞችን አጠፋቸው፤ እንዲሁም እነርሱ ባደረጓቸው ነገሮች ምድሪቱን ረገማት።

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

፴፱ በላይ በሰማይ ይገዛል፤ ምክንያቱም ሰማይ ዙፋኑ ነው፤ እናም ይህቺ ምድር መርገጫው ናት።

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

፵ እናም አምላካቸው አድርገው የሚቀበሉትን ይወዳቸዋል። እነሆ እርሱ አባቶቻችንን ወደዳቸው፤ እናም ከእነርሱ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገብቷል፤ አዎን፤ ለአብርሃም፤ ለይስሀቅ፤ እና ለያዕቆብ እንኳን፤ እናም የገባቸውን ቃልኪዳኖች አሰታወሰ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱን ከግብፅ ምድር አወጣቸው።

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

፵፩ እናም ልክ እንደ እናንተ ልባቸውን ስላጠጠሩ፤ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በበትሩ ቀጣቸው፤ እናም በክፋታቸው ምክንያት ጌታ ቀጣቸው። የሚበሩ መርዛምን እባብ በመካከላቸው ላከ፤ እናም ከተነደፉ በኋላም ይድኑ ዘንድ መንገዱን አዘጋጀ፤ እናም ማድረግ ያለባቸው ነገር መመልከት ብቻ ነበር፤ እናም በድርጊቱ ቀላልነት የተነሳ ብዙዎች የጠፉ ነበሩ።

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simplicity of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

፵፪ እናም እነርሱ በተለያዩ ጊዜያት ልባቸውን አጠጠሩ፤ እናም በሙሴ ላይ እንዲሁም ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ክፉን ተናገሩ፤ ሆኖም ወደር በሌለው በእርሱ ኃይል ወደቃልኪዳኑ ምድር እንደተመሩ እናንተ ታውቃላችሁ።

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

፵፫ እናም አሁን ከእነዚህ ሁሉ ነገሮች በኋላ ክፉ የሆኑበት ጊዜ መጣ፤ አዎን፤ እስኪጠወልጉም ድረስ፤ እናም እንደማስበው በዚህ ቀን ሊጠፉ የተቃረቡ ናቸው፤ ጥቂቶች በምርኮ ከሚወሰዱ በስተቀር እነርሱ የሚጠፉበት ቀን በእርግጥ እንደሚመጣ አውቃለሁ።

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

፵፬ ስለዚህ ጌታ አባቴን ወደ ምድረበዳው መሄድ እንዳለበት አዘዘው፤ እናም አይሁዶች ለገድሉት ሞከሩ፤ አዎን እናንተም ደግሞ ልትገድሉት ሞከራችሁ፤ ስለዚህ እናንተ ህይወቱን ለማጥፋት ፈለጋችሁ፤ ስለሆነም እናንተ በልባችሁ ገዳዮች ናችሁ፤ እናም ልክ እንደ እነርሱ ናችሁ።

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

፱፭ እናንተ ክፉን ለማድረግ ፈጣን፣ ግን ጌታ አምላካችሁን ለማስታወስ የምትዘገዩ ናችሁ። መልአክን አይታችኋል፣ እናም ተናግሯችኋል፤ አዎን ድምፁንም በየጊዜው ስምታችኋል፤ እናም በትንሽ ለሰላሳ ድምፅ ተናግሯችኋል። ነገር ግን እናንተ ደንዘዛችኋል፣ ስለዚህ ቃሉ ሊሰማችሁ አልቻለም፤ ስለዚህ እርሱ ሲናገራችሁ ድምፁ ልክ መሬትን እንደምትሰነጠቅ አይነት እንድትናወጥ እንዳደረጋት ነገድጓድ ነበር።

፱፮ እናም ደግሞ ጌታ ኃይል በሆነው ቃሉ ኃይል መሬት ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ እንዳትኖር ማድረግ እንደሚችል ታውቃላችሁ፤ አዎን እናም በቃሉ ጠማማውን ማቃናት እንደሚችል ታውቃላችሁ፣ እናም የተቃናው ቦታ ይሰበራል። አቤቱ፣ ለምን እናንተ በልባችሁ ደንዳናች ትሆናላችሁ?

፱፯ እነሆ በእናንተ ምክንያት ነፍሴ ተጨነቀች፣ እንዲሁም ልቤ ቆሰሏል፤ ለዘለዓለም እናንተ እንዳትጣሉ አፈራለሁ። እነሆ በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ በመሞላቴ ሰውነቴም ጥንካሬ የለውም።

፱፰ እናም እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት ሰናገር እነርሱ በእኔ ተቆጥተው ነበር፣ እና ወደባህር ጥልቅ ሊወረውሩኝ ፈለጉ፤ እናም ሊይዙኝ ወደእኔ ሲመጡ እንዲህ በማለት ተናገርኳቸው—ሁሉን በሚገዛው በእግዚአብሔር ስም እንዳትነኩኝ አዛችኋለሁ፣ ስጋዬ እስከሚበላ ድረስ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ተሞልቻለሁና፤ እና ማንኛውም አጁን በላዬ ላይ ያደረገ እንደደረቀ ሽንብቆ ይኮማተራል፣ እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ፊት እንደከንቱ ነገር ይሆናል፣ እግዚአብሔር ይቀጣዋልና።

፱፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ፣ በአባታቸው ላይ ከእንግዲህ ማጉረምረም እንደሌለባቸው፣ ከእኔ ጋር ለመሰራት መቃወም እንደሌለባቸው ተናገርኳቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እግዚአብሔር መርከብ እንድሰራ አዘኛልና።

፻ እናም እንዲህ አልኳቸው—እግዚአብሔር ሁሉንም ነገሮች እንድሰራ ካዘዘኝ፣ መሰራት እችላለሁ። እርሱ ይህንን ውሃ ወደ ምድር ተለወጥ እንድለው ካዘዘኝ ውሃውም ምድር ይሆናል፤ እናም ይህንንም ካልኩት እንዳዘዘኩት ይሆናል።

፻፩ እናም እሁን ጌታ ይህን ያህል ታላቅ ኃይል ካለው፣ እንዲሁም በሰዎች ልጆች መካከል ብዙ ተዓምራትን ካደረገ፣ እኔም መርከቡን መሰራት እንድችል ማስተማር እንዴት አይቻለውም?

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

፶፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ ለወንድሞቼ ብዙ ነገሮችን ስለተናገርኳቸው ዝም አሉ፣ እናም ከእኔ ጋር መከራከር አልቻሉም፤ ለብዙ ቀናትም እጆቻቸውን በእኔ ላይ መጫንም ሆነ በጣቶቻቸው ሊነኩኝ አልደፈሩም። አሁን፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ እጅግ ኃይለኛ ስለነበረ፣ ይህን ለማድረግ ያልደፈሩትም፣ በእኔ ፊት እንዳይኮማተሩ ፈርተው ነው፤ እናም እንደዚህም በእነርሱ ላይ ተፅዕኖ ነበረው።

፶፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ አለኝ—በወንድሞችህ ላይ እንደገና እጅህን ዘርጋ እናም እነርሱ በእነተ ፊት አይኮማተሩም፣ ነገር ግን እንቀጠቅጣቸዋለሁ፣ እናም ይህንን የማደርገው አለ ጌታ፣ እኔ እግዚአብሔር መሆኔን ያውቁ ዘንድ ነው።

፶፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ በወንድሞቼ ላይ እጄን ዘረጋሁ፣ እናም እነርሱ አልተኮማተሩም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ ልክ እንደተናገረው እንቀጠቅጣቸው።

፶፭ እናም ከዚያ ጌታ ከእነተ ጋር መሆኔን በእርግጥ እናውቃለን፣ የጌታ ኃይልም እኛን እንዳንቀጠቀጠን እናውቃለንና አሉ። እናም በፊቴ ወደቁ፣ እና እኔን ለማምለክ ሞክሩ፣ ነገር ግን እኔን እንዲያመልኩ አልፈቀድኩላቸውም፣ እንዲህም አልኩ—እኔ ወንድማችሁ ነኝ፣ እዎን፣ ታናሽ ወንድማችሁ፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ አምላካችሁን አምልኩ፣ እናም አባትና እናታችሁን አክብሩ፣ ጌታ አምላካችሁ በሚሰጣችሁ ምድር አድሜያችሁ እንዲረዝም።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

፩ ኔፊ ፲፰

1 Nephi 18

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ጌታን አመለኩና ከእኔ ጋር ሄዱ፤ እና ልዩ አይነት አሰራር ባለው እንጨት ስራ ሰራን። ጌታም የመርከቡን እንጨቶች እንዴት መሰራት እንዳለብኝ በየጊዜው ያሳየኝ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

፪ አሁን እኔ ኔፊ ይህንን እንጨት የቀረፅኩት ከሰው በተማርኩት መልኩ አልነበረም፣ መርከቡንም ቢሆን የሰራሁት በሰዎች መንገድ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ ለእኔ ባሳየኝ መንገድ ነበር የሰራሁት፤ ስለዚህ ይህም በሰዎች መንገድ የተመሰረተ አልነበረም።

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

፫ እና እኔ ኔፊ ወደተራራው ሁልጊዜ እሄድ ነበር፣ እና እኔ ሁልጊዜ ወደጌታ እፀልይ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ለእኔ ታላቅ ነገሮችን አሳየኝ።

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታን መመሪያ በመከተል መርከቡን ከጨረሰኩ በኋላ ወንድሞቼ ጥሩ እንደሆነና አሰራሩም እጅግ ረቂቅ እንደሆነ ተመለከቱ፤ ስለዚህ እንደገና ራሳቸውን በጌታ ፊት ዝቅ አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ተነሰተን ወደ መርከቡ እንድንወርድ፣ የጌታ ድምፅ ወደአባቴ መጣ።

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በማግሰቱ ከምድረበዳ ብዙ ፍሬዎችን፣ ስጋን፣ በቂ ማር፣ ጌታ እንደእዘዘን ስንቅና ሁሉን ነገሮች ካዘጋጀን በኋላ ከሁሉም ጭነታችንና ዘርቻችን እናም ከእኛ ጋር ያመጣናቸውን ነገሮች በሙሉ ይዘን፣ እያንዳንዱ እንደ እድሜው ወደመርከቡ ወረድን፣ ስለዚህ ሁላችንም ከሚሰቶቻችንና ከልጆቻችን ጋር ወደመርከቡ ወረድን።

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

፯ እና አሁን አባቴ ሁለት ልጆች በምድረበዳ ወልዷል፤ ታላቁ ያዕቆብ፣ ታናሹ ዮሴፍ ይባሉ ነበር።

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁላችንም የታዘዝነውን ከያዝንና ሰንቃችንን ይዘን ወደመርከቡ ውስጥ ከወረድን በኋላ በባህሩ ጉዞን ጀመርን፣ እናም በነፋሱ ፊት ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ተገፋን።

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

፱ እናም ለብዙ ቀናት በነፋሱ ከተመራን በኋላ፣ እነሆ ወንድሞቼ እና የእስማኤል ልጆች እናም ሚስቶቻቸው መደሰት፣ መጨፈርና መዝፈን እንዲሁም ብዙ መጥፎ ነገር መናገር ጀመሩ፣ አዎን፣ በምን ኃይል ወደዚያ ቦታ እንደመጡ እንኳን ረሱት፤ አዎን ክፋታቸውም እጅግ ታላቅ ሆነ።

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

፲ እናም እኔ ኔፊ በኃጢአታችን ምክንያት ጌታ እንዳይቆጣጠርና እንዳይቀጣጠን በባህርም ጥልቅ ውስጥ እንዳንሰምጥ እጅግ መፍራት ጀመርኩ፤ ስለዚህ እኔ ኔፊ በጥምና እናገራቸው ጀመርኩ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ እነርሱ በእኔ ተቆጡ፣ እንዲህም አሉ—ታናሽ ወንድማችን በእኛ ላይ መሪ እንዲሆን እንፈቅድም።

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማንና ልሙኤል ወሰደው በገመድ አሰሩኝ፣ በጣም አጎቆሎኝ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ስለኃጥአን የተናገረው ቃል በሙሉ ይፈፀም ዘንድ ኃይሉን ሊያሳይ ስለፈለገ ጌታ ይህን ፈቀደ።

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መነቃነቅ እስኪያቅተኝ ካሰሩኝ በኋላ በጌታ የተዘጋጀው እቅጣጫ ጠቋሚ መሰራቱን አቆመ።

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

፲፫ ስለዚህ መርከቧንም ወዴት መምራት እንዳለባቸው አላወቁም፣ በዚህም ምክንያት ታላቅ ማዕበል አዎን ታላቅና አስፈሪ አውሎ ንፋስ ተነሳ፣ እናም ለሶስት ቀናት ያህል ወደ ኋላ ተነዳን፣ እናም በባህር ውስጥ እንዳይሰምጡ መፍራት ጀመሩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ እኔን አልፈቱኝም።

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

፲፬ እናም ወደ ኋላ ሰንነዳ በነበርንበት በአራተኛው ቀን ማዕበሉ እጅግ በረታ።

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ባህሩ ጥልቅ ልንሰጥም ነበር። እናም ለአራት ቀን በባህሩ ላይ ወደ ኋላ ከተነዳን በኋላ ወንድሞቼ የጌታ ፍርድ በእነርሱ ላይ መሆኑንና ከኃጢአታቸው ንስህ ካልገቡ በስተቀር እንደሚጠፉ መገንዘብ ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ ወደ እኔ መጡና የታሰርኩበትን ከክንዶቼ ላይ ፈቱ፣ እነርሱም አብጠው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ቁርጭምጭሚቶቼም እጅግ አብጠው ነበር፣ ሁለቱም እጅግ ቆሰለው ነበር።

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

፲፮ ይህን እንጂ ወደ አምላኬ ተመለከትኩ፣ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ እርሱን እመሰግንኩ፤ እናም በመከራዬ የተነሳ በጌታ ላይ አላገረመረምኩም።

፲፱ እሁን አባቴ ሌሂ እነርሱን እናም ደግሞ የእሰማኤልን ወንድ ልጆች ብዙ ነገሮች ተናገሯቸው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ስለእኔ የሚናገርን ማንንም ሰው በብዙ ማስፈራሪያ ተናገረው ነበር፤ እና ወላጆቼ በእርጅና በመያዝና በልጆቻቸው ምክንያት በሀዘን በብርቱ ስለተሰቃዩ ደካማ ሆኑ፣ አዎን አልጋቸው ላይም በበሽታ ወደቁ።

፳፬ በሀዘናቸው ብዛትና በወንድሞቼ ኃጢያት የተነሳ ከዚህ ህይወት ወደሚወሰዱበትና አምላካቸውን ወደሚገናኙበት ደርሰው ነበር፤ አዎን ያረጀ ሰውነታቸውም በአፈር ውስጥ ሊወድቁ እየደረሱ ነበሩ፤ አዎን በሀዘን ወደ ውኃማው መቃብር የሚጣሉበት ጊዜ እየቀረበ ነበር።

፳፯ እናም ያዕቆብና ዮሴፍ ልጆች እንደመሆናቸው ብዙ እንክብካቤ ይፈልጉ ስለነበር፣ በእናታቸው ስቃይ ምክንያት አዘነው ነበር፤ ደግሞም የባለቤቴና የልጆቼ አንባና ፀሎት ይፈቱኝ ዘንድ የወንድሞቼን ልብ አላራራም።

፳፰ እና በጥፋት ካሰፈራራቸው የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በስተቀር ልባቸውን የሚያራራ ምንም ነገር አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ በባህሩ ጥልቅ ሊዋጡ እንደሆነ ባዩ ጊዜ ለሰሩት ስራ ንስህ ገቡ፣ በዚህም ምክንያት እኔን ፈቱኝ።

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔን ከፈቱኝ በኋላ አቅጣጫ ጠቋሚውን ወሰድኩት፣ እንደፈለኩትም ሰራ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ለጌታ ፀለይኩ፤ ከፀለይኩም በኋላ ነፋሱም፣ ማዕበሉም ቆመ፣ ታላቅ ፀጥታም ሆነ።

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ መርከቡን መራሁ፣ እንደገናም ወደቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ተጓዝን።

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ቀናት ከተጓዝን በኋላ፣ በቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ደረሰን፤ እናም በምድሩ ላይ ሄድንና፣ ድንኳኖቻችንን ተከልን፤ የቃልኪዳኑ ምድር ብለንም ጠራነው።

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መሬቱን ማረሰ ጀመርን፣ ዘሮችንም መዝራት ጀመርን፤ አዎን ከኢየሩሳሌም ያመጣናቸውን ዘሮች በሙሉ ዘራናቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘሮቹ እጅግ አደገ፤ ስለዚህ በብዙ ተባረክን።

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቃል ኪዳን ምድር ውስጥ በምድረበዳው በተጓዥን ጊዜ ሁሉም አይነት እንስሳት ላም፣ በሬ፣ እና አህያና ፈረስ፣ እናም ፍየልና የዱር ፍየል፣ እንዲሁም ሁሉም አይነት ለሰው ጥቅም የሚውሉ የዱር እንስሳት በጫካው ውስጥ እንደነበሩ አገኘን። እንዲሁም ሁሉም አይነት የወርቅ፣ የብርና፣ የመዳብ የብረት አፈር አገኘን።

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ አዘዘኝ፤ ስለዚህ የህዝቤን ታሪክ እፅፍባቸው ዘንድ ስሌዳዎችን ከብረት አፈር ስራሁ። እናም በስሌዳዎቹ ላይ የአባቴን ታሪክ፣ ደግሞም የምድረበዳ ጉዞአችንንና የአባቴን ትንቢቶች ፃፍኩባቸው፤ ደግሞም ብዙዎቹን የእኔን ትንቢቶች ፃፍኩባቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

፪ እናም እነርሱንም በሰራሁ ጊዜ እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች እንድስራ ከጌታ እንደምታዘዝ አላወቅሁም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ የአባቴን ታሪክና የአባቶቹን የትውልድ ሐረግ፣ እናም በምድረበዳ የነበሩትን አብዛኞች ገጠመኞቻችን የተፃፉት በእነዚያ እኔ ባልኳቸው የመጀመሪያ ስሌዳዎች ላይ ነው፤ ስለዚህ እኔ እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች ከመስራቴ በፊት የተከሰቱት ነገሮች በይበልጥም በመጀመሪያዎቹ ስሌዳዎች በእውነትም ተጠቅሰዋል።

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

፫ እናም እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች በትዕዛዝ ከሰራሁ በኋላ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ አገልግሎትና ትንቢቶችን ግልፅና አስፈላጊ የሆኑትን ክፍሎች፣ በእነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ላይ እንድፅፍ ትዕዛዝ ተቀበልኩ፤ እና የሚፃፉት ነገሮች ይህችን ምድር ለሚይዙት ህዝቦቹ መመሪያ ይሆኑ ዘንድ፣ ደግሞም እኔ ለማላውቀው፣ ጌታ ለሚያውቀው፣ ለመልካም ዓላማው ይሆኑ ዘንድ ይጠበቃሉ።

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

፬ ስለዚህ እኔ ኔፊ፣ በሌሎች ስሌዳዎች ላይ የህዝቦቹን ጦርነት፣ ፀብ፣ እና ጥፋትን ታሪክ፣ ወይም የተዘረዘረ ታሪክ መዘገብኩ። እናም ይህን አደረኩ፣ ህዝቤንም እኔ ሰሄድ ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባቸውና፣ ከጌታ ተጨማሪ ትዕዛዝ እስከሚመጣ ድረስ፣ እነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ከእንዲ ትውልድ ወደሌላው ወይም ከእንዲ ነቢይ ወደሌላው መተላለፍ እንደሚገባቸው አዘዘኩኝ።

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

፭ እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች እንዴት እንደሰራሁ ከዚህ በኋላ ይነገራል፣ እናም እነሆ እንደተናገርኩት እቀጥላለሁ፤ ይህንንም የማደርገው እጅግ የተቀደሱትን ነገሮች ህዝቦቹ ያውቁት ዘንድ እንዲጠብቁ ነው።

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

፮ ይሁን እንጂ ቅዱስ ናቸው ብዬ የማሰባቸውን ካልሆነ በስተቀር ምንም ነገር በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ አልፋለሁ። እና አሁን ስህተት ብስራ፣ የጥንቶቹም ቢሆኑ ስህተት ስርተዋል፤ በሌሎች ሰዎች ስህተት ግን ራሴን አለመካኝም፣ ነገር ግን በሰጋ መሰረት በውስጤ ባለው ደካማነት ራሴ አመካኛለሁ።

፯ እንዳንድ ሰዎች ለሰጋም፣ ለነፍሰም ታላቅ ዋጋ አለው ብለው የሚያሰቡትን ነገሮች ሌሎች ይንቁታል። በእግራቸውም ይረግጡታል። አዎን የእስራኤልንም አምላክ እንኳን ሰዎች በእግራቸው ይረግጡታል፤ በእግራቸው ይረግጡታል አላለሁ ነገር ግን በሌላ አባባል እናገረዋለሁ—ንቀውታል፣ እናም የምክሩን ድምፅ አላዳመጡም።

፰ እናም እነሆ እንደመልእኩ ቃላት፣ አባቴ ኢየሩሳሌምን ከለቀቀበት ከስድስት መቶ ዓመታት በኋላ፣ እርሱ ይመጣል።

፱ እናም በኃጢአታቸው ምክንያት ዓለም ሁሉ ዋጋ እንደሌለው ነገር ይፈርዱበታል፤ ስለዚህ ይገርፋታል፣ እርሱም ይህን ይቀበላል፤ እናም ይመቱታል፣ እርሱም ይህን ይቀበላል። አዎን ይተፋበታል፣ እና በቸርነቱና ለሰው ልጆች ባለው ፅናት ምክንያት ይህንንም ይቀበላል።

፲ እናም ከግብፅ ከባርነት የወጡትና ደግሞም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በእርሱ የተጠበቁት አባቶቻችን አምላክ፣ አዎን የኦሪጋም አምላክ፣ የይሱህቅም፣ እና የያዕቆብ አምላክ እንደዜናቅ ቃላት መሰረት እንዲሰቀል፣ እና እንደ ኔዩም ቃላት መሰረት እንዲሰዋና፣ በባህር ደሴቶች ለሚኖሩ በተለይም ለእስራኤል ቤት የሞቱ ምልክት ስለሚሰጠው የሶስት ቀን ጨለማ እንደተናገረው እንደ ዜናስ ቃል በመቃብር እንዲቀበር፣ በመልእኩ ቃላት መሰረት፣ እራሱን እንደሰው በኃጢአተኞች እጅ አሳልፎ ይሰጣል።

፲፩ ነቢዩ እንዲህ ተናገረ—ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በዚያ ቀን የእስራኤልን ቤት ሁሉ እንዳንደቸን በቅንነታቸው የተነሳ፣ ለታላቅ ደስታቸው፣ ለደህንነታቸው በድምፁ፣ ሌሎቹን በነጎድኃድና በወጀብ ኃይሉ መብረቅ፣ በማዕበል በአሳትና በጭሰና፣ በጨለማ ጭጋግ፣ እንዲሁም ምድርን በመክፈትና በሚነሱት ተራሮች ይሳበኛቸዋል።

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

፲፪ እናም ነቢዩ ዜኖስ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ መሆን አለባቸው ብሏል። የምድርም ዓለቶች መከፈል አለባቸው፤ እና በምድር ሁከት ምክንያት፣ በባህር ደሴቶች የሚገኙት ንጉሶች እንዲህ እንዲጮሁ በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ተፅዕኖ ይሰማቸዋል፣ የፍጥረት አምላክ ይሰቃያል ይላሉ።

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

፲፫ እናም ነቢዩ፣ በኢየሩሳሌም ሰላሎት እንዲህ ይላል፡ የእስራኤልን አምላክ ስለሰቀሉና፣ ምልክቶቹን፣ ድንቆቹን በማስወገድና፣ የእስራኤልን አምላክ ክብርና ኃይል በመቃወም ልቦቻቸው ስለሳቱ፣ በሁሉም ህዝቦች ይሰቃያሉ።

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

፲፬ እናም ልባቸው ስለሳቱና፣ የእስራኤልን ቅዱስ ስለናቁ በሰጋ ይንከራተታሉ፣ እናም ይጠፋሉ፣ እናም የሚፈጭባቸውና የተራቁም ይሆናሉ፣ በሁሉም ሀገሮች የተጠሉም ይሆናሉ ይላል ነቢዩ።

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

፲፭ ይሁን እንጂ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ላይ ልባቸውን የማይሰቱበት ቀን ሲመጣ፣ ያኔም ከአባታቸው ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውሳሉ፣ ይላል ነቢዩ።

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

፲፮ አዎን በዚያን ጊዜ የባህር ደሴቶችንም ያስታውሳል፤ በነቢዩ ዜኖስ ቃል መሰረት፣ አዎን የእስራኤልንም ቤት በሙሉ ከአራቱም የምድር ማዕዘናት እስከሰባቸዋለሁ አለ ጌታ።

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

፲፯ አዎን እናም ምድር በሙሉ የጌታን መድኃኒት ያያሉ፣ አለ ነቢዩ፤ እያንዳንዱ ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብም ይባረካል።

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

፲፰ እናም እኔ ኔፊ በእነዚህን ነገሮች ለህዝቤ የፃፍኩት ምናልባት ጌታ መድኃኒታቸውን እንዲያስታውሱ ለማስረዳት ነው።

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

፲፱ ስለዚህ እነዚህን ነገሮች ያገኛቸው እንደሆነ ለሁሉም ለእስራኤል ቤት እናገራለሁ።

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

፳ እነሆ በኢየሩሳሌም ለሚኖሩት መገጣጠሚያዬ እስከሚደክም ድረስ የሚያስጨንቀኝ የመንፈስ ስራ አለኝ፤ እነሆ ጌታ እንደጥንት ነቢያት ስለእነርሱ በማሳየት መሀሪ ባይሆንልኝ ኖሮ እኔም ደግሞ በጠፋሁ ነበር።

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

፳፩ እናም እርሱ በእርግጥ ለጥንት ነቢያት ስለእነርሱ ገልጦላቸዋል፤ ደግሞም ለብዙዎች ስለእኛ አሳይቷቸዋል፣ ስለዚህ እኛም ደግሞ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ ተፅዕኖ ልናውቃቸው ያስፈልገናል።

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

፳፪ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ ለወንድሞቼ እነዚህን ነገሮች አስተማርኳቸው፤ እና እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ በጥንት ሰዎች መካከል በሌሎች ምድር ውስጥ ያደረጋቸውን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ያውቁ ዘንድ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረፁትን ብዙ ነገሮች አነበብኩላቸው።

፳፫ እናም በሙሴ መፅሐፍት ላይ ከተፃፉት ብዙ ነገሮችን አነበብኩላቸው፤ ነገር ግን በይበልጥ ስለጌታ ስለመድኃኒታቸው እንዲያምኑ አስረዳቸው ዘንድ በነቢዩ ኢሳይያስ የተፃፉትን አነበብኩላቸው፤ እነሆ ለእኛ ጥቅምና ትምህርት ይሆኑ ዘንድ ሁሉንም ጥቅሶች ከእኛ ጋር አመሳሰልኩ።

፳፬ ስለዚህ ለእነርሱ እንዲህ ስል ተናገርኩ—እናንተ የተገነጠላችሁ ቅርንጫፎች የሆናችሁ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪቶች የተፃፉትን የነቢዩን ቃል አድምጡ፤ እናንተም ተገንጥላችሁ እንደመጣችሁባቸው ወንድሞቻችሁ አይነት ተስፋ ይኖራችሁ ዘንድ ለመላው ለእስራኤል ቤት የተፃፉትን የነቢዩን ቃል አድምጡ፤ ከእናንተም ጋር አመሳሰሏቸው፤ እንደዚህም ነቢያት ፅፈዋልና።

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

፩ ኔፊ ፳

፩ እናንተ በእስራኤል ስም የተጠራችሁ እናንተ ከይሁዳ ውኃ ይሁን ከጥምቀት ውኃ የወጣችሁ፤ በጌታ ስም የምትምሉ፤ በእውነት ሳይሆን፤ በፅድቅ ሳይሆን የእስራኤልን አምላክ የምትጠሩ የያዕቆብ ቤት ሆይ ይህን ስሙ እናም አድምጡ።

፪ ይሁን እንጂ በቅድስት ከተማ ስም እራሳቸውን ይጠራሉ፤ ነገር ግን የሰራዊት ጌታ በሆነው በእስራኤል አምላክ ላይ አይደገፉም፤ አዎን፤ የሰራዊት ጌታ የእርሱ ስም ነው።

፫ እነሆ የቀድሞውን ነገርች ከጥንት ጀምሮ ተናገረዋል፤ ከአፌም ወጥተዋል፤ አሳይቼ አቸዋለሁ። በድንገትም አሳየኋቸው።

፬ እናም ይህንን ያደረግሁት አንተ እልከኛ፤ አንገትህም የብረት ጅምት፤ ግንባርህም ናስ አንደሆነ ስለማውቅ ነው፤

፭ እናም ጣኦቴ ይህን አድርጓል፤ የተቀረፀው ምስሌ፤ ቀልጦ የተሰራው ምስሌ እነዚህን አዘዘኝ እንዳትል ፈርቼ አስቀድሜ ነግሪህ ነበር፤ ሳይሆንም አስተምሪህ ነበር።

፮ ይህን ሁሉ ተመልክተህልና ስምተህል፤ እናም አንተ እትናገራቸውምን? አዲስ ነገርች፤ እንዲሁም የተደበቁትንም ነገርች፤ ከዚህ ጀምሮ አሳይቼህ ነበር፤ እና አንተ አላወቅህቸውም።

፯ እነርሱም አሁን እንጂ ከጥንት ጀምሮ አልተፈጠሩም፤ አንተም እነሆ፤ አውቄአቸዋለሁ እንዳትል ስለእነዚህ ከመሰማትህ በፊት ለአንተ ተገልጠውልህ ነበር።

፰ አዎን እናም አልሰማህም፤ አዎን አላወቅህም፤ አዎን ጀርህም በዚያን ጊዜ አልተከፈተም፤ ምክንያቱም አንተ ፈፅሞ ወንጀለኛ እንደሆንክ ከማህፀንም ጀምሮ ህግን ተላላፊ ተብለህ እንደተጠራህ አውቃለሁና።

፱ ይሁን እንጂ ስለሰሜ ቁጣዬን አዘገያለሁ፤ ስለምስጋናዬም ስል እንዳላጠፋህ ዘንድ አይሃለሁ።

፲ ምክንያቱም እነሆ እንጥራህላሁ፤ በመከራም እቶን መርጬህላሁ።

፲፩ ስለእኔ አዎን ስለራሴ ይህን አደርገዋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ሰሜ እንዲነቀፍ አልፈቅድም፤ እናም ክብራንም ለሌላ አልሰጥም።

፲፪ ያዕቆብ ሆይ፤ የጠራሁህም እስራኤል ሆይ ስሙኝ፤ ምክንያቱም እኔ ነኝና፤ እኔ የፊተኛው እናም ደግሞ እኔ መጨረሻው ነኝ።

1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

፲፫ እጄም ደግሞ የምድርን መሰረት መሰርታለች፣ ቀኝ እጄም ሰማያትን ዘርግታለች። ጠራሷቸው እናም በእንድ ላይ ቆሙ።

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

፲፬ እናንተ ሁሉ በእንድ ላይ ተሰብስባችሁ አድምጡ፤ ከእነርሱ እነዚህን ነገሮች ያወጀላቸው ማን ነው? ጌታ እርሱንም ወድዶታል፤ አዎን እርሱም በእነርሱ የተናገረውን ቃል ይፈፀማል፣ እርሱም እንደሚያስደስተው በባቢሎን ላይ ያደርጋል፣ ክንዱም በከለዳውያን ላይ ይሆናል።

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

፲፭ ደግሞም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፤ እኔ ጌታ አዎን እኔ ተናገርኩ፤ አዎን እርሱን እንዲያውጅ ጠራሁት፣ አምጥቼውማለሁ፣ መንገዱንም ቀና ያደርጋል።

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

፲፮ ወደ እኔ ቅረቡ፣ እኔ በሰውር አልተናገርኩም፤ ከጥንት ጀምሮ፣ ከታወጀበት ጊዜ አንስቶ እኔ ተናገርኩ፣ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔርና መንፈሱ ልከውኛል።

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

፲፯ እናም መዳኒትህ፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፤ የሚረባህን ነገር የማስተምርህ፣ በምትሄድበትም መንገድ የሚመራህ እኔ ጌታህ እግዚአብሔር ልኩዋለሁ።

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

፲፰ እቤቱ ትዕዛዛቱን ብትሰማ ኖሮ ሰላምህ እንደወንዝ፣ ፅድቅህም እንደባህር ሞገድ ይሆን ነበር።

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

፲፱ ዘርህም ደግሞ እንደ አሸዋ በሆነ ነበር፤ የሆድህም ትውልድ እንደባህር ጠጠር በሆነ ነበር፤ ሰሙም ከፊቱ ባልጠፋ ወይም ባልፈረሰ ነበር።

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

፳ ከባቢሎን ውጡ፣ ከከለዳውያንም ኮብልሉ፣ በእልልታ ድምፅ ተናገሩ፣ ይህንም ተናገሩ እስከምድር ዳርቻ ድረስ አውሩ፤ ጌታ ባርያውን ያዕቆብን ታድጎታል በሉ።

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

፳፩ እናም አልተጠሙም ነበር፤ በበረሃ ውስጥ መራቸው፤ ውሃውንም ከዓለቱ ውስጥ አፈለቀላቸው፤ ዓለቱንም ደግሞ ሰነጠቀውና ውኃው ፈለቀ።

And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

፳፪ እናም ይህንን ሁሉና፣ ደግሞ ታላቅ ነገር ቢያደርግም፣ ለክፋዎች ሰላም የላቸውም ይላል ጌታ።

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

፩ እናም እንደገና፤ እናንተ የተገነጠላችሁና በህዝቦቼ እረኞች ጋጢያት የተነሳ ለቃችሁ እንድትወጡ የተደረጋችሁ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ ሰሙ፤ እኛን እናንተ የተገነጠላችሁ ሁሉ፣ በሰፋት የተበተናችሁ በሙሉ፣ ከእኔ ህዝቦች የሆንሽ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ። ደሴቶች ሆይ ሰሙኝ፣ እናንተም በሩቅ ያላችሁ ህዝቦች እድምጡኝ፤ ጌታ ከማህፀን ጠርቶኛል፣ ከእናቴም ማህፀን ጀምሮ ሰሜን እንሰቶአል።

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

፪ እናም እርሱ አፊን እንደተሳለ ሰይፍ አድርጎአል፤ በእጅ ጥላ ሰውሮኛል፣ እንደተወለወለ ፍላግም አድርጎኛል፤ በሰገባውም ውስጥ ሸሽጎኛል፤

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

፫ እናም እርሱ እስራኤል ሆይ፣ እንተ አሸከሬ ነህ፣ በእንተም እኩብራለሁ አለኝ።

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

፬ ከዚያም እኔ በከንቱ ደከምኩ፣ ምንም ጥቅም ለሌለውና በከንቱ ጉልበቴን ፈጀሁ፤ ፍርድ በእርግጥ ከጌታ ዘንድ ሰራዬም በእምላኬ ዘንድ ነው አልሁ።

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

፭ እናም አሁን ያዕቆብን ወደ እርሱ እንድመልስ እሸከር እሆነው ዘንድ ከማህፀን ጀምሮ የሰራኝ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ እስራኤልን ባትሰበሰቡም፣ ግን በጌታ ዐይን ተከባሪ እሆናለሁ፣ እምላኬም ጉልበቴ ይሆንልኛል።

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

፮ እናም እንዲህ አለ፣ እንተ የያዕቆብን ነገዶች እንድታሰነሳና ከእስራኤልም የዳኑትን እንድትመልስ አገልጋይ መሆንህ እጅግ ቀላል ነገር ነው። እስከምድር ዳር ድረስ መድኃኒት ትሆን ዘንድ ለአህዛብ ብርሃን አድርጌ እሰጥሃለሁ።

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

፯ ጌታ፣ የእስራኤል መድኃኒት፣ ቅዱሱ፣ ሰዎች ለሚንቁት፣ ህዝብ ለሚጠላው፣ ለገዢዎች አገልጋይ እንዲህ ይላል፣ ጌታ ታማኝ ስለሆነ ነገሥታት አይተው ይነሳሉ፣ መሳፍንትም ደግሞ ይሰገዳሉ።

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

፰ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ በተወደደም ጊዜ ሰምቼሀለሁ፣ የባህር ደሴቶች ሆይ፣ እናም በደህንነት ቀንም ረድቼሃለሁ፤ እናም እጠብቅህማለሁ፣ ምድርን ታቀና ዘንድ ውድማ የሆኑትንም ርስቶች ታወርስ ዘንድ አገልጋዬን እንደ ቃል ኪዳን አድርጌ ለህዝቡ እሰጥሀለሁ፤

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

፱ ለእስረኞቹ፣ ውጡ፣ በጨለማም ለተቀመጡትም፣ ተገለጡ በላቸው። በመንገድም ላይ ይበላሉ፣ ማስማርያቸውም በወና ኮረብታ ሁሉ ላይ ይሆናል።

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

፲ አይራቡም፣ አይጠሙም፣ ትኩሳት ወይም ፀሐይ አይጎዳቸውም፤ የሚራራላቸው ይመራቸዋል፣ እንዲሁም በውኃም ምንጮች በኩል ይጎዳቸዋል።

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

፲፩ እናም ተራሮቹን ሁሉ መንገድ አደርጋለሁ፣ ጎዳኖቼም ከፍ ይላሉ።

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

፲፪ ከእዚያም የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ ተመልከቱ፣ እነዚህ ከሩቅ፣ እናም አቤቱ፣ ከሰሜን፣ ከምዕራብ እነዚህም ከሰሜን አገር ይመጣሉ።

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

፲፫ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ህዝቡን አፅናንቶአልና፣ በተሰቃዩትም ላይ ምህረትን ያደርጋልና ሰማያት ሆይ ዘምሩ፣ እናም ምድር ሆይ ተደስቱ፣ በምስራቅ ያሉ ህዝቦችሽ ይቋቋማሉና፤ እናም ለመዘመር ተነሱ፣ ተራሮች ሆይ ከእንግዲህ አይቀጡምና።

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

፲፬ እነሆ ፅዮን ግን እንዲህ ብላለች፣ ጌታ ትቶኛል እናም ጌታዬ እረሰቶኛል—ነገር ግን እርሱ እንዳልረሳ ያሳያል።

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

፲፭ በእውኑ ሴት ከማህፀንዋ ለተወለደው ወንድ ልጅ እስከማትራራ ድረስ የምታጠባውን ሕፃንዋን ትረሳ ዘንድ ትችላለችን? አዎን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ እነርሱ ይረሱ ይሆናል እኔ ግን አልረሳሽም።

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

፲፮ እነሆ እኔ በእጄ መዳፍ ቀርጬኻለሁ፣ ግንቦችሽም ሁልጊዜ በፊቴ አሉ።

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

፲፯ ልጆችሽ ያወደሙሽ ላይ ይፈጥሩሉ፣ እናም ያጠፉሽ ከእነቹ ዘንድ ይወጣሉ።

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

፲፰ ዓይንሽን እንስተሽ በዙሪያሽ ተመልከቱ፣ እናም እነሆ እነዚህ ሁሉ እራሳቸውን ሰብሰበው ወደ እንቺ ይመጣሉ። እኔ ህያው እንደሆንኩ፣ እነዚህን ሁሉ እንደጌጥ ትለብሻቸዋለሽ፣ እንደሙሽራም ትጎናፀፊያቸዋለሽ፣ ይላል ጌታ።

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

፲፱ ባድማሽና ውድማሽ፣ ወናም የሆነው ምድርሽ፣ እናም የጥፋትሽ ምድር ከሚኖሩበሽ የተነሳ ዛሬ ጠባብ ትሆናለች፣ የዋጡሽም ይርቃሉና።

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

፳ የመጀመሪያውን ካጣሽ በኋላ ያገኘሻቸው ልጆችሽ በጆሮሽ ሰፍራ፣ በጣም ጠባቂና እንቅመጥ ዘንድ ቦታ አስፈልኻ ይላሉ።

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

፳፩ በዚያም ጊዜ እንቺም በልብሽ ትያለሽ፣ የወላድ መካን ሆኜና፣ እኔም ብቸኛ ሆኜ፣ ታሰራና ተቅበዝብዝ እያለሁ እነዚህን ማን ወለደልኝ? እነዚህንስ ማን አሳደጋቸው? እነሆ ብቻዬን ቀርቼ ነበር፣ እነዚህስ ወዴት ነበሩ?

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

፳፪ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል፡ እነሆ እጄን ወደ እህዛብ አንሳለሁ፤ አርማዬንም ወደ ወገኖች አቆማለሁ፤ ወንዶች ልጆችሽንም በክንዳቸው ያመጡአቸዋል፤ ሴቶች ልጆችሽንም በጫንቃቸው ይሸከሟቸዋል።

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

፳፫ ነገሥታትም አሳዳጊ አባቶችሽ ይሆናሉ፤ እቴጌዎቻቸውም ሞግዚቶችሽ ይሆናሉ፤ ፊቶቻቸውን ወደ ምድር ዝቅ አድርገው ይሰግዱልሻል፤ እና የእግርሽንም ትቢያ ይልሳሉ፤ እኔም ጌታ እንደሆንኩ ታውቂያለሽ፤ እኔንም የጠበቁ አያፍሩምና።

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

፳፬ በውኑ ብዝበዛ ከኃያል እጅ ይወሰዳልን? ወይስ ህጋዊ ምርኮኞች ያመልጣሉን?

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

፳፭ ጌታ ግን እንዲህ ይላል፡ በሃያላን የተማረኩም ይወሰዳሉ፤ የእሽባሪም አደን ይወሰዳል፤ ምክንያቱም ከአንቺ ጋር የሚጣሉትን እጣላቸዋለሁ፤ ልጆችሽንም አድናለሁ።

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

፳፮ እናም አሰጨናቂዎችሽን ስጋቸውን አሰበላቸዋለሁ፤ እንደጣፋጭም ወይን ጠጅም በደማቸው ይሰክራሉ፤ እናም ስጋ ለባሹም ሁሉ እኔ ጌታ አዳኝሽና መድኃኒትሽና፤ የያዕቆብም ኃያል እንደሆንኩ ያውቃሉ።

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

፩ ኔፊ ፳፪

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ በነሀሰ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፉትን ነገሮች ካነበብኩ በኋላ ወንድሞቼ ወደ እኔ መጡና እንዲህ አሉኝ—እነዚህ ያነበብካቸው ነገሮች ምን ማለታቸው ነው? እነሆ እንደሰጋ ሳይሆን በመንፈስ እንደሚሆኑት ነገሮች መሰረት መገንዘብ የሚቻሉ ናቸው?

፪ እናም እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ እንዲህ ስል ተናገርኳቸው—እነሆ እነርሱ በመንፈሱ ድምፅ ለነቢዩ ተገልጸዋል፤ ለሰዎች ልጆች በሰጋ መሰረት የሚመጡት ሁሉም ነገሮች ለነቢያት በመንፈስ እንዲያውቁት ይደረጋሉና።

፫ ስለዚህ ያነበብኳቸው ነገሮች ከጊዜያዊና መንፈሳዊ ነገሮች ጋር የተገናኙ ናቸው፤ የእስራኤል ቤት በቅርቡ ወይም በኋላ፣ በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ እናም ደግሞ በሁሉም ሀገሮች መካከል ሲበተኑ ይታያል።

፬ እናም እነሆ በኢየሩሳሌም ውስጥ ካሉት አውቀት ብዙዎቹ ጠፍተዋል። አዎን ከሁሉም ነገዶች ብዙዎች ተሰደዋል፤ እናም በባህሩ ደሴቶች ላይ ወዲህና ወዲያ ተበትነዋል፤ እንዲሁም የት እንዳሉ ማናችንም አናውቅም፣ ነገር ግን ሁላችንም የምናውቀው እነርሱ መሰደዳቸውን ነው።

፭ እናም ስለተሰደዱ፣ እነርሱን በተመለከተና ደግሞ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ምክንያት ከእዚህ በኋላ ለሚበተኑትና ከሌሎች ሀገሮች ጋር የሚቀላቀሉትን በተመለከተ እነዚህ ነገሮች ተተንብየዋል፤ ምክንያቱም በእርሱ ላይ ልባቸውን ያጠጥራሉና፤ ስለዚህ በሁሉም ህዝቦች መካከል ይበተናሉ፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ህዝቦች ይጠላሉ።

፮ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በኋላም በአህዛብ ያጠቧቸዋል፣ እና ጌታ በአህዛብ ላይ እጁን ያነሳል፤ እንደአርማም ያቆማቸዋል፤ ልጆቻቸውንም በክንዳቻቸው ላይ ይሸከሟቸዋል፤ ሌቶች ልጆቻቸውንም በትከሻቸው ይሸከማሉ፣ እነሆ የተነገሩት እነዚህ ነገሮች ጊዜያዊ ናቸው፤ ጌታ ከአባቶቻችን ጋር የገባቸው ኪዳን እንደዚህም ናቸውና፤ እናም ይህም በሚመጣው ጊዜ እኛንና፣ ደግሞም የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑት ወንድሞቻችንን ሁሉ ያመለክታል።

፯ እናም ይህ ሁሉም የእስራኤል ቤት ከተበተኑና ከተቀላቀሉ በኋላ፣ አዎን ጌታ እግዚአብሔርም በዚህች ምድር ገፅ ላይ በአህዛብ መካከል ኃያል ህዝብን የሚያሰነሳበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፤ እና በእነርሱም ዘርቻችን ይበተናሉ ማለት ነው።

1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

፳፯ እናም ዘርቻችን ከተበተኑ በኋላ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በእስራኤል መካከል ለዘርቻችን ታላቅ ጥቅም የሚሆኑ ድንቅ ሰራ መሰራቱን ይቀጥላል፤ ስለዚህ ይህም በእስራኤል እንደተጠበቀና በክንዳቸውና በትከሻቸው እንደተሸከሟቸው ጋር ተመሳሳይ።

፳፱ እናም ይህ ደግሞ ለእስራኤል ጥቅም ይኖረዋል፤ እናም ለእስራኤል ብቻ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን ለእስራኤል ቤት ሁሉና፤ በዘርህ የምድር ወገኖች ሁሉ ይባረካሉ በማለት የሰማይ አባት ከእስራኤል ጋር የገባው ቃልኪዳኖች ለማሳወቅ ነው።

፲ እናም ወንድሞቼ ጌታ ክንዲን በእስራኤል ሁሉ ፊት ካልገለጠ በስተቀር የምድር ወገኖች ሁሉ መባረክ እንደማይችሉ እንድታውቁ አፈልጋለሁ።

፲፩ ስለዚህ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ቃልኪዳኑን እና ወንጌሉን በእስራኤል ቤት ውስጥ ላሉት በመሰጠት ክንዲን በእስራኤል ሁሉ ፊት መግለጥን ይቀጥላል።

፲፪ ስለዚህ ከምርኮ እንደገና ያወጣቸዋል፤ እናም በእንደ ላይ በርስት ምድራቸው ላይ ይሰበሰባሉ፤ ከጨለማና ከጭጋግም ይወጣሉ፤ እናም ጌታ አዳኛቸውና ቤዛቸው የእስራኤልም ኃይል መሆኑን ያውቃሉ።

፲፫ እናም የምድር ሁሉ ጋለሞታ የሆነችው ታላቋና የርኩሰት ቤተክርስቲያን ደም በእራሳቸው ላይ ይመለሳል፤ ምክንያቱም በመካከላቸው ጦርነት ይሆናል፤ እና በአጆቻቸው ያሉ ጎራዳዎቻቸውም በራሳቸው ላይ ይወድቃሉ፤ በራሳቸውም ደም ይሰክራሉ።

፲፬ እናም የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፤ በእንቺ ላይ ለጦርነት የሚነሳ እይሰንዳንዱ ሀገር እርስ በርስ ይቃወማሉ፤ እናም እነርሱ የጌታን ህዝቦች ለማጥመድ በቆፈሩት ጉድጓድ ይወድቃሉ። እናም ፅዮንን የሚዋጉ ሁሉ ይጠፋሉ፤ ትክክለኛውን የጌታን መንገድ የምታስተው ታላቋ ጋለሞታም፤ አዎን ታላቋና የርኩሰት ቤተክርስቲያን ወደ አፈር ትወድቃለች፤ እንዲሁም ውድቀቷ ታላቅ ይሆናል።

፲፭ እነሆም ስይጣን በሰዎች ልጆች ልብ ላይ ኃይል የሚያጣበት ጊዜ በፍጥነት ይመጣል ብሎ ነቢዩ ተናግሯል፤ የሚኮሩ እና ኃጢያትን የሚሰሩ ሁሉ እንደ አገዳ የሚሆኑበት ጊዜ ቀኑ በቅርቡ ይመጣል፤ እና መቃጠል የሚገባቸው ጊዜም ይመጣል።

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

፲፮ በሰዎች ልጆች ላይ ሁሉ የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ የሚወርድበት ጊዜ በቅርቡ ይመጣል፤ ምክንያቱም ጎጂነቶቻችን ፍጥነትን እንዲያጠፉ እርሱ አይፈቅድምና።

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

፲፱ ስለዚህ እርሱ በጎይሉ ፍጥነት ይጠብቃል፤ ምንም እንኳን የቁጣው ሙሉት መምጣት ቢኖርበትም እናም ጠላቶቻቸውን እንኳ በእሳት እስከማጥፋት ድረስ ፍጥነት ይጠበቃሉ። ስለዚህ ፍጥነት መፍራት የለባቸውም፤ ምክንያቱም ከእሳትም እንኳን ቢሆን ይድናሉ ብሎ ነቢዩ ተናግሯልና።

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

፳፬ እነሆ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች በቅርቡ መሆን አለባቸው አላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን ደምና እሳት፣ እንዲሁም የጭስ ጭጋግ እንኳን መምጣት አለባቸው፤ እናም ይህ በዚህች ምድር ገፅ ላይ መሆን አለበት፤ እናም እነርሱ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ላይ ልባቸውን ካጠጠሩ ይህም ለሰዎች በሰጋ መሰረት ይመጣል።

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

፳፱ እነሆ ፍጥነት አይጠፋም፤ ከፅዮን ጋር የሚዋጉ የሚጠፋበት ጊዜ በእርግጥ መምጣት አለበት።

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

፳፻ እናም ሙሴ፣ ጌታ የእናንተ አምላክ እኔን አይነት አንድ ነቢይ በመካከላችሁ ያስነሳል፤ ለእናንተ በሚናገሩት ሁሉም ነገሮች እናንተ ስሙት ብሎ የተናገራቸው ቃላት ይሟሉ ዘንድ፣ በእርግጥ ጌታ ለህዝቡ መንገድን ያዘጋጃል። እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ያንን ነቢይ የማይሰማ ከህዝቡ መካከል ተለይቶ ይጠፋል።

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

፷፩ እናም እሁን እኔ ኔሬ እናንተን የምናገራችሁ ይህ ሙሴ ስለእርሱ የተናገረለት ነቢይ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ነው፤ ስለዚህ እርሱ በፅድቅ ይፈርዳል።

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

፷፪ እናም ፍጥነት መፍራት የለባቸውም፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የሚደባለቁ አይደሉምና። ነገር ግን ይህ በሰዎች ልጆች መካከል የተመሰረተው የዲያብሎስ መንግስት ነው፣ መንግስቱም በሰጋ በተሸፈኑት መካከል የተመሰረተው ነው—

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

፳፬ ሁብትን ለማግኘት የተመሰረቱት ቤተክርስቲያኖች ሁሉ፣ የሰጋ ኃይልን ለማግኘት የተመሰረቱት ሁሉ፣ እናም በዓለም ዐይናት ታዋቂ ለመሆን የተመሰረቱትና፣ የሰጋቸውን ፍላጎት ለማርካትና የዓለምን ነገሮች ለሚሹ፣ እንዲሁም ሁሉንም አይነት ኃጢያት ለማድረግ ለሚሹ ጊዜው በፍጥነት ይመጣል፤ አዎን በአጠቃላይ በዲያብሎስ መንግሥት አባል የሆኑት ሁሉ ሊፈሩ፣ ሊንቀጠቀጡና ሊናወጡ ይገባቸዋል፤ እነርሱም መዋረድ ያለባቸው ናቸው፣ እነርሱም እንደአገዳ መንደድ ያለባቸው ናቸው፣ እናም ይህ እንደነቢዩ ቃላት ነው።

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

፳፬ እናም ፃድቃኖች እንደሰባ እምቦሳ የሚመሩበትና፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ በበላይነት በሰልጣንና በኃይል፣ እንዲሁም በታላቅ ክብር የሚነግሱበት ጊዜ በፍጥነት ይመጣል።

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

፳፭ እናም እርሱ ልጆቹን ከአራቱም የምድር ማዕዘናት ይሰበሰባል፤ እናም በጎቹንም ይቆጥራል፣ እነርሱም ያውቁታል፤ እናም አንድ መንጋና አንድ እረኛ ይሆናሉ፤ እርሱም በጎቹን ይመግባል፣ እነርሱም በእርሱ ስማሪያ ያገኛሉ።

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

፳፮ እናም በህዝቦቹ ፅድቅ ምክንያት ሰይጣን ኃይል የለውም፤ ስለዚህ ለብዙ ዓመታት ሊፈታ አይችልም፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በስዎች ልብ ላይ ሰልጣን የለውም፣ እነርሱ በፅድቅ ይኖራሉ፣ እናም የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ይነግሳልና።

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

፳፯ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በሰጋ መምጣት አለባቸው።

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

፳፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ ሁሉም ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣ ቋንቋዎችና፣ ህዝቦች ንስሀ ከገቡ ከእስራኤል ቅዱስ ጋር በደህንነት ይኖራሉ።

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

፳፱ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ አቆማለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ አሁን ከዚህ የበለጠ ለማለት አልደፍርም።

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

፴ ስለዚህ ወንድሞቼ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎቹ ላይ የተፃፉት ነገሮች እውነት እንደሆኑ እንድታውቁ አፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም እነርሱ ሁሉም ሰው ለእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት ታዛዥ መሆን እንዳለበት ይመስክራሉ።

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

፴፩ ስለዚህ እናንተ እኔና አባቴ ብቻ ይህንን የመሰከርን፣ እናም ደግሞ ስለ እነርሱ ያስተማርን ነን በማለት ማሰብ የለባችሁም። ስለዚህ እናንተ ለትዕዛዛቱ ታዛዥ ከሆናችሁና እስከመጨረሻው ከፀናችሁ በመጨረሻው ቀን ትድናላችሁ። እናም እንዲህም ነው። አሜን።

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

የኔፊ ሁለተኛ መጽሐፍ

የሌሂ የአጭጭት ታሪክ። የኔፊ ወንድሞች በእርሱ ላይ አመጹ። ጌታ ኔፊን ወደ ምድረበዳ እንዲሄድ አስጠነቀቀው። በምድረበዳ የነበረው ጉዞና የሌሎች ነገሮች መዝገብ።

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

፪ ኔፊ ፩

፩ እና እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ኔፊ፣ ወንድሞቼን ማስተማራን ከጨረሰኩ በኋላ አባታችን ሌሂም ደግሞ፣ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገራቸው፣ እናም ጌታ እነርሱን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር በማውጣት ምን ያህል ታላቅ ነገር እንዳደረገላቸው አስታወሳቸው።

፪ እናም በባህር ላይ በነበሩ ጊዜ ሰለነበራቸው አመፅና፣ ደግሞ በባህር ውስጥ እንዳይሰጥሙ በማድረግ እግዚአብሔር ሰላሳየው ምህረት ነገራቸው።

፫ እናም ደግሞ ሰላገኙት የቃል ኪዳን ምድር በተመለከተ፣ ጌታ እኛን ከኢየሩሳሌም እንድንወጣ በማስጠነቀቅ እንዴት መሀሪ እንደነበር ነገራቸው።

፬ እነሆም፣ አለ እርሱ፣ ራዕይን አይቻለሁ፣ በእርሱም ኢየሩሳሌም እንደጠፋችሁም አውቃለሁ፤ እኛም በኢየሩሳሌም ቀርተን ቢሆን ኖሮ እኛም ደግሞ እንጠፋ ነበር።

፭ ነገር ግን፣ መከራችንን በሙሉ በመቋቋም ከምድር ሁሉ የተመረጠችውን የቃል ኪዳን ምድር፣ ጌታ አምላክ ለእኔ ለዘርቼ ርስት እንድትሆን ቃል የገባልኝን ምድር አግኝተናል አለ። አዎን፣ ጌታ ይህንን ምድር ለእኔና ለልጆቼ እናም ደግሞ ከሌሎች ምድር በጌታ እጅ ተመርተው ለሚወጡት በሙሉ ለዘለዓለም ቃል ኪዳን ገብቷል።

፮ ስለዚህ፣ እኔ፣ ሌሂ፣ በውስጤ ባለው የመንፈስ ሥራ መሠረት፣ በጌታ እጅ ተመርተው ካልሆነ በቀር ወደ እዚህች ምድር ማንም እንደማይመጣ አተነበያልሁ።

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

፮ ስለዚህ ይህች ምድር እርሱ ለሚያመጣው ተቀድሳለች። እናም በሰጣቸው ትዕዛዛት መሰረት እርሱን የሚያገለግሉት ከሆነ ለእነርሱ የነፃነት ምድር ትሆናለች፤ ስለዚህ፣ መቼም ቢሆን በምርኮ አይያዙም፤ ከተያዙ ግን በኃጢያት ምክንያት ነው፤ ነገር ግን ኃጢያት ከተሰፋፋ ምድሪቷ በእነርሱ የተነሳ የተረገመች ትሆናለች፤ ነገር ግን ለፃድቃን ለዘለዓለም የተባረከች ትሆናለች።

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

፯ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህች ምድር በሌሎች ሀገሮች ሳትታወቅ ትቆይ ዘንድ ይህ ጥበብ ነው፤ እነሆም፣ ብዙ ሀገሮችም ምድሪቷን ይሞሏታል፣ ለውርስ የሚሆን ቦታ እንኳን አይኖርም።

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

፱ ስለዚህ፣ እኔ፣ ሌሂ፣ ጌታ አምላክ ከኢየሩሳሌም የሚያወጣቸው በሙሉ ትዕዛዛቱን እስከጠበቁ ድረስ፣ በዚች ምድር ላይ እንደሚበለፀጉ ቃል ኪዳንን ተቀበልኩ፤ እናም ከሌሎች ሀገሮች ይጠበቃሉ፣ ይህችንም ምድር በራሳቸው ይይዟታል። የእርሱን ትዕዛዛት የሚጠብቁ ከሆኑም በዚች ምድር ላይ የተባረኩ ይሆናሉ፣ የሚያስቸግራቸው ወይም የርስት ምድራቸውን የሚወስድባቸውም ማንም አይኖርም፤ እናም ለዘለዓለም በደህንነት ይኖራሉ።

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

፲ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ታላላቅ በረከቶችን ከጌታ አጅ ከተቀበሉ በኋላ ባለማመን የሚመነሙበት ጊዜ ሲመጣ—የምድርንና የሁሉን ሰዎች አፈጣጠር እያወቁ፣ ከምድር መፈጠር ጀምሮ የጌታን ታላቅና ድንቅ ስራዎች እያወቁ፣ ሁሉን ነገር በእምነት ለማድረግ ኃይል ከተሰጣቸው በኋላ፣ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ሁሉንም ትዕዛዛት ፍሯቸው፣ እናም በእርሱ በማያልቅ ደግነት ወደዚህች የተከበረች የቃል ኪዳን ምድር ከመጡ በኋላ—እነሆ፣ እኔ አላለሁ፣ እነርሱ የእስራኤሉን ቅዱስ፣ እውነተኛውን መሲህ፣ ቤዛቸውንና አምላካቸውን የሚክዱበት ቀን ከመጣ፣ እነሆ፣ ትክክለኛ የሆነው የእርሱ ፍርድ በላያቸው ላይ ይመጣባቸዋል።

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

፲፩ አዎን፣ ሌሎች ሀገሮችን በእነርሱ ላይ ያመጣባቸዋል፣ ለእነርሱም ኃይልን ይሰጣቸዋል፣ እናም የርስት ምድራቸውንም ይወስድባቸዋል፣ እንዲሁም እንዲበተኑና እንዲጠፋ ያደርጋል።

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

፲፪ አዎን፣ አንዲ ትውልድ ወደሌላው ሲተላለፍ ደም መፍሰስ ይኖራል፤ እናም በእነርሱ መካከል ታላቅ ቅጣት ይሆናል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ልጆቼ ሆይ፣ እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ቃላቶቼን እንድታደምጡ እፈልጋለሁ።

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

፲፫ እቤቱ እናንት እንድትነቁ፤ ከከባድ እንቅልፍ እንድትነቁ፣ አዎን፣ ከሲኦል እንቅልፍ እንኳን እንድትነቁ፣ እናም የታሰራችሁበትን የሰው ልጆችን ወደዘለአለማዊ የጉስቁልና የሀዘን ጥልቅ በምርኮ የሚወሰደውን ሰንሰለት አውልቁ።

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

፲፬ ንቁ! ከትቢያም ላይ ተነሱ፣ እናም ማንም ተጓዥ ሊመለስበት ወደ ማይቻለው ወደ ቀዝቃዛውና ወደ ዝምተኛው መቃብር በቅርቡ ሊሄዱ ያሉትን የሚንቀጠቀጡትን የወላጆችህን ቃላት አድምጡ፤ እኔም በተወሰኑ ቀናት ውስጥ ምድር ሁሉ ወደሚሄዱበት እሄዳለሁ።

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

፲፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጌታ ነፍሴን ከሲኦል አድኗታል፤ እኔ የእርሱን ክብር አይቻለሁ፣ እናም እኔ በእርሱ በዘለዓለማዊው ፍቅር ክንዶች ተከብቤአለሁ።

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

፲፮ እናም የጌታን ስርዓቶችና ፍርዶች መጠበቅን ታስታውሱ። ዘንድ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እነሆ፣ ይህ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ነፍሴን የሚያሰጨንቅ ነው።

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

፲፯ ልቤ ከጊዜ ወደጊዜ በኃዘን ተጨንቋል፣ ምክንያቱም በልባችሁ ጠጣርነት የተነሳ ትላዩና ለዘለዓለም ትጠፉ ዘንድ ጌታ አምላካችሁ በሙሉ ቁጣው እንዳይመጣ እኔ ፈርቻለሁ፤

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

፲፰ ወይም፣ ለብዙ ትውልድ እርግማን በላያችሁ ላይ ይመጣባችኋል፣ እናም በሰይፍና በርሃብ ትጎበኛላችሁ፣ እንዲሁም ትጠላላችሁ፣ እናም እንደዲያብሎስ ፈቃድ በምርኮ ትመራላችሁ ብዬ ፈርቼ ነበርና።

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

፲፱ እቤቱ፣ ልጆቼ ሆይ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች በእናንተ ላይ እንዳይመጡባችሁ፣ ነገር ግን እናንተ በጌታ የተመረጣችሁና የተወደዳችሁ ህዝቦች እንድትሆኑ እፈልጋለሁ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእርሱ ፈቃድ ይህን፤ የእርሱ መንገዶች ለዘለዓለም ፅድቅ ናቸውና።

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

፳ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለ፡ ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቃችሁ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ትበለፀጋላችሁ፤ ነገር ግን ትዕዛዛቴን ባልጠበቃችሁ ጊዜ ሁሉ ከእኔ ዘንድ ትለያላቸሁ።

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

፳፩ እናም አሁን ነፍሴ በእናንተ ደስ እንዲላትና፣ ልቤ ይህንን ዓለም በእናንተ ምክንያት በደስታ እንድትለይ፣ እኔ በሀዘንና በመከራ ወደ መቃብር እንዳልሄድ፣ ልጆቼ ሆይ ከትቢያ ላይ ተነሱና፣ ሰዎች ሁኑ፣ እናም በምርጥ እንዳትያዙ በአንድ ሀሳብና በአንድ ልብ ሁኑ፣ በሁሉ ነገሮች ተሰማሙ፤

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

፳፪ በከባድ እርግጫን እንዳትረገሙ፤ እንደዚሁም ደግሞ የትክክለኛውን አምላክ ቁጣ እስከሚያጠፋችሁ ድረስ፣ አዎን፣ ዘለዓለማዊ የሰጋም የነፍሰም ጥፋት በላያችሁ ላይ እንዳታመጡ።

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

፳፫ ንቁ፣ ልጆቼ፣ የፅድቅን የጦር ዕቃ ልበሱ። የታሰራችሁበትን ስንሰለት አውልቁ፣ ከጨለማም ውጡ፣ ከትቢያም ተነሱ።

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

፳፬ ራዕዮቹ ታላቅ በነበሩትና ከኢየሩሳሌም ከወጣን ጀምሮ ትዕዛዛቱን በጠበቀው፤ እናም ደግሞ እኛን ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድር በማምጣት በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ በሆነው፣ በወንድማችሁ ላይ አታምፁ፤ በእርሱ ባይሆን ኖሮ፣ ሁላችንም በምድረበዳው በረሃብ ባለቅን ነበርና፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እናንተ ልትገድሉት ሞክራችኋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም እርሱ በእናንተ የተነሳ ብዙ መከራን ተቀብሏል።

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

፳፭ እናም እኔ እርሱ በእናንተ የተነሳ ድጋሚ ይሰቃያል ብዬ በእጅጉ አፈራለሁ፤ እነሆም እናንተ እርሱ በእናንተ ላይ ሰልጣንና ኃይልን ይፈልጋል ብላችሁ ወቅሳችሁታል፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ ኃይልንና ሰልጣንን በእናንተ ላይ እንዳልፈለገ አውቃለሁ፣ ነገር ግን እርሱ የእግዚአብሔርን ክብርና የእናንተን ዘለዓለማዊ ደህንነት ይፈልጋል።

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

፳፮ እናም እናንተ እርሱ ለእናንተ ግልፅ በመሆኑ አጉረምርማችኋል። እናንተ እርሱ ቁርጥ ቃል ተናግሯል ብላችኋል፤ ተቆጥቶናል ብላችኋል፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእርሱ ኃይላችን በእርሱ ውስጥ በነበረው በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ኃይል ነው፣ እናም እናንተ ቁጣ የምትሉትም ሊያቆመው የማይችለው በእግዚአብሔር ውስጥ ባለው መሰረት የእናንተን ኃጢአቶች በግልፅ የሚገልጸው እውነት ነው።

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

፳፯ እናም እናንተም ያዘዛችሁን መቀበል እስኪኖርባችሁ ድረስ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በእርሱ ውስጥ መሆን አለበት። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ መዝጋት እስኪያቅተው አፋን በመክፈት ያናገረው እርሱ ሳይሆን በውስጡ የነበረው የጌታ መንፈስ ነው።

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

፳፰ እናም አሁን ልጆቼ፣ ላማንና፣ ደግሞም ልሙኤልና ሳም፣ እናም ደግሞ የእስማኤል ልጆች የሆናችሁ ልጆቼ፣ እነሆ፣ የኔሬን ድምፅ የምትሰሙ ከሆነ አትጠፉም። እናም እርሱን የምታደምጡ ከሆነ በረከቴን አተውላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን የመጀመሪያውን በረከቴንም እንኳን ቢሆን።

፳፱ ነገር ግን እርሱን የማታደምጡ ከሆነ የመጀመሪያውን በረከቴን እወስድባችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የእኔን በረከት፣ እናም በእርሱ ላይ ያርፋል።

፴ እናም አሁን ዘራም፣ ለአንተ እናገራለሁ—እነሆ፣ አንተ የላባን አገልጋይ ነህ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ አንተ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ወጥተህል፣ እናም አንተ ለልጄ ለኔሬ እውነተኛና የዘለዓለም ጓደኛው እንደሆንክ አውቃለሁ።

፴፩ ስለሆነም አንተ ታማኝ በመሆንህ ዘርህ ከእርሱ ዘር ጋር የተባረከ ይሆናል፣ በዚህች ምድር ላይ ለብዙ ጊዜ በብልፅግና ይኖራሉ፤ እናም ከክፋት በስተቀር በዚህች ምድር ላይ ለዘለዓለም ብልፅግናቸውን የሚጎዳቸው ወይም የሚረብሻቸው ምንም አይኖርም።

፴፪ ስለሆነም፣ እናንተ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት የምትጠብቁ ከሆነ፣ ጌታ ይህችን ምድር ለዘርህ ደህንነት ከልጄ ዘር ጋር ይቀድሳል።

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

፪ ኔፊ ፪

፩ ያዕቆብ፣ እናም አሁን እኔ እናገርሃለሁ። በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በመከራዬ ጊዜ አንተ የበኩር ልጄ ነህ። እናም እነሆ በወንድሞችህ መጥፎነት የተነሳ፣ በልጅነትህ ጊዜ በመከራና በብዙ ኃዘን ተሰቃይተህል።

፪ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ያዕቆብ፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ የተወለድክ የበኩር ልጄ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ታላቅነት ታውቃለህ፤ እናም እርሱ መከራህን ወደ ጥቅምህ ይለውጥልሃል።

፫ ስለዚህ፣ ነፍሱህ ይባረካል፣ እናም ከወንድምህ ኔፊ ጋር በደህና ትኖራለህ፤ እናም ቀናትህን አምላክህን በማገልገል ታሳልፋለህ። ስለዚህ፣ በቤዛህ ፅድቅ ምክንያት አንተ እንደምትድን አውቃለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በዘመኑ ፍፃሜ ለሰዎች ደህንነትን ለማምጣት እርሱ እንደሚመጣ አይተሀል።

፬ እናም አንተ በወጣትነትህ የእርሱን ክብር አይተሀል፤ ስለዚህ፣ አንተ እርሱ በሰጋውም እንኳን ሆኖ እንደሚያገለግላቸው የተባረክህ ነህ፤ ምክንያቱም መንፈስ ትላንትና፣ ዛሬና፣ ለዘለዓለም እንድ ነውና። እናም ከሰው ልጅ ውድቀት ጀምሮ መንገዱ ተዘጋጅቷል፣ ደህንነትም ነፃ ነው።

፭ እናም ሰዎች መጥፎን ከጥሩው መለየትን ለማወቅ በብቃት ተምረዋል። እናም ህግ ለሰዎች ተሰጥቶአል። እና በህግ ማንም ስጋ አይጸድቅም፤ ወይም፣ በህግ ሰዎች ከእግዚአብሔር ተለይተዋል። አዎን፣ በጊዜያዊ ህግ እነርሱ ተለይተዋል፤ ደግሞም፣ በመንፈሳዊ ህግ ከጥሩው ይለያሉ፣ ለዘለዓለምም ጎሰቋሎች ይሆናሉ።

፮ ስለዚህ፣ ቤዛነት በቅዱሱ መሲህ እና በእርሱ አማካይነት ይመጣል፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በፀጋና በእውነት የተሞላ ነው።

፯ እነሆ፣ እርሱ ልባቸው ለተሰበረ፣ እና መንፈሳቸው ለተዋረደ ሁሉ በህግ የተጠየቁትን ለማሟላት እራሱን ለኃጢያት መስዋዕት ያቀርባል፣ እናም በህግ የተጠየቀው ለሌላ ለማንም ሊመለስ አይቻልም።

፰ ስለሆነም፣ የመጀመሪያው የትንሣኤ በመሆን፣ በሰጋ በሞተው እናም ህይወቱን በመንፈስ ኃይል እንደገና በማንሳት ሙታን እንዲነሱ ባደረገው በቅዱሱ መሲህ መልካም ሥራና፣ ምህረትና ፀጋ በሰተቀር፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ማንም ስጋ ሊኖር እንደማይችል ያውቁ ዘንድ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለምድር ነዋሪዎች እንዲያውቁት ማድረግ እንዴት ታላቅ ነገር ነው።

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

፱ ስለዚህ እርሱ ለእግዚአብሔር የመጀመሪያው ፍሬ ነው፤ ሆኖም ለሰው ልጆች ሁሉ ያማልዳል፤ እናም እነዚያ በእርሱ ያመኑትም ይድናሉ።

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

፲ እናም ለሁሉም በመማለዲ፣ ሁሉም ሰዎች ወደ እግዚአብሔር ይመጣሉ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በውስጡ ባለው እውነትና ቅድስና መሰረት እንዲፈረድባቸው በፊቱ ይቆማሉ። ስለዚህ የተመደበውን ቅጣት ለመስጠት፣ የኃጢያት ክፍያውን መጨረሻ ለማሟላት ቅዱሱ አስፈላጊውን ህግ ሰጥቷል፤ ይህም የተመደበ ቅጣት ከተመደበው የደስታ ሽልማት ጋር ተቃራኒ ነው።

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

፲፩ ለሁሉም ነገሮች ተቃራኒ መኖር አስፈላጊ ነውና። ካልሆነ ግን በምድረብዳው ውስጥ የወለድኩህ የበኩር ልጄ፣ ፅድቅ፣ ኃጢያት፣ ቅድስና ወይም መከራ፣ ጥሩ ወይም መጥፎ መኖር አይችልም። ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች በአንድነት ሊጣመሩ ይገባል፤ ስለዚህ፣ አንድ ሰውነት ብቻ ከሆነ፣ ሞትም ሆነ ህይወት፣ መበሰበሰም ሆነ አለመበሰበስ፣ ደስታም ሆነ መከራ፣ መገንዘብም ሆነ አለማስተዋል ሳይኖረው፣ ሙት መሆን አለበት።

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

፲፪ ስለዚህ፣ ይህ ለማይረባ መፈጠር አለበት፤ ስለዚህ በመፈጠሩ በስተመጨረሻም ምንም ዓላማ ባልኖረውም ነበር። ስለዚህ፣ ይህ ነገር የእግዚአብሔርን ጥበብና የእርሱን ዘላለማዊ ዓላማውን፣ እናም ደግሞ ኃይሉን፣ ምህረቱን፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ፍርድ ባጠፋውም ነበር።

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

፲፫ እናም እናንተ ህግ የለም የምትሉ ከሆነ፣ ኃጢያትም ደግሞ የለም ትላላችሁ። ኃጢያት የለም ካላችሁ፣ ፅድቅም ደግሞ የለም ትላላችሁ። እና ፅድቅ ከሌለ ደስታም የለም። እናም ፅድቅም ሆነ ደስታ ከሌለ ቅጣትም ሆነ መከራ አይኖርም። እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች ካልኖሩ እግዚአብሔር የለም። እናም እግዚአብሔር ከሌለ እኛም አንኖርም፣ መሬትም አትኖርም፣ የነገሮች ፍጥረት ሁሉ ሊሆን አይችልም፣ ምንም ነገር በማንኛውም ነገር ላይ ተፅዕኖ ሊያደርግ ወይም ተፅዕኖ ሊደረግበት አይችልምና፣ ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች ሊጠፉ በተገባቸው ነበር።

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

፲፬ እናም አሁን ልጆቼ እኔ ለእናንተ ጥቅምና ግንዛቤ እነዚህን ነገሮች እናገራለሁ፤ እግዚአብሔር አለ፣ እናም እርሱ ሁሉንም ነገሮች፣ ሰማያትንና ምድርንና፣ ተፅዕኖ የሚያደርጉ ወይም ተፅዕኖ የሚደረግባቸውን በእነርሱ ውስጥ ያሉትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች ፈጥሯል።

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

፲፭ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ አላማውን ወደ ሰው ዘር የመጨረሻ ሁኔታ ለማምጣት፣ እርሱ የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችንንና የምድር አራዊትን፣ እናም የሰማይ አዕዋፋትንና፣ ባጠቃላይ የተፈጠሩት ነገሮች ሁሉ ከፈጠረ በኋላ፣ ተቃራኒ መኖሩ አስፈላጊ ነበር፤ እንዲሁም እንዲሁ ጣፋጭ ሲሆን ሌላኛው መራራ እንደሆነው የተከለከለውም ፍሬ እንደ ህይወት ዛፍ ተቃራኒ ነበር።

፲፮ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ሰው በራሱ እንዲያደርግ ሰጠው። ስለዚህ፣ ሰው በእንዲሁ ወይም በሌላኛው ካልተሳቡ በስተቀር ለራሱ ማድረግ አይቻለውም።

፲፯ እናም እኔ ሌሂ፣ ባነበብኳቸውና በተፃፈው መሰረት፣ የእግዚአብሔር መልእክ ከሰማይ እንደተጣለ እገምታለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ እርሱም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ክፉ የሆነውን ለማድረግ በመሞከር ዲያብሎስ ሆነ።

፲፰ እናም እርሱ ከሰማይ በመጣሉና፣ ለዘለዓለም መከረኛ በመሆኑ፣ የሰውን ዘር በሙሉ በተመሳሳይ መከረኛ ለማድረግ ፈለገ። ስለዚህ፣ ለሌሎችም አዎን፣ ያ የቀደመው እባብ የሆነ ዲያብሎስ፣ የውሸት ሁሉ አባት እንዲህ አላት—ስለዚህ የተከለከለውን ፍሬ ብትመገቢ አትሞችም፣ ነገር ግን መልካሙንና መጥፎውን በማወቅ እንደ እግዚአብሔር ትሆኛለሽ አላት።

፲፱ እናም አዳምና ሌሂ የተከለከለውን ፍሬ ከበሉ በኋላ፣ መሬትን አርሰው ይበሉ ዘንድ ከዑድን ገነት ወጡ።

፳ እናም ልጆችን ወለዱ፤ አዎን፣ የምድር ቤተሰቦችንም ሁሉ።

፳፩ እናም እንደ እግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ በሰጠ በነበሩበት ጊዜ ገሰሀ ይገቡ ዘንድ የሰው ልጆች ዘመን ረጅም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ ህይወታቸው የሙከራ ጊዜ ሆነ፣ እናም የሚኖሩበት ዘመን፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለሰው ልጆች በሰጠው ትዕዛዛት መሰረት ተራዘመ። ሰዎች ሁሉ ገሰሀ መግባት እንዳለባቸው ትእዛዝ ሰጥቶ ነበርና፤ ለሰዎች ሁሉ ወላጆቻቸው ህግን በመተላለፋቸው ምክንያት እንደጠፉ አሳይቷቸዋልና።

፳፪ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ አዳም ባይተላለፍ ኖሮ አይወድቅም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን በዑድን ገነት ይቆይ ነበር። እናም ሁሉም ተፈጥረው የነበሩ ነገሮች ከተፈጠሩ በኋላ በነበሩበት ሁኔታ መቆየት ነበረባቸው፤ እናም ለዘለዓለም በነበሩበት ሁኔታ መቆየት ነበረባቸው እናም መጨረሻ አይኖራቸውም ነበር።

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

፳፫ እናም እነርሱ ልጆች አይኖራቸውም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በየዋህነት ይቆዩ ነበር፤ ደስታ አይኖራቸውም፤ መከራንም አያውቁምና፤ ኃጢአትን ባለማወቃቸው መልካምን አይሰሩም።

፳፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች የተደረጉት ሁሉንም ነገሮች በሚያውቀው በጌታ ጥበብ ነው።

፳፭ ሰዎች እንዲኖሩ፣ አዳም ወደቀ፤ እና ሰዎች የሚኖሩትም ደስታም እንዲኖራቸው ዘንድ ነው።

፳፮ እናም መሲሁ የሰው ልጆችን ከውድቀት ለማዳን በዘመን ፍፃሜ ይመጣል። እናም እነርሱ ከውድቀት በመዳናቸው፣ መልካሙን ከመጥፎው ለይተው በማወቅ፣ በመጨረሻውና በታላቁ ቀን የህግ ቅጣት በስተቀር እግዚአብሔር በሰጠው ትዕዛዛት መሰረት የራሳቸውን ምርጫ ለማድረግና በሌላኛው ተፅዕኖ እንዳይደርሱባቸውም ዘንድ ለዘለዓለም ነፃ ሆነዋል።

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ ሰዎች በሰጋ ባሉ ጊዜ ነፃ ናቸው፤ እናም አስፈላጊ የሆኑ ነገሮች ሁሉ ለሰው ተሰጥተዋል። እናም እነርሱ ሁሉን ሰው በሚማልደው አማካኝነት ነፃነትን ወይም ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትን ለመምረጥ፣ ወይም እንደዲያብሎስ ምርኮና ህይል ምርኮንና ሞትን ለመምረጥ ነፃ ናቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ሰዎች ሁሉ እንደእርሱ መከረኛ እንዲሆኑ ይፈልጋል።

፳፰ እናም አሁን፣ ልጆቼ፣ በታላቁ አማላጅ እንድትመኩና ታላቅ ትዕዛዛቱን እንድትሰሙ፣ እናም ለቃሉ ታማኝ እንድትሆኑና፣ ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትን በቅዱስ መንፈስ ፈቃድ መሰረት እንድትመርጡ እፈልጋለሁ።

፳፱ እናም በሰጋ ፈቃድ እንዲሁም፣ በራሱ መንግስት በእናንተ ይነግስ ዘንድ፣ የዲያብሎስን መንፈስ እናንተን ወደ ሲኦል እንዲወስዳችሁ ምርኮኛ የሚያደርግ ህይል በሚሰጠው በውስጡ ባለው ክፋት መሰረት ዘለአለማዊ ሞት አትምረጡ።

፴ ልጆቼ፣ እኔ እነዚህን ጥቂት ቃላት ሁሉ በመጨረሻው በሙከራዬ ጊዜ ተናግራለሁ፤ እናም እኔ በነቢዩ ቃል መሰረት መልካሙን ክፍል መርጫለሁ። እናም እኔ ከነፍሳችሁ ዘለዓለማዊ ደህንነት በስተቀር ሌላ ምንም ዓላማ የለኝም። አሜን።

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

፪ ኔፊ ፫

፩ እናም የመጨረሻ ለተወለድከው የሴፍ፣ አሁን እናገርሀለሁ። እኔ በተሰቃየሁበት ምድረበዳ ውስጥ ተወልደሁል፤ አዎን፣ በታላቁ የሰቃዬ ዘመን እናትህ ወለደኝህ።

፪ እናም ለዘላለማዊ ደህንነታችሁ የእስራኤልን ቅዱስ ትዕዛዛት ከጠበቅህ ጌታ ይህንን ታላቅ የተከበረ ምድር ለእንተና ለዘሮችህ፣ ከወንድሞችህ ጋር ርሰት ይሆን ዘንድ ጌታ ለእንተ እንዲቀድሱልህ እመኝልሃለሁ።

፫ እናም አሁን፣ የሴፍ በሰቃዬ ዘመን ከምድረበዳ ያወጣሁህ የመጨረሻው ልጄ፣ ጌታ ለዘላለም ይባርክህ፣ ዘርህ ሙሉ በሙሉ እንዳይጠፋምና።

፬ እነሆም አንተ የእኔ የወገብ ፍሬ ነህ፤ እናም እኔ በምርኮ ወደ ግብፅ የተወሰደው የየሴፍ ዘር ነኝ። እናም ጌታ ለየሴፍ የገባቸው ቃል ኪዳን ታላቅ ነበሩ።

፭ ስለሆነም፣ የሴፍ በእርግጥ ጊዜአችንን ተመልክቷል። እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ከወገቡም ፍሬ ያድቃን የሆነ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅርንጫፍን እንደሚያስነሳ ከጌታ የተሰፋ ቃል አግኝቷል፤ መሲሁ አይደለም፣ ነገር ግን የተገነጠለው ቅርንጫፍ ቢሆንም በጌታ ኪዳን እንዲታወስ በኋለኛው ቀን መሲሁ ራሱን በመንፈስ ኃይል ከጨለማ ወደ ብርሃን፣ አዎን ከተደበቀው ጨለማና ምርኮ ወደ ነፃነት እነርሱን ለማምጣት የሚገለጥላቸው ነው።

፮ የሴፍ በእውነት እንዲህ ሲል መስከረ—ባለራዕይን ጌታ አምላኬ ያስነሳል፣ ለወገቤም ፍሬ የተመረጠ ባለራዕይ የሚሆን።

፯ አዎን፣ የሴፍ በእውነት እንዲህ ተናገረ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ አለኝ፣ የተመረጠውን ባለራዕይ ከወገብህ ፍሬ እስነሳለሁ፤ እናም እርሱ ከወገብህ ፍሬ መካከል የተከበረ ይሆናል። ከአባቶችህ ጋር የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን ወደማወቅ ለመምጣት፣ ለእነርሱም ታላቅ ጥቅም የሚሆን ስራ ታላቅ ስራን ለዘሮችህ፣ ለወንድሞቹ፣ ይሰራ ዘንድ ትዕዛዝን እሰጠዋለሁ።

፰ እናም እኔ ከማዘው ስራ በስተቀር ሌላ ስራ እንዳይሰራ ትዕዛዛትን እሰጠዋለሁ። እናም በፊቴ ትልቅ አደርገዋለሁ፤ የእኔን ስራ ይሰራልና።

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

፱ እናም የአሰራሪው ቤት ሆይ፣ እርሱም ህዝቦቹን ነፃ ያወጣቸው ዘንድ አስነሳላለሁ ብዬ ለእናንተ እንደተናገርኩለት ሙሴ ታላቅ ይሆናል።

፲ እናም ሙሴ ከግብፅ ምድር ህዝቦችህን እንዲያወጣ አስነሳላለሁ።

፲፩ ነገር ግን ባለራዕይ ከመካከልህ አስነሳለሁ፤ እናም ለእርሱም ለዘርህ ቃሉን ያመጣ ዘንድ፣ እናም ቃሉን ለማምጣት ብቻ ሳይሆን፣ አለ ጌታ፣ ነገር ግን የተሰጣቸውን ቃሉን እስከማሳመን ድረስ ኃይልን እስጠቀላለሁ።

፲፪ ስለሆነም፣ የወገብህ ፍሬዎች ይፀፋሉ፤ እናም የይሁዳ ወገብ ፍሬም ይፀፋሉ፤ እናም የወሸት ትምህርቶች ሀሰት መሆናቸውን ለማስረዳትና ፀብን ለማቆም፣ እንዲሁም በወገብህ ፍሬ መካከል ሰላምን ለመመስረትና፣ በኋለኛው ቀን ለአባቶቻቸው ግንዛቤ፣ እናም ደግሞ ለቃል ኪዳኔ ግንዛቤ እንዲመጡ በወገብህ ፍሬ የተጻፈውና፣ ደግሞ በይሁዳ ፍሬ የተጻፈው በእንደነት ያድጋሉ ይላል ጌታ።

፲፫ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ የአሰራሪው ቤት ሆይ፣ እናንተ እንድትመለሱ ሰራዬ በሁሉም ህዝቦቼ መካከል በሚጀመርበት ጊዜ እርሱ ከድካም ይበረታል።

፲፬ እናም ዮሴፍ እንዲህ ሲል ተነበየ—እነሆ፣ ባለራዕዩን ጌታ ይባርከዋል፤ እናም እርሱን ለማጣፋት የሚሞክሩ ይሸነፋሉ፤ የወገቤን ፍሬ በተመለከት ከጌታ ያገኘሁት ይህም ቃል ኪዳን ይፈፀማል። እነሆም፣ ይህ ቃል ኪዳን እንደሚፈፀም እርግጠኛ ነኝ፤

፲፭ እናም ስሙም በእኔ ስም ይጠራል፤ ይህም ከአባቱ ስም ጋር አንድ ይሆናል። እናም እርሱ ልክ እንደእኔ ይሆናል፣ ጌታ በእርሱ እጅ የሚያመጣ ነገር በጌታ ኃይል ህዝቦቹን ወደ ደህንነት የሚያመጣ ይሆናልና።

፲፮ እምነ፣ ዮሴፍ ይህን ተንብዮአል—በሙሴም ቃል ኪዳን እንኳን እርግጠኛ እንደሆነኩ፤ በዚህ ነገር እርግጠኛ ነኝ፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ዘርህን ለዘለዓለም እጠብቃለሁ ብሎኛልና።

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

፲፰ እናም ጌታ አለ፡ ሙሴን አስነሳለሁ፤ እናም በበትሩ ጋይልን አስጠቀለሁ፤ እናም መልካም ህጎችን እንዲፀፍ ጋይልን አስጠቀለሁ። ነገር ግን ብዙ ይናገር ዘንድ አንደበት አልሰጠውም፤ በንግግር ጋያል አላደርገውምና። ነገር ግን በራሴ እጅ ጣት ህጌን አፀፍለታለሁ፤ እናም ቃል አቀባይ አስጠቀለሁ።

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

፲፱ እናም ጌታ ደግሞ እንዲህ አለኝ—ለወገብህ ፍሬ ባለራዕይ አስነሳለሁ፤ ቃል ተቀባይም ለእርሱ አስጠቀለሁ። እናም እኔ፣ እነሆ፣ እኔ የወገብህ ፍሬ ፅሁፎችን ለወገብህ ፍሬ እንዲፀፍ አደርገዋለሁ፤ የወገብህ ፍሬ ተናጋሪ ያውጀዋል።

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

፳ እናም እርሱ የሚፀፋቸው ቃላቶች በእኔ ጥበብ ጠቃሚ ይሆናሉ ብዬ ወደ ወገብህ ፍሬ እንዲሄዱ የወሰንኳቸው ቃላት ናቸው። እናም ይህ የወገብህ ፍሬዎች ከምድር ወጥተው እንደሚጮህ አይነት ይሆናል፤ ምክንያቱም እምነታቸውን አውቃለሁና።

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

፳፩ እናም እነርሱ ከምድር ይጮሃሉ፤ አዎን፣ ስለወንድሞቻቸውም እንኳን ንስሀ ይገባሉ። ብዙ ትውልድ በእነርሱ ካለፈም እንኳን በኋላ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል በቃላቸው ቀላልነት የተነሳ ጩኸታቸው ይወገዳል።

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

፳፪ በእምነታቸው የተነሳ የወገብህ ፍሬዎች ለሆኑት ለወንድሞቻቸው ቃላቸው ከእኔ እፍ ይወጣሉ፤ እናም ከአባቶችህ ጋር የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አስከሚያሰታውሱም የቃላቸውን ድካም እንኳን በእምነታቸው አበረታቀለሁ።

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

፳፫ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ልጄ ዮሴፍ፣ በዚህ ሁኔታ ነበር የጥንቱ አባቴ ትንቢትን የተናገረው።

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ በዚህ ቃል ኪዳን ምክንያት አንተ ተባርከሃል፤ ዘርህም የመፀሐፉን ቃል ስለሚቀበሉ አይጠፋምና።

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

፳፭ እናም በእነርሱ መካከል፣ የበለጠ መልካምን የሚያደርግ፣ በቃሉም በተግባሩም፣ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ በመሆን፣ በታላቅ እምነት፣ አሰደናቂ ነገሮችን ለመሰራት፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ታላቅ ነገርን ለማድረግ፣ ወደ እስራኤል ቤትና፣ ወደ ወንድሞችህ ዘሮች ብዙዎችን ደግሞ የሚመልስ አንድ ጋያል ይነሳል።

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

እናም አሁን፣ የሴፍ አንተ የተባረከህ ነህ። እነሆ፣ አንተ ትንሽ ነህ፤ ስለዚህ የወንድምህን የኔሬን ቃል አዳምጥ፣ እናም እኔ ስለአንተ የተናገርኳቸው ቃላት ልክ ባልኩት መሰረት ይሆኑልሃልና። ሊሞት የደረሰውንም የአባትህንም ቃል አስታውሰ። አሜን።

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

፪ ኔፊ ፬

፮ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ አባቴ ወደ ግብፅ ተወስደ ስለነበረው የሴፍ የተናገራቸውን ትንቢቶች በተመለከተ ተናገርኩ።

፯ እነሆም እርሱ ዘሮቹን በተመለከተ በእውነት ተንብዮአል። እናም እርሱ ከፃፋቸው የበለጡ ትንቢቶች ብዙ የሉም። እናም እርሱ እኛን እንዲሁም የወደፊቱን ትውልድ በተመለከተ ተንብዮአል፤ እና እነሱም በነሀስ ስሌዳው ላይ ተፅዕኖዋል።

፲ ስለሆነም፣ አባቴ የዮሴፍን ትንቢት በተመለከተ መናገሩን ካቆመ በኋላ፣ የላማንን ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች ጠርቶ እንዲህ አላቸው—እነሆ፣ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቼ የበኩር ልጄ ወንዶች ልጆችና ሴቶች ልጆች የሆናችሁ፣ ቃሉን እንድታደምጡ አልፈጋለሁ።

፱ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ብሏል—ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቃችሁ ድረስ በምድሪቷ ላይ ትበለፀጋላችሁ፤ እናም ትዕዛዛቴን የማትጠብቁ ከሆነ ከፊቴ ትለያላችሁ።

፳ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቼ፣ ለእናንተ በረከትን ሳልተውላችሁ ወደ መቃብሪ መሄድ አልችልም፤ እነሆም መሄድ ባለባችሁ መንገድ ካደጋችሁ ከእርሱ እንደማትሸሹ አውቃለሁ።

፳፩ ስለሆነም፣ ከተረገማችሁ፣ እነሆ፣ እርግማኑ ከእናንተ እንዲወሰድና በወላጆቻችሁ ራስ ላይ ይመለስ ዘንድ በረከቴን በእናንተ ላይ አተዋለሁ።

፳፪ ስለሆነም፣ በእኔ በረከት የተነሳ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እናንተ እንድትጠፉ አይፈቅድም፤ ስለሆነም፣ እርሱ ለዘለዓለም ለእናንተ እና ለዘሮቻችሁ መሀሪ ይሆናል።

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ለላማን ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች መናገሩን ካቆመ በኋላ፣ የልሙኤልን ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች በፊቴ እንዲቀርቡ አስደረገ።

፳፬ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው—እነሆ፣ የሁለተኛው ወንድ ልጄ ወንድና ሴት ልጆች የሆናችሁ ወንዶችና ሴት ልጆቼ፤ እነሆ እኔ ለላማን ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች የሰጠሁት አይነት በረከት እስጣችኋለሁ፤ ስለሆነም እናንተ ፈፀሞ ካትጠፉም፤ ነገር ግን በመጨረሻ ዘሮቻችሁ ይባረካሉ።

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ ለእነርሱ መናገሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ የእስማኤልን ወንዶች ልጆች፣ አዎን፣ እናም ቤተሰቡን ሁሉ ተናገራቸው።

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

16 እናም እርሱ እነርሱን መናገር ካቆመ በኋላ፣ ለሳም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ እንተ የተባረከህ ነህ፣ እንዲሁም ዘርህ፤ ምክንያቱም እንደወንድምህ ኔፊ ምድሪቱን ትወርሳለህና። እናም ዘርህ ከእርሱ ዘር ጋር ይቆጠራል፤ እናም እንተ ልክ እንደ ወንድምህ ትሆናለህ፣ ዘርህም ልክ እንደእርሱ ዘር ይሆናል፤ እንተም በዘመንህ ሁሉ ትባረካለህ።

17 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቴ፣ ሌሂ፣ በውስጡ ባለው የልቡ ስሜትና የጌታ መንፈስ መሰረት ለቤተሰቡ ሁሉ ከተናገረ በኋላ አረጀ። እንዲህም ሆነ እርሱም ሞተ፣ እናም ተቀበረ።

18 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሞተ በኋላ ብዙም ቀን ሳይሆን ላማንና ልሙኤል እንዲሁም የእስማኤል ወንድ ልጆች በጌታ ተግሳፅ የተነሳ በእኔ ተቆጡ።

19 እኔ ኔፊ፣ እንደቃሉ እነርሱን እንድናገራቸው ተገፋፍቼ ነበርና፤ እኔ፣ እና ደግሞም አባቴ ከመሞቱ በፊት፣ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገረናቸው ነበር፤ ብዙዎቹ አባባሎች በሌሎች ስሌዳዎቹ ላይ ተፅዕኖዎቹ ታሪካዊ የሆነውም ይበልጡ ክፍል በሌላኛው ስሌዳዎቹ ላይ ተፅዕኖዎቹ ናቸው።

20 እናም በእነዚህ ላይ የነፍሴን ነገሮች፣ እናም በነሀስ ስሌዳዎቹ ላይ የተቀረፁ ብዙዎቹ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት እፅፋለሁ። ነፍሴ በቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ትደስታለች፣ እንዲሁም ልቤ ታስላለላቸዋለች፣ እንዲሁም እኔ እነርሱን ለልጆቹ ትምህርትና ጥቅም እፅፋለሁ።

21 እነሆ፣ ነፍሴ በጌታ ነገሮች ትደስታለች፤ እናም ልቤ ያየኋቸውንና የሰማኋቸውን ነገሮች ላይ ያለማቋረጥ ታስላለላለች።

22 ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጌታ ታላቅና ድንቅ ሰራውን ለእኔ ለማሳየት ምንም እንኳን ቸርነቱ ታላቅ ቢሆንም ልቤ ይጮሀል—እቤቴ እኔ ምንኛ ጎሰቋለ ሰው ነኝ! አዎን፣ ልቤ በሰጋዬም የተነሳ ያዝናል፤ ነፍሴም በክፋቴ የተነሳ ታዝናለች።

23 እኔ በቀላሉ በሚያስቸግሩኝ መከራዎችና ኃጢአቶች ተከብቤአለሁ።

24 እናም ደስታን በምፈልግበት ጊዜ በኃጢአቴ የተነሳ ልቤ ያዝናል፤ ይሁን እንጂ በማን እንዳመንኩኝ አውቃለሁ።

25 እግዚአብሔር ረዳቴ ነበር፤ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በሰቃዬ መራኝ፤ እናም በታላቁን ጥልቅ ውኃ ላይ ጠበቀኝ።

26 ሰውነቴን ሁሉ፣ ሰጋዬም እስከሚነድ ድረስ፣ በፍቅሩ ሞላኝ።

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

፳፪ ጠላቶቼን በፊቱ በፍርሀት እስኪንቀጠቀጡ ድል ነሳቸው።

፳፫ እነሆ፣ በቀን ጨኸቱን ሰምቷል፣ እናም በምሽት በራዕይ እውቀትን ሰጥቶኛል።

፳፬ እናም፣ በቀን በፊቱ በታላቅ ፀሎት ተዳፈርኩ፤ እዎን፣ ድምጹንም ወደላይ ላኩኝ፤ እናም መላዕክት ወርደው አገለገሉኝ።

፳፭ እናም በመንፈሱ ክንፎች ሰውነቴ እጅግ ከፍ ወዳለው ተራራ ተወሰደ። እናም ዓይኖቼም ታላቅ ነገሮችን ተመልክተዋል፣ እዎን፣ እንዲያውም ለሰዎች እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነውን፤ ስለዚህ እኔ እነርሱን እንዳልፀፍ ታዘዝኩ ነበር።

፳፮ አቤቱ እሁን ታላቅ ነገሮችን ካየሁ፣ ጌታ ለሰው ልጆች እራሱን ዝቅ በማድረግ በእንዲህ ዓይነት ምህረቱ ከጎበኛቸው፣ ለምንድነው ልቤ የሚያለቅሰው፣ እንዲሁም ነፍሴ በሀዘን ሸለቆ ውስጥ የምትዘገየው፣ እናም ሰውነቴ የሚቃወሰው፣ እናም ጥንካሬዬ በመከራዬ የሚደክመው?

፳፯ እናም ለምን በሰጋዬ የተነሳ ለኃጢአት ተገዢ እሆናለሁ? አዎን፣ ለምን በመከራ ውስጥ እወድቃለሁ? ክፉው ሰላሜን እንዲያጠፋ እንዲሁም ነፍሴን እንዲያሰቃይት በልቤ ውስጥ ቦታ ያገኛል ዘንድ ለምን በፈተና ተገዢ እሆናለሁ? በጠላቴ የተነሳ ለምን እቆጣለሁ?

፳፰ ነፍሴ ሆይ፣ ንቁ! ከእንግዲህ በኋላ እትድከሚ። አቤቱ ልቤ ተደሰቼ፣ እናም ለነፍሴ ጠላት ለሆነው ቦታ እትሰጠሁ።

፳፱ በጠላቶቼ የተነሳ በድጋሚ እትቆጠሁ። በመከራዬም የተነሳ ብርታቴን አታድክሚ።

፴ እቤቱ ልቤ ተደሰቼ፣ እንዲህም በማለት ወደ ጌታ ጨኔ—አቤቱ ጌታ አንተን ለዘለዓለም አወድሰህለሁ፤ እዎን እምላኬና የደህንነቴ አለት ነፍሴ በአንተ ደስ ይላታል።

፴፩ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ ነፍሴን ታድናለህን? ከጠላቶቼስ እጅ ታወጣኛለህን? ኃጢአትን በምመለከትበት ወቅት በጥላቻ ታንቀጠቅጠኛለህን?

፴፪ የሲኦል ደጆች ከፊቱ ይዘጉ፣ ምክንያቱም ልቤ የተሰበረ እና መንፈሴ የተዋረደ ነውና! አቤቱ ጌታ፣ እባክህ በጥልቅ ሸለቆ ጎዳና እንዘበት ዘንድ በቀናው መንገድ እፀና ዘንድ፣ የፅድቅን በሮች ከፊቱ አትዘጋ!

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

፴፫ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ እባክህ የፅድቅህን መኅናፀፊያ ደርብልኝ!
አቤቱ ጌታ፣ እባክህ ከጠላቶቼ የምሸሽበትን መንገድ
አዘጋጅልኝ! እባክህ መንገዴን አቅናልኝ! እባክህ
በመንገዴ እንቅፋትን አታድርግ—ነገር ግን እንተ መንገዴን
ታጠራልኛለህ፣ እናም የጠላቶቼን መንገድ እንጂ የእኔን
አትዘጋብኝም።

፴፬ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ በእንተ ታምኛለሁ፣ እንዲሁም ለዘላለም
በእንተ እታመናለሁ። እምነቴን በሰጋ ክንድ ላይ
አላደርግም፤ ምክንያቱም በሰጋ ክንድ ላይ የሚታመን
የተረገመ እንደሚሆን አውቃለሁና። አዎን፣ በሰው ላይ
እምነት የሚያደርግ ወይም ሰጋ ለባሹን ክንድ
የሚያደርግም ሰው የተረገመ ነው።

፴፭ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔርን ሳይነቅፍ ለለመነ ለእርሱ
በልግሰና እንደሚሰጠው አውቃለሁ። አዎን፣ አምላኬን
የተሳሳተ ነገር ካልጠየቅሁት በሰተቀር ይሰጠኛል፤
ሰለዘህ ወደ እንተ ድምፄን ከፍ አደርጋለሁ፤ አዎን፣
አምላኬ የፅድቄ አለት ወደሆንከው እንተም እጮሀለሁ።
እነሆ፣ አለቴና የዘላለም አምላኬ፣ ድምፄ ለዘላለም
ወደ እንተ ከፍ ይላል። አሜን።

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe
of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way
for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou
make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not
place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou
wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up
my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in
thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of
flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his
trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that put-
teth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that
asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss;
therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will
cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness.
Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee,
my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

፪ ኔፊ ፮

፩ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ በወንድሞቼ ቁጣ የተነሳ ወደ ጌታ አምላኬ በጣም ጮህኩ።

፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነርሱ ህይወቴን ለማጥፋት እስከመፈለጋቸው ድረስ በእኔ ላይ ቁጣቸው በርትቶ ነበር።

፫ አዎን፣ በእኔ ላይ እንዲህ ሲሉ አገረመረሙ—ታናሽ ወንድማችን በእኛ ላይ ገዢ ለመሆን ያሰባል፤ እናም እኛ በእርሱ ምክንያት ብዙ ችግር አጋጥሞናል፤ ስለዚህ፣ በእርሱ ቃል የተነሳ በተጨማሪ እንዳንሰቃይ አሁን እንግደለው። እነሆም እርሱ ገዢያችን እንዲሆን እንፈቅድም፤ ምክንያቱም ታላቅ ወንድሞቹ የሆንነው በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ መግዛት የሚገባን እኛ ነን።

፬ አሁን በእነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ላይ በእኔ ላይ ያገረመረሙትን ቃል ሁሉ አልፎም። ነገር ግን እነርሱ ህይወቴን ሊያጠፉ ፈልገዋል የሚለውን ብቻ ማለት ይበቃኛል።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ እንዲሁም ከእኔ ጋር የሚሄዱት ሁሉ፣ ከእነርሱ መሸሸና ወደ ምድረበዳው መሄድ እንዳለብን ጌታ አሰጠነቀቀኝ።

፮ ስለዚህም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኔፊ ቤተሰቤን፣ እናም ደግሞ ዙሪያዎቻችን ቤተሰቦቻችን፣ እናም ታላቅ ወንድሜን ሳምንና ቤተሰቦቻችን፣ እናም ያዕቆብን እና ዮሴፍን፣ ታናሽ ወንድሞቼን እናም ደግሞ አህቶቼን፣ እና ከእኔ ጋር የሚሄዱትን ሁሉ ወሰድኩ። እናም ከእኔ ጋር የሚሄዱት ሁሉ የእግዚአብሔርን ማሰጠን ቀደምትና ራዕይ ያሙኑ ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ፣ የእኔን ቃል አዳመጡ።

፯ እናም ድንኳናችንንና ለመውሰድ የምንችለውን ማናቸውንም ነገሮች ወሰድንና፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ለብዙ ቀናት ተጓዝን። እናም ለብዙ ቀናት ከተጓዝን በኋላ ድንኳኖቻችንን ተከልን።

፰ እናም ህዝቤ የቦታውን ስም ኔፊ ብለን እንድንጠራው ፈልገን፤ ስለዚህም ኔፊ ብለን ጠራነው።

፱ እናም ከእኔ ጋር የነበሩ ሁሉ እራሳቸውን የኔፊ ህዝብ ብለው ለመጥራት ወሰኑ።

፲ እናም በሁሉም ነገሮች ፍርድን፣ ስርአቱንና፣ የጌታን ትዕዛዝ በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት በትጋት ለመጠበቅ ተቀበልን።

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

፲፩ ጌታም ከእኛ ጋር ነበር፤ እናም እጅግ በለፀግን፤ እህል ዘርተናል፤ እናም እንደገና በብዛት ሰብሰብናልና። እናም የበግና የከብት መንጋገና ከሁሉም አይነት እንስሳት ማርባት ጀመርን።

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ እኔ ኔፊ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረፁትን መዝገቦች፤ እናም ደግሞ እንደተፃፈው ለአባቴ በጌታ እጅ የተዘጋጀውን ኳስ ወይም ኮምፓስን አመጣሁ።

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኛ በይበልጥ መበልፀግ እንዲሁም በምድሪቱ ላይ መብዛት ጀመርን።

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

፲፬ እናም አሁን ለማናውያን ተብለው የሚጠሩት ህዝቦች በማንኛውም ሁኔታ እንዳይመጡብንና እኛን እንዳያጠፉን ዘንድ፤ እኔ ኔፊ፣ የላባንን ጎራዴ ወሰድኩና በእርሱ አይነት ብዙ ጎራዴዎችን ስራሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ወደ እኔና ልጆቼ እናም ህዝቤ ተብለው ወደተጠሩት ያላቸውን ጥላቻ አውቃለሁና።

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

፲፭ እናም ህዝቤን በብዛት ከሁሉም አይነት እንጨትና ብረት፤ እናም መዳብና ነሀስ፤ እና ብረትና ወርቅ፤ እና ብርና ከከበሩ የብረት አፈር ህንፃ እንዲሰሩ አስተማርኳቸው።

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

፲፮ እናም እኔ ኔፊ ቤተመቅደስን ስራሁ፤ ከብዙ ከከበሩ ነገሮች የተገነባ ባይሆንም፤ እንደ ስለሞን ቤተመቅደስ አይነት ነበር የሰራሁት፤ ምክንያቱም እነዚህ ነገሮች በምድሪቱ ላይ አልተገኙም ነበርና፤ ስለዚህ፤ እንደ ስለሞን አይነት ቤተመቅደስ መሰራት አልተቻለም። ነገር ግን የቤተመቅደሱ አሰራር ከስለሞን ቤተመቅደስ ጋር ተመሳሳይ ነበር፤ እናም አሰራሩ እጅግ ያማረ ነበር።

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ህዝቤ ታታሪ እንዲሆኑና በእጃቸውም እንዲሰሩ አደረግሁ።

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ እነርሱ እኔ ንጉሳቸው እንድሆን ፈለጉ። ነገር ግን እኔ ኔፊ፣ ለእነርሱ ንጉስ እንዲኖራቸው አልፈለግሁም፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በውስጤ ባለው ኃይል መሰረት ለእነርሱ አደረግሁ።

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፤ እኔ የእነርሱ ገዢና አስተማሪ እሆን ዘንድ ወንድሞቼን በተመለከተ ጌታ የተናገራቸው ቃላት ተፈፀመዋል። ስለዚህ፣ በጌታ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት እነርሱ ህይወቴን ለማጥፋት አስከሚያሰቡበት ድረስ ገዢያቸውና አስተማሪያቸው ነበርኩኝ።

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

፳ ስለሆነም፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ያለኝ ቃሉ ተፈፀሟል—እነርሱ የእንተን ቃል እስካላዳመጡ ድረስ ከጌታ ፊት ይለያሉ። እናም እነሆ፣ እነርሱ ከፊቱ ተለይተው ነበር።

፳፩ እናም እርሱ በኃጢአታቸው የተነሳ እርግማን፣ እዎን፣ እንዲያውም ከባድ እርግማን፣ በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲመጣ አድርጓል። እነሆም በእርሱ ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጠሩ፣ እንደ ድንጋይም ሆኑ፤ ስለዚህ፣ እነርሱ ነጭ እና ቆንጆ እንዲሁም ያማሩ ስለነበሩ ለህዝቡ የሚሰቡ እንዲይሆኑ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በቆዳቸው ላይ ጥቁረት እንዲመጣቸው አደረገ።

፳፪ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ አለ—ለክፋቶቻቸው ንስሀ ካልገቡ በስተቀር ለህዝብህ የሚያሰጡ እንዲሆኑ አደርጋቸዋለሁ።

፳፫ እናም ከእነርሱ ዘር ጋር የተቀላቀለው ዘር የተረገመ ይሆናል፤ እነርሱ በእንደዚህ አይነት እርግማን ይረገማሉ። እናም ጌታ ተናግሮታል፣ ይህም ተደርጓል።

፳፬ እናም በእነርሱ ላይ ባለው እርግማን የተነሳ ሰነፍ፣ አጭበርባሪዎችና በተንኮል የረቀቁ እንዲሁም በምድረበዳው ሰጥ አራዊቶችን የሚያድኑ ህዝቦች ሆነዋል።

፳፭ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር አለኝ፣ እኔን ያስታውሱ ዘንድ ለማነሳሳት ለዘርችህ እንደ ጅራፍ ይሆናሉ፤ እናም እኔን ካላስታውሱኝ፣ ቃሉንም ካላዳመጡ፣ እስከሚጠፉ ድረስ ይቀጧቸዋል።

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ያዕቆብንና፣ ዮሴፍን በህዝቡ ምድር ላይ ካህናትና መምህራን ይሆኑ ዘንድ ቀባኋቸው።

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሰደሳችሁ ህይወት ፍርን።

፳፰ እናም ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቀን ከወጣን ሠላሳ ዓመታት አለፉ።

፳፱ እናም እኔ ኔፊ፣ ህዝቤን በተመለከተ በሰራሁት በሰሌዳዎች ላይ እስከዚያ ያለውን ታሪክ ጽፌ ጠበቅሁ።

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር አለኝ፣ ሌሎች ሰሌዳዎችን ስራ፤ እናም ለህዝብህ ጥቅም በእኔ አመለካከት መልካም የሆኑትን ብዙ ነገሮች በእነዚህ ላይ ትፀፋለህ።

፴፩ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ለጌታ ትዕዛዛት ታዛዥ ለመሆን፣ ሄድኩ፣ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች የፃፍኩበትን እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች ሰራሁ።

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

፲፪ እናም እግዚአብሔርን የሚያስደስተውን ቀረፅኩኝ።
እናም ህዝቤ በእግዚአብሔር ነገር የሚደሰት ከሆነ
በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ እኔ በቀረፅኩት ይደሰታሉ።

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.
And if my people are pleased with the things of God
they will be pleased with mine engravings which are
upon these plates.

፲፫ እናም ህዝቤ የህዝቤን ታሪክ በጥልቀት ለማወቅ
ከፈለጉ፣ የእኔን ሌሎች ሰሌዳዎች ማጥናት አለባቸው።

And if my people desire to know the more particu-
lar part of the history of my people they must search
mine other plates.

፲፬ እናም አርባ ዓመታት ዓለፉ ማለት ለእኔ በቂ ነው፣ እናም
ከወንድሞቻችን ጋር በጦርነትና ፀብ አሳልፈናል።

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had
passed away, and we had already had wars and con-
tentions with our brethren.

፪ ኔፊ ፮

፩ የኔፊ ወንድም ያዕቆብ ለኔፊ ህዝብ የተናገራቸው ቃላት—

፪ እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ በእግዚአብሔር የተጠራሁትና በቅዱስ ስርዓቱን መሰረት ሹመትን ያገኘሁት፣ እናም እርሱን እንደ ንጉስ ወይም ተከላካይ በምታምኑትና፣ በእርሱ ለጥበቃችሁ ተስፋ በምታደርጉ በወንድሜ ኔፊ የተቀባሁት እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ እነሆ፣ እኔ እጅግ ብዙ ነገሮችን እንደተናገርኳችሁ ታውቃላችሁ።

፫ ሆኖም እኔ እንደገና እናገራችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ለነፍሳችሁ ደህንነት ፍላጎት አለኝና። አዎን፣ ለእናንተ ጭንቀቱ ታላቅ ነው፤ እናም እናንተ ሁልጊዜ ይህ እንደሚሆን ታውቃላችሁ። እኔ በሙሉ ትጋት መክሬኦችኋለሁ፤ እናም የአባቴን ቃል አስተምሬኦችኋለሁ፤ እናም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ሁሉንም የተፃፉ ነገሮች በተመለከተ አነጋግሬኦችኋለሁ።

፬ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ሰላሎትና ስለሚመጡት ነገሮች እነግራችኋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ የኢሳይያስን ቃል አነብላችኋለሁ። እናም እነርሱ ወንድሜ ለእናንተ እንድናገር የፈለጋቸው ቃላት ናቸው። እናም የምናገራችሁ ለእናንተ ጥቅም፣ እናንተ እምላካችሁን ታውቁትና ስሙንም ታወድሱ ዘንድ ነው።

፭ እናም አሁን እኔ የማነባቸው ቃላት ኢሳይያስ የእስራኤልን ቤት በተመለከተ የተናገራቸው ናቸው፤ ስለሆነም፣ ከእናንተም ጋር ተመሳሳይነት አላቸው፣ ምክንያቱም እናንተ ከእስራኤል ቤት ናችሁና። እናም ከእስራኤል ቤት ስለሆናችሁ በኢሳይያስ የተነገሩ ለእናንተ የሚተገበሩ ብዙ ነገሮች አሉ።

፮ እናም አሁን፣ ቃላቱ እነዚህ ናቸው፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል—እነሆ እጄን ወደ አህዛብ አነሳለሁ፣ አርማዬንም ወደ ወገኖች አቆማለሁ፤ ወንዶች ልጆችሽንም በክንዳቸው ያመጡአቸዋል፣ ሴቶች ልጆችሽንም በጫንቃቸው ይሸከሟቸዋል።

፯ ነገሥታትም አሳዳጊ አባቶችሽ ይሆናሉ፣ እቴጌዎቻቸውም ሞግዚቶችሽ ይሆናሉ፤ ፊታቸውን ወደ ምድር ዝቅ አድርገው ይሰግዱልሻል፣ የእግራችሁንም ትቢያ ይልሳሉ፤ እናም እኔ ጌታ መሆኔን ታውቂያለሽ፤ እኔን የጠበቁ አያፍሩምና።

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

፳፯ እናም አሁን እኔ ያዕቆብ እነዚህን ቃላት በተመለከተ በመጠኑ እናገራለሁ። እነሆም ጌታ እኛ ከመጣንበት በኢየሩሳሌም የነበሩት እንደተገደሉና በምርኮ እንደተወሰዱ አሳይቶኛል።

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

፳፱ ሆኖም፣ ጌታ እነርሱ እንደገና እንደሚመለሱ አሳይቶኛል። እናም ደግሞ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ፣ በሰጋ እራሱን እንደሚገልፅላቸው፤ እናም መልአኩ ለእኔ በተናገረው ቃል መሠረት፣ እራሱን ከገለፀ በኋላ ይገርፋታልም ይሰቅሉታልም።

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

፲ እናም በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ላይ ልባቸውን ካጠጠሩና እንገታቸውን ካደነደኑ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ፍርድ በእነርሱ ላይ ይመጣል። እናም እነርሱ የሚቀጡበትና የሚሰቃዩበት ቀን ይመጣል።

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

፲፩ ስለሆነም፣ መላኩ እንዳለው፣ ወዲህና ወዲያ እንዲዘዋወሩ ከተደረጉ በኋላ፣ ብዙዎቹ በሰጋ ይሰቃያሉ፣ በታማኝ ፀሎቶች የተነሳም እንዲጠፉ አይደረጉም፤ እነርሱ ይበተናሉ፣ ይገረፋሉ፣ እናም ይጠላሉ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጌታ ለእነርሱ መሀሪ ይሆናል፣ መድኃኒታቸውንም ሲያውቁት ወደ ርሰት ምድራቸው በድጋሚ በእንድ ላይ ይሰበሰባሉ።

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

፲፪ እናም ነቢያት የፃፉላቸው አህዛብ የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ እነሆም፣ እነርሱ ጎሰህ ከገቡና ከፅዮን ካልተዋጉ፣ እና እራሳቸውን ከታላቋና የርኩስት ቤተክርስቲያን እንድ ካላደረጉ ይድናሉ፤ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለልጆቹ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ይልፅማልና፤ እናም ለዚህ ነው ነቢዩ እነዚህን ነገሮች የፃፈው።

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ ከፅዮን ጋርና ከጌታ የቃል ኪዳን ህዝብ ጋር የሚዋጉ የእግርቻቸውን ትቢያ ይልሳሉ፤ እናም የጌታ ህዝቦች እያፍሩም። የጌታ ህዝቦች እርሱን የሚጠብቁ ናቸውና፤ አሁንም የመሲሁን መምጣት ይጠብቃሉና።

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

፲፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በነቢዩ ቃላት መሠረት መሲሁ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ እነርሱን ለማደስ እንደገና ይጀምራል፤ ስለዚህ፣ በእርሱ የሚያምኑበት ያ ቀን ሲመጣ፣ እራሱን በኃይልና በታላቅ ክብር ጠላታቸውን በመደምሰስ ይገልጻል፤ እናም በእርሱ የሚያምኑትን አንዳቸውንም አያጠፋም።

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

፲፭ እናም በእርሱ የማያምኑ በአሳትና፣ በአውሎ ነፋስ፣ በመሬት መንቀጥቀጥና፣ በደም መፍሰስ፣ በቸነፈር፣ በረሀብና፣ በድርቅ ይጠፋሉ። እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የእስራኤል ቅዱስ መሆኑን ያውቃሉ።

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

፲፮ አደን ከሃያሉ ይወሰዳልን፣ ወይስ የህጋዊ ምርኮኞች ያመልጣሉን?

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

፲፯ ነገር ግን ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ በኃያሉን የተማረኩትም እንኳን ይወሰዳሉ፣ የጨካኞችም አደን ያመልጣል፤ ኃያሉ አምላክ የቃል ኪዳን ህዝቡን ያድናልና። ጌታም እንዲህ ይላል፡ ከእናንተ ጋር የሚጣሉትን አጣላቸዋለሁ—

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

፲፰ እናም አሰጨናቂዎችሽን ሰጋቸውን አሰበላቸዋለሁ፤ እናም እንደጣፋጭ ወይን ጠጅ ደማቸውን ጠጥተው ይሰክራሉ፤ እናም ሰጋ ለባሹም ሁሉ እኔ ጌታ መድኃኒትሽና ቤዛሽ የያዕቆብ ኃያል እንደሆንኩ ያውቃሉ።

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

፪ ኔፊ ፯

፩ አዎን፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል—ፈትቻችሁን፣ ወይንስ ለዘለዓለም ወርውራኝችሁ? ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል— እናታችሁን የፈታሁበት የፍቺዎ ፅህፈት የት አለ? ለማን ነው አሳልፎ የሰጠኋችሁ? ወይስ እናንተን የሸጥኩት ከአበዳሪዎች ለየትኛው ነው? አዎን፣ ለማን ሸጥኳችሁ? እነሆ፣ ስለኃጢአታችሁ ራሳችሁን ሸጣችሁ፤ እናም ስለመተላለፋችሁ እናታችሁም ተፈታለች።

፪ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ስመጣ ማንም ሰው አልነበረም፤ በምጣራበትም ጊዜ አዎን፣ የሚመልስ አልነበረም። የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ መታደግ እንዳትችል እጄ ፈፀሞ አጥራለች፣ ወይስ ለማዳን ኃይል የለኝምን? እነሆ በግሰጻዬ ባህሩን አደርቃለሁ፣ ወንዞችንም ምድረበዳ አደርጋለሁ እናም አሳዎቻቸው ውሃው በመድረቁ ይገማሉ፣ እናም በጥማት ይሞታሉ።

፫ ሰማያትን ጥቁረት አለብሳቸዋለሁ፣ እናም መሸፈኛቸውን ማቅ አደርጋለሁ።

፬ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በትክክለኛው ጊዜ ለእናንተ እንዴት መናገር እንድችል የተማሩትን ልሳን ሰጥቶኛል። እናንተ በደከማችሁ ጊዜ ማለዳ በማለዳ ያነቃችሁ። እንደተማሪ እንድሰማ ጀርዬን ያነቃቃል።

፭ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ጀርዬን ከፍቷል፣ እናም እኔ አመፀኛ አልነበርኩም፣ ወደኋላም አልተመለስኩም።

፮ ጀርባዬን ለገራፊዎች፣ እናም ጉንጨኔንም ለፀጉር ነጪዎች ሰጠሁ። ፊቴንም ከውርደትና ከትፋት አልመለስኩም።

፯ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ይረዳኛል፣ ስለዚህም አላፍርም። ስለዚህ ፊቴን እንደባልጩት ድንጋይ አድርጌዋለሁ፣ እናም እንደማላፍር አውቃለሁ።

፰ እናም ጌታ ቅርቤ ነው፣ እርሱም ያጸድቀኛል። ከእኔ ጋር የሚከራከር ማንው? በእንድነት እንቁም። ጠላቴስ ማንው? ወደ እኔ እንዲቀርብ ፍቅሩለት እናም በእጄ ኃይለ ቃል አመታዋለሁ።

፱ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ይረዳኛል። እናም እኔን የሚኮንኩ ሁሉ፣ እነሆ፣ ሁሉ እንደ ልብስ ያረጃሉ፣ እናም ብል ይበላቸዋል።

፲ ከእናንተ መካከል ጌታን የሚፈራ፣ የአገልጋዩን ድምፅ የሚታዘዝ፣ በጨለማ የሚራመድ እንዲሁም ብርሃን የሌለው ማንው?

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

እነሆ እናንተ እሳት የምታነዱ ሁሉ፣ የእሳትንም ወላፊን የምትጭሩ፣ በእሳታችሁ ብርሃን እና ባንደዳችሁት ወላፊን ተመላለሱ። ይህ ከእጁ ይሆንባችኋል—በሀዘንም ትሞታላችሁ።

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

፪ ኔሬ ፰

፩ እናንተ ፅድቅን የምትከተሉ ሰሙኝ። የተቆረጣችሁበትን ድንጋይ፣ እንዲሁም የተቆፈሩችሁበትን ጉድጓድ ተመልከቱ።

፪ ወደ አባታችሁ አብርሃምና ወደ ወለደቻችሁ ሣራ ተመልከቱ፤ ብቻውን ጠራሁት፣ እናም ባረክሁትም።

፫ ጌታ ፅዮንን ያፅናል፣ በእርሷ ባድማ የሆነውን ቦታ ሁሉ ያፅናል፤ እናም ምድረበዳዋንም እንደ ዔድን፣ እናም በረሃዋን እንደ ጌታ የእትክልት ሰፍራ ያደርገዋል። ደስታና ተድላ፣ ምስጋና እና የዝማሬ ድምፅ ይገኝባታል።

፬ ሕዝቤ ሆይ፣ አድምጡኝ፤ ወገኔ ሆይ፣ ሰሙኝ፤ ህግ ከእኔ ይወጣልና፣ እና ፍርድን ለህዝብ እንደ ብርሃን እንዲያርፍ አደርጋለሁ።

፭ ፅድቄ ቀርቧል፤ ማዳኔም ወጥቷል፣ እናም ክንዴ በህዝቡ ይፈርዳል። ደሴቶች እኔን ይጠባበቃሉ፣ እናም በክንዴ ይታመናሉ።

፮ ዐይኖቻችሁን ወደ ሰማያት አንሱ፣ እናም ወደታች ወደ ምድር ተመልከቱ፤ ሰማያት እንደጢስ በንነው ይጠፋሉ፣ ምድርም እንደልብስ ታረጃለች፤ እናም የሚኖሩባት እንዲሁ ይሞታሉ። ነገር ግን ማዳኔ ለዘለዓለም ይሆናል፣ ፅድቄም አይፈርስም።

፯ ፅድቅን የምታውቁ፣ ህጌንም በልባችሁ የፃፍኩባችሁ እኔን አድምጡኝ፣ የሰዎችን ዘለፋ አትፍሩ፣ ወይም ስድባቸውንም አትፍሩ።

፰ እንደልብስም ብል ይበላቸዋልና፣ እናም ትል እንደሱፍ ይበላቸዋል። ነገር ግን ፅድቄ ለዘለዓለም፣ እናም ማዳኔ ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ ይሆናል።

፱ የእግዚአብሔር ክንድ ሆይ ተነስ! ተነስ! ኃይልንም ልበስ፣ እንደጥንቱ ቀናት ተነሳ። ረዓብን የቆራረጥክ፣ ዘንድውንም የወጋህ አንተ አይደለህምን?

፲ ባህሩን፣ የታላቁን ጥልቅ ውሃ ያደረቅህ፣ የዳኑትም ይሻገሩ ዘንድ ጥልቁን ባህር መንገድ ያደረግህ አንተ አይደለህምን?

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

፲፩ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ ያዳናቸው ይመለሳሉ። በዝማሬም ወደ ፀዮን ይመጣሉ፤ እናም የዘለዓለም ደስታና ቅዱስነት በራሳቸው ላይ ይሆናል፤ እናም ደስታና ተድላን ያገኛሉ፤ ሀዘንና ልቅሶም ይሸሻሉ።

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

፲፪ እኔ እርሱ ነኝ፤ የማፅናትሁ እኔ ነኝ። እነሆ፣ የሚሞተውን ሰውና እንደሰርም የሚሆነውን የሰው ልጅ ትፈራ ዘንድ አንተ ማን ነህ?

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

፲፫ እናም ሰማያትን የዘረጋውንና፣ የምድርን መሰረት የሰራውን፣ ጌታ ፈጣሪህን ረሳህ፣ እናም ሊያጠፋህ የተዘጋጁ ይመስል በእስጨናቂዎችህ ቁጣ ምክንያት ሁልጊዜ ቀኑን ሁሉ ፈራህ? እናም የእስጨናቂዎችህ ቁጣ የት አለ?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

፲፬ ምርኮኛ እንዲፈታ፣ እና እርሱ በጉድጓድ እንዳይሞት፣ ወይም እንጀራም አይኑድልበት ይፈጥናል።

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

፲፭ ነገር ግን ሞገዱም እንዲተምም ባሕርን የማናውጥ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እኔ ነኝ፤ ሰሜም የሰራዊት ጌታ ነው።

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

፲፮ እናም ሰማያትን እዘረጋና ምድርንም እመሰርት ዘንድ፣ እናም ለፀዮን፣ እነሆ፣ አንቺ ህዝቤ ነሽ እንድላት ቃሉን በእፍህ አድርጌአለሁ፣ እንዲሁም በእጄ ጥላ ጋርጃሃለሁ።

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

፲፯ ከጌታ እጅ የቁጣውን አተላ በፀዋ የጠጣሽ ኢየሩሳሌም ሆይ ንቁ፣ ንቁ፣ ቁሚ፣ ከሚያንገደግድ ዋንጫ መራራን ጠጥተሻል—

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury— thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

፲፰ እናም ከወለደቻቸው ወንዶች ልጆች ሁሉ መካከል የሚመራትም የለም፤ ካሳደገቻቸውም ልጆች ሁሉ እጅዋን የሚይዝ የለም።

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

፲፱ እነዚህ ሁለቱ ወንዶች ልጆች ወደ አንቺ ይመጣሉ፣ ላንቺ ማን ያዝንልሻል—መደምሰሰሽና መውደምሽ፣ ረሃብና ሰይፍም—እንዲሁም በማን አፀናሻለህ?

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

፳ ከእነዚህ ከሁለቱ በስተቀር ወንዶች ልጆችሽ ዝለዋል፤ በአደባባይ ላይ ተኝተዋል፤ በወጥመድ እንዳለ የሜዳ ኮርማ በጌታ ቁጣ፣ በእምላክሽ ተግሳፅ ተሞልተዋል።

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

፳፩ ስለዚህ አሁን ይህን ሰሚ፣ አንቺ ተስቃዪና ያለ ወይን ጠጅ የሰከርሽ።

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

፳፪ ጌታሽ ይላል፡ ጌታ እና አምላክሽ የወገኑ ጉዳይ
ይማፀናል፤ እነሆ፡ የሚያንገደግድን ፅዋ፡ የቁጣዬንም
ዋንጫ አተላውን ከእጅሽ ወስጃለሁ፡ ደግመሽም
ከእንግዲህ አትጠጪውም።

፳፫ ነገር ግን ነፍሰሽን እንሻገር ዘንድ ዘቅ በይ በሚሉት
በእስጨናቂዎችሽ እጅ አናረዋለሁ፡ እናም ሰውነትሽንም
ለሚሻገሩበት እንደ መሬት መንገድ አድርገሽ
ዘርግተሽዋል።

፳፬ ፅዮን ሆይ ንቁ፡ ንቁ ሀይልሽን ልበሺ፤ ቅድስት ከተማ
ኢየሩሳሌም ሆይ፡ ቆንጆ ልብሰሽን ልበሺ፤ ያልተገረዘና
እርኩስ ከእንግዲህ አይገባብሽምና።

፳፭ ትቢያን አራግፊ፤ ኢየሩሳሌም ሆይ፡ ተነሺ፡ ተቀመጪ፤
ምርኮኛይቱ የፅዮን ሴት ልጅ ሆይ የአንገትሽን እሰራት
እራሰሽ ፍቺ።

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God plead-
eth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out
of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the
cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict
thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we
may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the
ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on
thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city;
for henceforth there shall no more come into thee
the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O
Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck,
O captive daughter of Zion.

፪ ኔፊ ፱

፩ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ጌታ ከእስራኤል ቤት ሁሉ ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ታውቁ ዘንድ እኔ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንብቤአለሁ—

፪ እናም እርሱ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ፣ ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ፣ ወደ እውነተኛው ቤተ ክርስቲያንና ወደ እግዚአብሔር እቅፍ ደግመው እስከሚመጡ ድረስ፣ እነርሱ ወደ ቤታቸው ወደ ርሰት ምድራቸው በሚሰበሰቡበትና የቃልኪዳናቸው ምድር ሁሉ በሚመሰርቱበት ጊዜ ለአይሁድ በቅዱስ ነቢያቱ እፍ እንደተናገረ እንብቤአለሁ።

፫ እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለእናንተ የምናገረው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በልጆቻችሁ ላይ ባፈሰሰበት በረከት ምክንያት እንድትደሰቱና ራሳችሁን ለዘለዓለም እንድታጎሱ ነው።

፬ ከእናንተ ብዙዎቹ ወደፊት ስለሚመጡ ነገሮች ለማወቅ ብዙ እንደመረመራችሁ አውቃለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ስጋችን እርጅቶ ከዚያም እንደሚሞት እንደምታውቁም አውቃለሁ፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በአካላችን እግዚአብሔርን እናያለን።

፭ አዎን፣ እኛ ከመጣንበት በኢየሩሳሌም ውስጥ ላሉት እርሱን በአካል እንደሚያሳይ እንደምታውቁ አውቃለሁ፤ በእነርሱ መካከል ይህ መሆኑ አስፈላጊ ነውና፤ ምክንያቱም ታላቁ ፈጣሪው ሁሉም ሰዎች ለእርሱ ይገዙ ዘንድ እርሱ ለሰው ልጆች በስጋ ለመገዛት እንዲፈቅድና፣ ለሰዎች ሁሉ ይሞት ዘንድ አስፈላጊ ነበረበት።

፮ ምህረት የተሞላበት የታላቁ የፈጣሪ ዕቅድ ይፈጸም ዘንድ፣ ሞት በሰው ልጆች ላይ ስለመጣ፣ የትንሣኤ ኃይል ይኖር ዘንድ ያስፈልጋል፣ በውድቀት የተነሳ ትንሣኤ ለሰው መምጣቱ አስፈላጊ ነው፣ እናም ውድቀት የመጣው በመተላለፍ ምክንያት ነው፤ እና ሰውም በመውደቁ ምክንያት ከጌታ ፊት ተለይቷል።

፯ ስለዚህ፣ ወሰን የሌለው የኃጢአት ክፍያ ይኖር ዘንድ ያስፈልጋል—በዚህ ወሰን በሌለው የኃጢአት ክፍያ ባይሆን ኖሮ ይህ የሚበሰብሰው የማይበሰብሰውን አይለብስም ነበር። ስለዚህ፣ በሰው ላይ የመጣው የመጀመሪያው ፍርድ ለዘለዓለም የሚቆይ መሆን ነበረበት። እናም እንዲህ ቢሆን ኖሮ ይህ ስጋ ሞቶ፣ በሰብሶ፣ ተበታትኖ ወደ እናት ምድሩ በመመለስ፣ በድጋሚ ሳይነሳ በቀረ ነበር።

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

፳፯ እቤቱ የእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ፣ ምህረቱና ፀጋው!
እነሆም፣ ስጋ የማይነሳ ቢሆን ኖሮ መንፈሳችን
ከዘለዓለማዊው አምላክ ፊት ተነጥሎ ዳግም እንዲይነሳ
ከተጣለውና ዲያብሎስ ለሆነው መልአክ ተገዢዎች
ይሆኑ ነበር።

፳፱ እናም መንፈሶቻችን እንደርሱ ሊሆኑ በተገባቸው ነበር፤
እናም እኛ ዲያብሎች፣ ለዲያብሎስ መላእክቶች
በመሆን ከአምላካችን ፊት የጠፋንና፣ ከሀሰት አባት ጋር፣
በችግር፣ ልክ እንደእርሱ የቀረን እንሆን ነበር፤ አዎን፣
በዚያ የመጀመሪያ ቤተሰቦቻችንን እንዲታለለው፣ እራሱን
እንደብርሃን መልአክ እንዲመስል ራሱም እንደቀየረውና፣
የሰው ልጆችን በግድያ ሚስጥራዊ ሴራዎች እና በሁሉም
የጨለማ ሚስጥር ስራዎች እንደሚበጠብጠው እንሆን
ነበር።

፲ እቤቱ፣ ከዚህ ከሚያስቀይመው አስፈሪ እቅፋ፣ አዎን፣
እኔ የስጋ ሞት፣ እናም ደግሞ የመንፈስ ሞት ብዬ
የምጠራው ያ አስፈሪ ሞትና ሲኦልን ሊያስመልጠን
መንገዱን ያዘጋጀልን የአምላካችን ጥሩነት እንዴት ታላቅ
ነው።

፲፩ እናም የእኛ አምላክ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ማምለጫውን
መንገድ ስላዘጋጀልን፣ ጊዜያዊ የሆነው እኔ የተናገርኩት
ይህ ሞት፣ ሙታኖቼን ያስረክባል፤ ይህም ሞት መቃብር
ነው።

፲፪ እናም መንፈሳዊ ሞት የሆነው ይህ እኔ የተናገርኩት
ሞት፣ ሙታኖቼን ያስረክባል፤ ይህም መንፈሳዊ ሞት
ሲኦል ነው፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሞትና ሲኦል ሙታኖቻቸውን
ማስረክብ አለባቸው፣ እናም ሲኦል የያዘቸውን መንፈሶች
ማስረክብ አለበት፣ መቃብርም የያዘቸውን አካላት
ማስረክብ አለባት፣ እናም የሰዎች ስጋና መንፈስ እንዲ ወደ
ሌላው ደግሞ ይመለሳል፤ ይህም በእስራኤል ቅዱስ
የትንሳኤ ሀይል ነው።

፲፫ እቤቱ የአምላካችን ዕቅድ እንዴት ታላቅ ነው! በሌላው
በኩል፣ የእግዚአብሔር ገነት የቅዱሳንን መንፈስ
ማስረክብ አለባት፤ መቃብርም የፃድቃንን ስጋ
ታስረክባለች፤ እናም ስጋና መንፈስ እንደነበሩ በድጋሚ
ይገጣጠማሉ፣ ሁሉም ሰዎች የማይበሰብሱና፣ የማይሞቱ
ይሆናሉ፣ እና የእኛም እውቀት ፍፁም ከመሆኑ በቀር፣
እነርሱም ልክ እንደእኛ በስጋ ፍፁም እውቀት ያላቸው
ነፍሳት ይሆናሉ።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ስለሰህተቶቻችን ሁሉና፣ ንፁህ
አለመሆናችንን፣ እናም ስለራቁትነታችን ፍፁም እውቀት
ይኖረናል፤ ጻድቃንም ንፁህናን ለብሰው የጽድቅ
መገናኛፊያ ተደርጎላቸው ስለደሰታቸውና ጻድቅነታቸው
ፍፁም እውቀት ይኖራቸዋል።

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For be-
hold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must
become subject to that angel who fell from before the
presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil,
to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him,
and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut
out from the presence of our God, and to remain
with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself;
yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents,
who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of
light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret
combinations of murder and all manner of secret
works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who pre-
pareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this
awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell,
which I call the death of the body, and also the death
of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God,
the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have
spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its
dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is
the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which
spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell
must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up
its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its
captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men
will be restored one to the other; and it is by the
power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other
hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits
of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of
the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored
to itself again, and all men become incorruptible,
and immortal, and they are living souls, having a
perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be
that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of
all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our naked-
ness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowl-
edge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, be-
ing clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of
righteousness.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ሁሉም ሰዎች ከዚህ ከመጀመሪያው ሞት ወደ ሕይወት ሲያልፉና፤ ህያዋን ሲሆኑ፤ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት መምጣት አለባቸው፤ እናም ከዚያ ፍርድ ይመጣል፤ ከእዚያም በኋላ በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱስ ፍርድ መሰረት ይፈረድባቸው ይገባል።

፲፱ እናም በእርግጥ፣ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ ጌታ አምላክ ተናግሮታልና፤ እናም ይህ የእርሱ ሳይከናወን የማይቀር ዘለዓለማዊ ቃሉ ነው፤ ፃድቅ የሆኑት አሁንም ፃድቅ ይሆናሉ፤ የረከሱትም አሁንም ርኩሳን ይሆናሉ፤ ስለዚህ፣ የረከሱት ዲያብሎስና መላዕክቱ ናቸው፤ እነርሱም ደግሞ ለእነርሱ ወደ ተዘጋጀላቸው ወደ ዘለዓለማዊ እሳት ይሄዳሉ፤ እናም ስቃያቸው እሳቱ ወደላይ ለዘለዓለም እንደሚነሳ ወላፈን፣ መጨረሻ እንደሌለው በዲን እንደሚቃጠል የእሳት ባህር ይሆናል።

፳ እቤቱ የአምላካችን ፍትህና ታላቅነት እንዴት ታላቅ ነው! እርሱ ቃሉን ሁሉ ይፈፀማል፤ እነርሱም ከእኔ ወጥተዋል፤ እናም የእርሱ ህግ መፈፀም አለበት።

፳፩ ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ ፃድቃን፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ቅዱሳኖች፣ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ያመኑት፣ የዓለምን መስቀሎች የታገሱ፣ እፍረቷንም የናቁ፣ እነዚህ ከዓለም መጀመሪያ ጀምሮ የተዘጋጀላቸውን የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት ይወርሳሉ፤ እናም ደስታቸው ለዘለዓለም ሙሉ ይሆናል።

፳፪ እቤቱ የአምላካችን የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ታላቅነትና ምህረት እንዴት ታላቅ ነው! እርሱ ቅዱሳንን ከሚያስቀይመው ከእስፈሪው ዲያብሎስና፣ ከሞትና፣ ከሲኦል፣ እናም ከዚያ መጨረሻ የሌለው ስቃይ ከሆነው በዲን ከሚቃጠለው የእሳት ባህር አድኗቸዋልና።

፳፫ እቤቱ የአምላካችን ቅዱስነት እንዴት ታላቅ ነው! እርሱ ሁሉን ነገሮች ያውቃልና፤ እናም እርሱ ከሚያውቀው በስተቀር ምንም ነገር የለም።

፳፬ እናም እርሱ ሰዎች ሁሉ የእርሱን ድምፅ የሚያዳምጡ ከሆነ ሊያድናቸው ዘንድ ወደ እዚህ ዓለም ይመጣል፤ እነሆም፣ እርሱ በሁሉ ሰዎችን ህመም፣ አዎን፣ በእዳም ቤተሰብ አባል በሆኑት በእያንዳንዱ ሕያው ፍጥረታት፣ በወንድም፣ በሴትም፣ በልጆችም ህመም ይስቃያል።

፳፭ እናም እርሱ ይህን ሁሉ የሚስቃየው ትንሣኤ በሰው ልጆች ሁሉ ላይ ያልፍ ዘንድና፣ ሁሉም በእርሱ ፊት በታላቁና በፍርድ ቀን ይቆሙ ዘንድ ነው።

፳፮ እናም እርሱ ሁሉም ሰዎች፣ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ፍፁም የሆነ እምነት ናሯቸው ንስሀ መግባትና፣ በእርሱ ስም መጠመቅ እንዳለባቸው ያዘዛል፤ ካልሆነ ግን በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት ውስጥ መዳን አይችሉም።

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

፳፬ እናም በእርሱ ስም የማያምኑና ንስሀ የማይገቡ፣ በሰሙም የማይጠመቁ፣ እስከመጨረሻው የማይጸኑ ከሆነ ግን መኮነን ይገባቸዋል፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ አምላክ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ተናግሮታል።

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

፳፭ ስለዚህ፣ እርሱ ህግን ሰጥቷል፤ እናም ህግ ባልተሰጠበት ቅጣት የለም፤ እናም ቅጣት በሌለበት ኩነት የለም፤ እናም መኮነን በሌለበት በኃጢአት ክፍያው የተነሳ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ምህረት በእነርሱ ላይ ውጤታማ ይሆናል፤ ምክንያቱም በእርሱ ኃይል ድነዋል።

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

፳፮ ከእስቀያሚ ከእስፈሪው ከሞትና ከሴኦል፣ እናም ከዲያብሎስና፣ መጨረሻ ከሌለው በዲን ከሚቃጠለው የእሳት ባህር ስቃይ ይተርፋ ዘንድ፣ ህጉ ባልተሰጣቸው ሁሉ ላይ የኃጢአት ክፍያው ለፍትህ የሚያስፈልገውን ሁሉ ያደርጋል፤ እናም እስትንፋስ ወደሰጣቸው እስራኤላ ቅዱስ ወደሆነው እግዚአብሔር ይመለሳሉ።

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

፳፯ ነገር ግን ህጉ ለተሰጠው፣ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ልክ እንደ እኛ ያለው፣ እናም የሚተላለፋቸውና፣ የሙከራውን ጊዜ የሚያባክን ወዮላት፣ መጨረሻው አስቃቂ ነው።

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

፳፰ አቤቱ የክፋ የብልጠት ዕቅድ! አቤቱ የሰው ግብዝነትና ድክመትና፣ ሞኝነት! በተማሩ ጊዜ ራሳቸውን እንደብልህ ይቆጥራሉ፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ምክር የማይሰሙ፣ በራሳቸው እንደሚያውቁ በማሰብ፣ ይህን ችላ ይሉታልና፣ ስለሆነም ጥበባቸው ሞኝነታቸው ነው እና አይጠቅማቸውም። እነርሱም ይጠፋሉ።

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

፳፱ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔርን ምክርኝ የሚያደምጡ ከሆነ መማር ጥሩ ነው።

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

፴ ህግን በዓለም ሀብት ሀብታም ለሆኑት ወዮላቸው። ሀብታም በመሆናቸው ድሆችን ይጠላሉና፣ ትሁቶችን ያሳድዳሉና፤ ልባቸውም በሀብታቸው ላይ ነውና፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሀብታቸው አምላካቸው ነው። እናም እነሆ፣ ሀብታቸው ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር ይጠፋል።

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

፴፩ እናም መሰማትን ለማይፈልጉ ለደንቆሮዎች ወዮላቸው፤ ይጠፋሉና።

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

፴፪ ማየትንም ለማይፈልጉ ለዕውሮች ወዮላቸው፤ እነርሱም ደግሞ ይጠፋሉና።

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

፴፫ ልባቸውን ላልተገረዙት ወዮላቸው፣ የኃጢአታቸው እውቀት በመጨረሻው ቀን ይጎዳቸዋልና።

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

፴፬ ለውሽታም ወዮለት፣ ወደታች ወደ ሲጾል ይጣላልና።

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

፴፭ እያወቀ ለሚገድል ለነፍስ ገዳይ ወዮለት፣ ይሞታልና።

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

፴፮ ለሚያመነዘሩ ለእመንዘራዎች ወዮላቸው፣ ወደታች ወደ ሲኦል ይጣላሉና።

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

፴፯ አዎን፣ ጣኦትን ለሚያመልኩ ወዮላቸው፣ የዲያብሎሶች ሁሉ ዲያብሎስ በእነርሱ ይደስትባቸዋልና።

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

፴፰ እናም፣ በእጠቃላይ፣ በኃጢአታቸው ለሚሞቱ ሁሉ ወዮላቸው፤ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ይመለሳሉና፣ እናም ፊቱን ያያሉ፣ በኃጢአታቸውም ይቀራሉ።

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

፴፱ አቤቱ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ቅዱስ የሆነውን እግዚአብሔርን መተላለፍ እንዴት መጥፎ እንደሆነ፣ እናም ደግሞ ለዚያ ለተንኮለኛ ፈተናዎች መጋለጥ እንዴት አስቀያሚ እንደሆነ አስታውሱ። ስለዓለም ማሰብ ሞት እንደሆነና፣ ስለመንፈሳዊ ነገር ማሰብ ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት እንደሆነ አስታውሱ።

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

፵ አቤቱ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ቃሉን አድምጡ። የእስራኤሉን ቅዱስ ታላቅነት አስታውሱ። እኔ በእናንተ ላይ ከባድ ነገሮችን እንደተናገርኩ አትበሉ፤ ይህንንም ካላችሁ፣ እውነትን ትቃወማላችሁ፤ እኔ የእናንተን ፈጣሪ ቃላት ተናግራለሁና። የእውነት ቃላት ንፁህ ላልሆኑ ሁሉ ላይ አስቸጋሪ እንደሆነ እውቃላችሁ፤ ነገር ግን ደድቆች አይፈሯቸውም፣ እውነትን ይወዳሉና እናም አይጨነቁም።

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

፵፩ ከዚያም አቤቱ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ወደ ጌታ ወደ ቅዱሱ ኑ። መንገዱ ፅድቅ እንደሆነ አስታውሱ። እነሆ፣ ለሰው መንገዱ ጠባብ ነው፣ ነገር ግን በእርሱ ፊት በቀጥተኛ አቅጣጫ ይጓዛል። መግቢያውን ጠባቂ የእስራኤሉ ቅዱስ ነው፤ እናም እርሱ በዚያ ቦታ ምንም አገልጋይ አይቀጥርም፤ እናም በመግቢያው ካልሆነ በቀር ምንም ሌላ መንገድ የለም፤ እርሱ ሊታለል አይችልምና፣ ጌታ አምላክ የእርሱ ስም ነውና።

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

፵፪ እናም ለሚያንጻጻጁ ሁሉ ለእርሱ ይከፍትላታል፤ እና ብልሆችም፣ የተማሩትና፣ ሀብታም ለሆኑት፣ በትምህርታቸው፣ በጥበባቸውና በሀብታቸው ኩራት ከፍ ያሉ—አዎን፣ እነርሱን ነው እርሱ የሚጠላው፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ካልጣሉም፣ እራሳቸውን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ሞቻች አድርገው ካላሰቡና፣ ራሳቸውን በጥልቅ ትህትና በጣም ዝቅ ካላደረጉ፣ ለእነርሱ አይከፍትላቸውም።

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

፵፫ ነገር ግን የብልሆችና የአስተዋዮች ነገሮች—አዎን፣ ለቅዱሳን የተዘጋጀው ያ ደስታ፣ ከእነርሱ ለዘለዓለም ይደበቃሉ።

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

፱፬ ኣቤቱ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ቃላቴን አሰታውሱ። እነሆ፣ ካባዬን አውልቄ በፊታችሁ አራግፈዋለሁ፤ የመዳኔ አምላክ ሁሉን በሚያይ ዐይኑ እንዲመለከተኝ እጸልያለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉም ሰዎች እንደሰራቸው በሚፈረድባቸው በመጨረሻው ቀን፣ የአሰራኤል አምላክ ኃጢአታችሁን ከላዬ ላይ እንዳወረድኩ፣ እናም በእርሱ ፊት በክብር እንደምቆምና ከደማችሁ ንፁህ እንደሆንኩ እንደሚመስክር ታውቃላችሁ።

፱፭ ኣቤቱ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ከኃጢአታችሁ ተመለሱ፤ አጥብቆ ከሚያሰራችሁ የእርሱን ሰንሰለት በጥሱ፤ ወደ መዳናችሁ ዓለት ወደሆነው እግዚአብሔር ኑ።

፱፮ ለዚያ የፍርድ ቀን ለሆነው፣ ፍትህ ለፃድቃን ለሚሰጥበት ለዚያ ለታላቁ ቀን በአስቃቂ ፍርሃት እንዳትሸማቁቁ፣ ኃጢአታችሁን በፍፁም መልኩ እንዳታሰታውሱ፣ እናም በታላቅ ድምፅ፣ ቅዱስ ቅዱስ ነው ፍርድህ፣ አቤቱ ሁሉን የሚገዛ ጌታ አምላክ—ነገር ግን ኃጢአቴን አውቃለሁ፤ ህግህን ተላልፎአለሁ፣ መተላለፎቼም የእኔው ናቸው፤ እናም ዲያብሎስ እኔን ይዘኛል፣ ስለዚህ እኔ የእርሱ ጉዳት የደረሰብኝ የመከራው ተሳዳጅ ነኝ በማለት ለመናገር እንድትገፋፉ ነፍሳችሁን አዘጋጁ።

፱፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ስለእነዚህ መጥፎ ነገሮች አውነታ እንድትነቁ ዘንድ ማድረጌ አስፈላጊ ነው? አዕምሮአችሁ ንፁህ ቢሆን ኖሮ እኔ ነፍሶቻችሁን አስቃይ ነበርን? ከኃጢአታችሁ ንፁህ ብትሆኑ ኖሮ በአውነቱ ግልፅነት እኔ ለእናንተ ግልፅ እሆን ነበርን?

፱፰ እነሆ፣ ቅዱሳን ብትሆኑ ኖሮ እኔ ስለቅዱሳነት እነግራችሁ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እናንተ ቅዱስ ስላልሆናችሁ፣ እና እኔን እንደአስተማሪ ስለአያችሁኝ፣ ስለኃጢአት ውጤት አስተምራችሁ ዘንድ አስፈላጊ ነው።

፱፱ እነሆ፣ ነፍሴ ኃጢአትን ትጠላለች፣ ልቤ ደግሞ በዳድቅነት ትደሰታለች፤ እናም የቅዱስ አምላኬን ሰም አምግሳለሁ።

፻ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ኑ፣ የተጠማችሁ ሁሉ፣ ወደ ውኃው ኑ፤ እና ገንዘብ የሌላችሁ፣ ኑ ግዙፍ ብሉ፤ አዎን፣ ኑ ወይንና ወተት ያለገንዘብና ያለዋጋ ግዙ።

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

፶፩ ስለዚህ፣ ዋጋ በሌለው ነገር ገንዘብ አታባክኑ፣ ወይም አጥጋቢ ለማይሆን ጉልበታችሁን አታባክኑ፣ እናም አድምጡኝ፣ የተናገርኳቸውንም ቃል አስታውሱ፤ ወደ እስራኤል ቅዱስ ኑ፣ እናም የማይጠፋውን ሊበላሽ የማይቻለውን ተመገቡና፣ ነፍሳችሁ በመፋፋት ትደሰት።

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

፶፪ እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ የእምላካችሁን ቃላት አስታውሱ፤ ያለማቋረጥ በቀን ለእርሱ ፀልዩ፣ እናም በመሸ ጊዜ ለቅዱስ ስሙ ምስጋናን አቅርቡ። ልባችሁም ትደሰት።

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

፶፫ እናም እነሆ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን እንዴት ታላቅ ነው፣ እናም ለሰው ልጆች እራሱን ዝቅ ማድረግ እንዴት ታላቅ ነው፤ በታላቅነቱ፣ በጸጋውና በምህረቱ የተነሳ ለእኛ ዘራችንን በሙሉ በሰጋ እንደማይጠፋ፣ ነገር ግን እንደሚጠብቃቸው ቃል ገብቶልናል፤ በሚመጡትም ትውልዶች በእስራኤል ቤት የተቀደሰ ቅርንጫፍ ይሆናሉ።

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

፶፬ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ለእናንተ የበለጠ እናገራለሁ፤ ነገር ግን በማግሰቱ የተቀሩትን የእኔን ቃላት እገልፅላችኋለሁ። አሜን።

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

፪ ኔፊ ፲

፩ እናም እሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ ስለዚህ ስለተናገርኩት ስለተቀደሰው ቅርንጫፍ ደግሜ እናገራችኋለሁ።

፪ እነሆም እኛ የያዝናቸው ቃልኪዳኖች ለሰጋ የተገቡ ቃልኪዳኖች ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ፣ ብዙዎች ልጆቻችን እምነት በማጣታቸው የተነሳ እንደሚጠፉ ለእኔ ቢገለጹኝም፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እግዚአብሔር ለብዙዎች ምህረትን ያወርዳል፤ እና ልጆቻችን የመድኃኒታቸውን እውነተኛ እውቀት ወደሚሰጣቸው ለመምጣት ደግመው ይመለሳሉ።

፫ ስለዚህ፣ እንዳልኳችሁ፣ ክርስቶስ—ትናንት ማታ መልእኩ ሰሙ ይህ እንደሚሆን ነግሮኛልና—ከእይሁዶች፣ በዓለም ከሌሎች በላይ ኃጢአተኛ በሆኑት፣ መካከል ይመጣል፤ እነርሱም ይሰቅሉታል—እንዲህ መሆኑ ለእምላካችን አስፈላጊ ነበርና፣ እናም በምድር ላይ የራሳቸውን እምላክ የሚሰቅል ሌላ ህዝብ የለም።

፬ በሌሎች ሕዝቦች መካከል ታላቅ ተዓምራት ከተፈፀሙ ንስህ ይገባሉ፣ እናም እምላካቸው እንደሆነ ያውቃሉ።

፭ ነገር ግን በኃጢአትና በካህናት ተንኮል የተነሳ በኢየሩሳሌም ያሉት እርሱ እስኪገደል ድረስ እንኳ በእርሱ ላይ አንገተ ደንዳና ይሆናሉ።

፮ ስለዚህ በኃጢአታቸው የተነሳ ጥፋት፣ ረሃብ፣ ቸነፈር፣ እና ደም መፍሰስ በእነርሱ ላይ ይመጣል፤ እናም የማይጠፉት ደግሞ በህዝቦች ሁሉ መካከል ይበተናሉ።

፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል—እኔ ክርስቶስ እንደሆንኩ፣ የሚያምኑበት ቀን በመጣ ጊዜ፣ ያኔ እኔ በሰጋ ወደ ርስታቸው ምድር እመልሳቸው ዘንድ ከአባቶቻቸው ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገብቻለሁ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ከረጅም ዘመን ብተናቸው፣ ከባህር ደሴቶችና፣ ከምድር ከአራቱም ማዕዘናት ይሰበሰባሉ፤ እና እህዛቦች እነርሱን ወደ ርስት ምድራቸው በመውሰዳቸው የእህዛብ ሀገሮች በዐይኖቼ ፊት ታላቅ ይሆናሉ ይላል እግዚአብሔር።

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

፱ አዎን፣ የአህዛብ ንጉሶች ለእነርሱ እንደ አባት ይሆኑላቸዋል፤ እናም ንግስቶቻቸውም እንደ እናቶች ይሆኑላቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ ለአህዛብ የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ታላቅ ነው፣ እርሱ ተናግሯታልና፣ እናም ማን ይቃወማል?

፲ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ምድር፣ ይላል እግዚአብሔር፣ የርስታችሁ ምድር ይሆናል፣ እና አህዛብም በምድሩ ላይ የተባረኩ ይሆናሉ።

፲፩ እናም ይህ ምድር ለአህዛብ የነፃነት ምድር ይሆናል፣ እናም በምድሪቷም በአህዛብ ላይ የሚነሱ ንጉሶች አይኖሩም።

፲፪ እናም እኔ ይህንን ምድር ከሌሎች ሀገሮች አጠናክራቸዋለሁ።

፲፫ እናም ፅዮንን የሚዋጋ ይጠፋል፣ ይላል እግዚአብሔር።

፲፬ በእኔ ላይ ሌላ ንጉስ የሚያሰነጎ ይጠፋልና፣ ምክንያቱም እኔ ጌታ የሰማይ ንጉስ፣ ንጉሳቸው እሆንላቸዋለሁ፣ እናም ድምፃን ለሚሰሙ ሁሉ ለዘለዓለም ብርሃን እሆንላቸዋለሁ።

፲፭ ስለዚህ፣ በዚህ የተነገሩ ለሰው ልጆች የገባኋቸው ቃልኪዳኖች ይፈጸሙ ዘንድ፣ እነርሱ በሰጋ እያሉ አደርግላቸው ዘንድ፣ የጭለማ የሚሰጥ ስራዎችንና፣ ግድያዎችን፣ እናም እርኩሶቶችን አጠፋ ዘንድ ያስፈልገኛል።

፲፮ ስለዚህ፣ አይሁድም ሆነ አህዛብ፣ ባርያም ሆነ ነፃ፣ ወንድም ሆነ ሴት፣ ፅዮንን የሚዋጋ ይጠፋል፤ የምድር ሁሉ ጋለሞታዎች እነዚህ ናቸውና፤ የእኔ ያልሆኑት ይቃወሙኛልና ይላል አምላካችን።

፲፯ ለሰው ልጆች በሰጋቸው ላደርግላቸው የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አፈፅማለሁና—

፲፰ ስለዚህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ አምላካችን እንዲህ ይላል፣ ዘርቻችሁን በአህዛብ እጅ አስቃያለሁ፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እነርሱ እንደአባት ይሆኑላቸው ዘንድ የአህዛብን ልብ አራራለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ አህዛብ ይባረካሉ እናም ከእስራኤል ቤትም ውስጥ ይቆጠራሉ።

፲፱ ስለዚህ፣ ለዘርቻችሁና ከዘርቻችሁ መሀል ለሚቆጠሩት ይህችን ምድር የርስት ምድራቸው ለዘለዓለም ትሆን ዘንድ እቀባታለሁ፤ እግዚአብሔርም ለእኔ ከሌሎች ምድሮች ሁሉ በላይ የተመረጠች ምድር ናት አለኝ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በዚያ የሚኖሩ ሰዎች ሁሉ እኔን እንዲያመልኩ እፈልጋለሁ ይላል እግዚአብሔር።

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

፳፫ እና አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ መሀሪው እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ታላቅ እውቀትን ስለሰጠን፣ እናስታውሰው፣ እናም ኃጢአታችንን እንተው፣ ተስፋም አንቁረጥ፣ እኛ አልተጣልንምና፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከርስታችን ምድር እንድንወጣ ተደርገናል፤ ነገር ግን ወደተሻለ ምድር ተመርተናል፣ ጌታ ባህሩን መንገዳችን እድርጎልናል፣ እና በባህር ደሴት ላይ ነን።

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

፳፬ ነገር ግን በባህር ደሴቶች ላይ ላሉት የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ታላቅ ነው፣ ስለዚህ ደሴቶች ስለሚል፣ ከዚህ የበለጡ ሌሎችም አሉ ማለት ነው፤ እናም እነርሱ ወንድሞቻችን የሚኖሩባቸው ናቸው።

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

፳፭ እነሆም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንደፈቃዱና እንደምኞቱ ከጊዜ ወደ ጊዜ ከእስራኤል ቤት ህዝቡን አውጥቷል። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ጌታ የተገነጠሉትን ሁሉ ያስታውሳል፣ ስለዚህ እኛንም ደግሞ ያስታውሳል።

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

፳፮ ስለዚህ፣ ልባችሁን አስደሰቱ፣ እናም በራሳችሁ ለመስራት፣ ዘለዓለማዊውን ሞት ወይም የዘለዓለማዊውን ህይወት መንገድ እራሳችሁ ለመምረጥ ነጻነት እንዳላችሁ አስታውሱ።

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ራሳችሁን ከእግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ ጋር እንጂ ከዲያብሎስና ከሰጋ ፈቃድ ጋር አታስታርቁ፤ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ከታረቃችሁ በኋላ የምትድኑት በእግዚአብሔር ፀጋ ውስጥና በእርሱ በኩል ብቻ እንደሆነ አስታውሱ።

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

፳፰ ስለዚህ፣ ወደዘለዓለም የእግዚአብሔር መንግስት እንድትገቡና፣ በመለኮታዊ ፀጋም እንድታመሰግኑት ዘንድ፣ እግዚአብሔር በትንሣኤ ኃይል ከሞት፣ እናም ደግሞ ከዘለዓለማዊው ሞት በኃጢአት ክፍያ ያንሳችሁ። አሜን።

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

፩ እናም አሁን፣ ያዕቆብ በዚያን ጊዜ ለህዝቡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገረ፤ ሆኖም እነዚህን ነገሮች ብቻ እንዲፃፉ አደረገሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እኔ የፃፍኳቸው ነገሮች ይበቁኛልና።

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

፪ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ፣ የኢሳይያስን ቃል በተጨማሪ እፅፋለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም በእርሱ ቃል ነፍሴ ትደሰታለች። ቃላቱን ለህዝቡ አመሳሰልላቸዋለሁ፣ እናም ለልጆቼ ሁሉ አስራጫቸዋለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በእውነት መድኃኒቱን፣ እኔ እንዳየሁት፣ አይቶታልና።

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

፫ እናም እኔ እንዳየሁት ወንድሜ ያዕቆብም ደግሞ አይቶታል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ቃሌ እውነት መሆኑን ለማረጋገጥ የእነርሱን ቃል ለልጆቼ እልካለሁ። ስለዚህ፣ እግዚአብሔር በሶስት ሰዎች ቃል ቃሉን አፀናለሁ ብሏል። ይሁን እንጂ፣ እግዚአብሔር የበለጡ ምስክሮችን ይልካል፣ እናም ቃሉን በሙሉ ያረጋግጣል።

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

፬ እነሆ፣ የሚመጣውን ክርስቶስ እውነታ ለህዝቦቹ በማረጋገጥ ነፍሴ ትደሰታለች፤ ለዚህም ምክንያት ነው የሙሴ ህግ የተሰጠው፤ እናም ከዓለም መጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ለሰዎች በእግዚአብሔር የተሰጡት ነገሮች ሁሉ የእርሱ ምሳሌዎች ናቸው።

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

፭ እናም ደግሞ ነፍሴ ጌታ ለአባቶቻችን በገባው ቃል ኪዳን ትደሰታለች፤ እዎን፣ በፀጋውና በፍርድና፣ በሀይሉ እና በምህረቱ፣ በታላቁና ከሞት በሚያድነው ዘለአለማዊው እቅድ፣ ነፍሴ ትደሰታለች።

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

፮ እናም ክርስቶስ ካልመጣ በስተቀር ሁሉም ሰው እንደሚጠፋ ለህዝቡ በማረጋገጠኔ ነፍሴ ትደሰታለች።

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

፯ ክርስቶስ ከሌለ እግዚአብሔር አይኖርምና፤ እናም እግዚአብሔር ከሌለ እኛም አንኖርም፣ ምክንያቱም ምንም ፍጡር ሊኖር አይችልምና። ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር አለ፣ እርሱም ክርስቶስ ነው፣ እናም በዘመኑ ፍፃሜ ይመጣል።

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

፰ እናም አሁን ከህዝቡ ማንም ይህንን ቃል የሚያይ ልብን ከፍ እንዲያደርጉና ለሰዎች ሁሉ ይደሰቱ ዘንድ፣ ከኢሳይያስ ቃል በጥቂቱ እፅፋለሁ። አሁን ቃሉ ይህ ነው፣ እናም በራሳችሁና በሁሉም ሰዎች አነፃፅሯቸው።

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፪

፩ የአሞጽ ልጅ ኢሳይያስ ስለ ይሁዳና ስለ ኢየሩሳሌም ያየው ቃል—

፪ እናም በኋለኛው ቀናት እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ የጌታ ቤት ተራራ በተራሮች ጫፍ ላይ ሲመሰረት፣ እናም ከኮረብቶችም በላይ ከፍ ሲል፣ ህዝቦችም ሁሉ ወደ እርሱ ይሰበሰባሉ።

፫ ከእዚያም ብዙ ህዝብ ሄደው እንዲህ ይላል፣ ኑና ወደ ጌታ ተራራ ወደ ያዕቆብ አምላክ ቤት እንወጣ፤ እናም እርሱ መንገዱን ያስተምረናልና፣ በጎዳናው እንራመዳለን፣ ህግ ከፅዮን፣ የጌታም ቃል ከኢየሩሳሌም ይወጣልና።

፬ እናም እርሱ በሃገሮች መካከል ይፈርዳል፣ ብዙ ህዝቦችንም ይገሰፃል፣ እናም ሰይፋቸውን ማረሻ፣ ጦራቸውንም ማጭድ ለማድረግ ይቀጠቅጣሉ—ሀገርም በሃገር ላይ ሰይፍ አያነሳም፣ ጦርነትም ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ አይሟሩም።

፭ የያዕቆብ ቤት ሆይ፣ ኑ በጌታ ብርሃን እንራመድ፤ አዎን፣ ኑ ሁላችሁም ተቅብዝብዛችኋልና፣ እያንዳንዱም በኃጢያት ወደገዛ መንገዱ አዘነበለ።

፮ ስለዚህ፣ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ ሕዝብህን የያዕቆብን ቤት ትተሃል፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የምስራቅን ሰዎች ልምድ ስለተሞሉና፣ እንደ ፍልስጤማውያን ምዋርተኞችን ስለሚያዳምጡ፣ እና በባዕድ ልጆች እራሳቸውን ስላሰደሰቱ ነው።

፯ ምድራቸውም ደግሞ በብርና በወርቅ ተሞልታለች፣ ለመዛግብቶቻቸውም ፍጻሜ የለውም፤ ምድራቸውም ደግሞ በፈረሶች ተሞልታለች፣ ስረገሎቻቸውም ፍፃሜ የላቸውም።

፰ ምድራቸውም ደግሞ በጣዖት ተሞልታለች፣ በጣቶቻቸውም ለሰሩት ለእጃቸው ስራ ይሰግዳሉ።

፱ እናም ተራው ሰው አልሰገደም፣ እናም ታላቁም ሰው እራሱን ትሁት አላደረገም፣ ስለዚህ፣ ይቅር አትበለው።

፲ እናንተ ክፋዎች ሆይ ወደ ድንጋዩ ዋሻ ግቡ፣ እናም በመሬት ውስጥም ተሸሸጉ፣ ምክንያቱም የጌታ ፍርሃትና የክብሩ ሞገስ ክብሩ ይመታችኋል።

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኩራት የሆነው የሰው አመለካከት አልባሌ ይሆናል፣ የሰዎችም ትዕቢት ዝቅ ትላለች፣ እናም ጌታ ብቻውን በዚያ ቀን ከፍ ከፍ ይላል።

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

፲፪ የሰራዊት ጌታ ቀን በሁሉም ሀገር ላይ፣ እዎን፣ በማንኛውም ላይ፣ እዎን፣ በትዕቢተኛውና በኩራተኛው ላይና፣ ከፍ ባለውም ላይ ሁሉ በቅርቡ ይመጣልና፣ እናም እርሱም ይዋረዳል።

፲፫ እዎን፣ እናም የጌታ ቀን በሊባኖስ ዝግባዎች ላይ ሁሉ ይመጣል፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ከፍና ኮራ ብለዋልና፤ እናም በበሳንም ዛፍ ሁሉ ላይ፤

፲፬ እናም ከፍ ባሉት ተራሮች ላይ ሁሉ፣ እናም በኮራብታዎች ላይ ሁሉ፣ እና በኮራት ሀገሮች ሁሉ ላይ፣ እናም በማንኛውም ሀገር ላይ፤

፲፭ እናም በማንኛውም ረጅም ግንብና፣ በተመሸገውም ቅጥር ላይ ይመጣል፤

፲፮ እናም በባህሩ መርከቦች ላይ ሁሉና፣ በተርሴስ መርከብ ላይ ሁሉ፣ እናም አሰደሳች ምስሎች ላይ ሁሉ።

፲፯ እናም የሰው የኩራት አመለካከት ይወድቃልና፣ የሰዎች ዕብሪትም ይዋረዳል፤ እናም በዚያም ቀን ጌታ ብቻውን ከፍ ከፍ ይላል።

፲፰ እናም ጣዖቶችን ፈፅሞ ያጠፋል።

፲፱ እናም እነርሱ ጌታ ምድርን በከፍተኛ ሁኔታ ያናውጥ ዘንድ በተነሣ ጊዜ ወደ ድንጋይ ጉድጓዶችና፣ ወደ ምድር ዋሻዎች ይገባሉ፣ የጌታ ፍርሃት ይመጣባቸዋልና፣ እናም የእርሱ ግርማ ሞገሱ ክብር ይመታቸዋልና።

፳ በዚያም ቀን ሰው ይሰግድላቸው ዘንድ ያበጃቸውን የብር ጣዖቶቹን፣ እና የወርቁን ጣዖቶቹን ለፍልፈልና ለሌሊት ወፍ ይጥላል፣

፳፩ ጌታ ምድርን በከፍተኛ ሁኔታ ያናውጥ ዘንድ በተነሳ ጊዜ፣ የጌታ ፍርሃት ስለሚመጣባቸው፣ እናም የእርሱ ግርማ ሞገሱ ክብር ስለሚመታቸው ወደ ተሰነጣጠቁ የድንጋይ ዋሻና ወደ ፍርስራሽ ዓለቶች ጫፍ ይገባሉ።

፳፪ እስትንፋሱ በአፍንጫው ያለበትን ሰው ተዉት፣ እርሱ ስለ ምን ይቈጠራል?

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

፩ እነሆም፡ የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር፣ ከኢየሩሳሌምና ከይሁዳ፣ ሞርኩዝን፣ እና ድጋፍን፣ የዳቦን ድጋፍ ሁሉ እናም የውሃንም ድጋፍ ሁሉ ይወስዳል—

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

፪ ሀያሉን ሰውና፣ ተዋጊውንም፣ ፈራጂንም፣ ነቢዩንም፣ ብልሀንና፣ ሽማግሌውን ሰው ይወስዳል፤

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

፫ የሀምሳ አለቃውንና፣ የተከበረውን ሰው፣ አማካሪውንም፣ እና ብልሀን ሠራተኛና፣ ጥሩ ተናጋሪውን ይወስዳል።

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

፬ እናም ልዑሎቻቸው ይሆኑ ዘንድ ሕፃናትን እስጣቸዋለሁ፡ ሕፃናቶችም እነርሱን ይገዛሉ።

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

፭ እናም ሕዝቡ ይጨቆናል፣ አንዱ በሌላኛው፣ እንዲሁም አንዱ በጎረቤቱ፤ ሕፃናቱ በሽማግሌው ላይ እንዲሁም ፀያፍ አድራጊዎች በተከበረው ላይ ይኮራሉ።

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

፮ አንድ ሰው በአባቱ ቤት ውስጥ ወንድሙን በያዘ ጊዜ፣ እናም እንዲህ ሲለው፡ አንተ ልብስ አለህ፣ አለቃም ሆንልን፣ እናም ይህም ጥፋት ከእጅህ በታች እንዲሆን አትፍቀድ—

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

፯ በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ በማለት ይምላል—ባለመድሀኒት አልሆንም፤ ምክንያቱም በቤቴ ዳቦም ሆነ ልብስ የለምና፤ የሕዝቡም አለቃ አታድርጉኝ።

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

፰ የክብሩን ዐይን ለማስቆጣት፣ ምላሳቸውና ስራቸው ጌታን ስለሚፃረሩ ኢየሩሳሌም ፈረሰች፣ እናም ይሁዳ ወደቀች።

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

፱ በፊታቸው የሚታየው በእነርሱ ላይ ይመስክራል፣ እናም ኃጢአታቸው እንደሰደም አይነት እንደሆነ ያውጃል፣ እናም ሊደብቁት አይችሉም። በራሳቸው ላይ ኃጢአትን በማምጣታቸው ለነፍሳቸው ወዮላቸው!

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

፲ የሰራቸውን ፍሬ ይበላሉና፤ ፃድቃንን መልካም ይሆንላችኋል በላቸው።

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

፲፩ ወዮላቸው ለክፋዎች፤ ይጠፋሉና፤ የሰራቸውም ዋጋ በእነርሱ ላይ ይሆናል!

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

፲፪ እናም ሕዝቤ፣ ሕፃናት ጨቋኛቸው ናቸው፣ እንዲሁም ሴቶች ገዢዎቻቸው ናቸው። ሕዝቤ ሆይ፣ የመሩአችሁ ያስቱአችኋል፣ እንዲሁም የምትሄዱበትንም መንገዳችሁን ያጠፋሉ።

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

፲፫ ጌታ ለመግባት ተነስቷል፣ እናም በሕዝቡም ላይ ሊፈርድ ቆሟል።

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

፲፬ ጌታ ከሕዝቡ ሽማግሌዎችና ከልዑሎች ጋር ለፍርድ ይገባል፤ ምክንያቱም የወይኑን ቦታ እና በቤታችሁ የሚገኙት ድሆችን ብዝበዛ የጨረሳችሁ እናንተ ናችሁ።

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

፲፭ እናንተ ምን ማለታችሁ ነው? ሕዝቤን ታደቁአቸዋልችሁ፣ እና የድሆችንም ፊት ትፈጫላችሁ፣ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር።

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

፲፮ ከሁሉም በላይ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ አለ፣ የፅዮን ሴት ልጆች ትዕቢተኛ ስለሆኑና አንገታቸውን በማሰገግ ስለሚራመዱና በሚሄዱበት ጊዜ ዐይናቸውን በማጣቀስ፣ ፈጠን ብለው በመራመድ እናም በእግራቸው እያቃጨሉ በመሄዳቸው ምክንያት—

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

፲፱ ስለዚህ ጌታ የፅዮንን ሴት ልጆች ራስ በቡሃነት ይመታል፣ እናም ጌታ ሀፍረተ-ሰጋቸውን ይገልጣል።

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

፲፳ በዚያ ቀን ጌታ የሚያንቃጭለውን ጌጣቸውን፣ መርብብን፣ እና ጨረቃ የሚመስለውን የአንገት ጌጣቸውን ውበት ያስወግዳል።

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;

፲፳፯ ሰንሰለቱንና አምባሩን፣ እና መሸፈኛውን፤ ፳፯ ቆብና የእግር አልቦውን፣ እና የራስ ማስሪያውንና፣ የሽቶውን ዕቃ፣ እና የጀር ቀለበቶቹን፤

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers; The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

፳፻ ቀለበት እና የአፍንጨ ጌጥ፤

The rings, and nose jewels;

፳፻ ውድ ሱፍ ልብሰንም፣ ካባውንንም፣ መጎናጸፊያውንም፣ እና ፀጉር መጠቅለያውን፤

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

፳፻ መስታወቱንም፣ ከጥሩ በፍታ የተሰራውንም ልብስ፣ ራስ ማስሪያውንም፣ ዓይነ ርግቡንም ያስወግዳል።

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ በጥሩ ሽታ ፈንታ ግማት፣ እና በመታጠቅያው ፈንታ ቀዳዳ፤ ጠጉርንም በመነቀስ ፈንታ መላጣነት፤ በተብለጨለጨው ልብስ ፈንታ ማቅ፤ በውበትም ፈንታ ጠባሳ ይሆናል።

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

፳፻ ወንዶችሽ በሰይፍ ጀግኖችሽም በውጊያ ይወድቃሉ።

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.

፳፻ እናም በሮችዋ ያዝናሉ ያለቅሱማል፤ እናም ተስፋ በመቁረጥ በመሬት ላይ ብቻዋን ትቀመጣለች።

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፬

፩ እናም በዚያ ቀን፣ ሰባት ሴቶች አንድን ወንድ ይይዛሉ፣ የራሳችንን ዳቦ እንበላለን፣ እንዲሁም የራሳችንን ልብስ እንለብሳለን፣ ሀፍረታችንን ለማስወገድ በሰምህ ብቻ እንጠራ ይላሉ።

፪ በዚያ ቀን የጌታ ቅርንጫፍ ያማረና የከበረ ይሆናል፤ ከእስራኤል ለመጡት የምድሪቱ ፍሬ ታላቅና ውብ ይሆናል።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ በፅዮን የቀሩና በኢየሩሳሌም የቀሩ፣ በኢየሩሳሌም በሕያዋን መካከል የተመዘገቡ ሁሉ ቅዱስ ተብለው ይጠራሉ—

፬ ጌታ የፅዮንን ሴት ልጆች እድፍ ባጠበ ጊዜ፣ እና የኢየሩሳሌምንም ደም በፍርድ መንፈስና በሚያቃጥል መንፈስ ከመካከልዋ ባነፃ ጊዜ ቅዱስ ተብለው ይጠራሉ።

፭ እናም ጌታ በፅዮን ተራራ ባለ ማደሪያ ላይና፣ በመስብሰቢያዎቿ ላይ፣ በቀን ደመናንና፣ ጢስን በሌሊትም የሚበራውን የእሳት ብርሃን ይፈጥራል፤ በፅዮን ክብር ሁሉ ላይ መጋረጃ ይሆናልና።

፮ እናም በቀን ከሙቀት ለመጠለያ ቦታ፣ ለመሸሸጊያም ቦታ፣ እናም ከውሽንፍርና ከዝናብ መሸፈኛ ድንኳን ይሆናል።

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፭

2 Nephi 15

፩ እናም ከዚያ ለውድ ወዳጄ የወይን ኦትክልት ሰፍራውን በተመለከተ የወዳጄን ዘፈን እዘፍንለታለሁ። የእኔ ውድ ወዳጄ በጣም ፍሬያማ ኮረብታ ውስጥ የኦትክልት ሰፍራ አለው።

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

፪ እናም አጠረው፣ በውስጡ ያሉ ድንጋዮችንም ሰብሰቦ አወጣና፣ የተመረጠውን ወይን ተከለ፣ በመካከሉም ግንብን ገነባ፣ ደግሞም በውስጡ የወይን መጭመቂያ ስራ፤ እናም ወይኑ ያፈራ ዘንድ ጠበቀው፣ የበረሃ ወይንንም አወጣ።

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

፫ እናም አሁን፣ በኢየሩሳሌም የምትኖሩና የይሁዳ ሰዎች ሆይ፣ በእኔ በወይን የኦትክልት ሰፍራዬ መካከል እንድትፈርዱ እጠይቃችኋለሁ።

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

፬ እኔ ያላደረግኩት በወይን የኦትክልት ሰፍራዬ ውስጥ ሊደረግ የሚገባ ነገር ምን ነበር? ስለዚህ፣ ወይን ያፈራል ብዬ በጠበቅሁት ጊዜ የበረሃ ወይንን አፈራ።

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

፭ እናም አሁን ሂዱ፤ የወይን ኦትክልት ሰፍራዬን ምን እንደማደርገው እነግራችኋለሁ—አጥሩን እንቅላለሁ፣ ይህም ይበላል፤ እናም በዚያ ያለውን ግድግዳ አፈርሳለሁ፣ ለመራገጫም ይሆናል፤

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

፮ እናም እኔ አጠፋዋለሁ፤ አይከረከምም ወይም አይቆፈርም፤ ነገር ግን አረምና እሾህ ይበቅልበታል፤ እናም ደግሞ ደመናን በእርሱ ላይ ዝናብ ደግመው እንዳያዘንቡ አዛለሁ።

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

፯ የሰራዊት ጌታ የወይን ኦትክልት ሰፍራ የእስራኤል ቤት ነውና፣ የደሰታውም ኦትክልት የይሁዳ ሰዎች ናቸው፤ እናም ፍትህን ፈለገ፣ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ግፍ እየ፣ ፅድቅን ፈለገ፣ ነገር ግን ልቅሶ ሰማ።

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

፰ ቦታ እስኪጠፋና እራሳቸው በምድር መካከል ብቻቸውን እስኪቀሩ ድረስ ቤትን ከቤት ለሚያገናኙ ወዮላቸው!

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

፱ የሰራዊት ጌታ እንዲህ ብሎ ሲሞል በጆሮዬ ሰማሁት፣ በእውነት ብዙ ቤቶች ባዶ ይሆናሉ፣ እናም ታላቅና የሚያምሩ ከተሞችም ያለነዋሪዎች ይሆናሉ።

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

፲ አዎን፣ ከወይኑ ቦታ አስር ጥማድ በሬ ካረሰው አንድ የባዶ ስመሰፈሪያ ብቻ ይወጣል፣ እናም አንድ የቆሮስ መሰፈሪያ ዘር አንድ የኢፍ መሰፈሪያ ይሰጣል።

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

፲፩ በማለዳ ተነስተው ሃይለኛ መጠጥ ለሚፈልጉ፣ እስከማታም ቀጥለው፣ እናም በወይን ለሚሰክሩ ወዮላቸው!

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

፲፪ እናም መስንቆና፣ በገና፣ ከበርና፣ እምቢልታም፣ የወይን ጠጅም በግብዣቸው አለ፤ የጌታን ስራ ግን አልተመለከቱም፣ እጁም ያደረገውን አላስተዋሉም።

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ ሕዝቦቹ ምንም እውቀት ስለሌላቸው በግዛት ተይዘዋል፤ እናም የተከበሩት ሰዎቻቸው ተርበዋል፣ ሕዝቡም ደግሞ በጥማት ደርቋል።

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ሲዖል ራሷን አስፍታለች፣ እናም አፍዋን ያለገደብ ከፍታለች፤ እናም የእነርሱ ክብርና፣ ሕዝባቸው፣ ውበታቸውም፣ እናም ያ የሚደሰተውም፣ ወደ እርሷ ይወርዳል።

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

፲፭ እናም ተራው ሰው ዝቅ ይላል፣ ታላቁም ሰው ትሁት ይሆናል፣ የኩራተኞች ዐይን ትሁት ትሆናለች።

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

፲፮ ነገር ግን የሠራዊት ጌታ በፍርድ ይከብራል፣ እናም ቅዱስ የሆነው እግዚአብሔር በፅድቁ ይቀደሳል።

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

፲፯ ከዚያም በጎቹ እንደተለመደው ይመገባሉ፣ እንግዶችም የሰቡትን ባድማ ይበላሉ።

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

፲፰ በግብዝነት ገመድ በደልን፣ እና ኃጢአትንም በሰረገላ ማስሪያ ይመስል ወደ ራሳቸው ለሚሰቡ ወዮላቸው፤

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

፲፱ እናም ያፍጥን፣ ስራውን ያሰቸኩል፣ እኛ እንድናየው፣ እናም የእስራኤሉን ቅዱስ ምክርም እኛ እናውቀው ዘንድ ይቅረብ ለሚሉትም ወዮላቸው።

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

፳ መጥፎውን መልካም የሚሉ፣ እናም ጥሩውን መጥፎ የሚሉ፣ ጨለማን ብርሃን፣ ብርሃንን ጨለማ፣ መራራውን ጣፋጭ፣ ጣፋጩን መራራ ለሚሉትም ወዮላቸው!

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

፳፩ በራሳቸው ዐይን ብልህና አስተዋይ ለሆኑት ወዮላቸው!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

፳፪ የወይን ጠጅ ለመጠጣት ኃያላንና፣ ጠንካራ መጠጦችን በመደባለቅ ለበረቱት ሰዎች ወዮላቸው፤

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

፳፫ በደለኛውን ስለ ጉቦ ጸድቅ ለሚያደርጉ፣ የጸድቁንም ጸድቅ ለሚያሰወግዱበት ወዮላቸው!

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ የእሳት ወላፊን ቃርሚያን እንደሚበላ፣ እና እብቅም በነበልባል እንደሚጠፋ፣ ስራቸው የበሰበሰ ይሆናል፣ ቡቃያቸውም እንደትቢያ ይበናል፤ የእግዚአብሔርን የሰራዊት ጌታን ህግ ጥለዋልና፣ የእስራኤሉንም ቅዱስ ቃል ንቀዋልና።

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

፳፭ ስለዚህ፣ የጌታ ቁጣ በሕዝቡ ላይ ነድድአል፣ እጁንም በእነርሱ ላይ ዘርግቷል፣ እናም መትቶአቸዋል፤ ተራሮች ተንቀጥቅጠዋል፣ ሬሳዎቻቸውም በመንገዶቻቸው መካከል ተከፍተዋል። በዚህ ሁሉ ግን ቁጣው አልበረደችም፣ ነገር ግን አሁንም እጁን እንደዘረጋ ነው።

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

፳፮ እናም ለሃገሮች ሁሉ ከሩቅ ምልክትን ያነሳል፣ ከምድር ዳርቻ ይመጡም ዘንድ በፋጨት ይጠራቸዋል፤ እናም እነሆ፣ እነርሱ እየተጣደፉ በፍጥነት ይመጣሉ፤ በመካከላቸውም ደካማና ስንኩል አይኖርም።

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

፳፯ የሚያንቀላፋም ሆነ የሚተኛ የለም፤ የወገባቸውም መቀነት አይፈታም፣ የጫማቸውም ማሰሪያ አይበጠሰም፤

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

፳፰ ፍላግዎቻቸው ስለታም ይሆናሉ፣ ቀስቶቻቸውም ሁሉ ተወጥረዋል፣ የፈረሶቻቸው ኮቴ እንደ ባልጩት እና ተሽከርካሪዎቻቸውም እንደአውሎ ነፋስ ይቆጠራሉ፣ ጨኸታቸውም እንደአንበሳ ነው።

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

፳፱ እንደ አንበሳ ደቦሎች ይጮሃሉ፤ አዎን፣ ይገሳሉም፣ ያዳኑአቸውንም አጥብቀው ይይዛሉ፣ እና በጥንቃቄም ይዘዋቸው ይሄዳሉ፣ ማንም አያድናቸውም።

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

፴ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንደ ባሕር ጨኸት ይጮሁባቸዋል፤ ወደ ምድር ቢመለከቱ፣ እነሆ ጨለማና መከራን ይመለከታሉ፣ እናም ብርሃንም በዚያም ሰማያት ውስጥ ጨልሟል።

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፮

፩ ንጉስ ኡዝያን በሞተበት ዓመት፣ ጌታ ደግሞ በረጅምና ከፍ ባለ ዙፋን ላይ ተቀምጦ እየሁት፣ የልብሱም ዘርፍ መቅደሱን ሞልቶት ነበር።

፪ ሱራፌልም ከእርሱ በላይ ቆመው ነበር፤ እያንዳንዱ ስድስት ክንፍ ነበረው፤ በሁለቱ ክንፍ ፊቱን ሸፈነ፣ እናም በሁለቱ ክንፍ እግሮቹን ሸፈነ፣ እናም በሁለቱ ክንፍ ይበር ነበር።

፫ እናም አንዱ ለሌላኛው፣ ቅዱስ፣ ቅዱስ፣ ቅዱስ ነው የሰራዊት ጌታ፤ ምድር ሁሉ በክብሩ ተሞልታለች፤ እያለ ይጮህ ነበር።

፬ እናም የመዝጊያው ምሶሶ በጮኸው ድምፅ ተናወጠ፣ እናም ቤቱ ጮሶ ሞላበት።

፭ ከዚያም እኔ አልኩ፦ ወየው ለእኔ! የተበላሸሁ ነኝና፤ ምክንያቱም እኔ ከንፈረ-እርኩስ ነኝ፤ እናም ከንፈርቻቸው በረከስ ሕዝቦች መካከል እናራለሁ፤ ዐይኖቼም ንጉሱን፣ የሰራዊት ጌታን አይተዋልና።

፮ ከሱራፌልም አንዱ ወደ እኔ እየበረረ መጣ፣ በእጁም ከመሰዊያው በጉጠት የወሰደው ፍም ነበር፤

፯ እናም በእጄ ላይ አደረገው፣ እናም አለ፣ እነሆ፣ ይህ ከንፈርቻህን ነክቷል፣ በደልህም ከእንተ ተወሰድአል፣ ኃጢአትህም ተሰርዮልህል።

፰ ደግሞም የጌታን ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል ሰማሁት፣ ማንን አልካለሁ፣ እናም ለእኛ ማን ይሂድልን? እናም እኔ እንዲህ አልኩ፦ እነሆኝ፤ እኔን ላከኝ።

፱ እናም እርሱ አለኝ፣ ሂድና ይህንን ህዝብ ተናገራቸው—በእርግጥ ሰሙ፣ ነገር ግን አይገባቸውም፤ እንዲሁም በእርግጥ እዩ፣ ነገር ግን አይገነዘቡም።

፲ የህዝቡን ልብ አደንድን፣ እናም ጆሮአቸውንም እንዳይሰማ፣ ዐይናቸውንም እንዳያዩ አድርግ— በዐይናቸው እንዳያዩ በጆሮአቸውም እንዳይሰሙ፣ እናም በልባቸው እንዳያሰተውሉና፣ ተመልሰውም እንዳይፈወሱ አድርግ።

፲፩ ከዚያም እኔ ጌታን እስከመቼ ድረስ ነው አልሁ? እናም እርሱ ከተሞች የሚኖሩባቸውን አጥተው እስኪፈርሱ፣ እና ቤቶችም ያለሰውና፣ ምድርም ፈፀም ባልጩት እስክትሆን ድረስ ነው አለኝ፤

፲፪ እግዚአብሔርም ሰዎችን እስኪያርቅ፣ በምድርም መካከል ውድማው መሬት ይበዛልና።

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

፲፫

ነገር ግን አንድ አስረኛው ይቀራል፣ እናም እነርሱ ይመለሳሉ፣ ቅጠሎቻቸውን ሲጥሉም ጉቶቻቸው በውስጣቸው እንደነበሩት ግራር እና እንደኮሞበል ዛፍ ይበላሉም፣ ስለዚህ የተቀደሰው ዘር በዚያው ጉቶው ይሆናል።

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአካዝ በኢዮኦታም ልጅ ዘመን፣ በይሁዳ ንጉስ በኡዝያን ልጅ፣ የሶርያው ንጉስ ረአሶን፣ እና የሮሜልዩ ልጅ፣ የእስራኤልም ንጉስ ፋቁሔ ኢየሩሳሌምን ሊወጉ ወጡ፣ ነገር ግን ሊያሸንፉአትም አልቻሉም።

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

፪ እናም ለዳዊት ቤት ሶርያ ከኤፍሬም ጋር ተባብራለች የሚል ወሬ ተነገረ። እናም የጫካ ዛፍ በንፋስ እንደሚናወጥ የእርሱ ልብና የህዝቡም ልብ ተናወጠ።

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

፫ ከዚያም ጌታ ኢሳይያስን አለው—አሁን አንተና ልጅህ ያሱብ ከአካዝ ጋር ትገናኙት ዘንድ በልብሰ አጣቢው እርሻ መንገድ ወዳለው ወደ ላይኛው የኩሬ መስኖ ጫፍ ውጡ፤

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

፬ እናም እንዲህ በለው—ተጠንቀቅ፣ ዝምም በል፣ ስለእነዚህ ስለሚጨሱ ስለሁለት ጥላሽቶች፣ ስለረአሶን በሶርያና፣ ሮሜልዩም ልጅ ቁጣ አትፍራ።

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

፭ ምክንያቱም ሶርያ፣ ኤፍሬምና የሮሜልዩም ልጅ በአንተ ላይ እንዲህ ሲሉ ክፋትን መክረዋልና፤

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

፮ ወደ ይሁዳ እንደሚገቡ እናስጨንቀው፣ እናም ለራሳችን በእዚያም እንሰበረው፣ በመካከሉም ንጉስ፣ አዎን፣ የጠብኤልንም ልጅ፣ እናስቀምጥ።

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

፯ እንዲሁም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል—ይህ ምክር አይፀናም፣ አይሆንምም።

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

፰ የሶርያ ራስ ደማስቆ ነውና፣ እናም የደማስቆም ራስ ረአሶን ነውና፤ እናም በሰድሳ አምስት ዓመት ውስጥ ኤፍሬም ይሰባበራል፣ ህዝብም አይሆንም።

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

፱ እናም የኤፍሬም ራስ ሰማርያ ነው፣ እናም የሰማርያ ራስ የሮሜልዩ ልጅ ነው። የማታምኑ ከሆነ በእርግጥ አትፀኑም።

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

፲ ከዚያም በላይ ጌታ አካዝን በድጋሚ እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረው—

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

፲፩ ከጥልቁ ወይም ከከፍታውም ቢሆን ከጌታ ከእምላክህ ምልክትን ለምን።

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

፲፪ ነገር ግን አካዝም፣ አልለምንም፣ ጌታንም አልፈተንም አለ።

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

፲፫ እናም እርሱ አለ፣ የዳዊት ቤት ሆይ፣ አሁን ሰሙኝ፤ በእውነት ሰውን ማድከም ቀላል ሆነባችሁ፣ ግን እምላኬን ደግሞ ልታደክሙ ነውን?

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ ራሱ ምልክት ይሰጣችኋል—እነሆ፣ ድንግል ትፀንሳለች፣ እናም ወንድ ልጅም ትወልዳለች፣ ስሙንም አማኤል ብላ ትጠራዋለች።

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

፲፭ እርሱም ክፉን ለመጥላትና መልካሙን ለመምረጥ ማወቅ ይችል ዘንድ ቅቤና ማር ይበላል።

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

፲፮ ህፃን መጥፎውን ከመጥላቱና ጥሩውን ከመምረጡ በፊት፣ የጠላኸው መሬት በሁሉም ነገሥታቶች ይተዋል።

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

፲፯ ጌታ ኤፍሬም ከይሁዳ ከተለየበት ቀን ጀምሮ ያልመጣውን ዘመን በአንተና በሕዝብህ በአባትህም ቤት ላይ ያመጣል፤ እርሱም የአሦር ንጉሥ መምጣት ነው።

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

፲፰ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ በግብፅ ዳርቻ ያለውን ዘንብ እና በአሶር ምድር ያለውን ንብ በፋጨት ይጠራል።

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

፲፱ እናም ይመጣሉ፣ እነርሱም ሁሉ በበረሃ ሸለቆ፣ እና በድንጋይም ዋሻና በእሾህ ላይ ሁሉ፣ በቁጥቋጦውም ሁሉ ላይ ያርፋሉ።

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

፳ በዚያም ቀን ጌታ ከወንዙ ባሻገር፣ በቀጠራቸው በአሶር ንጉስ፣ የራስና የእግሩን ጠጉር ይላጫል፣ እናም ምላጩ ደግሞ ጢሙን ይበላል።

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

፳፩ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ አንድ ሰው ጊደርና ሁለት በጎችን ይመግባል፤

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ከሚሰጡት ወተት ብዛት የተነሳ እርሱ ቅቤን ይበላል፣ በሀገሪቱም መካከል የቀረ ማንም ሰው ቅቤና ማር ይበላል።

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

፳፫ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ሺህ ብር የሚያወጣው ሺህ የወይን ግንድ በነበረበት ቦታ ሁሉ ኩርንችትና እሾህ ብቻ ይሆናሉ።

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

፳፬ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ኩርንችትና እሾህ በመሆኑ ሰዎች በፍላፃና በቀስት ወደዚያ ይመጣሉ።

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

፳፭ እናም በመቆፈሪያ ወደ ተቆፈሩ ኮረብቶች ሁሉ፣ ከኩርንችትና እሾህ ፍርሀት ወደዚያ ማንም አይሄድም፤ ነገር ግን የበሬ ማሰማሪያና የታናሽ ከብት መረገጫ ይሆናል።

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፰

፩ ከዚህም በላይ፣ የጌታ ቃል እንዲህ አለኝ—ትልቁን ጥቅል ውሰድ፣ እናም ማሔር-ሻላል-ኸሽ-ባዝ ብለህ በሰው ብዕር ፃፍበት።

፪ እናም እኔ የታመኑ ምስክሮችን፣ ካህን ኦርዮን እና የበራክዩን ልጅ ዘካርያስን ለምዝገባው ወደ እኔ ወሰድሁ።

፫ እናም እኔ ወደ ነቢይቱ ቀረብሁ፤ እርሷም ፀነሰች እናም ወንድ ልጅ ወለደች። ከዚያም ጌታ እንዲህ አለኝ፣ ማኸር-ሻላል-ሐሽ-ባዝ ብለህ ስሙን ጥራው።

፬ እነሆም፣ ህፃኑ አባቱንና እናቱን መጥራት ሳያውቅ፣ የደማስቆን ሀብትና የሰማርያን ምርኮ በአሶር ንጉስ ፊት ይወሰዳል።

፭ ጌታ እንደገና ደግሞ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፡

፮ ይህ ህዝብ በቀስታ የሚሄደውን የሰሊሆምን ውሃ አስከጠሉ፣ እናም በረአሶንንና በሮሜልዩም ልጅ በመደሰታቸው የተነሳ፤

፯ ስለዚህ አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ብርቱና ብዙ የሆነውን የወንዝ ውሃ፣ የአሶርን ንጉስና ክብሩን ሁሉ ያመጣባቸዋል፤ እናም እርሱ መሰናዎችን ሁሉ ይሞላል፣ እናም በዳርቻውም ሁሉ ላይ ይፈሰሳል።

፰ እናም በይሁዳ ያልፋል፤ እያጥለቀለቀም ያልፋል፣ እስከ አንገትም ይደርሳል፤ እናም አማኑኤል ሆይ፣ የክንፋ መዘርጋት የአገርህን ሰፋት ትሞላለች።

፱ ህዝብ ሆይ ተባብሩ፣ እናም በትንንሹ ትከፋፈላላችሁ፤ እናንተም ሩቅ ሀገር ያላችሁ ሁሉ አድምጡ፤ ራሳችሁን አስታጥቁ፣ እናም በትንንሹ ትከፋፈላላችሁ፤ ራሳችሁን አስታጥቁ፣ እናም በትንንሹ ትከፋፈላላችሁ።

፲ በእንደነት ተመካከሩ፣ እናም እርሱ ከንቱ ይሆናል፤ ቃሉን ተናገሩ፣ እናም አትፀናም፣ እግዚአብሔር ከእኛ ጋር ነውና።

፲፩ ጌታ በፅኑ እጁ እንዲሁ ተናገሮኛልና፣ እናም በዚህ ህዝብ መንገድ እንዳልራመድ እንዲህ ሲል አዘዘኝ፡

፲፪ ይህ ህዝብ ግብረ-አብራዊ ነው በሚለው ሁሉ ግብረ-አብራዊ ነው አትበሉ፣ መፈራታቸውንም ቢሆን አትፍሩ፣ አትደንግጡ።

፲፫ የሰራዊት ጌታ እራሱን ቀድሱት፣ እናም የእናንተ ፍርሃት እርሱ ይሁን፣ ሰጋታችሁም እርሱ ይሁን።

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

፲፬ እናም እርሱ መሸሽጊያ፤ ነገር ግን ለሁለቱ ለእስራኤል ቤቶች፣ ለእንቅፋት ድንጋይና፣ ለማሰናከያ አለት፣ በኢየሩሳሌምም ለሚኖሩ ለወጥመድና ለአሽክላ ይሆናል።

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

፲፭ እናም ብዙዎች ከእነርሱ ጋር ይሰናከላሉ እንዲሁም ይወድቃሉ፣ ይሰበራሉም፣ ይጠመዳሉም፣ እናም ይማረካሉ።

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

፲፮ በደቀ መዛሙርቶቹም መካከል ምስክርነትን እስር፣ ህጉንም አትም።

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

፲፯ እናም ከያዕቆብ ቤት ፊቱን የደበቀውን ጌታ እጠብቃለሁ፣ እናም እርሱን እፈልገዋለሁ።

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

፲፰ እነሆ፣ እኔና ጌታ የሰጠኝ ልጆቼ በእስራኤል በፅዮን ተራራ ከሚኖረው ከሰራዊት ጌታ ዘንድ ምልክትና ተአምራት ነን።

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

፲፱ እናም የሚጮሁትንና፣ ድምፃቸውን ዝቅ አድርገው የሚናገሩትን መናፍሶት ጠሪዎችንና ጠንቋዮችን ጠይቁ ባሉአችሁ ጊዜ—ለህያዋን ከሙታን ለመሰማት ህዝቡ ከአምላኩ መጠየቅ አይገባውምን?

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

፳ ወደህግና ወደምስክርነት ተመልከቱ፣ እናም በዚህ ቃል መሰረት ካልተናገሩ፣ ምክንያቱ ብርሃን በውስጣቸው የለም።

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

፳፩ እነርሱም ይህን በጣም ተጨንቀውና ተርበው ያልፋሉ፤ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል በተራቡ ጊዜ፣ በጣም ይቆጣሉ፣ እናም አምላካቸውንና ንጉሳቸውን ይረግማሉ፣ ወደ ላይም ይመለከታሉ።

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

፳፪ እናም ወደ ምድር ይመለከታሉ፣ እናም ችግርን፣ ጨለማን፣ የሚያሰጨንቅ ጭጋግን ያያሉ፣ እናም ወደ ጨለማም ይሰደዳሉ።

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

፪ ኔፊ ፲፱

፩ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጭጋግም በጭንቀት በነበረሽ አይነት አይሆንም፣ በመጀመሪያ የዛብሎንንና የንፍታሌምን ምድር በቀላል መታ፣ እና በኋላ ግን በዮርዳኖስ በስተጀርባ ያሉትን የገሊላ ሀገሮች በቀይ ባህር አምርሮ መታ።

፪ በጨለማ የሄደ ህዝብ ታላቅ ብርሃን አየ፤ በሞት ጥላ ምድርም ለኖሩት ብርሃን ወጣላቸው።

፫ ህዝብህን አብዝተሃል፣ ደስታንም ጨምረሃል—በመከር ደስ እንደሚላቸው፣ እና ምርኮንም ሲካፈሉ ደስ እንደሚላቸው ሰዎች በፊትህ ደስ ይላቸዋል።

፬ አንተም የሸክሙን ቀንበር፣ የጫንቃውንም በትር፣ የእስጨናቂውንም በትር ሰብረሃልና።

፭ ሁሉም የተዋጊው ጦርነት በሁከት የተሞላ ነውና፣ እናም ልብሶች በደም ተጨማልቀዋል፤ ነገር ግን ይህኛው በመቃጠልና በእሳት ማቃጠያ ይሆናል።

፮ ህፃንም ተወልዶልናልና፣ ወንድ ልጅም ተሰጥቶናልና፤ አለቅነትም በጫንቃው ላይ ይሆናል፤ ስሙም ድንቅ፣ መካሪ፣ ሀያል አምላክ፣ የዘለአለም አባት፣ የሠላም አለቃ ተብሎ ይጠራል።

፯ ከዛሬ ጀምሮ እስከዘለዓለም ድረስ በፍርድና በፅድቅ ያፀናውና ይደግፈው ዘንድ፣ በዳዊት ዙፋንና በመንግሥቱ ላይ አለቅነቱ ይበዛል፣ ለሰላሙም ፍፃሜ አይኖረውም። የሰራዊት ጌታ ቅንዕት ይህንን ያደርጋል።

፰ ጌታ ቃሉን ለያዕቆብ ላከ በእስራኤልም ላይ ወደቀ።

፱ እናም ሁሉም ህዝብ ኤፍሬምም ቢሆን እንኳ እናም የሰማርያ ሰዎች፣ በትዕቢትና በኩራት እንዲህ የሚሉት ሁሉ ያውቃሉ፤

፲ ጡብ ወድቋል፣ ነገር ግን በተወቀረ ድንጋይ እንሰራለን፣ የሾላው ዛፍ ተቆርጦአል፣ ነገር ግን በዝግባ እንተካዋለን።

፲፩ ስለዚህ ጌታ በረከሶን ላይ ጠላቶችን ያስነሳል፣ ጠላቶቹንም በእንድነት ይሰበሰባል።

፲፪ ሶርያን ከፊትና ፍልስጤምን ከኋላ፤ እናም እስራኤልን በተከፈተ አፍ ይበሉአታል። በዚህ ሁሉ እንኳን ቁጣው አልበረደችም፣ ነገር ግን አሁንም እጇን እንደዘረጋ ነው።

፲፫ ወደ እርሱ ያልተመለሱት ተመተዋልና፣ የሰራዊት ጌታንም አልፈለጉም።

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

፲፬ ሰለዚህ ጌታ ራሱንና ጅራትን፣ ቅርንጫፍና እንግጫን ከእስራኤል በአንድ ቀን ይቆርጣል።
 ፲፭ ሸማግሌው እርሱ ራስ ነው፣ ሀሰትን የሚያስተምረው ነቢይ እርሱ ጅራት ነው።
 ፲፮ የዚህ ህዝብ መሪዎች ህዝቡን እንዲሳሳት ያደርጉታልና፣ እናም ተመሪዎቹ ደግሞ ይጠፋሉ።
 ፲፯ ሰው ሁሉ ግብዝና ክፉ ሰሪ ነውና፣ አፋም ሁሉ ሰንፍናን ይናገራልና፣ ሰለዚህ ጌታ በወጣቶቻቸው ደስ አላለውም፣ አባት ለሌላቸውና ለመበለቶችም ምህረት አይኖረውም። በዚህም ሁሉ እንኳን ቁጣው አልበረደለትም፣ ነገር ግን እጁ ገና ተዘርግታለች።
 ፲፰ ኃጢያት እንደእሳት ትቃጠላለችና፤ ይህም ኩርንችቱንና እሾህንም ትበላለች፣ እና ጥቅጥቅ ያለውንም ጫካ ታቃጥላለች፣ እናም እንደጢስም ወደ ላይ ይነሳሉ።
 ፲፱ በሰራዊት ጌታ ቁጣ የተነሳ ምድር ትጨልማለች፣ ሰዎች ለእሳቱ እንደማገዶ ይሆናሉ፣ ማንም ሰው ወንድሙን አያድንም።
 ፳ እና እርሱ በቀኝ እጅ ይመነጭቃልና ይራብማል፤ በግራ እጅም ይበላል አይጠግቡምም፤ እያንዳንዱም የራሱን ክንድ ስጋ ይበላል—
 ፳፩ ምናሴ፣ ኤፍሬም፤ እናም ኤፍሬም፣ ምናሴ፤ እነርሱ በአንድነት በይሁዳ ላይ ይነሳሉ። ይህም ሁሉ ተፈፅሞ እንኳን ቁጣው ገና አልበረደችምና፣ ነገር ግን አሁንም እጁ ተዘርግታለች።

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.
 The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.
 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.
 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
 For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.
 Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.
 And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—
 Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

፪ ኔፊ ፳

፩ ዳድቅ ያልሆኑ ሕጎችን ለሚደነገጉ፣ የጻፉትን የግፍን ትእዛዛት ለሚያዝዙ ወዮላቸው፤

፪ ፍትህ የሚፈልጉትን ለመከልከል፣ እናም የድሃ ሕዝቦችን መብት ለመውሰድ፣ መበለቶችንም ሰለባቸው እንዲሆኑላቸው፣ እናም አባት አልባዎችን ለመዝረፍ ዘንድ የግፍን ትእዛዛት አዘዘዋል!

፫ እናም ከሩቅ በሚመጡት በመጎብኘታችሁና በመውደሚያችሁ ቀን ምን ታደርጋላችሁ? ለእርዳታሽ ወደ ማን ትሸገላችሁ? ክብራችሁንስ ወዴት ትተዋታላችሁ?

፬ ከእኔ ውጭ ከእስረኞች በታች ይጎነበሳሉ፣ በሚገደሉትም መካከል ይወድቃሉ። በዚህም ሁሉ እንኳን ጌታ ቁጣው አልበረደችም፣ ነገር ግን አሁንም ገና እጁ ተዘርግታለች።

፭ ሶርያ ሆይ፣ የቁጣዬ በትር፣ እናም በእጃቸው ያለው መሳሪያ ቁጣቸው ነው።

፮ በግብዝ ሀገሮችም መካከል እልክዋለሁ፣ እናም ምርኮንና ብዝበዛውንም ይወሰድ ዘንድ፣ እና እንደ አደባባይ ጭቃ የተረገጡ ይሆኑ ዘንድ በተቆጣሁአቸው ህዝብ ላይ እልክዋለሁ።

፯ ነገር ግን እርሱ ይህን አላቀደውም፣ ልቡም ቢሆን እንደዚህ አያሰብም፤ በልቡ ውስጥ ያለው ግን ብዙ ሀገሮችን ለማጥፋትና ለመቁረጥ ነው።

፰ እንዲህ ይላል፣ መሳፍንቶቼ ሁሉ ነገሥታት አይደሉምን?

፱ ካልኖ እንደ ከርከሚሽ አይደለችምን? ሐማትስ እንደ አርፋድ አይደለችምን? ሰማርያስ እንደ ደማሰቆ አይደለችምን?

፲ የተቀረጹ ምስሎቻቸው ከኢየሩሳሌምና ከሰማርያ ምስሎች የበለጡትን፣ የጣዖቶችን መንግስታት እጄ እንዳገኘች፤

፲፩ በሰማርያና በጣዖቶቿ እንደአደረግሁት በኢየሩሳሌምና በጣዖቶቿ አላደርግምን?

፲፪ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ ስራውን በሙሉ በፅዮን ተራራና በኢየሩሳሌም ሲፈፀም፣ የእሶርን ንጉስ የኩሩ ልብ ፍሬውን የዐይኑንም ከፍታ ትምክህት እቀጣለሁ።

፲፫ እርሱ እንዲህ ብሎአልና፤ በእጄ ጥንካሬና በጥበቤ እነዚህን ነገሮች አድርጌአለሁ፤ እኔ አስተዋይ ነኝና፤ የህዝቦችንም ድንበር ገፋሁ፣ ሀብታቸውንም ዘረፍኩ፣ እናም እንደ ጀግና ሆኜ ፍጥረታትን አጠቃሁ፤

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

፲፬ እናም እጁ የህዝብን ሀብት እንደ ወፍ ጎጆ አገኘች፤ እና በሰው የተተወትን እንቁላሎች እንደሚሰበሰቡ እኔም ደግሞ ምድርን በሞላ ሰበሰብኩ፤ ክንፋን የሚያራግብ፣ ወይም እፋን የሚከፍትም ሆነ የሚጮህ ማንም የለም።

፲፭ ሞሳር የሚጠቀምበትን ሰው እበልጣለሁ ብሎ ይመካልን? ወይስ መጋዝ በሚሰበው ላይ እራሱን ያሳላልን? በትርስ በራሱ ያለእጅ እራሷን እንደምትነቀንቅ ወይንም ከዘራ እንጨት እንዳልሆነ ሁሉ እራሱን እንደሚያነሳ!

፲፮ ስለዚህ ጌታ፣ የሰራዊት ጌታ፣ በወፍራሞቹ ላይ መክሳትን ይልካል፣ ከክብሩም በታች እንደ እሳት መቃጠል የሆነ ቃጠሎን ያስነሳል።

፲፯ እናም የእስራኤል ብርሃን ለእሳት ይሆናል፣ ቅዱሷም ነበልባል ይሆናል፣ እሾሁንና ኩርንችቱንም በአንድ ቀን ያቃጥላዋል፣ ይበላዋልም፤

፲፰ እናም የዱሩንም፣ የፍሬያማውን ሜዳ፣ ክብሩንም፣ ነፍሱንና ሰጋውንም ያቃጥላዋል፤ እነርሱ አርማ ተሸካሚው እንደ ወደቀ ይሆናሉ።

፲፱ እናም የተቀሩትም የዱር ዛፎቹ ህፃን መቁጠር እስኪችላቸው ድረስ ትንሽ ይሆናሉ።

፳ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ የእስራኤል ቅሪት፣ እናም ከያዕቆብ ቤት የዳኑት፣ ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ በዚያ በመታቸው ላይ አይቆዩም፣ ነገር ግን በጌታ በእስራኤል ቅዱስ በእውነት ይመካሉ።

፳፩ ቅሪቶች ይመለሳሉ፣ አዎን፣ የያዕቆብም ቅሪቶች ቢሆኑ እንኳ፣ ወደ ኃያሉ እግዚአብሔር ይመለሳሉ።

፳፪ እስራኤል ሆይ ህዝብሽ እንደ ባህር አሸዋ የበዛ ቢሆንም እንኳ፣ ቅሪቶቻቸው ይመለሳሉ፤ የተነገረውም ጥፋት በፅድቅ ይትረፈረፋል።

፳፫ የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ያለቀ የተቈረጠ ነገርን በምድር ሁሉ መካከል ይፈጽማል።

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል— በፅድቅ የምትኖሩ ህዝቤ ሆይ፣ አሶርን አትፍራው፤ በበትር ይመታህል፣ ግብፅም እንዳደረገው ዘንጉን ያነሳብህል።

፳፭ ቁጣዬ እስኪፈፀም መዓቱም እስኪያጠፋቸው ጥቂት ጊዜ ቀርቷል።

፳፮ እናም የሰራዊት ጌታ ምድያምን በሔሬብ አለት በኩል እንደመታው ጅራፍ ያነሳበታል፣ በትሩም በባህር ላይ ይሆናል፣ በግብፅም እንዳደረገው ያነሳዋል።

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፡ በዚያን ቀን ሸክሙ ከትከሻህ ላይ ይነሳል፤ ቀንበሩም ከእንገትህ ላይ ይወርዳል፤ ከቅባቱም የተነሳ ቀንበሩም ይጠፋል።

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

፳፰ ወደ አንጋይ መጥቷል፤ በሜጌዶን አልፏል፤ በማክማሰም አቃውን አስቀምጧል።

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

፳፱ እነርሱ መተላለፊያውን አልፏል፤ ማረፊያቸውንም በጌባ አድርገዋል፤ ራማትም ፈርታለች፤ የሳኦል ጊብአም አምልጣለች።

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

፴ የጋሊም ልጅ ሆይ፤ ደሀዋ አናቶት ሆይ፤ ለሌላ እንኳን እስኪሰማ ድረስ ድምፅሽን ከፍ አድርጊ።

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

፴፩ መደቤና ሸሽታለች፤ የግቤር ህዝቦችም ሊያመልጡ አራሳቸውን ሰብሰበዋል።

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

፴፪ ነገር ግን በዚያን ቀን በኖብ ላይ ይቀራል፤ በፅዮን ሴት ልጆች ተራራ በኢየሩሳሌም ኮረብታ ላይ አጆቹን ያነቃንቃል።

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

፴፫ እነሆ፤ ጌታ፤ የሰራዊት ጌታ ቅርንጫፎቹን በሚያስፈራ ኃይል ይቆርጣቸዋል፤ እናም በቁመናቸው ከፍ ያሉት ይቆረጣሉ፤ እብሪተኞቻቸው ዝቅ ይላሉ።

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

፴፬ ጥቅጥቅ ያለውንም ጫካ እርሱ በብረት ይቆርጠዋል፤ ሊባኖሰም በኃይለኛው እጅ ትወድቃለች።

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፩

፪ እናም ከእሴይ ግንድ በትር ይወጣል፣ ከሰሩም ቅርንጫፍ ይበቅላል።

፫ እናም የጌታ መንፈስ፣ የጥበብና የመረዳት መንፈስ፣ የምክርና የጎይል መንፈስ፣ የእውቀትና እግዚአብሔርን የመፍራት መንፈስ በላዩ ላይ ያርፋል፤

፬ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፍርሃት በፍጥነት የሚረዳ ያደርገዋል፤ እናም እርሱ በዐይኖቹ ባየው አይፈርድም፣ ወይም በጆሮዎቹ በሰማውም አይገሰጽም።

፭ ነገር ግን ድሆችን በፅድቅ ይፈርዳል፣ ለምድር ትሁቶችም በእኩልነት ይገሰጻል፤ እናም ምድርን በአፉ በትር ይመታል፣ እናም ክፉዎችን በከንፈሮቹ እስትንፋስ ይገድላል።

፮ እናም ፅድቅ የወገቡ መታጠቅያ፣ ታማኝነትም የጎኑ መታጠቅያ ይሆናሉ።

፯ ተኩላውም ደግሞ ከበጉ ጋር ይኖራል፣ አሶሽማኔው ደግሞ ከፍየል ጠቦት ጋር ይተኛል፣ ጥጃውም የአንበሳ ደቦልም፣ ፍሪዳውም በአንድነት ይሆናሉ፤ ታናሽ ልጅም ይመራቸዋል።

፰ እናም ላምና ድብ አብረው ይመገባሉ፤ ግልገሎቻቸውም በአንድነት ይተኛሉ፤ አንበሳውም እንደበሬ ገለባን ይበላል።

፱ እናም የሚጠባው ህፃን በመርዛማው እባብ ጉድጓድ ላይ ይጫወታል፣ ጡት የጣለውም ህፃን በእፋኝት ቤት ላይ ይጭናል።

፲ በተቀደሰው ተራራዬ ላይ ሁሉ አይጎዱም፣ ወይም አያጠፉም፣ ውኃዎች ባህርን እንደሚሸፍን ሁሉ ምድር በጌታ እውቀትም ትሞላለችና።

፲፩ እናም በዚያ ቀን ለህዝቡ ምልክት ሆኖ የሚቆም የእሴይ ስር ይኖራል፤ አህዛብም እርሱን ይፈልጋሉ፤ እናም የሚያርፍበትም የተከበረ ይሆናል።

፲፪ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ የቀረውን የህዝቡን ቅሪት ከአሶርና፣ ከግብፅ፣ ከጳትሮስና፣ ከኩሽ፣ ከኢላምና፣ ከሰናዖር፣ ከሐማት፣ ከባህር ደሴቶች መልስ ዳግም ይሰበሰብ ዘንድ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ እጅን ይዘረጋል።

፲፫ እናም እርሱ ለሀገሮች ምልክትን ያቆማል፣ ከእስራኤልም የተሰደዱትን ይሰበሰባል፣ እናም በአራቱም የምድር ማዕዘናት የተበተነውን ይሁዳን በአንድነት ይሰበሰባል።

2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

፲፫ የኤፍራም ሞቀኝነት ደግሞም ይቆማል፤ የይሁዳም ጠላቶች ይጠፋሉ፤ ኤፍራም በይሁዳ አይቀናምና፤ እናም ይሁዳ ኤፍራምን አያበሳጭም።

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

፲፬ ነገር ግን በምዕራብ በኩል በፍልሰጤማውያን ትከሻ ላይ እየበረሩ ይወርዳሉ፤ የምስራቆቹንም ጭምር በአንድነት ያጠፋሉ፤ እጃቸውንም በኤዶምና በሞአብ ላይ ያሳርፋሉ፤ እናም የእሞንም ልጆች ይታዘዙባቸዋል።

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

፲፭ እናም ጌታ የግብፃውያንን የባህር ሠርጥ ፈፅሞ ያጠፋል፤ በጋያል አውሎ ነፋሱም እጆቹን በወንዞች ላይ ያንቀጠቅጣል፤ ሰባትም ወራጆች አድርጎ ይከፋፍለዋል፤ ሰዎችንም በደረቁ ያሻግራል።

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

፲፮ እናም እርሱ ከግብፅ ምድር በወጣ ጊዜ ለህዝቡ ቅሪት ሆኖ ለሚቀሩት ከአሶር እስከ እስራኤል የሚደርሱን ያህል ጎዳና ያኖርላቸዋል።

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

፪ ኔሬ ፳፪

፪ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ትላለህ—አቤቴ ጌታ፣
 አመሰግንህለሁ፤ በእኔ ብትቆጣም እንኳ ቁጣህን
 አብርደህልኛል፣ አፅናንተህኛልም።

፫ እነሆ፣ አግዚአብሔር መድኃኒቴ ነው፤ አምናለሁ፣ እና
 አልፈራም፤ ጌታ ያህዌህ ጥንካሬዬና ዝግሬዬ ነውና፤
 ደግሞም እርሱ መድኃኒቴ ሆኖአልና።

፬ ስለዚህ፣ ውኃንም ከመዳን ጉድጓዶች በደስታ
 ትቀዳለህ።

፭ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ትላለህ—ጌታን አወድሱ፣
 ስሙንም ጥሩ፣ በእህዛብም መካከል ሰራውን አውጁ፣
 ስሙም ከፍ ያለ እንደሆነ አስታውቁ።

፮ ለጌታ ዘምሩ፤ እርሱ ታላቅ ሰራን ሰርቶአልና፤ ይህም
 በምድር ሁሉ ታውቋል።

፯ በፅዮን የምትኖሩ ሁሉ ጩሁ፣ እልልም በሉ፤
 በመካከላችሁ ያለው የእስራኤሉ ቅዱስ ታላቅ ነውና።

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise
 thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is
 turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not
 be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and
 my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the
 wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call
 upon his name, declare his doings among the people,
 make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent
 things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for
 great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፫

፪ የአሞፀ ልጅ ኢሳይያስ የተመለከተው የባቢሎን ሸክም።

፫ ከፍ ባሉ ተራራ ላይ አርማን አቁሙ፣ ድምፃችሁንም ወደ እነርሱ ከፍ አድርጉ፣ ወደ ልዑላት ደጃፍ ይሄዱ ዘንድ ጠቁሙአቸው።

፬ ቅዱሳናቸን አዘዘናለሁ፣ ኃያላኖችንም ጠርቻቸዋለሁ፣ ቁጣዬ በእኔ ታላቅነት በሚደሰቱት ላይ አይደለችም።

፭ በተራሮቹ ያሉት ህዝቦች ጩኸት እንደ በርካታ ሰዎች ነው፣ ከመጠን በላይ የሚንጫጩ ሀገሮች መንግሥታት ተከማችተዋል፣ የሰራዊት ጌታ የጦር ሰራዊቱን ይሰበሰባል።

፮ እነርሱ፣ አዎን፣ ጌታ እና የእርሱ የቁጣው መሳሪያ ምድርን ሊያጠፋት ከሩቅ ሀገር፣ ከሰማይ ዳርቻም መጥተዋል።

፯ የጌታ ቀን ቀርባለችና አልቅሱ፤ ሁሉን ከሚገዛ እንደጥፋት ትመጣለች።

፰ ስለዚህ ሁሉም እጆች ይዘላሉ፣ የሁሉም ሰዎች ልብ ትቀልጣለች።

፱ እናም እነርሱ ይፈራሉ፣ ኃይለኛ ህመምና ሀዘንም ይይዛቸዋል፤ እንዲሁም በሌላው ይደነቃል፤ ፊቶቻቸው በእፍረት እንደነበልባል ይሆናሉ።

፲ እነሆ፣ ጨካኝ በሆነ ቁጣና ከኃይለኛ ንዴት ጋር ምድርን ባድሚ ሊያደርጋት የጌታ ቀን ይመጣል፤ ኃጢአተኞችንም ከውስጧ ያጠፋል።

፲፩ የሰማይ ከዋክብትና ህብር ከዋክብቶች ብርሃናቸውን አይሰጡም፤ ፀሐይም በወጣች ጊዜ ትጨልማለች፣ ጨረቃም ብርሃኗን አትሰጥም።

፲፪ እናም ዓለምን በመጥፎ ሰራዊ፣ ክፉዎችንም ለግፍ ሰራቸው እቀጣለሁ፤ የትዕቢተኞችንም ኩራት አስቆማለሁ፣ የጨካኞችንም ኩራት አዋርዳለሁ።

፲፫ ሰውንም ከነጠረ ወርቅ የበለጠ የከበረ አደርገዋለሁ፤ ሰውም ከኦፊር ወርቅ ይልቅ የከበረ ይሆናል።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ በሰራዊት ጌታ መዐት እናም በታላቁ ቁጣው ቀን እኔ ሰማያትን እናውጣለሁ ምድርንም ከቦታዋ ፈቀቅ አደርጋታለሁ።

፲፭ እናም እንደሚሳደድ ድብ፣ ማንም ሰው እንደሚሰበሰባቸው በጎች ይሆናሉ፤ እናም ሁሉም ሰው ወደ ራሱ ህዝብ ይዘራል፣ እናም ሁሉም ወደ ራሱ ምድር ይሸሻል።

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

፲፭ የሚኮራ ሰው ሁሉ ይወጋል፣ አዎን፣ ከኃጢአተኞች የተቀላቀለ ሰው ሁሉ በሰይፍ ይወድቃል።

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

፲፮ ልጆቻቸውም በዐይኖቻቸው ፊት ይከሰከሳሉ፤ ቤቶቻቸው ይበዘበዛል፣ ሚስቶቻቸውም ይደፈራሉ።

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

፲፯ እነሆ፣ ብር እና ወርቅ የማይሹትንና በዚህም የማይደሰቱትን ሜዶናውያንን በላያቸው አስነሳለሁ።

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

፲፰ ፍላግዎቻቸውም ወጣቶቻቸውን ይጨፈጭፏቸዋል፤ ለማህፀኑም ፍሬ ምህረት አይኖራቸውም፤ ዐይኖቻቸውም ህፃናትን በህይወት አይተዉም።

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

፲፱ እናም የመንግሥታት ክብር፣ የከለዳውያን ቆንጆ ክቡር የሆነችው ባቢሎን እግዚአብሔር ሰዶምንና ገሞራን ባፈረሰ ጊዜ እንደነበረ ትሆናለች።

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

፳ ለዘለዓለም የሚቀመጥባት አይገኝም፣ ከትውልድ እስከትውልድም የሚኖርባት አይኖርም—አረባውያንም ቢሆኑ ድንኳኑን በዚያ አይተክልም፤ አረኞችም ቢሆኑ እንኳ መንጋቸውን በዚያ አያሰማሩም።

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

፳፩ ነገር ግን የበረሃ የዱር አራዊት በዚያ ያርፋሉ፤ ሰጎኖችም ቤቶቻቸውን ይሞሉታል፣ ጉጉቶችም በዚያ ይኖራሉ፤ አጋንንትም በዚያ ይጨፍራሉ።

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

፳፪ እናም የደሴቶቹ አውሬዎች በባዶ ቤቶቻቸው፣ ቀበሮዎችም በአሰደሳች ሰፍራዎቻቸው ይጮሃሉ፤ እናም ጊዜዋ ቀርቧል፣ ቀኗም አይራዘምም። እኔ በፍጥነት አጠፋታለሁና፤ አዎን፣ እኔ ለህዝቦቹ መሃሪ እሆናለሁና፣ ነገር ግን ኃጢአተኞች ይጠፋሉ።

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፬

፪ ጌታ በያዕቆብ ላይ ሞህረቱን ያወርዳልና፣ በድጋሚም እስራኤልን ይመርጣል፣ በራሳቸውም ምድር ላይ ያኖራቸዋል፤ እንግዳዎቹም ከእነርሱ ጋር ይገናኛሉ፣ ከያዕቆብም ቤት ጋር ይጣበቃሉ።

፫ እናም ህዝቡ ይዘው ወደ ራሳቸው ቦታ ያመጧቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ ከሩቅም እስከምድር ዳርቻም፤ እናም ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድራቸውም ይመለሳሉ። የእስራኤልም ቤት ባለቤት ያደርገዋል፣ እናም የጌታ ምድር እንደ ወንድና ሴት ገረዶች ይሆናሉ፤ የማረኩአቸውንም ይማርካሉ፤ እናም ጨቋኞቻቸውን ይገዛሉ።

፬ እናም በዚያን ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ ከሀዘናችሁ፣ ከፍርሃታችሁም፣ እናም ከእስከፊው እንድታገለግሉ ከተደረጋችሁባት ባርነት እረፍት ይሰጣችኋል።

፭ እናም በዚያ ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ይህንን ምሳሌ በባቢሎን ንጉስ ላይ እንሰታችሁ እንዲህ ትላላችሁ— እስጨናቂው እንዴት ፀጥ አለ፣ ወርቃማዋስ ከተማ እንዴት አረፈች!

፮ ጌታ የኃጥአንን በትር፣ የመሪዎችንም ዘንግ ሰብሯል።

፯ ህዝቡን ያለማቋረጥ በጭካኔ የመታ፣ ሀገሮችን በቁጣ የመራ፣ ሰደት ይሆንበታል፣ እናም ማንም አያሰጥለውም።

፰ መላው ምድር እረፍት ላይ ነው፣ ፀጥታም ሆኖአል፣ በዝማሬም ተነስተዋል።

፱ አዎን፣ ጥድና የሊባኖስ ዝግባ እንተ ከተጋደምክ ጀምሮ ማንም ይቆርጠን ዘንድ አልመጣብንም ብለው በእነተ ደስ አላቸው።

፲ ሲኦል ከበታች እንተ በመምጣትህ ልትገናኝህ ታወከች፤ የሞቱትንም የምድር ታላላቆች ለእንተ እንቀሳቀሰች፤ የሃገሮችን ነገሰታቶች ሁሉ ከዙፋኖቻቸው ለእንተ አስነሳች።

፲፩ ሁሉም ይናገራሉ ለእንተም እንዲህ ይላሉ—እንተም ደግሞ እንደ እኛ ደካማ ሆንክን? እንተ ልክ እንደ እኛ ሆንክን?

፲፪ ውበትህ ወደ መቃብር መጥቷል፤ የበገናህም ድምፅ አይሰማም፤ ብል ከበታችህ ተነጥቷል፣ ትልም ይሸፍንሃል።

፲፫ አቤቱ ሉሲፈር፣ እንተ የገጋት ልጅ ሆይ! እንዴት ከሰማይ ወደቅህ? እንተ ሀገሮችን ያዋረድክ፣ እንዴት ከምድር በታች ተቆረጥህ!

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

፲፫ እንተም በልብህ ወደ ሰማይ አርጋለሁ፣ ዙፋኔንም ከእግዚአብሔር ከዋክብት በላይ አደርጋለሁ፤ በሰማን ዳርቻም በመስብሰቢያውም ተራራ ደግሞ እቀመጣለሁ፤

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

፲፬ ከደመናዎችም ከፍታ በላይ አርጋለሁ፤ እንደ ልዑልም እሆናለሁ ብለሃል።

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

፲፭ ነገር ግን ወደ ሲኦል፣ ወደጥልቁም ጉድጓድ ትወርዳለህ።

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

፲፮ የሚያዩህም ያተኩሩብሃል፣ ያሰተውሉሀልም፣ እናም ይላሉ—ምድርን ያንቀጠቀጠ፣ መንግስታትን ያናወጠ ሰው ይህ ነውን?

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

፲፯ እናም ዓለምን ምድርበዳ ያደረገ፣ ከተሞቿንም ያጠፋ፣ የእስረኞቹንም በር ያልከፈተው ይህ እርሱ አይደለምን?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

፲፰ የሁሉም ሀገሮች ንጉሶች፣ አዎን፣ ሁላቸውም፣ እያንዳንዳቸውም በየቤታቸው በክብር እንቀላፍተዋል።

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

፲፱ ነገር ግን እንተ እንደረከሰ ቅርንጫፍ፣ በሰይፉም ተወግተው እንደተገደሉት፣ ወደ ጉድጓዱ ድንጋዮች አዘቅት እንደወረዱት ቅሪቶች በእግሮች ስር እንደተረገጠም ሬሳ ከመቃብርህ ተጥላሃል።

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

፳ ምድርህን አጥፍተህልና ህዝብህንም ገድለህልና፤ ከእነርሱ ጋር በመቃብር አንድ አትሆንም፣ የክፋ አድራጊዎች ዘር በፍፁም አይከበርም።

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

፳፩ እንዳያንሰራሩም ምድሪቷንም እንዳይዙ፣ የምድርንም ገፅ በከተሞቻቸው እንዳይሞሉ፣ በአባቶቻቸው ኃጢአት ምክንያት ልጆቹን ለግድያ አዘጋጁ።

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

፳፪ እኔም በእነርሱ ላይ እነሳለሁ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ፣ እናም ከባቢሎን ስምና ቅሪት ዘርንና ወንድ ልጅንና የወንድምን ወይም የእህትን ልጅ እቆርጣለሁ ይላል ጌታ።

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

፳፫ የጃርት መኖሪያ የውሃም መቆሚያ አደርጋለሁ፤ በጥፋትም መጥረጊያ እጠርጋታለሁ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

፳፬ የሰራዊት ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ምሏል—በእርግጥም እኔ እንዳቀድኩት ይሆናል፤ እኔ እንደወሰንኩትም ይቆማል—

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

፳፭ አሶርን በምድሪ አመጣታለሁ፣ በተራራዬም ላይ በእግሪ ስር እረገጠዋለሁ፤ ከዚያም ቀንበሩ ከእነርሱ ላይ ይወርዳል፣ ሽክምም ከትከሻቸው ይወርዳል።

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

፳፮ በምድር ላይ ሁሉ የታቀደው ዕቅድ ይህ ነው፤ እናም በሃገር ሁሉ ላይ የተዘረጋው እጅ ይህ ነው።

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

፳፯ የሰራዊት ጌታ ይህንን አቅዶአል። የሚያከሸፈውስ ማነው? እጁም ተዘርግታለች የሚያሰመልሳትስ ማነው?

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

፳፰ ንጉስ እካዝ በሞተበት ዘመን ይህ ሸክም ነበር።

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

፳፱ እናንተ ፍልሰጤም ደስ አይበላችሁ። ምክንያቱም እናንተን የመታው በትሩ ተሰብሯል፤ ከእባቡ ሰር እፋኝት ይመጣል። ፍሬውም የሚበር ቁጡ እባብ ይሆናል።

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

፴ እናም የድሆች በኩር ይመገባል። ችግረኞችም በሰላም ይኖራሉ፤ እኔም ሰራችሁን በረሃብ እገድላለሁ። እርሱ ደግሞ ቅሪቶቻችሁን ይገድላል።

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

፴፩ እንተ መግቢያ ሆይ ወዮ በል፤ እንቺ ከተማ ሆይ አልቅሺ፤ ፍልሰጤም ሁላችሁም ቀልጣችኋል፤ ጢስ ከሰሜን ይመጣልና። እናም በእርሱ ቀን ቀጠሮ ጊዜያት ማንም ብቸኛ አይሆንም።

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

፴፪ እንግዲህ ለሀገር መልዕክተኞች ምን ይመለሳልን? ጌታ ፅዮንን እንደመሰረተና። የሀገሮቹም ድሆች በውስጧ እንደሚጠጉ ነው።

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፭

2 Nephi 25

፩ አሁን እኔ ኔፊ፣ በኢሳይያስ አፍ ስለተነገሩት፣ እኔ ስለጻፍኳቸው ቃላት በመጠኑ እናገራለሁ። እነሆም ኢሳይያስ ለብዙ ህዝቦች ለመረዳት አስቸጋሪ የሆኑ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናግሯል፤ እነርሱም በአይሁድ መካከል ስላለው በትንቢት አነጋገር እያውቁምና።

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

፪ እኔ ኔፊ ስለአይሁዶች አኳኋን ብዙም አላስተማርኳቸውምና፤ ስራዎቻቸው የጨለማ ስራ፣ አድራጎቻቸውም የእርኩስት አድራጎት ነበሩና።

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

፫ ስለዚህ፣ ለህዝቦችም ሆነ ከዚህ በኋላ እነዚህን የምፅፋቸውን ለሚቀበሉ ሁሉ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ፍርድ፣ በሁሉም ሀገሮች ላይ እርሱ በተናገረው ቃል መሰረት እንደሚመጡ ያውቁ ዘንድ ይህንን እፅፋለሁ።

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

፬ ስለዚህ፣ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆናችሁ ህዝቤ ሆይ፣ አዳምጡኝ፣ ቃላቶቼንም ለመስማት ጆሮአችሁን ሰጡ፣ የኢሳይያስ ቃላት ለእናንተ ግልፅ አይደሉም፣ ይሁን እንጂ በትንቢት መንፈስ ለተሞሉት ሁሉ ግልፅ ናቸው። ነገር ግን እኔ በውስጤ ባለው መንፈስ መሰረት ይህንን ትንቢት እስጣችኋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ከአባቴ ጋር ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቅቄ ከወጣሁ ጊዜ ጀምሮ ባለኝ ግልፅነት እተነብይላችኋለሁ፤ እነሆም ህዝቦች ይማሩ ዘንድ ነፍሴ በግልፅነት ትደስታለች።

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

፭ አዎን፣ ነፍሴ በኢሳይያስ ቃላት ትደስታለች፣ እኔ ከኢየሩሳሌም ወጥቻለሁና፣ አይኖችም የአይሁዶችን ነገር አይታለች፣ እናም አይሁድ የነቢዩን ነገሮች እንደተረዱት አውቃለሁ፣ እናም በአይሁዶች ጉዳይ የተማሩ ካልሆኑ በስተቀር ለአይሁዶች የተነገሩትን ነገሮች ከራሳቸው በቀር የሚረዳው ማንም የለም።

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

፮ ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ልጆቼን የአይሁድ ጉዳዮችን አላስተማርኳቸውም፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ራሴ፣ በኢየሩሳሌም የሬአለሁ፣ ስለዚህ በዙሪያዬ ስለነበሩት ክልሎች በተመለከተ አውቃለሁ፤ ለልጆቼም ኢሳይያስ በተናገረው ሁሉ መሰረት በአይሁድ መካከል ሊመጣ ስላለውም የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ ለልጆቼ ገልጬላቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እኔ አልፅፋቸውም።

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ በግልፅነቴ መሰረት የራሴን ትንቢት እቀጥላለሁ፤ በዚህም ማንም ሰው እንደሚሳሳት አውቃለሁ፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የኢሳይያስ ትንቢት በሚፈፀምበት ጊዜ፣ ሆነውም ሲያልፉ፣ ሰዎች እርግጠኛነቱን ያውቃሉ።

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

፯ ስለዚህ፣ ለሰው ልጆች ጥቅም አላቸው፣ እናም አይኖራቸውም ብሎ የሚያሰብ፣ እኔ እነርሱን በተለይ እናገራቸዋለሁ፣ እናም ለህዝቡ ብቻ ቃሉን እናገራለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በመጨረሻ ቀናት ለእነርሱ ታላቅ ዋጋ እንደሚኖራቸው አውቃለሁ፤ በዚያ ቀንም ይረዱ እቸዋልና፤ ስለሆነም፣ ለጥቅማቸው ፅፌ እቸዋለሁና።

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

፱ እናም በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ከአይሁዶች መካከል እንደጠፋው አንድ ትውልድ፣ አንደ ክፋታቸው እነርሱም ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድም ሊጠፉ ችለዋል፤ እናም በጌታ ነቢያት አማካኝነት አስቀድሞ ካልተነገረላቸው በስተቀር ማናቸውም አልጠፉም።

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

፲ ስለሆነም፣ አባቴ ኢየሩሳሌምን ከለቀቀ ወዲያው በእነርሱ ላይ የሚመጣቸውን ጥፋት በተመለከተ ተነግሯቸዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እነርሱ ልባቸውን አጠጠሩ፤ እናም በትንቢቴ መሰረት ወደ ባቢሎን በምርኮ ከተወሰዱት በስተቀር ሌሎች ጠፍተዋል።

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

፲፩ እናም አሁን ይህን የምናገረው በውስጤ ባለው መንፈስ የተነሳ ነው። እናም እነርሱ ቢወሰዱም እንኳን እንደገና ይመለሳሉ፣ የኢየሩሳሌምን ምድርንም ይወርሳሉ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ወደ ርስት ምድራቸው እንደገና ይመለሳሉ።

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

፲፪ ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ ጦርነትና የጦርነት ወሬዎች በመካከላቸው ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም የአብ አንድያ ልጅ፣ አዎን፣ የሰማይና የምድር አባት የሆነውም እንኳን፣ በሰጋ አራሱን የሚገልፅበት ቀን በሚመጣበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ በክፋታቸውና በልባቸው ጠጣርነት እንዲሁም በአንገተ ደንዳናነታቸው ምክንያት አይቀበሉትም።

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ ይሰቅሉታል፤ እናም ከድንጋይ ከተወቀረው መቃብር ውስጥ ለሶስት ቀን ከቆየ በኋላ፣ ፈውሱን በከንፎቹ ይዞ ከሙታን ይነሳል፤ እናም በሰሙ የሚያምኑ ሁሉ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ይድናሉ። ስለሆነም፣ ነፍሴ እርሱን በተመለከተ ለመተንበይ ትደስታለች፣ ቀኖቹን አይቻለሁና፣ ልቤም ቅዱስ ስሙን ታመሰግናለች።

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

፲፬ እናም እነሆ እንዲህ ይሆናል መሲሁ ከሞት ከተነሳ እናም፣ በሰሙ ለሚያምኑ ለብዙዎች ሕዝቦቹ ራሱን ከገለጸ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ኢየሩሳሌም በድጋሚ ትጠፋለች፤ ከእግዚአብሔርና ከቤተክርስቲያኑ ሰዎች ጋር ለሚጣሉ ወዮላቸው።

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

፲፭ ስለሆነም፣ አይሁዶች በሀገር ሁሉ መካከል ይበተናሉ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ባቢሎን ትጠፋለች፤ ስለሆነም፣ አይሁዶች በሌሎች ሀገሮች ይበተናሉ።

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

፲፮ እናም እነርሱ ከተበተኑና፣ ለብዙ ዘመን ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በሌሎች ሀገሮች ከቀጣቸው በኋላ፣ አዎን፣ ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በክርስቶስ፣ እና ለሁሉም የሰው ዘር ያልተገደበውን የኃጢያት ክፍያ ለማመን እስኪገደዱም ድረስ—እናም በክርስቶስ የሚያምኑበትና፣ በፍፁም ልብና በንፁህ እጃቸው አብን በሰሙ የሚያመልኩበት፣ እናም ሌላ መሲህ ይመጣል ብለውም የማይጠብቁበት ያ ቀን ሲመጣ፣ በኋላም፣ በዚያን ጊዜ እነዚህን ነገሮች ማመን ለእነርሱ አስፈላጊ የሚሆንበት ቀን ይመጣል።

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

፲፯ እናም ጌታ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ ህዝቡን ከጥፋትና ከውድቀት ለመመለስ እጁን ይዘረጋል። ስለዚህ፣ በሰው ልጆች መካከል እስደናቂውንና ድንቅ ስራውን መስራት ይቀጥላል።

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

፲፰ ስለዚህ፣ ቃሉን ይገልፅላቸዋል፣ እነዚህም ቃላት በመጨረሻውም ቀን ይፈርድባቸዋል፣ ምክንያቱም በእነርሱ ስለተነቀፈው ስለ እውነተኛው መሲህ ዓላማ ለማሳመን ተሰጥቶአቸዋል፤ እናም ከእንግዲህ መሲሁ ይመጣል ብለው እንዳይጠብቁ ለማሳመን፣ ህዝቡን የሚያታልለው ሀሰተኛው መሲህ ካልሆነ ሌላ ማንም ሊመጣ አይገባውምና፤ በነቢያት የተነገረበት አንድ መሲህ ብቻ ነው ያለውና፣ እናም ያ መሲህ በአይሁዶች የተነቀፈው ነው።

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

፲፱ በነቢያቶቹ ቃል መሰረት፣ አባቴ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ ከሰድስት መቶ ዓመት በኋላ መሲሁ ይመጣል፤ እናም እንደ ነቢያቱ ቃል፣ ደግሞም በእግዚአብሔር መልእክ ቃል መሰረት፣ ሰሙም ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ይሆናል።

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

፳፩ እናም አሁን ወንድሞቼ እንዳትሳሳቱ ዘንድ በግልፅ ነግራለችኋለሁ። እናም ከግብፅ ምድር እስራኤልን ያወጣና፣ ለሙሴ ህዝቡ በመርዘኛ እባብ ከተነደፉ በኋላ በፊታቸው ከፍ ያደረገውን እባብ ላይ አይናቸውን ከጣሉ ለመፈወስ ይችላል ዘንድ ኃይልን የሰጠው፣ እናም ደግሞ ድንጋዩን መትቶ ውኃ እንዲፈልቅለት ኃይልን የሰጠው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ህያው እንደሆነ፤ አዎን፣ እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፡ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት ናቸው፣ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ህያው እንደሆነ እኔ እንደተናገርኩበት ከዚህ ከአየሱስ ክርስቶስ በስተቀር ሰው ሊድንበት የሚችል ምንም አይነት ስም ከሰማይ በታች የተሰጠ የለም።

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

፳፪ ስለዚህ፣ በዚህ ምክንያት ነው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን የፃፍኳቸው ነገሮች እንደሚጠበቁና እንደሚቀመጡ፣ እናም ዘሮቹ ምድር እስካለችም ድረስ እንደሚይጠፉ ለየሴፍ የተገባለት ቃል ኪዳን እንዲሟላ ዘንድ ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ ለዘሮቹ እንደሚተላለፉ ቃል የገባልኝ።

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

፳፫ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ምድር እስካለች ድረስ ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ ይተላለፋሉ፤ እናም እነሱም እንደ እግዚአብሔር ፈቃድና ደስታ ይተላለፋሉ፤ እናም እነርሱ ያሏቸውም ሀገሮች በተፃፉት ቃል መሰረት ይፈረድባቸዋል።

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

፳፬ ለመጻፍ፣ ልጆቻችንን እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቻችንን በክርስቶስ እንዲያምኑና ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር እንዲታረቁ ለማሳመን በትጋት እንሰራለንና፤ ምክንያቱም በጸጋ የምንድነው የምንችለውን ካደረግን በኋላ እንደሆነ እናውቃለን።

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

፳፭ እናም በክርስቶስ ብናምንም እንኳን የሙሴን ህግ እንጠብቃለን፣ እናም ህጉ እስከሚፈፀም ድረስ በፅኑነት ወደፊት ወደክርስቶስን እንመለከታለን።

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

፳፮ ይህ ህግ የተሰጠው ለዚህ አላማ ነበርና፤ ስለሆነም ህጉ ለእኛ ሙት ሆኗል፣ እናም እኛ በእምነታችን ምክንያት በክርስቶስ ህያው ሆነናል፤ ቢሆንም ግን ህጉን በትዕዛዝ ምክንያት እንጠብቃለን።

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

፳፯ እናም ልጆቻችን ለጋጠላታቸው ስርየት የትኛውን ምንጭ መመልከት እንዳለባቸው ያውቁ ዘንድ፣ ስለክርስቶስ እንናገራለን፣ በክርስቶስ እንደሰታለን፣ ስለክርስቶስ እንሰብካለን፣ ስለክርስቶስ ትንቢት እንናገራለን፣ እናም በትንቢታችን መሰረት እንፀፋለን።

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ ህጉን በተመለከተ ልጆቻችን የህጉን መሞት ያውቁት ዘንድ እንናገራለን፤ እናም እነርሱ የህጉን ሞት በማወቅ፣ በክርስቶስ የሚመጣውን ህይወት ይጠብቃሉ እናም ህጉ ለምን ዓላማ እንደተሰጠ ያውቃሉ። እናም ህጉ በክርስቶስ ከተፈጸመ በኋላ፣ ህጉ በሚፈጸምበት ጊዜ በእርሱ ልባቸውን ማጠጠር እንደማያስፈልጋቸው እንዲያውቁም ነው።

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

፳፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ ህዝቦቹ፣ አዎን እናንተ አንገተ ደንዳና ህዝብ ናችሁ፤ እኔ በግልፅ የተናገርኳችሁ እንዳትደናገሩም ነው። የምናገረው ቃል እንደምስክር በእናንተ ላይ ይቆያሉ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ማንኛውንም ሰው ትክክለኛውን መንገድ ለማስተማር በቂ ናቸውና፤ ትክክለኛው መንገድ በክርስቶስ ማመንና እርሱን አለመካድ ነውና፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱን በመካድ እናንተ ደግሞ ነቢያትንና ህጉን ትክክልላችሁና።

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

፳፱ እናም እነሆ አሁን፣ ትክክለኛው መንገድ በክርስቶስ ማመን ነው እላችኋለሁ፣ እርሱንም አትካዱ፤ እናም ክርስቶስ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ነው፤ ስለዚህ በፊቱ መስገድና፣ በሙሉ ኃይላችሁ፣ አእምሮአችሁና ጉልበታችሁ እንዲሁም በፍፁም ነፍሳችሁ እርሱን ማምለክ አለባችሁ፤ እናም ይህን ካደረጋችሁ በምንም ሁኔታ አትጣሉም።

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

፴ እናም አስፈላጊ እስከሆነ፣ ለሙሴም የተሰጠው ህግ እስከሚፈጸም ድረስ የእግዚአብሔርን ስራና ስርዓቱን መጠበቅ አለባችሁ።

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፭

፩ እናም ልጆቼና የተወደዱትሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ክርስቶስ ከሙታን ከተነሳ በኋላ አራሱን ለእናንተ ያሳያል፤ ለእናንተ የሚናገሩትሁ ቃልም ለእናንተ ህግ ይሆንላችኋል።

፪ እነሆም እላችኋለሁ፣ ብዙ ትውልድ እንደሚያልፋ፣ እናም በህዝቦቹ መካከል ታላቅ ጦርነትና ፀብ እንድሚኖር ተመልክቻለሁ።

፫ እናም መሲሁ ከመጣም በኋላ ሰለውልደቱ፣ እንዲሁም ሰለሞቱና ትንሳኤው፤ ለህዝቦቹ ምልክቶች ይሰጣል፤ እናም ለኃጢአተኞች ያ ቀን ታላቅና የሚያሰፈራ ይሆናል፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ይጠፋሉና፤ እናም የሚጠፉትም እነርሱ ነቢያትንና፣ ፃድቃንን፣ ሰለአወጡአቸውና፣ በድንጋይ ሰለወገሩአቸውና፣ ሰለገደሉአቸውም ነው። ሰለዚህ የቅዱሳን ደም ጩኸት በእነርሱ ላይ ከምድር ወደ እግዚአብሔር ይወጣል።

፬ ሰለዚህ፣ ኩራተኞችና፣ አመፅን የሚያደርጉ ሁሉ፣ የሚመጣው ቀንም ያቃጥላቸዋል፣ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ፣ እንደገለባ ይሆናሉና።

፭ እናም ነቢያትንና፣ ፃድቃንን፣ የሚገድሉ የምድር ጥልቅ ይውጧቸዋል፣ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ፤ እናም ተራሮች ይጨናቸዋል፣ አውሎ ነፋስም ይወስዳቸዋል፣ ህንፃዎችም በላያቸው ላይ ይወድቃሉ፣ እናም ይሰባብሩአቸዋል እንዲሁም ወደ ዲቄትነት ይለውጡአቸዋል።

፮ እናም በነገድጓድና፣ በመብረቅ፣ በመሬት መናወጥና፣ በሁሉም አይነት ጥፋት፣ ይቀጣሉ፣ የጌታም የቁጣ እሳት በእነርሱ ላይ ይነዳልና፣ እናም እነርሱ እንደገለባ ይሆናሉ፣ የሚመጣውም ቀን እነርሱን ይበላል፣ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

፯ አቤቱ በህዝቤ ጥፋትና ሞት የተነሳ፣ የነፍሴ ሰቃይ! እኔ ኔፊ አይቼዋለሁ፣ እና ይህም በጌታ ፊት ሊያጠፋኝ ደርሷልና፤ ነገር ግን መንገድህ ጻድቅ ነው ብዬ ወደ አምላኬ መጮህ አለብኝ።

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የሰደት መከራ ቢደርስባቸውም የነቢያትን ቃል የሚሰሙ እናም የማያጠፏቸው፣ ነገር ግን የተሰጠውን ምልክት በመጠባበቅ በእምነት ፀንተው ክርስቶስን ወደ ፊት የሚመለከቱ ጻድቃኖች—እነሆ፣ እነርሱም የማይጠፉት ናቸው።

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

፱ ነገር ግን የፅድቅ ልጅ ይገለፅላቸዋል፤
ይፈውሳቸዋልም፣ እናም ሶስት ትውልድ እስከሚያልፍ
ድረስ በእርሱ ሰላም ይኖራቸዋል፣ ከአራተኛው ትውልድም
ብዙዎች በፅድቅ ያልፋሉ።

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto
them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have
peace with him, until three generations shall have
passed away, and many of the fourth generation
shall have passed away in righteousness.

፲ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሚያልፉበት ጊዜ ፈጣን ጥፋት
በህዝቤ ላይ ይመጣል፤ ምክንያቱም በነፍሴ ስቃይ
ቢኖርም፣ ይህን አይቼዋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ እንደሚሆንም
አውቃለሁ፤ እናም እራሳቸውን ያለ ዋጋ ይሸጣሉ፤
ለኩራታቸውና ለሞኝነታቸው ጥፋትን ዋጋ ይቀበላሉና፤
ለዲያብሎስ እጃቸውን ስለሰጡ፣ እናም ከብርሃን ይልቅ
የጨለማን ስራ ስለመረጡ፣ ስለዚህ ወደ ሲኦል ሊወርዱ
ይገባቸዋል።

And when these things have passed away a speedy
destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwith-
standing the pains of my soul, I have seen it; where-
fore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell
themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their
pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruc-
tion; for because they yield unto the devil and choose
works of darkness rather than light, therefore they
must go down to hell.

፲፩ የጌታ መንፈስ ሁል ጊዜ ከሰው ጋር አይቆይም። እናም
መንፈስ ከሰው ጋር መሰራት ሲያቆም ፈጣን ጥፋት
ይመጣል፣ እናም ይህ ነፍሴን ያሳዝነዋል።

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive
with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with
man then cometh speedy destruction, and this
grieveth my soul.

፲፪ እናም እኔ አይሁዶችን አየሱስ፣ እንዲሁም ያው
ክርስቶስ፣ መሆኑን ለማሳመን ስናገር፣ እህባቶችም ደግሞ
አየሱስ ክርስቶስ ዘለዓለማዊ አምላክ መሆኑን ሊረዱት
ይገባቸዋል፤

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the
Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be
that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the
Christ, the Eternal God;

፲፫ እናም እሱ በእርሱ ለሚያምኑት ሁሉ እራሱን በመንፈስ
ቅዱስ ኃይል ይገልጻል፤ አዎን፣ ለሁሉም ሀገሮች፣ ነገዶች፣
ቋንቋና ህዝብ እንደ እምነታቸው በሰው ልጆች መካከል
አስደናቂ ተአምራትን፣ ምልክትን፣ እና ድንቅ ነገርን
ይሰራል።

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those
who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost;
yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people,
working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders,
among the children of men according to their faith.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ የመጨረሻ ቀናትን በተመለከተ ጌታ
እግዚአብሔር ለሰው ልጆች እነዚህን ነገሮች
የሚያመጣቸውን ቀናትም በተመለከተ
አተነብይላችኋለሁ።

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the
last days; concerning the days when the Lord God
shall bring these things forth unto the children of
men.

፲፭ ዘሮቹና የወንድሞቹ ዘሮች ባለማመን ከመነመኑና፣
በእህብብ ከተመቱ በኋላ፤ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔር በሰራዊቱ
ከከበባቸውና፣ የግንብ ከለላ ካደረገላቸው በኋላ፣
ከሚዋጉአቸውም ከከለላቸው፤ እናም እስከሚጠፉም
እንኳን፣ በትቢያም ዝቅ ካደረጋቸው በኋላ፣ ሆኖም
የፃድቃን ቃል ይፃፋል፣ የታማኞች ፀሎትም ይሰማል፣
እናም ባለማመን የመነመኑትም ሁሉ አይረሱም።

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall
have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smit-
ten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall
have camped against them round about, and shall
have laid siege against them with a mount, and
raised forts against them; and after they shall have
been brought down low in the dust, even that they
are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be writ-
ten, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard,
and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall
not be forgotten.

፲፮ እነዚያ የሚጠፉት ከመሬት ይናገራሉ ቃላቸውም ዝቅ ብሎ ከአፈር ይወጣል፤ ድምጻቸውም ከመሬት እንደሚወጣ እንደመናፍሱት ጠሪ ድምፅ ይሆናል፤ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነርሱን በተመለከተ፣ ከመሬት ውስጥ እንደሆኑ ሁሉ፣ ያንሾካሽክ ዘንድ ኃይልን ይሰጠዋል፤ ቃላታቸውም ከአፈር ወጥተው ያንሾካሽካሉ።

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

፲፱ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላልና—በእነርሱ መካከል ስለሚደረጉት ነገሮች ይፅፋሉ፣ እናም ተፅፈውም በመጽሐፍ ይታተማሉ፣ እናም ባለማመን የመነመኑት እያገኙቸውም፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የእግዚአብሔርን ነገሮች ለማጥፋት ይሻሉና።

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

፳፬ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚያ የሚጠፉት በፍጥነት ጠፍተዋል፤ እናም የጨካኞችም ብዛታቸው እንደሚያልፍ ገለባ ይሆናል—አዎን፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል፣ ይህም ፈጥኖ፣ በድንገትም ይሆናል—

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ባለማመን የመነመኑት በእህዛብ እጅ ይመታሉ።

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

፳፻ እናም እህዛብ በአይናቸው ኩራት ምክንያት ተሰናክለዋል፣ እናም በእንቅፋታቸው ትልቅነት የተነሳ ተሰናክለዋል፣ በዚህም ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያንን ሰርተዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጥቅም ያገኙበትና የድሆችን ፊት ይፈጩ ዘንድ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይልና ተአምራት ንቀዋል፣ እናም የራሳቸውን ጥበብና ትምህርት ለራሳቸው ሰብከዋል።

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

፷፩ እናም ምቀኝነት፣ ጭቅጭቅና ጥላቻ የሚያመጡ ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያኖች ተሰርተዋል።

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

፷፪ እናም እንደ ጥንቱም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ እንደ ዲያብሎስ ውህደት መሰረት አሁንም ደግሞ ሚስጥራዊ ሴራዎች አለ፣ የነዚህ ሁሉ ነገሮች መሰራች እርሱ ነውና፤ አዎን፣ የግድያ እና የጨለማ ስራ መሰራች፤ አዎን፣ ለዘለዓለም በጠንካራው ገመድ እስከሚያሰራቸው፣ በተልባ ገመድ እንገታቸውን ይሰባል።

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

፷፫ እነሆም፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በጨለማ አይሰራም እላችኋለሁ።

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

፷፬ እርሱም ለዓለም ጥቅም ካልሆነ በስተቀር ማንኛውንም አያደርግም፤ ምክንያቱም ሰዎችን ሁሉ ወደ እርሱ ይሰብ ዘንድም ሕይወቱን አሳልፎ እስከመሰጠት ዓለምን ይወዳል። ስለዚህ፣ ማንንም ደህንነቱን እንዳይካፈሉ አያዝም።

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

፳፭ እነሆ፣ ለሰው ከእኔ ራቁ ብሎ ተናግሯልን? እነሆ፣ እኔ እላችኋለሁ፣ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ እንዲህ ይላል— እናንተ የምድር ዳርቻ ሁሉ ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ ያለገንዘብም ያለዋጋም ወተትና ማር ግዙ።

፳፮ እነሆ፣ ከምኩራብ ወይም ከማምለኪያ ቤቶች ውጪ መውጣት እንዳለባቸው እርሱ አዟልን? እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ አላለም።

፳፯ ደህንነቱን እንዳይካፈሉ እርሱ አዝዟቸዋልን? እነሆ እኔ እላችኋለሁ—አላዘዛቸውም፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ ለሰዎች ሁሉ በነፃ ሰጥቶታል፤ እናም እርሱ ህዝቡን ሁሉንም ሰዎችን ስህ ለመግባት እንዲያሳምኑአቸው አዟል።

፳፰ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ከቸርነቱ እንዳይካፈሉ ያዘዘው አለ? እነሆ እኔ እላችኋለሁ—የለም፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉም ሰው እንደሌላው ታድሏል፤ እናም ማንም አልተከለከለም።

፳፱ የክህነት ተንኮል እንዳይኖር አዟል፣ እነሆም፣ የክህነት ተንኮሎችም ጥቅምና መገላገን ከአለም ያገኙ ዘንድ ሰዎች የሚሰብኳቸውና አራሳቸውን በዓለም ውስጥ በብርሃን የሚያስቀምጡበት ነው፤ ነገር ግን እነርሱ የፅዮንን ደህንነት አይሹም።

፴ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ደህንነት ነገር ይከለክላል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ሰው ሁሉ ለጋሰ መሆን እንዳለበት ትዕዛዝን ሰጥቷል፣ ይህም ልግስና ፍቅር ነው። እናም ለጋሰነት ከሌላቸው ከንቱ ናቸው። ስለሆነም፣ ልግስና ቢኖራቸው የፅዮን ሰራተኞች እንዲጠፉ አይፈቅዱም ነበር።

፴፩ ነገር ግን በፅዮን ያሉ ሰራተኞች ለፅዮን ይሰራሉ፤ ምክንያቱም ለገንዘብ ከሰሩ ይጠፋሉና።

፴፪ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንደገና ሰዎች መግደል እንደሌለባቸው፣ መዋሸት እንደሌለባቸው፣ መሰረቅ እንደሌለባቸው፣ የጌታን ስም በከንቱ መጥራት እንደሌለባቸው፣ እንዳይመቀኙ፣ ጥላቻ እንዳይኖራቸው፣ እንዲከሉላው እንዳይጣላ፣ ዝሙትን እንዳይፈፀሙ፣ እናም ከእነዚህ ውስጥ ማንኛውንም ማድረግ እንደሌለባቸው አዝዟል፤ እነዚህን የሚፈፀሙ ይጠፋሉና።

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

ከእነዚህ ማናቸውም ክፋቶች በጌታ አይመጡምና፤
 እርሱ በሰው ልጆች መካከል መልካም የሆነውን
 ያደርጋልና፤ እናም ለሰዎች ልጆች ግልፅ ከሆነው
 በሰተቀር ምንም አያደርግም፤ እርሱም ከቸርነቱ ይካፈሉ
 ዘንድ ሁሉም ወደ እርሱ እንዲመጡ ይጋብዛል፤ እናም
 ወደ እርሱ የሚመጡትን ማንንም፣ ጥቁርም ነጭም፣
 ባሪያውንና ነፃውን፤ ሴትና ወንድን አይክድም፤
 እምነተቢሶችንም ያሰታውሳል፤ እናም አይሁድም ሆኑ
 አህዛብ፣ ሁሉም ለእግዚአብሔር አንድ ናቸው።

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for
 he doeth that which is good among the children of
 men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the
 children of men; and he inviteth them all to come
 unto him and partake of his goodness; and he deni-
 eth none that come unto him, black and white, bond
 and free, male and female; and he remembereth the
 heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and
 Gentile.

፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በመጨረሻ ቀናት ወይም በእህዳብ ቀናት—አዎን፣ እነሆ በዚህ ምድር የሚመጡትና በሌላም ምድር፣ አዎን፣ በአለም ምድሮች ሁሉ ላይ የሚሆኑት የእህዳብን እናም ደግሞ የአይሁዶች ሀገሮች፣ እነሆ፣ በክፋቶችና በሁሉም አይነት እርኩሳቶች ይሰክራሉ—

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

፪ እናም ያ ቀን ሲመጣ የሰራዊት ጌታ በነጎድጓድ፣ በምድር መናወጥና፣ በታላቅ ሁካታ፣ በእውሎ ነፋስና በወጨፎም፣ እንዲሁም በምትበላም እሳት ነበልባል ይጎበኛቸዋል።

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

፫ እናም ፅዮንን የሚዋጉ፣ እናም የሚያሰጨንቁት ሁሉም ሀገሮች እንደህልምና እንደምሽት ራዕይ ይሆናሉ፤ አዎን፣ ለእነርሱ ተርቦ እንደሚያልም ሰው እንኳን ይሆንላቸዋል፣ እናም እነሆ ይበላል፣ ነገር ግን ይነቃልም ነፍሱ ባዶ ናት፤ ወይም ተጠምቶ እንደሚያልም ሰው ነው፣ እናም እነሆ እርሱ ይጠጣል ነገር ግን ይነቃልም እነሆ የዛለ ነው፣ ነፍሱም አምሮት ይኖረዋል፣ አዎን፣ ከፅዮን ተራራ ጋር የሚዋጋ የሀገሮች ሁሉ ብዛት እንዲህም ይሆናሉ።

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

፬ እነሆም፣ ክፋትን የምታደርጉ ሁሉ፣ ራሳችሁን ቆጥቡ እናም ተደነቁ፣ ትጮሀላችሁና፤ እናም ታለቅሳላችሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናንተ ትሰክራላችሁ ነገር ግን በወይን አይደለም፣ በሚያሰክር መጠጥ ሳይሆን ትንገዳገዳላችሁ።

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

፭ እነሆም ጌታ ከባድ የእንቅልፍ መንፈስ አፍሰሶባችኋል። እነሆም ዐይኖቻችሁን ጨፍናችኋል ነቢያትንም ተቃወሙታችኋል፤ እናም በክፋታችሁ የተነሳ ገዢዎቻችሁንና ባለራዕዮችን ሸፍኖባችኋል።

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የመፅሐፍን ቃል ያመጣላችኋል፣ እናም እነርሱ የሚያንቀላፉት ቃል ይሆናሉ።

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

፯ እናም እነሆ መጽሐፉ የታተመ ይሆናል፤ እናም በመጽሐፉም ውስጥ ከዓለም መጀመሪያ እስከ መጨረሻው ድረስ ያለው የእግዚአብሔር ራዕይ ይኖራል።

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

፰ ስለሆነም፣ በታተሙት ነገሮች የተነሳ፣ የታተሙት ነገሮች በህዝቡ በኃጢአትና በመጥፎነት ጊዜ አይሰጡም። ስለዚህ መጽሐፉ ከእነርሱ ይደበቃል።

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

፱ ነገር ግን መጽሐፉ ለአንድ ሰው ይሰጣል፣ እናም እርሱ በአፈር ያንቀላፉት ቃል የሆነውን የመጽሐፉን ቃል ይሰጣል፣ እናም እነዚህን ቃላት ለሌሎችም ይሰጣል፤

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

፲ ገር ግን የታተሙትን ቃላት እንዲሁም መጽሐፉን እይሰጥም። መጽሐፉ የታተመው በእግዚአብሔር ሀይል በመሆኑ እናም የታተመው ራዕይ እንዲመጣ ዘንድ የጌታ ጊዜ እስከሚደርስ ድረስ በመጽሐፉ ውስጥ ይጠበቃል፤ እነሆም እነርሱ ከዓለም መጀመሪያ ጀምሮ እስከ መጨረሻው ያሉትን ነገሮች ይገልጻሉ።

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

፲፩ እናም የታተሙት የመጽሐፉ ቃላት በሰገነት ላይ የሚነበቡበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፤ እነርሱም በክርስቶስ ኃይል ይነበባሉ፤ እናም በሰዎች ልጆች መካከል የነበሩትና፣ እስከ ዓለም ዳርቻ የሚሆኑት፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች ለሰዎች ልጆች ይገለጻሉ።

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

፲፪ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ለተናገርኩበት ሰው መጽሐፉ በሚሰጥበት በዚያ ቀን፣ መጽሐፉ ከዓለም ዐይን ይደበቃል፣ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል፣ ከእርሱ መጽሐፉ ከተሰጠው በተጨማሪ፣ በዚያም ከሶስቱ ካዩት ምስክሮች በሰተቀር የማንም ዐይን እያየውም፤ እናም እነርሱ ስለመጽሐፉ እውነትና በውስጡ ስላሉት ነገሮች ይመሰክራሉ።

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

፲፫ እናም ለሰዎች ልጆች የእርሱን ቃል ምስክርነት ይሰጡ ዘንድ፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ ከጥቂቶቹ በሰተቀር ማንም እያየውም፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የታመኑት ቃላት ከሙታን እንደሆነ ይናገራሉ ብሎአልና።

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

፲፬ ስለሆነም፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የመጽሐፉን ቃል ለማምጣት ይቀጥላል፤ እናም እርሱ ጠቃሚ ናቸው ብሎ በሚያሰባቸው ብዙ ምስክሮች እፍ የቃሉን እውነትነት ያረጋግጣል፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለማይቀበል ለዚያ ሰው ወጥላት!

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

፲፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ መጽሐፉን ለሚሰጠው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል፣ ያልታተሙትን እነዚህን ቃላት ውስድና እርሱ ለተማረው እንዲያሳየውና—ይህን እንድታነበውም አለምናለሁ እንዲለው ለሌላው ሰጠው። እናም የተማረውም እንዲህ ይላል—መጽሐፉን ወደ እኔ አምጣው አነባቸዋለሁ።

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ ይህን የሚሉት በአለም ክብር የተነሳና ሀብት ለማግኘት እንጂ ለእግዚአብሔር ክብር አይደለም።

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

፲፯ እናም ሰውየውም እንዲህ ይላል፣ መጽሐፉን ማምጣት አልችልም፣ ምክንያቱም ታትሟልና።

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

፲፰ የተማረውም እንዲህ ይላል—ይህንን ለማንበብ አልችልም።

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

፲፱ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር መጽሐፉን እና በዚያም ያሉትን ቃላት በድጋሚ ላልተማረው ይሰጣል፤ እናም ያልተማረው ሰው እንዲህ ይላል—እኔ አልተማርኩም።

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

፳ ከዚያም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይለዋል፣ የተማሩት አያነቡአቸውም፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ አልተቀበሉትምና፣ እናም እኔ የራሴን ስራ መስራት እችላለሁ፤ ስለዚህ እንተ የምሰጥህን ቃላት እንብባቸው።

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

፳፩ የታተሙትን ነገሮች አትንካ፣ ምክንያቱም በራሴ ጊዜ አመጣቸዋለሁና፤ ለሰዎች ልጆችም የራሴን ስራ መስራት እንደምችል አሳያቸዋለሁና።

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

፳፪ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ያዘዘኩህን ቃላት ስታንብ፣ እናም ቃል የገባሁልህን ምስክርነት ስታገኝ፣ ከዚያም መጽሐፉን በድጋሚ ታትማለህ፣ እናም በራሴ ጥበብ ለሰው ልጆች ሁሉንም ነገሮች መግለጫዬ አስከሚደርሰ ያላነበብሃቸውን ቃላት እጠብቀው ዘንድ ለእኔ ትሸሽገዋለህ።

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

፳፫ እነሆም እኔ እግዚአብሔር ነኝ፤ እኔም የተአምራት አምላክ ነኝ፤ እናም ለዓለም እኔ ትናንትም፣ ዛሬም፣ ለዘላለም አንድ መሆኔን አሳያለሁ፤ እናም እንደ አምነታቸው ካልሆነ በስተቀር በሰዎች ልጆች መካከል አልሰራም።

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

፳፬ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ የተሰጡትን ቃላት ለሚያነበው ጌታ እንዲህ ይለዋል—

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

፳፭ ይህ ህዝብ በአፋቸው ወደ እኔ እስከቀረቡ፣ በከንፈሮቻቸውም እሰካከበሩኝ፣ ልባቸውን ግን ከእኔ እሰካራቁ፣ እናም ወደ እኔ ያላቸው ፍርሀት በሰዎች አስተያየት የተማሩ እስከሆኑ ድረስ—

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

፳፮ ስለዚህ፣ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ድንቅ ስራ፣ አዎን፣ ድንቅ ስራ እና አሰገራሚ ነገር መስራቱን እቀጥላለሁ፣ የጥበብቶቻቸው እና የተማሯቸው ጥበብ ትጠፋለችና፣ እናም የአስተዋዮቻቸውም ማስተዋል ትሰወራለች።

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

፳፯ እናም ምክራቸውን ጥልቅ አድርገው ከጌታ ለሚሰውሩ ወዮላቸው! ሰራቸውም በጨለማ ውስጥ ነው፤ እናም ማን ያየናል፣ ማን ሰ ያውቀናል? ይላሉ። እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ ይላሉ—በእርግጥ ነገሮችን የምታጣምሙት እንደሸክላ ስሪ ጭቃ ናቸው። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሰራቸውን በሙሉ እንደማውቅ አሳያቸዋለሁ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ። ሰራ ስሪውን አልሰራኸኝም ይለዋልን? ወይስ መውጠሪያ የወጠረውን አታስተውልም ይለዋልን?

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

፳፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የሰራዊት ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል—ለሰው ልጆች ሊባሉ እንደ ፍሬያማ መስክ የሚለወጥበት ጊዜ ረጅም እንደማይሆን አሳያቸዋለሁ፤ እናም ፍሬያማው መስክ እንደጫካ ይመስላል።

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

፳፱ እናም በዚያ ቀን ደንቆሮዎች የመጽሐፉን ቃል ይሰማሉ፣ እናም የእውሮችም ዐይኖች ከጭጋግና ከጨለማ ውስጥ ወጥተው ያያሉ።

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

፴ እናም ደግሞ የዋሆች ይጨምራሉ፣ ደስታቸውም በጌታ ይሆናል፣ እናም በሰዎች መካከል ያሉ ድሆችም በእስራኤል ቅዱስ ይደሰታሉ።

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

፴፩ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ አሸባሪዎችም ወደከንቱ እንደሚመጣ ያያሉ፣ የሚያሾፉትም ይጠፋሉ፣ እናም ለክፋት የተዘጋጁ ሁሉ ይቆረጣሉ፤

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

፴፪ እናም ሰውን በነገር በደለኛ የሚያደርጉም፣ እናም በበርም ለሚገሰጠው ወጥመድን የሚያኖሩም፣ ዓድቁንም በከንቱ ነገር የሚያሰቱም ይቆረጣሉ።

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

፴፫ ስለዚህ፣ አብርሃምን የተቤዢ ጌታ፣ የያዕቆብን ቤት በተመለከተ እንዲህ ይላል—ያዕቆብ አሁን አያፍርም፣ ፊቱም አሁን አይገረጣም።

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

፴፬ ነገር ግን በእርሱ መካከል የእጁን ሰራ ልጆቹን ባየ ጊዜ፣ ሰሜን ይቀድሳሉ፣ እናም የያዕቆብን ቅዱስ ይቀድሳሉ፣ እናም የእስራኤልን አምላክ ይፈራሉ።

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

፴፭ በመንፈስም ደግሞ የተሳሳቱ ያስተውላሉ፣ እናም የሚያገረመርሙ ትምህርትን ይማራሉ።

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፰

፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ መንፈስ እንደገፋፋኝ ተናግረኝ። ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች በእርግጥ እንደሚሆኑ አውቃለሁ።

፪ እናም ከመጽሐፉ ላይ የተፃፉት ነገሮች ለሰው ልጆች፣ እና በተለይም የእስራኤል ቤት ቅርጽ ለሆኑት ለእኛ ዘር፣ ታላቅ ዋጋ ይኖራቸዋል።

፫ በዚያን ቀን እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ለጌታም ያልሆነው የተሰሩት ቤተክርስቲያኖች፣ እንዲሁ ለሌላው ይለዋል— እነሆ፣ እኔ የጌታ ነኝ፤ እናም ሌሎቹም እኔ፣ እኔ የጌታ ነኝ ይላሉ፤ እናም ለጌታ ያልተሰሩት ቤተክርስቲያናት ሁሉ እንደዚህ ይላሉ—

፬ እናም አንዳቸው ከሌላቸው ይከራከራሉ፤ ካህናቶቻቸውም አንዱ ከሌላ ይከራከራሉ፣ እናም ከራሳቸው የሆነውን ትምህርት ያስተምራሉ፣ የመናገርን ችሎታ የሚሰጠውንም መንፈስ ቅዱስ ይክዳሉ።

፭ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል፣ የእስራኤሉንም ቅዱስ ይክዳሉ፤ ለህዝቡም እንዲህ ይላሉ—አድምጡን፣ እናም የእኛን መመሪያ ሰሙ፤ እነሆም እግዚአብሔር ዛሬ የለምና፣ ጌታና አዳኝ ስራውን ስርቷል፣ እናም ኃይሉን ለሰዎች ሰጥቷልና።

፮ እነሆ፣ የእኔን መመሪያ አድምጡ፤ በጌታ እጅ የተሰሩ ተአምር አለ ካሉ አትመኑኦቻቸው፤ በዛሬ ጊዜ እርሱ የተአምራት አምላክ አይደለምና፤ እሱ ስራውን ስርቷል።

፯ አዎን፣ እናም ብዙዎች እንዲህ የሚሉ አሉ፣ ብሉ፣ ጠጡ፣ እናም ተደሰቱ፣ ነገ እንሞታለንና፤ ይህም ለእኛ መልካም ይሆናል።

፰ እናም ሌሎች ደግሞ እንዲህ የሚሉ ብዙ አሉ፣ ብሉ፣ ጠጡ፣ እናም ተደሰቱ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እግዚአብሔርን ፍሩ—ትንሽ ኃጢአትን ብንሰራ ጥፋተኛ አያደርገንም፤ አዎን፣ ትንሽም ዋሹ፣ በቃሉ የተነሳ በሌላ ላይ ዕድል ተጠቀሙ፣ በጎረቤታችሁም ላይ ጉድጓድን ቆፍሩ፤ በዚህ ምንም ጉዳት የለም፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ አድርጉ፣ ነገ እንሞታለንና፤ እናም ምንም እንኳን ጥፋተኛ ብንሆን፣ እግዚአብሔር በትንሹ ይቀጣናል፣ እናም በመጨረሻ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት እንድናለን።

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

፱ አዎን፣ እናም እንደዚህ ውሸትና ከንቱና የማይረባ ትምህርትን የሚያስተምሩ፣ እናም በልባቸውም የታበዩና፣ ምክራቸውን ጥልቅ አድርገው ከጌታ ለመስወር የሚፈልጉ ብዙዎች ይኖራሉ፤ እናም ሰራቸውም በጨለማ ውስጥ ይሆናል።

፲ እናም የቅዱሳን ደም ከምድር በእነርሱ ላይ ይጮሃል።

፲፩ አዎን፣ ሁላቸውም መንገዳቸውን ሰተዋል፤ ተበላሽተዋልም።

፲፪ በኩራትና፣ በሐሰተኛ አስተማሪዎች፣ እንዲሁም በሀሰት ትምህርት የተነሳ፣ ቤተክርስቲያናቸው ተበላሽቷል፤ እናም ቤተክርስቲያናቸው ከፍ ብለዋል፤ በኩራትም የተነሳ ተወጥረዋል።

፲፫ በመልካሙ ቅዱስ ሰፍራ የተነሳ ድሆችን ይበዘብዛሉ፤ በመልካም ልብሳቸውም የተነሳ ድሆችን ይበዘብዛሉ፤ እናም ትሁታጎንና በልባቸው ድሆች የሆኑትን ያሳድዳሉ፤ በኩራታቸው የተነሳ ተወጥረዋል።

፲፬ እንገተ ደንዳና እና ትምክህተኞች ናቸው፤ እናም አዎን፣ ከጥቂት ትሁት የክርስቶስ ተከታዮች በሰተቀር በኩራታቸው፣ በክፋታቸው፣ በእርኩስታቸውና በዘሙት የተነሳ ሁሉም ባክነዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ተመርተዋል፣ በብዙ መንገድ የተሳሳቱበት ምክንያትም በሰዎች አስተያየቶች ስለተማሩ ነው።

፲፭ አቤቱ በልባችሁ ኩራት የተወጠሩ ጥበበኞች፣ የተማሩና፣ ሀብታሞች፣ እናም ሀሰተኛ ትምህርትን የሚያስተምሩ ሁሉና፣ ዘሙትን የሚፈጽሙ ሁሉ፣ እናም ትክክለኛውን የጌታን መንገድ የሚያጣምሙ፣ ወዮ፣ ወዮ፣ ለእነርሱ ወዮላቸው ወደ ሲኦልም ይጣላሉና ይላል ሁሉን የሚገዛ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር።

፲፮ ዓድቁንም በከንቱ ነገር ዞር የሚይደርጉና ጥሩ የሆነውን የሚሰድቡ፣ እናም ዋጋ የለውም ለሚሉ ወዮላቸው! ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የምድር ነዋሪዎቻችን የሚጎበኝበት ቀን በፍጥነት ይመጣልና፤ እናም በዚያን ቀን በጥፋት ፈጽመው የበሰሉትም ይጠፋሉ።

፲፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የምድር ነዋሪዎች ለክፋታቸውና ለእርኩስታቸው ንስሀ ከገቡ አይጠፉም ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

፲፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ያቺ ታላቋና የርኩስት ቤተክርስቲያን የምድር ሁሉ ጋለሞታም ወደ አፈር ትወድቃለች፣ እናም አወዳደቋም ታላቅ ይሆናል።

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

፲፱ የዲያብሎስ መንግስት መናወጥ አለበት፣ እናም የእርሱ የሆኑትም ለንስህ መነቃቃት ይገባቸዋል፣ አለበለዚያ ዲያብሎስ በዘለዓለማዊ ሰንሰለቱ ይይዛቸዋል፣ እናም እነርሱ ለቁጣ ይነሳሳሉም፣ ይጠፋሉም፤

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

፳ እነሆም፣ በዚያን ቀን በሰው ልጆች ልብ ውስጥ ይቆጣል፣ እናም ጥሩ በሆነውም ላይ ለቁጣ ያነሳሳቸዋል።

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

፳፩ እናም እርሱ ሌሎችን ያረጋጋል፣ ቀስ ብሎም ወደ ስጋዊ ደህንነት አባብሏቸው እንዲህ ይላሉ፣ በፅዮን ሁሉም መልካም ነው፤ አዎን፣ ፅዮን ትለመልማለች፤ ሁሉም መልካም ነው—ዲያብሎስም ነፍሳቸውን እንዲህ ያታልላል፣ እናም በጥንቃቄ ወደ ሲኦል ይመራቸዋል።

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

፳፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ሌሎችን እያሞገሰ ያስታቸዋል፣ እናም ሲኦል የለም ብሎ ይነግራቸዋል፤ እናም ይላቸዋል፣ እኔ ዲያብሎስ አይደለሁም፣ እርሱ የለምና—እናም ማላቀቅ በማይቻለው በመጥፎው ሰንሰለቱ እስከሚያስራቸው ድረስ በጀሮአቸው እንዲህ ያንሾካሹካል።

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

፳፫ አዎን፣ በሞትና በሲኦል ተይዘዋል፤ እናም ሞትና ሲኦል እንዲሁም ዲያብሎስና በእነርሱም የተያዙት ሁሉ በእግዚአብሔር ዙፋን ፊት መቆም አለባቸው፣ እናም እንደሰራቸው ይፈረድባቸዋል፣ ከዚያም ለእነርሱ በተዘጋጀው ቦታ ወደማያቋርጥ ስቃይ ወደሆነው፣ እንዲሁም ወደ እሳትና ወደ ዲኑ ባህር መሄድ አለባቸው።

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ በፅዮን ለሚዘናናው ወዮለት!

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

፳፭ ሁሉ መልካም ነው! ብሎ ለሚጮህ ወዮለት!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

፳፮ አዎን፣ የሰዎችን አስተያየት ለሚያዳምጥና፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይልና የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ሰጦታን ለሚክድ ወዮለት!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

፳፯ አዎን፣ እኛ ተቀብለናል፣ እናም ሌላ አንፈልግም ለሚልም ወዮለት።

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

፳፰ እናም በአጠቃላይ ለሚንቀጠቀጡ ሁሉና፣ በእግዚአብሔር እውነት ምክንያት ለሚቆጡ ወዮላቸው! እነሆም በአለት ላይ የሰራ ይህን በደስታ ይቀበላል፤ እናም በአሸዋ መሰረት ላይ የሰራው ግን በፍርሃት እወድቃለሁ ብሎ ይንቀጠቀጣል።

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

፳፱ የእግዚአብሔርንም ቃል ተቀብለናል፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርንም ቃል ከዚህ በተጨማሪ ምንም አንፈልግም፣ ምክንያቱም በቂ አለን ለሚሉት ወዮላቸው!

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

፲፯ እነሆም፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል—ለሰው ልጆች በትዕዛዝ ላይ ትዕዛዝ፣ በሰርዐት ላይ ሰርዐት፣ ጥቂት በዚህ፣ ጥቂት በዚያ እስጣሊሁ፤ ትምህርቴን የሚሰሙ፣ እናም ምክራን የሚያደምጡ የተባረኩ ናቸው፣ ጥበብን ይማራሉና፤ ለሚቀበልም ተጨማሪ እስጣሊሁና፤ እና ይበቃናል ለሚሉም፣ ያላቸውም እንኳን ቢሆን ይወሰድባቸዋል።

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

፲፱ እምነቴን በሰው የሚያደርግ፣ ወይም ሰጋን ክንዱ የሚያደርግ፣ ወይም አስተያየታቸው በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ሀይል አማካኝነት ካልተሰጠ በስተቀር የሰውን ትምህርት የሚሰማ የተረገመ ነው።

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

፳፻ የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለአህዛብ ወዮላቸው ይላል! ክንዴን ከቀን ወደቀን ብዘረጋትም እንኳን ይክዱኛልና፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ንስሀ የሚገቡና ወደ እኔ የሚመጡ ከሆነ እምራቸዋለሁ ይላል ጌታ እግዚአብሔር፤ ክንዴ ቀኑን ሁሉ ትዘረጋለችና ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ እግዚአብሔር።

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

፪ ኔፊ ፳፱

፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከሰው ልጆች ጋር የገባሁትን ቃልኪዳኔን አሰብ ዘንድ፣ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን ህዝቤን ደግሜ ለመሰብሰብ ክንዳን ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ እነሳ ዘንድ፤

፪ እናም ደግሞ ዘርህንም እንደማስታውስ፤ እናም የዘርህ ቃል ከእጄ ወደ ዘርህ እንደሚያልፍ፤ ቃሌም የእስራኤል ቤት ለሆኑት ህዝቦቹ እርማ ይሆን ዘንድ ወደ ምድር ዳርቻ እንደሚያፋጭ፤ ለእነተ ኔፊና ደግሞ ለአባትህ የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አስታውሰው ዘንድ፤ በዚያን ቀን በእነርሱ መካከል ድንቅ ሰራን መሰራት ሰቀጥል፣ ብዙዎች ይኖራሉ—

፫ እናም ቃሎቼ ወደፊት ስለሚያፋጩ—ብዙ አህዛብ እንዲህ ይላሉ፣ መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ! መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ! መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ አለን፣ እናም ሌላ መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ ሊኖር አይችልም።

፬ ነገር ግን ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ይላል፣ ሞቾች ሆይ፣ መጽሐፍ ቅዱስ ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም ከእኔ የጥንት የቃል ኪዳን ህዝቦቹ ከአይሁዶች ይወጣል። እናም ከአይሁዶች ስለተቀበሉት መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ እንዴት አድርገው ያመሰግናሉ? አዎን፣ አህዛብሰ ምን ማለታቸው ነው? ችግርን፣ የጉልበት ስራንና፣ የአይሁዶችን ስቃይ፣ እንዲሁም ለአህዛብ ደህንነትን ለማምጣት ለእኔ ያላቸውን ትጋት ያስታውሳሉ?

፭ እናንት አህዛብ ሆይ፣ የጥንት የቃል ኪዳን ህዝቦቹ አይሁዶችን ታስታውሳላችሁ? አታስታውሱም፤ ነገር ግን እናንተ ረግማችኋቸዋልና፣ ጠልታችኋቸዋል፣ እናም እነሱን ለመመለስም አልፈለጋችሁም። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ በራሳችሁ ላይ አደርጋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እኔ ጌታ ህዝቤን አልረሳሁምና።

፮ እናንት ሞቾች፣ መጽሐፍ ቅዱስ፣ መጽሐፍ ቅዱስ አለን፣ እናም ሌላ መጽሐፍ ቅዱስ አንፈልግም የምትሉ። በአይሁዶች ካልሆነ በስተቀር መጽሐፍ ቅዱስን እግኝታችኋልን?

፯ ከእንድ በላይ ሀገር እንዳለ አታውቁምን? እኔ ጌታ አምላካችሁ፣ ሰዎችን ሁሉ እንደፈጠርኩ፣ እናም እኔ በባህር ደሴቶች ያሉትን እንደማስታውሰና በላይ በሰማይ እንዲሁም በታች በምድር እንደምገዛ፣ ለሰው ልጆች ቃሌን፣ አዎን፣ ለሁሉም የምድር ሀገሮችም እንኳን እንደማመጣ አታውቁምን?

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

፳ ስለዚህ ቃሉን በይበልጥ ስለተቀበላችሁ ታገረመርማላችሁ? እኔ እግዚአብሔር ስለመሆኔ፣ እንዲሁ ሀገር እንደሌላኛው እንደማስታውሰው፣ የሁለት ሀገሮች ምስክርነት ለእናንተ ምስክር መሆኑን አታውቁምን? ስለሆነም፣ ለእንዲሁ ሀገር እንደተናገርኩት ለሌላኛውም አንድ አይነት ቃል እናገራለሁ። እናም ሁለቱ ሀገሮች ሲገናኙ የሁለቱ ሀገሮች ምስክርነትም ደግሞ ይገናኛሉ።

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

፳፱ እናም ይህን የማደርገውም ለብዙዎች እኔ ትናንትም፣ ዛሬና ለዘላለምም አንድ መሆኔን፤ ቃሉንም በፈቃዴ መሰረት እንደምናገር አረጋግጥ ዘንድ ነው። እናም አንድ ቃል በመናገሪ ሌላ መናገር አይችልም ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ስራዬ ገና አላለቀም፤ ወይም ይህ እስከ ሰው ዘር መጨረሻ፣ ከዚያም እስከ ዘላለም ድረስ አያልቅም።

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

፲ ስለሆነም፣ እናንተ መፅሐፍ ቅዱስ ስላላችሁ የእኔን ቃል ሁሉ ይዟል ብላችሁ አታሰቡ፤ እኔን ሌላም እንዲፃፍ አላደርግም ብላችሁ አታሰቡ።

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

፲፩ በምስራቅና በምዕራብና፣ በሰሜን፣ እናም በደቡብና፣ በባህር ደሴት ያሉትን ሰዎች ሁሉ እኔ የተናገርኳቸውን ቃላት ሁሉ ይፅፉ ዘንድ አዛቸዋለሁና፤ በመፅሐፉ ውስጥ በተፃፉትም፣ ማንኛውንም ሰው እንደሰራው፣ በተፃፈው መሰረት ዓለምን አፈርዳለሁ።

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

፲፪ እነሆም፣ ለአይሁዶች እናገራለሁ እናም ይፅፉታል፤ ለኔፋውያንም ደግሞ እናገራለሁ፣ እናም ይፅፉታል፤ እኔ መርቼ ያወጣኋቸው የእስራኤል ቤት ለሆኑት ለሌሎቹ ነገዶችም ደግሞ እናገራለሁ፣ እናም ይፅፉታል፤ እኔም ለሁሉም የምድር ሀገሮችም ደግሞ እናገራለሁ፣ እናም ይፅፉታል።

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል አይሁዶች የኔፋውያን ቃል ይኖራቸዋል፣ ኔፋውያንም የአይሁዶች ቃል ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም ኔፋውያንና አይሁዶች የጠፉት የእስራኤል ነገዶች ቃል ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም የጠፉት የእስራኤል ነገዶችም የኔፋውያንና የአይሁዶች ቃል ይኖራቸዋል።

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ከእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑት ህዝቦች በርስተ ምድራቸው ይሰበሰባሉ፤ እናም ቃሉም ደግሞ በእንድ ይሰበሰባል። ከቃሉና የእስራኤል ቤት ከሆኑት ህዝቦች ጋር የሚጣሉትን፣ እኔ እግዚአብሔር መሆኔንና፣ ለአብርሃም ለዘላለም ዘሩን እንደማስታውስ ቃል መግባቱን አሳያችኋለሁ።

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

፪ ኔፊ ፴

፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እናገራችኋለሁ፤ እኔ ኔፊ እናንተ አህዛቦች ከሚሆኑት የበለጠ ፃድቃን እንሆናለን ብላችሁ እንድታሰቡ አልፈቅድም። እነሆም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ ካልጠበቃችሁ በተመሳሳዩ ሁላችሁም ትጠፋላችሁ፤ እናም በተነገረው ቃል ምክንያት አህዛብ በሙሉ ጠፍተዋል ብላችሁም አታሰቡ።

፫ እነሆም፣ እላችኋለሁ ንስሃ የሚገቡት አህዛቦች የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ህዝብ ናቸው፤ እናም ንስሃ የማይገቡት አይሁዶችም ይጣላሉ፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ንስህ በሚገቡት እና የእስራኤል ቅዱስ በሆነው በልጁ ከሚያምኑት በስተቀር ለማንም ቃል ኪዳን አልገባምና።

፬ እናም አሁን፣ በይበልጥ ስለአይሁዶችና ስለአህዛብ በመጠኑ ትንቢት እናገራለሁ። እኔ የተናገርኳችሁ መፅሐፍ ከመጣ፣ እናም ለአህዛቦች ከተፃፈና፣ በድጋሚ ወደ ጌታ ከታተመ በኋላ፣ በተፃፉት ቃላት የሚያምኑ ብዙዎች ይኖራሉ፤ እና እነርሱም ለቀሩት ዘርቻችን ያደርሱለቸዋል።

፭ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ የእኛ ዘርች ቅሪት እኛን በተመለከተ፣ እንዴት አድርገን ከኢየሩሳሌም እንደወጣን፣ እናም እንዴትስ እነርሱ የአይሁድ ትውልድ እንደሆኑ ያውቃሉ።

፮ እናም የኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ወንጌል በእነርሱ መካከላቸው ይሰበካል፤ ስለሆነ፣ እነርሱም ወደ አባቶቻቸው እውቀት፣ እናም ደግሞ በአባቶቻቸው መካከል ወደ ነበረው የኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እውቀት ይመለሳሉ።

፯ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ ይደሰታሉ፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ ከእግዚአብሔር እጅ የተሰጣቸው በረከት እንደሆነ ያውቃሉ፤ እናም የጨለማው ቅርፊት ከዐይናቸው መውደቅም ይጀምራል፤ እናም ንፁህና አሰደሳች ህዝቦች እስኪሆኑ ድረስ ብዙ ትውልድ ከእነርሱ አያልፍም።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል የተበተኑት አይሁዶች ደግሞ በክርስቶስ ማመን ይጀምራሉ፤ በምድር ፊትም ላይ መሰብሰብ ይጀምራሉ፤ እናም በክርስቶስ የሚያምኑ ብዙዎችም አሰደሳች ህዝብ ይሆናሉ።

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful-some people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በምድር ላይ የህዝቡን ዳግም መመለስ ለማምጣት በሁሉም ሀገሮች፣ ወገኖች፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ መካከል ሰራውን ይጀምራል።

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

፳፱ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ድሆችን በፅድቅ ይፈርዳል፣ የምድር ትሁታንም በእኩልነት ይገሰጻል። እናም ምድርን በእፋ በትር ይመታል፤ በከንፈሩም ትንፋሽ ኃጢአተኞችን ይገድላል።

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

፲ በጌታ እግዚአብሔር በሰዎች መካከል ታላቅ ክፍፍል የሚያደርግበት ጊዜ በፍጥነት ይመጣል፣ እናም በደለኞችን ያጠፋል፤ እናም ህዝቡን ይምራል፣ አዎን፣ በደለኞችን በእሳት ማጥፋት ቢኖርበትም።

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

፲፩ እናም ፅድቅነትም የወገቡ መታጠቅያው፣ ታማኝነትም የጎኑ መቀነት ይሆናል።

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

፲፪ እናም ተኩላ ከበጉ ጋር ይኖራል፤ እሶሽማኔውም ከፍየል ግልገሎች ጋር፣ ጥጃውም የእንበሳ ደቦልም፣ ከፍሪዳውም ጋር በእንድ ላይ ይተኛሉ፤ እናም ትንሽ ልጅም ይመራቸዋል።

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

፲፫ እናም ላምና ድብ አብረው ይመገባሉ፤ ግልገሎቻቸውም በእንድነት ይተኛሉ፤ እናም እንበሳም እንደ በሬ ገለባ ይበላል።

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

፲፬ እናም የሚጠባው ህፃን በመርዛማው እባብ ጉድጓድ ላይ ይጫወታል፣ እናም ጡት የጣለውም ህፃን በእፋኝት ቤት ላይ እጁን ይጭናል።

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

፲፭ በተቀደሰው ተራራዬ ላይ ሁሉ አይጎዱም፣ አይጠፉም፤ ውሃ ባህርን እንደሚሸፍን ሁሉ ምድር በጌታ እውቀትም ትሞላለችና።

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

፲፮ ስለሆነም፣ የሁሉም ሀገሮች ነገሮች ይታወቃሉ፤ አዎን፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች ለሰው ልጆች ይገለጣሉ።

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

፲፯ ያልተገለጠ፣ ሚስጥር የሆነ ምንም የለም፤ በብርሃን የማይወጣ የጨለማ ስራ የለም፤ እናም የማይፈታ በምድር ላይ የሚታተም ምንም ነገር አይኖርም።

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

፲፰ ስለሆነም፣ ለሰው ልጆች ተገልጠው የነበሩት ሁሉም ነገሮች በዚያ ቀን ይገለጣሉ፤ እናም ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ ሰይጣን በሰዎች ልጆች ልብ ላይ ምንም ስልጣን ለብዙ ጊዜ አይኖረውም። እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ንግግሪን እፈፅማለሁ።

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

፪ ኔፊ ፴፩

፪ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እኔ ኔፊ፣ ለእናንተ ትንቢት መናገሪን አጨርሳለሁ። እናም በእርግጥ መምጣት አለበት ብዬ ከማውቀው ጥቂት ነገሮችን በስተቀር መፃፍ አልችልም፤ የወንድሜ ያዕቆብንም ጥቂት ቃላት ብቻ ነው መፃፍ የምችለው።

፫ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ የፃፍኳቸው ነገሮች ስለክርስቶስ ትምህርት መናገር ካለብኝ በስተቀር ለእኔ በቂ ናቸው፤ ስለሆነም፣ በትንቢቴ ግልፅነት መሰረት በግልፅ እናገራችኋለሁ።

፬ ነፍሴ በግልፅነት ትደስታለችና፤ ጌታ እግዚአብሔርም በሰዎች ልጆች መካከል የሚሰራው በእንዲህ ያለ ሁኔታ ነውና። ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለመረዳት ብርሃንን ይሰጣልና፤ ለሰዎችም በሚረዱት፣ እንደ ቋንቋቸው ይናገራቸዋልና።

፭ ስለሆነም፣ እናንተ የተናገርኳችሁ የዓለምን ኃጢያት የሚያሰወግደውን የእግዚአብሔርን በግ የሚያጠምቀውን ነቢይ በተመለከተ ጌታ ያሳየኝን በተመለከተ ያሳየኝን እንድታስታውሱ አፈልጋለሁ።

፮ እናም አሁን የእግዚአብሔር በግ፣ ቅዱስ ሆኖ፣ ፅድቅን ሁሉ ለመፈፀም በውሃ መጠመቅ ካስፈለገው፣ አቤቱ ቅዱስ ያልሆነው፣ አዎን፣ እኛ በውሃ እንኳን መጠመቅ ምን ያህል ያስፈልገናል!

፯ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እጠይቃችኋለሁ—የእግዚአብሔር በግ በውሃ በመጠመቅ ፅድቅን ሁሉ የፈፀመው እንዴት ነበር?

፰ ቅዱስ እንደነበር አታውቁምን? ነገር ግን ቅዱስም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ በሰጋ መሰረት ለሰው ልጆች በአብ ፊት እራሱን እንዳዋረደ አሳይቷል፣ እናም ትዕዛዛቱን በመጠበቅ ለእርሱ ታዛዥ መሆኑን ለአባቱ መስክሯል።

፱ ስለሆነም፣ እርሱ በውሃ ከተጠመቀ በኋላ መንፈስ ቅዱስ በእርግብ አምሳል በላዩ ላይ አረፈ።

፲ እናም እንደገና፣ እርሱ በፊታቸው ምሳሌ በመሆን፣ ለሰዎች ልጆች የሳዳናውን ቀጥተኝነትና፣ እነርሱ በዚያ መግባት ያለባቸው በሩን ጥበት አሳይቷቸዋል።

2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

፲ እናም ለሰዎች ልጆች፣ እኔን ተከተሉኝ አለ። ስለዚህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ የእብን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ፈቃደኞች ከመሆን በስተቀር ኢየሱስን ልንከተለው እንችላለን?

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

፲፩ እናም እብ እንዲህ ይላል፡ ንሰሀ ግቡ፣ ንሰሀ ግቡ፣ እናም በተወደደው ልጄ ስም ተጠመቁ።

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ፣ የወልድ ድምፅ ወደ እኔ መጥቶ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ በሰሜ የተጠመቀ፣ እብ እንደ እኔ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ይሰጠዋል፤ ስለሆነም፣ ተከተሉኝ፣ እናም እኔ ስሰራ ያያችሁትን ስሩ።

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ በሙሉ ልባችሁ አላማ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ባለማሰመሰልና ያለግብዝነት፣ ነገር ግን በእውነት ፍላጎት፣ ለኃጢአታችሁ ንሰሀ በመግባት፣ በጥምቀት የክርስቶስን ስም ለአራሳችሁ መውሰዳችሁን ለእብ በመመስከር ወልድን ብትከተሉ—አዎን፣ እንደቃሉ ጌታችሁንና አዳኞችሁን ወደ ውኃው ብትከተሉ፣ እነሆ፣ ከዚያም መንፈስ ቅዱስን ትቀበላላችሁ፤ አዎን፣ የእሳትና የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ጥምቀት ይመጣል፤ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ በመላዕክት ልሳን መናገርና ለእስራኤል ቅዱስም በምስጋና መጮህ ትችላላችሁ።

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ የወልድ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል ወደ እኔ መጣ፣ ለኃጢአታችሁ ንሰሀ ከገባችሁና፣ በውኃ በመጠመቅ ትዕዛዛቴን ለመጠበቅ ፈቃደኛ እንደሆናችሁ ለእብ ከመስከራችሁ፣ እና የእሳትንና የመንፈስ ቅዱስን ጥምቀት በመቀበላችሁ፣ እናም በእዲስ ልሳን፣ አዎን፣ እንዲያውም በመላዕክት ልሳንም ለመናገር ከቻላችሁ በኋላ፣ ከዚህም በኋላ የምትክዱኝ ከሆነ፣ ፈፀሞ ባታውቁኝ ምንኛ ይሻላችሁ ነበር።

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

፲፭ እናም ከእብ እንዲህ የሚል ድምፅ ሰማሁ፡ አዎን፣ የተወደደው ልጄ ቃላት እውነትና የታመኑ ናቸው። እስከመጨረሻው የሚፀና እርሱ ይድናል።

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ የህያው እግዚአብሔርን ልጅ ምሳሌን በመከተል ሰው እስከመጨረሻው የማይፀና ከሆነ፣ መዳን እንደማይችል በዚህ አውቃለሁ።

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

፲፯ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታችሁና አዳኞችሁ ሲያደርግ እንዳየሁ የነገርኳችሁን ነገሮች አድርጉ፤ መግቢያችሁን ታውቁት ዘንድ፣ ለዚህም ነው እነዚህን ነገሮች የታዩኝ። የምትገቡበትም በር ንስህና የውኃ ጥምቀት ነው፤ እና ከእዚያም የኃጢአታችሁ ስርየት በእሳትና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ይመጣሉ።

፲፰ እና ከእዚያም እናንተ ወደ ዘለዓለማዊው ህይወት በሚመራው በዚህ በቀጭኑና ጠባቡ ጎዳና ላይ ናችሁ፤ እምን፣ በበሩ ገብታችኋል፤ በአብና በወልድ ትዕዛዛት መሰረትም አድርጋችኋል፤ እናም በትክክለኛው መንገድ ከገባችሁ ትቀበላላችሁ ያለውን የተሰፋውንም ቃል በመፈፀም፣ ስለአብና ስለወልድ የሚመሰክረውን መንፈስ ቅዱስ ተቀብላችኋል።

፲፱ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ በጠባቡና በቀጭኑ ጎዳና ከገባችሁ በኋላ፣ ሁሉ ተደርጓልን? ብዬ አጠይቃችኋለሁ። እነሆ፣ አይደለም፣ አላችኋለሁ፤ በክርስቶስ ቃል በማይናወጥ እምነት ለማዳን ኃያል በሆነው መልካም ስራ ሙሉ በሙሉ በመተማመን ባይሆን ኖሮ እስከዚህ እትመጡም ነበር።

፳ ስለሆነም ፍጹም የሆነ የተሰፋ ብርሃን፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርና የሰዎች ሁሉ ፍቅር እየኖራችሁ በክርስቶስ ባላችሁ ፅኑነት መቀጠል አለባችሁ። ስለሆነም አብም፣ የክርስቶስን ቃል በመመገብ፣ እናም እስከመጨረሻው በመፅናት የምትቀጥሉ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ አብ እንዲህ ይላል፣ የዘለዓለም ህይወት ይኖራችኋል።

፳፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ መንገዱ ይህ ነው፤ ሰው በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት መዳን የሚችልበት ከሰማይ በታች የተሰጠ ሌላ ምንም መንገድም ሆነ ሰም የለምና። እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ይህ የክርስቶስ ትምህርትና፣ መጨረሻ የሌለው አንድ አምላክ፣ የአብ፣ የወልድና፣ የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ብቸኛውና እውነተኛው ትምህርት ነው። አሜን።

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

፪ ኔፊ ፺፪

2 Nephi 32

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እናንተ በጎዳናው ከገባችሁ በኋላ ምን ማድረግ እንደሚገባችሁ በመጠኑ በልባችሁ እንደምታሰላሰሉ እገምታለሁ። ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ ስለምን እነዚህን ነገሮች በልባችሁ ታሰላሰላላችሁ?

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

፪ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ከተቀበላችሁ በኋላ በመላዕክት ልሳን መናገር እንደምትችሉ የተናገርኳችሁን አታስታውሱም? እናም አሁን፣ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ካልሆነ በመላዕክት ልሳን መናገር እንዴት ትችላላችሁ?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

፫ መላዕክት በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ይናገራሉ፤ ስለዚህ፣ የክርስቶስን ቃል ይናገራሉ። ስለሆነም፣ የክርስቶስን ቃል ተመገቡ እላችኋለሁ፤ እነሆ የክርስቶስ ቃል ማድረግ ያለባችሁን ነገሮች በሙሉ ይነግራችኋልና።

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

፬ ስለሆነም፣ አሁን እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገርኩ በኋላ፣ መረዳት ካልቻላችሁ፣ ይህም ስላልጠየቃችሁ፣ ወይም ስላላንኳኳችሁ ነው፤ ስለሆነም፣ ወደ ብርሃኑ አልመጣችሁም፣ ነገር ግን በጨለማው ትጠፋላችሁ።

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

፭ እነሆም፣ በድጋሚ እላችኋለሁ በመንገዱ የምትገቡ፣ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስን የምትቀበሉ ከሆነ፣ ማድረግ ያለባችሁን ነገሮች ሁሉ ያሳያችኋል።

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

፮ እነሆ፣ ይህ የክርስቶስ ትምህርት ነው፣ እናም ለእናንተ በሰጋ እራሱን እስከሚገልፅ ድረስ ሌላ ትምህርት አይሰጥም። እናም እርሱ ራሱን በሰጋ ለእናንተ በሚገልፅበት ጊዜ፣ የተናገራችሁን ነገሮች በትጋት ታደርጋላችሁ።

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

፯ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ፣ ብዙ ማለት አልችልም፤ መንፈስ እንዳልናገር አደረገኝ፣ እናም በስዎች ባለማመን፣ ክፋትና፣ ባለማወቅ፣ እንዲሁም አንገተ ደንዳናነት የተነሳ አዘናለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እውቀትን አልፈለጉም፣ ወይም ታላቁን እውቀት በግልፅ፣ እንዲሁም ቃል መግለጽ እስከሚቻልበት ያህል፣ በተሰጣቸውም ጊዜ አልተረዱምና።

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

፰ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ አሁንም በልባችሁ እንደምታሰላሰሉ አስተውላለሁ፤ እናም ይህን ነገር በሚመለከት መናገር ስላለብኝ ያሳዝነኛል። ስዎችን እንዲጸልዩ የሚያስተምረውን መንፈስ ካዳመጣችሁት መጸለይ እንዳለባችሁ ታውቃላችሁ፤ እርኩስ መንፈስ ስዎችን ጸሎት አያስተምርምና፣ ነገር ግን መጸለይ እንደሌለባቸው ያስተምራቸዋል።

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

፱

ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሳትታክቱ ዘወትር መጸለይ
እንዳለባችሁ፤ በመጀመሪያ ወደ አብ በክርስቶስ ስም
ካልጸለያችሁ ምንም ነገር ለጌታ ማከናወን
እንደማይገባችሁ፣ እርሱም ስራችሁን ቅዱስ
እንደሚያደርግላችሁ፣ ስራችሁም ለነፍሳችሁ ደህንነት
እንደሚሆን እነግራችኋለሁ።

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray al-
ways, and not faint; that ye must not perform any
thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall
pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he
will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy
performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

፪ ኔፊ ፺፫

2 Nephi 33

፩ እናም አሁን እኔ ኔፊ፣ በህዝቤ መካከል የተነገሩትን ትምህርቶች በሙሉ መፃፍ አልችልም፤ እንደመናገሪ አይነት በፅህፈት ጎበዝ አይደለሁም፤ ምክንያቱም ሰው በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ሲናገር የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ነው ወደ ሰዎች ልጆች ልብ የሚያደርስው።

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በቅዱስ መንፈስ ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጥረው በእነርሱ ውስጥ ቦታ የሌላቸው ብዙዎች አሉ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ የፃፉትንና ጠቃሚ አይደለም ብለው የገመቱአቸውን ብዙ ነገሮች ይጥላሉ።

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

፫ ነገር ግን እኔ ኔፊ፣ መፃፍ ያለብኝን ፅፌአለሁ፣ እና ይህም በልዩ ለህዝቤ ታላቅ ዋጋ አለው ብዬ የምገምተው ነው። በእነርሱ የተነሳ ያለማቋረጥም በቀን አፀልያለሁ፣ እናም በሌሊት እምባዬ ትራሴን ያረጥባል፤ ወደ ጌታም በእምነት እጮሀለሁ፣ ጩኸቴንም እንደሚሰማ አውቃለሁ።

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

፬ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ፀሎቴን ለህዝቤ ጥቅም እንደሚቀድሰው አውቃለሁ። እናም በድካም የፃፍኳቸው ቃላትም በእነርሱ ዘንድ ብርቱ ይሆናሉ፤ መልካምም ያደርጉ ዘንድ ያሳምናቸዋልና፤ ስለአባቶቻቸውም ያሳውቃቸዋል፤ ስለክርስቶስም ይናገራል፤ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት በሆነው በእርሱ እንዲያምኑና፣ እስከመጨረሻውም እንዲፀኑ ያሳምናቸዋል።

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

፭ እናም በእውነት በግልፅነት መሰረት፣ ስለኃጢአት በፅኑ በመቃወም ይናገራል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ከዲያብሎስ መንፈስ ካልሆነ በቀር እኔ በፃፍኩት ቃላት የሚናደድ ማንም ሰው አይኖርም።

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

፮ በግልፅነት እደስታለሁ፤ በእውነት እደስታለሁ፣ በእኔ አየሱስ እደስታለሁ፣ ነፍሴን ከሲኦል አድኗታልና።

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

፯ ለህዝቤ ልግሰና፣ እናም በፍርድ ወንበር ብዙ እንከን የለሽ ነፍሳት እንደማገኝ በክርስቶስ ታላቅ እምነት አለኝ።

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

፰ ለአይሁድ ልግሰና አለኝ—አይሁድ አላለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እኔ የመጣሁበትን ዘር ማለቴ ነው።

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

፱ ለአህዛብም ደግሞ ልግሰና አለኝ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በክርስቶስ ካልታረቁ፣ እናም በጠባቡ በር ካልገቡ፣ እናም ወደ ህይወት በሚያመራው በቀጭኑ ጎዳና ካልተራመዱ፣ እናም እስከሙከራ ቀናቸውም መጨረሻ ድረስ በጎዳናው ጉዞአቸውን ካልቀጠሉ፣ በማናቸውም ላይ ተስፋ አላደርግም።

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

፲ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እናም ደግሞ አይሁድና፣ በምድር ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት አድምጡም፣ በክርስቶስም እመኑ፤ እንዲሁም በእነዚህ ቃላት የማታምኑ ከሆነ በክርስቶስ እመኑ። እናም በክርስቶስ የምታምኑ ከሆነ በእነዚህ ቃላት ታምናላችሁ፣ እነርሱ የክርስቶስ ቃላት ናቸውና፣ እነርሱንም ለእኔ ሰጠኝ፤ እናም ሰዎች ሁሉ መልካም እንዲሰሩ ያስተምራሉ።

፲፩ እናም የክርስቶስ ቃላት ካልሆኑም ፍረዱ— በመጨረሻው ቀን የእርሱ ቃል መሆናቸውን ክርስቶስ በኃይልና በታላቅ ክብር ያሳያችኋል፤ እናም እኔና እናንተ በፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ለፊት እንቆማለን፤ እናም ምንም እንኳን ደካማ ብሆንም እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድፀፍ በእርሱ እንደታዘዘኩ ታውቃላችሁ።

፲፪ እናም ሁላችንም እንኳን ባንሆን ብዙዎቻችን በታላቁና በመጨረሻው ቀን በመንግሥቱ እንድን ዘንድ በክርስቶስ ስም ለአብ እፀልያለሁ።

፲፫ እናም አሁን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሁሉ የሆናችሁ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እናም በምድር ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ፣ ከመሬት እንደሚጮህ ድምፅ እናገራችኋለሁ፣ ያ ታላቁ ቀን እስኪመጣ መልካም ይሁንላችሁ።

፲፬ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ቸርነት የማትካፈሉ፣ እናም የአይሁዶችንም ቃላት፣ ደግሞም የእኔን ቃላት፣ እንዲሁም ከእግዚአብሔር በግ አፍ የሚወጣውን ቃል የማታከብሩ፣ እነሆ፣ ዘለዓለማዊ ሰንብት እላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህ ቃላት በመጨረሻው ቀን ይኮንኗችኋልና።

፲፭ በምድር ያተምሁት፣ በፍርድ ወንበር በእናንተ ላይ ይቀርባል፤ ጌታ እንዲህ አዘኛልና፣ መታዘዝ አለብኝ። አሜን።

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

መፅሐፈ ያዕቆብ የኔሬ ወንድም

ለወንድሞቹ የሰበካቸው ቃላት። እርሱ የክርስቶስን ትምህርት ለማጥፋት የተመኘውን ሰው አሳፈረው። የኔሬን ህዝብ ታሪክ በተመለከተ ጥቂት ቃላት።

ያዕቆብ ፩

፩ እነሆም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ ሃምሳ አምስት ዓመታት አለፉ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ኔሬ፤ ለእኔ ለያዕቆብ እነዚህ ነገሮች የተፃፉበትን ትንሹን ሰሌዳ በተመለከተ ትዕዛዝን ሰጠኝ።

፪ እናም እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ በጣም የከበሩ ናቸው ብዬ የማሰባቸውን ጥቂት ነገሮች በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ እንድትጻፍ፤ የኔሬ ህዝብ ተብለው ስለሚጠሩት ታሪክም ባጭሩ ካልሆነ በስተቀር መፃፍ እንደሌለብኝም ትዕዛዝን ሰጠኝ።

፫ እርሱም የህዝቡን ታሪክ በሌላኛው የእርሱ ሰሌዳ ላይ መፃፍ እንዳለበት፣ እና እኔ እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች ማቆየትና ለዘሮቹም፣ ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ ማስተላለፍ እንዳለብኝ ተናግሯል።

፬ እናም ቅዱስ የሆነ ሰበካ፣ ወይም ታላቅ የሆነ ራዕይ፣ ወይም ትንቢት፣ ካለ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ ዋና ዋናዎቹን መቅረፅ፣ እስከተቻለም ድረስ ለክርስቶስ እና ለህዝባችን ስል መጻፍ አለብኝ።

፭ በእምነትና በታላቅ ጭንቀት የተነሳ ህዝባችንን በተመለከተ፣ ምን ነገሮች በእነርሱ ላይ መሆን እንዳለባቸው በእውነት ለእኛ ተገልጿልናል።

፮ እናም ደግሞ እኛ ብዙ ራዕይና ብዙ የትንቢት መንፈስ ነበረን፣ ስለዚህ ስለክርስቶስ እና ስለሚመጣው መንግሥቱም እናውቅ ነበር።

፯ ስለሆነም የእስራኤል ልጆች በምድረበዳው በነበሩበት ወቅት በፈተናው ጊዜ በእመጽ እንደነበሩ ወደ እረፍቱ እንዳይገቡ በማንኛውም መንገድ ቢሆን በቁጣው እንዳይምል፣ ህዝቦቻችን ወደ እረፍቱም ይገቡ ዘንድ ወደ ክርስቶስ እንዲመጡ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን በጎነት እንዲካፈሉ እናሳምናቸው ዘንድ በትጋት ሠራን።

The Book of Jacob the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He foundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

፳ ስለዚህ፣ ሰዎች ሁሉ በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ለቆጣ የሚቀሰቅሱትን አመፅ እንዲያምፁ፣ ነገር ግን ሰዎች ሁሉ በክርስቶስ እንዲያምኑና፣ ሞቱን ይገነዘቡ ዘንድ፣ እናም የመስቀሉን ስቃይና የዓለምን መሳለቅ ይቀበሉ ዘንድ ለማሳመን እንድንችል የእግዚአብሔርን እርዳታ እንፈልጋለን፤ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ የወንድሜ ኔፊን ትዕዛዛት ለመፈፀም ኃላፊነቱን ወሰድኩ።

፳፱ እንግዲህ ኔፊ መሸምገል ጀመረ፣ እናም በቅርቡ እንደሚሞት ተገነዘበ፤ ስለዚህ፣ አንድ ሰው አሁን በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉሥና መሪ እንዲሆን፣ በመሣፍንቱ አገዛዝ መሰረት ቀባው።

፲ እህቡ ኔፊን እጅግ በመውደዱ፣ እርሱም ለእነርሱ ታላቅ ጠባቂ በመሆኑ፣ የላባንንም ጎራዴ ለእነርሱ ለመከላከያ በመጠቀሙ፣ እናም ለደህንነታቸው በጊዜው ሁሉ በመስራቱ—

፲፩ ስለሆነም፣ ህዝቡ ስሙን በማሰታወስ ለመቆየት ፈለጉ። እናም በነገስታት አገዛዝ መሠረት በእርሱ ሞትክ የሚነግሱት ሁሉ ሁለተኛው ኔፊ፣ ሶስተኛው ኔፊና፣ ወዘተ ተብለው በህዝቡ ተሰየሙ፤ እናም ስማቸው ምንም ቢሆን፣ በህዝቡ እንዲህም ተሰየሙ።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ኔፊ ሞተ።

፲፫ አሁን ላማናውያን ያልነበሩት ህዝቦች ኔፋውያን ነበሩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ኔፋውያን፣ ያዕቆባውያን፣ ዮሴፋውያን፣ ዘራማውያን፣ ላማናውያን፣ ልሙኤላውያን እና እስማኤላውያን ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር።

፲፬ ነገር ግን፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ ከእንግዲህ በኋላ እነርሱን በዚህ ስም አልለያቸውም፣ ነገር ግን የኔፊን ህዝቦች ለማጥፋት የሞከሩትን፣ ላማናውያን፣ ብዬ አጠራቸዋለሁ፣ እናም በነገስት አገዛዝ መሰረት፣ ለኔፊ ወዳጅ የሆኑትን፣ ኔፋውያን፣ ወይም የኔፊ ህዝብ፣ ብዬ አጠራቸዋለሁ።

፲፭ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝብ፣ በሁለተኛው ንጉስ የንግሥ ዘመን ልባቸውን ማደንደን ጀመሩ፣ እናም በጥቂቱ እራሳቸውን እንደ ጥንቱ ዳዊት እንዲሁም እንደ ልጁ ስለሞን ብዙ ሚስቶችና ዕቁባቶችን በማድረግ በክፉ ልማድ የእራሳቸውን ፍላጎት ማሟላት ጀመሩ።

፲፮ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እነርሱ ብዙ ወርቅና ብር መፈለግ ጀመሩ፣ እናም በኩራት እራሳቸውን ከፍ ማድረግ ጀመሩ።

፲፯ ስለዚህ፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ መጀመሪያ መልእክቴን ከጌታ ካገኘሁ በኋላ በቤተመቅደስ ውስጥ ሳስተምራቸው እነዚህን ቃላት ሰጠኋቸው።

፲፰ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ እናም ወንድሜ ዮሴፍ፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ ካህናትና መምህራን እንድንሆን በኔፊ እጅ ተቀብተን ነበር።

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

እናም ኃላፊነቱንም በመውሰድ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በሙሉ ትጋት ካላሰተማርናቸው የህዝቡን ኃጢአት በራሳችን ላይ በመቀበል ኃላፊነታችንን ለጌታ አጎላን፤ ስለሆነም፣ ደማቸው ልብሳችንን እንዳይበክል ባለን ኃይል ስራን፤ አለበለዚያ ደማቸው ልብሳችንን ይበክላልና፣ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀን እንከን የለሽ ሆነን አንገኝም።

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

ያዕቆብ ፪

፩ የኔሬ ወንድም ያዕቆብ፣ ኔሬ ከሞተ በኋላ ለኔሬ ህዝብ የተናገራቸው ቃላት—

፪ እሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ እግዚአብሔር በሰጠኝ ሀላፊነት መሰረት፣ ሀላፊነቴን በጥሞና ለመወጣት፣ እናም ኃጢአታችሁንም ከመኅናፀፊያዬ አራግፍ ዘንድ፣ የእግዚአብሔርንም ቃል ለእናንተ አውጅ ዘንድ በዚህ ቀን ወደ ቤተ መቅደስ መጣሁ።

፫ እናም እስከዚህ ጊዜ ድረስ በተጠራሁበት ኃላፊነት ትጉህ እንደነበርኩ እናንተም ታውቃላችሁ፤ ነገር ግን ባሁኑ ጊዜ ከዚህ ቀደም ከነበረኝ ይልቅ ለነፍሳችሁ ደህንነት ከፍተኛ ስሜትና ሰጋት ተከፍቼአለሁ።

፬ እነሆም፣ እስከዚህ ጊዜ ድረስ እኔ በሰጠኋችሁ፣ በጌታ ቃል ታዛዦች ነበራችሁ።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔን አድምጡኝ፣ እናም ከሁሉም በላይ ሀይለኛ በሆነው የሰማይና የምድር ፈጣሪ ድጋፍ ሀሳባችንን በተመለከተ ልናገራችሁ እንደምችል፣ እንዴትስ ኃጢአትን መስራት እንደጀመራችሁ፣ ለእኔም በጣም የረከሰ እንደሆነ፣ አዎን፣ ለእግዚአብሔርም የረከሰ እንደሆነ እውቁ።

፮ አዎን፣ ነፍሴን ያሳዘናል እናም የልባችሁን ክፋት በተመለከተ መመስከር ስላለብኝ፣ በፈጣሪዬ ፊት በእፍረት እንድሸማቀቅ ያደርገኛል።

፯ እናም ደግሞ እናንተን በተመለከተ፣ የብዙዎቼም ስሜት በእግዚአብሔር ፊት፣ ለእግዚአብሔርም አስደሳች በሆኑት፣ እጅግ ለስላሳና ንፁህ፣ በቀላሉ ሊጎዱ በሚችሉ፣ በሚሰቶቻችሁ እናም በልጆቻችሁ ፊት በኃይል መናገር ስላለብኝ አዘናለሁ፤

፰ እናም እነርሱ አስደሳቹን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል፣ አዎን፣ የቆሰለውን ነፍስ የሚፈውሰው ቃል ለመስማት ወደዚህ እንዲመጡ እገምታለሁ።

፱ ስለሆነም፣ እንደወንጀላችሁ እናንተን ለመገስፅ፣ የቆሰሉትን ቁስላቸው ለመዳንና ለመፈወስ ሳይሆን እንዲሰፋ ለማድረግ፣ እናም ያልቆሰሉት ደግሞ አስደሳቹን የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ከመጋበዝ ይልቅ ነፍሳቸውን ለመውጋት እናም በቀላሉ ሊጎዱ የሚችሉ አዕምሮአቸውን ለማቆሰል ከእግዚአብሔር በተቀበልሁት ጥብቅ ትዕዛዝ ምክንያትም በመገደደ ነፍሴን ተጨቁኗል።

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

፲ ገር ግን ሰራው ታላቅ ቢሆንም፣ በእግዚአብሔር ጥብቅ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት ማድረግ፣ እናም በልበ ገፁህና፣ በተሰበረ ልብ ፊት፣ እናም ሁሉን በሚገዛ አምላክ በሚቃኘው ዐይን ፊት ስለበደላችሁና ስለእርኩስታችሁ መናገር አለብኝ።

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

፲፩ ስለሆነም፣ እንደእግዚአብሔር ቃል ግልፅነት እውነቱን ልነግራችሁ ይገባል። እነሆም ጌታን ሰጠይቅ፣ ቃሉ እንዲህ ሲል ወደ እኔ መጣ፣ ያዕቆብ ነገ ወደ ቤተ መቅደሱ ሂድ፣ እናም ለዚህ ህዝብ የምሰጥህን ቃል አውጅ።

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

፲፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ለእናንተ የማውጀው ቃል ይህ ነው፣ ብዙዎቻችሁ ወርቅና፣ ብር፣ እንዲሁም ለእናንተና ለዘርቻችሁ የቃል ኪዳን ምድር በሆነችው በዚህች ምድር ውስጥ በይበልጥ የያዘችውን ሁሉንም ዓይነት የከበረ ብረት መፈለግ ጀምራችኋል።

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

፲፫ እናም የአምላክ እጅ በሰፊው ባርኳችኋል፣ ብዙ ሀብትንም አግኝታችኋል፤ እንዳንደቻችሁም ከወንድሞቻችሁ በበለጠ ስለተቀበላችሁ በልባችሁ ኩራት ከፍ ብላችኋል፣ እናም በለበሳችሁትም ልብስ ውድነት እንገታችሁን አደንድናችኋል፣ ራሳችሁንም ከፍ አድርጋችኋል፣ እናም ራሳችሁን ከወንድሞቻችሁ የተሻላችሁ ስለሚመስላችሁ እነርሱን አሳዳችኋቸዋል።

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

፲፬ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እግዚአብሔር በዚህ ገር ከበደል ነጻ ያደርገናል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እነሆ፣ አይሆንም እላችኋለሁ። ነገር ግን እርሱ ይፈርድባችኋል፣ እናም እናንተ በእነዚህ ነገሮች የምትቀጥሉ ከሆነ ፍርዱ በፍጥነት ይመጣባችኋል።

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

፲፭ አቤቱ መውጋት እንደሚችል፣ እናም በቅፅበት ዐይኑ ቅኝት ወደ አፈር ሊመታችሁ እንደሚችል ቢያሳያችሁ!

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

፲፮ አቤቱ ከክፋትና ከእርኩስት ነፃ ቢያደርጋችሁ። እናም፣ አቤቱ የትዕዛዙን ቃል ብትሰሙና፣ ይህ የልባችሁ ክፋት ነፍሳችሁን እንዲያጠፋ ባትፈቅዱ!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

፲፯ ወንድሞቻችሁ እንደ እራሳችሁ አሰብላቸው፣ እናም እነርሱም ልክ እንደ እናንተ ሀብታም ይሆኑ ዘንድ፣ ከሁሉም ጋር ተገናኚ እናም በንብረታችሁ ነፃ ሁኑ።

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

፲፰ ነገር ግን ሀብትን ከመፈለጋችሁ በፊት፣ የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት ፈልጉ።

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

፲፱ እናም በክርስቶስ ተሰፋን ካገኛችሁ በኋላ፣ የምትፈልጉኝቸው ከሆነ ሀብትን ታገኛላችሁ፤ እነዚህንም መልካም ለማድረግ ዓላማ—የተራቆቹትን ለማልበስ፣ የተራቡትንም ለመመገብ፣ ምርኮኞችንም ነፃ ለማውጣት፣ እናም ለታመሙና ለተሰቃዩ ፋታን ለመሰጠት ትፈልጋችኋል።

፳ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ኩራትን በሚመለከት ተናግረኝ። እናም እግዚአብሔር በሰጣችሁ ነገሮች የተነሳ በልባችሁ ኩራት ጎረቤቶቻችሁን ያስቃያችሁ፣ እንዲሁም ያሳደዳችሁ ስለዚህ ምን ትላላችሁ?

፳፩ እንዲህ አይነት ነገሮች ስጋን ሁሉ ለፈጠረው የረከሱ ናቸው ብላችሁ አታሰቡም? እናም አንዱ ፍጡር እንደሌላው በፊቱ የከበረ ነው። ሁሉም ስጋም ከአፈር ነው፤ እናም ትዕዛዛቱን ይጠብቁና እርሱን ለዘለዓለም ያከብሩት ዘንድ ለተመሳሳይ ዓላማ ፈጥሯችኋል።

፳፪ እናም አሁን ይህን ኩራት በተመለከተ ለእናንተ ንግግሪን አቆማለሁ። እናም የከፋ ወንጀልን በተመለከተ ለእናንተ መናገር ባይኖርብኝ፣ ልቤ በእናንተ እጅግ ትደሰት ነበር።

፳፫ ነገር ግን በከፋው ወንጀላችሁ የተነሳ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ከብድኛል። እነሆም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል—ይህ ህዝብ በክፋት ቀስ በቀስ ማደግ ይጀምራል፤ ቅዱሳት መጻፍቶችንም አይረዱም፣ ምክንያቱም የዳዊትንና ልጁ ስለሞገን በተመለከተ በተፃፉት ነገሮች የተነሳ ዝሙትን በመፈፀማቸው ለአራሳቸው ምክንያትን ይፈልጋሉ።

፳፬ እነሆ፣ ዳዊትና ስለሞን በእውነት ብዙ ሚስቶችና ዕቁባቶች ነበሩአቸው፣ ይህም በፊቱ የረከሰ ነበር ይላል ጌታ።

፳፭ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ ይህን ህዝብ ለራሴ ፃድቅ ቅርንጫፍ ከኖሴፍ የወገብ ፍሬ አስነሳ ዘንድ በጋያል ክንዴ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር አውጥቼኋለሁ።

፳፮ ስለሆነም፣ እኔ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ይህ ህዝብ እንደ ጥንቶቹ እንዲያደርግ አይፈቅድም።

፳፯ ስለሆነም፣ ወንድሞቼ እኔን ሰሙኝ፣ እናም የጌታንም ቃል አድምጡ—በመካከላችሁ ከአንድ ሚስት በቀር ሌላ አይኑረው፤ እና ዕቁባቶች ምንም አይኑረው።

፳፰ እኔ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በሴቶች ንፅህና እደስታለሁና። እናም ማመንዘር በእኔ ፊት የረከሰ ነው፤ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

፳፱ ስለሆነም፣ ይህ ህዝብ ትዕዛዛቱን ይጠብቃል፣ ወይም ምድሪቱ በእነርሱ የተነሳ የተረገመች ትሁን ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

፴ እኔ ለራሴ ዘርን ለማቆም ከፈለኩኝ፣ ህዝቤን አዛለሁ፤ አለበለዚያ እነርሱ እነዚህን ነገሮች ያዳምጣሉ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

፴፩ እነሆ እኔ ጌታ በኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ውስጥ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በህዝቤ ምድር ሁሉ፣ በባሎቻቸው ክፋትና እርኩስት የተነሳ የህዝቤን ሴት ልጆች ሀዘንን ተመልክቻለሁ፣ እናም ልቅሶአቸውን ሰምቻለሁ።

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

፴፪ እናም የሰራዊት ጌታ፣ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር እንዲወጡ ያደረኩአቸው፣ የዚህ ህዝብ መልካም ሴት ልጆች ጨኸት ወደ እኔ በህዝቤ ወንዶች ላይ ይመጣ ዘንድ አልፈቅድም ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

፴፫ በከባድ እርግማን፣ እንዲሁም ለጥፋታቸውም፣ ካልጎበኝኋቸው በቀር የህዝቤ ሴት ልጆች በሩህሩህነታቸው የተነሳ በምርኮ አይወሰዱም፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ዝሙትን እንደጥንቶቹ አይፈፀሙም ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

፴፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህ ትዕዛዛት ለአባታችን ሌሂ ተሰጥተውት እንደነበር ታውቃላችሁ፤ ስለሆነም በፊትም ታውቋቸዋላችሁ፤ እናም ማድረግ የማይገባችሁን እነዚህን ነገሮች በማድረጋችሁ ለታላቅ እርግማን መጥታችኋል።

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

፴፭ እነሆ፣ ከወንድሞቻችን ከላማናውያን የበለጠ በደል ስርታችኋል። በእነርሱም ፊት መጥፎ ምሳሌዎች በመሆናችሁ፣ የሩህሩህ ሚስቶቻችሁን ልብም ሰብራችኋል፣ የልጆቻችሁንም መተማመን አጥታችኋል፤ እናም በልባቸው ጥልቅ ሀዘን በእናንተ ላይ ወደ እግዚአብሔር መጥተዋል። እናም በእናንተ ላይ በሚወርደው በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ጥብቅነት የተነሳ፣ ብዙ ልቦች በሀዘን ቆሰሉ በጥልቅ ቁስልም ተበሱ።

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

ያዕቆብ ፫

፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ በልባችሁ ንፁህ ለሆናችሁ እናገራለሁ። በእዕምሮ ፅኑነት ወደ እግዚአብሔር ተመልከቱ፣ በታላቅ እምነትም ወደእርሱ ጸልዩ፣ እርሱም በመከራችሁ ያፀናናችኋል፣ እናም ምክንያታችሁን ይማግጥናል፣ ጥፋታችሁንም ለሚመኙ ፍርድን ይልካል።

፪ እቤቱ በልባችሁ ንፁህ የሆናችሁ ሁሉ፣ ራሳችሁን አቅኑና አስደሳቹን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ተቀበሉ፣ እናም ፍቅሩንም ተቋደሱ፤ እዕምሮአችሁ ፅኑ ከሆነ፣ ይህን ለዘለአለም ለማድረግ ትችላላችሁና።

፫ ነገር ግን፣ እናንተ በልባችሁ ንፁህ ያልሆናችሁ በዚህ ቀን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት የቆሸሻችሁ ወዮ፣ ወዮላችሁ፤ ንስሀ ካልገባችሁ ምድሪቱ በእናንተ ምክንያት የተረገመች ትሆናለችና፤ እናም ለማናውያን እንደ እናንተ ባይቆሸሹም፣ ይሁን እንጂ በከባድ እርግጥን ተረግመዋል፣ እስከምትጠፉም እንደገና ይገደሉኝናል።

፬ እናም እናንተ ንስሀ ካልገባችሁ፣ የርስት ምድራችሁን እነርሱ የሚወርሱበት ጊዜ በፍጥነት ይመጣል፣ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ያደቃንን ከመካከላችሁ ያወጣል።

፭ እነሆ፣ የእናንተ ወንድሞች፣ በቆሻሻነታቸውና በቆዳቸው ላይ በመጣው እርግጥን የተነሳ የጠላቶቻቸው ለማናውያን፣ ከእናንተ የበለጠ ያደቃን ናቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ እንደ ሚስት ብቻ እንዲኖራቸው እናም ምንም ዕቁባት እንዳይኖራቸው፣ እናም በመካከላቸውም ዝሙት እንዳይፈጸም ዘንድ ለአባታችን የተሰጠውን የጌታን ትዕዛዝ አልረሱምና።

፮ እናም አሁን፣ ይህንን ትዕዛዝ ለመጠበቅ ይጥራሉ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ይህንን ትዕዛዝ ለመጠበቅ ጥረት የተነሳ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነርሱን አያጠፋም፣ ነገር ግን ለእነርሱ መሀሪ ይሆናል፤ እናም እንድት ቀን የተባረኩ ህዝቦች ይሆናሉ።

፯ እነሆ፣ ባሎቻቸው ሚስቶቻቸውን ይወዳሉ፣ ሚስቶቻቸውም ባሎቻቸውን ይወዳሉ፤ እናም ባሎቻቸውና ሚስቶቻቸው ልጆቻቸውን ይወዳሉ፤ እንዲሁም የእነርሱ አለማመንና ወደ እናንተ ያላቸው ጥላቻ በአባቶቻቸው ክፋት የተነሳ ነው፤ ስለሆነም፣ በታላቁ ፈጣሪያችሁ አመለካከት እናንተ ምን ያህል ከእነርሱ የተሻላችሁ ናችሁ?

፰ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ከእነርሱ ጋር በእግዚአብሔር ዙፋን ፊት ስትቀርቡ እናንተ ለኃጢአታችሁ ንስሀ ካልገባችሁ የእነርሱ ቆዳ ከእናንተ የበለጠ ይነጣል በማለት እፈራለሁ።

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

፱ ስለሆነም፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል የሆነ ትዕዛዝ እስጣችኋለሁ፣ ቆዳቸው በመጥቆሩ ምክንያት ከእንግዲህ አትሰድቧቸውም፤ በመቆሸሻቸውም ምክንያት አትሰድቧቸውም፤ ነገር ግን የራሳችሁን መቆሸሽ ታስታውሳላችሁ፣ እናም የእነርሱ መቆሸሽ የመጣው በአባቶቻቸው የተነሳ መሆኑን አስታውሱ።

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

፲ ስለሆነም፣ በፊታቸው ባስቀመጣችሁት ምሳሌም የተነሳ የልጆቻችሁን ልብ እንዴት እንዳሳዘናችሁ ታስታውሳላችሁ፤ እናም ደግሞ በመቆሸሻችሁ የተነሳ፣ ልጆቻችሁን ወደ ጥፋት ታመጣላችሁ፣ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀን ኃጢአታቸው በራሳችሁ ላይ ይቆላላሉ።

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

፲፩ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ቃሌን አድምጡ፤ የነፍሳችሁን ሰሜት አነቃቁ፤ ከሞት እንቅልፍ ትንቁ ዘንድ ራሳችሁን ነቅንቁ፤ እናም የዲያብሎስ መልዕክተኛ በመሆን የሁለተኛው ሞት ከሆነው አሳትና ዲን ራሳችሁን እንዳትጥሉ ከሲኦል ህመም ራሳችሁን ፍቱ።

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

፲፪ እናም አሁን እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ የሚያስከትሉትን ክፉ ነገሮች በመንገር ከዝሙትና ከእመንዝራነት፣ እንዲሁም ከማንኛውም አይነት ኃጢአት እነርሱን በማስጠንቀቅ ለኔሬ ህዝብ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገርኳቸው።

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

፲፫ እናም አሁን ቁጥራቸው ታላቅ እየሆኑ የመጡት የዚህ ህዝብ ነገር አንድ መቶኛ ክፍል ድርጊቶችም በእነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ሊፃፍ አይቻልም፤ ነገር ግን አብዛኛው ድርጊታቸውና፣ ጦርነታቸውና፣ እናም ፀባቸውና፣ እንዲሁም የነገሰታቸውና የነግሰ ታሪክ በትልቁ ስሌዳ ላይ ተፅፏል።

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

፲፬ እነዚህ ስሌዳዎች የያዕቆብ ስሌዳዎች ይባላሉ፣ እናም የተሰሩት በኔሬ እጅ ነው። እናም እነዚህን ቃላት መናገሬን አቆማለሁ።

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

ያዕቆብ ፬

፩ አሁን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ ለህዝቤ በቃሌ ብዙ በማስተማሪ (እናም የእኛን ቃላት በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ ለመቅረፅ ባለው ችግር የተነሳ፣ ከጥቂቶቹ ቃላቴ በስተቀር መፃፍ አልችልም) እናም በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ የሚፃፉት ነገሮች መቅረት እንዳለባቸው እናውቃለን፤

፪ ነገር ግን ከሰሌዳዎቹ ውጪ የፃፍናቸው ምንም አይነት ነገሮች መደምሰስና መጥፋት አለባቸው፤ ነገር ግን በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ ለልጆቻችን፣ እናም ደግሞ ለተወደዱት ወንድሞቻችን፣ እኛን በሚመለከት ወይም አባቶቻቸውን በተመለከተ—በትንሽ ደረጃ እውቀት የሚሰጡትን፣ ጥቂት ቃላት መፃፍ እንችላለን—

፫ አሁን በዚህ ነገር እንደሰታለን፤ እናም የተወደዱት ወንድሞቻችን እናም ልጆቻችን በምስጋና ልብ ይቀበሉት ዘንድ ተስፋ በማድረግ፣ እናም በደስታ እናም ያለማዘን፣ ያለንቀት ስለቀድሞ ወላጆቻቸው ለመማር ይመለከቱአቸው ዘንድ እነዚህን ቃላት በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ ለመቅረፅ በትጋት እንሰራለን።

፬ ስለክርስቶስ ማወቃችንን፣ እናም እርሱ ከመምጣቱ ከብዙ መቶ ዓመታት በፊት በክብሩ ተስፋ እንደነበር ያውቁ ዘንድ፣ ለዚህ ዓላማ እነዚህን ነገሮች ፃፍን፤ እናም የክብሩ ተስፋ የነበረን እኛ ብቻ ሳንሆን ነገር ግን ከእኛ በፊት የነበሩት ቅዱሳን ነቢያት ሁሉ ደግሞ ናቸው።

፭ እነሆ፣ በክርስቶስ እምነዋል እናም አብንም በሰሙ አምልከዋል፣ ደግሞም እኛ አብን በሰሙ እናመልካለን። እናም ለዚህ ዓላማ የሙሴን ህግ እንጠብቃለን፤ ነፍሳችንን ወደእርሱ ያመለክታልና፤ እንዲሁም ከእግዚአብሔርና ከእንደያ ልጁ ጋር አምሳልነት ያለው፣ ለአብርሃም በምድረበዳ ልጁን ይሰህቅን ለመስዋዕት በማቅረብ ለእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ ታዛዥ ሆኖ እንደተቆጠረለት፣ ለዚህም ምክንያት ይህም ለፅድቅ ለእኛ ተቀድሷል።

፮ ስለሆነም፣ እኛ ነቢያትን እንመረምራለን፣ እናም ብዙ ራዕይና የትንቢት መንፈስ አለን፤ እነዚህ ሁሉ ምስክሮች ስላሉንም ተስፋን እናገኛለን፣ እናም እምነታችን የማይናወጥ ሆኖ በእውነት በኢየሱስ ስም ስንገለፅ ያም ዛፋ፣ ወይም ተራራው ወይም የባህሩ ሞገድ ይታዘዝልናል።

፯ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በፀጋው እናም ለሰው ልጆች እርሱን ዝቅ በማድረግ እነዚህን ነገሮች የማድረግ ኃይል እንዳለን እናውቅ ዘንድ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ድክመታችንን ያሳየናል።

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith cometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

፳፯ እነሆ፣ የጌታ ስራ ታላቅና ድንቅ ነው። የእርሱ ሚስጥር ጥልቀት እንዴት የማይመረመር ነው፤ እናም ሰው የእርሱን መንገድ ሁሉ ፈልጎ ለማወቅ የማይቻል ነው። እናም ለእርሱ ካልተገለጸለት በቀር ማንም ሰው የእርሱን መንገድ አያውቅም፤ ስለሆነም፣ ወንድሞች፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ራዕይ አትናቁ።

፳፱ እነሆም፣ ሰው በቃሉ ኃይል ወደ ምድር ፊት መጥቷል፣ ምድርም በቃሉ ኃይል ተፈጥራለች። ስለሆነም፣ እግዚአብሔር መናገር ከቻለና፣ እንዲሁም ዓለም ከተፈጠረ፣ እና እርሱ ሲናገር ሰው ከተፈጠረ፣ አቤቱ ምድርን ወይም በዚህ ፊት ያለው የእጁ ስራ እንደርሱ ፈቃድና ደስታ ማዘዝ አይችልምን?

፲ እለሆነም፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ከእጁ ምክርን ለመቀበል እንጂ ጌታን ለመምከር አትሞክሩ። እነሆም፣ እናንተም በጥበብና፣ በፍርድ፣ እናም በታላቅ ምህረት፣ በሰራው ላይ ሁሉ እንደሚመክር ታውቃላችሁ።

፲፩ ስለሆነም፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞች፣ እናም በክርስቶስ ባለው የትንሳኤ ኃይል መሰረት፣ ትንሳኤን ታገኙ ዘንድ፣ እናም እምነት በማግኘትና እራሱን በሰጋ ከመግለጡ በፊት መልካም የሆነውን የክብሩን ተስፋ በማግኘት ለእግዚአብሔር የክርስቶስ የመጀመሪያው ፍሬ ሆናችሁ ትቀርቡ ዘንድ በእንደያ ልጁ፣ በክርስቶስ የኃጢያት ክፍያ ከእርሱ ታረቁ።

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ስነግራችሁ አትገረሙ፤ እናም የእርሱን ፍጹም እውቀት ለማወቅና፣ የትንሳኤንና የሚመጣው ዓለም እውቀትን ለማግኘት የክርስቶስን የኃጢያት ክፍያ ለምን አትናገሩም?

፲፫ እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ትንቢትን የሚናገር ሰዎች እንዲረዱት ዘንድ ትንቢት ይናገር፤ መንፈስ እውነቱን ይናገራል እንጂ አይሞሽምና። ስለሆነም፣ እርሱ ነገሮች በእርግጥ እንዳሉ፣ እናም ነገሮች በእርግጥ እንደሚሆኑ ይናገራል፤ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ለነፍሳችን ደህንነት በግልፅ ተገልጠውልናል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በእነዚህ ነገሮች እኛ ብቻ ምስክር አይደለንም፤ እግዚአብሔር ደግሞ ለጥንቶቹ ነቢያት ተናግሯቸዋልና።

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አይሁዶች አንገተ ደንዳና ህዝቦች ነበሩ። እናም ግልፁን ቃላት ንቀዋል፣ ነቢያትን ገድለዋልም፣ መረዳት የማይችሉትን ነገሮች ተመኝተዋልም። ስለሆነም፣ በመታወራቸው ምክንያት፣ እውርነቱም የሚመጣው ከሚገባው በላይ በማተኮር ነው፤ እነርሱ ይወድቁ ዘንድ አስፈላጊ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም እግዚአብሔር ግልፁን ከእነርሱ ወሰዷልና፣ እናም ስለፈለጉት የማይረዱትን ብዙ ነገሮች ሰጥቷቸዋል። እናም እነርሱ ስለፈለጉት እግዚአብሔር አድርጎታል፣ ይህም እነርሱ ይሰናከሉበት ዘንድ ነው።

፲፭ እናም አሁን እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ ለመተንበይ በመንፈስ ተመርቻለሁ፤ በአይሁድ መሰናከልም፣ በእርሱም ላይ የሚገነቡትን እንዲሁም የደህንነት መሰረት የሚያገኙበትን አለቱን እንደማይቀበሉ በእኔ ባለው የመንፈስ ስራ ተረድቻለሁ።

፲፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንደ ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍት መሰረት፣ ይህ አይሁዶች የሚገነቡበት አለት፣ ታላቅና የመጨረሻና፣ በብቻ የተረጋገጠ መሰረት ይሆናል።

፲፯ እናም አሁን፣ ወዳጆቼ፣ እርግጠኛውን መሰረት ከካዱ በኋላ፣ የማዕዘን ራስ ይሆን ዘንድ በእርሱ ላይ ለመመስረት እነርሱ እነዚህን እንዴት ማድረግ ይቻላቸዋል?

፲፰ እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ በምንም መንገድ ከመንፈሴ ፅኑነት ከተነቃነቅኩኝ እና ስለእናንተ ባለኝ ጭንቀት ምክንያት ካልተሰናከልኩኝ፣ ይህን ሚስጥር ለእናንተ አገልጥላችኋለሁ።

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

ያዕቆብ ፮

፩ እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እንዲህ ሲል ለእስራኤል ቤት የተናገረውን የነቢዩ ዜና ስን ቃል ማንበባችሁን አታስታውሱም፤

፪ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ አድምጡኝ፣ እናም የእኔ የጌታ ነቢይን ቃል ሰሙ።

፫ እነሆም፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ እኔ እናንተን እንድ ሰው ወሰድ በወይኑ ሰፍራ ከሚንከባከበው፣ ከለማው የወይራ ዛፍ ጋር አመሳሰላችኋለሁ፤ እናም አደገ፣ አርጅቶ መበሰበሰም ጀምረ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በወይኑ ሰፍራ ባለቤቱ ሄደ፣ የወይራው ዛፍ መበሰበሰ እንደ ጀመረ ተመለከተም፤ እናም እንዲህ አለ—ምናልባት ለጋና ለምለም ቅርንጫፎችን ያበቅል ዘንድና፣ እንዳይጠፋም እኔ አመለምለዋለሁ፣ አቆፍረዋለሁ፣ እናም እንከባከበዋለሁ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደቃሉ መለመለው፣ ቆፈረውም፣ ተንከባከበውም።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከብዙ ቀናት በኋላ ትናንሽና ጥቂት ለጋና ለምለም ቅርንጫፎችን ማውጣት ጀመረ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከዋናው ጫፍ ያለው መሞት ጀመረ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ባለቤት ተመለከተው፣ እናም ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው—ይህንን ዛፍ ማጣት ያሳዘነኛል፤ ስለሆነም፣ ሂድና ከየዱር ወይራ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፉን ልቀም፣ ወደ እኔም አምጣው፤ እናም እኛ መጠውለግ የጀመሩትን ዋና ዋና ቅርንጫፎች እንቅላለን፣ ይቃጠሉም ዘንድ ወደ እሳቱ እንጥላቸዋለን።

፰ እናም እነሆ፣ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ ከእነዚህ ለጋና ለምለም ቅርንጫፎች ብዙዎቹን አወሰዳለሁ፣ እናም በምፈልገው ቦታ አዳቅላቸዋለሁ፤ እናም የዚህ ዛፍ ስር የሚጠፋም ከሆነ ምንም አይደለም፣ ፍሬውን ለራሴ አስቀምጣለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህን ለጋና ለምለም ቅርንጫፎች አወሰዳለሁ፣ እናም በፈለግሁበት ቦታ አዳቅላቸዋለሁ።

፱ እንተ የዱር የወይራ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎችን ውሰድና፣ በእነዚያም ምትክ አዳቅላቸው፤ እናም የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን እንዳያበላሹት ዘንድ፣ እኔ የመለመልኳቸውን ወደ እሳቱ እጥላቸዋለሁ፣ እናም አቃጥላቸዋለሁ።

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ አገልጋይ እንደወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ቃል አደረገ፣ እናም በዲሩ የወይራ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎችን አዳቀለ።

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

፲፩ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ እንዲቆፍርና እንዲመለምል፣ እናም እንዲንከባከበው ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው—ይህንን ዛፍ ማጣት ያሳዘነኛል፣ ስለሆነም፣ ምናልባት እንዳይጠፋ ስርቹን ለማዳን እችል ዘንድ፣ ለእኔ ለራሴ እነርሱን አስቀር ዘንድ ይህን ነገር አድርጌአለሁ።

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

፲፪ ስለሆነም፣ መንገድህን ሂድ፣ ዛፉን ጠብቅ፣ እናም በቃሌ መሰረት ተንከባከበው።

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

፲፫ እናም ይህን ራቅ ባለው በወይን እትክልት ሰፍራዬ፣ በምፈልገው በማንኛውም ቦታ፣ አስቀምጠዋለሁ፣ ይህም እንተን አያሳሰብህም፤ እናም ይህን የማደርገው የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎችን ለራሴ አድን ዘንድ፣ እናም ደግሞ ለራሴ ፍሬውን ለማከማቸት ነው፤ ምክንያቱም ይህን ዛፍና ፍሬውን ማጣት ያሳዘነኛል።

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ መንገዱን ሄደ፣ እናም ተፈጥሮአዊውን የለማውን የወይራ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎች ራቅ ባለው የወይን ሰፍራ፤ እንደፈቃዱና ደስታው እንዳንዱን በአንድ፣ እናም እንዳንዱን በሌላ ቦታ ደበቀው።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ረጅም ጊዜ አለፈ፣ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታም ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው—ና ወደ ወይኑም ሰፍራ እንሰራ ዘንድ እንሂድ።

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታና ደግሞ አገልጋዩ ወደ ወይኑ ሰፍራ ለመሰራት ሄዱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዩ ለጌታው እንዲህ አለው፣ እነሆ፣ በዚህ ተመልከት፣ ዛፉን ተመልከት።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ የዲር የወይራው ቅርንጫፎች የተዳቀሉበትን ዛፍ አየም ተመልከተም፤ እናም ዛፉ ማበብና ፍሬ ማፍራት ጀመሯል። እርሱም መልካም እንደሆነ አየ፤ እናም ፍሬው እንደተፈጥሮው ፍሬ ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

፲፰ እናም ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ፣ የዱር ቅርንጫፎቹ የዛፉን ስር እርጥበት ወስደውታል፣ ስለዚህ ስሩም የበለጠ ጥንካሬን አግኝቷል፤ እናም የእዚያ ስር ብዙ ጥንካሬ ስለነበረው የዱር ቅርንጫፎች የለሙ ፍሬዎች አፍርተዋል። አሁን፣ እነዚህን ቅርንጫፎች ባደቅላቸው ኖሮ ዛፉ ይዎት ነበር። እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ዛፉ ያፈራቸውን ፍሬ አከማቻለሁ፤ እናም ለወቅቱም ፍሬውን ለራሴ አከማቻለሁ።

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ስፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው፡ ና ራቅ ወዳለው የወይኑ ስፍራ እንሂድ፣ እናም ፍሬውን ለራሴ በወቅቱ አከማቸው ዘንድ፣ የተፈጥሮው ቅርንጫፍ ብዙ ፍሬ ደግሞ እንዳላመጣ እንመልከት።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ባለቤቱ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹን ወደ ደቡብ በስፍራ ሄዱ፣ እናም እርሱ ለአገልጋዩ፣ እነዚህን ተመልከት አለው፤ የመጀመሪያው ብዙ ፍሬ እንደሚያሰገኝም ተመልከተ፤ እናም መልካም እንደሆነ ደግሞ ተመልከተ። ለአገልጋዩም እንዲህ አለው፡ ፍሬውን ውስድና ለራሴ አስቀምጠው ዘንድ ለወቅቱ አከማቸው፤ እነሆም፣ ለረጅም ጊዜ ተንከባክቤዋለሁ፣ እናም ብዙ ፍሬን አሰገኝቷል።

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዩ ለጌታው አለው፡ ይህንን ዛፍ ወይም የዛፉን ቅርንጫፍ ለመትከል እዚህ ለምን መጣህ? እነሆም ከወይኑ ስፍራ ሁሉ ያልለማ ነበርና።

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

፳፪ እናም የወይኑ ስፍራ ጌታም አለው፡ እኔን አትምከረኝ፤ መጥፎ የመሬት ቦታ እንደነበረ አውቃለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ እንዲህም ብዬሃለሁ፣ ይህን ለረጅም ጊዜ ተንከባክቤዋለሁ፣ እናም ብዙ ፍሬን አንዳሰገኝ ተመልክተሃል።

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ስፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው፡ እዚህ ተመልከት፤ እነሆ ሌላ የዛፉን ቅርንጫፍ ደግሞ ተክያለሁ፤ እናም አንተ ይህ መሬት ከመጀመሪያው የበለጠ መጥፎ መሆኑን ታውቃለህ። ነገር ግን ዛፉን ተመልከት። ለረጅም ጊዜ ተንከባክቤዋለሁ፣ እናም ብዙ ፍሬን አሰገኝቷል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ስብሰብውና ለራሴ አስቀምጠው ዘንድ ለወቅቱ አከማቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ በድጋሚ አለው። ወደዚህ ተመልከት፣ እናም እኔ የተከልኩትን ሌላ ቅርንጫፍ ደግሞ ተመልከት፤ እነሆ እኔ ደግሞ ተንከባክበዋለሁ፣ ይህም ፍሬን አስገኝቷል።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

፳፭ እናም ለአገልጋዩ አለው—ወደዚህ ተመልከት፣ እናም የመጨረሻውን ተመልከት። እነሆ፣ ይህን በመልካሙ መሬት ቦታ ላይ ተክየዋለሁ፣ ለዚህ ለረጅም ጊዜም ተንከባክበዋለሁ፣ እናም የለማውን ፍሬ በግማሹ ክፍል ብቻ አስገኝቷል፤ ሌላው የዛፉ ክፍልም የዲር ፍሬ አፍርቷል፣ እነሆ ይህን ዛፍ እንደሌሎቹ ተንከባክበዋለሁ።

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይን ሰፍራው ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ አለ—መልካም ፍሬ የማያፈሩትን ቅርንጫፎች ንቀላቸውና ወደ እሳቱ ጣላቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አገልጋዩም አለ—እንግረዘው፣ እንኮትኩተውም፣ እናም ለትንሽ ጊዜ እንንከባከበው፣ ምናልባት በወቅቱ የምታከማቸውን መልካም ፍሬን ያመጣልህ ይሆናል።

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታና የወይን ሰፍራው ጌታ አገልጋይ የአትክልቱን ሰፍራ ፍሬዎች በሙሉ ተንከባከቡት።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ረጅም ጊዜ አለፈ፣ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው—ና፣ በወይኑ ሰፍራ እንደገና እንሰራ ዘንድ ወደ ወይኑ ሰፍራ እንሂድ። እነሆም፣ ቀኑ ቀርቧል፣ እናም የመጨረሻው በፍጥነት ይመጣል፣ ስለሆነም፣ ለራሴ ለወቅቱ የሚሆን ፍሬ ማከማቸት አለብኝ።

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታና አገልጋዩ ወደ ወይኑ ሰፍራ ሄዱ፤ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹ ወደ ወደቁበትና፣ የዲር ቅርንጫፎቹ ወደተዳቀሉለት ዛፍም ሄዱ፣ እናም እነሆ ሁሉም ዓይነት ፍሬዎች ዛፉ እንዲያዘነብል አደረጉት።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይን ሰፍራው ጌታ ከፍሬው እያንዳንዱን አይነት፣ ከትንሽ እስከትልቅ፣ ቀመሰ። የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታም እንዲህ አለ፤ እነሆ፣ ለረጅም ጊዜ ይህን ዛፍ ተንከባክበናል፣ እናም ለወቅቱ የሚሆን ብዙ ፍሬንም ለራሴ አከማችቻለሁ።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

፲፫፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በዚህ ጊዜ ብዙ ፍሬን አስገኝቷል፣ እናም ከዚህ ውስጥ ምንም መልካም የሆነ የለም። እናም እነሆ፣ ከሁሉም ዓይነት መጥፎ ፍሬዎች አሉ፤ በብዛት ብንሰራበትም፣ ለእኔ ምንም ጥቅም አያስገኝልኝም፤ እናም አሁን ይህንን ዛፍ በማጣቴ አሳዝኖኛል።

፲፫፮ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ አለው—እኔ እንደገና መልካሙን ፍሬ ለራሴ አስቀምጥ ዘንድ በዛፋ ላይ ምን ማድረግ ይሻለናል?

፲፫፱ እናም አገልጋዩ ለጌታው አለው፡ እነሆ፣ እነርሱን ከዲሩ የወይራ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎች ላይ ስላዳቀልክ ስሩን ተንከባክበዋል፣ ስለዚህ በህይወት ቆይተዋል እናም አልጠፉም፤ ስለሆነም፣ አሁንም አንተ መልካም መሆናቸውን ተመልክተሃል።

፲፫፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ እንዲህ አለው፡ ዛፋ ለእኔ ምንም አይጠቀመኝም፣ እናም መጥፎ ፍሬን እስከሰጠ ድረስ ስሩም ምንም አይጠቀመኝም።

፲፫፳፩ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ስሩ መልካም እንደሆነ አውቃለሁና፣ ለራሴ ዓላማ እነርሱን አድኛለሁ፤ እናም እስከአሁን ባላቸው ጥንካሬም የተነሳ ከዲሩ ቅርንጫፎቹ መልካም ፍሬን ሰጡ።

፲፫፳፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ የዲር ቅርንጫፎቹ አደጉና፣ የዚያ ስሩ ሊሸከማቸው አልቻለም፤ እናም ስሩ የዲር ቅርንጫፎቹን መሸከም ስላቃተው እርሱ መጥፎ ፍሬን አፈራ፤ እርሱም ብዙ መጥፎ ፍሬዎችን በማፍራቱ መጥፋት እንደ ጀመረ ትመለከታለህ፤ እናም ስለዚህ እርሱን ለማዳን አንድ ነገር ካላደረግን ወደ እሳት እንዲጣል በፍጥነትም ይበስላል።

፲፫፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ አለው—ራቅ ወዳለው የወይኑ ሰፍራ እንሂድና፣ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹም ደግሞ መጥፎ ፍሬን እንደሚያፈሩ እንመልከት።

፲፫፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ራቅ ወዳለው ወደ ወይኑ ሰፍራ ሄዱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹ ፍሬ ደግሞ እንደተበሰበሰ ተመለከቱ፤ አዎን፣ የመጀመሪያውና ሁለተኛው ደግሞ የመጨረሻውም፤ እናም ሁሉም በሰብሰቡ።

፲፫፳፭ እናም የመጨረሻው የዲር ፍሬ መልካሙን ፍሬ ያፈራውን የዛፍ ክፍል አሸንፎታል፣ እንዲሁም ቅርንጫፉ ጠውልጓልና ሞቷል።

፲፫፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ አለቀሰ፣ እናም ለአገልጋዩ አለው፡ ለወይኑ ሰፍራዬ ከዚህ የበለጠ ምን ማድረግ እችላለሁ?

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

፱፪ እነሆ፣ የወይኑ ስፍራ ፍሬ ከዚህ በስተቀር ሁሉም እንደበሰበሱ አውቃለሁ። እናም በአንድ ወቅት መልካም ፍሬን ያመጣው ደግሞ አሁን በሰብሷል፤ እናም አሁን የወይኑ ስፍራ ዛፎች በሙሉ ያለመቆረጥና ወደ እሳት ያለመጣል በስተቀር ለምንም መልካም አይደሉም።

፱፫ እናም እነሆ ይህ የመጨረሻው የጠወለገ ቅርንጫፍ፣ በመልካሙ መሬት ላይ አዎን፣ ከሌላው ከወይን ስፍራዬ መሬት ክፍሎች ሁሉ በላይ ምርጥ በሆነው ላይ እንኳን ነበር የተከልኩት።

፱፬ እናም ይህን ዛፍ በቦታው አተክል ዘንድ ይህን ምድር የሚያበላሹትንም ደግሞ ስቆርጥ ተመልክተሃል።

፱፭ እናም የዚህ ዛፍ ክፍል መልካም ፍሬን ሲያፈራና፣ ከፊሎም የዱር ፍሬን ሲያፈራ ተመልክተሃል፤ እናም ቅርንጫፎቹን መልምዬ ወደ እሳቱ ባለመጣሌ፣ እነሆ፣ እነርሱ መልካሙን ቅርንጫፍ አሸንፈውት እንዲጠወልግ አደረጉት።

፱፮ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ለወይኑ ስፍራዬ ሁሉንም አይነት ጥንቃቄ ብንወስድም፣ በዚያ ያሉት ዛፎች በሰብሰቡል፣ ስለዚህ መልካም ፍሬን አልሰጡም፤ እናም እነዚህን ለማዳን፣ የእነዚህን ፍሬዎች በወቅቱ ለእኔ ለማከማቸት ተስፋ አድርጌ ነበር። ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ እነርሱ ልክ እንደዱር የወይራ ዛፍ ሆነዋል፣ መቆረጥና ወደ እሳት የሚጣሉ ከመሆን በስተቀር ምንም ዋጋ የሌላቸው፤ እናም እነርሱን ማጣቱ አሳዝኖኛል።

፱፯ ነገር ግን በወይኑ ስፍራዬ ውስጥ ከዚህ የበለጠ ምን ማድረግ እችላለሁ? እናም እንዳልንከባከብ እጄን ስበሰብኩኝን? አይደለም፣ ተንከባክቤዋለሁ፤ ኮትኩቼዋለሁ፤ እንዲሁም ከርክሜዋለሁ፤ ፍግም አፍሰሻለሁ፤ ቀኑን ሙሉ እጄን ዘርግቻለሁም፣ መጨረሻው ተቃርቧልም። እናም የወይን ስፍራዬን ዛፎች ሁሉ መቁረጤና፣ እንዲቃጠሉ ወደ እሳቱ መጣሌ አሳዝኖኛል። የወይን ስፍራዬን ያበላሸው ማን ነው?

፱፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዩ ለጌታው አለው—የወይኑ ስፍራህ ትልቅነት አይደለም—በዚያ ያሉት ቅርንጫፎች መልካም የሆኑትን ስሮች አላሸነፉምን? እናም ቅርንጫፎቹ ስሩን በማሸነፋቸው የተነሳ እነሆ ጥንካሬን ለራሳቸው በማድረግ ከስሩ ጥንካሬ የበለጠ በፍጥነት አድገዋል። እነሆ፣ አላለሁ፣ የወይኑ ስፍራ ዛፍህ የተበላሸው ለዚህ አይደለም እንዴ?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ስፍራ ባለቤት ለአገልጋዩ አለው፡ የወይን ስፍራ መሬት እንዳያቆሽሽ እንሂድና የወይኑን ስፍራ ዛፍ እንቁረጥ ወደ እሳት እንጣላቸውም፡ የምችለውን ያህል አድርጌአለሁና፡ ለወይኑ ስፍራዬ ከዚህ የበለጠ ምን ማድረግ እችላለሁ?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

፶ ነገር ግን እነሆ፡ አገልጋዩ ለወይኑ ስፍራ ጌታ አለው— ለትንሽ ጊዜ አቆየው።

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

፶፩ እናም ጌታውም አለ፡ አዎን፡ ለትንሽ ጊዜ እተወዋለሁ፡ ምክንያቱም የወይን ስፍራዬን ዛፎች ማጣት ያሳዘነኛልና።

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

፶፪ ስለሆነም፡ ራቅ ባለው የወይኑ ስፍራዬ የተከለከሉትን የእነዚህን ቅርንጫፎች እንውሰድ፡ እናም ከመጡበት ዛፍ ላይ እናዳቅላቸው፡ እናም ፍሬያቸው መራራ ከሆኑት እነዚያ ቅርንጫፎች እንመልምል፡ እናም የዛፉ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎችን በምትኩ እናዳቅል።

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

፶፫ እናም ይህን የማደርገው ዛፉ እንዳይጠፋና፡ ምናልባት ስሩን ለራሴ አላማ አድነው ዘንድ ነው።

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

፶፬ እናም እነሆ፡ በፈለኩበት ቦታ የተከለከሉት የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፍ ሰሮች እስከአሁን በህይወት ናቸው፤ ስለሆነም፡ ለራሴ ዓላማ ደግሞ አድናቸው ዘንድ፡ ከዚህ ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎችን እወሰዳለሁ፡ እናም በተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፉ ላይ አዳቅላቸዋለሁ። አዎን፡ ደግሞ ለራሴ ሰሮቹን ለመጠበቅና፡ በብቁ ጠንካራ ሲሆኑ መልካም ፍሬ ወደእኔ እንዲያመጡልኝ ዘንድ፡ እናም በወይኑ ስፍራዬ ፍሬም እደሰት ዘንድ የእናት ዛፋቸው ቅርንጫፎችን በእነርሱ ላይ አዳቅላለሁ።

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

፶፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የዱር ከሆነው የተፈጥሮ ዛፉ ቅርንጫፎቹን ወሰዱ፡ እናም ደግሞም ዱር ወደሆነው የተፈጥሮአዊ በሆነው ዛፍ ላይ አዳቅሉት።

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

፶፮ እናም ደግሞ የዱር የሆነውን የተፈጥሮ ዛፍ ወሰዱ፡ በእናታቸው ዛፍ ላይም ተዳቀሉ።

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

፶፯ እናም የወይኑ ስፍራ ጌታ ለአገልጋዩ አለው፡ ከሁሉም በላይ መራራ ከሆኑት በሰተቀር የዱር ቅርንጫፎቹን ከዛፎቹ ላይ አትመልምል፡ እናም በእነርሱም ላይ እኔ በተናገርኩት መሰረት አዳቅላቸው።

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

፶፰ እናም የወይኑን ስፍራ ዛፎች እንደገና እንንከባከባቸዋለን፡ ቅርንጫፎቹንም እንከረክማለን፤ እናም ከዛፎቹ ውስጥ እነዚያን መጥፋት የሚገባቸውን የበሰሉትን ቅርንጫፎች እናለመልማለን፡ ወደ እሳትም እንጣላቸዋለን።

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

፶፱ እናም ይህን የማደርገው በመልካምነታቸው ምክንያት የዛፋ ስር ይጠነክራል ብዬ ነው፤ እናም በቅርንጫፎቹ መቀያየር የተነሳ መልካሙ መጥፎውን ያሸንፋል።

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

፷ እናም የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹን ስሩን በማዳኔና፣ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎቹን ወደ እናታቸው ዛፍም በድጋሚ በማዳቀሉና፣ የእናታቸው ዛፍን ስር በማዳኔ፣ ምናልባት የወይኑ ስፍራዬ ዛፎች በድጋሚ መልካም ፍሬን ያሰገኛሉ፤ እናም በወይኑ ስፍራዬም ፍሬ ድጋሚ ደስታን እንዳገኝና፣ ምናልባት የመጀመሪያውን ፍሬ ስሩንና ቅርንጫፎቹን በማዳኔ እጅግ ደስታ እንዲሰማኝ—

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

፷፩ ስለሆነም፣ በወይኑ ስፍራ በምንችለው በትጋት እንድንሰራ፣ መንገዱን እንድናዘጋጅ ሂድ፣ እናም አገልጋዮችን ጥራ፣ ከሌሎቹ ፍሬዎች ሁሉ በላይ መልካምና ድንቅ የሆነውን ተፈጥሮአዊውን ፍሬ እንደገና አሰገኛለሁ።

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

፷፪ ስለሆነም፣ በዚህ በመጨረሻው ጊዜ እንሂድና በምንችለው እንሰራ፣ እነሆም መጨረሻው ተቃርቧልና፣ እናም ይህ የወይኑ ስፍራዬን የምመለምልበት የመጨረሻ ጊዜ ነው።

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

፷፫ ቅርንጫፎችን አዳቅል፤ እናም የመጀመሪያ ይሆኑ ዘንድ ከመጨረሻዎቹ ጀምሩ፣ የመጀመሪያዎቹም የመጨረሻ ይሆኑ ዘንድ፣ ሁሉንም ለእንዳና ለመጨረሻ ጊዜ እንንከባከባቸው ዘንድ፣ ያረጁትንና ወጣቶቹን፣ የመጀመሪያዎቹንና የመጨረሻዎቹን፣ እና የመጨረሻዎቹንና የመጀመሪያዎቹን፣ ዛፎቹን ኮትኩቷቸው።

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

፷፬ ስለዚህ፣ ቆፍሩአቸውና መልምሉአቸው፣ እናም ለእንዳና ለመጨረሻ ጊዜ ፍግ አድርጉባቸው፣ ምክንያቱም መጨረሻው ቀርቧልና። እናም እነዚህ በመጨረሻ የተዳቀሉት ካደጉ፣ እንዲሁም የተፈጥሮ ፍሬን ካፈሩ፣ እነርሱም ያድጉ ዘንድ ለእነርሱ መንገድን ታዘጋጃለችሁ።

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

፷፭ እናም ማደግ ሲጀምሩ በመልካሙ ጥንካሬውና ባለው መጠን መሰረት መራራ ፍሬ የሚያፈሩትን ቅርንጫፎች ታሰወግዳላችሁ፤ እናም ስሩ ለተዳቀሉት እጅግ ጠንካራ እንዳይሆንባቸው፣ እናም በእዚያ የተዳቀሉት እንዳይጠፉና፣ የወይኑ ስፍራዬን ዛፎች እንዳላጣ፣ መጥፎውንም ሁሉ በእንዳ አታሰወግዱም።

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

፳፮ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ዛፎቹን ማጣት ያሳዘነኛልና፤ ስለሆነም፣ ስሩና ቅርንጫፉ በጥንካሬ እኩል እንዲሆን፣ መልካሙ መጥፎውን እስኪያሸንፈው፣ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራዬን ቦታ እንዳያበላሹት መጥፎው ተቆርጦ ወደ እሳት እስከሚጣል ድረስ፣ መልካሙ በሚያድግበት መሰረት መጥፎውን ታሰወግዳላችሁ፤ እና እንደዚህም መጥፎውን ከእትክልት ሰፍራዬ ጠርጌ እሰወግደዋለሁ።

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

፳፯ እናም የተፈጥሮውን ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎች በተፈጥሮው ዛፍ ላይ በድጋሚ አዳቅለዋለሁ፤

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

፳፰ እናም የተፈጥሮውን ዛፍ ቅርንጫፎች በዛፉ የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎች ላይ አዳቅላለሁ፤ እና እንደዚህ ተፈጥሮአዊውን ፍሬ ያፈሩ እንዲሁም እንድ ይሆኑ ዘንድ በድጋሚ እነርሱን በእንድነት አመጣቸዋለሁ።

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

፳፱ እናም መጥፎው ይጣላል፣ አዎን፣ ከእትክልት ሰፍራዬ መሬት ሁሉም እንኳን፤ እነሆም፣ ወይኑ ሰፍራዬን ይህን እንዴ ብቻ እከረክመዋለሁ።

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ባለቤት አገልጋዩን ላከ፤ እናም አገልጋዩ ሄደና ጌታው እንዳዘዘው አደረገ፣ ሌሎች አገልጋዮቹንም አመጣ፤ እናም እነርሱ ጥቂት ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

፴፩ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ አላቸው፣ ሂዱና በእቅማችሁ በወይኑ ሰፍራ ስሩ። እነሆም ይህ የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን የምንከባከብበት የመጨረሻ ጊዜ ነው፤ መጨረሻው ቀርቦ ደርሷልና፣ ወቅቱም በፍጥነት ይመጣል፤ እናም በእቅማችሁ ከእኔ ጋር ከሰራችሁ በቅርቡ ለሚመጣው ጊዜ ለራሴ ባከማቸሁት ፍሬ ደስታ ይኖራችኋል።

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዮቹ ሄዱና በእቅማቸው ስሩ፤ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ደግሞም ከእነርሱ ጋር ስራ፤ እናም በሁሉም ነገሮች የወይኑን ሰፍራ ጌታ ትዕዛዛት ተቀበሉ።

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

፴፫ እናም በወይኑ ሰፍራ እንደገና የተፈጥሮ ፍሬ መሆን ጀመረ፣ እናም የተፈጥሮ ቅርንጫፎች ማደግና እጅግም መፋፋት ጀመሩ፤ የዲር ቅርንጫፎች መመልመልና መጣል ጀመሩም፤ እነርሱም ስራቸውና ጫፋቸው በጥንካሬው መሰረት እኩል እስኪሆኑ ጠበቁት።

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

፪፬ እናም መጥፎው ከወይኑ ሰፍራ እስከሚጣልና ጌታው ዛፎቹ እንደገና የተፈጥሮ ፍሬ እንዲያፈሩ ለራሱ እስኪያድን ድረስ፣ በወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ትዕዛዛት መሰረት እንደዚህ በሙሉ ትጋት ሰሩ፤ እነርሱም እንደ አንድ አካል ሆኑ፤ ፍሬዎቹም እኩል ነበሩ፤ እናም የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ለእርሱ እጅግ ውድ የሆነውን የተፈጥሮ ፍሬ ለራሱ አድኗል።

፪፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የወይኑ ሰፍራ ጌታ ፍሬው መልካም መሆኑንና፣ የወይኑንም ሰፍራ ከእንግዲህ እንዳልበሱበሱ ባየ ጊዜ አገልጋዮቹን ጠራቸውና እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ፣ ለመጨረሻ ጊዜ የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን ተንከባክበናል፤ እንደ ፍቃዴ እንዳደረኩም ተመልክታችኋል፤ እናም የተፈጥሮ ፍሬን አድኜዋለሁ፣ ልክ መጀመሪያ እንደነበረም መልካም ነው። እናንተም የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ በወይኑ ሰፍራዬ ከእኔ ጋር በትጋት በመሰራታችሁ፣ ትዕዛዛቴንም በመጠበቃችሁና፣ የወይኑ ሰፍራዬ ከእንግዲህ እንዳይበሱበሱ፣ በድጋሚ ተፈጥሮአዊ ፍሬን በማምጣታችሁና፣ መጥፎው ስለተጣለ፣ እነሆ በወይን ሰፍራዬ ፍሬ የተነሳ እናንተ ከእኔ ጋር ደስታ ይኖራችኋል።

፪፮ እነሆም ለረጅም ጊዜ በፍጥነት ለሚመጣው ወቅት የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን ፍሬ ለራሴ አከማቻለሁ፤ እናም ለመጨረሻ ጊዜ የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን ተንከባክብኩት፣ ከረከምኩትም፣ እናም ኮተኮትኩት፣ ፍግም አደረግሁበት፤ ስለዚህ፣ በተናገርኩት መሰረት ከፍሬው ለራሴ ለረጅም ጊዜ አከማቻለሁ።

፪፯ እናም መጥፎው ፍሬ በድጋሚ በወይኑ ሰፍራዬ በሚወጣበት ጊዜ ጥሩውና መጥፎው እንዲሰበሰቡ አደርጋለሁ፤ እናም መልካሙን ለራሴ አስቀምጣለሁ፣ መጥፎውንም ወደ ራሱ ሰፍራ አጥለዋለሁ። ከዚያም በኋላ ወቅቱ እንዲሁም መጨረሻው ይመጣል፤ እናም የወይኑን ሰፍራዬን በእሳት እንዲቃጠል አደርገዋለሁ።

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

ያዕቆብ ፮

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ እተነብያለሁ ብዬ ለእናንተ እንደተናገርኩት እነሆ፣ ትንቢቱ ይህ ነው—የእስራኤልን ቤት በተመለከተ ከሌላው ወይራ ዛፍ ጋር በማመሳሰል ነቢዩ ዜናስ የተናገራቸው ነገሮች በእርግጥ ይሆናሉ።

፪ እናም በድጋሚ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ ህዝቡን ለማዳን እጅን የሚያነሳበት ቀን፣ አዎን፣ ለመጨረሻው ጊዜ እንኳን፣ የጌታ አገልጋይ ወደፊት በመቀጠል በኃይሉ የወይኑን ሰፍራ የሚንከባከብበትና፣ የሚከረክምበት ቀን ነው፤ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ መጨረሻው በፍጥነት ይመጣል።

፫ እናም በወይኑ ሰፍራ በትጋት የሰሩት እንዴት የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ እናም ወደ ራሳቸው ሰፍራስ የሚጣሉት እንዴት የተረገሙ ናቸው! እናም ዓለም በእሳት ትቃጠላለች።

፬ እናም የእስራኤልን ቤት ሰሮችና ቅርንጫፎች ያስታወሰው አምላካችን እንዴት መሀሪ ነው፤ እናም ለእነርሱ ቀኑን ሙሉ ክንዱን ይዘረጋል፤ እነርሱም እንገተ ደንዳና እና ተቃዋሚ ህዝብ ናቸው፤ ነገር ግን አብዛኞቹም ልባቸውን ባያጠጥሩ በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት ይድናሉ።

፭ ስለሆነም፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ንስሀ እንድትገቡም፣ በልባችሁም ሙሉ ዓላማ እንድትመጡና፣ እግዚአብሔር ለእናንተ እንደጸና እናንተም እንድትጸኑ በጥምና ቃላት እለምናችኋለሁ። እናም በቀን ብርሃን የምህረት ክንዱ ወደ እናንተ በተዘረጋ ጊዜ ልባችሁን አታጠጥሩ።

፮ አዎን፣ ዛሬ፣ ድምፁን ብትሰሙ፣ ልባችሁን አታጠጥሩ፤ ለምንስ ትሞታላችሁ?

፯ እነሆም፣ ቀኑን ሁሉ በመልካሙ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ከተመገባችሁ በኋላ፣ መጥፎ ፍሬን አፍርታችሁ በመቆረጥ ወደ እሳት መጣል ይገባችኋልን?

፰ እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት ትቃወማላችሁን? የነቢያቱን ቃላትስ ትቃወማላችሁን፤ ስለእርሱ ብዙዎች ከተናገሩ ከተባለ በኋላ፣ ክርስቶስን በተመለከተስ የተነገሩትን ቃላት ሁሉ ትቃወማላችሁን፤ እናም የክርስቶስን መልካም ቃል፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይልና፣ የመንፈስ ቅዱስን ሰጦታን ትክዳላችሁን፣ የቅዱስ መንፈስ እርካታንም ታጠፋላችሁን፣ እናም ለእናንተ የተመሰረተውን ታላቁን የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ትሳለቁበታላችሁን?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

፱ እነዚህን ነገሮች ካደረጋችሁ፣ በክርስቶስ ያለው የቤዛነትና የትንሳኤ ኃይል በእግዚአብሔር የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት በእፍረትና በመጥፎ ጸጸት እንደሚያቆማችሁ አታውቁምን?

፲ እናም በፍርድ ኃይል መሰረት፣ ፍርድ ሊካድ አይችልምና፣ እናንተ በነበልባሉ ወደ ማይጠፋው፣ እናም ጢሱም ለዘለዓለም እስከዘለዓለም ወደሰማይ ወደሚወጣው፣ የእሳቱ ባህርና ዲን መጨረሻ የሌለው ስቃይ ወደሆነው፣ የእሳት ባህርና ዲን መሄድ ይገባችኋል።

፲፩ እንግዲህ አቤቱ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ንስሀ ግቡ፣ በጠባቡም ደጅ ግቡ፣ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትን እስከምታገኙ ድረስ በቀጥተኛ ጎዳና ቀጥሉ።

፲፪ አቤቱ ብልህ ሁኑ፤ ከዚህ የበለጠ ምን ማለት እችላለሁ?

፲፫ በመጨረሻም ኃጢአተኞችን በመጥፎ ስጋትና ፍርሃት በሚመታው በአስደሳቹ በእግዚአብሔር የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት እስከምንገናኝ ድረስ ደህና ሁኑ እላችኋለሁ። አሜን።

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

ያዕቆብ ፯

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ጥቂት አመታት ካለፉ በኋላ፣ ከኔፋውያን መካከል ሰሙም ሼረም የተባለ አንድ ሰው መጣ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ በህዝቡ መካከል መሰበክና፣ ክርስቶስ የሚባል እንደሌለም ለእነርሱ ማወጅ ጀመረ። እናም ለህዝቡ ብዙ የሽንገላን ነገሮች ሰበከ፤ ይህንንም ያደረገው የክርስቶስን ትምህርት ለመጣል ነበር።

፫ እናም የህዝቡንም ልብ ያሰት ዘንድ በትጋት በመሰራት የብዙዎችን ልብ አሳተ፤ እናም እኔ ያዕቆብ በሚመጣው ክርስቶስ እምነት እንዳለኝ ስለሚያውቅ ወደ እኔ ይመጣ ዘንድ ብዙ አጋጣሚዎችን ፈለገ።

፬ እናም የተማረ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ የህዝቡን ቋንቋ በፍጹም አውቀት ያውቅ ነበር፣ ስለሆነም፣ በዲያብሎስ ኃይል መሰረት ብዙ ሽንገላንና፣ ብዙ የንግግር ኃይል መጠቀም ችሏል።

፭ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ብዙ ራዕይና ብዙ ነገሮችን ያየሁ ቢሆንም፣ እርሱ እኔን ከእምነቴ ለማናወጥ ተሰፋ ነበረው፤ እኔ በአውነት መላዕክቶችን አይቻለሁ፣ እነርሱም እኔን አስተምረውኛልና። እናም ደግሞ ከጊዜ ወደጊዜ የጌታ ድምፅ በቃሉ ሲናገረኝ ሰምቻለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ልናወጥ አልችልም።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ ወደ እኔ መጣና፣ በዚህ ሁኔታ እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረኝ፡ ወንድም ያዕቆብ፣ እንተን እናገር ዘንድ ብዙ አጋጣሚዎችን ፈለግሁ፤ ወንጌል ወይም የክርስቶስን ትምህርት ብለህ የምትጠራውን ለመሰበክ እንደተጓዘክ ሰምቻለሁ እናም ደግሞ አውቄአለሁ።

፯ እናም ትክክለኛውን የእግዚአብሔር ኅዳና እንዲሰጥና፣ ትክክለኛ የሆነውን የሙሴን ህግ እንዳይጠብቁት ከዚህ ህዝብ አብዛኛውን አስተሀል፤ እናም ከብዙ መቶ ዓመታት በኋላ ይመጣል ወደምትለው ፍጡር አምልኮ የሙሴን ህግ ለውጠህል። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እኔ ሼረም ይህ ስድብ እንደሆነ አውጅልህለሁ፤ ማንም ሰው የሚመጡ ነገሮችን መናገር ስለማይችል፣ እንደነዚህ አይነት ነገሮችን አያውቅምና። እናም እንደዚህ ነበር ሼረም ከእኔ ጋር የተጣለው።

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በቃሉ አስከማሳፍረው ድረስ ለነፍሴ መንፈሱን አፈሰሰልኝ።

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

፱ እናም ለእርሱ እንዲህ አልሁ። የሚመጣውን ክርስቶስ ትክክልህን? እና እርሱም አለ። ክርስቶስ ከእለ አልክደውም፤ ነገር ግን ክርስቶስ እንደሌለ፣ እንዳልነበረ፣ እንደማይኖርም አውቃለሁ።

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

፲ እናም እንዲህ አልኩት። በቅዱስ መጽሐፍት ታምናለህ? እርሱም አዎን አለ።

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

፲፩ እናም እኔም አልኩት። አንተ እነርሱን አትረዳቸውም፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በእውነት ስለክርስቶስ ይመሰክራሉና። እነሆ፣ የትኛውም ነቢይ ክርስቶስን በተመለከተ ከመናገር በስተቀር የፃፈ ወይም የተነበየ የለም አልሀለሁ።

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

፲፪ እናም ይህ ብቻም አይደለም—ይህ ለእኔ ተገልጿልኛል፣ ስምቻለሁም ተመልክቻለሁምና፤ እናም ይህ ደግሞ ለእኔ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ተገልጿልኛል፤ ስለሆነም፣ ምንም አይነት የኃጢያት ክፍያ ባይኖር ኖሮ የሰው ዘር በሙሉ መጥፋት እንደሚኖርበት አውቃለሁ።

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም አለኝ። አንተ በዚህ ብዙ በምታውቀው በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ምልክትን አሳየኝ።

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

፲፬ እናም አልኩት። እውነት መሆኑን ለምታውቀው ለአንተ ምልክት ለማሳየት እግዚአብሔርን የምፈትነው እኔ ማን ነኝ? ነገር ግን የዲያብሎስ በመሆንህ ትክክልህ። ይሁን እንጂ፣ የእኔ ፈቃድ አይሆን፤ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር አንተን የሚቀጣ ከሆነ ይህ በሰማይም በምድርም ኃይል እንዳለው፤ እናም ደግሞ ክርስቶስ እንደሚመጣ ምልክት ይሆንሃል። እናም አቤቱ ጌታ የእኔ ፈቃድ ሳይሆን ያንተ ይሆናል።

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ያዕቆብ እነዚህን ቃላት ሰናገር፣ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ወረደበት፣ በዚህም ምክንያት መሬት ወደቀ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ቀናት እንክብካቤን አገኝ።

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለህዝቡም ተናገረ፣ ልሞት ስለሆነ ነገ በአንድ ላይ ተሰብስቡ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ከመሞቱ በፊት ለህዝቡ መናገር አፈልጋለሁ።

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በማግስቱ ብዙዎች በአንድ ላይ ተሰብስቡ፤ እናም ለእነርሱ በግልፅ ተናገረ፣ ያስተማራቸውንም ነገሮች ካደ፣ እናም ስለክርስቶስ እንዲሁም ስለመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል እንዲሁም ስለመላዕክቶች አገልግሎት መሰከረ።

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

፲፰ እናም በዲያብሎስ ኃይል ተታሎ እንደነበር በግልፅ ተናገራቸው። እናም ስለሲኦልና ዘለዓለማዊነት እንዲሁም ዘለዓለማዊ ቅጣት ተናገረ።

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

፲፱ እናም አለ፡ ይቅርታ የሌለው ኃጢያት በመፈፀሜ ፈርቻለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ለእግዚአብሔር ዋሽቻለሁና፤ ክርስቶስን ክጃለሁና፣ ቅዱስ መጽሐፍንም አምኛለሁ ብያለሁና፤ እነርሱም በእውነት ስለእርሱ መስክረዋል። እናም ለእግዚአብሔር በመዋሸቴ ሁኔታዬ መጥፎ ይሆናል ብዬ እጅግ አፈራለሁ፤ ነገር ግን ለእግዚአብሔር እናዘዛለሁ።

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት ሲናገር ሌላ ምንም ማለት አልቻለም፣ እናም ሞተ።

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

፳፩ እናም ወደሞት ሲቀርብ እነዚህን ነገሮች መናገሩን ህዝቡ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እጅግ ተደነቁ፤ እናም እንዲህም ሆኖ በመሸነፍ ወደ መሬት እስከሚወድቁ ድረስ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በእነርሱ ላይ ወረደ።

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

፳፪ አሁን ይህ ነገር እኔን ያዕቆብን አስደስቶኛል፣ ምክንያቱም በሰማይ ያለውን አባቴን ይህን ጠይቁአለሁና፤ እርሱም ጩኸቴን ሰምቷል፣ እናም ፀሎቴን መልሷል።

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደገና ሰላምና የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር በህዝቡ መካከል ዳግሞ ተመለሰ፤ እናም ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትን መረመሩና፣ የዚህን የኃጢአተኛውን ሰው ቃል ከእንግዲህ አላዳመጡም።

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንን ወደ እውነተኛ እውቀት ለመመለስ ብዙ ዘዴዎች ተቀይሰው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በጦርነትና ደም መፋሰስ ስለሚደሰቱና፣ ከእኛ ከወንድሞቻቸው ዘለዓለማዊ የሆነ ጥላቻ ስለነበራቸው ሁሉም በከንቱ ነበሩ። እናም በጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸው ኃይል ሁልጊዜም ሊያጠፉን ፈለጉ።

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

፳፭ ስለሆነም፣ የኔፊ ህዝብ በእነርሱ ላይ ከነመሳሪያዎቻቸው፣ እናም በሙሉ ኃይላቸው፣ የደህንነታቸው አለት በሆነው በእግዚአብሔር በማመን መሸጉ፤ ስለሆነም ጠላቶቻቸውን በማሸነፍ ቀጠሉ።

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ያዕቆብ መሸምገል ጀመርኩ፤ እናም የዚህ ህዝብ ታሪክ በሌላኛው የኔሬ ሰሌዳዎች በመቀመጡ፣ ስለሆነም፣ ባለኝ እውቀት መፃፊን በመናገር፣ ጊዜው ከእኛ ጋር አልፏል፣ እናም ደግሞ ህይወታችን ልክ እንደህልም አልፏል፤ ከኢየሩሳሌም ተጥለን ወጥተን ሰደተኞች በመሆናችን፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በመከራ ስለተወለድን፣ እናም በራሳችን ወንድሞች ስለተጠላን፣ ይህም ጦርነትና ፀብን ስላሰነሳ፣ ብቸኛና ጭምት ሰዎች ነበርን በማለት ይህንን ታሪክ አጠቃልላለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ በዘመናችን ሁሉ አለቀሰን።

፳፮ እናም እኔ ያዕቆብ፣ በቅርቡ ወደ መቃብሬ መሄድ እንዳለብኝ ተመለከትኩ፣ ስለሆነም፣ ለልጄ ኢናስ አልኩት፣ እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች ውሰድ። እናም ወንድሜ ኔሬ ያዘዘኝን ነገሮች ነገርኩትና እርሱም ለትዕዛዛቱ ታዛዥ ለመሆኑ ቃል ገባ። እናም በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ ጥቃቅን የሆኑትን ጽሁፎችን መፃፊን ጨረሰኩ፤ ኡብዛኞቹ ወንድሞቼ ቃሉን እንደሚያነቡ በማመን ለእንባቢያን ደህና ሁኑ አላለሁ። ወንድሞች ደህና ሁኑ።

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

መፀሐፈ ኢኖስ

፩ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኢኖስ አባቴ ፃድቅ ሰው እንደነበር ስለማውቅ—በራሱም ቋንቋ እናም ደግሞ በጌታ አስተዳደግና ተግሳፅ ስላስተማረኝ፣ እናም ለዚህ የእምላኬ ስም የተባረከ ይሁን—

፪ እናም ለኃጢአቴ ስርየትን ከማግኘቴ በፊት በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ስለነበረኝ ትግል እነግራችኋለሁ።

፫ እነሆ፣ አራዊትን ለማደን ወደጫካው ሄድኩ፤ እናም አባቴ ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትንና የቅዱሳንን ደስታ በተመለከተ ሁልጊዜ ሲናገር የምስማቸው ቃላት ወደልቤ ጠልቀው ገቡ።

፬ እናም ነፍሴ ተራበች፤ በፈጣሪዬም ፊት ተንበረከክሁ፣ እናም ለነፍሴ በሀይለኛ ፀሎትና ልመና ወደእርሱ ጮህኩኝ፣ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ ወደ እርሱ ጮህኩኝ፤ አምን፣ ምሽቱ ሲመጣ ድምጹን ስማይ እስከሚደርስ ከፍ አደረግሁት።

፭ እናም ድምፅ ወደእኔ መጣ፣ እንዲህም አለኝ፡ ኢኖስ ኃጢአትህ ይቅር ተብሎልሃል እናም አንተ ትባረካለህ።

፮ እናም እኔ ኢኖስ እግዚአብሔር ሊዋሽ እንደማይችል አውቃለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ በደሌ ተወግዶልኛል።

፯ እናም ጌታ፣ ይህ እንዴት ሆነ? አልኩት።

፰ እናም እርሱም አለኝ፡ ባላየኸውና ስምተህ በማታውቀው በክርስቶስ ባለህ እምነት ምክንያት ነው። እናም እራሱን በአካል ከመግለፁ በፊት ብዙ አመታት ያልፋሉ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ሂድ እምነትህ አድኖሃል።

፱ አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት በምስማ ጊዜ ለኔፋውያን ወንድሞቼ ደህንነት ማሰብ ጀመርኩ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ለእነርሱ ነፍሴን ሁሉ ወደ እግዚአብሔር አፈሰስኩ።

፲ እናም እንደዚህ በመንፈስ በምታገልበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ የጌታ ድምፅ በእዕምሮዬ በድጋሚ መጥቶ እንዲህ አለኝ፤ ወንድሞችህ ትዕዛዛቴን ለመጠበቅ ባላቸው ትጋት መሰረት እጎበኛቸዋለሁ። ለእነርሱም ይህን ምድር ስጥቻቸዋለሁ፣ ይህችም ቅዱስ ምድር ናት፤ በክፋት የተነሳ ካልሆነ በቀር አልረግማትም፤ ስለሆነም፣ በተናገርኩት መሰረት ወንድሞችህን እጎበኛቸዋለሁ፤ እናም መተላለፋቸውን በራሳቸው ላይ በሀዘን አወርዳለሁ።

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

፲፩ እናም እኔ ኢኖስ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት ከሰማሁ በኋላ እምነቴ በጌታ የማይናወጥ ሆነ፤ እናም ለወንድሞቼ ለማናውያን በብዙ ረጅም ትግል ወደ እርሱ ጸለይኩ።

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ባለኝ በሙሉ ትጋት ከሰራሁና ከጸለይኩ በኋላ፣ ጌታም አለኝ፡ በእምነትህ የተነሳ እንደተመኘኸው መሰረት እስጥሀለሁ።

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

፲፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ከእርሱ የፈለግሁት ፍላጎት ይህ ነበር—የእኔ ህዝብ ኔፋውያን በመተላለፋቸው መውደቅ ካለባቸውና በምንም አይነት መጥፋትም ቢኖርባቸው፣ ለማናውያንም መጥፋት ከሌለባቸው፣ ጌታ አምላክ የህዝቤን የኔፋውያን ታሪክ እንዲጠብቅ ዘንድ፤ እንዲሁም፣ በቅዱስ ክንድ ኃይልም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ ይህም ወደፊት አንድ ቀን ለላማናውያን ይመጡ ዘንድ፣ ምናልባት ወደ ደህንነት ይመጡ ዘንድ—

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

፲፬ ለጊዜው እነርሱን ወደ እውነተኛው እምነት የመመለሱ ትግል ከንቱ ነበር። እናም ታሪካችንና እኛን፣ ደግሞም የአባቶቻችንን ባህል ሁሉ የሚቻላቸው ከሆነ ያጠፉ ዘንድ በቁጣቸው ማሉ።

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

፲፭ ስለሆነም፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ታሪካችንን ማስቀመጥ እንደሚቻለው ስለማውቅ፣ ያለማቋረጥ ወደ እርሱ ጮህኩኝ፣ እርሱም እንዲህ ብሎኛልና፡ በክርስቶስ ስም እንደምትቀበል ካመንህ ምንም ነገር በእምነት ብትጠይቅ ትቀበላለህ።

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

፲፮ እናም እኔ እምነት ነበረኝ፣ እናም መዝገቦቼን እንዲያስቀምጥ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ጮህኩ፤ በእርሱ ዘመን ለላማናውያን እንደሚያመጣውም ከእኔ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገባ።

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

፲፯ እናም እኔ ኢኖስ፣ በገባው ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት እንደሚሆን እውቃለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ነፍሴም እረፍትን አገኘኝ።

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

፲፰ እናም ጌታ አለኝ፡ አባቶችህም ደግሞ ስለዚህ ነገር ከእኔ ይፈልጉ ነበር፤ እናም ለእነርሱ እንደእምነታቸው ይደረግላቸዋል፤ እምነታቸው ልክ እንደእነተው ነበርና።

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

፲፱ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኢኖስ፣ የሚመጡትን ነገሮች በመተንበይ በኔፋውያን ህዝብ መካከል ተጓዥኩ፣ እናም የሰማኋቸውንና ያየኋቸውን ነገሮች መስከርኩ።

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

፳፩ እናም የኔፊ ህዝብ ላማናውያንን ወደ እውነተኛው የእግዚአብሔር እምነት እንዲመልሱ በትጋት እንደሚመክሩ እመስክራለሁ። ነገር ግን ስራችን ከንቱ ነበር፤ ጥላቻቸው የፀና ነበር፤ እናም በመጥፎ ተፈጥሮአቸው ተመርተው ስለነበር አረመኔ፣ አሰፈሪም፣ ደም የተጠማ ህዝብና፣ ጣኦትን አምላኪና ርኩሳን ሆኑ፤ የታደኑ አውሬዎችን በመመገብ፤ በድንኳን መኖርና፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ አጭር የቆዳ ግልድም አገልድመው እራሳቸውን ተላጭተው ተዘዋወሩ፤ እናም ችሎታቸውም ስለቀሰችና ደጋን እንዲሁም ምሳር ነበር። እናም ብዙዎች ከጥሬ ሰጋ በሰተቀር ምንም አይበሉም ነበር፤ እናም እነሱ ያለማቋረጥ እኛን ለማጥፋት ይፈለጉ ነበር።

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝብ መሬትን ያርሱ ነበር፤ እናም ሁሉንም አይነት እህልና ፍራፍሬ ያበቅሉ፣ የከብት መንጋዎችን፣ ከሁሉም የከብት አይነት መንጋዎችን፣ ፍየሎችን፣ የሜዳ ፍየሎችን፣ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ ፈረሶችን ያረቡ ነበር።

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

፳፫ እናም ከእኛ መካከል እጅግ ብዙ ነቢያት ነበሩ። እናም ህዝቡ ለመረዳት የሚያስቸግር አንገተ ደንዳና ነበር።

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

፳፬ እናም እጅግ አስከፊ ከሆነው የጦርነት ሰበካና ትንቢት፣ እናም ፀብና ጥፋት፣ እንዲሁም ያለማቋረጥ ሞትን ከሚያስታውሳቸውና፣ ከዘለዓለማዊ ጊዜ፣ ፍርድና ከእግዚአብሔር ኃይል፣ በጌታ ፍርሃት ያለማቋረጥም ይጠበቁ ዘንድ ካነሳሳቸው በሰተቀር ምንም የለም። ከእነዚህ ነገሮችና እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነው ግልፅ ንግግር በሰተቀር ወደ ጥፋት በፍጥነት ከመሄድ የሚጠብቃቸው ምንም ነገር አልነበረም አላለሁ። እናም በእንደዚህ አይነት እነሱን በተመለከተ እፅፋለሁ።

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

፳፭ እናም በጊዜዬ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል ጦርነቶችን ተመልክቻለሁ።

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እየሸመገልኩ ሄድኩ፣ እናም አባታችን ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ አንድ መቶ ሰባ ዘጠኝ አመታት አለፉ።

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

፳፯ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ለዚህ ህዝብ መስበክና እንድትነብይ፣ እናም በክርስቶስ ባለው እውነት መሰረት ቃሉን እንድናገር እንደተገፋፋሁ በቶሎ ወደ መቃብሬ መሄድ እንዳለብኝ ተመለከትኩ። እናም በዘመኔ ሁሉ ተናግረዋለሁ፣ በዚህም ከዓለም በላይ ተደስቼበታለሁ።

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

እናም ከቤዛዬ ጋር ወደሆነው ማረፊያዬ በቶሎ እሄዳለሁ፤ በእርሱ እንደማርፍ አውቃለሁና። እናም የሚሞተው የማይሞተውን በሚተካበትና፣ በእርሱ ፊት በምቆምበት ቀን እደሰታለሁ፤ ከእዚያም ፊቴንም በደሰታ እያለሁ፣ እርሱም ይለኛል፡ የተባረከው ወደ እኔ ና፣ በእባቴም ቤት የተዘጋጀልህ ቦታ አለ። አሜን።

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

መፅሐፈ ጄረም

The Book of Jarom

፩ አሁን እነሆ፣ እኔ ጄረም፣ በአባቴ፣ ኢኖስ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት የእኛ የትውልድ ሐረግ ይጠበቅ ዘንድ ጥቂት ቃላት እፅፋለሁ።

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

፪ እናም እነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ትንሽ ቦታ ያላቸው በመሆኑ፣ እና እነዚህ ነገሮች የሚፃፉት ለወንድሞቻችን ለማናውያን ጥቅም ስለሆነ፣ በመሆኑም ጥቂት መፃፊ አስፈላጊ ነው፤ ነገር ግን የእኔን ትንቢትም ሆነ ራዕይ አልፎም። አባቶቼ ከጻፉት ላይ የበለጠ ምን መፃፍ ይቻላል? እነርሱ የደህንነትን ዕቅድ አልገለጹም? እኔ እላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ይህ ለእኔ ብቁ ነው።

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

፫ እነሆ፣ በልባቸው ጠጣርነትና፣ በጀርእቸው መደንቆር፣ እናም በአዕምሮአቸው መታወርና፣ በአንገተ ደንዳናነታቸው ምክንያት፤ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ብዙ መሰራቴ አስፈላጊ ነው፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እግዚአብሔር ለእነርሱ እጅግ መሀሪ ነው፣ እናም እስከአሁንም ከምድረ ገፅ አላጠፋቸውም።

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

፬ እናም ብዙ ራዕይ ያላቸው ብዙዎች በመካከላችን አሉ፤ ምክንያቱም ሁሉም አንገተ ደንዳና አይደሉምና። እናም አንገተ ደንዳና ያልሆኑ እምነት ያላቸው ሁሉ፤ እንደ እምነታቸው፣ ለሰው ልጆች ነገሮችን ከሚገልፀው ከመንፈስ ቅዱስ ጋር ህብረት አላቸው።

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

፭ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ሁለት መቶ ዓመታት አለፉ፣ የኔፊ ህዝቦች በምድሪቷ ላይ በረቱም። የሙሴን ህግና የሰንበትን ቀን ለጌታ ቅዱስ አድርገው በመጠበቅ አስተዋሉ። ኃይማኖትንም አላረከሱም፤ ወይም አይሳደሱም። እናም የምድሪቷን ህጎች እጅግ የጠበቁ ነበሩ።

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

፮ እናም እነርሱና፣ ለማናውያን ደግሞ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ በብዛት ተበታትነው ነበር። እናም ከኔፋውያን ይበልጥ እጅግ ብዙ ነበሩ፤ እናም መግደል ይወዱ ነበርና፣ የዓራዊትን ደም ይጠጡ ነበር።

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ከእኛ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ብዙ ጊዜ መጥተው ነበር። ነገር ግን ነገሥታቶቻችንና መሪዎቻችን በጌታ እምነት ኃይል ሰዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ህዝቡን የጌታን መንገድ አስተማሩ፤ ስለሆነም፣ እኛ ለማናውያንን ተቋቋምን፣ እንዲሁም ከምድራችን አስወገድናቸው፣ እናም ለከተሞቻችን ወይም የውርሳችን ቦታ የሆነውን ማንኛውንም መከላከያ መሰራት ጀመርን።

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

፳፯ እናም እጅግ ተባዛነና፤ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ተሠራጨን፤ እናም በወርቅና በብር እንዲሁም በከበሩ ነገሮችና፤ በመልካም የእንጨት ጥበብም፤ በመገንባትም፤ በማሽኖችም፤ እንዲሁም ደግሞ በብረትና መዳብ፤ እንዲሁም በነሀስ ምድሩን ለማረስ የሚያስችሉ መሳሪያዎችን እንዲሁም የጦር መሳሪያዎች በመስራት፤ አዎን ሹል ጫፍ ያለው ቀስትና፤ ሰይፍ፤ ጦር እናም ለጦርነት ሁሉንም አይነት ዝግጅት በማድረግ እጅግ ሀብታም ሆንን።

፳፰ እናም ላማናውያንን ለመገናኘት እንደዚህ እየተዘጋጀን እያለን፤ እነርሱ በእኛ ላይ ሊያይሉብን አልቻሉም። ነገር ግን ለአባቶቻችን እንዲህ በማለት የተናገረው የጌታ ቃል ተረጋግጦ ነበር፤ እናንተ የእኔን ትዕዛዛት እስከጠበቃችሁ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ትበለፀጋላችሁ።

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ ነቢያት በእግዚአብሔር ቃል መሰረት እነርሱ ትዕዛዛትን ካልጠበቁ፤ ነገር ግን ወደ መተላለፍ ከወደቁ፤ ከምድር ፊት መጥፋት እንዳለባቸው የኔሬን ህዝብ አስፈራርተው ነበር።

፴፬ ስለሆነም በነቢያትና፤ ካህናትና፤ መምህራን ህዝቦችን የሙሴን ህግጋትና የተሰጠበትን አላማ በማስተማር፤ ወደመሲህ ወደፊት እንዲመለከቱና እርሱ እንደመጣም አይነት እንደሚመጣ እንዲያምኑ በትእግስት አጥብቀው በመምከር በትጋት አገለገሉ። እናም በዚህ ሁኔታ አስተምረዋቸው ነበር።

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህን በማድረግ ከምድር ፊት እንዳይጠፉ ጠበቋቸው፤ ልባቸውንም በቃላት ወቀሱት፤ በማከታተልም ለንስሀ አነሳሷቸው።

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ጊዜ ከነበረው የጦርነትና ግጭት እንዲሁም የፀብ ሁኔታ ሁለት መቶ ሠላሳ ስምንት ዓመታት አለፉ።

፵፬ እናም እኔ ጄረም፤ ስሌዳዎቹ ትንሽ በመሆናቸው፤ ከዚህ የበለጠ አልፎም። ነገር ግን እነሆ፤ ወንድሞቼ፤ ወደ ሌላኛው የኔሬ ስሌዳዎች መሄድ ትችላላችሁ፤ እነሆ፤ በእነርሱ ላይ ይፃፉ ዘንድ ባደረጉት፤ ወይም እንደ ነገሥታቱ አፃፍ የጦርነት ታሪኮች ተቀርፀዋል።

፵፰ እናም እንደ አባቶቼ ትዕዛዛት መሰረት ይጠበቁ ዘንድ እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች ለወንድ ልጄ፤ ለኦምኒ፤ አስረክባለሁ።

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

መፅሐፈ ኦምኒ

፩ እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ኦምኒ፣ በአባቴ ጄረም በመታዘዘ፣ የትውልዳችንን ሐረግ ለማቆየት በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ ጥቂት መፃፍ አለብኝ—

፪ ስለሆነም፣ በዘመኔ ህዝቤን ኔፋውያንን በጠላቶቻቸው ለማናውያን እጅ እንዳይወድቁ ለመጠበቅ በሰይፍ ብዙ መዋጋቴን እንድታውቁልኝ እፈልጋለሁ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ራሴ ኃጢአተኛ ሰው ነኝ፣ እናም ማድረግ እንደሚገባኝ የጌታን ህግና ትዕዛዛት አልጠበቅሁም።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁለት መቶ ሰባ ስድስት አመታት አለፉ፣ ብዙ የሰላም ወቅት ነበረንም፤ እናም ብዙ የከፋ ጦርነትና የደም መፋሰስ ወቅት ነበረን። አዎን፣ በአጠቃላይ ሁለት መቶ ሰማንያ ሁለት ዓመታት አለፉ፣ እናም እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች እንደ አባቶቼ ትዕዛዝ አስቀመጥሁት፤ እነርሱንም ለልጄ አማሮን ሰጠሁ። እናም አበቃሁ።

፬ እናም አሁን እኔ አማሮን፣ ጥቂት የሆኑትን በአባቴ መፅሐፍ ውስጥ የፃፍኩትን ፅፌ አለሁ።

፭ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ሶስት መቶ ሀያ ዓመታት አለፉ፣ እናም እጅግ ክፉ የሆኑት ኔፋውያን ጠፉ።

፮ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እነርሱን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ካሰወጣቸውና በጠላቶቻቸው እጅ እንዳይወድቁ ባለመፍቀዱ ጠብቆ ካቆያቸው በኋላ፣ አዎን፣ ለአባቶቻችን እናንተ ትዕዛዛቴን እስካልጠበቃችሁ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ አትበለፀጉም ብሎ የተናገረው ቃል እንዳይረጋገጥ አይፈቅድምና።

፯ ስለሆነም፣ ጌታ በታላቅ ፍርድ ኅብኝቷቸዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ፃድቃኖችን እንዳይጠፉ አስቀርቷል፣ ነገር ግን እነርሱን ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ አድኗቸዋል።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰሌዳዎቼን ለወንድሜ ቼሚሽ ሰጠሁት።

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

፱ እናም እኔ ቼሚሽ ወንድሜ በፃፈበት መፅሐፍ ላይ የምፅፋቸውን ጥቂት ነገሮችን ፃፍኩ፤ እነሆም በመጨረሻ በራሱ እጅ የፃፋቸውን ተመልክቻለሁ፤ ይህንንም የጻፈው እርሱ ለእኔ በሰጠኝ ቀን ነበር። እናም እንደ አባቶቻችን ትዕዛዛት መሰረት መዝገቡን ጠብቀን ያቆየናቸው በዚህ መልኩ ነበር። እናም አበቃለሁ።

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

፲ እነሆ፣ እኔ አቢናዶም፣ የቼሚሽ ልጅ ነኝ። እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል ብዙ ጦርነቶችንና ፀቦችን ተመልክቻለሁ፤ እናም እኔ ወንድሞቼን ለመከላከል በራሴ ሰይፍ የብዙ ላማናውያንን ነፍስ አጥፍቻለሁ።

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

፲፩ እናም እነሆ፣ የዚህ ህዝብ ታሪክ የተቀረፀው ነገሥታቱ በነበሩአቸው ሰሌዳዎች ላይ እንደ ትውልዳቸው መሰረት ነው፤ እና እኔ ከተፃፉት በሰተቀር ትንቢትም ሆነ ራዕይ አለውቅም፤ ስለሆነም፣ የተፃፉት በቂ ናቸው። እናም አበቃለሁ።

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

፲፪ እነሆ፣ እኔ አማሌቂ፣ የአቢናዶም ልጅ ነኝ። እነሆ፣ የዛራሔምላ ምድር ንጉስ ስለሆነው ሞዛያ ጥቂት እናገራለሁ፤ እነሆም ከኔፊ ምድር እንዲወጣ፣ እናም የጌታን ድምፅ የሰሙ ደግሞ ብዙዎችም ከእነርሱ ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳው መሸሽ እንዳለባቸው በጌታ ማሰጠንቀቂያ ተሰጥቶት ስለነበረ—

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እንዳዘዘው አደረገ። እናም ብዙዎች የጌታን ድምፅ የሰሙ ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ፤ በብዙ ሰብከትና ትንቢቶችም ይመሩ ነበር። እናም ያለማቋረጥ በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ተገሰፁ፤ በምድረበዳው ሰጥ ዛራሔምላ ወደሚባለው ምድር እስከሚመጡ ድረስ በክንዱ ኃይልም ተመሩ።

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

፲፬ እናም የዛራሔምላ ህዝብ ተብለው የሚጠሩትን ህዝቦች አገኙ። በዛራሔምላ ህዝብ መካከል አሁን ታላቅ ደስታ ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ የዛራሔምላ እጅግ ተደሰተ፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ የአይሁዶችን ታሪክ ከያዘው የነሀስ ሰሌዳዎች ጋር የሞዛያን ህዝብ ልኳልና።

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ፣ የይሁዳ ንጉሥ ሴደቅያስ፣ ወደ ባቢሎን በምርኮ በተወሰደበት ጊዜ የዛራሔምላ ህዝብ ከኢየሩሳሌም እንደወጡ ተረዳ።

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

፲፮ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ተጓዙ፤ እናም በጌታ እጅ ሞዛያ ወዳገኘው ምድር ታላቁን ውሃ ተሻገሩ፤ ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ በዚያ ኖሩም።

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

፲፯ እናም ሞዛያ ባገኛቸው ጊዜ፣ በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ነበሩ። ይሁን እንጂ፣ ብዙ ጦርነትና የከፋ ፀብ ነበራቸው፣ እናም ከጊዜ ወደ ጊዜ በሰይፍ ወደቁ፤ ቋንቋቸውም ተበላሽቶ ነበር፣ ምንም የታሪካቸውንም መዝገብ አለመጡም ነበር፤ እንዲሁም ፈጣሪያቸው መኖሩን ካዱ፣ እናም ሞዛያ ወይም የሞዛያ ህዝብ ሊረዷቸው አልቻሉም።

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

፲፰ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ እነርሱ የእርሱን ቋንቋ እንዲማሩ አደረገ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሞዛያ ቋንቋ ከተማሩ በኋላ፣ ዛራሔምላ የአባቶቹን ትውልድ ሐረግ ባሰታወሰው መጠን ሰጠ፤ እናም ተጻፏ፣ ነገር ግን በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ውስጥ አይደለም።

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የዛራሔምላና የሞዛያ ህዝብ በእንድነት ተዋሃዱ፤ እናም ሞዛያ ንጉሳቸው ይሆን ዘንድ ተሾመ።

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሞዛያ ዘመን፣ በላዩ ላይ የተቀረጸበት ትልቅ ድንጋይ መጣለት፤ እናም ጽሑፉን በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰጦታ ተረጎመው።

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

፳፩ እናም ኮርያንቱመር ስለሚባል አንድ ሰው ታሪክና ስለህዝቡ ማለቅ ታሪክ ይናገሩ ነበር። እናም ቆሪያንተመር በዛራሔምላ ህዝብ ተገኝቶ ነበር፤ እርሱም ለዘጠኝ ወራት ያህል ከእነርሱ ጋር ኖረ።

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

፳፪ አባቶቹን በተመለከተ ደግሞ ትንሽ ቃላት ተናገረ። እናም የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቹ የመጡት ጌታ የህዝቡን ቋንቋ በቀላቀለበት ጊዜ ከግንብ ነው፤ እናም ትክክለኛው የጌታ ቁጣ በፍርድ መሰረት ወረደባቸው፤ እናም አጥንታቸው በሰሜናዊው ምድር ተበትነዋል።

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

፳፫ እነሆ፣ እኔ አማሌቂ በሞዛያ ዘመን ተወለድሁ፤ እናም ሞቱን አስከማይ ዘንድ ኖርሁ፤ እናም ልጄ ቢንያም በምትኩ ነገሰ።

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

፳፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በንጉስ ቢንያም ዘመን የከፋ ጦርነትና የደም መፋሰስ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል ተመልክቷል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ኔፋውያን በእነርሱ ላይ ብዙ ብልጫ አገኙ፤ እዎን፣ እንዲህም ሆኖ ንጉስ ቢንያም ከዛራሔምላ ምድር አስወጣቸው።

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ማርጀት ጀመርሁ፤ እናም ዘርም ስላልነበረኝና ንጉስ ቢንያም በጌታ ፊት ትክክለኛ ሰው መሆኑን ስለማውቅ፣ ስለሆነም፣ ሰዎች ሁሉ ወደ እስራኤል ቅዱስ እግዚአብሔር እንዲመጡና፣ በትንቢትም፣ በራዕይም፣ በመላዕክት አገልግሎትም፣ በልሳን በመናገር ስጦታም፣ በልሳን መናገርን በማስተርጎም ስጦታም፣ እንዲሁም መልካም በሆኑ ነገሮች ሁሉ እንዲያምኑ በጥብቅ በመምከር እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች ለእርሱ እስጣለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ከጌታ ከሚመጣው በስተቀር መልካም የሆነ ምንም ነገር የለምና፤ እናም መጥፎ የሆነው ከዲያብሎስ ይመጣል።

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

፳፮ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ የእስራኤል ቅዱስ ወደ ሆነው ክርስቶስ እንድትመጡና፣ የማዳኑን ኃይል እንድትካፈሉና፣ የቤዛነቱን ኃይል እንድታገኙ እፈልጋለሁ። እዎን፣ ወደ እርሱ ኑ፣ እናም መላ ነፍሳችሁን ለእርሱ እንደ መስዋዕትነት አቅርቡ፣ በፀሎታችሁና ያማችሁ ቀጥሎም፣ እስከመጨረሻው ፅኑም፤ እናም ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ ትድናላችሁ።

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

፳፯ እናም አሁን ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ለመመለስ ወደ ምድረበዳው የሄዱትን የተወሰኑ ሰዎች በሚመለከት በመጠን እናገራለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም የርስት ምድራቸውን ለመውረስ የተመኙ ብዙ ሰዎች ነበሩና።

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

፳፰ ስለሆነም፣ እነርሱ ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄዱ። እናም መሪያቸው ጠንካራና ኃይለኛ ሰው ነበር፣ እንዲሁም አንገተ ደንዳና ሰው ነበር፤ ስለሆነም፣ በእነርሱ መካከል ፀብ እንዲኖር አደረገ፤ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ከሀምሳዎቹ በቀር ሁሉም ተገደሉ፣ እናም እንደገና ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመለሱ።

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሎች ቁጥራቸው ከፍ ያለውን ደግሞ ወሰዱ፣ እናም ወደ ምድረበዳ እንደገና ጉዞአቸውን ቀጠሉ።

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

፴ እናም እኔ አማሌቂ፣ ከእነርሱ ጋር የሄደ ወንድም ነበረኝ፤ እናም እነርሱን በተመለከተ ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ አላውቅም። ወደ መቃብሪያ መውረዱ ነው፤ እነዚህ ስሌዳዎችም ሙሉ ናቸው። እናም ንግግሪን አበቃለሁ።

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

የሞርሞን ቃላት

፩ እናም አሁን እኔ ሞርሞን ለልጄ ሞርኒ የፃፍኩትን ታሪክ ለመስጠት እየተዘጋጀሁ እያለሁ፣ እነሆ፣ የህዝቤን የኔፋውያንን በሙሉ የመጥፋትን ምስክር ሆኛለሁ።

፪ እናም እነዚህን መዛግብት ለልጄ የሰጠሁት ክርስቶስ ከመጣ ከብዙ መቶ ዓመታት በኋላ ነው፤ እርሱም የህዝቡን ፈፅሞ መጥፋት ይመስክራል ብዬ አሰባለሁ። ነገር ግን አንድ ቀን እነርሱን እንዲጠቅማቸው ዘንድ፣ እነርሱን በተመለከተ እናም ክርስቶስን በተመለከተ ጥቂት ይፅፍ ዘንድ እግዚአብሔር ከእርሱ እንዲድን ይፍቀድ።

፫ እናም አሁን፣ የፃፍኩትን በተመለከተ በመጠን እናገራለሁ፤ አማሌቄ ስለተናገራቸው ከኔፊ ስሌዳዎች ጀምሮ እስከ ንጉስ ቢንያም ድረስ፣ ያሉትን አሳጥሬ ከፃፍኩ በኋላ፣ የተሰጠኝን መዝገብ መረመርሁ፣ እናም ከያዕቆብ እስከ ንጉስ ቢንያም ንግስና ድረስ ትንሹን የነቢያት ታሪክ የያዙትን እነዚህን ስሌዳዎችና ደግሞ ብዙዎቹን የኔፊን ቃላት አገኘሁ።

፬ እናም በእነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ላይ ያሉት ነገሮች እኔን ያስደስቱኛል፣ ምክንያቱም የክርስቶስን መምጣት ስለሚተነብዩ፣ እናም አባቶቼ ብዙዎቹ እንደተፈፀሙ ያውቃሉ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እስከአሁን ድረስ ብዙ ነገሮች እኛን በተመለከተ የተተነብዩት እንደተፈፀሙና ከዚያ በኋላ የሚሆኑትም ብዙዎችም በእርግጥ መፈፀም እንዳለባቸው አውቃለሁ—

፭ ስለሆነም፣ በእነርሱ ላይ ምዝገባዬን ለመጨረስ እነዚህን ነገሮች መረጥሁ፣ ቀሪውን ታሪክ ከኔፊ ስሌዳዎች ላይ እወስዳለሁ፣ እናም ህዝቤን በተመለከቱ ነገሮች መቶኛውን መፃፍ አልችልም።

፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ትንቢቶችንና ራዕዮችን የያዙትን እነዚህን ስሌዳዎች እወስዳለሁ፣ እናም ከቀሪው ፅሁፌ ጋር አስቀምጣቸዋለሁ፣ ለእኔ ሞርሞን ናቸው፤ እናም ለወንድሞቼ ሞርሞን እንደሚሆኑ አውቃለሁ።

፯ እናም ይህን ለብልህ ዓላማ አደርገዋለሁ፤ በእኔ ውስጥ ያለው የጌታ መንፈስ በዝግታ ድምፅ ተናግሮኛልና። እናም አሁን፣ ሁሉንም ነገሮች አላውቅም፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ የሚመጡትን ነገሮች ሁሉ ያውቃል፤ ስለሆነም፣ እንደፈቃዱ ለማድረግ በእኔ ይሰራል።

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesies and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

፳፯ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔር የምጸልየው ወንድሞቼን በተመለከተ ነው። ይኸውም እነርሱ እንዴ እንደገና እግዚአብሔርን ወደማወቅ፣ አዎን፣ በክርስቶስ ቤዛነት ይመጡ ዘንድ፤ እንዴ እንደገና የተወደዱ ህዝቦች ይሆኑ ዘንድ ነው።

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

፳፱ እናም አሁን እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ከኔሬ ከወሰድኳቸው ሰሌዳዎች ምዝገባዬን ለመጨረስ እቀጥላለሁ፤ እናም ይህን የማደርገው እግዚአብሔር በሰጠኝ እውቀትና መረዳት መሠረት ነው።

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

፲ እለሆነም፣ አንዲህ ሆነ አማሌቂ እነዚህን ሰሌዳዎች ለንጉስ ቢንያም በእጁ ከሰጠው በኋላ፣ ወሰዳቸውና ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ እስከ ንጉስ ቢንያም ዘመን ድረስ ለንጉሶች የተላለፉትን ታሪክ ከያዙት ከሌሎች ሰሌዳዎች ጋር አስቀመጣቸው።

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

፲፩ እናም ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ በእጁ እስከሚገቡ ድረስ ከንጉስ ቢንያም ተላልፏል። እናም እኔ ሞርሞን ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከሚመጣው እንዲጠበቁ ወደ እግዚአብሔር እጸልያለሁ። እንደሚጠበቁም አውቃለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በተጻፈው በእግዚአብሔር ቃል መሰረት ከውሰጣቸው ህዝቦቹና ወንድሞቻቸው በታላቁና በመጨረሻው ቀን የሚፈረዱባቸው ብዙ ታላቅ ነገሮች በእነርሱ ተፅፏል።

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ ይህን ንጉስ ቢንያምን በተመለከተ— በህዝቡ መካከል ጥቂት ፀብ ነበረበት።

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

፲፫ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች ከህዝቡ ጋር ሊዋጉ ከኔሬ ምድር ወረዱ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ንጉስ ቢንያም ወታደሮቹን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰበ እናም ተቋቋማቸው፤ በገዛ ክንዱ ብርታት በላባን ሰይፍ ተዋጋቸው።

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

፲፬ እናም በጌታ ኃይል ብዙ ሺህ ላማናውያንን እስከሚገድሉ ድረስ ከጠላቶቻቸው ጋር ተጣሉ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከውርስ ምድራቸው ሙሉ በሙሉ እስከሚያሰወጧቸው ድረስ ከላማናውያን ጋር ተዋጉ።

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሀሰተኛ ክርስቶሶች ከነበሩና፣ አፋቸው ከተዘጋና፣ እንደ ወንጀላቸው ከተቀጡ በኋላ፤

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

፲፮ እናም በህዝቡ መካከል ሀሰተኞቹ ነቢያት፣ ሀሰተኛ ሰባኪዎችና መምህራን ከነበሩ፣ እናም እነዚህ ሁሉ እንደ ወንጀላቸው ከተቀጡ በኋላ፤ እናም ከብዙ ፀብና ብዙዎች ተገንጥለው ወደ ላማናውያን የሄዱ ከነበሩ በኋላም፤ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሰ ቢንያም፣ ከህዝቡ መካከል ከነበሩት ቅዱስ ነቢያት እርዳታ ጋር—

፲፯ እነሆም ንጉሰ ቢንያም ቅዱስ ሰው ነበረ፣ እናም በህዝቡም ላይ በፅድቅ ነገሰ፤ ብዙ ቅዱሳን ሰዎች በምድሪቱ ላይ ነበሩም፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርንም ቃል በኃይልና በሰልጣን ተናገሩ፤ በህዝብ እንገተ ደንዳናነት የተነሳም ብዙ ወሳኝ ቃላትን ተጠቀሙ—

፲፰ ስለሆነም፣ በቅዱሳን ነቢያት ድጋፍ፣ ንጉሰ ቢንያም፣ እናም ነቢያት፣ በሰውነቱ ሙሉ ኃይልና በእኩልነት ነፍሱ ሁሉ በመሰራት፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ እንደ በድጋሚ ሰላምን መሠረተ።

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

መፅሐፈ ሞዛያ

The Book of Mosiah

ሞዛያ ፩

Mosiah 1

፩ እናም አሁን የንጉሥ ቢንያም ከሆኑት ህዝቦች ሁሉ መካከል በዛራሌምላ ምድር ሁሉ ከዚያ በኋላ ፀብ አልነበረም፣ ስለዚህ ንጉሥ ቢንያም በቀሪው ዘመኑ ሁሉ ዘላቂ ሠላም ነበረው።

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሦስት ወንዶች ልጆች ነበሩት፤ እናም ስማቸውን ሞዛያና፣ ሔሎሩምና፣ ሔሎማን ብሎ ጠራቸው። እናም አስተዋይ ሰዎች ይሆኑ ዘንድና፣ በጌታ እጅ የተሰጣቸውን በአባቶቻቸው እንደበት ስለተነገሩት ትንቢቶች ያውቁ ዘንድ በአባቶቻቸው ቋንቋ ሁሉ እንዲማሩ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

፫ እናም ደግሞ በነሀስ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረፀውን ታሪክ በተመለከተ እንዲህ ሲል አስተማራቸው፣ እነዚህን ታሪኮችና ትዕዛዛት የያዙት እነዚህ ሠሌዳዎች ባይኖሩ ኖሮ በእሁኑም ጊዜ እንኳን ቢሆን የእግዚአብሔርን ሚስጥር ባለማወቅ በድንቁርና እንደምንሰቃይ ልጆቹ እንድታስታውሱ አፈልጋለሁ።

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

፬ በእነዚህ ሠሌዳዎች እርዳታ ካልሆነ በቀር አባታችን ሌሂ እነዚህን ሁሉ ነገሮች ለልጆቹ በማስታወስ ለማስተማር አይቻለውም ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም የግብፃውያንን ቋንቋ የተማረ ስለሆነ እነዚህን ፅሁፎች ለማንበብ ይቻለዋል፣ እናም ልጆቹ ልጆቻቸውን ማስተማር ይችሉ ዘንድ ይህንኑ ልጆቹን አስተማራቸው፣ እናም ስለዚህ እስከዚህ ጊዜም ድረስ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ይፈፀማሉ።

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

፭ ልጆቹ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ እኛ የእርሱን ሚስጥር እንብብን እንገነዘብ ዘንድ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ የተቀመጡትና የተጠበቁት እነዚህ ነገሮች፣ እንዲሁም ሁልጊዜም ከዐይናችን ስር ያሉት ትዕዛዛቱ ባይኖሩ ኖሮ አባቶቻችንም እንኳን ቢሆኑ አምነት አጥተው ይመነጡ ነበር፣ እናም ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ምንም እንደማያውቁት፣ ወይም በሚያስተምሩአቸው ጊዜም ስህተት በሆነው በአባቶቻቸው ወግ ምክንያት እንደማያምኑት ወንድሞቻችን እንደላማናውያን እንሆን ነበር።

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

፮ ልጆቼ ሆይ፣ እነዚህ አባባሎች እውነት መሆናቸውን፣ እናም ደግሞ እነዚህ መዛግብት እውነት እንደሆኑ እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ። እናም ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከአሁን የአባቶቻችንን አባባሎች መዛግብትን የያዙ የኔሬ ሰሌዳዎችን ደግሞ ተመልከቱ፣ እነርሱም እውነተኛ ናቸው፤ እናም እኛ የእነርሱን እርግጠኝነት እናውቃለን ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በዐይኖቻችን ፊት ቀርበዋል።

፯ እናም አሁን፣ ልጆቼ፣ እናንተ ትጠቀሙ ዘንድ እነርሱን በትጋት መፈተሽን እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም ጌታ ለአባቶቻችን በገባው ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት በምድሪቱ ትበለፀጉ ዘንድ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እንድትጠብቁ እፈልጋለሁ።

፰ እናም በዚህ መፅሐፍ ያልተጻፉትን በጣም ብዙ ተጨማሪ ነገሮችን ንጉስ ቢንያም ለልጆቹ አስተማረ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ቢንያም ልጆቹን ማስተማር ከጨረሰ በኋላ አረጀ፣ እናም በቅርቡ ምድር ሁሉ ወደሚሄዱበት መሄድ እንዳለበት ተመልከተ፤ ስለዚህ መንግሥቱን ከልጆቹ ለአንደኛው ልጁ መስጠት ተገቢ መሆኑን አሰበ።

፲ ስለዚህ፣ ሞዛያን በፊቱ እንዲመጣ አደረገ፤ እናም እነዚህ ለእርሱ የተናገሩቸው ቃላት ናቸው፡ ልጄ በዚህ ምድር ሁሉ በዚህ ህዝብ ሁሉ ወይም በዛራሔምላ ህዝብ እናም በምድሪቱ በሚኖሩት በሞዛያ ህዝብ መካከል በአንድ ላይ ይሰበሰቡ ዘንድ አዋጅን እንድታውጁ እፈልጋለሁ፤ በማግሰቱም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለእኛ በሰጠን በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ አንተ ንጉስና ገዢ መሆንህን በራሴ እንደበት ለህዝቤ አስታውቃለሁ።

፲፩ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ካወጣቸው ህዝቦች መካከል ይለዩ ዘንድ ለዚህ ህዝብ ስም አሰጣለሁ፤ እናም ይህንን የማደርገው እነርሱ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ትጉህ ስለነበሩ ነው።

፲፪ እናም በመተላለፍ ካልሆነ በቀር ሊደመሰስ የማይችል ስም አሰጣቸዋለሁ።

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

፲፫ አዎን፤ እናም በተጨማሪ እልህህ፤ እነዚህ እጅግ በጌታ የተወደዱ ሰዎች ወደ መተላለፍ ቢወድቁ፤ እናም ኃጢአተኞችና፤ ዝሙትን አድራጊዎች ቢሆኑ፤ ጌታ አሳልፎ ይሰጣቸዋል፤ በዚህም አንድ ወንድሞቻቸውም ደካሞች ይሆናሉ፤ እናም ከዚህ ቀደም አባቶቻችንን እንዲዳናቸው ወደር በሌለውና ድንቅ ሃይሉ ከእነግዲህ አያድናቸውም።

፲፬ እንዲህም እልህህ፤ ለአባቶቻችን ባደረገው ጥበቃ እጁን ባይዘረጋ ኖሮ እነርሱ በላማናውያን እጅ በወደቁ እናም በጥላቻቸው ተገጂ በሆኑ ነበር።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ቢንያም ለልጁ ንግግሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፤ የንግስታቱን አገዛዝ የተመለከቱ ጉዳዮችን ሁሉ በኃላፊነት ሰጠው።

፲፮ እናም በተጨማሪ፤ ደግሞ በነሀስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፉትን ታሪኮች በተመለከተ፤ እናም ደግሞ የኔፊን ስሌዳዎች በተመለከተና፤ ደግሞ የላባንን ሳንጃ፤ እንዲሁም እያንዳንዳቸው ለእርሱ በሚሰጡት ትኩረትና ትጋት መሰረት ይመሩበት ዘንድ በጌታ እጅ የተዘጋጀውን አባቶቻቸውን ከምድረበዳ የመራውን ኳሱን ወይም መሪውን ኃላፊነት ሰጠው።

፲፯ ስለዚህ፤ እምነት ባጡበት ጊዜ በጉዞአቸው አልበለፀጉም ወይም እድገትንም አላገኙም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ወደኋላ ተወሰደው ነበር፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን መከፋት በእነርሱ ላይ አመጣባቸው፤ እናም ስለዚህ ሀላፊነታቸውን እንዲያስታውሱ ለማነሳሳት በረሃብና በቁስል መቅሰፍት ተመተው ነበር።

፲፰ እናም አሁን፤ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዳያ ሔደና፤ አባቱ እንዳዘዘው አደረገ፤ እናም በዛራሔምላ ምድር ላሉት ህዝቦች ሁሉ ወደ ቤተ መቅደሱ በመሄድ አባቱ የሚናገረውን ቃላት እንዲያደምጡ በአንድ ላይ ይሰበሰቡ ዘንድ አወጀላቸው።

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

ሞዛያ ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ አባቱ እንዲያደርግ እንዲዘዘው ከፈጸመና፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ አዋጅን ካደረገ በኋላ፣ ንጉስ ቢንያም የሚነግራቸውን ቃላት ለማዳመጥ ወደቤተ መቅደሱ ለመምጣት ህዝቡ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ በአንድ ላይ ተሰበሰቡ።

፪ እናም እጅግ በርካታ እንዲያውም በጣም በዝተው ስለነበረ አልቆጠሯቸውም ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም በምድሪቱ ላይ በእጅግ ተባዛተውና በጣም ታላቅ ሆነው ነበርና።

፫ እናም ደግሞ በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት መስዋዕት ያቀርቡ ዘንድ፣ እናም መስዋዕቱን ያቃጥሉ ዘንድ ከመንጋዎቻቸው የመጀመሪያውን አመጡ፤

፬ እናም ደግሞ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ላወጣቸውና፣ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ላዳናቸውን፣ እንዲሁም አስተማሪዎቻቸው ይሆኑ ዘንድ ትክክለኛ ሰዎችን ለሾመላቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ሰላምን የመሰረተውንና፣ ሰዎች ሁሉ እንዲደሰቱና በእግዚአብሔርና በሁሉም ሰዎች ፍቅር እንዲሞሉ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እንዲጠብቁ ያስተማራቸውን ጻድቅ ሰው የአነርሱ ንጉስ እንዲሆን ላደረገው ለጌታ አምላካቸው ደግሞ ምስጋናን ያቀርቡ ዘንድ የሚሰውኦቻቸውን መንጋዎች አመጡ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ቤተመቅደሱ በመጡ ጊዜ፣ ማናቸውም በየቤተሰቦቻቸው ሚስቱን፣ ወንድ ልጆቹንና፣ ሴት ልጆቹን እናም ወንድና ሴት ልጆቻቸውን፣ ከታላቁ እስከ ታናሹ፣ ለእያንዳንዱ ቤተሰብ የሆነ በዙሪያው ተለያይተው ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ።

፮ እናም ንጉስ ቢንያም ለአነርሱ የሚናገረውን ድንኳኑ ውስጥ ተቀምጠው ያደምጡ ዘንድ፣ እያንዳንዱ ሰው የድንኳኑን መዝጊያ ወደ ቤተ መቅደሱ በማድረግ በቤተ መቅደሱ ዙሪያ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤

፯ ህዝቡ በጣም ብዙ ስለነበሩ ንጉስ ቢንያም በመቅደሱ አጥር ዙሪያ ሁሉንም ለማስተማር አልቻለም፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡ እርሱ የሚናገራቸውን ቃላት ያደምጡ ዘንድ ሰገነት እንዲቆም አደረገ።

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሰገነት ላይ ሆኖ ለህዝቡ መናገር ጀመረ፤ እናም ህዝቡ ብዙ በመሆኑ ሁሉም ሊሰሙት አልቻሉም፤ ስለዚህ ድምፁን ባልሰሙት ቃሉንም ደግሞ ይቀበሉት ዘንድ፣ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እንዲፃፉና በመካከላቸው እንዲላክ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

፱ እናም እርሱ የተናገራቸው እናም እንዲፃፉ ያደረገቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፡ በዚህ ቀን ለእናንተ ስናገር ቃሉን ማደመጥ የቻላችሁ እናንተ በእንድነት የተሰበሰባችሁ ወንድሞቼ፤ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት በከንቱ እንድትመለከቷቸው ዘንድ ወደእዚህ እንድትመጡ አላዘዘኳችሁም፤ ነገር ግን እኔን አዳምጡ፤ እናም ትሰሙኝ ዘንድ ጆርአችሁን፣ ትረዱኝ ዘንድም ልባችሁን፣ የእግዚአብሔርም ሚስጥር ዓላማው ይገለጥላችሁ ዘንድም አዕምሮአችሁን ክፈቱ።

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

፲ እኔን እንድትፈሩኝ ወይም እኔንም ከሚች ሰው የበለጠ አድርጋችሁ እንድታሰቡኝ ዘንድ ወደዚህ እንድትመጡ አላዘዘኳችሁም።

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

፲፩ ነገር ግን እኔ እንደ እናንተው ነኝ፣ በሁሉም አይነት የሰውነትና የአዕምሮ ጉስቁልና ስር የሆንኩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በዚህ ህዝብ ተመርጫለሁ፣ በአባቴም ተቀብቻለሁ፣ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ገዢና ንጉስ እንድሆንም በጌታ እጅ ተፈቅዶልኛል፣ እናም ጌታ በሰጠኝ በሙሉ ኃይል፣ አዕምሮና፣ ብርታት እናንተን እንዳገለግል ወደር በሌለው ኃይሉ ተቀምጫለሁ፣ እንዲሁም ተጠብቄአለሁ።

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

፲፪ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ እስካሁን ድረስ እንኳን ጊዜዬን እናንተን በማገልገል እንዳጠፋ ተፈቅዶልኛል፣ እናም ወርቅም ሆነ፣ ብር ባለፀጋ የሚያደርግ ማንኛውንም አይነት ነገር ከእናንተ አልፈላግም፤

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

፲፫ እናንተ በግዞት እንድትቀመጡ፣ ወይም አንዳችሁ ለአንዳችሁ ባርያ እንድትሆኑ፣ ወይም እንድትገድሉ፣ ወይም እንድትዘርፉ፣ ወይም እንድትስርቁም፣ ሆነ ዝሙትን እንድትፈፀሙ አልፈቀድኩም፤ ወይም ምንም ዓይነት ኃጢያት እንድትፈፀሙ አልፈቀድኩም፣ እናም በሁሉም ነገር እንዳዘዘኳችሁ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት እንድትጠብቁ አስተምራችኋለሁ—

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

፲፬ እናም እኔ ራሴ፣ እናንተን አገለገል ዘንድና፣ ቀረጥ እንዳይከብድባችሁ፣ እናም ልትቋቋሙት የማይቻል ፅኑ የሆነ ምንም ነገር በእናንተ ላይ እንዳይመጣባችሁ ዘንድ በእጄ ሰርቻለሁ—እናም እኔ ለተናገርኳችሁ ለእነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በዚህ ቀን እናንተ ራሳችሁ ምስክር ናችሁ።

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

፲፭ ሆኖም ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለጉራ አይደለም ያደረግኳቸው፣ ወይም እነዚህን ነገሮች የነገርኳችሁ እናንተን ለመውቀስ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን በዚህ ቀን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በንጹህ ህሊና መመለስ መቻሉን ታውቁ ዘንድ እነዚህን ነገሮች እነገራችኋለሁ።

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

፲፮ እነሆ፣ አላችኋለሁ ዘመኔን እናንተን በማገልገል አሳልፌአለሁ ስላልኳችሁ መኩራት አልፈልግም፣ በእውነት በእግዚአብሔርም አገልግሎት ላይ ነበርኩና።

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

፲፯ እናም እነሆ፣ እናንተ ጥበብን ትማሩ ዘንድ፣ እናንተ ሰዎችን በምታገለግሉበት ጊዜ እግዚአብሔርን ብቻ እያገለገላችሁ እንደሆነ እንድትማሩ ዘንድ እነዚህን ነገሮች እናገራችኋለሁ።

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

፲፰ እነሆ፣ የእናንተ ንጉስ ብላችሁ ጠርታችሁኛል፣ እናንተ ንጉስ ብላችሁ የምትጠሩኝ እኔ እናንተን ለማገልገል ከሰራሁ፣ እናንተስ እርስ በራሳችሁን ለማገልገል መሰራት አይገባችሁምን?

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

፲፱ እናም እነሆ ደግሞ፣ ዘመኔን እናንተን በማገልገል የሚያሳልፈው፣ የእናንተ ንጉስ ብላችሁ የምትጠሩኝ፣ እናም አሁንም አምላክን የማገልገለው፣ ከእናንተ ምስጋና የሚገባኝ ከሆነኩኝ፣ አቤቱ ምን ያህል የሰማይን ንጉሳችሁን ማመስገን ይገባችኋል!

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

፳ ወንድሞቼ አላችኋለሁ፣ እናንተን ለፈጠረውም፣ ለጠበቀውና ላዳነውም፣ እንድትደስቱ ላደረገውም፣ እንዲሁም እርስ በእርሳችሁ በሰላም እንድትኖሩ ለረዳችሁ እግዚአብሔር ነፍሳችሁ ያለውን ሁሉንም ምስጋና እና ውዳሴ ብትሰጡ—

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

፳፩ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ የፈጠራችሁና፣ እንደፈቃዳችሁ ትኖሩና ትንቀሳቀሱ፣ እናም ትሰሩ ዘንድ እስትንፋሱን በመስጠት ከቀን ቀን የጠበቃችሁን፣ እናም ከአንድ ወቅት ወደ ሌላኛው እንኳን የደገፋችሁን የምታገለግሉ ከሆነ፣ አላችኋለሁ፣ በሙሉ ነፍሳችሁ እርሱን የምታገለግሉ ብትሆኑም የማትጠቅሙ ባሪያዎች ትሆናላችሁ።

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

፳፪ እናም እነሆ፣ እርሱ ከእናንተ የሚፈልገው ሁሉ ትዕዛዛቱን እንድትጠብቁ ነው፤ እናም እናንተ ትዕዛዛቱን የምትጠብቁ ከሆነ በምድሪቱ እንደምትበለፀጉ ቃል ገብቷል፤ እናም ከተናገረው የተለየ ነገር አያደርግም፤ ስለዚህ፣ ትዕዛዛቱን የምትጠብቁ ከሆነ እርሱ ይባርካችኋልም ያበለፀጋችኋልም።

፳፫ እናም አሁን፣ በመጀመሪያ ፈጥሯችኋል፣ ህይወታችሁንም ሰጥቷችኋል፣ ለእዚህም እናንተም ለእርሱ እዳ አለባችሁ።

፳፬ እናም ሁለተኛ፣ እርሱ እንዳዘዘችሁ እንድታደርጉ ይፈልጋል፤ እናንተም የምታደርጉት ከሆነ ወዲያው ይባርካችኋል፤ ስለዚህም ከፍሎአችኋል። እና አሁንም እናንተ በእርሱ እዳ አላችሁ፤ እናም ከዘለዓለም እስከዘለዓለም አላችሁም፣ ይኖራችኋልም፤ ስለሆነም፣ በምን ትኮራላችሁ?

፳፭ እናም አሁን ስለራሳችሁ መናገር የምትችሉት አለን? ብዬ አጠይቃለሁ፣ እኔ የለም ብዬ አመልሰላችኋለሁ። እናም እናንተ ከምድር ትቢያ እኩል ነን ለማለት አትችሉም፤ ይሁን እንጂ እናንተ ከምድር ትቢያ ነው የተፈጠራችሁት፤ እነሆ ያም የእርሱ፣ እናንተን የፈጠረው ነው።

፳፮ እናም በተለይ፣ እናንተ ንጉስ ብላችሁ የምትጠሩኝ እኔ ከእናንተ የተሻልኩ አይደለሁም፤ እኔም ደግሞ ከአፈር የተፈጠርኩ ነኝና። እናም እንደምታዩኝ አርጅቻለሁም ወደመጣሁበት እናት ምድር ለመለስም ተቃርቤአለሁ።

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ እንዳልጻችሁ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በንጹህ ህሊና በመራመድ እናንተን አገልግያለሁ፤ ቢሆንም እኔ በዚህ ጊዜ እናንተን በተመለከተ እግዚአብሔር ባዘዘኝ ነገሮች እንዲፈረድብኝ በምቆምበት ጊዜ እንከን የለሽ ሆኜ እንድገኝ፣ እናም ደማችሁ በእኔ ላይ እንዳይመጣ፣ እናንተን በእንድ ላይ እንድትሰበሰቡ አድርጌአለሁ።

፳፰ እላችኋለሁ ወደመቃብሬ ልወርድ ባልኩበት በዚህ ጊዜ በሰላም አወርድ ዘንድ፣ የማይሞተው መንፈሴ ትክክለኛውን አምላክ ለማመስገን ከመዘምራን ጋር ይገኝ ዘንድ፣ ደችሁን ከልብሴ ላይ አፀዳው ዘንድ፣ ራሳችሁን በእንድ ላይ እንድትሰበሰቡ አደረግሁ።

፳፱ እናም በተጨማሪ፣ ከእንግዲህ የእናንተ አስተማሪም ሆነ ንጉስ መሆን አለመቻሌን እንግራችሁ ዘንድ በእንድ ላይ እንድትሰበሰቡ አድርጌአለሁ።

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

፴፯ በዚህ ጊዜ እንኳን፣ ለእናንተ ለመናገር በምሞክርበት ጊዜ ሰውነቴ በሙሉ እጅግ ይንቀጠቀጣል፣ ነገር ግን ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ይረዳኛል፤ እናም ለእናንተ እንድናገር ፈቅዶልኛል፣ ልጄ ሞዳያ በእናንተ ላይ ንጉሰና ገዢ መሆኑን በዚህ ቀን ለእናንተ እንዳውጅም አዘዘኛል።

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

፴፱ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እስካሁን እንዳደረጋችሁት ሁሉ እንድታደርጉ አፈልጋለሁ። ትዕዛዛቴንና፣ ደግሞ የአባቴን ትዕዛዛት እንደጠበቃችሁና፣ እንደበለፀጋችሁ፣ እንዲሁም በጠላቶቻችሁ እጅ ከመውደቅ እንደተጠበቃችሁ፣ በተመሳሳዩም የልጄን ትዕዛዛት ወይም እርሱ ለእናንተ የሚሰጣችሁን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ከጠበቃችሁ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ትበለፀጋላችሁ፣ እናም ጠላቶቻችሁ በእናንተ ላይ ኃይል አይኖራቸውም።

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

፵፩ ነገር ግን ህዝቤ ሆይ በመካከላችሁ ፀብ እንዳይነሳ፣ እና በአባቴ በሞዳያ የተነገሩትን እርኩስ መንፈስ ለመታዘዝ ከመምረጥ ተጠንቀቁ።

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

፵፪ እነሆም፣ ያንን መንፈስ ሰምቶ ለመቀበል ለመረጠው ወዮለት፣ እርሱን ለመሰማት ከመረጠ፣ እናም በኃጢአቱ ከቀረ፣ እናም ከሞተ፣ እርሱም ለነፍሱ ኩነኔን ይጠጣል፤ ከራሱ እውቀት ጋርም ተፃራሪ በመሆን የእግዚአብሔርን ህግ በመተላለፉ ለሰራው ዘለዓለማዊ ቅጣትን እንደ ደሞዙ ይቀበላልና።

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

፵፫ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ሰለእነዚህ ነገሮች ከትናንሽ ልጆቻችሁ በስተቀር ከእናንተ መካከል ማንም ያልተማረ፣ ነገር ግን እናንተ ለሰማዩ አባታችሁ ያላችሁን ሁሉና ራሳችሁንም ለእርሱ ለመስጠት ለዘለዓለም አዳ እንዳላችሁ የማያውቅ፣ እናም ደግሞ በቅዱሳን ነቢያት አባታችን ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ እስከወጣ ድረስ የተነገሩትን ትንቢቶችን የያዙትን መዛግብት በተመለከተ ያልተማረ ማንም የለም፤

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

፵፬ ደግሞም፣ እስከ አሁን ድረስ በአባቶቻችን የተነገሩት ሁሉ ያልተማረ ማንም የለም። እናም እነሆ፣ ደግሞ ነቢያቱ የተናገሩት በጌታ የታዘዙትን ነበር፤ ሰለዚህ ትክክል እና እውነተኛ ናቸው።

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

፵፭ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ አላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ካወቃችሁና ከተማራችሁ በኋላ እናንተ የምትተላለፉና ከተነገረው በተቃራኒ የምትሄዱ ከሆነ፣ ከጌታ መንፈስ ራሳችሁን አርቃችሁ፣ ትባረኩበት፣ ትበለፀጉበት፣ እናም ትጠበቁበት ዘንድ በጥበብ ጎዳና እናንተን እንዲመራ ቦታ አይኖረውም—

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

፴፯ እላችኋለሁ፣ ይህንን የሚያደርገው ሰው፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ተቃራኒ በመሆን በእመፃ ይመጣል፤ ስለዚህ እርኩስ መንፈስን ለመስማት ይመርጣል፣ እናም ለፅድቅ ሁሉ ጠላት ይሆናል፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ በእርሱ ውስጥ ሥፍራ አይኖረውም፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ቅዱስ ባልሆኑ ቤተመቅደሶች ውስጥ አይኖርምና።

፴፰ ስለዚህ ያ ሰው ንስህ ካልገባ፣ እናም ለእግዚአብሔር ጠላት እንደሆነ ቀርቶ ቢሞት፣ መለኮታዊ የሆነው ትክክለኛው ፍትህ ዘለዓለማዊ የሆነውን ነፍሱን ለይለኛ የሆነ የጥፋተኛነት ሰሜት ይቀስቅሰዋል፤ እርሱንም በጌታ ፊት ያሸማቅቀዋል፣ እናም ደረቱን ነበልባሉ ከዘለዓለም እስከዘለዓለም ከፍ እንደሚል ልክ እንደሚይጠፋው እሳት በጥፋተኛነትና፣ በህመም፣ እንዲሁም በጭንቀት ይሞላዋል።

፴፱ እናም አሁን እላችኋለሁ፣ ምህረት ለዚያ ሰው ምንም ሥፍራ አይኖራትም፤ ስለዚህ የመጨረሻ ዕጣው ማለቂያ የሌለውን ቅጣት መጋፈጥ ነው።

፵ ቃሉን የምትረዱ እናንተ ሽማግሌዎችና፣ ደግሞ እናንተ ወጣቶች፣ ደግሞም እናንተ ትናንሽ ልጆች፣ እናንተ ትረዱት ዘንድ በግልፅ ተናግራለሁና፣ ወደ መተላለፍ የወደቁትን አስቃቂ ሁኔታ ነቅታችሁ እንድታስታውሱ እጸልያለሁ።

፵፩ እናም በተጨማሪ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የሚጠብቁትን የተባረከና አሰደሳቹን ሁኔታ እንድትገነዘቡ እፈልጋለሁ። እነሆም እነርሱ በሁሉም ነገሮች፣ ለጊዜያዊም ሆነ ለመንፈሳዊ፣ የተባረኩ ናቸውና፤ እናም እስከ መጨረሻው በታማኝነት ከዘለቁ፣ ለዘለአለም በማያልቀው ደስታ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ይኖሩ ዘንድ፣ መንግስተ ሰማይ ትቀበላቸዋለች። አቤቱ አስታውሱ፤ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን አስታውሱ፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ተናግሮታልና።

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

ሞዛያ ፫

፩ እናም እንደገና ወንድሞቼ፤ ለእናንተ የምናገረው ከዚህ በላይ በመጠኑ ስላለኝ ትኩረታችሁንም እፈልጋለሁ፤ እነሆ የሚመጣውን በተመለከተ የምነግራችሁ ነገሮች አሉኝና።

፪ እናም የምናገራችሁ ነገሮች በእግዚአብሔር መልእክ ተገልጸውልኛል። እርሱም እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ንቃ፤ እናም ነቃሁ፤ እነሆ እርሱም ከፊቴ ቆመ።

፫ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ንቃ፤ የምነግርህን ቃላት ሰማ፤ እነሆም የታላቁን ደስታ የምሰራችሁ ላበሰርልህ መጥቻለሁና።

፬ ጌታ ጸሎትህን ሰምቷልና፤ እናም ፅድቅህንም በሚመለከት ፈርዲልና፤ እናም አንተ ትደስት ዘንድና፤ ለህዝብህ ትናገር ዘንድ፤ እነርሱም ደግሞ በደስታ ይሞሉ ዘንድ ልኮኛል።

፭ እነሆም፡ በኃይል ሁሉንም የሚገዛው ጌታ የነገሰው፤ የነበረው፤ እናም ከዘለዓለም እስከ ዘለዓለም ሁሉ የሚኖረው፤ ከሰማይ በሰው ልጆች መካከል የሚመጣበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፤ ሩቅም አይደለም፤ በጭቃ ሰውነቱ ይኖራልም፤ እናም በሰዎች መካከል፤ በሽተኞችን የመፈወስ፤ ሙታንን የማሰነሳት፤ ሽባዎችን እንዲራመዱ የማድረግ፤ እውሮች ማየት እንዲችሉ፤ ደንቆሮዎችም እንዲሰሙ፤ እናም ሁሉንም የበሽታ ዓይነቶችን ለማዳን አስደናቂ ሰራዎችን እየሰራ ይሄዳል።

፮ እናም እርሱ ዲያብሎስን፤ ወይንም በሰው ልጆች ልብ ውስጥ የሚኖረውን እርኩስ መንፈስ ያሰወጣል።

፯ እናም እነሆ፤ በፈተናና በሰጋዊ ህመም፤ በርሃብ፤ በጥማትና፤ በድካም፤ ከሞት በስተቀር ሰው ሊሰቃይበት ከሚችለው የበለጠም ይሰቃያል፤ እነሆም ለህዝቡ ክፋትና እርኩስት ጭንቀቱ እጅግ ታላቅ ሆኖ፤ ደሙም ከእያንዳንዱ የሰውነቱ ቀዳዳ ይፈሳል።

፰ እናም እርሱም ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ፤ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ፤ የሰማይና የምድር አባት፤ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ የሁሉም ነገር ፈጣሪ የነበረ ተብሎ ይጠራል፤ እናም እናቱ ማርያም ተብላ ትጠራለች።

፱ እናም እነሆ፤ በሰሙ በማመን ደህንነት ለሰው ልጆች ይመጣ ዘንድ የእርሱ ወደ ሆኑት መጣ፤ እናም ከዚህ ሁሉ በኋላ እንኳን እንደ ሰው ይቆጥሩታል፤ ዲያብሎስ አለው ብለው ይናገራሉም፤ ይገርፋታልም፤ እንዲሁም ይሰቅሉታል።

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

፲ እርሱም በሶስተኛው ቀን ከሞት ይነሳል፤ እናም እነሆ ዓለምን ሊፈርድ ይቆማል፤ እናም እነሆ በሰው ልጆች ላይ ጸድቃዊው ፍርድ ይመጣ ዘንድ እነዚህ ሁሉ ይሆናሉ።

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

፲፩ እነሆም፣ እናም ደግሞ በአዳም መተላለፍ ለወደቁት ኃጢአተኞች፣ እነርሱን በተመለከተ ያለውን የእግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ ሳያውቁ ለሞቱት፣ ወይም ባለማወቅ ኃጢአትን ለፈጸሙት የእርሱ ደም የኃጢአተኞች ክፍያ ይሆናል።

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

፲፪ ነገር ግን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ማመፀን ለሚያውቅ ወዮ ወዮለት! እንደነዚያ ላሉት ደህንነት በንስሃ እና በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እምነት ካልሆነ በቀር አይመጣም።

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebel- leth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

፲፫ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ለሁሉም ወገን፣ ሀገርና፣ ቋንቋ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዲናገሩ ቅዱሳን ነቢያቱን በሰው ልጆች ሁሉ መካከል ልኳል፤ በዚህም ማንኛውም ክርስቶስ ይመጣል በማለት የሚያምን ለኃጢአቱ ስርየትን ያገኛል፣ እርሱም በመካከላቸውም እንደመጣም ዓይነት በታላቅ ደስታ ሃሴት ይሆናሉ።

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

፲፬ ይሁን እንጂ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ሕዝቡ እንገተ ደንዳና እንደሆኑ ተመልክቷል፣ እናም ህግን፣ እንዲሁም የሙሴንም ሕግ መሰርቶላቸዋል።

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff- necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

፲፭ እናም የእርሱን መምጣት በተመለከተ ብዙ ምልክቶችንና፣ ተዓምራትንና፣ ምሳሌዎችንና ጥላውን አሳይቷቸዋል፤ እናም ደግሞ መምጣቱን በተመለከተ ቅዱሳን ነቢያትም ነግረዋቸዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ እነርሱ ልባቸውን አጠጥረዋል፣ በደሙ ክፍያም ካልሆነ በቀር የሙሴ ሕግ ምንም የማይጠቅም መሆኑን አልተገነዘቡትም።

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his com- ing; and also holy prophets spake unto them con- cerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atone- ment of his blood.

፲፮ እናም ምንም እንኳን ህጻናት ኃጢአትን መሰራት የሚችሉ ቢሆኑም ሊድኑ አይችሉም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነርሱ የተባረኩ ናቸው እላችኋለሁ፤ እነሆም፣ በአዳም፣ ወይም በፍጥረት እንደወደቁም፣ የክርስቶስ ደም ለኃጢአታቸው ክፍያ እንዲሁም ያደርጋል።

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by na- ture, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

፲፯ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ሁሉን በሚችለው ጌታ በክርስቶስ ስም ካልሆነ በስተቀር ለሰው ልጆች ደህንነት እንዲመጣ የሚሰጥ ምንም ስም ወይም መንገድ፣ ወይም ዘዴ የለም።

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

፲፰ እነሆም እርሱ ይፈርዳል፤ ፍርድም ፍፁም ነው፤ እናም በህፃንነቱ የሞተ ህፃን አይጠፋም፤ ነገር ግን ሰዎች እራሳቸውን ትሁትና፣ እንደ ህፃናት ካላደረጉ፣ እናም ሁሉን በሚችለው ጌታ በክርስቶስ የደም ካህ ውስጥና በኩል ደህንነት እንደነበረ፣ እንደሚሆንና፣ እንደሚመጣ ካላመኑ በቀር ኩነትን ይጎነጩሉ።

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

፲፱ ተፈጥሮአዊው ሰው ከአዳም ውድቀት ጀምሮ ለእግዚአብሔር ጠላት ነው፤ እናም እርሱም ለመንፈስ ቅዱስ ግብዣ ፈቃደኛ ካልሆነና፣ ተፈጥሮአዊው ሰውነቱን ካልቀየረ እናም በጌታ በክርስቶስ የኃጢያት ክፍያ አማካኝነት ቅዱስ ካልሆነና፣ እንደልጅ ሁሉን የሚቀበል፣ የሞህ፣ ትሁት፣ ትዕግስተኛ፣ በፍቅር የተሞላ፣ ልጅ ከአባቱ ተቀባይ እንደሚሆን፣ ጌታ ብቁ ነው ብሎ የሚያደርስበትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች ለመቀበል ፈቃደኛ ካልሆነ እስከመጨረሻው ለዘለዓለም የእግዚአብሔር ጠላት ይሆናል።

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

፳ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ የአዳኞችን እውቀት በሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋ እና ህዝብ መካከል የሚሰራጭበት ጊዜ ይመጣል።

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

፳፩ እናም እነሆ፣ ያ ጊዜ ሲመጣ፣ ሁሉን በሚችለው በጌታ እግዚአብሔር ስም ጎሰሃ እና እምነት በኩል፣ ትናንሽ ልጆች ካልሆኑ በቀር፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እንከን የሌለበት አይገኝም።

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

፳፪ እናም በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ ጌታ አምላክህ ያዘዘህን ነገሮች ለሕዝባችሁ ስታስተምር፣ እኔ በነገርኩህ ቃላት መሰረት ካልሆነ በስተቀር ከእንግዲህ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ያለ እንከን አይሆኑም።

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

፳፫ እናም አሁን ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ያዘዘኝን ቃላት ተናግራለሁ።

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

፳፬ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ እነዚህ በፍርድ ቀን ለዚህ ሕዝብ እንደ ብሩህ ምስክር ሆነው ይቆማሉ፤ ስለዚህ ማንኛውም ሰው በሰራው መሰረት፣ መጥፎም ሆነ መልካም፣ ይፈረድበታል።

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

፳፭ እናም እነርሱ ደግመው ሊመለሱበት በማይችሉበት በስቃይና መጨረሻ በሌለው አስቃቂ በሆነ ሁኔታ በጌታ ፊት እንዲሸማቁ በሚያደርጋቸው በራሳቸው ክፋትና እርኩስት ክፋዎች አስተያየት ላይ ይመደባሉ፤ ስለዚህ ለእራሳቸው ነፍስ ኩነትን ይጎነጩሉ።

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

፳፭ ስለዚህ፣ ፍርድ አዳም የተከለከለውን ፍሬ በመመገቡ መውደቅ እንዳለበት ለመካድ እንደማይችል እነርሱንም ሊክድ ስለማይችሉ፣ ከእግዚአብሔር የቁጣ ዋንጫ ጎንጭተዋል፤ ስለዚህ ምህረት ከእንግዲህ ለዘለዓለም በእነርሱ ላይ ጥያቄ ሊኖረው አይችልም።

፳፮ እናም ሰቃያቸው ነበልባሉ የማይጠፋ፣ እና ጢሱ ለዘለዓለም እስከ ዘለዓለም ወደ ላይ እንደሚያርገው እንደ እሳቱ ባህርና ዲን ነው። እንደዚህም ጌታ እኔን አዘኛል። አሜን።

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

ሞዛያ ፬

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሥ ቢንያም በጌታ መልአክ የተሰጠውን ቃላት ተናገሮ ሲጨርስ፣ ዙሪያ ገባውን ተመልክቶ ዐይኑን በህዝቡ ላይ አሳረፈ፣ እናም የጌታ ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ በመምጣቱ የተነሳ በመሬት ላይ ወድቀው ተመለከታቸው።

፪ እናም በስጋቸው እራሳቸውን ከመሬት ትቢያ እንኳን አሳንሰው ተመለከቱ። እናም ሁሉም በአንድ ድምፅ እንዲህ ብለው ጮሁ፣ አቤቱ ምህረትን ሰጠን፣ እናም ለጋጠላታችን ይቅርታን እናገኝ ዘንድና ልባችን ንፁህ ይሆን ዘንድ የክርስቶስን የደም ክፍያ በእኛ ላይ አድርግ፤ ስማይና ምድርን እንዲሁም ሁሉንም ነገሮች በፈጠረው በሰው ልጆች መካከል በሚመጣው በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በክርስቶስ እየሱስ እናምናለን።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገሩ በኋላ የጌታ መንፈስ በእነርሱ ላይ መጣ፤ እና ንጉሥ ቢንያም በተናገረው ቃላት መሰረት በሚመጣው በእየሱስ ክርስቶስ ባላቸው ታላቅ እምነት የተነሳ፣ ለጋጠላታቸውም ስርየትን በመቀበል፣ እናም የህሊና ስላምም በማግኘት በደስታ ተሞልተው ነበር።

፬ እናም ንጉሥ ቢንያም በድጋሚ አፋን ከፍቶ እንዲህ ሲል መናገር ጀመረ፣ ጓደኞቼና ወንድሞቼ፣ ወገኖቼና ህዝቤ ለእናንተ የምናገረውን ቀሪውን ቃሉን ታደምጡኝ እናም ትረዲኝ ዘንድ በድጋሚ ትኩረታችሁን እፈልጋለሁ።

፭ እነሆም በዚህ ጊዜ የእግዚአብሔርን ቸርነት ማወቅ እናንተ ምንም እንዳልሆናችሁ፣ እናም እንደማትረቡና እንደውድቀታችሁ ሁኔታ ስሜት የሚያነቃችሁ ከሆነ—

፮ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቸርነት እናም ወደር የሌለውን ሀይሉንና፣ ጥበቡን፣ እንዲሁም ረዥም ፅናትና፣ እናም ለሰው ልጆች ያለውን ታጋሽነቱን፣ ደግሞም እምነቱን በጌታ ላይ ያሳረፈና፣ ትዕዛዛቱን ለመጠበቅ ትጉህ ለሆነው፣ እና እስከህይወቱ፣ ይህም ማለቱ የሰጋ ሰውነት ህይወቱ መጨረሻ ድረስ በእምነት ለጸናው ደህንነት እንዲመጣለት ዘንድ፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ የተዘጋጀውን የጋጠሥት ክፍያ ወደማወቅ ከመጣችሁ—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

፳ ይህ አይነቱ ሰው ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ፣ ከአዳም ውድቀት በኋላ ለነበሩት፣ ወይም ለአሉት፣ ወይም እስከ አለም መጨረሻ ድረስ ስለሚኖሩት፣ ለሰው ልጆች ሁሉ በተዘጋጀው የኃጢአት ክፍያ ደህንነትን ይቀበላል እላለሁ።

፳፫ እናም ደህንነት የሚገኝበት መንገድ ይህ ነው። እናም ከዚህ ከተነገረው በስተቀር ሌላ ደህንነት የለም፤ እኔ ከተናገርኳችሁ ሁኔታ በቀር ሰዎች የሚድኑበት ሌላ መንገድ የለም።

፳፯ በእግዚአብሔር እመኑ፤ እርሱ እንዳለ፣ እናም እርሱ በሰማይም በምድርም ያሉትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች እንደፈጠረ እመኑ፤ በሰማይና በምድር ሁሉ ጥበብና ሀይል እንዳለው እመኑ፤ ጌታ ሊረዳቸው የሚችለውን ነገሮች ሁሉ ሰው እንደማይረዳቸው እመኑ።

፳፯ እናም እንደገና ለኃጢአታችሁ ንስሃ መግባትና፣ መተው፣ እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ትሁት መሆን እንዳለባችሁ እመኑ፤ ይቅር እንድትባሉ ከልባችሁም ጠይቁ፤ እናም አሁን፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ካመናችሁ መፈጸማችሁን አረጋግጡ።

፳፱ እናም እንደገና በፊት እንደተናገርኳችሁ እናገራችኋለሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ክብር ለማወቅ የምትመጡ ከሆነ፣ እንዲሁም ቸርነቱንና ታጋሽነቱን ካወቃችሁና ፍቅሩን ከቀመሳችሁ፣ ነፍሳችሁ እጅግ እንድትደሰት የሚያደርገውን ለኃጢአታችሁ ስርየትን ከተቀበላችሁም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ታላቅነትና የራሳችሁን ከንቱነት፣ ወደ እናንተ የማትረቡ ፍጥረት ያለውን የእርሱን ጥሩነትና ትዕግስት፣ እናም የጌታንም ስም ቀን በቀን በመጥራትና በመልእኩ እፍ በተነገረለት ወደፊት በሚመጣው እምነት አፅንታችሁ በመቆም በጥልቅ ትህትና እንኳን ራሳችሁን እንድታዋርዱ እንድታሰታውሱትና ሁልጊዜም በማስታወስ እንድትይዙት እፈልጋለሁ።

፳፻ እናም እነሆ፣ አላችኋለሁ ይህንን የምታደርጉ ከሆነ ሁልጊዜ ትደሰታላችሁ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ትሞላላችሁም፣ ሁልጊዜ የኃጢአታችሁን ስርየት ታገኛላችሁም፤ እናም እናንተን በፈጠረው ክብር እውቀት፣ ወይም ትክክለኛና እውነተኛ በሆነው እውቀት ታድጋላችሁ።

፴፫ እናም በሰላም ለመኖርና፣ ለእያንዳንዱ ሰው የሚገባውን ለመስጠት እንጂ፣ እርስ በርሳችሁ የመኅዳዳት ሃሳብ አይኖርባችሁም።

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

፲፬ እናም ልጆቻችሁ ተርበው አለበለዚያም ተራቁተው እንዲሄዱ እትፈቅዱም፤ የእግዚአብሔርንም ህግ እንዲተላለፉ፤ እርስ በርሳቸውም እንዲጣሉ እናም በአባቶቻችን ክፉ መንፈስ ተብሎ የተነገረለትን የፅድቅ ሁሉ ጠላት የሆነውንና የጋጠሪያት አለቃ የሆነውን ዲያብሎስን እንዲያገለግሉ እትፈቅዱም።

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

፲፭ ነገር ግን በእውነትና በጥምር መንገድ እንዲራመዱ ታስተምሯቸዋልችሁ፤ እርስ በርሳቸው እንዲወዱ እንዲሁም እንደኛው ሌላኛውን እንዲያገለግል ታስተምሯቸዋልችሁ።

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

፲፮ እናም ደግሞ፣ እናንተ ራሳችሁ የእናንተን እርዳታ ፍለጋ የቆሙትን ትረዲቸዋልችሁ፤ ፍላጎት ላላቸው ቁሳቁሳችሁን ትሰጧቸዋልችሁ፤ እናም ለማኙም እናንተን የሚለምነው በከንቱ እንዲሆንና፣ እንዲጠፋ ማሰወጣትን እትፈቅዱም።

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

፲፯ ምናልባት እንዲህ ትላላችሁ፡ ይህ ሰው ስቃይን በራሱ ላይ እምጥቷል፣ ስለሆነም እጄን እሰበሰባለሁ፣ እናም እንዳይቸገር ከእንጀራዬም ሆነ ከአለኝ ነገር አልሰጠውም ምክንያቱም ቅጣቶቹ ትክክል ናቸውና—

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

፲፰ ነገር ግን እላችኋለሁ፡ ሰው ሆይ፣ ማንም ይህንን ያደረገ ንስሃ ለመግባት ታላቅ ምክንያት ይኖረዋል፤ እናም በፈፀመው ነገር ንስሃ ካልገባ በስተቀር ለዘለዓለም ይጠፋል፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት ቦታ አይኖረውም።

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

፲፱ እነሆም ሁላችንን ለማኞች አይደለንምን? ሁላችንም ባሉን ቁሳቁሶች ሁሉ፣ በምግብና በልብስ፣ እንዲሁም በወርቅና፣ በብር፣ እናም ከሁሉም አይነት ባሉን ሀብቶች በእንዲስ ፍጡር፣ እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር ጥገኞች አይደለንምን?

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

፳ እናም እነሆ፣ በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ ሰሙን ጠርታችኋልም፣ ለኃጢአታችሁ ስርየትን ለምናችኋልም። እናም በከንቱ እንድትለምኑ ፈቅዷልን? አይደለም፤ መንፈሱን በላያችሁ ላይ አፍሰሷል፤ እናም ልባችሁ በደስታ እንዲሞላ አድርጓል፣ እንዲሁም ስለዚህ ደስታችሁም እጅግ ታላቅ ሆኖ፣ መናገርም እንዳትችሉ እንደበታችሁን እንዲዘጋ አድርጓል።

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

፳፩ እናም አሁን፣ ለህይወታችሁና ላላችሁና ለሆናችሁት ሁሉ የምትመኩበት እናንተን የፈጠረው እግዚአብሔር ትክክለኛ የሆነውን ማንኛውንም ነገር በእምነት፣ አገኛለሁ በማለት አምናችሁ የምትጠይቁትን ከሰጣችሁ፣ አቤቱ ያላችሁን ነገሮች እንዳችሁ ለሌላኛችሁ እንዴት መካፈል ይገባችኋል።

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

፳፪ እናም አንድ ሰው እንዲይጠፋ ካላችሁ ሀብት እንድታካፍሉት የሚጠይቃችሁን ከፈረዳችሁበት፣ ከኮነናችሁት፣ የእናንተ ሳይሆን ህይወታችሁም እንኳን የእርሱ የሆነው የእግዚአብሔር የሆነውን ሀብታችሁን በመያዛችሁ ኩነጌያችሁም ምን ያህል ትክክል ይሆናል፤ ነገር ግን፣ ለሰራችኋቸው ነገሮችም ንሰሃን እናም ልመናን አላቀረባችሁም።

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

፳፫ እላችኋለሁ፣ ለዚህ ሰው ወዮለት ያለው ነገር ከእርሱ ጋር ይጠፋልና፣ እናም አሁን፣ የዚህን ዓለም ነገሮች ለአሉአቸው ባለጠጋዎች እነዚህን ነገሮች እናገራለሁ።

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

፳፬ እናም እንደገና ባይኖራቸውም፣ ግን በህይወት እንዲቆዩ በመጠኑም ለሚኖራቸው ድሆች እንደገና እንዲህ እላለሁ፤ ማለቱም እናንተ ሰለሌላችሁ ለድሆች ለማትሰጡት ነው፤ በልባችሁ ሰለሌለኝ አይደለም የማልሰጠው፣ ነገር ግን ቢኖረኝ ኖሮ እሰጥ ነበር እንድትሉ አፈልጋለሁ።

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

፳፭ እናም አሁን፣ ይህንን በልባችሁ የምትሉ ከሆነ ከበደል የነፃችሁ ትሆናላችሁ፣ አለበለዚያ ግን ትኮነናላችሁ፣ እናም ኩነጌኦችሁ የእናንተ ያልሆነውን በመመኘታችሁ ትክክል ነው።

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

፳፮ እናም አሁን፣ ለእናንተ ለተናገርኳቸው ለእነዚህ ነገሮች ሲባል—ይህም ማለት በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከበደል ነፃታችሁ ትራመዱ ዘንድ ከቀን ወደ ቀን ለኃጢአታችሁ ስርየትን እንድታገኙ—የራሳችሁን ነገር ለድሃ እንድትሰጡ፣ እያንዳንዱ ሰው ባለው መጠን፣ የተራቡትን በመመገብ፣ የታረዙትን በማልበስ፣ የታመሙትን በመጎብኘት እናም እንደፍላጎታቸው ለነፍሳቸውም ሆነ ለሰጋቸው ደህንነት በቂ እርዳታን እንድትሰጡ አፈልጋለሁ።

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

፳፯ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በጥበብና በዕቅድ እንደተደረጉ ተመልከቱ፣ ሰው ከእቅሙ በላይ ፈጥኖ መርጠው አስፈላጊ አይደለምና። እናም እንደገና፣ ሽልማቱን ያሸንፍ ዘንድ ትጉህ መሆኑ አስፈላጊ ነው፣ ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች በስርዓት መደረግ አለባቸው።

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

፳፰ እናም ማንም ከእናንተ መካከል ከጎረቤቱ የተበደረ የተበደረውን ነገር በሰምምነቱ መሰረት መመለስ እንዳለበት እንድታስታውሱ አፈልጋለሁ፣ አለበለዚያ ኃጢአትን ትፈፀማላችሁ፤ እናም ምናልባት ጎረቤቶቻችሁንም ደግሞ ኃጢአት እንዲፈፀሙ ታደርጋላችሁ።

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

፳፱ እናም በመጨረሻም፣ ኃጢአት ልትፈፀሙ የምትችሉባቸውን ነገሮች ሁሉ ልነግራችሁ አልችልም፤ ምክንያቱን መቁጠር የማልችለው ብዙ መንገዶችና ዘዴዎች ስለሚኖሩ ነው።

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

፱ ነገር ግን ይህን ያህል ልነግራችሁ እችላለሁ፣ ራሳችሁን፣
ሀሳባችሁን፣ ቃላችሁን፣ እናም ድርጊታችሁን
የማታስተውሉና፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ የማትጠብቁ፣
እናም የሚመጣውን ጌታችንን በተመለከተ የሰማችሁትን
እስከ ህይወታችሁ መጨረሻ በእምነት የማትቀጥሉ
ከሆናችሁ፣ መጥፋት ይገባችኋል። እናም አሁን፣ ሰው
ሆይ፣ አስታውሱ፣ እናም አትጥፉ።

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch
yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and
your deeds, and observe the commandments of God,
and continue in the faith of what ye have heard con-
cerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of
your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remem-
ber, and perish not.

ሞዛያ ፮

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሰ ቢንያም ለህዝቡ እንደዚህ በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ለአነርሱ የተናገረውን አምነው እንደሆነ ከህዝቡ ለማወቅ በመፈለጉ በመካከላቸው ሰው ላከ።

፪ እናም ሁሉም በአንድ ድምፅ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኹ፦ አዎን፣ ለእኛ የተናገርካቸውን ቃላት በሙሉ እናምናለን፤ እናም ደግሞ ያለማቋረጥ መልካምን መሰራት እንጂ ከእንግዲህ ኃጢአት ለመፈፀም ምንም ፍላጎት እንዳይኖረን ታላቅ ለውጥ ለእኛ ወይም በልባችን ውስጥ በሰራው ሁሉን በሚገዛው በጌታ መንፈስ አማካኝነት እርግጠኝነታቸውን እና እውነተኛነታቸውን አውቀናል።

፫ እናም እኛ፣ እራሳችን ደግሞ በማይወሰነው የእግዚአብሔር ቸርነትና፣ በመንፈሱ መገለጥ ስለሚመጣው ታላቅ አመለካከት አለን፤ እናም የሚያስፈልግ ቢሆን እንኳን፣ ስለ ሁሉም ነገሮች መተንበይ እንችላለን።

፬ እናም እጅግም ታላቅ በሆነ ደስታ ወደምንደሰትበት ወደዚህ ታላቅ እውቀት ያመጣን፣ የእኛ ንጉሰ በተናገራቸው ነገሮች አንፃር ያለን እምነት ነው።

፭ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ፈቃዱን ለማድረግ እናም በቀረው ጊዜአችን ሁሉ እኛን ባዘዘን በሁሉም ነገር ለትዕዛዛቱ ታዛዦች ለመሆን፣ መጨረሻ የሌለው ቅጣት በራሳችን ላይ እንዳናመጣ፣ በመልእኩ እንደተነገረው ከእግዚአብሔር የቁጣ ዋንጫ እንዳንጎነጭ ከአምላካችን ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ለመግባት ፈቃደኞች ነን።

፮ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሰ ቢንያም ከአነርሱ የፈለጋቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፤ እናም ስለዚህ እንዲህ አላቸው፦ እናንተ እኔ የፈለጋቸውን ቃላት ተናግራችኋል፤ እናም የገባችሁት ቃል ኪዳን የጽድቅ ቃል ኪዳን ነው።

፯ እናም አሁን፣ በገባችሁት ቃል ኪዳን የተነሳ የክርስቶስ ልጆች፣ ወንዶችና ሴት ልጆች፣ ተብላችሁ ትጠራላችሁ፤ እነሆም በዚህ ቀን እናንተን በመንፈስ ወልዲችኋል፤ ልባችሁ በሰሙ በማመን ተለውጧል ብላችኋልና፤ ስለዚህ እናንተ ከእርሱ ተወልዳችኋል እናም የእርሱ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች ሆናችኋል።

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

፳፯ እናም በዚህ ራስ ስር ነፃ ተደርጋችኋል እናም በራሱ ነፃ መሆን የምትችሉበት ሌላ ምንም የለም። ደህንነት ሊመጣበት የሚችል ሌላ ስም የለም፤ ስለዚህ የክርስቶስን ስም እንድትወስዱ እፈልጋለሁ። ሁላችሁም ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ቃል ኪዳን የገባችሁ እስከህይወታችሁ መጨረሻ ታዛዥ እንድትሆኑ እመኛለሁ።

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፡ ማንም ይህንን ያደረገ በእግዚአብሔር ቀኝ ይገኛል፤ የሚታወቅበትን ስም ያውቃልና፤ በክርስቶስ ስም ይጠራልና።

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

፲ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ይሆናል፡ የክርስቶስን ስም ያልለበሰ ማንኛውም በሌላ ስም መታወቅ አለበት፤ ስለዚህ፡ እራሱን በእግዚአብሔር ግራ በኩል ያገኛል።

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

፲፩ እናም ይህን ደግሞ እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ፡ በመተላለፍ ካልሆነ በቀር ለእናንተ መስጠት አለብኝ ያልኩት የማይደመስሰው ስም ይህ ነው፤ ስለዚህ፡ ስሙም ከልባችሁ እንዳይጠፋ ዘንድ እንዳትተላለፉ አስተውሉ።

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

፲፪ በእግዚአብሔር ግራ እንዳትገኙ፣ ነገር ግን የምትጠሩበትን ድምፅ፣ እናም ደግሞ በእርሱ የምትጠሩበትን ስም እንድታዳምጡና እንድታውቁ፣ በልባችሁ የተፃፈውን ስም ሁልጊዜ እንድትጠብቁ እፈልጋለሁ አላችኋለሁ።

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

፲፫ ያላገለገለውን አለቃ፣ እና ለእርሱ እንግዳ የሆነውን፣ ከልቡ ስሜትና ሀሳብ የራቀውን፣ እንድ ሰው እንዴት ያውቃል?

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

፲፬ እናም ሰው እንደገና የጎረቤቱ የሆነውን አህያ ወስዶ የእርሱ ያደርገዋልን? አያደርግም እላችኋለሁ። ከመንጋዎቹ ጋር እንኳን እንዲመገብ አይፈቅድም፣ ነገር ግን ያስወጣታል እናም ያሳድዳታል። እላችኋለሁ፡ የምትጠሩበትን ስም የማታውቁ ከሆነ በእናንተ መካከል እንኳን እንዲህ ይሆናል።

And again, doth a man take an ass which be- longeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

፲፭ ስለዚህ፡ ሁሉን የሚገዛ ጌታ ክርስቶስ ወደ ሰማይ ትመጡ ዘንድ፣ ከሁሉም በላይ አምላክ የሆነው በሰማይና በምድር ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ በፈጠረ፣ ጥበብ፣ ሀይል፣ እና ፍርድ፣ እንዲሁም በምህረቱ ዘለዓለማዊ ደህንነትና ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት እንዲኖራችሁ የእርሱ እንድትሆኑ ያችሁላችሁ ዘንድ እናንተ ፅኑ እናም የማትነቃቁ፣ ሁልጊዜም በመልካም ስራ የተሞላችሁ እንድትሆኑ እፈልጋለሁ። አሜን።

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

ሞዛያ ፮

፩ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሥ ቢንያም ለህዝቡ ንግግሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ቃል ኪዳን የገቡትን ሁሉ ስም መመዝገቡ ጠቃሚ እንደነበር አሰበ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከትናንሽ ህፃናት በስተቀር፣ ነገር ግን ወደ ቃል ኪዳኑ ያልገባና የክርስቶስን ስም ያልለበሰ አንድም ነፍስ አልነበረም።

፫ እናም እንደገና፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሥ ቢንያም እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ሲጨርስ፣ እናም ልጁን ሞዛያን በህዝቡ ላይ ገዢና ንጉሥ አድርጎ ከቀድሶውና መንግሥቱን በተመለከተ ሁሉንም ሃላፊነት ከሰጠው፣ ደግሞም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ያደምጡና ያውቁ ዘንድ እናም የፈጸሙትን መሀል እንዲያስተውሉ ለማነሳሳት ካህናት ህዝቡን እንዲያስተምሩ ከሾማቸው በኋላ፣ ህዝቡን አሰናበተ፣ እናም ሁሉም ከየቤተሰቦቻቸው ጋር ወደየቤታቸው ተመለሱ።

፬ እናም ሞዛያ በአባቱ ቦታ መንገስ ጀመረ። እናም ንግስናውን በሰላሳ አመቱ ጀመረ፣ ይኸውም ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ ጊዜ በአጠቃላይ አራት መቶ ሰባ ስድስት አመት ገደማ ይሆናል።

፭ እናም ንጉሥ ቢንያም ለሶስት ዓመታት ፍረ፣ እናም ሞተ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሥ ሞዛያ በጌታ መንገድ ተራምዷል፣ የጌታን ፍርድና ስርአት አስተውሏልም፣ እናም በሁሉም ነገሮች እርሱ ያዘዘውን ጠብቋል።

፯ እናም ንጉሥ ሞዛያ ህዝቡ መሬትን እንዲያርስ አደረገ። እናም ደግሞ ለህዝቡ ሸክም እንዳይሆን በሁሉም ነገር አባቱ እንዳደረገው ያደርግ ዘንድ እራሱም መሬትን ያርሰ ነበር። እናም ለሶስት ዓመታት ያህል በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከል ጠብ አልነበረም።

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

ሞዛያ ፯

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሥ ሞዛያ ለሦስት ዓመታት ያህል ያለማቋረጥ ሠላምን ካገኘ በኋላ፣ በሌሂ-ኔፊ ሞድር እንዲሁም በሌሂ-ኔፊ ከተማ ለመኖር የሄዱትን ሕዝቦች በተመለከተ ለማወቅ ፈለገ፤ ምክንያቱም ህዝቡ የዛራሄምላን ሞድር ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ምንም አልሰሙም ነበረ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በጥያቄያቸው ረበሹት።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ሌሂ-ኔፊ ሞድር ወንድሞቻቸውን በተመለከተ ይጠይቁ ዘንድ ንጉሥ ቢንያም ከጠንካራቹ አሰራ ሰድስቱ እንዲሄዱ አደረገ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በማግሰቱ የዛራሄምላ ትውልድ የሆነውንና ጠንካራና ኃይለኛ የሆነውን ሰው አሞንን ይዘው መሄድ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ መሪያቸው ነበር።

፬ እናም አሁን፣ ወደ ሌሂ-ኔፊ ሞድር ለመሄድ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ መጓዝ ያለባቸውን መንገድ አላወቁትም፤ ስለዚህ፣ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ለብዙ ቀናት ዘሩ፣ እንዲህም ለአርባ ቀናት ዘሩ።

፭ እናም አርባ ቀን ከዘሩ በኋላ ከሺሎም ሞድር በስተሰሜን ወደነበረ አንድ ኮረብታ መጡና በዚያም ቦታ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ።

፮ እናም አሞን ሶስቱን ወንድሞቹን ወሰደ፣ እናም ሰማቸውም አማሌቁ፣ ሔለምና፣ ሔም ነበር፣ እናም ወደ ኔፊ ሞድር ወረዱ።

፯ እናም እነሆ፣ በኔፊ ሞድርና፣ በሺሎም ሞድር የነበሩትን ሰዎች ንጉሥ ተገናኝቶ፤ እናም እነርሱ በንጉሡ ጠባቂዎች ተከበቡና፣ ተወሰዱ፣ እንዲሁም ተያዙና ወደ ወህኒ ተጣሉ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሁለት ቀናት በወህኒ በነበሩበት ጊዜ እንደገና በንጉሡ ፊት ቀርበው ነበር፤ እናም አሰራታቸውም ተፈትቶላቸው ነበር፤ እናም በንጉሱ ፊት ቆሙና፣ እርሱ የሚጠይቃቸውን ጥያቄዎች እንዲመልሱ ተፈቀደላቸው ወይም ታዘዙ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ እኔ፣ ከዛራሄምላ ሞድር የአባታቸው ሞድር የነበረውን ይህንን ሞድር ለመውረስ የመጣው፣ በህዝብ ድምፅ ንጉሥ የተደረገው የዜኒፍ ልጅ፣ የኖህ ልጅ ሊምሂ ነኝ።

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

፲ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ ከራሴ ጠባቂዎች ጋር ከግቢው ውጭ በነበርኩበት ጊዜ ወደ ከተማው ክልል ለመምጣት የደፈራችሁበትን ምክንያት ለማወቅ እፈልጋለሁ?

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

፲፩ እናም አሁን፣ እናንተ እንድትጠበቁ ያደረኩበት ምክንያት እናንተን አጠይቅ ዘንድ ነው፣ አለበለዚያ ጠባቂዎቼ እንዲገድሉኝሁ አደርግ ነበር። እናንተም እንድትናገሩ ተፈቅዶላችኋል።

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ አሞን ለመናገር እንደተፈቀደለት በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ሄደና በንጉሱ ፊት ሰገደ፤ እናም እንደገና ተነሰቶ እንዲህ አለ፡ ንጉሱ ሆይ፣ በዛሬ ቀን በህይወት በመኖሪያ ለመናገር ስለተፈቀደልኝ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እጅግ አመሰግናለሁ፤ እናም በድፍረት ለመናገር እሞክራለሁ፤

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

፲፫ እኔን ብታውቀኝ ኖሮ ይህንን ማሰሪያ እንዳጠልቅ እንደማትፈቅድ እርግጠኛ ነበርኩ። እኔ አሞን ነኝ፣ እናም የዛራሔምላ ዘር ነኝ፣ እናም ዜኒፍ ከምድሪቱ ስላወጣችው ስለወንድሞቻችን ለመጠየቅ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር መጥቻለሁ።

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

፲፬ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ለምህራም የአሞንን ቃላት ከሰማ በኋላ እጅግ ተደስተኝ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ አሁን፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር የነበሩት ወንድሞቼ እስከአሁን በህይወት እንደሚኖሩ አውቃለሁ። እናም አሁን እደስታለሁ፤ በማግስቱም ህዝቦቹ ደግሞ እንዲደስቱ አደርጋለሁ።

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

፲፭ እነሆም፣ እኛ በላማናውያን ባርነት ስር ነን፣ እናም ልንሸከመው በማይቻል በታላቅ ቀረጥ እንቀረጣለን። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቻችን ከባርነት ወይም ከላማናውያን እጅ ያስለቅቁናል፣ እናም እኛ የእነርሱ ባሮች እንሆናለን፤ ለላማናውያን ግብር ከመክፈል ለኔፋውያን ባርያ መሆን ይሻላልና።

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሱ ለምህራም ለጠባቂዎቹ አሞንንም ሆነ ወንድሞቹን ከእንግዲህ እንዳያስሩአቸው አዘዘ፣ ነገር ግን በሽምሎን በስተሰሜን ወደላው ኮረብታ እንዲሄዱና ወንድሞቻቸውን ወደ ከተማይቱ እንዲያመጡና በዛም ይመገቡና፣ ይጠጡ፣ እንዲሁም ከጉዞአቸውም ድካም እንዲያርፉ አደረገ፣ ምክንያቱም በብዙ ነገሮች ተሰቃይተዋል፣ በረሃብ በጥማትና በድካምም ተሰቃይተዋልና።

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

፲፯ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በማግስቱ ንጉሱ ለምሂ በቤተመቅደስ በእንድነት እራሳቸውን ሰብሰበው የሚያነጋግራቸውን ያደምጡ ዘንድ በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከል አዋጅን ላከ።

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እራሳቸውን በእንድ ላይ በሰበሰቡ ጊዜ እንዲህ በማለት ተናገራቸው፡ ህዝቤ ሆይ፣ ራሳችሁን አቅኑና ተፅናኑ፤ እነሆም ምንም እንኳን ከንቱ ከነበሩት ብዙ ትግሎቻችን ብንታገልም፣ በጠላቶቻችን ስር ከእንግዲህ የማንሆንበት ጊዜ መጥቷል፣ እና ሩቅ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን የሚቀረው ትግላችን ወደፈለግነው ውጤት እንደሚያደርስን አምናለሁ።

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

፲፱ ስለዚህ፣ ራሳችሁን አቅኑና፣ ተደስቱ፣ እንዲሁም እምነታችሁን የአብርሃምና የይሱህቅ፣ እናም የያዕቆብ እምላክ በሆነው፣ ደግሞም፣ የእስራኤልን ልጆች ከግብፅ ምድር ባወጣው እምላክና፣ በደረቅ ምድር በቀይ ባህር ውስጥ እንዲጓዙ ባደረገው፣ እናም በምድረበዳው ውስጥ እንዲይጠፉ መናን ከዚህ የበለጡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ባደረገላቸው በዚያ እግዚአብሔር እምነታችሁን አድርጉ።

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

፳ እናም እንደገና፣ ይኸው እምላክ አባቶቻችንን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር አውጥቷቸዋል፣ እናም እስከአሁን ድረስ ህዝቡን ጠብቋል እንዲሁም አስቀምጧል፤ እናም እነሆ፣ በኃጢአታችንና በእርኩስታችንም የተነሳ ወደባርነት ወሰደናል።

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

፳፩ እናም በዚህ ቀን ሁላችሁም ምስክሮች ናችሁ፣ ዜኒፍ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ንጉስ የተደረገው፣ የአባቶቹን ምድር ለመውረስ ጓጉቷልና፤ ስለዚህ በብልጥነትና በተንኮል በማታለል ከንጉስ ዜኒፍ ጋር ስምምነት የገባው ንጉስ ላማን የምድሪቷን ክፍል፣ ወይም እንዲሁም የሌሂ-ኔፊ ከተማንና፣ የሼምሎንን ከተማ፤ እንዲሁም በዙሪያዋ ያለውን ምድር ንብረት ወደ እጆቹ አሳልፎ ሰጠ—

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being overzealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

፳፪ እናም ይህንን ሁሉ እርሱ ያደረገው፣ ይህን ህዝብ በቁጥጥሩ ስር ወይም በባርነት ስር ለማዋል ባለው ብቸኛ ዓላማ ነበር። እናም እነሆ፣ እኛ በዚህ ጊዜ፣ መጠኑም ከበቆሎአችንና ከገብሳችን እንዲሁም ከሁሉም አይነት ጥራጥራዎቻችን ግማሹንና፣ ከከብት መንጋዎቻችን እንድ ሁለተኛውን በግብር ለላማናውያን ንጉስ እንከፍላለን፤ እና እንዲሁም ካሉን ንብረቶቻችንም እንድ ሁለተኛ እንኳን ወይም ህይወታችንን የላማናውያንን ንጉስ ይወስድብናል።

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

፳፫ እናም አሁን፣ ይህ ለመቋቋም አስቸጋሪ አይደለምን? እናም ይህ ስቃያችን ታላቅ አይደለምን? አሁን እነሆ ለማዘን ምን ያህል ታላቅ ምክንያት ይኖረናል።

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

፳፬ አዎን፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ለሀዘናችን ምክንያቶቻችን ታላቅ ናቸው፤ እነሆም የተገደሉ እንዲሁም ደማቸው በከንቱ የፈሰሰው ወንድሞቻችን ምን ያህል ናቸው፣ እና ያም ሁሉ በክፋት ምክንያት።

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

፳፭ እነዚህ ሰዎች ወደመተላለፍ ባይወድቁ ኖሮ ጌታ ይህ ታላቅ ክፋት በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲሆን አይፈቅድም ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነርሱ ቃሉን አያደምጡም፣ ነገር ግን በመካከላቸውም ብዙ ደም መፋሰስ እስከሚሆን ድረስ፣ በመካከላቸው ጠብ ተነሳ።

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

፳፮ እናም አዎን በእግዚአብሔር የተመረጠውን ኃጢአታቸውን እናም እርኩስታቸውን የነገራቸውንና ብዙ የሚመጡ ነገሮችን፣ አዎን፣ የክርስቶስንም መምጣት ቢሆን የተነበየውን የጌታን ነቢይ ገድለዋል።

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

፳፯ እናም እርሱ ክርስቶስ አምላክ መሆኑን የሁሉም ነገር አባት መሆኑን በመናገሩም፣ የሰውንም መልክ በራሱ መውሰዱንና፣ ይህም ሰው ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ የተፈጠረበት አምሳል መሆኑን፤ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር ሰው በአምላክ አምሳያ ተፈጥሯል፣ አምላክም በሰው ልጆች መካከል ይመጣል፣ እናም በራሱ ላይ ስጋና ደም ይለብሳል፣ እናም በምድር ገፅ ላይ ይሄዳል ስላለ—

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

፳፰ እናም አሁን፣ ይህንን በማለቱ፣ ገደሉት፤ እናም በራሳቸው ላይ የእግዚአብሔርን ቁጣ የሚያስከትሉ ከዚህ የበለጡ ብዙ ነገሮችን አደረጉ። ስለዚህ በታላቅ ስቃይ በመመታታቸውና፣ እነርሱ በመታሰራቸው ማን ይደነቃል?

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

፳፱ እነሆም፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ በመተላለፋቸው ቀን ህዝቤን አልረዳም፣ ነገር ግን እንዳይበለፀጉ መንገዱን እከላከላለሁ፤ እናም ሰራቸው በፊታቸው የመሰናከያ አለት ይሆንባቸዋል።

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

፴ እናም እንደገና፣ እርሱ እንዲህ ይላል፣ ህዝቤ ቆሻሻን ከዘሩ በአውሎ ነፋስ ገለባን ይሰበሰባሉ፤ እናም ውጤቱ መርዝ ነው።

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

፴፩ እናም እንደገና እርሱ እንዲህ ይላል፣ ህዝቤ ቆሻሻውን ከዘሩ ፈጣን የሆነ ጥፋት የሚያመጣውን የምሰራቁን ንፋስ ያጭዳሉ።

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

፴፪ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ተፈፅሟል፣ እናም እናንተ ተመትታችኋል እንዲሁም ተስቃይታችኋል።

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

፴፫

ነገር ግን በሙሉ የልባችሁ ዓላማ ወደ ጌታ
የምትመለሱ ከሆነ፣ እናም እምነታችሁን በእርሱ
ካደረጋችሁ፣ እናም በሙሉ ትጉህ ህሊናችሁ እርሱን
ካገለገላችሁ፣ ይህንን ካደረጋችሁ በፈቃዱና በደስታው
መሰረት ከባርነት ያወጣችኋል።

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of
heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with
all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according
to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of
bondage.

ሞዛያ ፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ሊምሂ ለህዝቡ ንግግሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገሯል እናም እኔ ጥቂቶቹን ብቻ በዚህ መጽሐፍ ውስጥ ፅፌአለሁ፤ በዛራሔምላ ምድር የነበሩት ወንድሞቹን በተመለከተ ለህዝቡ ሁሉንም ነገር ነገራቸው።

፪ እናም እምን በህዝቡ ፊት ቆሞና፣ ዜጊፍ ምድሪቱን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ እራሱም እንኳን ከምድሪቱ እስከወጣበት ድረስ የተከናወኑትን ሁሉ እንዲናገር አደረገ።

፫ እናም ደግሞ ንጉስ ቢንያም ያስተማራቸውን የመጨረሻ ቃላት ነገራቸው፣ እናም እርሱ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት ሁሉ ይረዱት ዘንድ ለንጉስ ሊምሂ ህዝብም ገለጸላቸው።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህን ሁሉ ካደረገ በኋላ፣ ንጉስ ሊምሂ ህዝቡን አሰናበተ፣ እናም እያንዳንዳቸው ወደየቤታቸው እንዲመለሱ አደረገ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ የዛራሔምላን ምድር ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ የነበረውን ታሪክ የያዙትን ሰሌዳዎች እምን ያነባቸው ዘንድ በፊቱ እንዲቀርቡ አደረገ።

፮ አሁን፣ እምን ታሪኩን እንዳነበበ፣ ቋንቋውን መተርጎም እንደሚችሉ ንጉሱ ጠየቀው እናም እምንም እንደማይችል ነገረው።

፯ እናም ንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፣ በህዝቤ ሰቃይ በማዘኔ፣ ከህዝቤ እርባ ሶስት የሆኑት የዛራሔምላን ምድር ያገኙ ዘንድ፣ ከባርነትም እንዲያሰለቅቁን ለወንድሞቻችን እቤት እንልበት ዘንድ ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲላኩ አደረግሁ።

፰ እናም እነርሱ ለብዙ ቀናት በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ጠፉ፣ ነገር ግን ትጉህ ነበሩ፣ እናም የዛራሔምላን ምድር አላገኙትም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን በብዙ ውኃዎች መካከል ባለች ምድር አቋርጠው ተጉዘው፣ በሰዎችና፣ በእውራዎች አጥንት፣ እናም ደግሞ በሁሉም አይነት የግንብ ፍርስራሽ የተሸፈነች ምድር አግኝተው፣ እንደ እስራኤልም ስራዊት ብዙ ህዝቦች የነበሯትን ምድር ካገኙ በኋላ ወደዚህች ምድር ተመለሱ።

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

፱ እናም ለምስክርነት የተናገሯቸው ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን ለማሳየት በፅሁፍ የተሸፈኑ ሀያ አራት ስሌዳዎችን አቀረቡ፣ እናም እነርሱ ንጹህ ወርቆች ነበሩ።

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

፲ እናም እነሆ፣ ደግሞ፣ ትልቅ ነሀሰ፣ እንዲሁም መደብ፣ እናም ፍፁም ጥሩ የሆኑትን ጥሩሮች አመጡ።

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

፲፩ እናም እንደገና፣ እጀታቸው የጠፋና፣ ስለታቸው ዝጎ የተበላሹ ጎራዳዎችን አመጡ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ቋንቋውንም ሆነ በስሌዳዎቹ ላይ ያሉትን ፅሁፎች መተርጎም የሚችል ማንም አልነበረም። እናም እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ አንተ መተርጎም አትችልምን?

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

፲፪ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ መተርጎም የሚችል ሰማንም አታውቅምን? ይህ ታሪክ ወደራሳችን ቋንቋ እንዲተረጎም አፈልጋለሁና፤ ምናልባት እነዚህ ስሌዳዎች የመጡባቸው ስለጠፉት ህዝቦች ቅሪት እውቀት ይሰጡናልና፤ ወይንም ምናልባት ስለጠፉት እነዚህ ሰዎች ግንዛቤ ይሰጡን ይሆናልና፤ እናም የመጥፋታቸውን መንስኤ ለማወቅ አፈልጋለሁ።

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

፲፫ አሁን አሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ ንጉሰ ሆይ መዝገቡን መተርጎም ስለሚችለው ሰው በእርግጠኝነት ልነግርህ እችላለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ የሚመለከትበትና በጥንት ጊዜ የነበሩትን መዛግብት ሁሉ ለመተርጎም የሚችልበት አለው፣ እናም ይህ የእግዚአብሔር ስጦታ ነው። ነገሮቹም ተርጓሚዎች ተብለው ይጠራሉ፣ እናም ካልታዘዘ በስተቀር ማንም ሰው በእነርሱ መመልከት አይችልም፣ አለበለዚያ ማድረግ የሌለበትን ይሻልና፣ ይጠፋል። እናም በእነርሱ ለመመልከት የታዘዘ ሰው ባለራዕይ ተብሎ ይጠራል።

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

፲፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ያለው የህዝቡ ንጉሰ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዲሰራ የታዘዘ ነው፣ እናም ይህ ታላቅ ስጦታ ከእግዚአብሔር ያገኘው ነው።

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

፲፭ እናም ንጉሱ ባለራዕይ ከነቢይ የበለጠ ነው አለ።

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

፲፮ እናም አሞን ባለራዕይ፣ ገላጭና፣ ደግሞም ነቢይ ነው አለ፤ እናም ከዚህ ይበልጥ ታላቅ የሆነ ስጦታ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ከሌለው በቀር ማንም ሰው ሊኖረው አይችልም፤ ነገር ግን ሰው ከእግዚአብሔር የተሰጠ ታላቅ ኃይል ሊኖረው ይችላል።

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

፲፯ ነገር ግን ባለራዕይ ያለፉ ነገሮችን ሊያውቅ ይችላል፣ ደግሞም ሊሆኑ የሚችሉትን ነገሮች ሊያውቅ ይችላል፣ እናም በእነርሱ አማካይነት ሁሉም ነገሮች ይገለጣሉ፣ ወይም ሚስጥሮች ይታወቃሉ፣ የተደበቁ ነገሮች ወደብርሃን ይመጣሉ፣ እናም የማይታወቁ ነገሮች በእነርሱ እንዲታወቁ ይሆናሉ፤ እናም ደግሞ በእነርሱ ካልሆኑ በቀር የማይታወቁትን ነገሮች እንዲታወቁ ይደረጋሉ።

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

፲፰ በዚህም እግዚአብሔር ሰው በእምነት ታላቅ ድንቅ ነገሮችን ይሰራ ዘንድ ዘዴውን አቅርቦለታል፤ ስለዚህ እርሱም ለእንደእርሱ አይነት ህያው ፍጡር ጠቃሚ ይሆናል።

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

፲፱ እናም አሁን፣ አሞን እነዚህን ቃላት መናገሩን እንደጨረሰ ንጉሱ እጅግ ተደስተና፣ ለእግዚአብሔር እንዲህ ሲል ሞስጋናውን አቀረበ፣ እነዚህ ስሌዳዎች ታላቅ ሚስጥር እንደያዙ ጥርጥር የለውም፣ እናም እነዚህ ተርጓሚዎች ለሰዎች ልጆች ሁሉንም እንደዚህ አይነት ሚስጥሮች ለማብራራት ሲባል ያለጥርጥር ተዘጋጅተዋል።

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

፳ አቤቱ የጌታ ስራ እንዴት ድንቅ ነው፤ እናም ከህዝቦቹ ጋር ምን ያህል ጊዜ ይሰቃያል፤ አዎን፣ የሰው ልጅ ግንዛቤ ስለ እንዴት ዕውርና የማይደረሰበት ነው፣ ምክንያቱም ጥበብን አይሹምና፣ እርሷም በእነርሱ ላይ እንድትገዛ አይፈልጉምና!

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

፳፩ አዎን፣ እነርሱ ከአረኛው እንደሸሸው እንዳልተገራው መንጋ ናቸው፣ ይበተናሉም፣ ይነዳሉም፣ እናም በጫካ አውሬዎችም ይበላሉ።

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

የዜና መዝገብ—የዛራሔምላን ምድር ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ከላማናውያን እጅ እስከተለቀቁበት ጊዜ ድረስ ያለው የህዝቡ ታሪክ።

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

ሞዛያ ፱

Mosiah 9

፩ እኔ ዜና፣ በኔፋውያን ቋንቋዎች ሁሉ በመማሪ፣ እናም ስለኔፊ ምድር ወይም የመጀመሪያው የአባታችን የውርስ ምድር በማወቁ፣ እናም የእኛ ወታደሮች በእነርሱ ላይ መጥተው ያጠፏቸው ዘንድ ኃይላቸውን ለመሰለል በላማናውያን መካከል ስላይ ሆኜ ተላኩ፣ ነገር ግን በእነርሱ መካከል ጥሩ የሆነን ነገር በተመለከትኩ ጊዜ እንዳይጠፉ ፈለግሁ።

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

፪ ስለዚህ፣ መሪያችን ከእነርሱ ጋር ስምምነት እንዲፈፀም በመፈለጌ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ከወንድሞቼ ጋር ተከራክርኩ፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ ጨካኝና ደም የተጠማ ሰው በመሆኑ እንድንገደል ወሰነብኝ፤ ነገር ግን በብዙ ደም መፋሰስ ዳንኩ፤ ምክንያቱም ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ወታደሮች በምድረበዳ እስከሚጠፉ ድረስ አባት ከአባት፣ እናም ወንድም ከወንድም ተዋግተዋልና፤ እናም እኛ የተረፍነው የሞቱትን ታሪክ ለሚሰቶቻቸውና ለልጆቻቸው ለመተረክ ወደዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመለስን።

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

፫ እናም፣ የአባቶቻችንን ምድር ለመውረስ በጣም በመጓጓት፣ ምድሪቱን ለመውረስ የፈለጉት ሁሉ ስበሰብኩኝ፣ እናም ወደ ምድሪቱ ለመሄድ ጉዞዎቻችንን በድጋሚ ወደ ምድረበዳ ጀመርን፤ ነገር ግን በረሃብና በታላቅ ስቃይ ተመታን፣ ምክንያቱም ጌታ አምላካችንን ለማስታወስ ዘግይተናልና።

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

፬ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ብዙ ቀናት በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ከተዘዋወርን በኋላ፣ ለአባቶቻችን ምድር ቅርብ በሆነው ወንድሞቻችን በተገደሉበት ስፍራ ድንኳናችንን ተከልን።

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የንጉሱን ዓላማ አውቅ ዘንድ፣ እናም ከህዝቡ ጋር መሄድና፣ ምድሪቱን በሰላም መውረስ እንችል እንደሆነ አውቀው ዘንድ ከአራቱ ሰዎቹ ጋር በድጋሚ ወደከተማው፣ ወደንጉሱ ሄድኩኝ።

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

፮ እናም ወደ ንጉሱ ሔድኩ፣ እናም የሌሂ-ኔፊን ምድር እንዲሁም የሼምሎንን ምድር እይዘው ዘንድ ከእኔ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገባ።

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

፳ እናም ደግሞ የእርሱ ህዝብ ምድሪቱን ለቀው መውጣት እንዳለባቸው አዘዘ፤ እናም እኔና ህዝቤ ምድሪቱን ለመያዝ ሄድን።

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

፳፩ እናም ህንፃዎችን መገንባትና፣ የከተማውን ግንብ፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የሌሂ-ኔፊ ከተማ ግንቦችንና የሼምሎንን ከተማ መጠገን ጀመርን።

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

፳፪ እናም አዎን፣ በሁሉም ዓይነት ዘርች እንኳን፣ በበቆሎ ዘርና፣ በሰንዳ፣ በገብሰም፣ በኒአሰም፣ በሺአምም፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ዓይነት የፍራፍሬ ዘርች ምድሪቱን ማረስ ጀመርን፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ መራባትና መበልፀግ ጀመርን።

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

፳፫ እሁን ንጉስ ላማን ህዝቤን ወደ ባርነት ለማምጣት፣ እኛ የያዝነውን ምድር የሰጠው በጮሌነቱና በብልጠቱ ነው።

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

፳፬ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ላይ ለአስራ ሁለት ዓመታት ከኖርን በኋላ፣ ንጉስ ላማን መቁነጥነጥ ጀመረ፣ ይህም የሆነበት እንዲያይሉባቸው እናም ወደባርነት እንዲያመጡባቸው ህዝቤ በምድሪቱ እየበረቱ በመሄዳቸው ነበር።

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

፳፭ እሁን እነርሱ ሰነፍና ጣዖት አምላኪ ነበሩ፣ ስለዚህ እኛ በእጆቻችን በሰራነው እራሳቸውን ያንደላቅቁ ዘንድ፣ አዎን፣ በሜዳችን መገጋዎች እራሳቸውን ይመግቡ ዘንድ፣ በባርነት ስር ሊያደርጉን ፈልገው ነበር።

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

፳፮ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ላማን ህዝቡ ከህዝቤ ጋር ይከራከር ዘንድ ማወክ ጀመረ፤ ስለዚህ በምድሪቱ ጦርነትና ፀብ ተጀመረ።

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

፳፯ በኔፊ ምድር በአስራ ሶስተኛው የንግስና ዓመቱ፣ በሼምሎን የደቡብ ክፍል፣ ህዝቤ መገጋውን ውሃ ሲያጠጡና ሲመግቡ፣ እናም መሬታቸውን ሲያርሱ ብዙ ላማናውያን በአንድነት መጥተው እነርሱን መግደልና መገጋዎቻቸውንና በቅሎዎቻቸውንም መውሰድ ጀመሩ።

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

፳፰ አዎን፣ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያልተያዙት ሁሉ ወደ ኔፊ ከተማም ጭምር ሸሹ፣ እናም እኔ እንድከላከላቸውም ፈልጉኝ።

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቀሰትና፣ በወሰደንጥርና፣ በጎራዴ፣ እናም በሻሙላ፣ በቅሰትና፣ በወንጭፍ፣ እንዲሁም መሰራት በምንችለው በሁሉም ዓይነት መሳሪያዎች ሁሉ እንዲታጠቁ አደረኩኝ፣ እናም እኔና ህዝቤ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ሄድን።

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

፲፯ አዎን፣ በጌታ ጥንካሬን ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ሄድን፤ እኔና ህዝቤ ከጠላቶቻችን እጅ ያወጣን ዘንድ በኃይል ወደ ጌታ ጮህን፣ የአባቶቻችንን የዳኑበትን ለማስታወስ ነቅተናልና።

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

፲፰ እናም እግዚአብሔር ጩኸታችንን ሰማ፣ ለጸሎታችንም መልስ ሰጠ፤ እናም በኃይሉ ወደፊት ሄድን፣ አዎን፣ በላማናውያን ላይ ሄድን፣ እናም በአንድ ቀንና ሌሊት ሶስት ሺህ አርባ ሶስት ሰዎችን ገደልን፤ ከምድራችንም እስክናስወጣቸው ድረስ ገደልናቸው።

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

፲፱ እናም፣ እኔ፣ በራሴ እጅ ሙታኖቻቸውን ለመቅበር ረዳሁ። እናም እነሆ ሁለት መቶ ሰባ ዘጠኝ ወንድሞቻችን ስለተገደሉብን ሀዘናችንና ልቅሶአችን መሪር ነበር።

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

ሞዛያ ፲

Mosiah 10

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ መንግሥቱን መመስረት ጀመርን፤ እናም እንደገና ምድሪቱን በሰላም መውረስ ጀመርን። እናም ለማናውያን በድጋሚ ከህዝቤ ጋር ለመዋጋት በሚመጡበት ጊዜ ለህዝቤ መሳሪያ ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ከሁሉም ዓይነት የተሰሩ የጦር መሳሪያዎች እንዲኖራቸው አደረግሁ።

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

፪ እናም ለማናውያን ሳናውቀው መጥተው እንዳያጠፉን በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ጠባቂዎችን አስቀመጥሁ፤ እናም ህዝቤንና መንጋዎቹን እንደዚህ ጠበቅሁ፤ እናም በጠላቶቻችን እጅ እንዳይወድቁም ጠበቅኋቸው።

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ዓመታት የአባቶቻችንን ምድር ወረሰን፤ አዎን፤ እንዲሁም ለሀያ ሁለት ዓመታት።

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

፬ እናም ሰዎች መሬቱን እንዲያርሱ፤ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት እህልና፤ ሁሉንም ዓይነት ፍራፍሬዎች እንዲያሳድጉ አደረግሁ።

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

፭ እናም ሴቶች እንዲፈትሉ፤ እንዲደክሙም፤ እንዲሰሩም፤ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት ናይሊን ጨርቅ፤ አዎን፤ ሁሉንም ዓይነት ልብሶች በመስራት እርቃናችንን እንሸፍንበት ዘንድ እንዲሰሩ አደረግሁ፤ እናም እንደዚህ በምድሪቱ ላይ በለፀግን—እንደዚህም በምድሪቱ ላይ ለሀያ ሁለት ዓመታት ያለማቋረጥ ሰላምን አገኘን።

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land— thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ለማን ሞተና፤ በቦታው ልጁ ነገሰ። እናም ህዝቡን ከህዝቤ ጋር በአመፅ ማወክ ጀመረ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ ለጦርነት መዘጋጀትና፤ ከህዝቤ ጋር ለመዋጋት መምጣት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

፯ ነገር ግን ዝግጅታቸውን እንዳውቅ፤ በህዝቤ ላይ እንዳይመጡና እንዳያጠፉቸው ከእነርሱ አጠብቃቸው ዘንድ በሻምሎን ምድር ዙሪያ ሰላዮቹን ላክሁ።

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቀስትም፤ በጦርም፤ በሳንጃና ሻምላም፤ በድንጋይም፤ እንዲሁም በወንጭፍ በታጠቁ ብዙ ሰራዊቶቻቸው ከሻምሎን ምድር በሰተሰሜን በኩል መጡ፤ እናም ራሳቸው በመላጨቱ ባዶ ነበር፤ እናም በወገባቸው ላይ የቆዳ መቀነት ታጥቀው ነበር።

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከህዝቤ ሴቶችና ህፃናት በምድረበዳው እንዲደበቁ አደረግሁ፤ እናም ደግሞ መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ይዘው መምጣት የሚችሉ ሽማግሌዎች ሁሉና ደግሞ መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ይዘው መምጣት የሚችሉ ወጣት ወንዶች ከላማናውያኖች ጋር ለመዋጋት በአንድ ላይ ራሳቸውን እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረግሁ፤ እናም እያንዳንዱን ሰው እንደ ዕድሜው በደረጃው አሰለፍኳቸው።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ሄድን፤ እናም እኔም እንኳን በእርጅና ዕድሜዬ፣ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ሄድኩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጌታ ጥንካሬ ለጦርነት ሄድን።

፲፩ አሁን፣ ላማናውያን የጌታንም ሆነ የጌታን ጥንካሬ በተመለከተ ምንም አያውቁም፣ ስለዚህ በራሳቸው ጥንካሬ ተመክተው ነበር። ይሁን እንጂ እንደሰዎች ጥንካሬ ጠንካራ ነበሩ።

፲፪ እነርሱም አረመኔና የሚያሰፈሩ እንዲሁም ደም የተጠሙ፣ ይህም በሆነው—ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር በአባቶቻቸው ክፋት እንደወጡ፣ እናም በምድረበዳ በወንድሞቻቸው ክፋት እንደተደረገባቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ ባህሩን በሚያቋርጡበት ጊዜ ክፋት እንደተደረገባቸው በማመን፣ በአባቶቻቸው ባህል የሚያምኑ ነበሩ፤

፲፫ እናም በድጋሚ ባህሩን ከተሻገሩ በኋላ በመጀመሪያው የውርስ አገራቸው በነበሩ ጊዜ ክፋት ተደርጎባቸው ነበር፣ እና ይህ ሁሉ የሆነው ኔሬ ከሁሉም በበለጠ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ታማኝ በመሆኑ—ስለዚህ እርሱ በጌታ የተደገፈ ነበር፣ ጌታም ፀሎቱን ሰምቶን መልስ ሰጥቶታልና፣ እናም በምድረበዳ ጉዞአቸው መሪነትን ወስዷልና።

፲፬ እናም ወንድሞቹ በእርሱ ተቆጡ፣ ምክንያቱም የጌታን አድራጎት አልተረዱምና፣ ውኃውንም ደግሞ ሲያቋርጡ ተቆጥተው ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም በጌታ ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጥረው ነበርና።

፲፭ እናም እንደገና፣ በቃል ኪዳኑ ምድር በደረሱበት ጊዜ የህዝቡን አገዛዝ ከእጃችን ወስዷል በማለት በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም ለገድሉት ፈለጉ።

፲፮ እናም እንደገና፣ ጌታ እንዳዘዘው ወደ ምድረበዳ በመሸሹ፣ እናም በነሃስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፉትን መዝገቦች በመውሰዱ ዘርፎናል በማለት ተቆጥተው ነበር።

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

፲፯ እናም እንደዚህ ልጆቻቸው እንዲጠሉአቸውና እንዲገድሉአቸው፣ እናም እንዲሰርቁቸውና እንዲዘርፏቸው፣ እናም እነርሱን ለማጥፋት የሚችሉትን ሁሉ እንዲያደርጉ አስተምረዋቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ በኔሬ ልጆች ላይ ዘለዓለማዊ ጥላቻ አላቸው።

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

፲፰ ለዚህም ዋና ምክንያት ንጉሰ ላማን ህዝቡን ያጠፋቸው ዘንድ ወደዚህ ምድር እንዳመጣ በሚያባብል በውሽት ተንኮል እናም በመልካም ቃሉ አታለላኝ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ለብዙ ዓመታት ተሰቃየን።

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

፲፱ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ ዜኒፍ፣ ላማናውያንን በተመለከተ ለህዝቡ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ከተናገርኩ በኋላ፣ እምነታቸውን በጌታ ጥለው ባላቸው ኃይል ወደ ጦርነቱ እንዲሄዱ አበረታታኋቸው፤ ስለዚህ ፊት ለፊት ከእነርሱ ጋር ተዋጋን።

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ ከምድራችን አስወጣናቸው፣ እናም በከፍተኛ ግድያ ጨፈጨፍናቸው፤ እንዲያውም በጣም ብዙ ሆነው አልቆጠርናቸውም።

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ራሳችን ምድር በድጋሚ ተመለስን፣ እናም ህዝባችን በድጋሚ መንጋዎቻቸውን መጠበቅና፣ መሬታቸውን ማረሰ ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

፳፪ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ በማርጀቴ፣ መንግሥቴን ከልጆቼ ለአንዱ ሰጠሁ፤ ስለዚህ ከእንግዲህ ምንም አልናገርም። እናም ጌታ ህዝቡን ይባርክ። አሜን።

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

ሞዛያ 16

Mosiah 11

፩ እናም እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ዜኒፍ ከልጆቹ አንዱ ለሆነው ለኖህ መንግስቱን ሰጠው፤ ስለሆነም ኖህ በእርሱ ቦታ መንገስ ጀመረ፤ እናም በእባቱ መንገድ አልተራመደም ነበር።

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

፪ እነሆም፣ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት አልጠበቀም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን በልቡ ፍላጎት ይራመድ ነበር። እናም ብዙ ሚስቶችና ዕቁባቶች ነበሩት። እናም ህዝቡም ኃጢያትን እንዲፈፀሙና፣ በጌታ ፊት ርኩስ የሆነውን እንዲሰሩ አደረገ። አዎን፣ እናም ዝሙትንና ሁሉንም ዓይነት ኃጢአቶችን ፈፀሙ።

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

፫ ባላቸው ንብረት ላይ ሁሉ፣ አንድ አምስተኛ ከወርቃቸውና፣ ከብራቸው፣ እናም አንድ አምስተኛ ከዚፋቸው፣ ከመዳባቸውም፣ ከነሃሳቸውና ከብረታቸውም፣ እናም ከሰብ ጠቦቶቻቸው አንድ አምስተኛው፣ ደግሞም ከእህላቸው ሁሉ አንድ አምስተኛው ላይ ቀረጥ መደበባቸው።

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

፬ እናም እነዚህን በሙሉ የወሰደው ሚስቶቹንና፣ ዕቁባቶቹን፣ ደግሞም ካህናቱን፣ እንዲሁም የእነርሱን ሚስቶችና ዕቁባቶችን ለመርዳት ነበር፤ እንደዚህም የመንግስቱንም ጉዳዮች ለወጣቸው።

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

፭ በእባቱ የተሾሙትን ካህናት ሁሉ ሻራቸው፣ እናም በልባቸው ኩራት ያበጡትን እዳዲሶች በምትካቸው ሾማቸው።

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

፮ አዎን፣ እናም ለሰንፍናቸውና፣ ለጣኦት አምላኪታቸው፣ እናም ለዘሙታቸው፣ ንጉስ ኖህ በህዝቡ ላይ ባደረገው ቀረጥ ተደግፈዋል፤ እንደዚህ ነበር ህዝቡ ጥፋትን ለመደገፍ በጣም የሰሩት።

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

፯ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እነርሱ ጣኦት አምላኪ ሆነው ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም በንጉሱና በካህናቱ ከንቱና የሸንገላ ቃላት ተታለው ነበር፤ እነርሱም ከንቱ የሆኑትን ነገሮች ይናገሩአቸው ነበርና።

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ኖህ ያማሩና ሰፊ ህንፃዎችን ገነባ፤ እናም በማለፊያ የእንጨት ሰራዎችና በሁሉም ዓይነት ውድ ነገሮች፣ በወርቅም፣ በብርም፣ በብረትም፣ በነሀሰም፣ እንዲሁም በዚፍና በመዳብ እስጌጣቸው።

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

፱ እናም ደግሞ ለራሱ ትልቅ ቤተ መንግስትንና በመካከሉ ዙፋንን ሰራ፣ ሁሉም ማለፊያ እንጨት እናም በወርቅና በብር፣ እንዲሁም በውድ ነገሮች ያጌጡ ነበር።

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

፲ እናም ደግሞ ሰራተኞቹ በቤተ መቅደሱ ግንብ ክልል ውስጥ ከማለፊያ እንጨትና መዳብ እንዲሁም ከነሀሰ ሰራቸውን እንዲሰሩ አደረገ።

፲፩ እናም ከሌሎች መቀመጫዎች ሁሉ በላይ የሆነው ለሊቀ ካህናት የተዘጋጀውን መቀመጫ በንጹህ ወርቅ አሰጠው፤ እናም ውሸትንና ከንቱ ቃላትን ለህዝባቸው ሲናገሩ ሰውነታቸውንና ክንዳቸውን በላያቸው ላይ ያሳርፉበት ዘንድ በፊታቸው መደገፊያን ገነቡላቸው።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቤተ መቅደሱ አጠገብ ረጅም ሠገነት ገነባ፤ እምን፣ በጣም ከፍ ያለ ግንብ፣ በላዩ ላይ በመቆም የሻምሎን ምድር ለማየት የሚያስችል ከፍታ ያለውን፤ እናም ደግሞ በላማናውያን የተያዘውን የሻምሎን ምድር፤ እናም በዙሪያው ያሉትን ቦታዎች ሁሉ መመልከት የሚችልበትን ግንብ ሠራ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሼምሎን ምድር ብዙ ህንፃዎች እንዲገነቡ አደረገ፤ እናም ታላቅ ግንብ የኔፊ ልጆች ከምድሪቱ ሸሽተው በወጡበት ጊዜ ማረፊያቸው በነበረው በሼምሎን በስተሰሜን ኮረብታው ላይ እንዲገነባ አደረገ፤ እናም እንደዚህም ነበር በቀረጥ ከህዝቡ ባካበተው ሀብት የሰራው።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ልቡን በሃብቶች ላይ አደረገ፤ እናም ከሚሰቶቹና ከዕቁባቶቹ ጋር በቀበጠ ብልሹ ህይወት ጊዜውን አሳለፈ፤ እናም ካህናቱም ደግሞ እንደዚሁ ከጋለሞታዎች ጋር ጊዜያቸውን አሳለፉ።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ወይን እትክልቶችን ተከለ፤ የወይን መጭመቂያንም ሰራ፤ ወይን ጠጅንም በብዛት ሰራ፤ እናም በዚህ ምክንያት እርሱና ህዝቡ የወይን ጠጅ ጠጪ ሆኑ።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የትንሽ ቁጥር ህዝቦቹ በሜዳው ላይ ከብቶቻቸውን በሚጠብቁበት ጊዜ ላማናውያን በምድሩ ላይ ሊገድሉአቸው መምጣት ጀመሩ።

፲፯ እናም ንጉስ ኖህ እነርሱን ለማባረር ጠባቂዎችን በምድሪቱ ላከ፤ ነገር ግን በቂ ቁጥር አልላከም ነበር፤ እናም ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ መጡና ገደሏቸው፤ እናም ብዙ መንጋዎቻቸውን ከምድሪቱ አባረሩ። እንደዚህም ላማናውያን እነርሱን ማጥፋት እናም ጥላቻቸውን በእነርሱ ላይ መለማመድ ጀመሩ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ኖህ ወታደሮቹን ላከባቸውና፣ ወደ ኋላ ተመለሱ፣ ወይንም ለጊዜው ወደ ኋላ ተመለሱ፤ ስለዚህ በዘረፉት ተደሰተው ተመለሱ።

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

፲፱ እናም አሁን፣ በዚህ በታላቁ ድል ሞክንያት በልባቸው ኩራት ተሞልተው ነበር፤ በራሳቸውም ጥንካሬ እንዲህ በማለት፣ የእነርሱ ሀምሳዎች የላማናውያንን ሺህ መቋቋም እንደሚችሉ ፎከሩ፤ እናም በደምና በወንድሞቻቸው ደም መፋሰስ ተደስቱ፣ ይህም በንጉሳቸውና በካህናቶቻቸው ክፋት የተነሳ ነው።

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእነርሱ መካከል ሰሙ አቢናዲ የሚባል አንድ ሰው ነበር፤ እርሱ በመካከላቸው እየሄደም እንዲህ በማለት ትንቢት መናገር ጀመረ፤ እነሆ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፤ እናም እንዲህ በማለት አዘኛል፣ ሂድና ለዚህ ህዝብ ጌታ እንዲህ ብሎአል በላቸው—ለዚህ ህዝብ ወዮለት፣ እርኩስታቸውንና፣ ኃጢአታቸውን እንዲሁም ዝሙታቸውን አይቻለሁና፤ እናም ንሰሃ ካልገቡ በቁጣዬ እጎበኛቸዋለሁ።

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

፳፩ እናም ንሰሃ ካልገቡና ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ካልተመለሱ፣ እነሆ፣ በጠላቶቻቸው እጅ እንዲወድቁ አደርጋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በባርነት ስር ይሆናሉ፤ እናም በጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ይሰቃያሉ።

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል እኔ ጌታ አምላካቸው እንደሆንኩና፣ ቀናተኛ አምላክ መሆኔን፣ የህዝቤን ጥፋት የምጎበኝ እንደሆንኩ ያውቃሉ።

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ይህ ህዝብ ንሰሃ ካልገባ እናም ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ካልተመለሱ ወደ ባርነት ይሄዳሉ፤ እናም ሁሉን ከሚገዛው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በቀር ማንም አያላቅቃቸውም።

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

፳፬ አዎን፣ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ወደ እኔ በሚጮሁበትም ጊዜ ጩኸታቸውን ለመስማት እዘገያለሁ፤ አዎን እናም በጠላቶቻቸው እንዲመቱ አፈቅዳለሁ።

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

፳፭ እናም ማቅ ለብሰው፣ አመድ ነሰንሰው ንሰሃ ካልገቡ እንዲሁም ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው በኃይል ካልጮሁ በስተቀር፣ ጸሎታቸውን አልሰማም፣ ወይም ከስቃያቸው አላላቅቃቸውም፤ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ እንዲህም አዘኛል።

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

፳፮ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አቢናዲ ይህንን ቃል ለእነርሱ በተናገረበት ጊዜ ተቆጡበት፣ እናም ህይወቱን ሊያጠፉ ፈለጉ፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ ከእጃቸው አዳነው።

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

፳፯ አሁን ንጉሥ ኖህ አቢናዲ ለህዝቡ የተናገረውን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ እርሱም ደግሞ ተቆጣጣሪ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ አቢናዲ ማን ነው፣ በእኔና በህዝቤ የሚፈርድ፣ ወይም በህዝቤ ላይ ታላቅ ስቃይን የሚያመጣው ጌታሰ ማን ነው?

፳፰ አቢናዲን አገድለው ዘንድ እንድታመጡት አዛለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ህዝቦቼ እንዲ በእንዲ ላይ ተቆጥቶ ይታወክ ዘንድ እናም በህዝቤም መካከል ፀብ ለማንሳት እነዚህን ነገሮች ተናግሯልና፤ ስለዚህ እርሱን አገድለዋለሁ።

፳፱ አሁን የህዝቡ ዐይን ታውሯል፤ ስለዚህ በአቢናዲ ቃላት ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጥረዋል፤ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ እርሱን ለመውሰድ ሞክረዋል። እናም ንጉሥ ኖህ በጌታ ቃል ላይ ልቡን አጠጠረም፣ ለመጥፎ ስራውም ንስሃ አልገባም።

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሁለት ዓመታት በኋላ አቢናዲ እንዲያውቁት ሆኖ በመካከላቸው ተደብቆ መጣ፤ እናም እንዲህ በማለት በመካከላቸው መተንበይ ጀመረ፤ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል አዘኛል—አቢናዲ ወደ ህዝቦቹ ሂድና ተንብይ፤ በእኔ ቃላት ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጥረዋልና፤ ለመጥፎ ሰራቸው ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ ሰለዚህ፤ በቁጣዬ እንበኛቸዋለሁ፤ አዎን በኃይለኛው ቁጣዬ በክፋታቸውና በእርኩስታቸው ምክንያት እንበኛቸዋለሁ።

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying —Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

፪ አዎን፤ ለዚህ ትውልድ ወዮለት! እናም ጌታም አለኝ፤ እጅህን ዘርጋና እንዲህ ብለህ ተንብይ፤ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፤ እንዲህም ይሆናል፤ ይህ ትውልድ በጥፋቱ የተነሳ ወደ ባርነት ይወስዳል፤ ጉንጨንም ይመታል፤ አዎን በሰዎች ይነዳልም ይገደላልም፤ እናም የሰማይ ጥንብ እንሳዎችና፤ ውሾች፤ አዎን፤ የዲር አራዊቶችም ሥጋቸውን ይቀረማመቱታል።

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

፫ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፤ የንጉሥ ኖህ ህይወት እሳት ውስጥ እንደገባ ጨርቅ ይሆናል፤ እኔ ጌታ መሆኔን ያውቃልና።

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህን የኔፊን ህዝብ በታላቅ ስቃይ እመታዋለሁ፤ አዎን፤ በረሃብና በቸነፈር፤ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ እንዲያለቅሱ አደርጋለሁ።

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

፭ አዎን፤ እናም በትከሻቸው ሸክም እንዲሸከሙ አደርጋለሁ፤ እናም እንደበት እንደሌለው አህያም ይነዳሉ።

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል በረዶን በመካከላቸው እልካለሁ፤ ይመታቸዋልም፤ እናም በምሰራቅ ንፋስም ደግሞ ይመታሉ፤ ተምች ደግሞ ምድራቸውን ይወራሉ፤ እህላቸውንም ይጨርሳሉ።

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

፯ እናም በታላቅ ቸነፈር ይመታሉ—እናም ይህንን ሁሉ የማደርገው በክፋታቸውና በእርኩስታቸው የተነሳ ነው።

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፤ ንስሃ ካልገቡ በቀ ከምድር ገፅ አጠፋቸዋለሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ታሪካቸውን አስቀርተው ይሄዳሉ፤ እናም ምድሪቱን ለሚወርሱ ትውልድ አስቀምጥላቸዋለሁ፤ አዎን፤ ይህንንም የማደርገው የሌለው ሀገር የዚህን ህዝብ እርኩስት እንዲያውቀው ነው። እናም አቢናዲ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተንብዮአል።

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም ወሰዱትና በንጉሱ ፊትም አስረው አቀረቡት፤ ለንጉሱም እንዲህ አሉት፡ እነሆ፣ ስለህዝብህ በክፉ የተነበየውን ሰው፣ እናም እግዚአብሔር እንደሚያጠፋቸው የሚናገረውን በፊትህ አምጥተናል።

፲ እናም ደግሞ ህይወትህን በሚመለከት ክፉን ነገር ተንብዮአል፤ እናም ህይወትህ በሚነደው እሳት ውስጥ እንደሚሆነው ጨርቅ እንደሚሆን ተናግሯል።

፲፩ እናም እንደገና፣ በአውራጃዎች እንደተጨፈለቀና በእግራቸውም እንደተረገጠ አገዳ፤ የደረቅ ሜዳ አገዳ ትሆናለህ ሲል ተናግሯል።

፲፪ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ሙሉ በሙሉ በሚያብብበት ጊዜ ንፋሱም ከነፈሰ በምድሪቱ ላይ እንደሚበተን እንደኮሸሸላ አበባ ትሆናለህ ብሏል። ጌታም እንደተናገረ አስመስለ። እናም ንስሃ ካልገባህ፣ ይህ ሁሉ በእንተ ላይ ይሆናል፣ ይህ የሆነውም በኃጢአትህ የተነሳ ነው ሲል ተናግሯል።

፲፫ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሰ ሆይ፣ አንተ ምን ያህል ክፉን ነገርን ስርተሃል፣ ወይም ህዝብህ ምን ያህል ታላቅ ኃጢአትን ፈፀሞአል፣ በእግዚአብሔር ስም ያምንኩኝው በዚህ ሰው የሚፈረድብን?

፲፬ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሰ ሆይ፣ እነሆ፣ እኛ ጥፋተኞች አይደለንም፣ እናም አንተ ንጉሰ ሆይ ኃጢአትን አላደረግህም፤ ስለዚህ፣ ይህ ሰው አንተን በሚመለከት ዋሽቷልና፣ በከንቱ ተንብዮአል።

፲፭ እናም እነሆ፣ እኛ ጠንካሮች ነን፣ ወደ ባርነትም እንመጣም፣ ወይም በጠላቶቻችንም በምርኮ እንወሰድም፤ አዎን፣ አንተ በምድሪቱ በልፀገሃል እናም ደግሞ ትበለፀጋለህ።

፲፮ እነሆ ሰውየውም ይህ ነው፣ እርሱን በእጅህ አሳልፈን እንሰጥህለን፤ መልካም እንደመሰለህ በእርሱ ላይ አድርግ።

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሰ ኖህ አቢናዲ ወደ ወህኒ እንዲጣል አደረገ፤ እናም ከእርሱ ጋር ምን ማድረግ እንዳለበት ምክር ለማድረግ ካህናት ከእርሱ ጋር እራሳቸውን በእንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አዘዘ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለንጉሱ እንዲህ አሉት፡ እኛ እንድንጠይቀው ዘንድ ወደዚህ አምጣው፤ እናም ከፊታቸው እንዲመጣም ንጉሱ አዘዘ።

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

፲፱ እናም ይቃረኑት ዘንድ፣ በዚህም እርሱንም ለመክሰስ ምክንያት ያገኙ ዘንድ መጠየቅ ጀመሩ፤ ነገር ግን በጉብዝና መለስላቸውና፣ ጥያቄያቸውን በሙሉ ተቋቋማቸው፣ አዎን፣ እስከሚደንቃቸውም፤ ጥያቄያቸውን ሁሉ ተቋቋመ እናም በሁሉም ቃላቸው ዝም አስኛቸው።

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከእነርሱ መካከል አንዱ እንዲህ አለው፡ አባቶቻችን ያስተማሯቸው እናም እንዲህ የሚሉት እነዚህ የተፃፉት ቃላት የሚሉት ምንድን ነው፤

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

፳፩ ሰላምን ያበሰረ፤ መልካም የሆነውን መልካም የምስራች ወሬ ያበሰረ፤ ደህንነትን ያወጀ፤ ለፅዮንም አምላካችሁ ነግሶአል! ያለው፣ መልካም የምስራች ይዞ የመጣው በተራራው ላይ ያለው እግርቹ እንዴት ያማሩ ናቸው፤

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

፳፪ ጠባቂዎቻችሁ ጮክ ይላሉ፤ በአንድነት ድምፅ ይዘምራሉ፤ ጌታ ፅዮንን በድጋሚ ሲያመጣ ዐይን ለዐይን ይተያያሉና፤

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

፳፫ በደስታ በድንገት ውጤ፤ የፈራረሳችሁ የኢየሩሳሌም ቦታዎች በአንድነት ዘምሩ፤ ጌታ ህዝቡን አፅናጋል፤ ኢየሩሳሌምን አድኗልና።

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

፳፬ ጌታ ቅዱስ ክንዶቹን በሀገሩ ዐይን ላይ ገልጧል፤ እናም የአለም ዳርቻዎች ሁሉ የአምላካችንን ማዳን ያያሉ?

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

፳፭ እናም አሁን አቢናዲ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እናንተ ካህናት ናችሁን፣ እናም ይህን ህዝብ ለማስተማርና የትንቢትን መንፈስ የምትረዱ እያስመሰላችሁ፡ እናም ግን እነዚህን ነገሮች ምን ማለት እንደሆኑ ከእኔ ለማወቅ ትፈልጋላችሁን?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ የጌታን መንገድ ለምታጣምሙት ለእናንተ ወዮላችሁ! እነዚህን ነገሮች የምትረዱ ከሆናችሁ አታስተምሯቸውምና፤ ስለዚህ የጌታን መንገድ አጣምማችኋል።

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

፳፯ እናንተ ለመረዳት ልባችሁን አላዘጋጀችሁም፣ ስለዚህ ብልህ አልነበራችሁም። ስለዚህ፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ ምን ታስተምራላችሁ?

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

፳፰ እናም እነርሱ፣ የሙሴን ህግ እናስተምራለን አሉ።

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

፳፱ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ የሙሴን ህግ ካስተማራችሁ ለምን እናንተስ አልጠበቃችሁትም? ለምንስ ልባችሁን በሀብት ላይ አደረጋችሁ? ለምንስ ዝሙትን ፈፀማችሁ፣ እንዲሁም ከጋለምታዎች ጋር ጉልበታችሁን አባከናችሁ፣ ስለዚህም ጌታ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ፣ አዎን እንዲያውም ታላቅ ክፋት በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ እንድተነብይ እስኪልከኝ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ይህን ህዝብ ኃጢአት እንዲፈፀም አደረጋችሁ?

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

፴፯ እውነትን እንደምናገር አታውቁምን? አዎን፣ እኔ እውነትን እንደምናገር ታውቃለችሁ፤ እናም በጌታ ፊት መንቀጥቀጥ አለባችሁ።

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል በኃጢአታችሁ የተነሳ ትመታላችሁ፣ ምክንያቱም የሙሴን ህግ እናሰተምራለን ብላችኋልና። እናም ስለሙሴ ህግ ምን ታውቃለችሁ? ደህንነት በሙሴ ህግ አማካኝነት ይመጣልን? እናንተ ምን ትላላችሁ?

፴፪ እናም ደህንነት በሙሴ ህግ አማካኝነት ይመጣል ብለው መለሱ።

፴፫ ነገር ግን አሁን አቢናዲ እንዲህ አላቸው፦ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ብትጠብቁ እንደምትድኑ አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን፣ በሲና ተራራ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ለሙሴ የሰጠውን ህግ ብትጠብቁ፦

፴፬ ከግብፅ ምድር ያወጣኋችሁ፣ ከባርነት ቤት ያወጣኋችሁ እኔ ጌታ አምላካችሁ ነኝ።

፴፭ ከእኔ በቀር ሌላ አምላክ አይኑራችሁ።

፴፮ በላይ በሰማይ ካለው፣ በታች በምድር ካለው ነገር የማናቸውንም ምሳሌ፣ የተቀረፀውን ምስል ለእናንተ አታድርጉ።

፴፯ አሁን አቢናዲ እንዲህ አላቸው፦ ይህንን ሁሉ አድርጋችኋልን? አላደረጋችሁም እላችኋለሁ። እናም ይህ ህዝብ ይህንን ሁሉ ነገር እንዲያደርግ አስተምራችኋልን? እኔ አላደረጋችሁም እላችኋለሁ።

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

ሞዛያ ፲፫

፩ እናም አሁን ንጉሱ ይህንን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ፣ ለካህናቱ እንዲህ አላቸው። ይህንን ሰው ውስዱና ግደሉት፤ አብድ ስለሆነ ከእርሱስ ምን እናደርጋለን።

፪ እናም ተነሱና እጃቸውን ሊጭኑበት ሞከሩ፣ ነገር ግን ተቋቋማቸውና እንዲህ አላቸው።

፫ አትንኩኝ፣ እጃችሁን በእኔ ላይ ብትጭኑብኝ እግዚአብሔር ይመታችኋል፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እንድሰጥ የላከኝን መልዕክት አልሰጠሁምና፤ ወይም እንድነግራችሁ የጠየቃችሁኝንም አልነገርኳችሁም፤ ስለዚህ እግዚአብሔር በዚህ ጊዜ እንደጠፋም አይፈቅድም።

፬ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር ያዘዘኝን ትዕዛዝ መፈፀም አለብኝ፤ እናም እውነቱን ስለነገርኳችሁ ተቆጥታችሁኛል። እናም እንደገና፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በመናገሪ እብድ ነው ብላችሁ ፈረዳችሁብኝ።

፭ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አቢናዲ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ የንጉስ ኖህ ህዝብ የጌታ መንፈስ በእርሱ ላይ በመሆኑ እጃቸውን ሊጭኑበት አልደፈሩም፤ እናም ልክ ሙሴ ፊቱ በሰና ተራራ ከጌታ ጋር ሲነጋገር እንደበራው ፊቱ እጅግ አበራ።

፮ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና በሰልጣን ተናገረ፤ እናም እንዲህ በማለት ንግግሩን ቀጠለ።

፯ እኔን የመግደል ኃይል እንደሌላችሁ ተመልክታችኋል፣ ስለዚህ፣ መልዕክቱን እጨርሳለሁ። አዎን፣ እናም ኃጢአታችሁን በተመለከተ እውነቱን ስለነገርኳችሁ ልባችሁን እንደሚሰነጥካችሁ አስተውላለሁ።

፰ አዎን፣ እናም ቃሌ በመገረምና በአድናቆትና በቁጣ ይሞላችኋል።

፱ ነገር ግን መልዕክቱን እጨርሳለሁ፤ የምድን አሰከሆነ፣ እናም የትም መሄዴ ችግር አያመጣም።

፲ ነገር ግን ይህን ያህል እነግራችኋለሁ፣ በእኔ ላይ የምታደርጉትም ከዚህ በኋላ ስለሚመጡት ነገሮች ዓይነትና ጥላ ይሆናሉ።

፲፩ እናም አሁን ቀሪውን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እነብላችኋለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እንደምገምተው በልባችሁ ውስጥ አልተፃፉምና፤ በአብዛኛው የህይወታችሁ ጊዜም ክፋትን እንዳጠናችሁና እንደተማራችሁ አገምታለሁ።

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ በላይ በሰማይ ካለው፣ ከምድር በታች፣ ወይም ከምድር በታች በውኃ ካለው ነገር የማናቸውንም ምሳሌ፣ የተቀረፀውን ምሳሌ ለአንተ አታድርግ ያልኩአችሁን ታስታውሳላችሁ።

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

፲፫ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ራሳችሁን ለእነርሱ አትሰገዱላቸው፣ ወይም አታገልግሉአቸውም፤ በሚጠሉኝ በልጆች፣ በሦስተኛና አራተኛ ትውልዶች፣ ላይ የአባቶችን ጥፋት የምጎበኝ እኔ ጌታ አምላክህ ቀናተኛ አምላክ ነኝ።

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

፲፬ እናም ለሚወዷቸው ትዕዛዛቱንም ለሚጠብቁ እስከ ሺህ ትውልድ ድረስ ምህረትን የማሳይ ነኝ።

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

፲፭ የእግዚአብሔር አምላክህን ስም በከንቱ አትጥራ፣ እግዚአብሔር ስሙን በከንቱ የሚጠራውን ከበደል አያነፃውም።

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

፲፮ የሰንበትን ቀን ትቀድሰው ዘንድ አሰብ።

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

፲፯ በሰድስቱ ቀን ሰራ፣ ተግባርህን ሁሉ አድርግ፤

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

፲፰ ሰባተኛው ቀን ግን ለእግዚአብሔር አምላክህ ሰንበት ነው፤ አንተ፣ ወንድ ልጅህም ሴት ልጅህም፣ ሎሌህም፣ ገረድህም፣ ከብትህም፣ በደጆችህ ውስጥ ያለ አንግዳ በእነርሱ ምንም ስራ አይሠራም፤

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

፲፱ በሰድስቱ ቀን ጌታ ምድርንና ሰማይን፣ እናም ባህርንና፣ በውስጡ ያሉትን ሁሉ ስርቷልና፤ ስለሆነም ጌታ የሰንበትን ቀን ባረካትና ቀደሳት።

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

፳ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በምድር ላይ የተሰጡህ ቀናትም ይረዝሙልህ ዘንድ እናትና አባትህን አክብር።

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

፳፩ አትግደል።

Thou shalt not kill.

፳፪ አታመንዝር፣ አትሰረቅ።

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

፳፫ በባልንጀራህ ላይ በሃሰት አትመስክር።

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

፳፬ የባልንጀራህን ቤት አትመኝ፣ የባልንጀራህን ሚስት፣ ሎሌውንም፣ ገረዱንም፣ በሬውንም፣ አህያውንም፣ የባልንጀራህ የሆነውን ማንኛውንም ነገር አትመኝ።

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አቢናዲ ይህንን አባባሉን ከጨረሰ በኋላ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፡ እነዚህ ሰዎች የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ይጠብቁ ዘንድ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ እንዲያደርጉ በእርግጥ አስተምራችኋቸዋልን?

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

፳፮ አይደለም አላችኋለሁ፤ ብታደርጉት ኖሮ፣ ጌታ ይህንን ህዝብ በተመለከተ መጥቼ መጥፎ እንድተነብይ አያደርገኝም ነበር።

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

፳፯ እናም አሁን ደህንነት በሙሴ ህግ ይመጣል ብላችኋል። የሙሴን ህግ መጠበቅ አሁንም ጠቃሚ ነው እላችኋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን የሙሴን ህግ መጠበቁ ከእነግዲህ ጠቃሚ የማይሆንበት ጊዜ ይመጣል እላችኋለሁ።

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

፳፰ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ ደህንነት በህግ ብቻ አይመጣም፤ እናም ኃጢአት ክፍያን ለዚህ ህዝብ ኃጢአትና ጥፋት እግዚአብሔር እራሱ ባያደርገው ኖሮ በሙሴም ህግ ቢሆን መወገድ በማይችሉበት ሁኔታ መጥፋት ነበረባቸው።

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

፳፱ እናም አሁን ለእስራኤል ልጆች ህጉ መስጠቱ አስፈላጊ ነበር፤ አዎን ጥብቁ ህግም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ እንገተ ደንዳና፣ ኃጢአትን ለማድረግ ፈጣንና ጌታ አምላካቸውን ለማስታወስ የዘገዩ ነበሩ፤

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

፴ ስለዚህ ለእነርሱ የተሰጣቸው ህግ ነበር፣ አዎን የስራና የስርዓት ህግ፣ ከቀን ቀን አጥብቀው የሚጠብቁት ህግ፤ እነርሱን በመጠበቅ እግዚአብሔርን እና ለእርሱ ያላቸውን ተግባር እንዲያስታውሱ።

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

፴፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ ወደፊት ሊመጡ ላሉት ምሣሌዎች ነበሩ።

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

፴፪ እናም አሁን፣ ህጉን ተረድተውት ነበርን? አልተረዱም እላችኋለሁ፤ ሁሉም ህጉን አልተረዱትም፤ እናም ይህም የሆነው ልባቸውን በማጠጠራቸው ነው፤ በእግዚአብሔር ቤዛነት ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም ሰው መዳን አለመቻሉን አልተረዱምና።

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

፴፫ እነሆ፣ ሙሴ ስለመሲሁ መምጣት፣ እንዲሁም እግዚአብሔር ህዝቡን እንደሚቤኹ አልተነበየምን? አዎን፣ እናም ዓለም ከመፈጠሯ ጀምሮ ይተነብዩ የነበሩ ሁሉም ነቢያት ከሞላ ጎደል ይህን በተመለከተ አልተነበዩምን?

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

፴፬ እግዚአብሔር እራሱ በሰው ልጆች መካከል እንደሚመጣ፣ የሰዎችን አምሳል እንደሚወስድ፣ እናም በታላቅ ኃይሉ በምድር ገፅ ፊት እንደሚሄድ አልተናገሩምን?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

፴፭ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የሙታንን ትንሳኤ እንደሚያስገኝ፣ እናም እራሱ እንደሚጨቆንና እንደሚሰቃይም አልተናገሩምን?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

ሞዛያ 14

፩ እምነ፣ ኢሳይያስም እንኳን ይህን አላለምን፤ የእኛን ዜና ማን አምኗል፣ እናም የጌታ ስም ክንድ ለማን ተገልጧል?

፪ በፊቱ እንደቡቃያ ከደረቅም መሬት እንደሰር አድጓል፣ መልክና ውበት የለውም፣ ባየውም ጊዜ እንወደው ዘንድ ደም ግባት የለውም።

፫ በሰውም የተጠላና የተናቀ ነው፤ ህማምና ሀዘንን የሚያውቅ ሰው ነው፣ እናም ፊታችንንም ከእርሱ ሰወርን፤ የተጠላ ነበር፤ እኛም አላከበርነውም።

፬ በእውነት ሰቃያችንን ተቀበለ፤ እናም ሀዘናችንን ተሸከመ፤ እኛ ግን እንደተቸገር፣ በእግዚአብሔር እንደተቀሰፈና እንደተመታ ቆጠርነው።

፭ ነገር ግን ስለመተላለፋችን እርሱ ቆሰለ፤ ስለበደላችንም ደቀቀ፤ የሰላማችን ተግሳፅ በእርሱ ላይ ነበር፤ እናም በቁስሉ ተፈወሰን።

፮ እኛ ሁላችንም እንደ በጎች ተቅበዝብዘን ጠፋን፤ ከእኛ እያንዳንዱ ወደገዛ መንገዱ አዘነበለ፤ እናም ጌታ የሁላችንንም በደል በእርሱ ላይ አኖረ።

፯ ተጨነቀ፤ እናም ተሰቃየ፣ አፋንም አልከፈተም ነበር፤ እንደበግ ለመታረድ ቀረብ፤ እናም በሸላቾቹ ፊት ዝም እንደምትል በግ አፋን አልከፈተም።

፰ ከወህኒና ከፍርድ ተወሰደ፤ እናም ስለ ትውልዱ ስ የሚያስተውልሰ ማን ነው? እርሱ ከህያዋን ምድር ተወግዶአልና፤ ስለህዝቤም መተላለፍ ተመቷልና።

፱ እናም መቃብሩን ከክፋዎች ጋር አደረገ፤ እናም ሞቱን ከባለጠጋዎች ጋር፤ ምንም ክፋ ነገር አላደረገምና፤ በእንደበቱም ተንኮል አልተገኘብትም።

፲ ይሁን እንጂ ጌታ እርሱን ማቁሰል አስደሰተው፤ በሃዘን ውስጥ ጨመረው፤ ነፍሱን ስለኃጢያት መስዋዕት ካደረገ በኋላ ዘሩን ያያል፣ እድሜውን ያረዝማል፣ እናም የጌታ ፈቃድ በእጁ ውጤታማ ይሆናል።

፲፩ የነፍሱን ሰቃይ ይመለከታል፣ እናም ደስ ይለዋል፤ ፃድቁ ባሪያዬም በእውቀቱ ብዙዎችን ያጸድቃል፤ ኃጢአታቸውንም ይሸከማልና።

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

ሰለዚህ ከጋያላን ጋር ትልቁን አካፍለዋለሁ፤ እናም ከጠንካሮች ጋር ምርኮን ይከፋፈላል፤ ነፍሱን ለሞት አሳልፎ ሰጥቷልና፤ ህጉን ከተላለፉት ጋር ተቆጥሯልም፤ እናም የብዙዎችን ኃጢአት ተሸከመ፤ ሰለአመፀኞችም ማለደ።

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

ሞዛያ ፲፭

፩ እናም አሁን፣ አቢናዲ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እግዚአብሔር ራሱ በሰው ልጆች መካከል እንደሚወርድና፣ ህዝቡንም እንደሚያድን እንድትረዱ እፈልጋለሁ።

፪ እናም በሰጋ በመኖሩም የተነሳ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ተብሎ ይጠራል፣ እናም ሥጋውን ለአብ ፈቃድ በማሰገዛቱ አብም፣ ወልድም ነው።

፫ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል የተጠነሰ ስለሆነም አብ ነው፤ ሰጋን ለብሷልና ወልድ ነው፣ ስለዚህ አብም ወልድም ነው።

፬ እናም አንድ አምላክ፣ አዎን፣ እውነተኛ የሰማይና የምድር ዘለዓለማዊ አባት ናቸው።

፭ እናም ሰጋው ለመንፈስ ወይንም ወልድም ለአብ በመገዛቱ፣ አንድ አምላክ በመሆን፣ መከራን በመስቃየቱና፣ ለፈተናም ራሱን ባለመሰጠቱ፤ ነገር ግን እንዲሳለቁበትና፣ እንዲገረፍ፣ እንዲሁም በህዝቡ እንዲጣልና እንዲወገዝ ራሱን አሳልፎ ሰጠ።

፮ እናም ከዚህ ሁሉ በኋላ፣ በሰው ልጆች መካከል ብዙ ኃያል ድንቅ ሥራዎችን ከሰራ በኋላ ይመራል፣ አዎን፣ ኢሳይያስ እንዳለው ሁሉ፣ በጉም በሸላቾቹ ፊት ዝም እንዳለው፣ እንዲሁም አፋን አልከፈተም።

፯ አዎን፣ እንደዚያ ቢሆንም እርሱ ይነዳል፣ ይሰቀላል እናም ይገደላል፣ የወልድም ፈቃድ በአብ ፈቃድ ተሸፍኖ፣ ሰጋውም ቢሆን ሞትን እንዲቀምስ ይደረጋል።

፰ እና በሞት ላይ ድልን በማግኘት፣ ለሰው ልጆች እንዲማልድ ለወልድ ኃይልን በመሰጠት፣ እንደዚህም እግዚአብሔር የሞትን እስር ይበጥሳል፤

፱ ወደሰማይ በማረገ፣ ለሰው ልጆች አንጀቱ በምህረት በመሞላቱ፣ በእነርሱና በፍርድ መካከል በመቆም ለሰዎች ልጆች በርህራሄ ይሞላል፣ የሞትን እስር በመበጣጠስ፣ በራሱም ላይ ክፋታቸውንና መተላለፋቸውን በማድረግ፣ እነርሱን በማዳን፣ እናም የፍትህን ፍላጎት አሟልቷል።

፲ እናም አሁን አላችኋለሁ፣ ትውልዱን የሚያውጅ ማን ነው? እነሆ፣ አላችኋለሁ፣ ነፍሱ ለኃጢያት መስዋዕት ሲሆን ዘሩን ያያል። እናም አሁን ምን ትላላችሁ? እናም ዘሩስ ማን ይሆናል?

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

፲፩ እነሆ እላችኋለሁ፡ ማንም የነቢያቱን ቃላት የሰማ፡
አዎን የክርስቶስን መምጣት በተመለከተ የተነበዩትን
ቅዱሳን ነቢያት ሁሉ—እላችኋለሁ፡ ቃላቸውን የሰሙ
ሁሉ፡ እናም ጌታ ህዝቡን ማዳኑን ያመኑና፡ ለኃጢአታቸው
ሰርዮት ያንን ቀን የሚጠብቁ፡ እላችኋለሁ፡ እነዚህ የእርሱ
ዘር ናቸው፡ ወይም የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት ወራሾች
ናቸው።

፲፪ ኃጢአታቸውን የተሸከመላቸው እነዚህ ናቸው፤
ከመተላለፋቸው እንዲያድናቸው እርሱ የሞተላቸው
እነርሱ ናቸው። እናም አሁን የእርሱ ዘርች አይደሉምን?

፲፫ አዎን፤ እናም ለትንቢት አፋን የከፈተ እያንዳንዱ፤
በመተላለፍ ያልወደቀ፤ ማለትም ዓለም ከመፈጠሩ ጀምሮ
የነበሩ ቅዱሳን ነቢያት ሁሉ አይደሉምን? እነርሱ ዘርች
ናቸው እላችኋለሁ።

፲፬ እናም ሰላምን የተናገሩት፤ መልካሙን የምሰራች ዜና
ያመጡት፤ ደህንነትን የተናገሩት፤ እናም ለፀዮንም
አምላክሽ ነግሷል! ያሉት እነኚህ ናቸው።

፲፭ እናም አቤቱ እግራቸው በተራራው ላይ ምን ያህል
ያማረ ነው!

፲፮ እናም እንደገና፤ ሰላምን በተራራው ላይ የሚያውጁ
እግራቸው እንዴት ያማረ ነው?

፲፯ እናም እንደገና፤ አዎን፤ ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ
እስከዘለዓለም በተራራው ላይ ሰላምን የሚያውጁት
እግራቸው እንዴት ያማረ ነው!

፲፰ እናም እነሆ፤ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፡ ይህ ብቻም
አይደለም። የሰላም መሰራቹ የምሰራች ወሬን ያመጣው፤
ህዝቡን ያዳነው አዎን፤ ያውም ጌታ ቢሆን እንኳን፤ አዎን፤
ለህዝቡ ደህንነትን የሰጠው፤ እግሮቹ በተራራው ላይ ምን
ያህል ያማሩ ናቸው።

፲፱ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ የተዘጋጀው ለህዝቡ ያደረገው
ቤዛነት ባይሆን ኖሮ፤ ይህ ባይሆን ኖሮ የሰው ዘር በሙሉ
መጥፋት ነበረባቸው እላችኋለሁ።

፳ ነገር ግን እነሆ፤ የሞት እስር ይበጠሳል፤ እናም
ወልድም ይነግሳል፤ በሞት ላይ ስልጣን ይኖረዋልም፤
ስለዚህ፤ የሞትን ትንሣኤ ያመጣል።

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard
the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets
who have prophesied concerning the coming of the
Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hear-
kened unto their words, and believed that the Lord
would redeem his people, and have looked forward
to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto
you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of
the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these
are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from
their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has
opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen
into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever
since the world began? I say unto you that they are
his seed.

And these are they who have published peace,
who have brought good tidings of good, who have
published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God
reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were
their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are
the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are
the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace,
yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O
how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of
him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of
peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his
people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his
people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath
made for his people, which was prepared from the
foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not
for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken,
and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead;
therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the
dead.

፳፩ እናም ትንሳኤ፣ እንዲያውም የመጀመሪያው ትንሣኤ፣ አዎን፣ ትንሣኤውም እንዲህ ለነበሩትና፣ አሁን ላሉት፣ እናም ወደፊት ለሚኖሩት እስከ ክርስቶስ ትንሳኤም ድረስ እንዲህ ይመጣል፤ እንዲህም ተብሎ ነው ይጠራልና።

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

፳፪ እናም አሁን፣ ሁሉም ነቢያትና፣ በቃላቸው ያመኑት ሁሉ፣ ወይም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የሚጠብቁ ሁሉ፣ በመጀመሪያው ትንሳኤ ይነሳሉ፣ ስለዚህ፣ የመጀመሪያው ትንሣኤ ናቸው።

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

፳፫ ካዳናቸው ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ለመኖር ይነሳሉ፤ እንደዚህም የሞትን እስር በበጠሰው፣ በክርስቶስ በኩል ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት ያገኛሉ።

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

፳፬ እናም እነዚህ በመጀመሪያው ትንሣኤ ቦታ ያላቸው ናቸው፤ እነዚህም ባለማወቃቸው፣ ደህንነት ሳይታወጅላቸው፣ ክርስቶስ ከመምጣቱ በፊት የሞቱት ናቸው። እናም ጌታ የእነዚህ መታደስን ያመጣል፤ በመጀመሪያው ትንሣኤ ቦታ፣ ወይም በጌታ በመዳን ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት ይኖራቸዋልም።

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

፳፭ እናም ትናንሽ ልጆች ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት ይኖራቸዋል።

And little children also have eternal life.

፳፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ፍሩና ተንቀጥቀጡ፣ መንቀጥቀጥ ይገባችኋልና፣ ጌታም በእርሱ ላይ ያመጡንና በኃጢአት የሞተውን አያድንምና፤ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም ዓለም ከተፈጠረች ጀምሮ በኃጢአታቸው የሞቱትም፣ ወደው በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ያመጡትም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የሚያውቁ እናም የማይጠብቁትም ሁሉ፣ በመጀመሪያው ትንሳኤ ቦታ ያልኖራቸው እነዚህ ናቸው።

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

፳፯ ስለዚህ እናንተስ መንቀጥቀጥ አይገባችሁምን? ደህንነት እንደዚህ ላሉት ለማናቸውም አይመጣም፣ ጌታ እንደዚህ ያሉትን ማናቸውንም አያድንምና፤ አዎን፣ ጌታ እንዲህ አይነቱን ሊያድን አይቻለውምና፣ እራሱን ሊክድ አይችልምና፣ ፍትህ በሰው ላይ ቅጣት ለመስጠት ሙብት ሲኖራት መካድ አይችልምና።

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

፳፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ የጌታ ደህንነት ለሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ የሚታወጅበት ጊዜ ይመጣል።

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

፳፱ አዎን፣ ጌታ፣ ጠባቂዎችህ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ ያደርጋሉ፣ በአንድነትም ይዘምራሉ፤ ጌታ ፅዮንን በድጋሚ ሲያመጣ ዐይን ለዐይን ይተያያሉና።

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

፴ በደስታ በድንገት ውጤት፤ የፈራረሳችሁ የኢየሩሳሌም ቦታዎች በአንድነት ዘምሩ፤ ጌታ ህዝቡን አፅናንቷል፣ ኢየሩሳሌምን አድኗልና።

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

፲፩

ጌታ ቅዱስ ክንዱን በሁሉ ሀገሮች ዐይን ላይ ገልጧል፤
እናም የአለም ዳርቻዎች ሁሉ የአምላካችንን ማዳን ያያሉ።

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes
of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall
see the salvation of our God.

ሞዛያ ፲፮

Mosiah 16

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ አቢናዲ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ ክንዲን ዘረጋና አለ፣ ሁሉም የጌታን ደህንነት የሚያዩበት ቀን ይመጣል፤ ሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ ዐይን ለዐይን ይተያያሉ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ፍርድ ትክክል እንደሆነ ይናዘዛሉ።

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

፪ እና ከእዚያም ኃጢአተኞች ይጣላሉ፣ እናም ዋይ እያሉ የሚያለቅሱበትና በትካዜ የሚጮሁበት፣ እናም ጥርሳቸውን የሚፋጨበት ምክንያት ይኖራቸዋል፣ ይህም የሚሆነው የጌታን ድምፅ ስለማያዳምጡ ነው፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ አያድናቸውም።

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

፫ ስጋዊና አጋንንታዊ ናቸው፣ እናም ዲያብሎስ፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም ያ የቀደመው እባብ እንዲያውም የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችንን ያሳተው፣ የውድቀታቸው መንስኤ የሆነውን፣ ለሰው ዘር በሙሉ ስጋዊነት፣ ስሜታዊነት፣ ዲያብሎሳዊነት፣ መጥፎን ከጥሩ ለይተው በማወቅ ራሳቸውን ለዲያብሎስ የሚያሰገዙበት ምክንያት የሆነው በእነርሱ ላይ ኃይል አለውና።

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

፬ የሰው ዘር ሁሉ ጠፍቷል፣ እናም እነሆ፣ እግዚአብሔር ህዝቡን ከጠፋበትና ከውድቀት ባያድነው ኖሮ እስከመጨረሻው በጠፋ ነበር።

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

፭ ነገር ግን አስታውሱ በስጋዊ ተፈጥሮው የቆየ፣ እናም በኃጢአትና በእግዚአብሔር እያመፀ የተጓዘ፣ ወድቆ ይቀራል እናም ዲያብሎስ ሙሉ ስልጣን በእርሱ ላይ ይኖረዋል። ስለዚህ ለእግዚአብሔር ጠላት ሆኖ፣ እርሱ ቤዛነት እንዳልተደረገለት ይሆናል፣ እናም ደግሞ ዲያብሎስም የእግዚአብሔር ጠላት ነው።

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

፮ እናም፣ ስለነገሮች መምጣት እንደመጡ በመናገር፣ እንግዲህ ክርስቶስ ወደ ዓለም ባይመጣ ኖሮ ቤዛ ሊሆን አይችልም ነበር።

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

፯ እናም ክርስቶስ ከሞት ባይነሳ ኖሮ፣ ወይም መቃብርም ድል እንዳይኖረውና ሞትም መውጊያ እንዳይኖረው፣ የሞትን አስር ባይበጣጥስ ኖሮ፣ ትንሣኤም ሊኖር አይችልም ነበር።

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

፰ ነገር ግን ትንሳኤ አለ፤ ስለዚህ ሞት ድል አይኖረውም፤ እናም የሞት መውጊያ በክርስቶስ ተውጧል።

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

፱ እርሱ የዓለም ብርሃንና ህይወት ነው፤ አዎን፣ መጨረሻ የሌለው፣ ሊጨልም የማይችል ብርሃን፤ አዎን እናም ደግሞ መጨረሻ የሌለው ህይወት፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ ሞት ሊሆን የማይችልበት።

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

፲ እንዲሁም ይህ የሚሞተው የማይሞተውን ይለብሳል፤ እናም ይህ የሚበሰብሰው የማይበሰብሰውን ይለብሳል፤ እናም መጥፎም ይሁን መልካም እንደሰራቸው መሰረት እንዲፈረድባቸው በእግዚአብሔር የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ይቆማሉ—

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

፲፩ መልካም ከሆኑ መጨረሻ ለሌላው ህይወትና ደስታ ትንሳኤ፤ እናም መጥፎ ከሆኑ፣ ኩነኔ ወደሆነው የእርሱ ላደረጋቸው ለዲያብሎስ በመሰጠት መጨረሻ ለሌላው የኩነኔ ትንሳኤ—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

፲፪ እና በሰጋዊ ፍቃዳቸውና ፍላጎታቸው መሰረት በመሄዳቸው፣ እናም የምህረት ክንዶች ወደ እነርሱ ተዘርግተው ሳሉ፣ ጌታን በጭራሽ ባለመጥራታቸው፣ የምህረት ክንዶች ወደ እነርሱ ተዘርግተዋልና፣ እነርሱም አልተቀበሉትም፤ ለጥፋታቸው ማሰጠን ቀይደው ቢሰጣቸውም እነርሱ ግን ከእነዚህ አልሸሹም፤ እናም ንስሃ እንዲገቡ ታዘው ነበር ነገር ግን ንስሃ አልገቡም።

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

፲፫ እናም አሁን፣ ልትንቀጠቀጡና፣ ለኃጢአታችሁ ንስሃ ልትገቡ አይገባችሁምን፤ እናም በክርስቶስ ብቻ ልትድኑ እንደምትችሉ አታስታውሱምን?

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

፲፬ ሰለዚህ፣ የሙሴን ህግ የምታስተምሩ ከሆነ፣ ደግሞ የሚመጣው ነገር ጥላ እንደሆነ አስተምሩ—

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

፲፭ ቤዛነት ዘለዓለማዊ አባት በሆነው በጌታ በክርስቶስ እንደሚመጣ አስተምሯቸው። አሜን።

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

ሞዛያ ፲፯

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አቢናዲ ይህን ንግግሩን ሲጨርስ፣ ንጉሱ ካህናት እንዲወስዱትና እንዲገድሉት አዘዘ።

፪ ነገር ግን ከእነርሱ መካከል አልማ የሚባል ሰው ነበር፤ እርሱም ደግሞ የኔፊ ትውልድ ነበር። እርሱም ወጣት ነበር፣ እናም አቢናዲ በተናገራቸው ቃላት ያምን ነበር፣ አቢናዲ ስለጥፋታቸው በእነርሱ ላይ ስለመሰከረው ያውቅ ነበርና፤ ስለዚህ ንጉሱ በአቢናዲ እንዲይቆጣ፣ ነገር ግን በሰላም እንዲሄድ ለመነው።

፫ ነገር ግን ንጉሱ ይበልጥ ተቆጣ፤ እናም አልማ ከመካከላቸው ውጥቶ እንዲጣል አደረገ፣ እናም እርሱን ይገድሉት ዘንድ አገልጋዮችን ላከ።

፬ ነገር ግን ከፊታቸው ሸሸ፣ እናም እንዳያገኙት ተደበቀ። እናም ለብዙ ቀናት ተሰውሮ አቢናዲ የተናገረውን ቃላት ሁሉ ፃፈ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ጠባቂዎቹ አቢናዲን እንዲከቡትና እንዲወስዱት አደረገ፤ እናም አስራትና ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ጣሉት።

፮ እናም ከሶስት ቀናት በኋላ ከካህናቱ ጋር በመመካከር፣ በድጋሚ በፊቱ እንዲቀርብ አደረገ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ አለው፣ አቢናዲ፣ በእነተ ላይ ወንጀል አግኝተናልና ለሞት ብቁ ነህ።

፰ እነተ እግዚአብሔር ራሱ በሰው ልጆች መካከል ይመጣል ብለሃልና፤ እናም አሁን፣ በዚህ የተነሳ እኔንና ህዝቤን በተመለከተ የተናገርከውን መጥፎ ቃላት ካላሰተባባልክ ትገደላለህ።

፱ አሁን አቢናዲም አለው፣ አልሀለሁ፣ ይህንን ህዝብ በተመለከተ የተናገርኩት ቃላት አላሰተባብልም፣ እውነት ናቸውና፣ እናም እውነተኛነቱን ታውቁ ዘንድ በእናንተ እጅ እንድወድቅ ለራሴ ፈቅጃለሁ።

፲ አዎን፣ እናም አስከሞቱም ድረስ አስቃያለሁ፣ ቃሌንም አላሰተባብልም፣ እነርሱም በእናንተ ላይ እንደምሰክርነት ይቆማሉ። እናም እኔን የምትገድሉኝ ከሆነ ንፁህ ደም አፍሳችኋልና፤ ይህም በመጨረሻው ቀን ደግሞ በእናንተ ላይ እንደምሰክር ይቆማል።

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

፲፩ እናም አሁን ንጉሥ ኖህ እርሱን ሊለቀው ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ቃሉን ፈርቶ ነበርና፤ የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ በእርሱ ላይ ይመጣል ብሎ ፈርቶ ነበርና።

፲፪ ነገር ግን ካህናቱ በእርሱ ላይ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ በማድረግ ንጉሱን አዋርዷል በማለት ከሰሱት፤ ስለዚህ ንጉሱ በቁጣ በእርሱ ታወከ፤ እናም እርሱ ይገደል ዘንድ አሳልፎ ሰጠው።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወሰዱትና አሰሩት፤ እስኪሞት ድረስ በእስር ጭርር አስቃዩትም።

፲፬ እናም አሁን ነበልባሉ መለብለብ ሲጀምረው፤ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸባቸው፤

፲፭ እነሆ፤ ለእኔ እንዲደረጋችሁት ሁሉ እንዲህ ይሆናል፤ ዘርቻችሁ እኔ የተሰቃየሁትን ሥቃይ፤ እንዲሁም በእሳት የመሞት ሰቃይን፤ ብዙዎች እንዲሰቃዩ ያደርጋሉ፤ እናም ይህ የሚሆነው በጌታ በእምላካቸው ደህንነት በማመናቸው ነው።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል በክፋታችሁ የተነሳ በሁሉም አይነት በሽታ ትሰቃያላችሁ።

፲፯ አዎን፤ እናም በሁሉም ክንድ ትመታላችሁ፤ እናም የዱር መንጋ በዱርና ኃይለኛ አውሬዎች እንደሚነዱ፤ ወዲህና ወዲያ ትነዳላችሁም ትበተናላችሁም።

፲፰ እናም በዚያ ቀን ትታደናላችሁ፤ በጠላቶቻችሁ ክንድም ትወሰዳላችሁ፤ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ የሞትን ሰቃይ በእሳት እኔ እንደተሰቃየሁ ትሰቃያላችሁ።

፲፱ እንደዚህም እግዚአብሔር ህዝቡን በሚያጠፋት ላይ በቀልን ያደርጋል። አቤቱ አምላኬ ነፍሴን ተቀበል።

፳ እናም አሁን፤ አቢናዲ እነኚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፤ በእሳት ሞቶ ወደቀ፤ አዎን፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ባለመካዱ እንዲሞት በመደረጉ፤ የቃሉን እውነታ በሞቱ አተመው።

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

ሞዛያ ፲፰

Mosiah 18

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ከንጉሥ ኖህ አገልጋዮች የሸሸው አልማ፣ ለጋጢአቱና ለጥፋቱ ጎሳ ገባ፣ እናም በድብቅ ከህዝቡ መካከል ሄደና፣ የአቢናዲን ቃላት ማስተማር ጀመረ—

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

፪ አዎን፣ ወደፊት የሚመጣውን በተመለከተ፣ ደግሞም የሙታን ትንሳኤን በተመለከተና፣ በክርስቶስ ሃይል፣ ስቃይና፣ ሞት ስለሚመጣው የህዝቦች ቤዛነት፣ እናም ትንሳኤውና ወደሰማይ ማረገን ማስተማር ጀመረ።

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

፫ እናም ቃሉን ለሚሰሙት ሁሉ አስተማረ። ጎንጎሱ እንዲያውቅም በድብቅ አስተማራቸው። እናም ብዙዎች ቃሉን አመኑት።

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙዎች ሰላሙኑት ስሙን ከንጉሱ በመቀበል ሞርሞን ወደሚባል፣ በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ በመሆን በጊዜው ወይም በወቅቱ በዱር አራዊቶች ተወርሮ ወደነበር ሰፍራ ሄዱ።

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

፭ አሁን፣ የንጹህ ውሃ ምንጭ በሞርሞን ነበር፣ እናም አልማ ወደ ቦታው ሄደ፤ በውሃውም አጠገብ በቀን እራሱን ጎንጎሱ እንዲያገኘው የሚደብቅበት ጥቅጥቅ ያሉ አጫጭር ዛፎች ነበሩ።

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሚያምኑት ሁሉ ቃሉን ለመስማት ወደ እርሱ ሄዱ።

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከብዙ ቀናት በኋላ የአልማን ቃል ለመስማት ሞርሞን በተባለ ሰፍራ የተሰባሰቡ ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ሰዎች ነበሩ። አዎን፣ በቃሉ ያመኑት ሁሉ ሊሰሙት ተሰበሰቡ። እናም አስተማራቸው፣ ጎሳና፣ ቤዛነትን፣ እንዲሁም በጌታ ማመንንም ሰበከላቸው።

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንዲህም አላቸው፣ እነሆ፣ የሞርሞን ውሃ ይህ ነው፣ (እንደዚህም ነበር የተጠሩት) እናም አሁን፣ እናንተ ወደ እግዚአብሔር በረት ለመምጣትና፣ ህዝቡ ትባሉ ዘንድ፣ እንዲሁም እንዳችሁ የእንዳችሁን ሸክም ቀላል እንዲሆኑ ዘንድ ለመሸከም ፈቃደኞች በመሆን እንደፈለጋችሁ፤

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

፱ አዎን፤ እናም ከሚያዝኑት ጋር ለማዘን፤ መፅናናትን ለሚፈልጉም ካፅናናችኋቸው፤ እናም በሁሉም ጊዜ በሁሉም ነገርና፤ በምትኖሩበት ቦታዎች ሁሉ፤ እስከሞት ድረስ፤ የእግዚአብሔር ምስክር በመሆን ትቆሙ ዘንድና፤ በጌታ ትድኑ ዘንድ፤ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትም ይኖራችሁ ዘንድና የመጀመሪያውን ትንሳኤ ከሚያገኙት ጋርም ለመቆጠር ፈቃደኞች ከሆናችሁ—

፲ አሁን እላችኋለሁ፤ ይህ የልባችሁ ፍላጎት ከሆነ፤ እርሱን እንደምታገለግሉ እናም ትዕዛዛቱን እንደምትጠብቁ፤ እርሱም በእናንተ ላይ መንፈሱን በብዛት ያፈሰባችሁ ዘንድ በፊቱ እንደምስክርነት ከእርሱ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን በመግባት በጌታ ስም ለመጠመቅ የሚያስችግራችሁ ምንድን ነው?

፲፩ እናም አሁን ህዝቡ ይህንን አባባሉን በሰሙ ጊዜ፤ በደስታ አጨበጩቡ፤ እናም በደስታ ይህ የልባችን ፍላጎት ነው ብለው ጮኹ።

፲፪ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ሔላምን ወሰደ፤ የመጀመሪያውም ሆኖና፤ ሄዶ በውሃው ውስጥ ቆመና እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፤ ጌታ ሆይ፤ በተቀደሰ ልብ ይህን ሰራ ይሰራ ዘንድ፤ መንፈሱን በአገልጋይህ ላይ አፍሰ።

፲፫ እናም እነዚህን ቃላት ሲናገር፤ የጌታ መንፈስ በእርሱ ላይ ነበር፤ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ ሄላም፤ ሁሉን ከሚገዛ አምላክ በተሰጠኝ ስልጣን፤ እስከሞት ድረስ እርሱን ለማገልገል ቃል ኪዳን እንደገባህ ምስክርነት አጠምቅሁለሁ፤ እናም የጌታ መንፈስ በእንተ ላይ ይፍሰስ፤ እርሱንም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ባዘጋጀው በክርስቶስ ቤዛነት ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት ይሰጥህ።

፲፬ እናም አልማ ይህንን ቃል ከተናገረ በኋላ፤ አልማና ሄላም ሁለቱም በውሃው ውስጥ ጠለቁ፤ እናም ተነሱና በመንፈስ ተሞልተው እየተደሰቱ ከውሃው ውስጥ ወጡ።

፲፭ እናም እንደገና፤ አልማ ሌላውን ወሰደ፤ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜም ወደ ውሃው ገባ፤ እናም ይኼኛውንም እንደመጀመሪያው አጠመቀው፤ ነገር ግን ራሱ በድጋሚው ውስጥ አልጠለቀም ነበር።

፲፮ እናም ወደ ሞርሞን ስፍራ የሄዱትን ማናቸውንም በዚህ ሁኔታ ያጠምቅ ነበር፤ በቁጥርም ወደ ሁለት መቶ አራት ነፍስ ገደማ ነበሩ፤ አዎን፤ እናም በሞርሞን ውሃ ተጠምቀው በእግዚአብሔርም ፀጋ ተሞልተው ነበር።

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

፲፯ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን፣ ወይንም የክርስቶስ ቤተክርስቲያን ተብለው ተጠሩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰልጣን የተጠመቀ ማንኛውም ወደ እርሱ ቤተክርስቲያን ይጨመራል።

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ሰልጣንን ኖሮት ካህናትን ሾመ፣ እንዲያውም አንድ ካህንም ቢሆን ሀምሳዎችን እንዲያስተምሩና፣ ስለእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ተገቢ የሆኑትን ነገሮች እንዲያስተምሩ ሾማቸው።

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

፲፱ እናም እርሱ ካስተማራቸውና በቅዱሳን ነቢያቱ አፍ ከተናገራቸው ነገሮች በቀር ምንም እንዲያስተምሩ አዘዛቸው።

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

፳ እምነ፣ ህዝቡን ሰላዳነው ጌታ ንሰሃንና እምነትን ካልሆነ በቀር ምንም እንዲያስብኩ አዘዛቸው።

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

፳፩ እናም እንዲ ከሌላኛው እንዳይጣላ፣ ነገር ግን አንድ እምነትና፣ አንድ ጥምቀት ይዘው፣ በአንድ ዓይን እንዲተያዩ፣ ልባቸው በአንድ ላይ በአንድነትና፣ እንዲ ሌላኛውን ባለው ፍቅር እንዲጣበቁ አዘዛቸው።

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

፳፪ እና እንደዚህም እንዲሰብኩ አዘዛቸው። እንደዚህም የእግዚአብሔር ልጆች ሆኑ።

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

፳፫ እናም የሰንበትን ቀን እንዲያከብሩና፣ እንዲቀድሱት፣ ደግሞም ለጌታ ለአምላካቸው በየቀኑ ምስጋናን እንዲያቀርቡ አዘዛቸው።

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

፳፬ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ የሾማቸው ካህናት አራሳቸውን ለመርዳት በእጃቸው እንዲሰሩ አዘዛቸው።

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

፳፭ እናም ህዝቡን በአንድ ላይ በመሰብሰብ ለማስተማርና፣ ጌታ አምላካቸውን ለማምለክ ከሳምንቱ እንዲ ቀን መርጠዋል፣ ደግሞም እንደቻሉ፣ ሁልጊዜም አራሳቸውን ይሰበሰባሉ።

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

፳፮ እናም ካህናቱ ለኑርአቸው ድጋፍን ለማግኘት በህዝቡ ላይ ጥገኛ አልነበሩም፣ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔርን ዕውቀት በማግኘት በመንፈስ ጠንክረው ያድጉ ዘንድ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሥልጣን ለማስተማር የእግዚአብሔርን ፀጋ ይቀበሉ ነበር።

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

፳፯ እናም በድጋሚ አልማ የቤተክርስቲያኑ አባላት እያንዳንዳቸው ባላቸው መጠን እንዲያካፍሉ አዘዘ፤ በብዛት ካለው በብዛት ያካፍል፤ ትንሽ ያለውም ግን ትንሽ ይፈለግበታል፤ የሌለውም ይሰጠዋል።

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

፳፰ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔርና፣ ድጋፍ ለሚያስፈልጋቸው ካህናት፣ አዎን፣ እናም ለማንኛውም ችግረኛ ለሆነ፣ ለተራቆተ ነፍስ ባላቸው መልካም ፍላጎት ሀብታቸውን በነፃ ፈቃዳቸው እንደዚህም ማካፈል ይገባቸዋል።

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

፳፱ እናም በእግዚአብሔር በመታዘዝ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እናም እንደፍላጎታቸውና ፈቃዳቸው እንዲህ ለሌላው በአለማዊና መንፈሳዊ አመለካከት ያላቸውን በመካፈል በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በቅንነት ተራመዱ።

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

፴ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ ሁሉ የሆነው በሞርሞን ነው፣ አዎን፣ በሞርሞን ውኃ አጠገብ ባለው ጫካ በሞርሞን ውኃ አጠገብ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ የሞርሞን ስፍራ፣ የሞርሞን ውኃ፣ የሞርሞን ጫካ፣ ቤዛቸውን ለማወቅ በመጡበት ዐይን እንዴት ውብ ናቸው፤ አዎን፣ እናም እንዴት የተባረኩ ናቸው፣ ለዘለዓለም እርሱን ለማመስገን ይዘምራሉና።

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

፴፩ እናም እነዚህ ሁሉ የተደረጉት ንጉሱ እንዲያውቃቸው በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ ነው።

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

፴፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ፣ በህዝቡ መካከል እንቅስቃሴ በመመልከት፣ አገልጋዮቹን እንዲመለከቷቸው ላከ። ስለዚህ የጌታን ቃል ለመስማት አብረው በተሰበሰቡበት ቀን በንጉሱ ተገኙ።

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

፴፫ እናም አሁን ንጉሱ አልማ ህዝቡ በእርሱ ላይ እንዲያምፀ ያውካል አለ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱን እንዲያጠፋላቸው ወታደሮቹን ላከ።

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና የጌታ ህዝብ የንጉሱን ወታደሮች መምጣት አወቁ፤ ስለዚህ ድንኳናቸውንና ቤተሰቦቻቸውን ወሰዱና፣ ወደ ምድረባዳው ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

፴፭ እናም በቁጥር አራት መቶ ሀምሳ ነፍስ ገደማ ነበሩ።

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

ሞዛያ ፲፱

Mosiah 19

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታን ህዝብ በከንቱ ከፈለጉ በኋላ የንጉሱ ወታደሮች ተመለሱ።

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የንጉሱ ኃይል በመቀነሳቸው፣ ትንሽ ነበሩ፤ በቀሪው ህዝብ መካከል መከፋፈል ተጀመረ።

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

፫ እናም ትንሹ ክፍል ንጉሱን ማሰፈራራት ጀመረ፤ እናም በመካከላቸው ታላቅ ፀብ ተጀመረ።

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

፬ እናም አሁን በመካከላቸው ጌዴዎን የሚባል ሰው ነበር፣ እርሱም ጠንካራ ሰውና ለንጉሱ ጠላት በመሆኑ፣ ስለዚህ ጎራዴውን መዘዘና ንጉሱን እንደሚገድለው በቁጣው ማለ።

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከንጉሱ ጋር ተዋጋ፤ ንጉሱም እንደሚያሸንፈው በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ሸሽና፣ ሮጠ፣ እና በቤተ መቅደሱ አጠገብ በሚገኘው ግንብ ላይ ወጣ።

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

፮ እናም ጌዴዎን ተከተለውና ንጉሱን ለመግደል ወደ ግንቡ ተጠጋ፣ እናም ንጉሱ አይኑን በዚህና በዚያ ተመለከተና በሻምሎን ምድር ላይ አይኑን ጣለ፣ እናም እነሆ፣ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ እንደ ነበሩ ተመለከተ።

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

፯ እናም አሁን ንጉሱ በጭንቀት እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፣ ጌዴዎን፣ ህይወቴን አትርፈው፣ ላማናውያን በእኛ ላይ መጥተዋልና፣ እናም ያጠፋናል፤ አዎን፣ ህዝቤንም ያጠፋታል።

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

፰ እናም አሁን ንጉሱ ለህይወቱ እንዳሰበው ያህል ለህዝቡ አላሰበም ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጌዴዎን ህይወቱን አተረፈለት።

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

፱ እናም ንጉሱ ህዝቡ ከላማናውያን እንዲሸሹ አዘዘ፤ እርሱም ራሱ ከፊታቸው ሄደ፣ እናም እነርሱ ከሴቶቻቸውና ከልጆቻቸው ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳ ሸሹ።

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ተከተሉአቸውና፣ ደረሱባቸው፣ ይገድሉአቸውም ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

፲፩ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ሁሉም ወንዶች ሚስቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን እንዲተው እናም ከላማናውያን ፊት እንዲሸሹ አዘዘ።

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

፲፪ አሁን ትተዋቸው ያልሄዱ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፣ ነገር ግን ከእነርሱ ጋር መቆየትና መጥፋት ፈለጉ። እናም የተቀሩት ሚስቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን ትተው ሸሹ።

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሚስቶቻቸውና ከልጆቻቸው ጋር የቀሩት፣ ቆንጆዎቹ ሴቶች ልጆቻቸው ላማናውያን እንዳይገድሉላቸው እንዲለምኑ ወደፊት እንዲቆሙ አስደረጉ።

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በሴቶቻቸው ውበት በመማረካቸው አዘኑላቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

፲፭ ስለዚህ ላማናውያን ህይወታቸውን አተረፉላቸውና፣ ማረኩአቸው፣ እንዲሁም ወደኔፊ ምድር መለሱአቸው፣ እናም ንጉስ ኖህን ለላማናውያን ካቀረቡ፤ ንብረቶቻቸውን፣ እንዲሁም ካሉአቸው ሁሉ ግማሹን፣ ከወርቃቸው ግማሹንና፣ ከብራቸው፣ እናም ከሁሉም ከከበሩ ነገሮቻቸው አሳልፈው ከሰጡ ምድሪቱን እንደሚይዙ ተሰማምተው ሰጡአቸው፣ በዚህም በየዓመቱ ለላማናውያን ንጉስ ግብርን እንዲከፍሉ አደረጉአቸው።

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

፲፮ እናም አሁን በምርኮ ከተወሰዱት መካከል ስሙ ሊምሂ የተባለ የንጉሱ ልጆች የሆነ አንድ ልጅ ነበር።

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

፲፯ እናም አሁን ሊምሂ አባቱ እንዳይጠፋ ፈልጎ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ሊምሂ የአባቱን ክፋት የማያውቅ አልነበረም፣ እርሱ ራሱ ፃድቅ ሰው ነበርና።

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌዴዎን ንጉሱንና ከእርሱ ጋር ያሉትን ለማግኘት በሚሰጥር ወደ ምድረበዳው ሰዎችን ላከ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከንጉሱና ከካህናቱ በስተቀር በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ከሰዎች ጋር ተገናኙ።

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

፲፱ አሁን ሚስቶቻቸውና ልጆቻቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር የተቀሩት ቢገደሉ በቀልንና ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር መጥፋትን በመፈለግ ወደ ኔፊ ምድር እንደሚመለሱ በልባቸው ምለው ነበር።

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

፳፬ እናም ንጉሱ መመለስ እንደሌለባቸው አዘዛቸውና፣ በንጉሱ ተቆጡ፣ በእሳትም እሰኪሞት እንኳን እንዲሰቃይ አደረጉ።

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

፳፭ እናም ካህናቱን ደግሞ ለመውሰድና፣ ለመግደል ፈለጉ፣ እነርሱም ሸሽተው አመለጡአቸው።

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ኔፊ ምድር እየተመለሱ እያሉ፤ እናም የጌዴዎንን ሰዎች አገኙ። የጌዴዎን ሰዎችም በልጆቻቸውና በሚስቶቻቸው ላይ ስለተፈፀመው ነገር ሁሉ ነገሯቸው፤ እንዲሁም ለላማናውያን ካላቸው ሁሉ እንደ ሁለተኛውን ግብር ከከፈሉ ላማናውያን ምድሩን እንዲይዙ እንደፈቀዱላቸው ነገሯቸው።

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

፳፫ እናም ህዝቡ ለጌዴዎን ህዝብ ንጉሱን እንደገደሉትና፤ ካህናቱ ወደ ጥልቅ ምድር በደረሱ እንደሸሹ ነገሩአቸው።

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ስነሰርዓቱ ካለቀ በኋላ፤ ወደኔፊ ምድር በደስታ ተመለሱ፤ ምክንያቱም ሚስቶቻቸውና ልጆቻቸው አልተገደሉም ነበርና፤ እናም ለጌዴዎን በንጉሱ ላይ ያደረጉትን ነገሩት።

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ንጉስ ህዝቡ እንደማይገደሉአቸው መሀላ ፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

፳፮ እናም ደግሞ ሊምሂ የንጉስ ልጅ በመሆኑ፤ በህዝቡም በገዥነት በመሾሙ፤ ህዝቡ ካለው ግማሹን ያህል ግብር እንደሚከፍሉ ለላማናውያን ንጉስ መሃላ አደረገ።

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሊምሂ መንግሥት መመስረት እናም በህዝቡ መካከል ሰላምን መመስረት ጀመረ።

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

፳፰ እናም የሊምሂ ህዝብ በምድር ውስጥ እንዲጠብቁ፤ ወደ ምድር በደረሱ እንዳይሸሹ፤ የላማናውያን ንጉስ በሀገሪቱ ዙሪያ ጠባቂዎችን አስቀመጠ፤ እናም ከኔፋውያን በሚቀበለው ግብርም ጠባቂዎቹን ደገፈ።

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

፳፱ እናም አሁን ንጉስ ሊምሂ ያለማቋረጥ ለሁለት ዓመታት በመንግሥቱ ላይ ሰላም ነበረው፤ ላማናውያንም አላበሳጩአቸውም እንዲሁም ሊያጠፋአቸው አልፈለጉም።

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

ሞዛያ ፳

፩ አሁን በሻሞሎን የላማናውያን ሴት ልጆች ለመዝፈንና ለመደነስ እናም እራሳቸውን ለማሰደስት በአንድነት የሚሰበሰቡበት ስፍራ ነበር።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጥቂት የሚቆጠሩ እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ለመዝፈንና ለመደነስ አንድ ቀን አስባሰበው ነበር።

፫ እናም አሁን የንጉስ ኖህ ካህናት ወደ ኔፊ ከተማ ለመመለስ በማፈር፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ህዝቡ ይገድለናል ብለው ስለፈሩ፣ ስለዚህ ወደ ሚስቶቻቸውና ልጆቻቸው ለመመለስ አልደፈሩም።

፬ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በመቅረታቸውና፣ የላማናውያን ሴት ልጆችን በማግኘታቸው ተኝተው ጠበቁአቸው፣

፭ እናም ጥቂቶች ለመደነስ በአንድ ላይ በተሰበሰቡ ጊዜ፣ ከተደበቁበት ስፍራ ወጡና ጠለፉአቸው እናም ወደ ምድረበዳው ወሰዱአቸው፤ አዎን፣ የላማናውያን ህያ አራት ሴት ልጆችን ወደ ምድረበዳው ወሰዱአቸው።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን የሴት ልጆቻቸውን መጥፋት ሲያውቁ፣ ይህን ያደረጉት የሊምሂ ህዝብ ናቸው ብለው በማሰብ በሊምሂ ህዝብ ተቆጡ።

፯ ስለዚህ ወታደሮቻቸውን ላኩባቸው፣ አዎን፣ ንጉሱም ራሱ እንኳን ቢሆን ከህዝቡ ፊት ሄደ፤ እናም የሊምሂን ህዝብ ለማጥፋት ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ሄዱ።

፰ እናም አሁን ሊምሂ ከግንቡ ላይ ተመለከታቸውና፣ ለጦርነት ሁሉንም ዝግጅታቸውን ተመለከተ፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡና፣ እናም በመሰኩ ላይና በጫካው መሸገው ጠበቁ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በመጡ ጊዜ፣ የሊምሂ ህዝቦች ይጠብቁበት ከነበረበት ስፍራ ያጠቁአቸውና፣ ይገድሉአቸው ጀመር።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጦርነቱ እጅግ አሰቃቂ ሆነ፤ ልክ አንበሳዎች ለአደናቻቸው እንደሚጣሉም አይነት ነበርና።

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሊምሂ ህዝብ ላማናውያንን ከፊታቸው ማባረር ጀመሩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ እንደ ላማናውያን ግማሹን እንኳን ያህል አይበዙም ነበር። ነገር ግን ለህይወታቸው፣ እናም ለሚስቶቻቸውና፣ ለልጆቻቸው ታገሉ፤ ስለዚህ ለራሳቸው እንደዘንደው ለመዋጋት ጥረት አድርገዋል።

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሙታን መካከል የላማናውያንን ንጉስ አገኝ፤ ሆኖም እርሱ ገና አልሞተም ነበር፤ ቆሰሎ ነበር፤ እናም የህዝቡም ሽሽት ፈጣን ሰለነበር በመሬቱም ላይ ወድቆ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

፲፫ እናም ወሰዱትና ቁሰሉን አሰሩለት፤ እንዲሁም ከሊምሂ ፊት አመጡት፤ እናም እንዲህ አሉ፤ እነሆ፤ የላማናውያን ንጉስ ይኸውና፤ በመቁሰሉም ከሙታኖቻቸው መካከል ወደቀና፤ ጥለውት ሄዱ፤ እናም እነሆ፤ በፊትህ አመጣነው፤ እናም አሁን እንግደለው።

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

፲፬ ነገር ግን ሊምሂ እንዲህ አላቸው፤ አትግደሉት፤ ነገር ግን እኔ እንዳየው ወደዚህ ሰፍራ አምጡት። እነርሱም አመጡት። እናም ሊምሂ እንዲህ አለው፤ አንተን ከህዝቤ ጋር በጦርነት ለመምጣት ያነሳሳህ ምንድን ነው? እነሆ፤ ህዝቤ ለአንተ ያደረግሁትን መሃላ አላፈረሱም፤ ስለዚህ ለምን አንተ ለህዝቤ ያደረግኸውን መሃላ ታፈርሳለህ?

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

፲፭ እናም አሁን ንጉሱ እንዲህ አለ፤ ህዝብህ የህዝቤን ሴቶች ልጆችን ሰለወሰዱ መሃላዬን አፈረሱሁ፤ ስለዚህ፤ በቁጣዬ ህዝቤ ከህዝብህ ላይ በጦርነት እንዲመጡ አድርጌአለሁ።

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

፲፮ እናም አሁን ሊምሂ ይህንን በተመለከተ ምንም አልሰማም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እንዲህ አለ፤ ከህዝቤ መካከል አፈልጋለሁ እናም ይህንን ያደረገ ይጠፋል። ስለዚህ በህዝቡ መካከል እንዲፈልጉ አደረገ።

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

፲፯ አሁን ጌዳዎን እነዚህን ነገሮች በሰማ ጊዜ፤ እርሱ የንጉሱ ካፒቱን በመሆኑ፤ ሄዶም ለንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፤ እባክህን እማፀንሃለሁ፤ እናም ይህን ህዝብ አትፈትሽ፤ ህዝቡንም በዚህ ሀላፊ አታድርጋቸው።

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

፲፰ ይህ ህዝብ ሊያጠፏቸው የፈለገቸውን የአባትህን ካህናት አታስታውሰምን? እናም በምድረበዳስ አይደሉምን? እናስ የላማናውያንን ሴት ልጆች የሰረቁት እነርሱ አይደሉምን?

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

፲፱ እናም አሁን፤ እነሆ እናም ለህዝቡ እንዲነግራቸውና ወደ እኛ እንዲረጋጉ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለንጉሱ ንገር፤ እነሆም በእኛ ላይ ለመምጣት ዝግጅታቸውን አጠናቀዋል፤ እነሆም፤ ደግሞ ከእኛ ጥቂቶቹ ነገና።

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

፳ እናም እነሆ፤ ከብዙ ሰራዊቶቻቸው ጋር መጡ፤ እናም ንጉሱ ካላረጋጋቸው በስተቀር እኛ እንጠፋለን።

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

፳፩ አቢናዲ በእኛ ላይ የተነበያቸው ቃላት
አልተፈፀሙምን—እናም ይህ ሁሉ የሆነበት ምክንያት
የጌታን ቃል ባለመስማታችን፣ እናም ከክፋታችን ሰ
ባለመመለሳችን አይደለምን?

፳፪ እናም እንግዲህ ንጉሱን እናረጋጋው እናም የገባውን
መሃላ እንፈፀም፤ ምክንያቱም ህይወታችንን ከምናጣ
በባርነት ሥር ብንሆን ይሻለናል፤ ስለዚህ የብዙ ደም
መፋሰሱን እናቆመው።

፳፫ እናም እንግዲህ ለምህ ስለአባቱና ወደ ምድረበዳው
ሰለሸሹት ካህናት ለንጉሱ ነገረው፣ እናም ሴቶች
ልጆቻቸው የመውሰድ ጥፋተኛነትን በተመለከተ በእነርሱ
ላይ ጣለው።

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ወደ ህዝቡ ተረጋጋ፣ እንዲህም
አላቸው፣ ከህዝቤ ጋር ለመገናኘት መሳሪያዎችን ሳንይዝ
እንሂድ፤ እናም ህዝቤ ህዝባችሁን እንደማይገድልም
መሃላ እምልላችኋለሁ።

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱን ተከተሉትና፣ መሳሪያቸውን
ሳይዙ ላማናውያንን ለማግኘት ሄዱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ
ላማናውያንን አገኙባቸው፤ የላማናውያንም ንጉሱ
ከፊታቸው በመሰገድ ስለለምሂ ህዝብ ለመነ።

፳፮ እናም ላማናውያን የለምሂን ህዝብ ያለ ጦር መሳሪያ
መሆናቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ አዘኑላቸውና፣ ወደ
እነርሱ ተረጋጉ፣ ከንጉሳቸውም ጋር በሰላም ወደ ራሳቸው
ምድር ተመለሱ።

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which
he prophesied against us—and all this because we
would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and
turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the
oath which we have made unto him; for it is better
that we should be in bondage than that we should
lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shed-
ding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things con-
cerning his father, and the priests that had fled into
the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of
their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified to-
wards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go
forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear
unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay
thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king,
and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites.
And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites;
and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down
before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of
Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi,
that they were without arms, they had compassion
on them and were pacified towards them, and re-
turned with their king in peace to their own land.

ሞዛያ ፳፩

Mosiah 21

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለምህን ህዝቡ ወደ ኔፊ ከተማ ተመለሱና፤ በምድሪቱ ላይ እንደገና በሰላም መኖር ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከብዙ ቀናት በኋላ ለማናውያን በኔፋውያን ላይ በድጋሚ በቁጣ ተነሳሱና፤ በዙሪያው ወዳለው ምድር ድንበር መምጣት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

፫ አሁን ንጉሱ ለለምሂ በመማሉ ምክንያት ለገድሏቸው አልደፈሩም፤ ነገር ግን በጉንጮቻቸው ላይ መቼለቸው፣ እናም ሰልጣናቸውን ተጠቀሙባቸው፤ እናም በትከሻቸው ከባድ ሸክም አስቀመጡባቸውና እንደደንቆር አህያ ይነዱአቸው ጀመር—

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

፬ አዎን፣ ይህ ሁሉ የሆነው የጌታ ቃል ይፈፀም ዘንድ ነበር።

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

፭ እናም አሁን የኔፋውያን ሰቃይ ታላቅ ነበር፤ እናም ለማናውያን በሁሉም አቅጣጫ ሰለከበቡአቸው ከእጃቸው የሚያሰለቅቁበት ምንም መንገድ አልነበረም።

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሰቃያቸው ምክንያት ህዝቡ በንጉሱ ላይ አቤቱታ ማቅረብ ጀመሩ፤ ከእነርሱም ጋር እንደገናም ለመዋጋት ፈለጉ። እናም በአቤቱታቸው ንጉሱን በአሰከፊ ሁኔታ አሰቃዩት፤ ሰለዚህ እነርሱም እንደፍላጎታቸው እንዲያደርጉ ፈቀደላቸው።

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

፯ እናም በድጋሚ ተሰባሰቡና፤ መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ታጠቁ፣ እናም ለማናውያኖችን ከምድራቸው ለማባረር ወደ እነርሱ ሄዱ።

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለማናውያን መትተው መለሱአቸውና፣ ብዙዎቻቸውን ገደሉአቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

፱ እናም አሁን በለምሂ ህዝብ መካከል ታላቅ ልቅሶና ዋይታ ነበር፤ ባሏ የሞተባት ለባሏ አለቀሰች፣ ሴትና ወንድ ልጆች ለአባታቸው አለቀሱ፣ እናም ወንድሞች ለወንድሞቹ አዘነ።

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

፲ አሁን በምድሪቱ ብዙ ባልቴቶች ነበሩ፣ እናም ከቀን ወደ ቀንም በኃይል ያለቅሱ ነበር፣ ታላቅ የሆነ የላማናውያን ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ መጥቶ ነበርና።

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የማያቋርጠው ጩኸታቸው ቀሪዎቹን የለምሂን ህዝብ በላማናውያኖች ላይ እንዲቆጡ አወካቸው፣ እናም በድጋሚ ለውጊያ ሄዱ፣ ነገር ግን በድጋሚ ተከላክለው መለሱአቸው፣ ብዙ ህይወት ጠፋባቸው።

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

፲፪ እምነ፣ ለሶስተኛ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ሄዱ፣ እንደገናም እንደዚያው ሆነባቸው፤ እናም ያልተገደሉት በድጋሚ ወደ ኔሬ ከተማ ተመለሱ።

፲፫ እናም ትቢያ እስኪሆኑ ድረስ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ አደረጉ፣ እናም እንደጠላቶቻቸው ፍላጎት ወዲህና ወዲያ እንዲወሰዱአቸውና እንዲያሸክሙአቸው እራሳቸውን ወደ ባርነት ቀንበር በማሰገደድ እንዲቀጡ እራሳቸውን አሳልፈው ሰጡ።

፲፬ እናም እስከ ጥልቅ ትህትና ድረስ ራሳቸውን ትሁት አደረጉ፤ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔር በኃይል ጮሁ፤ አዎን፣ ከሰቃያቸው ያለለቅቃቸው ዘንድ ቀኑን ሙሉ ወደአምላካቸው ጮኸዋል።

፲፭ እናም አሁን በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ጌታ ጨኸታቸውን ለማዳመጥ ዘገይቷል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጌታ ጸሎታቸውን ሰምቷል፣ ሸክማቸውንም ማቃለል እንዲጀምሩ የላማናውያንን ልብ ማራራት ጀመረ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ጌታ ከባርነት እነርሱን የማዳኑ አስፈላጊነት ውሳኔው ላይ አላደረሰም።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ቀስ በቀስ መበልፀግ ጀመሩ፣ እናም በርሃብ እንዳይሰቃዩ እህልና መንጋዎችን እና ተክሎችን በብዛት ማምረት ጀመሩ።

፲፯ አሁንም ከወንዶቹ የሚበልጡ ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ሴቶች ነበሩ፣ ስለዚህ ንጉስ ለምህረት ገለጻቸው ለማቆላቸውና ለልጆቻቸው በርሃብ እንዳይጠፉ ማንኛውም ሰው እነርሱን ለመደገፍ ያለውን እንዲያካፍል አዘዘ፤ እናም ይህን ያደረገው የተገደሉት ቁጥራቸው ብዙ በመሆኑ ነበር።

፲፰ አሁን የሊምሂ ህዝቦች እስከሚቻላቸው ድረስ በእንድነት በቡድን ተጠጋግተው፣ እናም እህሎቻቸውና መንጋዎቻቸውን ይጠብቃሉ፤

፲፱ እናም ንጉሱ ራሱ፤ በዘዴ በላማናውያን እጅ እወድቃለሁ በማለት ይፈራ ስለነበር፣ ጠባቂዎቹን ካልወሰደ በቀር ከከተማው ግንብ ውጪ የራሱን ደህንነት አያምንም።

፳ እናም የላማናውያን ሴት ልጆችን የሰረቁትንና ታላቅ ጥፋት በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲመጣ ያደረጉትን፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው የሸሹትን ካህናት በዘዴም ይወስዷቸው ዘንድ ህዝቡ በዙሪያው ያለውን ምድር እንዲጠብቅ አደረገ።

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

፳፩ ይቀጡአቸው ዘንድ ፍላጎት ነበራቸውና፤ በምሽትም ወደ ኔፊ ምድር መጥተዋልና እናም እህሎቻቸውንና ብዙ የከበሩ ነገሮቻቸውን ወስደዋልና፤ ስለዚህም እነርሱን አድፍጠው ጠበቁአቸው።

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ አሞንና ወንድሞቹ ወደ ምድሪቱ እስኪመጡ ድረስ፤ በላማናውያንና በሊምሂ ህዝብ መካከል ምንም ረብሻ አልነበረም።

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

፳፫ እናም ንጉሱ ከጠባቂው ጋር ከግንቡ ውጪ በሆነበት ጊዜ፤ አሞንንና ወንድሞቹን አገኘና፤ የኖህ ካህን ናቸው ብሎም ገመተ፤ ስለዚህ እንዲወሰዱና፤ በገመድ እንዲታሰሩ እናም ወደ ወሀኒ ቤት እንዲጣሉ አደረገ። እናም የኖህ ካህናት ቢሆኑ ኖሮ እንዲሞቱ ያደርግ ነበር።

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

፳፬ ነገር ግን እንዳልሆኑ፤ ነገር ግን የእርሱ ወንድሞቹ መሆናቸውን እናም ከዛራሄምላ ምድር እንደመጡ ባወቀ ጊዜ፤ እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነ ደስታ ተሞልቶ ነበር።

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

፳፭ አሁን ንጉሱ ሊምሂ አሞን ከመምጣቱ በፊት የዛራሄምላን ምድር እንዲፈልጉ አነስተኛ ቁጥር ያላቸው ሰዎችን ልኮ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ማግኘት አልቻሉም ነበር፤ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ጠፍተው ነበር።

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

፳፮ ይሁን እንጂ፤ በህዝብ የነበረበት ምድር፤ አዎን፤ በደረቅ አጥንት የተሸፈነ ምድር፤ አዎን፤ በህዝብ የተሞላና የጠፋ ምድር አገኘ፤ እናም የዛራሄምላ ምድር ነው ብለው በመገመት ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ተመለሱ፤ ወደ ምድሪቱም ዳርቻ አሞን ከመምጣቱ ከጥቂት ቀናት በፊት ደረሱ።

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

፳፯ እናም ከእነርሱም ጋር መዝገቡን፤ እንዲሁም አጥንታቸውን ያገኙትን ህዝብ መዝገብን አመጡ፤ እናም ስሌዳውም የተቀረፀው በብረት አፈር ነበር።

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

፳፰ እናም አሁን ሊምሂ የተቀረፁትን ለመተርጎም ንጉሱ ሞዛያ ከእግዚአብሔር ሰጦታ እንዳለው ከአሞን እንደበት በማወቅ በድጋሚ ተደስተ፤ አዎን፤ እናም አሞን ደግሞ ተደስተ።

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

፳፱ ይሁን እንጂ ብዙዎች ወንድሞቻቸው ስለተገደሉባቸው አሞንና ወንድሞቹ በሃዘን ተሞልተው ነበር።

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

፱ እናም ደግሞ ንጉስ ናህና ካህናቱ ህዝቡ በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ኃጢአትና ክፋት እንዲፈፀም አድርገው ነበር፤ ደግሞም በአቢናዲ ሞት አዘኑ፤ እናም ደግሞ በአልማና በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ጥንካሬ እናም አቢናዲ በተናገረው ቃል ባላቸው እምነት የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን በመሰረቱት ሰዎች መሄድ አለቀሱ።

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

፲፩ እዎን፣ ወዴት እንደሸሹ አላወቁምና ለሸሸታቸው አለቀሱ። አሁን እራሳቸውም ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር እርሱን ለማገልገልና ትዕዛዛቱን ለመጠበቅ ቃል ኪዳን ሰለገቡ፣ ከእነርሱ ጋር በደስታ ይቀላቀሉ ነበር።

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

፲፪ እናም አሁን እሞን ከመጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ንጉስ ሊምሂ፣ እናም ደግሞ ብዙዎች ህዝቦቹ እርሱን ለማገልገልና ትዕዛዛቱን ለመጠበቅ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገብተዋል።

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ሊምሂና ብዙዎች ህዝቦቹ ለመጠመቅ ፈለጉ፤ ነገር ግን በሞድሪቱ ከእግዚአብሔር ስልጣን የተሰጠው እንደሞድሪቱ አልነበረም። እናም እሞን ይህን ነገር እራሱን ብቁ አገልጋይ አይደለሁም በማለት ለመፈፀም አልፈቀደም።

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

፲፬ ስለዚህ የጌታን መንፈስ በመጠበቅ፣ በዚያን ጊዜ ለራሳቸው ቤተክርስቲያን አላቋቋሙም ነበር። አሁን ወደ ሞድሪብዳው እንደሸሹት እንደ አልማና እንደ ወንድሙ መሆን ፈልገው ነበር።

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

፲፭ በፍፁም ልባቸው እግዚአብሔርን ለማገልገል ፈቃደኛ እንደሆኑ እንደምስክር እና እማኝ ለመጠመቅ ፈለጉ፣ ይሁን እንጂ ጊዜያቸውን አራዘሙ፣ የጥምቀታቸው ታሪክ ከዚህ ቀጥሎ ይቀርባል።

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

፲፮ እናም አሁን የእሞንና የህዝቡ እናም የንጉስ ሊምሂና የህዝቡ ዕቅድ እራሳቸውን ከላማናውያን እጅና ከባርነት ማስለቀቅ ነበር።

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

ሞዛያ ፳፪

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እሞንና ንጉስ ለምሂ ህዝቡን ከባርነት እንዴት እንደሚያስለቅቁ መመካከር ጀመሩ፤ እናም ህዝቡ ሁሉ እንኳ በእንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረጉ፤ እናም ይህንን ያደረጉት ሁኔታውን በተመለከተ የህዝቡን ድምፅ ለመሰማት ነበር።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ ሴቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን፣ እናም ከብቶቻቸውን፣ መንጋዎቻቸውንና፣ ድንኳናቸውን ወስደው ወደ ምድረበዳው ከመሸሽ በስተቀር እራሳቸውን ከባርነት የሚያስለቅቁበት ምንም መንገድ ለማግኘት አልቻሉም፤ ከባርነት በጎራዴ ለመላቀቅ ቢያሰቡም ላማናውያን በቁጥር ብዙ በመሆናቸው የሊምሂ ህዝብ ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመጣላት የማይቻላቸው ነበር።

፫ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ጌዴዎን ሔደና፣ በንጉሱ ፊት ቆመ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለው፦ አሁን ንጉስ ሆይ ከወንድሞቻችን ከላማናውያን ጋር ስንጣላ እስካሁን ብዙ ጊዜ ቃላቴን ስምተሀልና።

፬ እናም አሁን ንጉስ ሆይ እኔ የማልጠቅም አገልጋይ ሆኜ ካላገኘኸኝ ወይም በማንኛውም ደረጃ እስካሁን ቃሉን ካዳመጥህና ለእናንተም ጠቃሚ ከሆኑ፣ እንዲሁም በዚህ ጊዜ አንተም ቃሉን እንድትሰማኝ አልፈልጋለሁ፣ እናም የአንተ አገልጋይ እሆናለሁ፣ ይህንንም ህዝብ ከባርነት አለቅቃለሁ።

፭ እናም ንጉሱ ይናገር ዘንድ ፈቀደለት። ጌዴዎንም እንዲህ አለው፦

፮ የኋለኛውን መተላለፊያ፣ በኋለኛው ግንብ በኩል፣ በከተማው በስተኋላ በኩል ተመልከት። ላማናውያን፣ ወይም የላማናውያን ጠባቂዎች በምሽት ይሰክራሉ፣ ስለዚህ በእነዚህ ህዝቦች መካከል ከብቶቻቸውንና መንጋዎቻቸውን በእንድ ላይ በመሰብሰብ ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲሸሹ አዋጅ እንላክ።

፯ እናም በትዕዛዝህ መሰረት ሄጄ የመጨረሻውን የወይን ግብር ለላማናውያን እክፍላለሁ፣ እነርሱም ይሰክራሉ፤ እናም እነርሱ ሲሰክሩና ሲተኙ በጦር ሠፈሩ በስተግራ ባለው በሚሰጥር ማለፊያው እናልፋለን።

፰ ከሴቶቻችንና ከልጆቻችን፣ ከከብቶቻችንና ከመንጋዎቻችን ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳ እንሸሻለን፤ እናም በሼምሎን ምድር አካባቢ እንጓዛለን።

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ የጌዴዎንን ቃል አዳመጠ።

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

፲ እናም ንጉስ ሊምሂ ህዝቡ መንጋዎቹን በእንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ፤ እናም የወይኑን ግብር ለላማናውያን ላከ፤ ደግሞም እንደሰጣታ ብዙ ወይን ላከላቸው፣ እናም ንጉስ ሊምሂ የላካቸውን ወይን በብዛት ጠጡ።

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የንጉስ ሊምሂ ህዝብ ከከብቶቻቸውና ከመንጋዎቻቸው ጋር በምሽት ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ፤ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ በሼምሎን ምድር ዙሪያ ሄዱና፣ በእሞንና በወንድሞቹ በመመራት እቅጣጫቸውን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

፲፪ እናም ወርቃቸውንና ብራቸውንና የከበሩ ነገሮቻቸውን መሸከም የሚችሉትን ያህል፣ ደግሞም ሰንቆቻቸውን ሁሉ ወደ ምድረበዳው ወሰዱ፤ እናም ጉዞአቸውን ቀጠሉ።

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

፲፫ እናም በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ብዙ ቀናት ካደረጉ በኋላ፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ደረሱ፣ እናም የሞዛያ ህዝብ አባል ሆኑ፣ እንዲሁም በአገዛዙ ስር ሆኑ።

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ በደስታ ተቀበላቸው፤ እናም ደግሞ መዝገባቸውንና ደግሞ በሊምሂ ህዝብ የተገኙትን መዝገቦች ተቀበለ።

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

፲፭ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የሊምሂ ህዝብ በምሽት መሸሻቸውን ላማናውያን ባወቁ ጊዜ፣ እነርሱን እንዲከተሉ ወታደሮችን ወደ ምድረበዳው ላኩ፤

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

፲፮ እናም ለሁለት ቀናት ከተከታተሉአቸው በኋላ፣ ዲካቸውን መከተል አልቻሉም፤ ስለዚህ በምድረበዳ ውስጥ ተሰወሩ።

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

በንጉሥ ሮህ ህዝብ ወደ ምድረበዳ እንዲሰደዱ የተደረጉት የአልማና የጌታ የሆኑት ሰዎች ታሪክ።

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

ሞዛያ ፳፫

Mosiah 23

፩ እንግዲህ አልማ የንጉሥ ሮህ ወታደሮች በእነርሱ ላይ እንደሚመጡ ከጌታ ማስጠንቀቂያ በማግኘቱ፣ እናም ህዝቡ እንዲያውቀው በማድረግ፣ ስለዚህ መንጋዎቻቸውን በአንድነት ሰበሰቡና፣ እህላቸውን ወሰዱ፣ እናም ከንጉሥ ሮህ ወታደሮች ፊት ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ።

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

፪ እናም የንጉሥ ሮህ ህዝብ እነርሱን ለማጥፋት ሊደርሱባቸው እንዳይችሉ ጌታ አበረታታቸው።

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

፫ እናም በስምንት ቀን ጉዞ ወደ ምድረበዳው ተሰደዱ።

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

፬ እናም ወደ ምድሩ ደረሱ፣ አዎን፣ በጣም ቆንጆና መልካም ምድር የንፁህ ውሃ ምድር ወደሆነች መጡ።

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

፭ እናም ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉና፣ ምድሪቱን ማረሰ ጀመሩ፣ እናም ህንፃን መገንባት ጀመሩ፣ አዎን፣ ትጉህ ነበሩም፣ እጅግ ሰሩም።

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

፮ እናም አልማ በህዝቡ በመወደዱ የእነርሱ ንጉሥ እንዲሆን ፈለጉ።

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

፯ ነገር ግን እርሱ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ፣ ንጉሥ ይኖረን ዘንድ አስፈላጊ አይደለም፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እንዲህ ብሏል፡ እናንተ እንዲን ሰው ከሌላው አታሰበልጡ፣ ወይም ማንም እራሱን ከሌላው በላይ ከፍ አያድርግ፣ ስለዚህ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ ንጉሥ እንዲኖራችሁ አስፈላጊ አይደለም።

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

፰ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የሚቻል ከሆነ ሁልጊዜ ፃድቅ ሰው የእናንተ ንጉሥ ሊሆን ቢችል ንጉሥ ለእናንተ መኖሩ መልካም ይሆናል።

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

፱ ነገር ግን የንጉሥ ሮህንና የእርሱን ካህናት ክፋት አስታውሱ፣ እናም እኔ ራሴም በወጥመድ ተይዜ ነበርና፣ በጌታ አመለካከት ርኩስ የሆኑ በብርቱ ንስሃ እንድገባ የሚያደርጉኝን ብዙ ነገሮች ፈፀሜአለሁ፤

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

፲ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከብዙ መከራና ችግር በኋላ፣ ጌታ ጨኸቱን ሰማና፣ ለፀሎቴ መልስን ሰጠኝ፣ እናም ብዙዎቻችሁ የእርሱን እውነታ እንድታውቁ እኔን መሳሪያው አደረገኝ።

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

፲፩ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በዚህ አልኮራም ለመኩራት ብቁም አይደለሁምና።

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

፲፪ እናም አሁን በገንብ ሮህ ተጨቁናችኋል፤ እናም በእርሱና በካህናቱ ባርነት ስር ሆናችኋል፤ በእነርሱም ወደ ጥፋት ተወስዳችኋል እላለሁ፤ ስለዚህ በኃጢያት እስራት ታስራችሁ ነበር።

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

፲፫ እናም አሁን ከዚህ ሰንሰለት በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ተለቅቃችኋል፤ እዎን፣ ከገንብ ሮህና ከህዝቡ እጅ እንዳን፣ እናም ደግሞ ከክፋት ሰንሰለት ነፃ እንደወጣችሁ፣ እንዲሁም በእዚህ ነፃነት ፀንታችሁ እንድትቆሙ ደግሞ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም ማንም ሰው በእናንተ ላይ ገዢ እንዲሆን አትፍቀዱ።

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

፲፬ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔር ሰው ሆኖ በእርሱ ጎዳና የሚራመድና ትዕዛዛቱን የሚጠብቅ ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም የእናንተ መምህርም ሆነ አገልጋይ እንዲሆን አትፍቀዱ።

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

፲፭ ማንም ሰው ጎረቤቱን እንደራሱ አድርጎ እንዲወድ፣ በመካከላቸውም ምንም ፀብ እንዳይኖር አልማ ህዝቡን እንዲህ አስተማረ።

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ አልማ ሊቀ ካህንና የቤተክርስቲያናቸውም መሰራች ነበር።

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእርሱ በኩል ከእግዚአብሔር ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም ለመሰበክም ሆነ ለማስተማር ስልጣንን አልተቀበለም ነበር። ስለዚህ ሁሉንም የእነርሱን ካህናትንና መምህራናቸውን ሾመ፤ እናም ማንም ትክክለኛ ሰው ካልሆነ በቀር አልተሾመም ነበር።

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

፲፰ ስለዚህ ህዝባቸውን ጠበቁ፣ እናም ከፅድቅነት ጋር የተገናኙ ነገሮችን መገቧቸው።

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ እጅግ መበልፀግ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ምድሪቱን ሌላም ብለው ጠሯት።

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሌላም ምድር ተባዙ እጅግም በለፀጉ፤ እናም የሌላም ከተማ ብለው የሰየሟትን ከተማ ቆረቆሩ።

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

፳፩ ይሁን እንጂ ጌታ ህዝቡን መግሰፅ ተገቢ መሆኑን አየ፣ እዎን፣ ትዕግስታቸውንና እምነታቸውን ፈተነ።

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

፳፪ ይሁን እንጂ—እምነቱን በእርሱ ያደረገ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ ይላል። እዎን እናም ለዚህ ህዝብም እንደዚህ ነበር።

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

፳፫ እነሆም ወደ ባርነት እንደመጡ አሳያችኋለሁ፤ እናም ጌታ እምላካቸው፣ እዎን የአብርሃምና የይሱሐቅ እናም የያዕቆብ እምላክ፣ ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም ሊያድናቸው አይቻለውም።

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እርሱ አዳናቸው፣ ታላቁን ኃይሉንም አሳያቸው፣ እናም ደስታቸው ታላቅ ነበር።

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

፳፭ እነሆም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በሌላም ምድር በነበሩበት ጊዜ፣ አዎን፣ በሌላም ከተማ፣ በዙሪያው ያለውን መሬት በሚያርሱበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ ነበሩ።

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

፳፮ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የአልማ ወንድሞች ከእርሻቸው ሸሹ፣ እናም በሌላም ከተማ እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ፤ እናም በላማናውያን አቋም እጅግ ፈርተው ነበር።

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

፳፯ ነገር ግን አልማ ወደፊት ሔደና ከእነርሱ ጋር ቆመ፣ እናም እንዳይፈሩ፣ ነገር ግን ጌታ አምላካቸው ማስታወስ እንዳለባቸውና እርሱ እንደሚያድናቸው አበረታታቸው።

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

፳፰ ስለዚህ ፍርሃታቸውን ዋጡት፣ እናም እነርሱንና ሚስቶቻቸውን፣ እናም ልጆቻቸውን ያተርፋላቸው ዘንድ የላማናውያንን ልብ እንዲያራራ ወደ ጌታ መጮኽ ጀመሩ።

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ የላማናውያንን ልብ አራራ። እናም አልማና ወንድሞቹ ወደ እነርሱ ሔዱና፣ እራሳቸውን አሳልፈው ሰጡአቸው፤ እናም ላማናውያን የሌላምን ምድር ያዙ።

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

፴ እሁን ከንጉስ ሊምሂ በኋላ የሚሄዱት ላማናውያን ወታደሮች ለብዙ ቀናት በምድረበዳው ተሰወሩ።

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

፴፩ እናም እነሆ፣ የንጉስ ኖህን ካህናት አሙሎን በተባለ ስፍራ አገኙአቸው፤ እናም የአሙሎንን ምድር የራሳቸው አደረጉ፣ ምድሪቱንም ማረስ ጀመሩ።

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

፴፪ አሁን የካህናቱ መሪ ስም አሙሎን ነበር።

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሎን ላማናውያንን ተማፀነ፣ እናም ደግሞ የላማናውያንን ሴት ልጆች የሆኑትን ሚስቶቻቸውን፣ ባሎቻቸውን እንዲያጠፋባቸው ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር እንዲማፀኑ ላከ።

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

፴፬ እናም ላማናውያን በሚስቶቻቸው ምክንያት ለአሙሎንና ለወንድሞቹ ርህራሄ ነበራቸው፣ እናም አላጠፋአቸውም።

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

፲፭ እናም አሙሎንና ወንድሞቹ ከላማናውያን ጋር አንድ ሆኑና፣ የኔሬን ምድር ለመፈለግ በተጓዙበት ወቅት በአልማና በወንድሞቹ የተያዘውን የሔላምን ምድር አገኙ።

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ኔሬ ምድር የሚወስደውን መንገድ የሚያሳዩአቸው ከሆነ ህይወታቸውንና ነፃነታቸውን እንደሚሰጡአቸው ላማናውያን ለአልማና ለወንድሞቹ ቃል ገቡ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

፲፯ ነገር ግን አልማ ወደ ኔሬ ምድር የሚወስደውን መንገድ ካሳያቸው በኋላ ላማናውያን ቃላቸውን አልጠበቁም፤ ነገር ግን በአልማና በወንድሞቹ ላይ በሔላም ምድር ዙሪያ ጠባቂዎች አስቀመጡ።

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

፲፰ እናም የተቀሩት ወደ ኔሬ ምድር ሔዱ፤ እናም ግማሾቹ ወደ ሔላም ምድር ተመለሱ፣ ደግሞም ትተዋቸው የሄዱትን ጠባቂዎቹ ሚስቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን አመጡ።

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

፲፱ እናም የላማናውያን ንጉስ ለአሙሎን በሔላም ምድር በነበረው ህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስና ገዢ እንዲሆን ፈቀደለት፤ ይሁን እንጂ ከላማናውያን ንጉስ ፈቃድ የሚቃረን ምንም ነገር የማድረግ ስልጣን አይኖረውም።

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

ሞዛያ ፳፬

Mosiah 24

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሎን በላማናውያን ንጉስ ፊት ሞገስን አገኘ፤ ስለዚህ፣ የላማናውያን ንጉስ ለእርሱና ለወንድሞቹ በህዝቡ ላይ፣ አዎን፣ በሻምሎን ምድር ላይ ላሉት ህዝቦች ላይ ጭምር፣ እናም እንዲሁም በሼምሎን ምድርና በአሙሎን ምድር ላይ መምህር ሆነው እንዲሾሙ አደረጋቸው።

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

፪ ላማናውያን እነዚህን ምድር ሁሉ ወሰደዋልና፤ ስለዚህ፣ የላማናውያን ንጉስ በእነዚህ ምድር ላይ ሁሉ ነገሥታትን ሾሟል።

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

፫ እናም አሁን የላማናውያን ንጉስ ስሙ ላማን ይባል ነበር፣ እርሱም በአባቱ ስም ይጠራ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ንጉስ ላማን ተብሎ ይጠራ ስለመጣ። እናም በብዙ ህዝብ ላይ ንጉስ ነበር።

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

፬ እናም በህዝቡ በተያዘው ምድር ላይ ሁሉ የአሙሎንን ወንድሞች መምህር አድርጎ ሾማቸው፤ እናም የጌፊን ቋንቋ በላማናውያን ሁሉ መካከል ማስተማር ጀመሩ።

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

፭ እናም እንዲሁ ከሌለኛው ወዳጅ የሆኑ ህዝቦች ነበሩ፤ ይህን እንጂ እግዚአብሔርን አያውቁትም ነበር፤ የአሙሎንም ወንድሞች ጌታ አምላካቸውንም ሆነ የሙሴን ህግ በተመለከተ ምንም አላስተማሩትም ነበር፤ የአቢናዲንም ቃላት አላስተማሩትም ነበር፤

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

፮ ነገር ግን ታሪካቸውን መጠበቅ እንዳለባቸውና እርስ በርስ እንዲፅፉ አስተማሩትም ነበር።

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

፯ እናም ላማናውያን ሀብታም መሆን ጀመሩ፣ እናም እርስ በርስ የንግድ ልውውጥ በማድረግ በጣም አደጉ፣ እንዲሁም የዓለምን ጥበብ በተመለከተ ብልጥና ብልህ ህዝብ መሆን ጀመሩ፤ አዎን፣ እጅግ ብልጥ የሆኑት ሠዎች ከራሳቸው ወንድሞች በስተቀር ሁሉንም አይነት ኃጢአትና ዝርፊያ በማድረግ ይደሰቱ ነበር።

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሎን በአልማና በወንድሞቹ ላይ ስልጣኑን ማሳየት ጀመረ፤ እናም እርሱን ማሳደድና፣ ልጆቹ ልጆቻቸውን እንዲያሳድዱ አደረገ።

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

፱ አልማ ከንጉሱ ካህን እንዲሁ መሆኑን፣ እናም የአቢናዲን ቃል ያመነውና፣ ከንጉሱም ፊት እንዲወጣ የተደረገው እርሱ እንደነበር አሙሎን ያውቅ ነበር፤ እናም ስለዚህ በእርሱ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ እርሱ በንጉስ ላማን አገዛዝ ስር ነበር፣ ቢሆንም በእነርሱ ላይ ስልጣኑን ተጠቅሞ ነበር፣ እናም ኃላፊነቱን በእነርሱ ላይ አደረገ፣ አሰገባሪዎችንም በእነርሱ ላይ አደረገ።

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put taskmasters over them.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰቃያቸው ታላቅ ሰለነበር ወደ እግዚአብሔርም በጎይል መጮህ ጀመሩ።

፲፩ እናም አሙሎን ጨኸታቸውን ማቆም እንዳለባቸው አዘዘ፤ እናም እንዲጠብቁአቸው ጠባቂዎችን በእነርሱ ላይ አደረገ፤ ይኸውም እግዚአብሔርን የሚጠራ ማንም ሰው እንዲገደል ነበር።

፲፪ እናም አልማና ህዝቡ ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ድምፃቸውን ከፍ አላደረጉም፤ ነገር ግን ልባቸውን ወደ እርሱ አደሰሱ፤ እናም እርሱ የልባቸውን ሐሳብ ያውቅ ነበር።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ ድምፅ በሰቃያቸው እንዲህ በማለት መጣ፡ ራሳችሁን እቅኑም መልካም መፅናኛ ይኑራችሁም፤ ከእኔ ጋር የገባችሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አውቀዋለሁና፤ ከህዝቤም ጋር ቃል ኪዳን አገባለሁ እናም ከባርነት አሰለቅቃቸዋለሁ።

፲፬ እናም ደግሞ በባርነት በነበራችሁ ጊዜም ቢሆን፤ በጀርባችሁም እንኳን ሊሰማችሁ እንዳይቻላችሁ፤ በትኩሻችሁ ላይ ያለውን ሸክም አቃልልላችኋለሁ፤ እናም ይህንን የማደርገው ከዚህ በኋላ ለእኔ በምስክርነት እንድትቆሙ ነው፤ እናም እኔ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በእውነት በመከራቸው ጊዜ ህዝቤን እንደምጎበኝ ታውቁ ዘንድ ነው።

፲፭ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በአልማና በወንድሞቹ ላይ የሆነው ሸክም ቀለለላቸው፤ አዎን፤ ሸክማቸውን ማቅለል እንዲችሉ እናም በደስታና በትዕግስት ለጌታ ፈቃድ ተቀባይ እንዲሆኑ ጌታ ብርታትን ሰጥቷቸዋል።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እምነታቸውና ትዕግስታቸው ታላቅ በመሆኑ፤ የጌታ ድምፅ በድጋሚ እንዲህ በማለት ወደ እነርሱ መጣ፡ መፅናናትም ይብዛላችሁ፤ ነገ ከባርነት አሰለቅቃችኋለሁና።

፲፯ እናም ለአልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ ከዚህ ህዝብ ፊት ትሄዳለህ፤ እናም እኔ ከአንተ ጋር እሄዳለሁ፤ ይህንንም ህዝብ ከባርነት አሰለቅቃለሁ።

፲፰ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና ህዝቡ መንጋዎቻቸውን እናም ደግሞ እህላቸውን በአንድነት በምሽት ሰበሰቡ፤ አዎን፤ እንዲያውም ምሽቱን ሁሉ መንጋዎቻቸውን በአንድነት ይሰበሰቡ ነበር።

፲፱ እናም ጠዋት ጌታ በላማናውያን ላይ ከባድ እንቅልፍን ጣለባቸው፤ አዎን፤ እናም አስገባሪዎቻቸው ሁሉ በከባድ እንቅልፍ ላይ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

፳፯ እናም አልማና ህዝቡ ወደ ምድረበዳው ተጓዙ፤ እናም ቀኑን በሙሉ ከተጓዙ በኋላ ድንኳናቸውን በሸለቆ ተከሉ፤ እናም በምድረበዳው ውስጥም መንገዱን አልማ ስለመራቸው ሸለቆውን አልማ ብለው ጠሩት።

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

፳፩ አዎን፣ እናም በአልማ ሸለቆ ምስጋናቸውን ለእግዚአብሔር አበረከቱ፤ ምክንያቱም ለእነርሱ መሀሪ ነበርና፤ እናም ሸክማቸውን አቅልሎላቸዋልና ከባርነትም አስለቅቆአቸዋልና፤ በባርነት ስር ነበሩ እናም ጌታ አምላካቸው ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም ሊያስለቅቃቸው አይቻለውምና።

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

፳፪ እናም ለእግዚአብሔር ምስጋናን አቀረቡ፤ አዎን፣ ወንዶቻቸውና፣ ሴቶቻቸው ሁሉ፣ እናም መናገር የሚችሉት ልጆቻቸው ሁሉ እግዚአብሔርን በማወደስ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ አደረጉ።

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

፳፫ እናም አሁን ጌታ ለአልማ እንዲህ አለው፦ ላማናውያን ነቅተዋል እናም ያሳድዷቸዋልና ፍጠን፣ አንተንና ይህንን ህዝብ ከዚህ ምድር አውጣ፤ ስለዚህ ከዚህ ምድር ውጡ፤ እናም ላማናውያኖች ይህንን ህዝብ ለማሳደድ ከዚህ አልፈው እንዳይመጡ በዚህ ሸለቆ ውስጥ አቆማቸዋለሁ።

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሸለቆው ወጥተው ሄዱና፣ ጉዞአቸውን ወደ ምድረበዳው አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

፳፭ እናም ለአስራ ሁለት ቀናት በምድረበዳው ከቆዩ በኋላ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ደረሱ፤ እናም ንጉስ ሞዛያ ደግሞ በደስታ ተቀበላቸው።

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

ሞዛያ ፳፭

Mosiah 25

፩ እናም አሁን ንጉሥ ሞዛያ ህዝቡ ሁሉ በአንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ።

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

፪ እንግዲህ የሙሉቅ ትውልድ እንደነበረው ዛራሔምላ እናም ከእነርሱ ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳው እንደመጡት ህዝብ ብዛት፣ የኔፊ ልጆች የነበሩ፣ ወይንም የኔፊ ወገን የሆኑት ብዙ አልነበሩም።

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

፫ እናም የኔፊም ሆኑ የዛራሔምላ ህዝብ ብዛት እንደላማናውያን አልነበረም፤ አዎን፣ ብዛታቸው እንደእነርሱ ግማሹ እንኳን አልነበረም።

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

፬ እናም አሁን የኔፊ ህዝብ በሙሉ፣ ደግሞም የዛራሔምላም ህዝብ በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ፣ እናም በሁለት ወገን ሆነው በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ።

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ የዜኒፍን ታሪክ ለህዝቡ አነበበ፤ እንዲነበብም አደረገ፤ አዎን፤ የዛራሔምላን ምድር ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ በድጋሚ እስከተመለሱበት ድረስ የዜኒፍን ህዝብ ታሪክ አነበበ።

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

፮ እናም ደግሞ የአልማንና ወንድሞቹን ታሪክ፣ የዛራሔምላን ምድር ለቀው ከወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ፣ እንደገናም እስከተመለሱበት ድረስ ያለውን ስቃያቸውን ሁሉ አነበበ።

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

፯ እናም አሁን፣ ሞዛያ ታሪኩን እንብቦ እንደጨረሰ፣ በምድሪቱ የቀሩት ህዝቦቹ በመገረምና በአድናቆት ተሞሉ።

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

፰ ምን ማሰብ እንዳለባቸው አላወቁም ነበርና፤ ከባርነት የተለቀቁትን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነ ደስታ ተሞልተው ነበርና።

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

፱ እናም በድጋሚ፣ በላማናውያን የተገደሉትን ወንድሞቻቸውን ባሰቡ ጊዜ በሃዘን ተሞሉ እናም ብዙ የሐዘን እንግም አፈሰሱ።

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

፲ እናም እንደገና፣ ፈጣን የእግዚአብሔርን ቸርነት እናም አልማንና ወንድሞቹን ከላማናውያን እጅና ከባርነት ማውጣቱን ባሰቡ ጊዜ፣ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ አደረጉና ለእግዚአብሔር ምስጋና አቀረቡ።

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

፲፩ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ወንድሞቻቸው ስለሆኑት ስለላማናውያን ኃጢያትና ስለመበከላቸው ባሰቡ ጊዜ ስለነፍሳቸው ደህንነት በህመምና በጭንቀት ተሞልተው ነበር።

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያንን ሴቶች ለሚሰትነት የወሰዱት የአሙሎንና የወንድሞቹ ልጆች፣ በአባቶቻቸው ባህርይ ተከፉ፣ እናም ከእነግዲህ በአባቶቻቸው ስም መጠራት አልፈዱም፣ ስለዚህ የኔፋውያን ልጆች ተብለው ይጠሩ ዘንድና ኔፋውያን ተብለው ከሚጠሩት ጋር ይቆጠሩ ዘንድ የኔፊን ስም በራሳቸው ላይ ወሰዱ።

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

፲፫ እናም እነግዲህ የዛራሔምላ ህዝብ ሁሉ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ተቆጠሩ፣ እናም ይህ የሆነበት ምክንያት የኔፊ ዘር ከሆኑት በስተቀር መንግሥቱ ለሌላ ባለመስጠቱ ነበር።

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

፲፬ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ ለህዝቡ ንግግሩንና ንባቡን እንደጨረሰ አልማም ደግሞ ለህዝቡ እንዲናገር ፈለገ።

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

፲፭ እናም አልማ ተናገራቸው፣ በብዛትም በአንድ ላይ በተሰበሰቡ ጊዜ፣ እናም ከአንዱ ጉባኤ ወደ ሌላኛው በጌታ ንስሃና እምነትን እየሰበከላቸው ሔደ።

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

፲፮ እናም የለምሂን ህዝብና ወንድሞቹን ከባርነት የተለቀቁትን ሁሉንም ጌታ ከባርነት እንዲሰለቀቃቸው እንዲያስታውሱ በጥብቅ መከራቸው።

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ህዝቡን ብዙ ነገሮችን ካስተማረና ንግግሩንም ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ ንጉስ ለምሂ መጠመቅን ፈለገ፤ እናም ህዝቡም በሙሉ ደግሞ ይጠመቁ ዘንድ ፈለጉ።

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

፲፰ ስለዚህ፣ አልማ ወደ ውኃው ገባ፣ እናም አጠመቃቸው፤ አዎን፣ ወንድሞቹን በሞርሞን ውሃ እንዲጠመቃቸው አይነት እነርሱንም አጠመቃቸው፤ አዎን፣ ያጠመቃቸው በሙሉ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባላት ሆኑ፤ እናም ይህ የሆነው በአልማ ቃል በማመናቸው የተነሳ ነው።

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ሞዛያ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ላይ ሁሉ ቤተክርስቲያንን እንዲያቋቁም ለአልማ ፈቀደለት፣ እናም በሁሉም ቤተክርስቲያን ላይ ካህናትንና መምህራንን እንዲሾም ስልጣንን ሰጠው።

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

፳ አሁን ይህ ሁሉ የተደረገበት ምክንያት ብዙውን ህዝብ በአንድ አስተማሪ ለመምራት ስለማይቻል፣ እነርሱም ሁሉ በአንድ ጉባኤ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል መስማት ስለማይችሉ ነበር፤

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

፳፩ ስለዚህ ራሳቸውን ቤተክርስቲያናት ተብለው በሚጠሩ በተለያዩ ክፍሎች ሰበሰቡ፤ እያንዳንዱ ቤተክርስቲያን የራሱ ካህናትና መምህራን አለው፣ እናም እያንዳንዱ ካህን ቃሉን ከአልማ አንደበት በተቀበለው መሠረት ይሰብክ ነበር።

፳፪ እናም ስለዚህ ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያኖች ቢኖሩም ሁሉም አንድ ቤተክርስቲያን ነበሩ፣ አዎን፣ ይኸውም የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን፤ ከንሰሃና በእግዚአብሔር እምነት በቀር በሁሉም በቤተክርስቲያናት ምንም አይሰበክም ነበር።

፳፫ እናም አሁን በዛራሔምላ ምድር ሰባት ቤተክርስቲያናት ነበሩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ማንኛውም የክርስቶስን ወይም የእግዚአብሔርን ስም በአራሱ ለመውሰድ የፈለገ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያናት አባል ይሆናል፤

፳፬ እናም እነርሱ የእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ተብለው ተጠርተዋል። እናም ጌታ መንፈሱን በእነርሱ ላይ አፍሰሷል፣ እነርሱም ተባርከዋል፣ በምድሪቱም ላይ በለፀገዋል።

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

ሞዛያ ፳፮

Mosiah 26

፩ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የንጉሥ ቢንያምን ቃል መረዳት የማይችሉ በማደግ ላይ ያሉ ትውልዶች ነበሩ፤ እነርሱም እርሱ ለዚህ ህዝብ በተናገረበት ጊዜ ትንሽ ልጆች የነበሩ በመሆናቸው፤ እናም የእባቶቻቸውን ባህል አያምኑም ነበር።

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

፪ የሙታን ትንሣኤንም ሆነ የክርስቶስን መምጣት በሚመለከት የተነገረውን አያምኑም ነበር።

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

፫ እናም አሁን ባለማመናቸው የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ሊረዱት አልቻሉም ነበር፤ ልባቸውም ጠጥሮ ነበር።

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

፬ እናም አይጠመቁም ነበር፤ የቤተክርስቲያኗም አባል አይሆኑም ነበር። እናም እምነታቸውን በተመለከተ የተለዩ ነበሩ፤ ከእዚያም በኋላ እንደዚያው ሆነው ቀሩ፤ በሰጋዊነታቸውና በኃጢአተኝነታቸውም ቢሆን፤ ወደ ጌታ እምላካቸው አይጸልዩም ነበርና።

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

፭ እናም አሁን በሞዛያ የንግሥና ዘመን አንደኛ የእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ግማሽ ያህል አልበዙም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በወንድሞች መካከል ጥል ምክንያት በጣም በርክተው ነበር።

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

፮ እንዲህ ሆነ፤ በቤተክርስቲያን ውስጥ የነበሩትን ብዙዎችን በሽንጋይ ቃላቸው አታለሉቸው፤ እናም ብዙ ኃጢአቶችን እንዲፈፀሙ አደረጉቸው፤ ስለዚህ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ውስጥ ሆነው ኃጢአትን የፈፀሙ፤ በቤተክርስቲያኗ መገሰፃቸው አሰፈላጊ ነበር።

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከካህናቱ ፊት አመጡቸው፤ እናም በመምህራንም ለካህናቱ ተሰጡ፤ እናም ካህናቱ ሊቀ ካህን ከሆነው ከአልማ ፊት አመጧቸው።

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

፰ አሁን ንጉሥ ሞዛያ አልማን በቤተክርስቲያኗ ላይ ስልጣን ሰጥቶታል።

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ስለእነርሱ አያውቅም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በእነርሱ ላይ ብዙ ምስክሮች ነበሩ፤ አዎን፤ ህዝቡ ቆሙና ስለኃጢአታቸው በብዛት መሰከሩ።

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

፲ አሁን በቤተክርስቲያኑ ፊት እንደዚህ ያለ ነገር ሆኖ አያውቅም፤ ስለዚህ አልማ በመንፈሱ ይጨነቅ ነበር፤ እናም ከንጉሱ ፊት እንዲመጡ አደረገ።

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

፲፩ እናም ለንጉሱ አለው፡ እነሆ ብዙዎቹን በወንድሞቻቸው የተከሰሱትን በእንተ ፊት አምጥተናል፤ አዎን፡ እናም በተለያዩ ክፋቶች የተያዙ ናቸው። እናም ስለኃጢአታቸው ንስሃ አይገቡም፤ ስለዚህ እንደወንጀላቸው ትፈርድባቸው ዘንድ በእንተ ፊት አምጥተናቸዋል።

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

፲፪ ነገር ግን ንጉሱ ሞዛያ አልማን እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ፡ እኔ አልፈርድባቸውም፡ ስለዚህ እንተ እንድትፈርድባቸው በእጅህ አሳልፌ አስጥሃለሁ።

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

፲፫ እናም አሁን የአልማ መንፈስ በድጋሚ ታወከ፡ እናም ሞክንያቱም በእግዚአብሔር ዐይን የተሳሳተ ነገርን አፈፀማለሁ በማለት ስለፈራ ወደጌታ ሄዶ ይህንን በተመለከተ ምን ማድረግ እንዳለበት ጠየቀ።

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነፍሱን ሁሉ ለእግዚአብሔር ካፈሰሰ በኋላ፡ የጌታ ድምፅ ወደ እርሱ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፡

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

፲፭ አልማ እንተ የተባረከ ነህ፡ እና በሞርሞን ውሃ የተጠመቁት የተባረኩ ናችው። የእኔ አገልጋይ በሆነው በአቢናዲ ቃል ብቻ እጅግ በማመንህ የተባረከህ ነህ።

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

፲፮ እናም እነሆ እንተ በተናገርካቸው ቃላት ብቻ እጅግ ስላመኑም የተባረኩ ናቸው።

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

፲፯ እናም በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ቤተክርስቲያኗን በመመስረትህ እንተ የተባረከህ ነህ፤ እናም እነርሱም ይቋቋማሉ፡ የእኔም ሰዎች ይሆናሉ።

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

፲፰ አዎን፡ ሰሜን ለመቀበል ፈቃደኛ የሆነ ይህ የተባረከ ህዝብ ነው፤ በሰሜንም ይጠራሉና፡ እናም እነርሱ የእኔ ናቸው።

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

፲፱ እናም እኔን ህጉን ስለተላለፉት በተመለከተ ስለጠየክኝ እንተ የተባረከህ ነህ።

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

፳ እንተ የእኔ አገልጋይ ነህ፤ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ሕይወት ይኖርህ ዘንድ ካንተ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን አገባለሁ፤ እናም ታገለግለኛለህም፡ በሰሜንም ትሄዳለህ፡ እናም በጎቼን በእንድነት ትሰበሰባለህ።

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

፳፩ እናም ድምጹን የሰማ የእኔ በግ ይሆናል፡ እናም እናንተ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ትቀበሉታላችሁ፤ እኔም ደግሞ እቀበለዋለሁ።

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

፳፪ እነሆም ይህች የእኔ ቤተክርስቲያን ናት፡ ማንም የሚጠመቅ ንስሃ በመግባት ይጠመቃል፤ እናም እናንተ የተቀበላችሁት ማንም ቢኖር በሰሜን ያምናል፤ እናም እርሱን በነፃ ይቅር እለዋለሁ።

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

፳፫ እኔ የዓለምን ኃጢአት በራሴ ያደረግሁ ነኝና፤ እነርሱን የፈጠርኳቸው እኔ ነኝና፤ እናም እስከመጨረሻው ለሚያምነው በቀኝ ያለውንም ስፍራ የምስጠው እኔ ነኝ።

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

፳፬ እነሆም፣ በሰሜም ተጠርተዋል፤ እናም የሚያውቁኝ ከሆነም ወደ እኔ ይመጣሉ፣ እናም በቀኝ እጄ በኩል ዘለዓለማዊ ስፍራ ይኖራቸዋል።

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ሁለተኛው መለከት ሲነፋ እኔን በፍፁም ያላወቁ መጥተው በፊቴ ይቆማሉ።

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

፳፮ እና ከእዚያም እኔ ጌታ አምላካቸው፣ አዳኛቸው መሆኔን ያውቃሉ፤ ነገር ግን አይድኑም።

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

፳፯ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ እኔ በጭራሽ እንደማላውቃቸው እናዘዝላቸዋለሁ፣ እናም ለዲያብሎስና ለመላዕክቱ ወደተዘጋጀው ወደ ዘለዓለማዊ አሳት ይሄዳሉ።

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

፳፰ ስለዚህ እንዲህም አላችኋለሁ፣ ቃሉን የማይሰማ፣ እርሱን በቤተክርስቲያኔ አትቀበሉት፣ በመጨረሻውም ቀን እርሱን አልቀበለውምና።

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

፳፱ ስለዚህ አላችኋለሁ ሂዱ፣ እናም እኔን የተላለፈ ማንኛውንም እንደፈጸመው ኃጢአት መሰረት ፍረድበት፤ እናም በእኔና በእንተ ፊት ኃጢአቱን ከተናዘዘ፣ እናም ከልቡ ንስሃ ከገባ እርሱን ይቅር ትለዋለህ፣ እኔም ደግሞ ይቅር አለዋለሁ።

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

፴ እዎን፣ እናም ህዝቤ ንስሃ እንደገባው መጠን በእኔ ላይ ያደረጉትን መተላለፍ ይቅር አላቸዋለሁ።

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

፴፩ እናም እያንዳንዳችሁ መተላለፋችሁን ይቅር ተባባሉ፤ እውነት አላችኋለሁ ጎረቤቴ ንስሃ በሚገባበት ጊዜ የጎረቤቴን መተላለፍ ይቅር የማይል እርሱ ራሱን ወደኩነኔ ያመጣል።

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

፴፪ አሁን አልሀለሁ፣ ሂድ፣ ለኃጢአቱ ንስሃ የማይገባ እርሱ ከህዝቤ ጋር አብሮ አይቆጠርም፤ እናም ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ ይህ ደንብ ይጠበቃል።

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ይህንን ቃል በሰማ ጊዜ፣ እንዲኖሩት፣ እና በእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ መሰረት የቤተክርስቲያን ሰዎችን ይፈረድባቸው ዘንድ ጻፋቸው።

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ሄደና፣ እነዚያ በክፋት የተወሰዱትን በጌታ ቃል መሰረት ፈረደባቸው።

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

፲፭ እና ማንኛውም ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሃ የገቡ የተናዘዙ፣ እነርሱ ከቤተክርስቲያን ሰዎች መካከል ቆጠራቸው።

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

፲፮ እናም ኃጢአታቸውን ያልተናዘዙና ለክፋታቸው ንስሃ ያልገቡ፣ እነርሱ ከቤተክርስቲያን ሰዎች መካከል አልተቆጠሩም፣ ናም ሰማቸውም ተሰርዟል።

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ የቤተክርስቲያንን ጉዳዮች ሁሉ መራ፤ እናም ለቤተክርስቲያኑ ጉዳዮች ሰላምና ብልፅግና በድጋሚ እጅግ መሳካት ጀመሩ፣ በጥንቃቄም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በመራመድ ብዙዎችን ተቀበሉ፣ ብዙዎችን አጠመቁ።

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

፲፰ እናም አሁን፣ በማንኛውም ትጋት በመራመድ፣ በሁሉም ነገር የጌታን ቃል በማሰተማር፣ በሁሉም መከራ በመስቃየት፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ባልሆኑት ሁሉ በመሳደድ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ አልማና በቤተክርስቲያን ላይ ያሉት ተከታይ አገልጋዮች ይህንን አደረጉ።

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

፲፱ እናም ወንድሞቻቸውን ገሰፁ፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ያለማቋረጥ እንዲጸልዩና በሁሉም ነገር ምሰጋናን እንዲሰጡም በመታዘዝ፣ እያንዳንዱ እንደ ኃጥያቱ፣ ወይም እንደፈፀመው ኃጢአቱ መሰረት በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ተገሰጹል።

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

ሞዛያ ፳፯

Mosiah 27

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በቤተክርስቲያኗ እምነት በሌላቸው የተሰራጨው ሰደት ታላቅ ሆኖ በተክርስቲያኗ ማጉረምረም ተጀመረ፣ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ ጉዳዩን በሚመለከት በከፍተኛ ሁኔታ ለመሪዎቻቸው አቤቱታ ማቅረብ ተጀመረ፤ አቤቱታቸውንም ለአልማ አቀረቡ። አልማም በንጉሥ ሞዛያ ፊት ጉዳዩን አቀረበ። እናም ሞዛያ ከካህናቱ ጋር መከረበት።

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሥ ሞዛያ ማንም የማያምን የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል የሆኑትን ማሳደድ እንደሌለበት በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ አዋጅን አሰራጨ።

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

፫ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሁሉ መካከል ሰደት መኖር እንደሌለበት፣ በሰዎች መካከል እኩልነት እንዲሆን ጥብቅ ትዕዛዝ ነበር፣

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

፬ ምንም ኩራትና ብጥብጣ ሰላማቸውን ለማደፍረስ እንዲኖር አይፍቀዱ ዘንድ፤ ለራሳቸውም ድጋፍ በራሳቸው እጅ እየሰሩም፣ እያንዳንዱ ሰው ጎረቤቱን እንደራሱ ያክብሩ ዘንድ ጥብቅ ትዕዛዝ ነበር።

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

፭ አዎን፣ እናም ካለህመም ወይም በድህነት ምክንያት በቀር፣ ሁሉም ካህናትና መምህራን ለራሳቸው በእጃቸው መሰራት አለባቸው፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ሲያደርጉ ከመጠን ይልቅ በበለጠ በእግዚአብሔር ጸጋ ተሞሉ።

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

፮ እናም እንደገና በምድሪቱ ታላቅ ሠላም መሰፈን ጀመረ፤ ህዝቡም ብዙ መሆን ጀመሩ፤ እናም በምድር ገፅ ባሻገርም፣ አዎን በስተሰሜንና በደቡብም፣ በምስራቅና በምዕራብ፣ ታላላቅ ከተሞችንና መንደሮችን በሁሉም በምድሪቱ ክፍል በመገንባት መበተን ጀመሩ።

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

፯ እናም ጌታ ጎበኛቸውና አበለፀጋቸው፣ እንዲሁም ታላቅና ሀብታም ህዝቦች ሆኑ።

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

፰ አሁን የሞዛያ ልጆች ከማያምኑት ጋር የተቆጠሩ ነበሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ በአባቱ ስም አልማ ተብሎ የተጠራው ከአልማ ልጆችም አንዱ ከእነርሱ ጋር የተቆጠረ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እርሱ እጅግ ኃጢአተኛና አመንዝራ ሰው ሆነ። እናም እርሱ በጣም ተናጋሪ ሰው ነበርና፣ ብዙ ሽንገላን ለህዝቡ ይናገር ነበር፤ ስለዚህም ብዙውን ህዝብ የእርሱን ክፋት እንዲከተሉ አደረገ።

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

፱ እናም የህዝቡን ልብ በመሰረቅ፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ብዙ ፀብ እንዲኖር በማድረግ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ጠላት ስልጣኑን በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲያሳይ እድል በመስጠት ለእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ዕድገት ታላቅ እንቅፋት ሆነ።

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

፲ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ለማጥፋት ወደተለያዩ ሥፍራዎች በሄደ ጊዜ፣ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ ወይም ከንጉሱም እንኳን ተቃራኒ በሆነ መንገድ፣ የጌታን ህዝብ ወደተሳሳተው መንገድ ለመምራት ቤተክርስቲያንን ለማጥፋት ከሞዛያ ልጆች ጋር በሚሰጥር ይሄድ ነበር—

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

፲፩ እናም እንዳልኳችሁ በእግዚአብሔር ላይ በማመፅ እየሄዱ እያሉ፣ እነሆ፣ የጌታ መልአክ ታያቸው፤ እናም በደመና ውስጥ እንደነበረ ወረደ፤ የቆሙበትንም ምድር እንዲንቀጠቀጥ በሚያደርግ ሁኔታ እንደነሳድጓድ ድምፅ ተናገረ፤

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

፲፪ እናም አድናቆታቸው እጅግ ታላቅ ሆኖ በመሬትም ላይ ወደቁ፣ እናም እርሱ የሚናገራቸውን ቃላት አልተረዱም ነበር።

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

፲፫ ይሁን እንጂ በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፣ አልማ ተነሰና፣ ቁም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ለምን ታሳድዳለህ? ጌታ እንዲህ ብሏልና፣ ይህች የእኔ ቤተክርስቲያን ናት፣ እናም አቋቁማታለሁ፤ ከህዝቤ መተላለፍ በስተቀር ምንም አይሸራትም።

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

፲፬ እናም በድጋሚ፣ መልአኩ አለ፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ የዚህን ህዝብ ፀሎት፣ እናም ደግሞ የአባትህን የአልማን ፀሎት ስምቷል። አንተ ወደ እውነት እውቀትም ትመጣ ዘንድ አንተን በተመለከተ በታላቅ እምነት ፀልዮአል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ለዚህ ዓላማ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይልና ስልጣን ለማሳመን፣ በእምነታቸው መሰረት የአገልጋዮቹ ፀሎት መልስ ያገኝ ዘንድ ነው የመጣሁት።

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

፲፭ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል መጠራጠር ትችላለህን? እነሆም ድምፅ ስምድርን አላንቀጠቀጠምን? እናም ከፊትህ ደግሞ እኔን ማየት አይቻልህምን? እኔም ከእግዚአብሔር ተልኬአለሁ።

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

፲፮ አሁን እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፡ ሂድ፡ እናም የአባቶቻችሁን ምርኮ በሌላምና በኔሬ ምድር አስታውሱ፤ እናም ለእነርሱ ምን ያህል ታላቅ ነገር እንዳደረገ አስታውሱ፤ በባርነት ነበሩና እርሱ አድናቆቻቸውና፡፡ እናም አሁን አልማ እንዲህ አላለሁ፡ በመንገድህ ሂድ፡ ራስህን ለመጣል ብትፈልግም፡ በተክርስቲያኗን ለማጥፋት አትፈልግ፡ ምክንያቱም ፀሎታቸው ምላሽ ያገኛልና፡፡

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

፲፱ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህ መልእኩ ለአልማ የተናገረው የመጨረሻ ቃላት ነበሩ፡ እናም ሄደ፡፡

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

፳ እናም አሁን አልማና ከእርሱ ጋር የነበሩት በምድር ላይ ወደቁ፡ መደነቃቸው ታላቅ ነበርና፤ በራሳቸው ዐይንም የጌታን መልእክ ተመልክተዋልና፤ እናም ድምፁ ምድርን እንደሚያንቀጠቅጥ ነገድኋል ነበር፡ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በቀር ምንም መሬትን እንደሚከፍል አይነት ምድርን ለማንቀጥቀጥ የሚችል እንደሌለ አወቁ፡፡

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

፳፱ እናም አሁን የአልማ መደነቅ ታላቅ ስለነበር ዲዳ ሆነ፡ አፋንም መክፈት አልቻለም፤ አዎን፤ እና ደካማ ሆነ፤ እጁን እንኳ ማንቀሳቀስ አስኪያቅተው፤ ስለዚህ ከእርሱ ጋር በነበሩት ተወሰደና፡ በአባቱ ፊት አስከሚወድቅ ድረስ እራሱን መርዳት አቅቶት ተሸከሙት፡፡

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

፳፻ እናም ለአባቱ በእነርሱ ላይ የሆነውን ሁሉ ገለፀለት፡ እናም አባቱ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል መሆኑን በማወቅ ተደሰተ፡፡

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

፷ እናም ጌታ ለልጁና ደግሞ ከእርሱ ጋር ለነበሩት ያደረገውን ይመሰክሩ ዘንድ ብዙዎች በእንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ፡፡

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

፷፱ እናም ካህናት እራሳቸውን በእንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ክብርና ቸርነት ያውቁና፡ ይመለከቱ ዘንድ የህዝቡም ዐይን እንዲከፈት፡ ጌታ የአልማን እንደበት ይናገርበትም ዘንድ እንዲከፍት፤ እናም ደግሞ እጅና እግሮቹ ብርታትን ያገኙ ዘንድ ወደአምላካቸው መጠለይና መጻም ጀመሩ፡፡

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

፷፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሁለት ቀናትና ሁለት ሌሊት ከጾሙና ከፀለዩ በኋላ የአልማ እግሮችና እጆች ብርታትን አገኙ፡ እናም ተነስቶ መናገር ጀመረ፡ መልካም መፅናናት እንዲሆንላቸውም ተናገረ፡፡

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

፳፬ እንዲህ አለ፡ ለኃጢአቱ ንስሃ ገብቻለሁ፤ እናም በጌታ ድኝአለሁ፤ እነሆም ከመንፈስ ተወልጃለሁ።

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

፳፭ እናም ጌታ አለኝ፡ ሁሉም የሰው ዘር፣ አዎን፣ ወንዶችና ሴቶች፣ ሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ በድጋሚ መወለድ ይገባቸዋልና አትደነቅ፤ አዎን ከእግዚአብሔር በመወለድ፣ ከሰጋዊና ከወደቁበት ሁኔታ፣ ወደ ፃድቁ መንገድ በእግዚአብሔር በመዳን፣ የእርሱም ወንድና ሴት ልጆች በመሆን ይለወጣሉ፤

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

፳፮ እናም በዚህም አዲስ ፍጡራን ይሆናሉ፣ ይህንን ካላደረጉ፣ በምንም መንገድ የእግዚአብሔርን መንግሥት ሊወርሱ አይችሉምና።

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

፳፯ እላችኋለሁ፡ ጉዳዩ ይህ ካልሆነ፣ መጣል አለባቸው፤ እናም ይህንን አውቃለሁ ምክንያቱም እኔ ልጣል ነበርና።

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

፳፰ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በብዙ መከራ ላይ ከተገፋሁ በኋላ ልምት ስል፣ ንስሃ ገባሁ፣ ጌታም በምህረቱ ከዘለዓለማዊ ቃጠሎ እንደወጣ አደረገኝ፣ እናም እኔ ከአምላክ ተወለድኩ።

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

፳፱ ነፍሴ ከሞላው መራራ መርዝ፣ እና ከክፋት ሰንሰለት ተፈወሰኝ። እኔም በጨለማ አዘቅት ነበርኩ፤ ነገር ግን አሁን አስደናቂውን የአምላክ ብርሃን ተመለከትኩ። ነፍሴ በዘለአለማዊ ቅጣት ተሰቃየኝ፤ ነገር ግን እኔ ተነጣቄአለሁ፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ ነፍሴ ህመም የለባትም።

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

፴ እዳኜን አልተቀበልኩትም፣ እናም በአባቶቻችን የተነገረውን ክጄአለሁ፤ ነገር ግን አሁን እንደሚመጣ፣ እናም ጌታ የፈጠረውን ማንኛውንም ፍጡር እንደሚያስታውስ አስቀድመው እንዲመለከቱ፣ እርሱም እራሱን ለሁሉም ይገልጻል።

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

፴፩ አዎን፣ ሁሉም ጉልበት ይንበረከካል፣ እናም የሁሉም እንደበት በፊቱ ይናዘዛል። አዎን፣ እንዲሁም በመጨረሻው ቀንም ሁሉም ሰው በእርሱ ለፍርድ በሚቆሙበት ጊዜ፣ ከዚያም እርሱ አምላክ መሆኑን ይናዘዛሉ፤ በዓለም ላይ ያለ እግዚአብሔር የሚኖሩትም የዘለአለማዊው ቅጣት በእነርሱ ላይ ትክክል መሆኑን ይናዘዛሉም፤ ይንዘፈዘፋሉም፣ ይንቀጠቀጣሉም፣ እናም ሁሉም በቅጽበት በሚያዩት ዐይኖች ፊት ይሸማቀቃሉ።

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

፲፪ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ከዚህን ጊዜ ጀምሮ ህዝቡን ማስተማር ጀመረ፤ እናም መልእክት በተገለጸላቸው በዚያን ጊዜ ከአልማ ጋር የነበሩት ሰዳጆችና ሰለሰሙት ነገሮችም ለሁሉም ህዝብ በማወጅ፤ እናም በከፍተኛ መከራ፤ እምነት በሌላቸውም ታላቅ ሰደትን እየተቀበሉ፤ በብዙዎችም እየተመቱ በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ሁሉ እየተጓዙ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ሰበኩ።

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

፲፫ ነገር ግን ይህ ሁሉ ቢሆንም፤ እምነታቸውን በማረጋገጥ፤ እናም የጌታን ትዕዛዛት እንዲጠብቁ በትእግስት እና በብዙ ሰቃይ በጥብቅ በማበረታታት ለቤተክርስቲያኑ ብዙ ማፅናኛ ሰጡ።

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

፲፬ እናም አራቱም የሞዛያ ልጆች ነበሩ፤ ስማቸውም አሞን፣ አሮን፣ ኦምነር፣ እናም ሒምኒ ነበሩ፤ እነዚህ የሞዛያ ወንድ ልጆች ስሞች ነበሩ።

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

፲፭ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኑ ላይ የፈጸሙትን በደል ሁሉ በቀናት ለማደስ በቅንነት በመሞከር፤ ኃጢአታቸውን ሁሉ ለመናዘዝና፤ ያዩትን ነገሮች ሁሉ በማወጅ፤ እናም ትንቢትንና ቅዱሳን መፃህፍትን መስማት ለፈለጉ ሁሉ በመግለጽ፤ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ሁሉ፤ እናም በንጉስ ሞዛያ አገዛዝ ስር ከነበሩት ሰዎች መካከል ተጓዙ።

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

፲፮ እናም ብዙዎችን እውነትን እንዲያውቁ፤ አዎን ወደ አዳኞቻቸው እውቀት ለማምጣት እንደዚህም በጌታ እጅ መሳሪያ ነበሩ።

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

፲፯ እናም እነርሱ እንዴት የተባረኩ ናቸው! ስላምን እውጅቀልና፤ መልካም የሆነውን የምስራች ዜና እውጅቀል፤ እናም ለህዝቡም ጌታ እንደሚነግስ እውጅቀል።

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

ሞዛያ ፳፰

Mosiah 28

፩ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የሞዛያ ልጆች እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ካደረጉ በኋላ ጥቂቶቹን ከእነርሱ ጋር ወሰዱ፤ እናም ወደ ንጉሱ አባታቸው ተመለሱ፤ እናም በዚህም እነርሱ ከመረጧቸው ጋር በመሆን፣ የሰሙኦቻቸውን ነገሮች ይሰብኩ ዘንድ እናም የጌታን ቃላት ለወንድሞቻቸው ለላማናውያን ያካፍሉ ዘንድ ወደኔፊ ሞድር እንዲሄዱ እንዲፈቅድላቸው ፈለጉ—

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

፪ ምናልባት ወደጌታ አምላካቸው እውቀት ያመጧቸው ዘንድ፣ እናም የአባቶቻቸውንም ክፋት እንዲያሳምኑአቸው፤ እናም ምናልባት ወደኔፋውያን ካላቸው ጥላቻ ያድኗቸው ዘንድ፣ በጌታ በአምላካቸውም ደግሞ ወደመደሰት ያመጧቸው ዘንድ፣ እርሱ በራሱም ወዳጅ ይሆን ዘንድ፣ እናም ጌታ አምላካቸውም በሰጣቸው ሞድር ሁሉ ከእንግዲህ ጠብሞ እንዳይኖር ለማድረግ ይችሉ ዘንድ እንዲፈቅድላቸው ፈለጉ።

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

፫ አሁን ደህንነት ለሁሉም ፍጡር መታወጅ እንደሚገባው ፍላጎት ነበራቸው፣ የማንም የሰው ነፍስ መጥፋቱን ሊቀበሉት አልቻሉምና፤ እዎን ማንኛውም ነፍስ መጨረሻ የሌለውን ቅጣት የሚቀበል መሆኑ ማሰባቸውም እንዲንዘፈዘፋና እንዲንቀጠቀጡ ያደርጋቸዋል።

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

፬ እናም የጌታ መንፈስ በእነርሱ ላይ ስርቶ ነበር፣ እነርሱ ከሁሉም በላይ መጥፎ የሆኑ ኃጢአተኞች ነበሩና። እናም ጌታ ማብቂያ በሌለው ምህረቱ እነርሱን ለማዳን አስፈላጊ መሆኑን ተረዳ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በክፋታቸው ምክንያት ብዙ የነፍስ ሰቃይ ተሰቃዩ፣ እናም ለዘላለም እንጣላለን ብለው በመፍራታቸው የተነሳ ብዙ ተሰቃዩ።

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ኔፊ ሞድር ይወጡ ዘንድ ከአባቶቻቸው ጋር ለብዙ ቀናት ተማፀኑ።

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

፮ እናም ንጉሱ ሞዛያ ሄደና፣ ልጆቹ ከላማናውያን መካከል ሄደው ወንጌልን ለማስተማር ፍቃድ እንዲሰጣቸው እንደሚገባው ጌታን ጠየቀ።

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

፯ እናም ጌታ ለሞዛያ እንዲህ አለው፡ እንዲሄዱ ፍቀድላቸው፣ ብዙዎች በቃላቸው ያምናሉና፣ እናም ዘላለማዊ ህይወት ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም እኔ ወንድ ልጆቻችሁን ከላማናውያን እጅ አድናቸዋለሁ።

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞዛያ በጠየቁትም መሰረትም እንዲሄዱና ያደርጉ ዘንድ ፈቀደላቸው።

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

፱ እናም በላማናውያን መካከል ቃሉን ለመስበክ ወደ ሞድረበዳ ሄዱ፣ እናም ከዚህ በኋላ የታሪካቸውን ዘገባ እስጣለሁ።

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

፲ አሁን ንጉሥ ሞዳያ መንግሥቱን የሚሰጥበት ማንም አልነበረውም፣ ምክንያቱም ከልጆቹም ማንም መንግሥቱን የተቀበለ አልነበረም።

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

፲፩ ስለዚህ እናም ለንጉሥ ሞዳያ በሊምሂ እጅ የተሰጡትን በሊምሂ ህዝብ የተገኙትን ወርቃማ ሠሌዳዎች ከተረጎመና በመዝገብ እንዲፃፍ ካደረገ በኋላ፣ በነሃስ ስሌዳና፣ ደግሞም በኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ የተቀረጹትንና፣ ሁሉንም በእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ መሰረት የተቀመጡትን እና የተጠበቁትን ነገሮች ወሰደ፤

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

፲፪ እናም ይህን ያደረገው በህዝቡ ታላቅ ጉጉት የተነሳ ነው፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ስለጠፉት ሰዎች ለማወቅ ፍላጎታቸው ከልክ በላይ ነበርና።

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

፲፫ እናም አሁን በሁለቱ የቀሰት ጫፎች ላይ በታሰሩት ድንጋዮች አማካኝነት ተረጎማቸው።

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

፲፬ አሁን እነዚህ ነገሮች ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ተዘጋጅተዋል፣ እናም ቋንቋዎችን ለመተርጎም አላማም ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ ተላልፈዋል፤

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

፲፭ እናም የምድሪቱን ሰዎች ክፋትና እርኩስት ማንኛውም ፍጡር ያገኘው ዘንድ፣ በጌታ እጅ ተጠብቀዋል፣ እናም ተቀምጠዋል፤

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

፲፮ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ያሏቸው ሁሉ እንደጥንት ጊዜ አይነት ባለራዕይ ይባላሉ።

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

፲፯ አሁን ሞዳያ እነዚህን ታሪኮች ተርጉሞ ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ የጠፉትን ህዝቦች ከጠፉበት ጊዜ እንስቶ ታላቁ ግንብ እስከተገነባበት፣ ጌታ የህዝቡን ቋንቋ በቀለቀለበት ጊዜ እናም በምድር ገፅ ሁሉ እስከተበተኑበት፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከጥንት አዳም ከተፈጠረበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ያለውን ጭምር የህዝቡን ታሪክ ሰጠ።

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

፲፰ አሁን ይህ ታሪክ የሞዳያ ህዝብ እጅግ እንዲያለቅስ አደረገ፤ አዎን በሀዘን ተሞልተው ነበር፣ ይህን እንጂ ብዙ አውቀትን ሰጥቷቸዋል፣ በእርሱም ተደሰተዋል።

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

፲፱ እናም ይህ ታሪክ ከዚህ በኋላ ይፃፋል፣ እነሆም፣ በዚህ መዝገብ የተፃፉትን ነገሮች ሁሉም ሰው ማወቁ አስፈላጊ ነውና።

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

እናም አሁን፣ እኔ እንዳልኳችሁ፣ ንጉሥ ሞዛያ እነዚህን ነገሮች ካደረገ በኋላ የነሃስ ሰሌዳዎቹን፣ እናም ያስቀመጣቸውን ሁሉንም ነገሮች ወስደና፣ የአልማ ልጅ ለሆነው ለአልማ ሰጠው፤ አዎን፣ ሁሉንም መዛግብትና፣ ደግሞ መተርጎሚያውን፣ እናም ሁሉንም ለእርሱ ሰጠ፣ እንዲጠብቃቸውና እንዲያስቀምጣቸው፣ ደግሞም የህዝቡን ታሪክ እንዲያስቀምጥ፣ ልክ ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከመጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ እንደተላለፈው፣ ከአንዲት ወሎልድ ወደሌላኛው እንዲያስተላልፍ አዘዘው።

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

ሞዛያ ፳፱

፩ አሁን ሞዛያ ይህንን ሲያደርግ ንጉሳቸው ማን መሆን እንዳለበት ፈቃዳቸውን በተመለከተ ለማወቅ በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከል በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ላከ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የህዝቡ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፡ የአንተ ልጅ አሮን ንጉሳችን እና ገዢአችን እንዲሆን እንፈልጋለን።

፫ አሁን አሮን ወደ ኔፊ ሞድር ተጉዟል፤ ስለዚህ ንጉሱ መንግሥቱን ለእርሱ ሊሰጠው አልተቻለውም፤ አሮንም በራሱ ላይ መንግሥትን አይቀበለም፤ ወይም ማንም የሞዛያ ልጆች የሆኑ መንግሥቱን በራሱ ላይ ለማድረግ አልፈቀደም።

፬ ስለዚህ ንጉሱ ሞዛያ በህዝቡ መካከል በድጋሚ ላከ፤ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የፀሁፍ መልዕክትን በህዝቡ መካከል ላከ። እናም እነዚህም የተፃፉትም ቃላት እንዲህ የሚሉ ነበሩ።

፭ እነሆ፣ አቤቱ እናንተ ህዝቦቼ ሆይ፣ ወይም ወንድሞቼ፣ እኔ እንደዚህ በጣም አከብራችኋለሁና፣ እኔ እንድታሰቡበት የሚፈለግባችሁን ጉዳይ እንድታሰቡበት አፈልጋለሁ—ንጉሱ እንዲኖራችሁ ፈልጋችኋልና።

፮ አሁን መንግሥቱ በትክክል የሚገባው እንዳልተቀበለው፣ እናም መንግሥቱንም በራሱ ላይ እንደማይወስድ እነግራችኋለሁ።

፯ እናም አሁን በእርሱ ምትክ ሌላ የሚሾም መኖር ካለበት፣ እነሆ በእናንተ መካከል ጠብ እንዳይነሳ እፈራለሁ። እናም ምናልባት የእኔ ልጅ መንግሥቱ የሚገባው ተቆጥቶና የህዝቡን ግማሽ ከእርሱ ጋር ይወስድ ይሆናል፣ ይህም ከእናንተ ጋር ጦርነትና ፀብን ይፈጥራል፣ ያውም ለብዙ ደም መፋሰስ ምክንያት ይሆናል፣ እናም የጌታን ቀጥተኛ መንገድ የሚያጣምም ሊሆን ይችላል፣ አዎን እናም የብዙ ሰዎችን ነፍስ ያጠፋል።

፰ አሁን እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ ብልሆች እንሁን፣ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች እንመርምር፣ ልጄን የማጥፋት ምንም መብት የለንም፣ ወይም በእርሱ ቦታ ሌላ የሚተካውንም የማጥፋት መብት የለንም።

፱ እናም ልጄ በድጋሚ ወደ ኩራቱና ወደ ከንቱ ነገሮች የሚመለስ ከሆነ የተናገራቸውን ነገሮች መልሶ ከወሰደ፣ እናም ለመንግሥቱ መብቱን ይገባኛል የሚል ከሆነ፣ ይህም እርሱን እናም ደግሞ ህዝቡን ኃጢአት እንዲፈፀሙ ያደርጋልና።

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

፲ እናም አሁን ብልህ እንሁንና፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንመልከት፣ ለዚህም ህዝብ ሰላምን የሚያረጋግጥለትን ነገር እንሰራ።

፲፩ ስለዚህ በተቀሩት ቀናቴ ንጉሳችሁ እሆናለሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በህጎችን መሰረት ለዚህ ህዝብ እንዲፈርዱ ዳኞችን እንሾም፤ እናም ለዚህ ህዝብ እንደ አዲስ ሰልጥ እናዘጋጅለት፣ ዳኞች እንዲሆኑ ብልህ ሰዎችን እንሾማለንና፣ እነርሱም በእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት መሰረት ይዳኙአቸዋልና።

፲፪ አሁን ሰው ከሰው ይልቅ በእግዚአብሔር ቢፈረድበት ይሻለዋል፣ የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ ሁልጊዜም ጻድቅ ነውና፣ ነገር ግን የሰው ፍርድ ሁልጊዜ ጻድቅ አይደለም።

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ህግጋት የሚመሰርቱ፣ እናም በትዕዛዛቱ መሰረት በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ የሚፈርዱ ትክክለኛ ሰዎች የእናንተ ንጉስ እንዲሆኑ ቢቻል፣ አዎን፣ አባቴ ቢንያም ለዚህ ህዝብ እንዲደረገው የሚሰራ ሰው ንጉስ ሊኖራችሁ ቢችል—አላችኋለሁ፣ ሁልጊዜም ሁኔታው ይህ መሆን ከቻለ እናንተን የሚገዛ ንጉስ ሁልጊዜም ቢኖራችሁ አስፈላጊ ነው።

፲፬ እናም እኔም እንኳን ብሆን በሁሉም ኃይልና ባለኝ ችሎታ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ላስተምራችሁ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ሰላምን ለማስፈን፣ ምንም ዓይነት ጦርነትም ሆነ ፀብ፣ ስርቆት፣ ወይም ዝርፊያ፣ ወይም ግድያ፣ ወይም ማንኛውም ዓይነት ኃጢአት እንዳይኖር ስርቆት አለሁ።

፲፭ እናም ኃጢአትን የፈፀመውን በፈፀመው ወንጀል መሰረት በአባቶቻችን በተሰጠን ህግ መሰረት ቀጥቼዋለሁ።

፲፮ አሁን አላችኋለሁ፣ ሁሉም ሰው ጻድቅ ባለመሆኑ እናንተን የሚገዙ ንጉሶችም ሆኑ ንጉስ አስፈላጊ አይደለም።

፲፯ እነሆም፤ እንደ ኃጢአተኛ ንጉስ ምን ያህል ኃጢአት እንዲፈፀም ያደርጋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም እንዴት ታላቅ የሆነ ጥፋት!

፲፰ አዎን፣ የንጉስ ኖህን፣ ኃጢአቱንና እርኩሰቱን፣ እናም ደግሞ የህዝቡን ኃጢአትና እርኩሰት አስተውሉ። እነሆ ምን ያህል ታላቅ እርኩሰት በእነርሱ ላይ ሆነ፤ እናም ደግሞ በኃጢአታቸው የተነሳ ወደ ባርነት ተወሰዱ።

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

፲፱ እናም በጥበበኛው ፈጣሪዎች ጣልቃ ገብነት፣ እና ይህም በጥልቁ ንስሃቸው ምክንያት፣ ባይሆን ኖሮ እስካሁን ድረስ በማይታመን ሁኔታ በባርነት ሊቀሩ ይገባቸው ነበር።

፳ ነገር ግን እነሆ በእርሱ ፊት እራሳቸውን ትሁት በማድረጋቸው እነርሱን አዳናቸው፤ እናም በኃይል ወደእርሱ በመጮሁቸው ከባርነት አዳናቸው፣ እናም ጌታ በእርሱ ላይ እምነታቸውን በጣሉት የምህረት ክንዱን በመዘርጋት በሁሉም ሁኔታዎች ከሰዎች ልጆች መካከል በኃይሉ እንደዚህ ይሠራል።

፳፩ እናም እነሆ፣ አሁን እላችኋለሁ በብዙ ፀብና ደም መፋሰስ ካልሆነ በቀር ክፋውን ንጉስ ልታሰወግዱት አይቻላችሁም።

፳፪ እነሆ በክፋት ያሉ ወዳጆች ሰለአሉት፣ እናም ጠባቂዎቹን በእርሱ ዙሪያ ያስቀምጣቸዋል፤ እናም ከእርሱ በፊት በፅድቅ የነገሱትን ሰዎች ህግ ያጠፋል፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በእግሩ ይረጋግጠዋልም።

፳፫ እናም ህጎችን ያወጣል፣ በህዝቡ መካከልም ይልካል፣ አዎን እንደ እርሱ ክፋት የሆኑ ህጎችን፤ እናም ህጉን ያልተቀበለ እንዲጠፋ ይደረጋል፤ በእነርሱም ላይ የሚያምፅ ለጦርነት ወታደሮቹን በእነርሱ ላይ ይልካል፤ እናም የሚችል ከሆነ ያጠፋቸዋል፤ ያደቅ ያልሆነ ንጉስም የዓድቃንን መንገድ በሙሉ እንደዚህ ያጣምማል።

፳፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ እላችኋለሁ እንደዚህ አይነት እርኩስት በእናንተ ላይ መምጣቱ አስፈላጊ አይደለም።

፳፭ ስለዚህ ትክክለኛ የሆነው እናም በጌታ እጅ የተሰጠው በአባቶቻችን በተሰጣችሁ ህጎች መሰረት ይፈረድባችሁ ዘንድ በዚህ ህዝብ ድጋፍ ዳኛን ምረጡ።

፳፮ አሁን ህዝቡ ትክክለኛ ከሆነው ከማንኛውም ነገር ተቃራኒ የሆነ ድምፅ መፈለግ የተለመደ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን ትክክል ያልሆነውን መፈለግ በትንሹ የህብረተሰብ ክፍል የተለመደ ነው፤ ስለዚህ ይህንን ጠብቁ እናም የራሳችሁ ህግ አድርጉት—በህዝቡም ድምፅ ጉዳያችሁን እንድትፈፀሙ።

፳፯ እናም የህዝቡ ድምፅ መጥፎውን የሚመርጥበት ጊዜ ከመጣ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ በእናንተ ላይ የሚመጣበት ጊዜ ይሆናል፤ አዎን ከዚህ በፊት ይህንን ምድር እንደጎበኘው እናንተን በታላቅ ጥፋት የሚጎበኝበት ጊዜ ይሆናል።

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

፳፰ እናም አሁን መሳፍንቶች ካሏችሁና በተሰጣችሁ ህግ መሰረት የሚፈረዱባችሁ ካልሆነ በጠቅላይ ዳኛ እንዲፈረዱባቸው ማድረግ ትችላላችሁ።

፳፱ ጠቅላይ ዳኞቻችሁ ጽድቅ ፍርድ ካልፈረዱላችሁ፣ እነሱትኞች የበታች ዳኞቻችሁ በአንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ ታደርጋላችሁ፣ እና እነርሱም በጠቅላይ ዳኞቻችሁ ላይ በህዝቡ ድምፅ መሰረት ይፈርዳሉ።

፴ እናም በጌታ ፍራቻ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድታደርጉ አዛችኋለሁ፤ እናም ንጉስ እንዲያረፍሁ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድታደርጉ አዛችኋለሁ፤ ይህ ህዝብ ኃጢአትና ክፋትን ከፈፀመ በራሳቸው ላይ መልሰን ያገኛሉ።

፴፩ እነሆም አላችኋለሁ፣ የብዙዎች ኃጢአት የሆነው በንጉሶቻቸው ክፋት ምክንያት ነው፤ ስለዚህ ክፋታቸው በንጉሶቻቸው ራስ ላይ ይመለሳሉ።

፴፪ እናም አሁን በዚህ ምድር አድልዎ ከእንግዲህ በዚህ ምድር፣ በተለይ በህዝቤ መካከል እንዲኖር አልፈልግም፤ ነገር ግን ይህ ምድር የነፃነት ምድር እንዲሆን እፈልጋለሁ። እናም ጌታ ምድሪቱን እንድንኖርበትና እንድንወርስ አስፈላጊ ነው እስካለ ድረስ፣ አዎን፣ ማንኛውም ሰው የእኛ ዘር በምድር ፊት እስከቀረበም ድረስ ማንኛውም ሰው በእኩል ልዩ መብቱንና እድሎቹን ይደስትባቸው።

፴፫ እናም ንጉስ ሞዛያ፣ የፃድቃኑን ንጉስ ፍርድና ችግር ሁሉ በማያያዝ፣ አዎን፣ ለህዝባቸው ያላቸው የመንፈስ ስቃይ ሁሉ፣ እናም ደግሞ በንጉሱ ላይ የህዝቡን ማጉረምረምን በመግለፅ ከዚህ የበለጡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ፅፎላቸዋል፤ እናም ይህንን ሁሉ ገልጻለላቸዋል።

፴፬ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች መሆን እንደሌለባቸው ነግሯቸዋል፣ ነገር ግን ሽክሙ በህዝቡ ላይ ሁሉ ላይ መምጣት አለበት፣ እያንዳንዱም ሰው የእራሱን ክፍል ይሸከም ዘንድ።

፴፭ እናም ደግሞ ፃድቅ ባልሆነ ንጉስ በመገዛታቸው፣ ጥቅም በሌለው የደከሙበትን እንዲያውቁ አደረገ።

፴፮ አዎን፣ ሁሉም ክፋቶቹንና እርኩሶቹን፣ እናም ጦርነትቶችን፣ ፀቦችንም፣ ደም መፋሰሰንም፣ ሰርቆትንም፣ ዝርፊያንም፣ ዝሙትንም መፈፀም፣ እናም ሊቆጠሩ የማይችሉ ሁሉም አይነት ክፋት—እነዚህ ነገሮች መሆን እንደሌለባቸው ከእግዚአብሔርም ትዕዛዛት ጋር ተፃራሪ መሆናቸውን ተናገረ።

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

፴፯ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ንጉሥ ሞዳያ እነዚህን ነገሮች በህዝቡ መካከል ከላከ በኋላ የእርሱ ቃላት እውነት እንደሆኑ ታመኑ።

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

፴፰ ስለዚህ ለንጉሥ ያላቸውን ፍላጎት ተወ፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉም ሰው እኩል እድል እንዲኖረው እጅግ ጓጉ፤ አዎን፣ እናም እያንዳንዱ ሰው የራሱን ኃጢያት ለመመለስ ፈቃደኝነቱን ገለፀ።

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

፴፱ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ በተሰጠው ህግ መሰረት እነርሱን የሚፈርድ ዳኛ ማን መሆን እንዳለበት በሚመለከት ድምጻቸውን ለመሰጠት በቡድን አራሳቸውን በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም በተሰጣቸው ነፃነት የተነሳ እጅግ ተደስተው ነበር።

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

፵ እናም በሞዳያ ያላቸው ፍቅር ጠነከረ፤ አዎን፣ ከማንም ሰው የበለጠ አከበሩት፤ ጥቅም፣ አዎን ነፍሱን የሚያሰረክሰውን አስቀያሚ ገንዘብ፣ የሚፈልግ ጨካኝ እንደሆነ አድርገው አልተመለከቱትም፤ ከእነርሱም ሀብታቸውን ለመውሰድ አልፈለገም፣ ወይም በደም መፋሰስም አልተደሰተምና፤ ነገር ግን በምድሪቱ ስላምን መሰርቷል፣ እናም ለህዝቡ ከሁሉም ባርነት እንዲለቀቁ አድርጓል፤ ስለዚህም፣ አዎን፣ እጅግ ከልክ በላይ አከበሩት።

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

፵፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእነርሱ ላይ የሚገዙ ዳኞቻችን፣ ወይም በህጉ መሰረት የሚዳኛቸውን ሾሙ፤ እናም ይህንን በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ሁሉ አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

፵፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ የመጀመሪያ ዋና ዳኛ በመሆን ተመረጠ፣ አባቱም ሀላፊነቱን ለእርሱ በመስጠቱ፣ እናም የቤተክርስቲያኑን ጉዳዮች ሁሉ በሚመለከት ሀላፊነቱን ስለሰጠው ደግሞ ሊቀ ካህንም ነበር።

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

፵፫ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ በጌታ መንገድ ተራመደና፣ ትዕዛዛቱን ጠበቀ፣ እናም ጸድቅ ፍርድን ፈረደ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ የማያቋርጥ ሰላም ነበረ።

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

፵፬ እናም ኔፋውያን ከሚባሉ ህዝቦች መካከል ሁሉ በዛራሔምላ ምድር የዳኞቻች አገዛዝ እንደዚህ ተጀመረ፣ እናም አልማ የመጀመሪያውና ዋናው ዳኛ ነበር።

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

፵፭ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሰማንያ ሁለት ዓመት ሆኖት አባቱ ሞተ፤ እርሱም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመፈፀም ይኖር ነበር።

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በንግስናው ሠላሳ ሶስተኛ ዓመት፣ ሰልሳ ሦስት ዓመት ሆኖት ሞዛያም ደግሞ ሞተ፤ ይህም በአጠቃላይ ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ አምስት መቶ ዘጠኝ ዓመት ነበር።

፳፯ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የነገሰት አገዛዝ በዚሁ አባታት እናም የቤተክርስቲያናቸው መሰራች የነበረው የአልማ ቀናትም እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

መፀሐፈ አልማ

የአልማ ልጅ

የአልማ ልጅ፣ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመጀመሪያውና ዋናው ዳኛ፣ እናም ደግሞ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ሊቀ ካህን የሆነው፣ የአልማ ታሪክ። የመሠፍንት የንግሥት፣ እናም በህዝቡ መካከል የነበረው የጦርነትና ፀብ ታሪክ። እናም ደግሞ የመጀመሪያውና ዋናው ዳኛ በሆነው በአልማ መዝገብ መሰረት በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል የነበረው የጦርነት ታሪክ።

አልማ ፩

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መሳፍንቶች በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በነገሱበት በመጀመሪያው ዓመት፣ ንጉሥ ሞዳያ በቦታውም ማንም እንዲነግሱ ሳያደርግ፣ ምድር ሁሉ ወደሚሄዱበት ሄዷል፣ መልካሙን ገድል ተጋድሏል፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በልበ ቅንነት ተራምዷል፤ ይህን እንጂ ህግጋትን አቋቋሟል፣ እናም እነርሱም በህዝቡ ዘንድ ተቀባይነትን አግኝተዋል፣ ስለሆነም፣ ከዚህም ጊዜ በኋላ፣ ህዝቡ እርሱ ባቋቋመው ህግጋት ለመገዛት ተገደው ነበር።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአልማ በዳኝነት መቀመጫ ላይ በሚነግሱበት በመጀመሪያው ዓመት፣ አንድ ሰው እንዲፈረድበት ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ አምጥተውት ነበር፤ ሰውየውም ትልቅ የነበረ እና በጥንካሬውም የሚታወቅ ነበር።

፫ እናም ይህ ሰው ከህዝቡ መካከል በመሄድ እርሱ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ብሎ ያለውን በመስበክ፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ተቃራኒ በመሆን፣ ለህዝቡም ካህንና መምህር ሁሉ ታዋቂ መሆን እንዳለባቸው፣ እናም በእጃቸውም መስራት እንደሌለባቸው፣ ነገር ግን በህዝቡ መደገፍ እንዳለባቸው ያውጅ ነበር።

፬ እናም ደግሞ ለህዝቡ የሰው ዘር ሁሉ በመጨረሻው ቀን መዳን እንዳለበት፣ እናም መፍራትም ሆነ መንቀጥቀጥ እንደሌለባቸው፣ ነገር ግን ጌታ ሁሉን በመፍጠሩና ደግሞም ሁሉን በማዳኑ እራሳቸውን በማቅናት እንዲደሰቱ፣ እንዲሁም በመጨረሻ ሁሉም ሰው ዘለአለማዊ ህይወት ሊኖረው ይገባል በማለት መሰከረ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች በብዛት አስተምሮ ብዙዎች የእርሱን ቃላት አመኑ፣ ይህም ሆኖ ብዙዎች እንኳን እርሱን መደገፍ እናም ገንዘብ ይሰጡት ጀመር።

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

፮ እናም በልቡ ኩራት መወጠር፣ እናም ውድ ልብስ መልበስ ጀመረ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከሰበካው ጋር በሚዛመድ ሁኔታ እንኳን ቤተክርስቲያንን ማቋቋም ጀመረ።

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቃሉ ላመኑት ለመሰበክ በመጓዝ ላይ እንዳለ በእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል፣ አዎን፣ የእነርሱም መምህር የነበረ፣ እንድን ሰው አገኘ፤ እናም የቤተክርስቲያኗን ሰዎችም ይለውጣቸው ዘንድ፣ ከእርሱ ጋር በኃይል መከራከር ጀመረ፤ ነገር ግን በእግዚአብሔር ቃል በመገሰፅ ሰውየው ተቃወመው።

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

፰ የሰውየው ስምም ጌዴዎን ነበር፤ እናም የሊምሂን ህዝብ ከባርነት ለማሰለቀቅ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ የነበረው እርሱ ነበር።

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

፱ አሁን ጌዴዎን በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ስለተቃወመው በጊድዮን ተቆጣ፤ እናም ጎራዴውን መዘዘና ይመታው ጀመረ። እንግዲህ ጌዴዎን በማርጀቱ ሞቱን ለመቋቋም አልቻለም ነበር፣ ስለሆነም በጎራዴው ሞተ።

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

፲ እናም ገዳዩ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች ተወሰደ፣ እናም በፈፀመው ወንጀል እንዲፈረድበት በአልማ ፊት ቀረበ።

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከአልማ ፊት ቆመና በታላቅ ድፍረት ለራሱ ተከራከረ።

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

፲፪ ነገር ግን አልማ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፣ እነሆ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል የካህን ተንኮል ከተጀመረበት ጊዜ ይህ የመጀመሪያው ነው። እናም እነሆ እንተ በካህን ተንኮል ብቻ አይደለም ጥፋተኛ የሆነከው፣ ነገር ግን ይህን በጎራዴው ለማሰገደድ ጥረት አድርገህል፤ እናም የካህን ተንኮል በህዝቡ መካከል በግዴታ የሚደረግ ቢሆን ይህም አጠቃላይ ጥፋታቸውን ያሰከትላል።

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

፲፫ እናም እንተ የፃድቁን ደም አፍሰሰህል፣ አዎን፣ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ብዙ መልካምን ያደረገውን ሰው፤ እናም እንተን እንድትተርፍ ካደረግን የእርሱ ደም ለበቀል በእኛ ላይ ይመጣል።

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

፲፬ ስለሆነም የመጨረሻው ንጉሳችን በሆነው በሞዛያ በተሰጠን ህግ መሰረት እንድትሞቱ ተፈርዶብህል፤ እናም ህጉ በህዝቡ ተቀባይነት አግኝቶአል፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡ በህጉ መተዳደር አለበት።

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱንም ወሰዱት፤ ሰውም ኔሆር ነበር፤ እናም ወደ ማንቲ ኮረብታ ጫፍ ወሰዱት፤ እናም በእዚያ ለህዝቡም ያስተማረው ከእግዚአብሔር ቃል ጋር ተቃራኒ እንደነበረ በሰማይና በምድር መካከል ተቀባይ እንዲሆን ተገደደ ወይም ተቀበለ፤ እናም በእዚያም በእሳፋሪ ሞት ተሰቃየ።

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

፲፮ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ይህ የካህን ተንኮል በምድሪቱ እንዳይሰፋፋ ገደብ አልሆነም፣ ምክንያቱም የዓለምን ከንቱ ነገሮች የሚያፈቅሩ ብዙዎች ነበሩና፣ እናም ሐሰተኛ ትምህርቶችን በመስበክ ሄዱ፤ እናም ይህንን ያደረጉት ለሁብትና ለክብራቸው ነበር።

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

፲፯ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ሆኑን በመፍራት ለመዋሸት አይደሩም ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም ይህ ቢታወቅ ኖሮ ሀሰተኞች ይቀጣሉና፤ ስለሆነም በእምነታቸው እንደሚሰብኩ ያስመስላሉ፤ እናም አሁን ሆኑ በማንኛውም ሰው እምነት ላይ ስልጣን ሊኖረው አይችልም።

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

፲፰ እናም ሆኑን በመፍራት ለመሰረቅ አልደፈሩም፤ እንደነዚህ አይነቶች ተቀጥተዋልና፤ ለመዝረፍም ሆነ፣ ለመግደል አልደፈሩም፣ የገደለ በሞት ይቀጣልና።

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

፲፱ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ያልሆኑት የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል የሆኑትን፣ እናም በራሳቸው ላይ የክርስቶስን ስም የለበሱትን አሳደዱ።

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

፳ እዎን እነርሱንም አባረሩአቸው፣ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ቃላት አስቃዩአቸው፣ ይህም በትህትናቸው የተነሳ፣ እናም በእመላካከታቸው ኩሩ ስላልነበሩና፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ያለገንዘብና ያለምንም ክፍያ አንዳቸው ለሌላኛው የሚካፈሉ ስለነበሩ ነው።

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

፳፩ እንግዲህ በቤተክርስቲያኗ አባል የሆነ ማንም ሰው በቤተክርስቲያኗ አባል ያልሆኑትን ተነስቶ የሚያሳድድ መኖር እንደሌለበት፣ እናም በመካከላቸውም ምንም ስደት መኖር እንደሌለበት በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች መካከል ህጉ ጥብቅ ነበር።

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

፳፪ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከእነርሱ መካከል ብዙ መኩራት የጀመሩ፣ እናም ከጠላቶቻቸው ጋር፣ እስከመመታታትም ድረስ፣ በኃይል መጣላት የጀመሩ ነብሩ፣ እዎን፣ በቡጢያም እንዲሁ በሌላኛው ይመታታሉ።

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

፳፫ አሁን ይህ በአልማ ሁለተኛው የንግሥ ዓመት ውስጥ ነበር፤ እናም ለቤተክርስቲያኗ ታላቅ ስቃይ ምክንያት ነበር፤ እዎን፣ ለቤተክርስቲያኗ ታላቅ ፈተና ምክንያት ነበር።

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

፳፬ የብዙዎች ልብ ጠጥሯል፤ እናም ከእነግዲህ በእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች መካከል እንዲይታወቁ ሰማቸው ተደምገዋል። እናም ደግሞ ብዙዎች ራሳቸውን ከመካከላቸው አወጡ።

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

፳፭ አሁን በእምነታቸው ፀንተው ለቆሙ ይህ ታላቅ ችግር ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ፅኑና የማይነቃነቁ ነበሩ፤ እናም በላያቸው ላይ የተቆለለውን ጭቆና በትዕግስት ተወጡ።

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

፳፮ እናም ካህናት የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለህዝቡ ለመናገር ስራቸውን በተዉ ጊዜ፤ ሰዎቹም ቢሆኑ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለማዳመጥ ስራቸውን ትተዋል። እናም ካህናት የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በተናገሩ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ወደ ስራዎቻቸው በትጋት ተመለሱ፤ እናም ካህኑም፣ እራሱን ከአድማጩ በላይ አላደረገም፤ ምክንያቱም ሰባኪው ከአድማጩ የተሻለ፤ መምህሩም ከተማሪው ምንም የተሻለ አልነበረም፤ እናም ሁሉም እኩል ነበሩና፤ ሁሉም ሰዎች በጥንካሬያቸው መሰረት ስራቸውን ይሰራሉ።

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

፳፯ እናም ማንኛውም ሰው ለድሆችና ለችግረኞች፣ እናም ለታመሙና፣ ለተሰቃዩት ባላቸው መጠን ከቁሳቁሶቻቸው አካፈሉ፤ እናም እነርሱ ውድ ልብሶችን አልለበሱም ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ንፁህና የደስደስ ያላቸው ነበሩ።

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

፳፰ እና እንደዚህም የቤተክርስቲያን ጉዳዮችን አቋቋሙ፤ እና እንደዚህም ይህ ሁሉ ጭቆና ቢኖርባቸውም የማያቋርጥ ሰላም በድጋሚ ይኖራቸው ጀመር።

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

፳፱ እናም አሁን፣ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ፅኑነት የተነሳ እጅግ ሀብታም መሆን ጀመሩ፤ ሁሉም የሚያስፈልጋቸው ማንኛውም ነገሮች በብዛት ነበራቸው—ብዙ መንጋዎችና ከብቶች፣ ሁሉም ዓይነት ኮርማዎችም፣ ደግሞም ብዙ ጥራጥራና፣ ወርቅ፣ ብርና፣ የከበሩ ነገሮች፣ እናም ብዙ ሐርና የተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታ፣ እናም ሁሉም ዓይነት መልካም ልብሶች ነበሯቸው።

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

፴ የእናም እንዲሁ፣ በብልፅግናቸው የተራቁትን ወይም የተራቡትን፣ ወይም የተጠሙትን፣ የታመሙትን ወይም ያልተመገቡትን ቢሆን ማንንም አላባረሩም፤ እናም ልባቸውን በሀብት ላይ አላደረጉም፤ ስለዚህ ለሁሉም፣ ለወጣቶችም ሆነ ለሽማግሌዎች፣ ለታሰሩትም ሆነ ነፃ ለሆኑት፣ ለወንድም ሆነ ለሴት፣ ከቤተክርስቲያን ለሆኑም ሆነ ላልሆኑት ደግ ነበሩ፤ በችግር ለነበሩት እንዳደረጉት ሁሉ በሰዎች ፊት አላደሉም።

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

፴፩ እናም በለፀጉና ከእነርሱ ቤተክርስቲያን ካልሆኑት በበለጠ ሀብታም ሆኑ።

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

፴፪ ከእነርሱ ቤተክርስቲያን ያልሆኑት ራሳቸውን በጥንቆላና በጣኦት አምላኪነት ወይም በሰንፍና እናም በከንቱ ልፍለፋ እናም በቅናትና ክርክር፣ ውድ ልብሶችን በመልበስ፣ በትዕቢት በራሳቸው አይን በመነፋት፣ በማሳደድ፣ በመዋሸት፣ በመሰረቅ፣ በመዝረፍ፣ ዝሙትን በመፈፀምና፣ በመግደል፣ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት ኃጢያት በመፈፀም ራሳቸውን አሰደሰቱ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ህጉ በሚቻለው መጠን በተላለፉት ሁሉ ላይ በኃይል ተደርጓል።

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደዚህ ህግን በእነርሱ ላይ በማሳረፍ፣ እያንዳንዱ ሰው በሰራው መሰረት እየተቀጣ፣ እነርሱም ይበልጥ ተረጋገጉ፣ እናም የሚታወቅ ከሆነ ምንም ዓይነት ኃጢያት ለመፈፀም አልደፈሩም፤ ስለዚህ፣ እስከ አምስተኛው ዓመት የመሳፍንት አገዛዝ ድረስ በኔፊ ህዝቦች መካከል ከፍተኛ ሰላም ነበር።

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

አልማ ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአምስተኛው የንግስና ዓመታቸው መጀመሪያ በህዝቡ መካከል ጠብ ተጀመረ፤ እጅግ አጭብርባሪ፣ አዎን ለዓለም ጥበብ ብልህ ሰው የሆነ፣ በህግ መሰረት በተገደለው ጌዳዎንን በገደለው ሰው ሥርዓት መሠረት የነበረው አምሊኪ ተብሎ የሚጠራው ሰው ነበር።

፪ አሁን አምሊኪ በብልህቱ ብዙ ሰዎች እንዲከተሉት አደረገ፣ ብዙዎች እንኳን ሆነው እጅግ ኃያል መሆን ጀመሩ፤ እናም አምሊኪ በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ እንዲሆን ጥረት ማድረግ ጀመሩ።

፫ እንግዲህ ይህ ለቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች፣ እናም ደግሞ በአምሊኪ ጉትጎታ ላልተወሰዱት ሁሉ አሰገ ነበር፤ በህጋቸው መሰረት እንደዚህ ያሉ ነገሮች በህዝቡ ድምፅ መመሰረት ያለባቸው እንደሚሆኑ ያውቃሉና።

፬ ስለዚህ አምሊኪ የህዝቡን ድምፅ ማግኘት የሚችል ከሆነ፣ እርሱ ክፉ ሰው ስለነበረ፣ በቤተክርስቲያን ያላቸውን መብትና እድል ይከለክላቸዋል፤ ዓላማው የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ለማጥፋት ነበርና።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እያንዳንዱ ሰው እንደአስተሳሰቡ፣ በአምሊኪ ይሁን ወይም እርሱን ለመቃወም፣ በተለያዩ አካል በመሆን፣ አንዱ ከሌላውጋር ታላቅ ፀብና አሰገራሚ ጥል በማድረግ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ተሰበሰቡ።

፮ እናም ጉዳዩን በተመለከተ ድምፅ ለመስጠት እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም በዳኛዎች ፊት ቀርበው ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የህዝቡ ድምፅ በአምሊኪ ላይ ሆነ፣ እርሱም በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ አልተደረገም ነበር።

፰ እንግዲህ ይህ ከእርሱ ተቃራኒ ለሆኑት ታላቅ ደስታን በልባቸው እንዲሆን ያደርጋል፤ ነገር ግን አምሊኪ የእርሱ ደጋፊዎች የሆኑት ደጋፊዎች ያልሆኑት ላይ እንዲያውኩ አደረገ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም አምሊኪን ንጉስ አድርገው ቀቡት።

፲ እናም አምሊኪ በእነርሱ ላይ ንጉስ በተደረገ ጊዜ እነርሱ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዲያነሱ አዘዘ፤ እናም ይህንን ያደረገው በእርሱ ስር ያደርጋቸው ዘንድ ነው።

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

፲፭ እንግዲህ የአምሊኪ ሰዎች አምሊኪውያን ተብለው በአምሊኪ ሰዎ በመጠራት ይታወቃሉ፤ እናም ቀሪዎቹ ኔፋውያን፣ ወይም የእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ተብለው ይጠራሉ።

፲፮ ስለዚህ የኔፋውያን ህዝብ የአምሊኪውያንን ዓላማ ያውቁ ነበር፣ እናም ስለዚህ ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመገናኘት ተዘጋጁ፤ እዎን በጎራዴም፣ በሻሙላም፣ በሰይፍ፣ በቀስትም፣ በድንጋይና በወንጭፍ፣ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች ከሁሉም ዓይነት እራሳቸውን አስታጠቁ።

፲፯ እናም በሚመጡበት ጊዜ አምሊኪውያንን ለመገናኘት እንደዚህ ተዘጋጅተው ነበር። እናም እንደብዛታቸው አምበሎችና፣ ከፍተኛ የቡድን አለቆች፣ እንዲሁም የበላይ ሻምበሎች ተሹመው ነበር።

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አምሊኪ ከሁሉም ዓይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች ህዝቡን አስታጥቆ ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር ለማዋጋት እንዲመሩአቸው ገዢዎችንና መሪዎችን በህዝቡ ላይ ሾመ።

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አምሊኪውያኑ ወደ ዛራሄምላ ምድር በሚፈሰው በሲዶም ወንዝ በስተምሰራቅ በኩል ባለው በአምኒሁ ኮረብታ ላይ ሆኑ፣ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር ጦርነት ጀመሩ።

፳፯ እንግዲህ አልማ የኔፋውያን ዋና ዳኛ እናም የህዝቡ አስተዳዳሪ በመሆኑ፣ ከህዝቡ ጋር እዎን ከሻምበሎቹ ጋር፣ እናም ከበላይ ሻምበሎቹ ጋር እዎን ከወታደሮቹ ፊት በመሆን ከአምሊኪውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ሄደ።

፳፯ እናም በሲዶም በስተምሰራቅ ኮረብታ ላይ አምሊኪውያንን መግደል ጀመሩ። እናም አምሊኪውያን በታላቅ ብርታት በርካታ ኔፋውያን ከአምሊኪውያን ፊት አስከወድቁ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ተዋጉ።

፳፰ ይሁን እንጂ ጌታ በታላቅ ግድያ አምሊኪውያን እንዲገደሉ የኔፋውያንን ክንድ አበረታ፤ እነርሱም ከፊታቸው መሸሽ ጀመሩ።

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን በዚያን ቀን ሁሉ አምሊኪውያንን ተከተሉ፣ እናም አስራ ሁለት ሺህ አምስት መቶ ሠላሣ ሁለት አምሊኪውያንን ነፍስ አስከገደሉ ድረስ በታላቅ ግድያ ገደሉአቸው፤ እናም ሰድስት ሺህ አምስት መቶ ስልሳ ሁለት የኔፋውያን ነፍስ ጠፍተው ነበር።

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ሞንም እንኳን አምሊኪውያንን ለማሳደድ በማይችልበት ጊዜ፣ በኔሆር እጅ በጎራዴ በተገደለው በጌዲዮን ስም በተሠየመ ሸለቆው፣ በጌዴዎን ሸለቆ ህዝቡ ድንኳናቸውን እንዲተክሉ አደረገ፤ እናም በዚህ ሸለቆ ኔፋውያን ለምሽት ድንኳናቸውን ተክለው ነበር።

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

፳፪ እናም አልማ የአምሊኪውያንን ዕቅድና ሴራ ያውቅ ዘንድ፣ በዚያም እራሱን ከእነርሱ ይጠብቅ ዘንድ፣ ህዝቡንም ከጥፋት ይጠብቅ ዘንድ ቅሪቶቻቸውን ለመከታተል ሰላዮችን ላከ።

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

፳፫ አሁን የአምሊኪውያንን የጦር ሰፈር እንዲመለከቱ የላካቸው ዜራምና፣ አምኖርም፣ ማንቲና ሊምኸር ተብለው ይጠራሉ፤ እነዚህ የአምሊኪውያንን የጦር ሰፈር እንዲመለከቱ ከወንድ ሰዎቻቸው ጋር የሄዱት ናቸው።

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በማግስቱ ወደ ኔፋውያን የጦር ሰፈር በችኮላ ተመለሱ፣ በኃይል በመገረም እናም በታላቅ ፍርሃት እንዲህ አሉ፦

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

፳፭ እነሆ የአምሊኪውያንን የጦር ሰፈር ተከተልን፣ በሚኖን ምድር ከዛራሄምላ ምድር ከፍ ብሎ ወደ ኔፊ ምድር በሚወስደው በርካታ የላማናውያን ሰራዊቶችን ተመለከትን፤ እናም እነሆ አምሊኪውያን እነርሱን ተገናኙአቸው፤

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

፳፮ እናም በምድሪቱ በወንድሞቻችን ላይ ናቸው፤ እናም ከመንጋዎቻቸውና፣ ከሚሰቶቻቸውና፣ እናም ከልጆቻቸው ጋር ወደ እኛ ከተማ እየሸሹ ናቸው፤ እናም እኛ ካልፈጠንን በስተቀር ከተማችንን ይወስዱብናል፣ እናም አባቶቻችንና ሚሰቶቻችን እንዲሁም ልጆቻችን ይገደላሉ።

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝብ ድንኳናቸውን ወሰዱ፣ እናም ከጌዴዎን ሸለቆ ወጥተው የዛራሄምላ ከተማ ወደ ነበረው ወደ ራሳቸው ከተማ ሄዱ።

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

፳፰ እናም እነሆ፣ የሲዶን ወንዝ ባቋረጡበት ጊዜ እንደ ባህር አሸዋ ቁጥራቸው የበዛ የሚመስሉት ላማናውያንና አምሊኪውያን ሊያጠፋላቸው መጡ።

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

፳፱ ይሁን እንጂ ኔፋውያን በጌታ ክንድ ብርታትን በማግኘታቸው እርሱ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ያስለቅቃቸው ዘንድ በኃይል ፀለዩ፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ጩኸታቸውን ሰማና አበረታቸው፣ እናም ላማናውያንና አምሊኪውያን በፊታቸው ወደቁ።

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ከአምሊኪ ጋር በጎራዳ ፊት ለፊት ተፋለመ፣ እናም እርሱ በእርሳቸው በኃይል ተጣሉ።

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ የእግዚአብሔር ሰው በመሆኑ፣ በእምነትም የተነሳሳ በመሆኑ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፣ እቤቱ ጌታ ምህረትህ በእኔ ላይ ይሁን እናም ነፍሴን አትርፍ፣ እኔም ይህንን ህዝብ እድነውና እጠብቀው ዘንድ በእጅህ መሳሪያ እሆን ዘንድ።

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

፴፭ አሁን አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ ከአምሊኪ ጋር እንደገና ታገለ፤ አምሊኪን በጎራዳ እስኪገድለውም በርትቶ ነበር።

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

፴፮ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ ከላማናውያን ንጉስ ጋር ታግሎ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን የላማናውያን ንጉስ ከአልማ ፊት ሸሽ እናም ከአልማ ጋር እንዲታገሉ ጠባቂዎቹን ላከ።

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

፴፯ ነገር ግን አልማ ከጠባቂዎቹ ጋር፣ ከላማናውያን ንጉስ ጠባቂዎች ጋር እነርሱን በመግደል እስኪመልሳቸው ድረስ ተዋጋ።

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

፴፰ እናም የተገደሉትን የላማናውያንን ሬሳ በሲዶም ወንዝ በመጣል፣ ህዝቡም ከላማናውያንና ከአምሊኪውያን ጋር በሲዶም ወንዝ በሰተምዕራብ በኩል በማቋረጥ እንዲዋጉ ቦታ ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ቦታውን በሌላ አነጋገር ከሲዶም ወንዝ በሰተምዕራብ በኩል ያለውን ዳርቻ እንደዚህ አጠራ።

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም የሲዶምን ወንዝ ባቋረጡ ጊዜ፣ ምንም እንኳን እጅግ ብዙ ሆነው ለመቁጠር የማይቻል ቢሆኑም ላማናውያንና አምሊኪውያን ከፊታቸው መሸሽ ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

፴፱ እናም ከምድሪቱ ዳርቻ በሰተምዕራብና በሰተሰሜን በኩል ወዳለው ምድረበዳ ከኔፋውያን ፊት ሸሹ፤ እናም ኔፋውያን በኃይላቸው አሳደዱአቸውና ገደሉአቸው።

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

፵፬ አዎን፣ በየአቅጣጫው ተገናኙአቸው፤ እናም በምዕራብና በሰሜን በኩል እስኪበተኑ ድረስ በሰተሰሜን በኩል ሔርማውንትስ ከሚባለው ስፍራ በምድረበዳው እስከሚደርሱ ድረስ አባረሩአቸው እናም ገደሉአቸው፤ እና ይህም በዱርና በሰግብግብ አውሬዎች የተወረረው ምድረበዳ ክፍል ነበር።

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

፵፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙዎች በቁስላቸው በምድረበዳው ሞቱና፣ በአውሬዎቹና ደግሞ በጥንብ እንሳዎች ተበሉ፤ እናም አጥንታቸው በምድር ላይ ተቆልሎ ተገኘ።

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

አልማ ፫

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጦር መሳሪያ ያልተገደሉት ኔፋውያን የተገደሉትን ከቀበሩ በኋላ፣ የሞቱት ቁጥር ብዙ ስለነበሩ ለመቁጠር አይቻልም ነበር፣ የሞቱትን ከቀበሩ በኋላ በሙሉ ወደ ስፍራቸው እናም ወደ ቤታቸውና ወደ ሚስቶቻቸውና ወደ ልጆቻቸው ተመለሱ።

፪ አሁን ብዙ ሴቶችና፣ ልጆች፣ ደግሞም ብዙ መንጋና፣ ከብቶቻቸው በጎራዴ ተገድለውባቸው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ በርካታ የአህል እርሻዎቻቸው ወድመዋል፣ በስዎች ስራዊት ተረጋግጠውባቸዋልና።

፫ እናም አሁን በሲዶም ወንዝ ዳርቻ የተገደሉት ላማናውያንና አምሊኪውያን ሁሉ በሲዶም ወንዝ ውስጥ ተጥለው ነበር፤ እናም እነሆ በርካታ አጥንቶች በባህር ወለል ውስጥ ናቸው፣ እነርሱም ብዙ ናቸው።

፬ እናም አምሊኪውያን እንደላማናውያን ግንባራቸው ላይ ቀይ ምልክት በማድረጋችው ከኔፋውያን ተለይተው ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ እንደላማናውያን ራሳቸው እንዲላጭ አላደረጉም።

፭ እንግዲህ የላማናውያን ራስ ተላጭቶ ነበር፣ እናም ከታጠቁት ቆዳና ደግሞ ከታጠቁት የጦር መሳሪያና፣ ጦርና፣ ቀስትና፣ ድንጋይና፣ ወንጭፍና ሌሎች ተመሳሳይ ነገሮች በስተቀር እርቃናቸውን ነበሩ።

፮ እናም አባቶቻቸው በኔፊ፣ በያዕቆብ፣ በዮሴፍ፣ እናም በሳም ፍፁምና ቅዱስ በሆኑት ወንድሞቻቸው ላይ በመተላለፋቸውና፣ በማመፃቸው ምክንያት በእርግማን በተደረገባቸው ምልክት መሰረት የላማናውያን ቆዳ ጥቁር ነበር።

፯ እናም ወንድሞቻቸው ሊያጠፋኝቸው ፈለጉ፤ ስለሆነም እነርሱ የተረገሙ ሆኑ፤ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በእነርሱ ላይ፣ አዎን፣ በላማንና በልሙኤል፣ ደግሞም በእስማኤል ልጆችና፣ በእስማኤላውያን ሴቶች ላይ ምልክትን አደረገባቸው።

፰ እናም ይህ የተደረገው ዘርቻቸው ከወንድሞቻቸው ዘርቻ ጋር እንዲለዩ፣ ጥፋታቸውን ከሚያረጋግጠው ከተሳሳተው ባህል ጋር ራሳቸው እንዲይቀላቅሉና እንዲያምኑ ጌታ እግዚአብሔርም ይጠብቃቸው ዘንድ ነው።

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘሩን ከላማናውያን ጋር የቀላቀለ ማንኛውም በዘሩ ላይ ተመሳሳይ እርግማንን ያመጣል።

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

፲ ስለዚህ በላማናውያን መመራት የፈለገ ማንኛውም በሰሙ ይጠራል፣ እናም በላዩ ላይም ምልክት ይደረግበታል።

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በላማናውያን ባህል የማያምን ነገር ግን፣ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር የመጡትን ታሪኮች፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዝ ባመኑትና እነርሱን በሚጠበቁት፣ ደግሞ ትክክል በሆኑት፣ የአባቶቻቸውን ባህል የሚያምኑ ማንኛቸውም ከዚህ ጊዜ በኋላ ኔፋውያን ወይንም የኔፊ ህዝብ ተብለው ተጠርተዋል—

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

፲፪ እናም እውነት የሆነውን የህዝባቸውን፣ እናም ደግሞ የላማናውያንን ሰዎች ታሪክ ያስቀመጡት እነርሱ ናቸው።

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

፲፫ አሁን ወደ አምሊኪውያን እንደገና እንመለሳለን፣ በእነርሱም ላይ ደግሞ ምልክት ተደርጎባቸዋልና፤ አዎን፣ በራሳቸውም ላይ ምልክት፣ አዎን፣ በግንባራቸው ላይ ቀይ ምልክት አድርገዋል።

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

፲፬ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ተፈፀሟል፤ ለኔፊ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸውና፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያንን ረግማክለሁ፣ እናም ለጎጠኦቻቸው ንሰሃ ካልገቡና፣ ምህረትን እንዳደርግላቸው ዘንድ ወደ እኔ ካልተመለሱ በስተቀር፣ ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከ ዘላለም እነርሱም ሆኑ ዘርቻቸው ከእንተ ከዘርቹህ ይለዩ ዘንድ ምልክት አደርግባቸዋል።

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

፲፭ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ዘሩን ከወንድሞችህ ጋር የደባለቀውን በላዩ ላይ ምልክትን አደርጋለሁ፣ እነርሱም ደግሞ የተረገሙ ይሆኑ ዘንድ።

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

፲፮ እናም በድጋሚ ከእንተና ከዘርቹህ ጋር የተጣላውን ምልክት አደርግበታለሁ።

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

፲፯ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ከእንተ የተለየም ከእንግዲህ የእንተ ዘር ተብሎ አይጠራም፣ እንተንና የእንተ ዘር ተብሎ የሚጠራውን ሁሉ ከአሁን ጀምሮ እስከ ዘላለም እባርካለሁ፤ እናም እነዚህም ለኔፊና ለዘርቹ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ነበሩ።

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

፲፰ አሁን አምሊኪውያን በግንባራቸው ላይ ምልክት ማድረግ ሲጀምሩ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል እንደተፈፀመ እያውቁም ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ በግልፅ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ለአመፅ መጡ፤ ስለዚህ እርግማኑ በእነርሱ ላይ መሆኑ አስፈላጊ ነበር።

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

፲፱ እንግዲህ እርግማኑን በራሳቸው ላይ እንዳመጡት እንድትረዱ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም የተረገመ ሰውም እርግማኑን በራሱ ላይ ያመጣል።

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

፳ እሁንም እንዲህ ሆነ በላማናውያንና በአምሊኪውያን በዛራሄምላ ምድር ከተደረገው ውጊያ በኋላ ብዙ ቀንም ሳይቆይ፣ የመጀመሪያው ሠራዊት አምሊኪውያንን ባገኘበት ቦታ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ሌሎች የላማናውያን ሠራዊት መጡ።

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱን ከምድራቸው ለማሰለቀቅ ወታደሮች ተላኩ።

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

፳፪ እንግዲህ አልማ በቁሰሉ በመስቃየቱ በዚህ ጊዜ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት አልሄደም ነበር፤

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

፳፫ ነገር ግን ብዙ ወታደሮችን ላከባቸው፤ እናም ሄደው በርካታ ላማናውያኖችን ገደሉ፣ እናም የቀሩትን ከድንበራቸው ነድተው አስወጡአቸው።

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

፳፬ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ ለጊዜው በጠላቶቻቸው ስለማይቸገሩ በድጋሚ ወደ ምድራቸው ተመልሰው ስላምን መመስረት ጀመሩ።

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

፳፭ እሁን እነዚህ ሁሉ ነገሮች የሆኑት፣ እዎን፣ እነዚህ ሁሉ ጦርነቶችና ፀቦች የተጀመሩትና የተፈፀሙት በመሣፍንቱ በአምስተኛው ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ነበር።

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

፳፮ እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ደስታን፣ ወይም ዘለአለማዊ ስቃይን እንዲቀበሉ፣ እንደታዘዙለት መንፈስ እንደሰራቸው፣ መልካምም ይሁን መጥፎ ዋጋቸውን ያገኙ ዘንድ በአንድ ዓመት ውስጥ ሺህ እናም አስር ሺህ ነፍስ ወደ ዘለአለማዊ ዓለም ተላኩ።

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

፳፯ ማንኛውም ሰው በመታዘዝ በሰማው ደመወዙን ይቀበላል፣ እናም ይህ እንደ ትንቢቱ መንፈስ ቃል መሰረት ነው፤ ስለዚህ እንደ እውነቱ ይሁን። እናም የመሳፍንቱ የአምስተኛ ዓመት አገዛዝ እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

አልማ ፬

፩ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ስድስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ምንም ዓይነት ፀብና ጦርነት አልነበረም።

፪ ነገር ግን ህዝቡ ተሰቃይቶ ነበር፣ አዎን፣ ወንድሞቻቸው ስለሞቱባቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ ከብቶቻቸውና መንጋዎቻቸውን በማጣታቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ የመስኮቻቸው እህሎች በእግር በመረገጡና በላማናውያን ስለጠፋባቸው እጅግ ተሰቃዩ።

፫ እናም ሰቃያቸው ታላቅ ሆኖ ሁሉም ነፍስ የሚያዝኑበት ምክንያት ነበራቸው፣ እናም ይህ የእግዚአብሔርን ፍርድ በኃጢአታቸውና በእርኩስታቸው የተነሳ በላያቸው ላይ በእግዚአብሔር የተላከ ቁጣ እንደሆነ ያምኑ ነበር፤ ስለሆነም ሀላፊነታቸውን ለማስታወስ ነቅተው ነበር።

፬ እናም ቤተክርስቲያኗን ይበልጥ ሙሉ በማድረግ ማቋቋም ጀመሩ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ብዙዎች በሲዶም ወንዝ ተጠመቁ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ሆኑ፤ አዎን፣ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች ላይ ሊቀ ካህን በመሆን በአባቱ በአልማ በተሾመው በአልማ እጅ ተጠመቁ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ በሰባተኛው ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ወደ ሶስት ሺህ አምስት መቶ ነፍሳት በእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ራሳቸውን አባል ያደረጉና የተጠመቁ ነበሩ። እና እንደዚህም በኔፊ ህዝብ የነገሱበት ሰባተኛው የመሳፍንቱ የእገዛዝ ዘመን ተፈጸመ፤ እናም በጊዜውም ሁሉ ዘላቂ ሰላም ነበር።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ስምንተኛው ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች በእስደናቂው ሀብቶቻቸውና፣ በመልካሙ ሐሮቻቸውና፣ በተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታና፣ በብዙ መንጋዎቻቸውና፣ ወርቃቸውና፣ ብራቸውና፣ እናም በከበሩ ነገሮቻቸው ሁሉ መኩራት ጀመሩ፤ እናም በእነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በኩራት ተወጠሩ፣ ውድ ልብሶችን መልበስ ጀምረዋል።

፯ እንግዲህ ይህ ለአልማ፣ አዎን፣ እናም አልማ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ላይ መምህራንና ካህናት፣ እናም ሽማግሌዎች አድርጎ ለቀባቸው ሰዎች ታላቅ ሰቃይ መንስኤ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ብዙዎች በህዝባቸው መካከል ሲጀመር ስለተመለከቱት ኃጢአትም በምሬት አዘኑ።

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

፳፯ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች በኩራት ዐይን የተነሳሱና፣ ልባቸውን በሀብት፣ እና በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች ላይ ያሳረፉ፣ እንደኛው ሌላኛውን መውቀስ በመጀመራቸውና እንደ ፍቃዳቸውና ፍላጎታቸው ያላመኑትን ማሳደድ በመጀመራቸው በታላቅ ሀዘን አይተውታል እናም ተመልክተውታል።

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

፳፱ እናም በመሣፍንቱ ስምንተኛ የንግስ ዘመን በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች መካከል ታላቅ ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ አዎን፣ ምቀኝነትና ፀብ፣ እናም ተንኮልና፣ ሰደትና ኩራት፣ እንዲሁም ከእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ካልሆኑት የሚበልጥ ኩራት ነበር።

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

፲ እናም ስምንተኛው የመሣፍንት የንግስ ዘመን ተፈጸመ፤ እናም የቤተክርስቲያኗ ኃጢአት በቤተክርስቲያኗ አባል ላልሆኑት ታላቅ የመሰናከያ አለት ነበር፤ እናም ቤተክርስቲያኗ ከዕድገቷ መገታት ጀመረች።

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዘጠነኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ፣ አልማ የቤተክርስቲያኗን ኃጢአት ተመለከተ፣ እናም የቤተክርስቲያኗ አባላት ምሳሌም አማኝ ያልሆኑት ከአንዲ ክፋት ወደሌላኛው ሲመራቸው፣ በዚህም ህዝቡን ወደጥፋታቸው ሲያመጣቸው ተመለከተ።

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

፲፪ አዎን፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ታላቅ አድልዎን ተመለከተ፣ አንዳንዶች ሌሎችን በመጥላት፣ በተቸገሩና በተራቆቹ እንዲሁም በተራቡ፣ እናም በተጠሙትና፣ በታመሙትና በተሰቃዩት ላይ ጀርባቸውን በመስጠት ራሳቸውን በክፋት ከፍ አደረጉ።

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

፲፫ እንግዲህ ይህ በህዝቡ መካከል የለቅሶአቸው ታላቅ ምክንያት ነበር፣ ሌሎች እራሳቸውን ሲያዋርዱ፣ ከንብረቶቻቸው ለድሆችና ለተቸገሩት በማካፈል፣ የተራቡትን በመመገብ እርዳታ ማግኘት ለሚፈልጉ እርዳታን በማድረግ፣ እናም እንደትንቢቱ መንፈስ መምጣት ላለበት ክርስቶስ ሲሉም በሁሉም ዓይነት ስቃይ ተሰቃዩ፤

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

፲፬ ያንን ቀን በመጠባበቅ ኃጢአታቸውን መሰረያ እንዲህ አገኙ፤ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ፈቃድና ኃይል መሰረት ከሞት እስር በመላቀቅ በሙታን ትንሣኤ በታላቅ ደስታ ተሞልተው ነበር።

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

፲፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ትሁት የእግዚአብሔር ተከታዮችን ሰቃይ በመመልከቱ፣ እናም በተቀሩት ሰዎች ስደት የተነሳና፣ ክፋታቸውን ሁሉ በመመልከቱ እጅግ ማዘን ጀመረ፤ ይሁን እንጂ የጌታ መንፈስ አልተወደውም።

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

፲፪ እናም ከቤተክርስቲያና ሸማግሌዎች መካከል እንደ ብልህ ሰው መረጠ፣ እናም ለእርሱ በተሰጠው ህግ መሰረትና በህዝቡም ላይ እንደክፋታቸውና እንደ ወንጀላቸው ያሰፈፀም ዘንድ በህዝቡ ድምፅ መሠረት ሥልጣንን ሰጠው።

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

፲፫ እንግዲህ የዚህ ሰው ስም ኔፊያህ ነበር፣ እናም እርሱ ዋና ዳኛ በመሆን ተመድቦ ነበር፤ እናም በፍርድ ወንበር ህዝቡን እንዲዳኝና እንዲገዛ ተቀመጠ።

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

፲፬ እንግዲህ አልማ በቤተክርስቲያና ላይ ሊቀ ካህን እንዲሆን ስልጣን አልሰጠውም፤ ነገር ግን የሊቀ ካህንነቱን ሀላፊነት ለራሱ ያዘው፤ ይሁን እንጂ የፍርድን ወንበር ለኔፊያህ ሰጥቶታል።

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

፲፭ እናም ይህን ያደረገው በህዝቡ መካከል እራሱ ይጓዝ ወይም በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ይሰብክ ዘንድ፣ ስራቸውን እንዲያስታውሱ እነርሱን ለማነሳሳት እናም በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ኩራታቸውንና ተንኮላቸው፣ እናም በህዝቡ መካከል ያለውን ፀብ ኅትቶ ለማስወረድ ነበር፣ በእነርሱ ላይ ንጹሁን ምስክር በግድ ከመገፋፋት በስተቀር እነርሱን መልሶ የሚያገኝበት ሌላ መንገድ እንደሌለ ተመልክቶ ነበር።

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

፲፮ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በዘጠነኛው ዓመት የመሣፍንቱ አገዛዝ መጀመሪያ አልማ የፍርድን ወንበር ለኔፊያህ እንዲህ ሰጠው፣ እናም እራሱንም ሙሉ በሙሉ በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት ታላቅ ክህነት በራዕይና ትንቢት መንፈስ መሰረት በቃል ምስክርነት ላይ እራሱን ወሰነ።

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephiah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ሰርዓት መሰረት ሊቀ ካህኑ የነበረው እልማ ለህዝቡ በከተማቸውና በምድሪቱ ባሉት መንደሮች በሙሉ የተናገረው ቃል።

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

እልማ ፩

Alma 5

፩ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እልማ በመጀመሪያ በዛራሔምላ ምድር እናም ከዚያም በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ለህዝቡ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል መናገር ጀመረ።

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

፪ እናም በእርሱ እመዘጋገብ መሠረት በዛራሔምላ ከተማ ለተመሰረተችው ቤተክርስቲያን ሰዎች የተናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው።

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

፫ እኔ እልማ በእባቱ በእልማ በእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ላይ ሊቀ ካህን በመሆን በመቀባቱ፤ እርሱም ከእግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ነገሮች ለመፈፀም ኃይልና ሰልጣን ስላለው፣ እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ እርሱም በኔፊ ምድር ወሰን ላይ ቤተክርስቲያንን ማቋቋም ጀመረ፤ እዎን፣ የሞርሞን ምድር ተብላ በምትጠራው ምድር ላይ፤ እዎን፣ እናም በሞርሞን ውሃ ወንድሞቹን አጠመቃቸው።

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

፬ እናም እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ እነርሱ ከንጉስ ኖህ ሰዎች እጅ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ምህረት ድነው ነበር።

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ከዚያ በኋላ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ በላማናውያን እጅ ወደ ባርነት ገብተው ነበር፤ እዎን፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ በምርኮ ነበሩ፣ እናም በድጋሚ ጌታ በቃሉ ኃይል ከባርነት አውጥቷቸዋል፤ እኛም ወደዚህ ምድር ተወሰደን ነበር፣ እናም ደግሞ በዚህ ምድር ላይ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ማቋቋም ጀመርን።

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

፮ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ከዚህ ቤተክርስቲያን የሆናችሁ የአባቶቻችሁን በምርኮ መቆየት በሚገባ ታስታውሳላችሁን? እዎን፣ እናም ለእነርሱ ያለውን ምህረትና ታላቅ ፅናት በሚገባ ታስታውሳላችሁን? እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ የእነርሱን ነፍስ ከሲኦል እንዳዳኑ በሚገባ ታስታውሳላችሁን?

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

፳ እነሆ፣ እርሱ ልባቸውን ለውጧል፣ አዎን፣ ከጥልቁ እንቅልፋቸው ቀስቅሶአቸዋል፣ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔር ነቅተዋል። እነሆ፣ በጨለማው መካከል ነበሩ፣ ይሁን እንጂ ነፍሳቸው በዘለአለማዊው ቃል ብርሃን በርቷል፣ አዎን፣ በሞት እስራትና በሲኦል ሰንሰለት ተከበው ነበር፣ እናም ዘለአለማዊ ጥፋትም ይጠብቃቸው ነበር።

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

፳፩ እናም አሁን ወንድሞቼ እነርሱ ጠፍተው ነበርን? ብዬ አጠይቃችኋለሁ፣ እነሆ፣ አይደለም አልጠፋም እላችኋለሁ።

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

፳፪ እናም በድጋሚ አጠይቃለሁ፣ የሞት እስር ተሰብሯልን፣ እናም እነርሱን የከበበው የሲኦል ሰንሰለትስ ተፈትቷል? እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ተፈትቷልና፣ ነፍሳቸው ተሰፋፋች፣ እንዲሁም በቤዛነት ፍቅር ዘምረዋል። እናም ድንዋል እላችኋለሁ።

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

፳፫ እናም አሁን በምን ሁኔታ ነው የዳኑት? ብዬ አጠይቃችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ለመዳንሰ በምንድን ነው ተሰፋ ያደረጉት? ከሞት እስራት፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የሲኦል ሰንሰለት የሚፈቱበት መንስኤ ምንድን ነው?

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

፳፬ እነሆ፣ ልነግራችሁ እችላለሁ—አባቴ አልማ በአቢናዲ እንደበት የተነገሩትን አላመነምን? እናም እርሱስ ቅዱስ ነቢይ አልነበረምን? የእግዚአብሔርንስ ቃላት አልተናገረምን? እናም አባቴ አልማስ አላመናቸውምን?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

፳፭ እናም በእምነቴ መሰረት በልቡ ታላቅ ለውጥ ነበር። እነሆ ይህ ሁሉ እውነት ነው እላችኋለሁ።

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

፳፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ለእባቶቻችሁ ቃሉን ሰብኳል፣ ታላቅ ለውጥም በልባቸው ውስጥ ሆነ፤ እራሳቸውንም ትሁት አደረጉ፣ እምነታቸውንም በእውነተኛውና በህያው አምላክ ላይ አደረጉ። እናም እነሆ፣ እስከመጨረሻው የታመኑ ነበሩ፣ ስለዚህም ድንው ነበር።

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

፳፯ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ወንድሞቼ፣ በመንፈስ ከእግዚአብሔር የተወለዱችሁ ናችሁን? በፊታችሁስ ምስሉን ተቀብላችኋልን? በልባችሁስ ይህን ታላቅ ለውጥ ተለማምዳችኋልን? ብዬ አጠይቃችኋለሁ።

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

፳፰ እናንተን በፈጠረው ስለተደረገው ቤዛነት እምነትን ተለማምዳችኋልን? ወደፊትስ በእምነት አይን እየተመለከታችሁ፣ ይህ ሟቹ ሰውነት የማይሞት በመሆን እንደሚነሳ፣ እናም ይህ የሚበሰብሰው ባለመበሰበስ ተነስቶ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በሥጋ በተደረገው ስራዎች መሰረት ሊፈረድበት እንደሚቆም ትመለከታላችሁን?

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

፲፮ እኔ እላችኋለሁ፣ በዚያን ቀን የጌታ ድምፅ ለራሳችሁ፣ እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እነሆ ሥራችሁ በምድር ፊት የፀድቅ ሥራ ነው እንደሚላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

፲፯ ወይንስ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፤ ሰራችን በምድር ፊት ጻድቅ ሰራ ነው፣ ብላችሁ በዚያን ቀን ለጌታ መዋሸት እንችላለን፣ እናም እኛን ያድነናል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁ?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

፲፰ ወይስ አለበለዚያ፣ ጥፋታችሁን ሁሉ በማስታወስ፣ አዎን፣ የክፋታችሁን ሁሉ ፍፁም ትውስታ፣ እግዚአብሔርን ትእዛዛት ላይ ያመጻችሁትን ትውስታ እያላችሁ፣ ነፍሳችሁ በጥፋትና በፀፀት ተሞልታ በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ ቤት ፊት መቅረባችሁን መገመት ይቻላችኋልን?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

፲፱ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ በዚያን ቀን በንፁህ ልባችሁና በንፁህ እጆችሁ እግዚአብሔርን ለመመልከት ትችላላችሁን? የእግዚአብሔር ምስል በእናንተ ምስል ተቀርጾ ቀና ብላችሁ መመልከት ትችላላችሁን? እላችኋለሁ።

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

፳፬ በዲያብሎስ ተገዢ ለመሆን ራሳችሁን አሳልፋችሁ በምትሰጡበት ጊዜ ለመዳን ለማሰብ ትችላላችሁን? እላችኋለሁ።

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

፳፭ በዚያን ቀን መዳን እንደማትችሉ ታውቃላችሁ እላችኋለሁ፤ ማንም ሰው ልብሱ ነጭ ሆኖ ካልታጠበ በቀር መዳን አይችልምና፤ አዎን፣ በአባቶቻችን በተነገረለት፣ ህዝቡን ከኃጢአት ለማዳን በሚመጣው ደም ልብሱ ከሁሉም ኃጢአት እስከሚፀዳ ድረስ ንፁህ መሆን አለበት።

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

፳፪ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ እጠይቃችኋለሁ፣ ልብሳችሁ በደምና በማንኛውም ዓይነት ቆሻሻ ተበክሎ በእግዚአብሔር የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት የምትቆሙ ከሆነ ማንኛችሁም ምን ይሰማችኋል? እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች በእናንተ ላይ ምን ይመስክራሉ?

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

፳፫ እነሆ ነፍስ ገዳዮች፣ አዎን እናም ደግሞ በሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋት ጥፋተኛ እንደሆናችሁ አይመስክሩምን?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

፳፬ እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እንዲህ አይነቱ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ከአብርሃም ጋር፣ ከይሱህ ጋር፣ እናም ከያዕቆብ ጋር፣ እናም ደግሞ ልብሳቸው የነፃና እንከን የሌለው፣ ንፁህና ነጭ ከሆነው ከቅዱሳን ነቢያት ጋር ይቀመጣል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

፳፭ አይደለም እላችኋለሁ። ፈጣሪያችንን ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ሃሰተኛ ካላደረጋችሁት በስተቀር፣ ወይንም እርሱ ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ሃሰተኛ ነው ብላችሁ ካልገመታችሁ በስተቀር እንደዚህ ዓይነቱ በመንግስተ ሰማይ ቦታ ይኖረዋል ብላችሁ ለመገመት እትችሉም፤ ነገር ግን እነርሱ የዲያብሎስ መንግስት ልጆች ናቸውና ይጣላሉ።

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

፳፮ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ። የልብ መለወጥን የሚሰማችሁ ከሆነ፣ እናም የቤዛነት የፍቅር ዜማ ለመዘመር ከተሰማችሁ፣ አሁንም ሊሰማችሁ ይችላልን? በማለት እጠይቃችኋለሁ።

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

፳፯ ራሳችሁን ስለ እግዚአብሔር ፊት እንከን የለሽ በማድረግ ትራመዳላችሁን? በዚህ ጊዜ ለመሞት ብትጠሩ በራሳችሁ፣ እኔ በሚገባ ትሁት ነኝ? ልብሳችሁ ህዝቡን ከኃጢአቶቻቸው ለማዳን በሚመጣው በክርስቶስ ደም ጠርቷልን? እናም ነጥቷል ለማለት ትችላላችሁን?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

፳፰ እነሆ፣ ከኩራታችሁ ሰ ተገፍፋችኋልን? ካልሆናችሁ እግዚአብሔርን ለመገናኘት ዝግጁ አይደላችሁም እላችኋለሁ። እነሆ በፍጥነት መዘጋጀት አለባችሁ፤ መንግስተ ሰማይ ቀርባለችና፣ እናም እንደዚህ ዓይነቱ ዘለአለማዊ ህይወት አይኖረውም።

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

፳፱ እነሆ፣ እላለሁ፣ ከእናንተ መካከል ከምቀኝነት ያልተገፈፈ አንድ እንኳን አለን? እንደዚህ ዓይነቱ አልተዘጋጀም እላችኋለሁ፤ እናም ጊዜው ቀርቧልና በፍጥነት እንዲዘጋጁ እፈልገዋለሁ። እናም ጊዜው መቼ እንደሚመጣ አያውቅም፤ እንደዚህ ዓይነቱ እንከን የሌለው ሆኖ አልተገኘምና።

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

፴ እናም በድጋሚ እላችኋለሁ፣ በወንድሙ ላይ ከእናንተ መካከል የሚሳለቅ፣ ወይም ሰደትን የሚያበዛ አለን?

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

፴፩ ለእንደዚህ ዓይነቱ አልተዘጋጀምና ወዮለት፣ እናም ጊዜው ቀርቧልና ንስሀ መግባት አለበት፣ አለበለዚያም መዳን አይችልም!

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

፴፪ አዎን፣ እናንተ ክፋትን ለምትሰሩ ሁሉ ወዮላችሁ፣ ንስሀ ግቡ፣ ንስሀ ግቡ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ተናግሮታልና!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

፴፫ እነሆ፣ ለሰው ሁሉ ግብዣን ልኳል፣ የምህረት ክንድ ወደእነርሱ ተዘርግቷልና፣ እናም እንዲህ ይላል። ንስሀ ግቡ፣ እናም እኔ እቀበላችኋለሁ።

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

፴፬ አዎን፣ እንዲህም ይላል። ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እናም ከህይወት ዛፍም ፍሬ ትካፈላላችሁ፤ አዎን የህይወትን ዳቦና ውኃ በነፃ ትመገባላችሁ እናም ትጠጣላችሁ፤

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

፴፭ አዎን፣ ወደ እኔ ኑና፣ የፅድቅንም ስራ አቅርቡ፣ እናም አትቆረጡም በእሳት ውስጥም አትጣሉም—

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

፴፮ እነሆ፣ መልካም ያልሆነውን ፍሬ የሚያመጣ፣ ወይም የፅድቅን ስራ የማይሰራ እንዲያዝንና እንዲያለቅስ የሚሆንበት ጊዜው ቀርቧልና።

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

፴፯ እናንተ የተንኮል ስራተኞች ሆይ፤ በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች በኩራት የተሞላችሁ፤ የፅድቅን መንገድ ማወቃችሁን የምትናገሩ ነገር ግን እረኛ እንደሌለው በግ በተሳሳተው የምትጓዙ፤ ሆኖም እረኛው ጠርቷችኋል እናም አሁንም እናንተን ይጠራል፣ ነገር ግን እናንተ ድምፁን አትሰሙም!

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

፴፮ እነሆ፣ መልካሙ እረኛ እናንተን ይጠራል እላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በክርስቶስ ስም በሆነው በሰሙ ይጠራችኋል፤ እናም በምትጠሩበት ስም የመልካሙን እረኛ ድምፅ የማትሰሙ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ እናንተ የመልካሙ እረኛ በግ አይደላችሁም!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

፴፱ እናም አሁን የመልካሙ እረኛ በግ ካልሆናችሁ፣ ከየትኛው በረት ናችሁ? እነሆ፣ ዲያብሎስ እረኛችሁ ነው እላችኋለሁ፣ እናም እናንተም ከእርሱ በረት ናችሁ፣ እናም አሁን ይህንን ማን ሊክደው ይቻላል? እነሆ ይህን የካደው ሽታም እንዲሁም የዲያብሎስ ልጅ ነው እላችኋለሁ።

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

፵ ማንኛውም መልካም የሆነ የሚመጣው ከእግዚአብሔር ነው፣ ማንኛውም ክፉ የሆነው የሚመጣው ከዲያብሎስ ነው እላችኋለሁ።

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

፵፩ ስለዚህ፣ መልካም ስራዎችን የሚያመጣ የመልካሙን እረኛ ድምፅ ይሰማል፣ እና እርሱንም ይከተላል፤ ነገር ግን ክፉ ስራዎች የሚያመጣ፣ ያም የዲያብሎስ ልጅ ይሆናል፣ ድምፁን ይሰማል፣ እናም ይከተላልና።

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

፵፪ እናም ይህን ያደረገ ደምዎዙን ከእርሱ መቀበል ይገባል፤ ስለዚህ፣ የፅድቅ ስራዎችን በተመለከተ፣ ለመልካም ስራዎች ሁሉ ሙት በመሆን፣ ለደምዙ የሚያገኘው ሞት ነው።

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

፵፫ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እንድታደምጡኝ እፈልጋለሁ፣ በነፍሴ ሀይል እናገራለሁና፤ እነሆ ልትሳሳቱ በማትችሉበት ሁኔታ በግልፅ ተናግራችኋለሁና፣ ወይም በእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት መሰረት ተናግራችኋለሁ።

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

፵፬ እኔም ክርስቶስ ኢየሱስ በሆነው፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት መሰረት በዚህ ሁኔታ እንድናገር ተጠርቻለሁ፤ አዎን፣ የሚመጡትን ነገሮች በሚመለከት በአባቶቻችን የተነገሩትን ነገሮች ለዚህ ህዝብ ቆሜ እንድመሰክር ታዝዜአለሁ።

፵፭ እናም ይህ ብቻም አይደለም። እነዚህን ነገሮች እኔ ራሴ እንደማውቃቸው አትገምቱምን? እነሆ፣ እነዚህ የምናገራቸው ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን እንደማውቅ እመሰክራለሁ። እናም እርግጠኝነታቸውን እንዴት እንዳወቅሁ ትገምታላችሁ?

፵፮ እነሆ፣ እነዚህ እንዲታወቁኝ የሆኑት በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱስ መንፈስ ነው። እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለራሴ ለማወቅ ለብዙ ቀናት ያሜአለሁ እንዲሁም ፀልያለሁ። እናም አሁን እውነት መሆናቸውን ለራሴ አውቄአለሁ፤ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በቅዱስ መንፈሱ እንዲገለፅልኝ አድርጓልና፤ እናም ይህ በእኔ ውስጥ ያለው የራዕይ መንፈስ ነው።

፵፯ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ መገለጫ በሆነው፣ በእኔ ውስጥ ባለው የትንቢት መንፈስም መሠረትም፣ በአባቶቻችን የተነገሩት ቃላት እውነት መሆናቸው እንደተገለፀልኝ እነግራችኋለሁ።

፵፰ የሚመጣውን በተመለከተ ማንኛውም ለእናንተ የምናገረው እውነት እንደሆነ እኔ ራሴ እንደማውቀው እነግራችኋለሁ፤ እናም አላችኋለሁ፣ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ፣ አዎን፣ በጸጋና፣ በመሀሪነት፣ እንዲሁም በእውነት የተሞላው የአብ እንድያ ልጅ፣ እንደሚመጣ አውቃለሁ። እናም እነሆ የዓለምን ኃጢያት፣ አዎን፣ በፅናት በሰሙ የሚያሞኑ ሰዎች ሁሉ ኃጢያትን ለመውሰድ የሚመጣው እርሱ ነው።

፵፱ እናም አሁን አላችኋለሁ ይህ እኔ፣ አዎን፣ ለውድ ወንድሞቼ እንድሰብክ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ለሚኖሩ ሁሉ፣ አዎን፣ ለወጣትና ለሽማግሌዎች፣ ለታሰሩትና ነፃ ለሆኑት ሁሉ እንድሰብክ፤ አዎን፣ አላችኋለሁ፣ ለሽማግሌዎችና፣ ደግሞ መካከለኛ ዕድሜ ላላቸው፣ እናም በማደግ ላይ ላለው ትውልድ፤ አዎን፣ ንሰህ እንዲገቡና ዳግም እንዲወለዱ ወደ እነርሱ እንድጮህ የተጠራሁበት ሥርዓት ነው።

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

፶ አዎን፣ መንፈስ እንዲህ ይላል፡ በአለም ዳርቻዎች ያላችሁ ሁሉ ንስህ ግቡ፣ መንግስተ ሰማያት ቀርባለችና፣ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በኃይሉ፣ በግርማ ሞገሱ፣ በእገዛዙና በሰልጣኑ፣ በክብሩ ይመጣል። አዎን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ መንፈስ እንዲህ ይላል እላችኋለሁ፤ የምድር ንጉስ ሁሉ ክብር ተመልከቱ፤ እናም ደግሞ የሰማይ ንጉስ በቅርቡ በሰው ልጆች ሁሉ መካከል ያበራል።

፶፩ እናም ደግሞ መንፈስ እንዲህ አለኝ፣ አዎን፣ በከፍተኛ ድምፅ ወደ እኔ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፤ ሂድና ለህዝቡ እንዲህ በል—ንስህ ግቡ፣ ንስህ ካልገባችሁ በስተቀር በምንም ዓይነት መንገድ መንግስተ ሰማያትን አትወርሱም።

፶፪ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ መንፈስ እንዲህ ይላል፡ እነሆ፣ ምሳር በዛፋ ስር ተቀምጧል፤ እንግዲህ መልካም ፍሬ የማይሰጥ ዛፍ ሁሉ ይቆረጣል ወደ እሳትም፣ አዎን፣ ወደማይቆም እሳት፣ ወደማይጠፋ እሳት ይጣላል። እነሆ፣ እናም አስታውሱ፣ ይህን ቅዱሱ ተናግሮታል።

፶፫ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ይህንን አባባል ልትቃወሙት ትችላላችሁን፤ አዎን፣ እነዚህ ነገሮችን ችላ ልትለክቸው ትችላላችሁን፣ እናም ቅዱሱንስ በእግራችሁ ስር ትረግጡታላችሁን፤ አዎን፣ በልባችሁ ኩራትስ ለመወጠር ይቻላችኋልን፤ አዎን፣ ውድ የሆኑ ልብሶችን በመልበስ እናም ልባችሁን በከንቱ ምድራዊ ነገሮች እንዲሁም በሀብት ላይ ማድረጋችሁን አሁንም ትቀጥላላችሁን?

፶፬ አዎን፣ እናንተን ከሌሎች የተሻላችሁ አድርጋችሁ መገመትን ትቀጥላላችሁን? አዎን፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት የሚራመዱትንና እራሳቸውን ትሁት ያደረጉትን ወንድሞቻችሁን ማሳደድ ትቀጥላላችሁ? በዚህም ወደዚህች ቤተክርስቲያን መጥተዋል፣ በቅዱሱ መንፈስ ተቀድሰዋል፣ እናም ለንስህ የሚያበቁአቸውን ስራዎቻቸውንም አምጥተዋል—

፶፭ አዎን በድሆች ላይና በተቸገሩ ላይ ትከሻችሁን ማዘር፣ እንዲሁም ያሉአችሁን ሳታካፍሉ ትቀጥላላችሁን?

፶፮ እናም በመጨረሻ፣ በክፋታችሁ የምትቀጥሉ ሁሉ፣ በፍጥነት ንስህ ካልገቡ በስተቀር ተቆርጠው ወደ እሳቱ የሚጣሉት እነርሱ እንደሆኑ እነግራችኋለሁ።

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

፶፯ እናም አሁን የመልካሙን እረኛ ድምፅ ለመከተል የምትፈልጉ ሁሉ፣ ከክፋዎች ውጤና ተለዩ፣ እንዲሁም እርኩስ ነገሮቻቸውን አትንኩ እላችኋለሁ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ የኃጢአተኞች ስም ከህዝቤም ጋር አይቀላቀልም፣ የተባለው የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ይፈጸም ዘንድ ስማቸው ይሰረዛል፣ የክፋዎች ስም ከፃድቃኖች ጋርም አይቆጠርም።

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

፶፰ የፃድቃኖች ስም በህይወት መፅሐፍ ይፃፋል፤ እናም ለእነርሱ በቀኝ እጄ ያለውን ውርስ እስጣቸዋለሁ። እናም አሁን ወንድሞቼ ከዚህ ተቃራኒ የሆነን ምን ትናገራላችሁ? እላችኋለሁ፣ ከዚህ ተቃራኒ የምትሉ ከሆነ፣ ይህ ምንም አይደለም፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ይፈጸማልና።

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

፶፱ በእናንተ መካከል የትኛው እረኛ ነው ብዙ በጎች እያሉት፣ ተኩላዎችሰ ገብተው መንጋዎቹን እንዳይበሉበት የማይጠብቃቸው? እናም እነሆ፣ ተኩላው ሲገባበት እርሱ እያባርርምን? አዎን፣ እናም የሚቻለው ከሆነ እርሱንም ያጠፋዋል።

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

፷ እናም አሁን መልካሙ እረኛ ይጠራችኋል እላችኋለሁ፤ እናም ቃሉን የምታዳምጡ ከሆነ ወደ በረቱ ያመጣችኋል፤ እናንተም የእርሱ በጎች ናችሁ፤ እንዳትጠፉ ደም የተጠማውን ተኩላ በመካከላችሁ እንዲገባ እንዳትፈቅዱም ያዛችኋል።

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

፷፩ እናም አሁን እኔ፣ አልማ፣ እኔ የተናገርኳችሁንም ቃላት እንድታደርጉ፣ እኔን ባዘዘኝ በእርሱ ቋንቋ አዛችኋለሁ።

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

፷፪ ከቤተክርስቲያኗ ለሆናችሁ በትዕዛዝ መልክ እናገራለሁ፤ እናም ከቤተክርስቲያኗ ላልሆኑት በግብዣ መልክ እንዲህ በማለት እናገራለሁ፣ የህይወት ዛፍ ፍሬን ደግሞ ትካፈሉ ዘንድ ኑ እናም ለንሱህ ተጠመቁ።

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

አልማ ፮

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ በዛራሔምላ ከተማ ለተቋቋመው ቤተክርስቲያን ሰዎች ንግግሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ስርዓት መሰረት ቤተክርስቲያኗን እንዲመሩና እንዲቆጣጠሩ እጁን በመጫን ካህናትን እና ሽማግሌዎችን ሾመ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከቤተክርስቲያኗ ያልሆኑ ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሐ የገቡት ወደ ንስሐ ተጠምቀው እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ ተቀባይነትን አግኝተው ነበር።

፫ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ ሆነ ከቤተክርስቲያኗ የሆኑ ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሐ ያልገቡ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት አራሳቸውን ዝቅ የማያደርጉ ሁሉ—ማለትም በልባቸው ኩራት የተወጠሩ—እንደነዚህ ዓይነቶቹ ተቀባይነትን አገኙም ነበር፣ እናም ሰማቸው ተስርዘዋል፣ ሰማቸው ከፃድቃኖች ጋር አልተቆጠረም ነበር።

፬ እና እንደዚህም በዛራሔምላ ከተማ የቤተክርስቲያኗን ስርዓት መመሰረት ጀመሩ።

፭ አሁን የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ለሁሉም በነፃ እንደተሰጠ እንድትረዱ እፈልጋለሁ፣ ማንም እራሱን በአንድ ላይ በመሰብሰብ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለመሰማት ልዩ መብቱን የሚከለክለው የለም።

፮ ይሁን እንጂ የእግዚአብሔር ልጆች አራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሁልጊዜ እንዲሰበሰቡ፣ እናም በአንድ ላይ በመሆን እግዚአብሔርን ለማያውቁት ነፍሳት ደህንነት እንዲያውምና እንዲጸልዩ ታዘዋል።

፯ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ አነዚህን ህጎች ባዘጋጀ ጊዜ ከእነርሱ፣ አዎን፣ በዛራሔምላ ከተማ ከሚገኘው ቤተክርስቲያን፣ ተለይቶ ሄደ፣ እናም በጌዴዎን ሸለቆ፣ ከሲዶም ወንዝ በሰተምስራቅ በኩል ጌዴዎን ተብላ ወደ ምትጠራውና በዚያም ወደታነፀች ከተማ፣ ጌዴዎን ተብሎ ወደ ሚጠራው ሸለቆ ሄደ፣ ስፍራውም ኔሆር በተባለው ሰው እጅ በተገደለው ሰም የሚጠራ ነበር።

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

እናም አልማ ሄደና፣ በአባቶቹ በተነገረው በቃሉ እውነታ ራዕይ መሰረትና፣ በውስጡ ባለው የትንቢት መንፈስ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በሆነው፣ ህዝቡን ከኃጢአት ለማዳን በሚመጣውና በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ምስክርነት መሰረትና፣ በተጠራበትም ቅዱሱ ስርዓት፣ በጌዳዎን ሸለቆ ለተቋቋመችው ቤተክርስቲያን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ማወጅ ጀመረ። እናም እንዲሁ ተፅፏል። አሜን።

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

እንደራሱ መዝገብ መሰረት፣ በጌዳዎን ከተማ አልማ ለህዝቡ የተናገረው ቃላት።

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.

አልማ ፯

Alma 7

፩ እነሆ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ወደ እናንተ እንድመጣ እስከተፈቀደልኝ ድረስ፣ ስለሆነም በራሴ አባባል ለመናገር እሞክራለሁ፤ አዎን፣ በራሴ እንደበት፣ በራሴ ቃል ለእናንተ ለመናገር የመጀመሪያዬ በመሆኑ፣ በፍርድ ወንበር ብቻ እንድሆን በመደረጌ፣ ብዙ ስራ ስላለብኝ ወደ እናንተ ለመምጣት አልቻልኩም ነበር።

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

፪ እናም አሁን የፍርድ ወንበር በእኔ ቦታ ሌላው እንዲገዛ ባይሰጥ ኖሮ፣ አሁን በዚህ ጊዜ ለመምጣት አይቻለኝም ነበር፤ እናም ጌታ በታላቅ ምህረቱ ወደ እናንተ እንድመጣ ፈቅዷል።

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

፫ እናም እነሆ፣ እናንተ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ራሳችሁን ዝቅ አድርጋችሁ እንዳገኛችሁ፣ ፀጋውን ያለማቋረጥ ለምናችኋል፣ እናም በፊቱ አንከን የሌላችሁ ሆናችሁ እንዳገኛችሁ፣ ወንድሞቻችን በዛራሔምላ እንደነበሩበት በመጥፎ ሁኔታ ሳትሆኑ እንዳገኛችሁ በታላቅ ተስፋና ፍላጎት መጥቻለሁ።

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

፬ ነገር ግን እንድረዳ ያደረገኝ የእግዚአብሔር ስም የተባረከ ይሁን፤ አዎን፣ እነርሱ በድጋሚ በፅድቁ ሲቋቋሙ የማወቅ እጅግ ታላቅ ደስታን ሰጥቶኛል።

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

፭ እናም ውስጤ ባለው የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ መሰረት፣ በእናንተም ላይ ደግሞ ደስታ ይኖረኛል ብዬ አምናለሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ እኔ በእናንተ ላይ ያለኝ ደስታ በዛራሔምላ በነበሩ ወንድሞች በነበረኝ ስቃይና ሀዘን ምክንያት እንዲመጣ አልፈልግም፤ እነሆ፣ በእነርሱ ላይ የነበረኝ ደስታዬ የመጣው በብዙ መከራና ስቃይ ከተገፋሁ በኋላ ነበር።

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እናንተ ግን እንደ ወንድሞቻችሁ ባለማመን ሁኔታ ውስጥ እንዳልሆናችሁ አምናለሁ፤ በልባችሁ ኩራት እንደማትወጠሩም አምናለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ልባችሁን በሀብት ላይ እናም በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች ላይ እንደማታደርጉት አምናለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ጣዖትን እንደማታመልኩ፣ ነገር ግን እውነተኛውን ሕያው እግዚአብሔርን እንደምታመልኩ፣ እናም የሚመጣውን የኃጢአታችሁ ስርየትን ዘለአለማዊ በሆነው እምነት እንደምትጠብቁ አምናለሁ።

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

፮ እነሆም፣ ብዙ ነገር ይመጣል እላችኋለሁ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ከሁሉም የበለጠ አንድ ነገር አለ—እነሆም አዳኙ የሚመጣበትና ከህዝቡ ጋር የሚኖርበት ጊዜ ሩቅ አይደለም።

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

፯ እነሆ በሰጋ ሰውነቱ በሚኖርበት ጊዜ በመካከላችን ይገኛል አልልም፤ እነሆም መንፈስም ሁኔታው ይህ ነው አላለኝም። አሁን ይህንን በተመለከተ አላውቅም፤ ነገር ግን እስከዚህ ድረስ አውቃለሁ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ቃሉ መሰረት ሁሉንም ነገሮች ለማድረግ ሀይል እንዳለው አውቃለሁ።

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ መንፈስ እንዲህ በማለት ይህን ያህል ተናግሮኛል፤ ወደ ህዝቡ እንዲህ ስትል ጩህ—ንስሐ ግቡ፣ እናም የጌታን መንገድ አዘጋጁና፣ ቀጭን በሆኑት ጎዳናዎች ተራመዱ፤ እነሆም፣ መንግስተ ሰማያት ቀርባለችና እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በምድር ፊት ይመጣል።

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

፲ እናም እነሆ፣ እርሱም ከማርያም በቅድመ አባቶቻችን ምድር በሆነችው በኢየሩሳሌም ይወለዳል፣ እርሷም ድንግል፣ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል በመሸፈን፣ የተከበረች እንዲሁም የተመረጠች ዕቃ ሆና በመጠነ ግድ ልጅ፣ አዎን እንዲሁም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ፣ ትወልዳለች።

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

፲፩ እናም በመከራና በሁሉም ዓይነት ህመምና ፈተናዎች በመስቃየት ይሄዳል፤ የህዝቡን ህመምና በሽታ በራሱ ላይ ይወስዳል የሚለውን ቃል ይፈጸም ዘንድ ይህ ይሆናል።

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

፲፪ እናም ህዝቡን ያሰረውን የሞት እስር ይፈታ ዘንድ ሞትን በራሱ ላይ ይወስዳል፣ እናም በሰጋ አንጀቱ በምህረት ይሞላ ዘንድ፣ በሰጋ ህዝቡን ከድካሙ እንዴት እንደሚረዳ ያውቅ ዘንድ ድካማቸውን በራሱ ላይ ያደርጋል።

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

፲፫ እንግዲህ መንፈስ ሁሉን ነገር ያውቃል፤ ይሁን እንጂ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ሰዎችን በማዳን ኃይሉ መተላለፋቸውን ይሰርዳላቸው ዘንድ የህዝቡንም ኃጢአት በራሱ ላይ ያደርግ ዘንድ በሰጋው ይሰቃያል፤ እናም አሁን እነሆ በእኔ ያለው ምስክርነት ይህ ነው።

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

፲፩ እንግዲህ እናንተ ንስሐ መግባትና፣ በድጋሚ መወለድ አለባችሁ እላለሁ፤ መንፈስም በድጋሚ ካልተወለዳችሁ መንግስተ ሰማያትን መውረስ አትችሉም ይላልና፤ ስለዚህ ከኃጢአታችሁ ትነፁ ዘንድ የዓለምን ኃጢአት በወስደው፣ ለማዳንና መጥፎ ከሆኑት ሁሉ ለማፅዳት ኃያል በሆነው በእግዚአብሔር በግ እምነት ይኖራችሁ ዘንድ ኑ እናም ለንስህ ተጠመቁ።

፲፪ አዎን ኑና አትፍሩ፣ እናም በቀላሉ የሚጎዳችሁን ማንኛውንም ኃጢአት ወደ ጥፋት እንድታመሩ የሚያደርጋችሁን አስወግዱ እላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ኑና ወደ ፊት ቀጥሎ እናም ለኃጢአታችሁ ንስህ ለመግባትና፣ ትእዛዛቱን ለመጠበቅ ፈቃደኛ እንደሆናችሁ፣ እናም በዚህ ቀንም ይህን ወደ ጥምቀት ውኃ በመሄድ ለእግዚአብሔር በምስክር አሳዩት።

፲፫ እናም ማንም ይህንን ቢያደርግና፣ ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ቢጠብቅ ይህንኑ እንዳልኩት ያስታውሳል፤ አዎን፣ በውስጤ ያለው ቅዱስ መንፈስ በመሰከረልኝ መሰረት ዘለአለማዊ ህይወት እንደሚኖረው የተናገርኩትን ያስታውሳል።

፲፬ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ታምናላችሁን? እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን እነርሱን ማመናችሁን አውቃለሁ፤ እናም እነርሱን ማመናችሁን የማውቀው በውስጤ ባለው መንፈስ መገለጥ ነው። እናም አሁን ይህን በተመለከተ፣ አዎን፣ እኔ የተናገርኳቸውንም በተመለከተ እምነታችሁ ጠንካራ በመሆኑ ደስታዬ ታላቅ ነው።

፲፭ ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ እንደተናገርኳችሁ፣ እንደ ወንድሞቻችሁ በተደናበረ ሁኔታ እንዳትሆኑ በጣም ፈልጌ ነበር፣ እንዲሁም የእኔም ፍላጎት አጥጋቢ ሆኖ አግኝቼዋለሁ።

፲፮ እናንተ በፅድቅ ጎዳና እንደሆናችሁ ተገንዝቤአለሁና፤ ወደ እግዚአብሔርም መንግስት በሆነው ጎዳና ላይ እንደሆናችሁ እገንዘባለሁ፤ አዎን፣ የእርሱንም ጎዳና የቀና እንደምታደርጉት እገንዘባለሁ።

፳ በጠማማው መንገድ እንደማይራመድ፣ ከተናገረው ፈቀቅ እንደማይል፣ ከቀኝ ወደ ግራም፣ ወይም ከትክክለኛው ወደተሳሳተው በመዞር ጥላ እንደማይኖረውም፣ ስለዚህ ጎዳናውም አንድ ዘለአለማዊ ዙሪያ እንደሆነ በቃሉ ምስክርነት ለእናንተ የታወቀ እንደሆነ ተገንዝቤአለሁ።

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

፳፩ እናም እርሱ ቅዱስ ባልሆነ መቅደስ ውስጥ አይኖርም፤ የረከሰም ይሁን ንፁህ ያልሆነ ማንኛውም በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ተቀባይነት የለውም፤ ስለዚህ ጊዜው ይመጣል፣ አዎን፣ እና ይህም በመጨረሻ ቀን ይሆናል፣ የረከሰው ረክሶ ይቀራል እላችኋለሁ።

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

፳፪ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ላላችሁ ሀላፊነት ስሜታችሁን እቀስቅሰው ዘንድ፣ በእርሱ ፊት እንከን የሌላችሁ በመሆን ትራመዱ ዘንድ፣ ተቀባይነትንም ባገኛችሁበት በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት ትራመዱ ዘንድ፣ እነዚህን ነግሪአችኋለሁ።

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

፳፫ እናም አሁን ትሁትና፣ ጨዋና ታዛዥ፣ ሁሉን የምትቀበሉ፣ ታላቅ ፅናት የበዛባችሁና ታጋሽ የሆናችሁ፤ በሁሉም ነገር ራሳችሁን የምትገዙ፣ በሁሉም ጊዜ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ ለመጠበቅ ትጉህ፤ የፈለጋችሁትን ነገር በመንፈስም ሆነ በሰጋ የምትጠይቁ፣ ለተቀበላችሁትም ማንኛውም ነገር ሁልጊዜ ለእግዚአብሔር ምስጋና የምትሰጡ እንድትሆኑ እፈልጋለሁ።

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

፳፬ እናም እምነት፣ ተስፋና ልግሰና እንደሚኖራችሁ እርግጠኛ ሁኑ፣ እና ከዚያም ሁልጊዜ መልካም ስራን የምትሰሩ ትሆናላችሁ።

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

፳፭ እናም ጌታ ይባርካችሁ፣ ለዘላለም በመንግሥተ ሰማያት እንድትቀመጡም የእነርሱ ልብስ እንከን እንደሌለው የእናንተም እንከን ሳይኖርበት፣ በመጨረሻ ከአብርሃም፣ ከይስሀቅና፣ ከያዕቆብ፣ እናም ዓለም ስትፈጠር ጀምሮ ከነበሩት ቅዱሳን ነቢያት ጋር ለመቀመጥ እንድትመጡ ዘንድ፣ ልብሳችሁን እንከን የለሽ አድርጉት።

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

፳፮ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት የተናገርኳችሁ በውስጤ በሚመስክረው መንፈስ መሰረት ነው፤ እናም ለቃሌ ታላቅ ትጋት በመስጠታችሁና በማዳመጣችሁ ነፍሴም እጅግ ሀሴት ታደርጋለች።

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

፳፯ እናም አሁን፣ የእግዚአብሔር ሰላም እንደ እምነታችሁና መልካም ስራችሁ ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከዘላለም በቤታችሁና በምድራችሁና፣ በከብቶቻችሁና በመንጋዎቻችሁ ላይ እንዲሁም ባላችሁ ንብረቶች፣ በሴቶቻችሁ፣ በልጆቻችሁና በራሳችሁ ላይ ይሁን። እናም ይህንን ተናግራለሁ። አሜን።

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

አልማ ፰

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ሊፃፉ ያልቻሉትን ብዙ ነገሮች ለጌዴዎን ህዝብ ካስተማረ፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗን ስርዓት በዛራሔምላ ምድር እንዳደረገው ካቋቋመ በኋላ፣ ከጌዴዎን ምድር ተመለሰ፤ አዎን፣ ካከናወናቸው ስራዎች ራሱን ለማሳረፍ በዛራሔምላ ወዳለው ቤቱ ተመለሰ።

፪ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ዘጠነኛ የመሳፍንቱ ንግስና በዚሁ ተፈጸመ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ የአስረኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን መጀመሪያ ላይ አልማ ከዚያ ቦታ ሄደና፣ ጉዞውን በሲዶም ወንዝ በስተምዕራብ፣ በምድረበዳው ዳርቻ በምዕራብ በኩል ወደ ሜሌቅ አደረገ።

፬ እናም እርሱ በተሾመበት በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት መሰረት በሜሌቅ ምድር ህዝቡን ማስተማር ጀመረ፤ እናም በሜሌቅ ምድር ሁሉ ህዝቡን ማስተማር ጀመረ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ ከምድረበዳው በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ በኩል ያሉት ሁሉ ወደ እርሱ መጡ። እናም በምድሪቱ ያሉት ሁሉም ተጠምቀው ነበር፤

፮ በሜሌቅ ስራውን በጨረሰ ጊዜ ለቆ ሄደ፣ እናም በሜሌቅ በስተሰሜን በሚገኘው ምድር ለሶስት ቀናት ጉዞ አደረገ፤ እናም አሞኒህ ወደምትባል ከተማ መጣ።

፯ አሁን ምድራቸውንና ከተማቸውን፣ እናም መንደራቸውን፣ አዎን፣ ትናንሽ ከተሞቻቸውንም እንኳን ቢሆን ቦታውን መጀመሪያ በያዘው ሰው ስም መጥራት የኔፊ ህዝብ ልምድ ነበር፤ እናም ይህ ልምድ በአሞኒህ ምድርም የሆነ ነበር።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ወደ አሞኒህ ከተማ በመጣ ጊዜ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለእነርሱ መሰበክ ጀመረ።

፱ አሁን ሰይጣን በአሞኒህ ከተማ ያሉትን ሰዎች ልብ በጥብቅ ይዞ ነበር፤ ስለሆነም የአልማን ቃል አያዳምጡም ነበር።

፲ ይሁን እንጂ አልማ በከተማ ባሉት ሰዎች ላይ እግዚአብሔር መንፈሱን ያፈሰ ዘንድ በኃያሉ ፀሎቱም ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር ታገለ፤ በንስሃም ያጠምቃቸው ዘንድ በመንፈስ ብዙ ሰራ።

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

፲፪ ይሁን እንጂ ልባቸውን አጠጥረው እንዲህ አሉት፡ እነሆ፣ አንተ አልማ መሆንህን እናውቃለን፤ እናም እንደባህልህ በብዙ ቦታዎች ባቋቋሞካቸው ቤተክርስቲያኖች ላይ ሊቀ ካህን መሆንህን እናውቃለን፤ እኛ ከአንተ ቤተክርስቲያን አይደለንም፣ እናም በእነዚህ ዓይነት የሞኞች ባህል እናምንም።

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

፲፫ እናም እሁን እኛ ከአንተ ቤተክርስቲያን ባለመሆናችን በእኛ ላይ ኃይል እንደሌለህ እናውቃለን፤ እናም የፍርድ ወንበሩንም ለኔጌያህ ሰጥተህል፣ ስለዚህ በእኛ ላይ ዋና ዳኛ አይደለህም።

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

፲፬ እንግዲህ ህዝቡ ይህንን በተናገረ ጊዜና ቃሉን ሁሉ በተቃወሙና፣ እርሱንም በሰደቡትና፣ ላዩ ላይ በተፋበትና፣ ከከተማቸው እንዲወጣ ባደረጉት ጊዜ፣ ከቦታው ሄደ፣ እናም እርን ተብላ ወደምትጠራ ከተማ ጉዞውን አደረገ።

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሀዘኑ ከብዶት ከቦታውም በተጓዘ ጊዜ፣ በአሞኒህ ከተማ ባሉት ሰዎች ክፋትም ምክንያትም በመከራና በነፍስ ስቃይ ተጓዘ፤ አልማ እንደዚህ በሀዘን ጫና እየተጓዘ እያለ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ እነሆ የጌታ መልአክ ታየው፣ እንዲህም አለው፡

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

፲፮ አልማ አንተ የተባረክህ ነህ፤ ስለዚህ ራስህን አቅና እናም ሀሴትን አድርግ፣ የምትደሰትበት ታላቅ ምክንያት አለህና፤ መልዕክቱንም ከተቀበልክ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ታማኝ በመሆንህ የትልቁ ደስታህ መንስኤ ሆነህልና። እነሆ ይህንን ለአንተ የሰጠሁ እኔ ነኝ።

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

፲፯ እናም እነሆ፣ አንተ ወደ አሞኒህ ከተማ እንድትመለስና ለከተማው ህዝብ በድጋሚ እንድትሰብክ ለማዘዝ ተልኬአለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ለእነርሱም ሰበክ። አዎን፣ ንስሃ ካልገቡ በቀር ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንደሚያጠፋቸው ንገራቸው።

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

፲፰ እነሆም፣ በዚህ ጊዜ የህዝባቸውን ነፃነት ለማጥፋት ያጠናሉ፣ (ጌታም እንዲህ ብሏልና) ይህም እርሱ ለህዝቡ ከተሰጠው ስርዓት፣ ፍርድና ትዕዛዛት ተቃራኒ ነው።

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

፲፱ እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ከጌታ መላዕክት መልዕክቱን ከተቀበለ በኋላ ወደ አሞኒህ ከተማ በፍጥነት ተመለሰ። እናም ወደ ከተማዋ በሌላ መንገድ፣ አዎን በአሞኒህ ከተማ በሰተደቡብ በኩል ገባ።

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

፲፱ እናም አልማ ወደ ከተማው በገባ ጊዜ ተርቦ ነበር፤
 እናም ለአንድ ሰው እንዲህ አለው፡ ለትሁት
 የእግዚአብሔር አገልጋይ የሚበላውን ትሰጠዋለህን?
፳ እናም ሰውየው እንዲህ አለው፡ እኔ ኔፋውያን ነኝ፤ እናም
 አንተ የእግዚአብሔር ቅዱስ ነቢይ እንደሆንክ እውቃለሁ፤
 መልአኩ በራዕይ ትቀበለዋለህ ያለኝ ሰው አንተን ነህ።
 ስለዚህ፡ ወደ ቤቴ ከእኔ ጋር ሂድና፤ ምግቤን ከአንተ ጋር
 እካፈላለሁ፤ እናም ለእኔና ለቤቴ በረከት እንደምትሆን
 እውቃለሁ።
፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰውየው በቤቴ ተቀበለው፤
 ሰውየውም አሙሌቅ ይባል ነበር፤ እናም ዳቦና ስጋን
 በአልማ ፊት አቀረበለት።
፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ዳቦ በላና ጠገበ፤ እናም
 አሙሌቅንና ቤቴን ባረከና ለእግዚአብሔር ምስጋናን
 አቀረበ።
፳፫ እናም ከበላና ከጠገበ በኋላ ለአሙሌቅ እንዲህ
 አለው፡ እኔ አልማ ነኝ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ባሉት
 የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያናት ሊቀ ካህን ነኝ።
፳፬ እናም እነሆ፡ በራዕይና በትንቢት መንፈስ መሰረት
 በእዚህ ህዝብ ሁሉ መካከል የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል
 ለመሰበክ ተጠርቻለሁ፤ በዚህም ምድር ነበርኩ እናም
 እነርሱ አልተቀበሉኝም፡ ነገር ግን አሰወጡኝ፤ እናም
 ለዘለአለም ወደዚህች ምድር ጀርባዬን ለመሰጠት እያለሁ
 ነበር።
፳፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፡ ለዚህ ህዝብ በድጋሚ ተመልሼ
 እንድተነብይ፡ አዎን እናም ክፋታቸውንም በተመለከተ
 በእነርሱ ላይ እንድመሰክር ታዝዜአለሁ።
፳፮ እናም እሁን፡ አሙሌቅ ስለመገብከኝና ስለተቀበልከኝ
 የተባረክህ ነህ፤ ለብዙ ቀንም በመጾሜ ተርቤ ነበርና።
፳፯ እናም አልማ ለህዝቡ መሰበክ ከመጀመሩ በፊት ለብዙ
 ቀናት ከአሙሌቅ ጋር ቆየ።
፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰዎቹ በኃጢአታቸው አስቀያሚነት
 እያደጉ ሄዱ።
፳፱ እናም ቃሉም ወደ አልማ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፤ ሂድ፤
 እናም ደግሞ ለአገልጋይ ለአሙሌቅ፡ ለዚህ ህዝብ እንዲህ
 በማለት ትንቢት ተናገር በለው—ንስሃ ግቡ፡ ጌታ ንስሃ
 ካልገባችሁ ይህንን ህዝብ በቁጣ እንበኘዋለሁ ብሏልና፤
 አዎን፡ እናም ኃይሉ ቁጣዬንም አልመልሰውም።
፷ እናም አልማና አሙሌቅ ከህዝቡ መካከል
 የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለማወጅ ሄዱ፤ እናም እነርሱ
 በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ተሞልተው ነበር።

And as he entered the city he was an hungered,
 and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble ser-
 vant of God something to eat?
 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I
 know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou
 art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou
 shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house
 and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know
 that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.
 And it came to pass that the man received him into
 his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he
 brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.
 And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was
 filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he
 gave thanks unto God.
 And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto
 Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the
 church of God throughout the land.
 And behold, I have been called to preach the word
 of God among all this people, according to the spirit
 of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land
 and they would not receive me, but they cast me out
 and I was about to set my back towards this land for-
 ever.
 But behold, I have been commanded that I should
 turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to
 testify against them concerning their iniquities.
 And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and
 taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered,
 for I had fasted many days.
 And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before
 he began to preach unto the people.
 And it came to pass that the people did wax more
 gross in their iniquities.
 And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also
 say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy
 unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith
 the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in
 mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger
 away.
 And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among
 the people, to declare the words of God unto them;
 and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

፲፩ እናም በግዙት መያዝ እስከማይችሉ ድረስ ኃይል ተሰጥቶአቸው ነበር፤ ማንም ሰው ሊገድላቸው አይቻለውም ነበር፤ ይህን እንጂ በሰንሰለት እስከሚታሰሩና ወደ እስር ቤትም እስከሚጣሉ ድረስ ስልጣናቸውን አልተጠቀሙባቸውም ነበር። አሁን ይህ የተደረገው ጌታ ስልጣኑን በእነርሱ እንዲያሳይ ነበር።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ በሰጣቸው መንፈስና ኃይል መሰረት ወደ ፊት ሄዱ እናም ለህዝቡ ማስተማርና መተንበይ ጀመሩ።

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

በአሞኒህ ምድር ለነበሩት ሰዎች በአልማ፣ ደግሞም በአሙሌቅ የታወጁት ቃላት። እናም በአልማ ዘገባ መሰረት፣ እነርሱ በወህኒ ቤት ተጣሉ፣ እናም በውስጣቸው ባለው ታምራታዊ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይልም ተለቀቁ።

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihab. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

አልማ ፱

Alma 9

፩ እናም በድጋሚ፣ እኔ አልማ አሙሌቅን ለመውሰድና ለህዝቡም፣ ወይም በአሞኒህ ከተማ ላሉት ሰዎች፣ በድጋሚ ለመሰበክ በእግዚአብሔር በመታዘዜ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ለእነርሱ መሰበኬን ሰጀምር እንዲህ በማለት ከእኔ ጋር መጣላት ጀመሩ።

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

፪ አንተ ማነህ? ምድር ታልፋለች በማለት ለእኛ ቢሰብክም የእንድን ሰው ምስክርነት እናምናለን ብለህ ትገምታለህን?

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

፫ እንግዲህ የተናገሩትን ቃላት አልተረዱም፣ ምድር እንደምታልፍም አያውቁምና።

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

፬ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ አሉ፣ ይህች ታላቂቱ ከተማ በእንድ ቀን ትጠፋለች በማለት ብትተነብይም ቃልህን አናምንም።

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

፭ አሁን እነርሱ ልብ ጠጣርና አንገተ ደንዳና ሰዎች ስለነበሩ እግዚአብሔር እንደዚህ ዓይነት ድንቅ ስራን መሰራት ይችላል ብለው አላወቁም።

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

፮ እናም እንዲህ አሉ፣ እንደዚህ ዓይነቱን ታላቅና ድንቅ እውነታ እንዲናገር በህዝቡ መካከል ከእንድ ሰው በላይ ምንም ስልጣን ሰጥቶ የማይልክ፣ እግዚአብሔር ማን ነው?

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

፯ እናም እጃቸውን በእኔ ላይ ለመጫን ተነሱ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አልነኩኝም። እናም ለእነርሱ ለማወጅ በድፍረት ቆምኩ፣ አዎን፣ በድፍረት እንዲህ በማለት መሰክርኩ።

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

፰ እነሆ፣ እናንተ ክፋና ጠማማ ትውልድ፣ የአባቶቻችሁን ባህል እንዴት ረሳችሁ፤ አዎን የእግዚአብሔርን ስ ትዕዛዛት እንዴት በፍጥነት ረሳችሁ።

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

፱ አባታችን ሌሂስ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ ከኢየሩሳሌም እንደወጣ አታስታውሱምን? ከምድረበዳውስ ሁሉም በእርሱ እንደተመሩ አታስታውሱምን?

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

፲ እናም አባቶቻችንን ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ምን ያህል ጊዜ እንዳሰለቀቀና፣ በወንድሞቻቸውም እጅ እንዳን ቢሆን፣ ከመጥፋት እንደጠበቃቸው በፍጥነት ረሳችሁትን?

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

፲፩ አዎን፣ ለእኛ ባለው ወደር በሌለው ሰልጣኑና ምህረቱ፣ እንዲሁም በረዥም ፅናቱ ባይሆን ኖሮ ከዚህ ጊዜ በፊት ከምድረ ገፅ ሊወገድ በማይቻልበት መጥፋት ይገባን ነበር፣ እናም ምናልባት መጨረሻ ለሌለው ጉስቁልና ወዮታ እንሰጥ ነበር።

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

፲፪ እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ አሁን እርሱ ንስሃ እንድትገቡ ያዛችኋል፤ እናም እናንተ ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በምንም መንገድ የእግዚአብሔርን መንግሥት ልትወርሱ አትችሉም። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ብቻ አይደለም—እርሱ ንስሃ እንድትገቡ ካዘችኋል፣ አለበለዚያም እናንተን ከምድረ ገፅ ፈፅሞ ያጠፋችኋል፤ አዎን፣ በቁጣውም ይጎበኛችኋል፣ እናም ጽኑ ቁጣው ከእናንተ አይመልሰም።

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ ትዕዛዛቴን እስከጠበቃችሁ ድረስ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ትበለፀጋላችሁ ብሎ ለሌሂ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት አታስታውሱም? እናም በድጋሚያም እንዲህ ተብሏል፤ ትዕዛዛቴን እስካልጠበቃችሁ ድረስ ከጌታ ፊት ትለያላችሁ።

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

፲፬ እንግዲህ ላማናውያን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስካልጠበቁ ድረስ፣ ከጌታ ፊት እንደተለዩ እንድታስታውሱ አፈልጋለሁ። አሁን በዚህ ነገር የጌታ ቃል ማረጋገጫ እንደሆነ እናያለን፣ እናም ላማናውያን በምድሪቱ መተላለፍ ከጀመሩበት ጊዜ አንስቶ ከእርሱ ፊት ተለይተዋል።

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

፲፭ ይሁን እንጂ እኔ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ በኃጢአታችሁ ከቀጠላችሁ በፍርድ ቀን ከእናንተ ይልቅ ለእነርሱ ይቀልላቸዋል፤ አዎን እናም ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በዚህ ህይወትም ቢሆን እንዳን ለእነርሱ የበለጠ ቀላል ይሆናል።

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

፲፮ ለላማናውያን ብዙ የተሰፋ ቃል ተሰጥቶአቸዋልና፤ በአባቶቻቸው ወግ ምክንያት ነው በድንቁርና እንዲቀሩ ስላደረጋቸውና፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ለእነርሱ መሀሪ ይሆናል፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ህይወታቸውን ያረዝማል።

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

፲፯ እናም በእንድ ወቅት በቃሉ ወደማመንና፣ የተሳሳተውን የአባቶቻቸውንም ወግ ወደ መረዳት ይደርሳሉ፤ እናም ብዙዎች ይድናሉ፣ ጌታ ስሙን ለሚጠሩ ሁሉ መሀሪ ይሆናልና።

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

፲፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በኃጢአታችሁ የምትቀጥሉ ከሆነ ለማናውያን በእናንተ ላይ የሚላኩ በመሆናቸው በምድሪቱ ላይ የመቆያችሁ ቀን አይረዝምም፤ ንስሃ የማትገቡም ከሆነ እናንተ በማታውቁበት ወቅት ይመጣሉ፣ እናም ፍፁም በሆነ ጥፋትም ትጎበኛላችሁ፤ ይህም በፅኑ የጌታ ቁጣ መሰረት ነው።

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

፲፱ ህዝቡን ለማጥፋት እናንተ በክፋት እንድትኖሩ አይፈቅድላችሁም። እኔ ግን አይሆንም እላችኋለሁ፤ ለጌታ አምላካቸው ታላቅ ብርሃንን ታላቅ እውቀትን ካገኙ በኋላ በኃጢአትና በመተላለፍ ለመውደቅ የሚቻላቸው ከሆነ የኔሬ ህዝብ የተባሉትን ሁሉ ለማናውያን እንዲያጠፏቸው ቢፈቅድ ይሻለዋል።

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

፳ አዎን፣ በጌታ የተወደዱ ሰዎች ከሆኑ በኋላ፣ አዎን፣ ከሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ በላይ የተወደዱ ከሆኑ በኋላ፣ ሁሉንም ነገሮች በፍላጎታቸው፣ በእምነታቸው፣ በፀሎታቸው መሰረት፣ ስለነበረው፣ እና ስለሆነው፣ እናም ስለሚመጣው እንዲያውቁ ከተደረጉ በኋላ፤

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

፳፩ በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ከተጎበኙ በኋላ፣ ከመልእክት ጋር ከተነጋገሩ በኋላ፣ የጌታ ድምፅም ከተናገሩቸው በኋላና፣ የትንቢት መንፈስና የራዕይ መንፈስ፣ ደግሞም ብዙ ስጦታዎች በልሳን የመናገር ስጦታ፣ እናም የመስበክ ስጦታና፣ የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ስጦታና የመተርጎም ስጦታ ከተሰጣቸው በኋላ፤

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

፳፪ አዎን፣ ከአየሩሳሌም ምድር በጌታ እጅ በእግዚአብሔር እንዲለቀቁ ከተደረጉ በኋላ፣ ከረሃብ፣ ከበሽታና ከሁሉም ዓይነት ተውሳክ ከዳኑ በኋላ፤ ከዚያም በኋላ እንዳይጠፉ ለጦርነት በመበርታት ጠነከሩ፣ ከጊዜ ወደ ጊዜ ከባርነት በመውጣትና፣ እስካሁን እንዲቀመጡና እንዲጠበቁ ሆነዋል፤ እናም በሁሉም ነገሮች ሀብታም እስኪሆኑ ድረስ በልፅገዋል—

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

፳፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ይህ ህዝብ ብዙ በረከቶችን ከጌታ አግኝቶ ካለው ብርሃንና እውቀት በተቃራኒ የሚተላለፍ ከሆነ፣ ይህ ሁኔታ ከሆነ፣ እነርሱም ወደ መተላለፍ የሚወድቁ ከሆነ፣ ከእነርሱ የበለጠ ለላማናውያን የሚቀልላቸው ይሆናል እላችኋለሁ።

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

፳፬ እነሆም፣ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ለላማናውያን ተዘርግቷል፤ ነገር ግን እናንተ የምትተላለፉ ከሆነ ለእናንተ አይሆኑም፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ እናንተ በእርሱ ላይ የምታምፁ ከሆነ ከምድረ ገፅ ፈፅሞ ትጠፋላችሁ በማለት በግልፅ ቃል አልገባምን እንዲሁም በጥብቅ አላወጀምን?

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

፳፭ እናም እሁን በዚህ የተነሳ፣ እንዲትጠፉ ዘንድ፣ መንግሥተ ሰማያት ቀርባለችና ንስሃ ግቡ በማለት ወደዚህ ህዝብ መሄድ እና መጮህ እንዳለባቸው ለማወጅ ጌታ መልእኩን ብዙ ህዝቦቹን እንዲጎበኝ ልኳል።

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

፳፮ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በክብር በሚመጣበት ቀን ከዚህ በኋላ ሩቅ አይደለም፤ እናም ክብሩ የእብ አንድያ ልጅ ክብር የሆነ፣ በፀጋ፣ በፍትህና በእውነት፣ በፅናት መሃሪና በታጋሽነት የተሞላ፣ የህዝቡን ጩኸት ለመስማትና መልስ ለመስጠት ፈጣን የሆነው ይሆናል።

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

፳፯ እናም እነሆ፣ በሰሙ በማመን ለንስሃ የሚጠመቁትን ለማዳን ይመጣል።

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

፳፰ ስለዚህ፣ የጌታን መንገድ አዘጋጁ፣ በነበሩበት መሰረት ሰዎች በሙሉ የሰራቸውን ውጤት የሚሰበሰቡበት ጊዜ ቀርቧልና—ፃድቃን ከሆኑ በእየሱስ ክርስቶስ ሀይልና መድሀኒት መሰረት የነፍሳቸውን ደህንነት ያጭዳሉ፤ እናም ክፉ ከሆኑ በዲያብሎስ ስልጣንና ግዙት መሰረት ለነፍሳቸው እርግማንን ያጭዳሉ።

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

፳፱ እሁን እነሆ፣ ይህ ወደ ህዝቡ የሚጮኸው የመልእክ ድምፅ ነው።

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

፴ እናም እሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እናንተ ወንድሞቼ ናችሁና፣ እናም የተወደዳችሁ መሆን ይገባችኋል፣ ለንስሃ የሚሆን ስራን መሰራትም አለባችሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ልባችሁ በጌታ ቃል ላይ እጅግ ጠጥሯልና እናም የተሳሳታችሁና የወደቃችሁ ህዝቦች ናችሁ።

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

፴፩ እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት ሰናገር፣ እነሆ፣ ህዝቡ በእኔ ተቆጥቷል ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ልብ ጠጣር እና አንገተ ደንዳና ሰዎች እንደሆኑ ነግሬአቸዋለሁና።

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

፴፪ እናም ደግሞ የጠፉና የወደቁ ሰዎች መሆናቸውን በመናገሪ፣ በእኔ ተቆጡ፣ እናም ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ይጥሉኝ ዘንድ እጃቸውን ሊጭኑብኝ ፈለጉ።

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

፲፫ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ በዚያን ጊዜ እኔን ወስደው ወህኒ ቤት እንዲጥሉኝ አልፈቀደላቸውም ነበር።

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የአሙሌቅ ሄደና ወደፊት ቆሞ፣ ደግሞም መሰበክ ጀመረ። እናም አሁን የአሙሌቅ ቃላት በሙሉ አልተጻፉም፣ ይሁን እንጂ ከቃሉ የተወሰነው ክፍል በዚህ መጻሕፍ ተጻፏል።

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

አልማ ፲

፩ እንግዲህ እነዚህ በአሞኒህ ምድር ለነበሩት ሰዎች አሙሌቅ እንዲህ በማለት የሰበካቸው ቃላት ናቸው።

፪ እኔ አሙሌቅ ነኝ፤ የአሚናዲ የዘር ሐረግ የሆነው የእስማኤል ልጅ የሆነው የጊደናን ልጅ ነኝ፤ እናም ይኸው እራሱ አሚናዲ ነበር በእግዚአብሔር እጅ በቤተመቅደሱ ግድግዳ ላይ የተፃፈውን የተረጎመው።

፫ እናም አሚናዲ የኔፊ የዘር ሐረግ፣ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር የወጣው፣ የምናሴ የዘር ሐረግ የሆነው የሌሂ ልጅ ነበር፣ እርሱም በወንድሞቹ እጅ ወደግብፅ የተሸጠው የዮሴፍ ልጅ ነበር።

፬ እናም እነሆ፣ እኔን በሚያውቁኝ ሰዎች ሁሉ መካከል ትንሽ ዝና ያለኝ ሰው አይደለሁም፤ አዎን፣ እናም እነሆ ብዙ ነገድና፣ ወዳጆች አሉኝ፤ ታታሪ ሆኜ በመሰራትም ደግሞ ብዙ ሀብትን አፍርቻለሁ።

፭ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከዚህ ሁሉ በኋላ፣ የጌታን መንገድ እናም ሚስጥሩንና ድንቅ ኃይሉን ብዙም አላውቅም ነበር። እነዚህን ነገሮች ብዙም አላውቅም አላለሁ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሰህተተኛ ነኝ፣ የእርሱን ሚስጥሮችና አሰደናቂ ሀይል አይቻለሁና፤ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም የዚህን ሕዝብ ሕይወት ሲጠብቅም።

፮ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ብዙ ጊዜ ተጠርቼ ባለመሰማቴ ልቤን አጠጥሬ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ አወቅሁ፤ ሆኖም ይህን ለማወቅም አልፈቀድኩም፤ ስለዚህ በልቤ ክፋት በመሳፍንቴ አሰረኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን እስከ ሰባተኛው ወር አራተኛ ቀንም ድረስ እንኳን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ለማመፅ ሄድኩ።

፯ የቅርብ ዘመዴን ለማየት በተጓዥኩ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ የጌታ መልእክ ታየኝና እንዲህ አለኝ፡ አሙሌቅ የጌታን ነቢይ፣ አዎን፣ ቅዱሱን ሰው፣ በእግዚአብሔር የተመረጠውን ሰው፣ ምግብን ትመግብዋለህና ወደ ራስህ ቤት ተመለስ፤ በዚህ ህዝብ ኃጢአት የተነሳ ለብዙ ቀናት ጾሟል፣ ተርቧልም፣ እናም በቤትህ ተቀብለህ መግባው፣ እርሱም እንተንና ቤትህን ይባርካል፤ እናም የጌታ በረከት በአንተና በቤትህ ላይ ይሆናል።

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለመልእኩም ድምፅ ታዘዝኩና፣ ወደ ቤቴ ተመለስኩ። እናም በምሄድበት ጊዜ መልእኩ በቤትህ ትቀበለዋለህ ሲል የተናገረኝን ሰው አገኘሁት— እናም እነሆ ይህም የእግዚአብሔርን የሆኑትን በተመለከተ ሲያናገራችሁ የነበረው ሰው ራሱ ነበር።

፳፱ እናም መልእኩ እርሱ ቅዱስ ሰው ነው አለኝ፤ ስለዚህ በእግዚአብሔር መልእክ የተነገረ ስለሆነ ቅዱስ መሆኑን አውቃለሁ።

፲ እናም በድጋሚ፣ እርሱ የመስከራቸው ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን አውቃለሁ፤ እነሆም እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ጌታ ሕያው እንደሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለእኔ ለመግለፅ መልእኩን ልኳል፤ እናም እርሱ ይህንን ያደረገው አልማ በእኔ ቤት በቆየበት ወቅት ነው።

፲፩ እነሆም፣ ቤቴን ባርኳል፣ እኔን፣ ሚስቴን፣ ልጆቼንና፣ አባቴን እናም ዘመዶቼን ባርኳል፤ አዎን፣ ዘሮቼን በሙሉ ባርኳል፣ እናም ጌታ በተናገረው ቃል መሰረት በረከቱ በእኛ ላይ ሆኗል።

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ አሙሌቅ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እነርሱ የተከሰሱባቸውን ነገሮች እናም ደግሞ በውስጣቸው ባለው የትንቢት መንፈስ ስለሚመጡት ነገሮቹ የሚመሰክሩ ከእነድ ምስክር በላይ እንዳለ በመመልከታቸው ህዝቡ መገረም ጀመሩ።

፲፫ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በተነኮል ስራቸው በቃላቸው ይይዟቸው ዘንድ፣ በእነርሱም ላይ ምስክር ያገኙባቸው ዘንድ፣ በህግ መሰረት እንዲፈረድባቸው ወደ ዳኛዎቻቸው አሳልፈው ይሰጧቸው ዘንድ፣ እና በሚያስመስሉት ወይም በእነርሱ ላይ በሚመሰክሩባቸው ወንጀል መሰረት እንዲገደሉ ወይም ወደ እስር ቤት እንዲጣሉ ዘንድ እነርሱን ለመጠየቅ ያስቡ በመካከላቸው አንዳንድ ነበሩ።

፲፬ አሁን እነዚህ ጠበቆች የነበሩት፣ በፍርድ ጊዜ በዳኞቹ ፊት በወንጀሉ ህጉን እንዲዳኙ በህዝቡ የተቀጠሩት፣ እንዲሁም የተሾሙት ሰዎች ሊያጠፏቸው ሲፈልጉ የነበሩ ናቸው።

፲፭ አሁን እነዚህ ጠበቆች የህዝቡን ጥበብና ሴራ ሁሉ የተማሩት ናቸው፣ እናም ይህ በሙያቸው ባለሙያ እንዲሆኑ እንዲያስችላቸው ነው።

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሌቅን ቃሉን እንዲያጥፍ ያደርጉት ዘንድ ወይም ለሚናገረውን ተቃራኒ ይሆኑ ዘንድ ይጠይቁት ጀመር።

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

፲፱ እንግዲህ አሙሌቅ ዕቅዳቸውን ለማወቅ እንደሚችል አያውቁም። ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱን መጠየቅ ሲጀምሩ፣ ሀሳባቸውን ገመተ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እናንተ ክፋና ጠማማ ትውልድ፣ ጠበቆች እና ግብዛቶች፣ የዲያብሎስን መሰረት እየመሰረታችሁ ናችሁና፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ቅዱሳን ለመያዝ መያዣና ወጥመድ ዘርግታችኋል።

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

፳፬ የፃድቃኖችን መንገድ ለማጣመም፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቁጣ በራሳችሁ ላይ እንዲመጣ ለማድረግ፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ ፍጹም ጥፋት እንኳን ዕቅድ አዘጋጅታችኋል።

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

፳፱ አዎን፣ የመጨረሻው ንጉሳችን ሞዛያ የሚሾመው ማንም የለምና፣ ይህ ህዝብም በራሱ ድምፅ እንዲመራ በማድረግ መንግሥቱን ለመሰጠት በተቃረበበት ወቅት፣ በጥሩ ሁኔታ እንዲህ ብሏል—አዎን፣ እርሱ ጥሩ ተናግሯል፣ የዚህ ህዝብ ድምፅ ክፋትን የሚመርጥበት ጊዜው መምጣት ካለበት፣ ይህም ማለት ህዝቡ በመተላለፍ የሚወድቅበት ጊዜው የሚመጣ ከሆነ ለጥፋትም ይደርሳሉ።

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

፷ እናም አሁን እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ጌታ ክፋታችሁን በጥሩ ሁኔታ ይፈርዳል፤ በተገቢው ሁኔታም ለህዝቡ በመልእኩ ድምፅ፤ ንስሃ ግቡ፣ ንስሃ ግቡ መንግሥተ ሰማያት ቀርባለችና በማለት ይጮሁል።

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

፷፩ አዎን፣ በመልእኩ ድምፅ በተገቢው ሁኔታ እንዲህ በማለት ይጮሁል፣ በህዝቤ መካከል ፍትህንና ፍርድን በእጄ ይዠገዛለሁ።

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

፷፪ አዎን፣ እናም በምድሪቱ አሁን ባሉት ፃድቃኖች ፀሎት ባይሆን ፍር፣ ፍጹም በሆነው ጥፋቱ አሁን ይሰበኛችሁ ነበር አላለሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በኖህ ጊዜ እንደነበሩት ሰዎች በጥፋት ውሀ አይሆንም፣ ነገር ግን በረሃብና፣ በቸነፈር እንዲሁም በጎራዴ ይሆናል።

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

፷፫ ነገር ግን በፃድቃኖች ፀሎት ድናችኋል፤ አሁንም ስለዚህ ፃድቃኖችን ከመካከላችሁ ከጣላችሁ ጌታ እጄን አያሳርፍም፤ ነገር ግን በጎያሉ ቁጣው በእናንተ ላይ ይመጣል፤ በረሃብና በቸነፈር እንዲሁም በጎራዴ ትመታላችሁ፤ እናም ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በቀር ጊዜው ቀርቧል።

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

፳፬ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ ይበልጥ በአሙሌቅ ተቆጣ፣ እናም እንዲህ በማለትም ጮኹ። ደድቅ በሆነው ህጋችን ላይ፣ እናም በመረጥናቸው በብልሁ ጠበቃዎቻችን ላይ ይህ ሰው ክፉን ይናገራል።

፳፯ ነገር ግን አሙሌቅ እጁን ዘረጋ፣ እናም በኃይል እንዲህ በማለት ጮኹ፣ አቤቱ እናንት ክፉና ጠማማ ትውልድ፣ ሰይጣን ለምን በልባችሁ ትልቅ ቦታን ይይዛል? ለምን ሰ በእናንተ ላይ እንደአውነቱ የተነገሩትን ቃላት እንዲትረዱ ዐይናችሁን ለማሳወር ሰልጣን እንዲኖረው ራሳችሁን ትሰጡታላችሁ?

፳፰ እነሆም በህጋችሁ ተቃራኒን መሰክራለሁን? እናንተም አትረዱም፤ ከህጋችሁ ተቃራኒን ተናግረሃል ትላላችሁ፤ ነገር ግን እኔ አልተናገርኩም፣ ነገር ግን ህጋችሁን በመደገፍ ኩነኔአችሁን ተናግራለሁ።

፳፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ የዚህ ህዝብ ጥፋት መሰረቱ የድቃን ባልሆኑት ጠበቆቻችሁና ዳኞቻችሁ መጣል ጀምሯል።

፴፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሌቅ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ ህዝቡ እንዲህ በማለት በእርሱ ላይ ጮኹ፣ አሁን ይህ ሰው የዲያብሎስ ልጅ እንደሆነ እናውቃለን እኛን ዋሽቶናልና፤ ከህግጋቶቻችንም ተቃራኒ የሆነውን ተናግሯልና። እናም አሁን ይህን አለመቃረኑን ይናገራል።

፴፪ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ጠበቆቻችንና ዳኞቻችንን አጥብቆ ነቅቷል።

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች በእርሱ ላይ እንዲያስታውሱ ጠበቆቹ በልባቸው አስቀመጡት።

፴፬ እናም ከእነርሱ መካከል ዚኤዘሮም የሚባል አንድ ሰው ነበር። ከእነርሱ መካከል ዋና ባለሙያ በመሆን በህዝቡም መካከል በርካታ እንቅስቃሴዎችን ስለነበረው አሙሌቅንና አልማን ለመክሰስ ግንባር ቀደም ነበር።

፴፭ አሁን የጠበቆቹ ዓላማ ገንዘብ ለማግኘት ነበር፤ እናም በተቀጠሩበት መሰረትም ገንዘብን ያገኛሉ።

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

አልማ 16

፩ አሁን ማንኛውም ሰው የህጉ ዳኛ የሆነ፣ ወይም ዳኛ በመሆን የተሾሙት ለፍርድ በቀረቡት ላይ ለመፍረድ በሚሰሩበት ሰዓት መሰረት ደሞዝ ያገኙ ዘንድ የሞዛያ ህግ ነበር።

፪ አሁን አንድ ሰው በሌላው ባለአዳ ከሆነ፣ እናም ያለበትንም እዳ ካልከፈለ፣ ለዳኛው አቤቱታ ይቀርብበታል፤ እናም ዳኛው ስልጣኑን ተግባራዊ ያደርጋል፤ በፊቱ እንዲያቀርቡት ሹሞችን ይልካልም፣ እናም በህጉና በእርሱ ላይ በቀረቡት መረጃዎች መሰረት ይፈርድበታል፣ ሰውየው ያለበትን እዳ እንዲከፍል ይገደዳልም፣ አለበለዚያ ጎብረቱ ይወስድበታል፣ ካልሆነም ከህዝቡ መካከል ቀማኛና ሌባ በመባል ይጣላል።

፫ እናም ዳኛው በሰራበት መጠን ክፍያውን ይቀበላል— ለቀን አንድ ሰነን ወርቅ፣ ወይም ከሰነን ወርቅ እኩል የሆነ አንድ ሴነም ብር፤ ይህም በተሰጠው ህግ መሰረት ነው።

፬ አሁን እነዚህ የተለያዩት ቁራጭ ወርቆቻቸው እናም ብርቻቸው በዋጋቸው መሰረት ሰማቸው ናቸው። እናም ሰሞቹም የተሰጡት በኔፋውያን ነው፣ በኢየሩሳሌም እንደነበሩት በአይሁድ አቆጣጠር አልተሰየሙም ነበርና፤ ወይም እንደ አይሁዶችም አለካክ አልለኩዎቻቸውም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ሰያሜያቸውንና መለኪያቸውን በመሳፍንት ግንሰና ጊዜ በጎጥሰ ሞዛያ እስኪቋቋሙ ድረስ በህዝቡ አስተሳሰብ እና ጉዳዮች መሰረት በማንኛውም ትውልድ ይቀይሯቸው ነበር።

፭ አሁን አቆጣጠሩ ይህ ነው—አንድ ሰነን ወርቅ፣ አንድ ሴነ ወርቅ፣ አንድ ሹም ወርቅና አንድ ሊምና ወርቅ ነው።

፮ አንድ ሴነም ብር፣ አንድ አምኖር ብር፣ አንድ ኤዘረም ብር፣ እናም አንድ ኦንቲ ብር ነው።

፯ አንድ ሲነም ብር ከአንድ ሲነን ወርቅ ጋር እኩል ነበር፣ እናም ለአንድ መለኪያ ገብሰና፣ ደግሞ ለሁሉም ዓይነት እህል ለአንድ መለኪያ ዋጋ ነበር።

፰ አሁን የአንድ ሴኦን ወርቅ መጠን ከሁለት ሲነን ወርቅ ዋጋ ጋር እኩል ነው።

፱ እናም አንድ ሹም ወርቅ ከሁለት ሲኦን ወርቅ ጋር ዋጋው እኩል ነበር።

፲ እናም አንድ ሊምና ወርቅ የሁሉም ዋጋ ድምር ነበር።

፲፩ እናም አንድ አምኖር ብር ትልቅነቱ ከሁለት ሴነም እኩል ነው።

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

፲፪ እናም አንድ ኤዘረም ብር ትልቅነቱ አራት ሲነም ያህል ነበር።

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

፲፫ እናም አንድ ኦንቲ ከሁሉም ድምር ጋር እኩል ነው።
፲፬ አሁን ይህ የአቆጣጠራቸው የትንሹ ቁጥር ዋጋ ነው—

And an onti was as great as them all.
Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

፲፭ አንድ ሺብሎን የአንድ ሲነም ግማሽ ነው፤ ስለዚህ፤ አንድ ሺብሎን የግማሽ ገብስ መለኪያ ዋጋ ነው።

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

፲፮ እናም አንድ ሽብሎም ግማሽ ሺብሎን ነው።

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

፲፯ እናም አንድ ልህ ግማሽ ሽብሎም ነው።

And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

፲፰ አሁን በአቆጣጠራቸው መሰረት ይህ ቁጥራቸው ነው።

Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

፲፱ አሁን አንድ አንተአን ወርቅ ከሶስት ሽብሎን ጋር እኩል ነው።

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

፳ አንግዲህ ይህን ገንዘብ ለማግኘት ብቻ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ደሞዳቸውን እንደሰራቸው አግኝተዋልና፤ ስለዚህ፤ ገንዘብ በፊታቸው በመጡት አቤቱታ መሰረት ያገኙ ዘንድ ሕዝቡን ለርበሻዎችና ለሁሉም አይነት ሁከታዎች እና ክፋት አውከዋቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡን በአልማና በአሙሌቅ ላይ አነሳስተዋል።

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.

፳፩ እናም ይህ ዚኤዘረም አሙሌቅን እንዲህ በማለት መጠየቅ ጀመረ፤ እኔ የምጠይቀውን ጥቂት ጥያቄዎች ትመልስልኛለህን? አሁን ዚኤዘረም መልካም የሆነውን ያጠፋ ዘንድ በዲያብሎስ ዕቅድ ባለሟል ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፤ ለአሙሌቅም አለው፤ በአንተ ላይ የማደርገውን ጥያቄዎች ትመልሳለህን?

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

፳፪ እናም አሙሌቅ እንዲህ አለው፤ በእኔ ውስጥ ባለው በጌታ መንፈስ መሰረት ከሆነ፤ አዎን፤ ከጌታ መንፈስ ተቃራኒ የሆነ ምንም አልናገርምና። እናም ዚኤዘረም እንዲህ አለው፤ እነሆ ሰድስቱ የብር ኦንቲዎች እነዚህ ናቸው፤ እናም የኃያሉን ፍጡር መኖር የምትክድ ከሆነ ይህንን በሙሉ እስጥሃለሁ።

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

፳፫ አሁን አሙሌቅ እንዲህ አለ፤ አንተ የሲኦል ልጅ፤ ለምን ትፈትነኛለህ? ዓድቃን እንደዚህ ላለ ፈተና የማይበገሩ እንደሆነ አታውቅምን?

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

፳፬ እግዚአብሔር እንደሌለሰ ታምናለህን? እኔ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፤ አይሆንም፤ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ ታውቃለህ፤ ነገር ግን ከእርሱ የበለጠ ገንዘብ ስለምትወድ ነው።

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

፳፭ እናም አሁን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ዋሸተኸኛል። ከእኔም እነርሱን ለማስቀረት በልብህ ባሰብህ ጊዜ፣ ለእኔም፣ እነሆ ታላቅ ዋጋ ያላቸውን እነዚህን ሰድስት ነገሮች፣ እስከሆላሁ ብለኸኛል፤ እናም እኔን ታጠፋኝ ዘንድ ምክንያት እንዲሆንህ እውነተኛ ህያው የሆነውን እግዚአብሔርን እንድክድ ትፈልጋለህ። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ለዚህ ለታላቅ ጥፋት ዋጋህን ታገኛለህ።

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

፳፮ እናም ዚኤዘርም እንዲህ አለው፡ እውነተኛ ህያው እግዚአብሔር አለ ትላለህን?

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

፳፯ እናም አሙሌቅ እንዲህ አለ፡ አዎን፣ እውነተኛ ህያው እግዚአብሔር አለ።

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

፳፰ አሁን ዚኤዘርም እንዲህ አለ፡ ከእንደ አምላክ በላይ አለን?

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

፳፱ እናም እርሱ የለም ሲል መለሰለት።

And he answered, No.

፴ እሁን ዚኤዘርም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለ፡ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዴት ታውቃለህ?

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ አለ፤ መልእኩ እነዚህን እንዳውቃቸው አደረገኝ።

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

፴፪ እናም ዚኤዘርም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለ፡ የሚመጣው ማን ነው? የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ነውን?

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

፴፫ እናም እርሱ አዎን አለው።

And he said unto him, Yea.

፴፬ እናም ዚኤዘርም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለ፡ ህዝቡን በኃጢአታቸው ያድናቸዋልን? አሙሌቅም መለሰ፣ እናም አለው፡ ይህን አያደርግም እልህሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ቃሉንም ለመካድ አይቻለውምና።

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

፴፭ እንግዲህ ዚኤዘርም ለህዝቡ እንዲህ አለ፡ እነዚህን ነገሮች ታሰታውሱ ዘንድ ተመልከቱ፤ እግዚአብሔርንም ለማዘዝ ስልጣን ያለው ይመስል—እንደ ብቻ አምላክ አለ ብሏልና፤ ይህን እንጂ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ይመጣልም ብሏል፣ ነገር ግን ህዝቡን አያድንም ብሎ ተናግሯል።

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

፴፮ እንግዲህ አሙሌቅ በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ አንተ ዋሸተህል፣ ሰዎችንም በኃጢአታቸው አያድንም በማለቱ እግዚአብሔርን ለማዘዝ ስልጣን እንዳለኝ ተናገርኩ ብለሃል።

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

፴፯ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ ከነኃጢአታቸው ሊያድናቸው አይችልም፤ እኔም ቃሉን መካድ አይቻለኝምና፣ እናም ምንም እርኩስ ነገር መንግስተ ሰማያትን ሊወርስ አይችልም ብሏልና፤ ስለዚህ፣ መንግስተ ሰማያትን ካልወረሰህ እንዴት ልትድን ትችላለህ? ስለዚህ ከነኃጢአታትህ መዳን አትችልም።

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

፴፰ አሁን ዚኤዘርም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለው፡ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እውነተኛ ዘለለማዊ አባት ነውን?

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

፴፱ እናም አሙሌቅ እንዲህ አለው፡ አዎን፣ እርሱ የሰማይና የምድር፣ እናም በእነርሱም ያሉት ሁሉም ነገሮች እውነተኛ ዘለአለማዊ አባት ነው፤ እርሱ የመጀመሪያና የመጨረሻ፣ የፊተኛውና የኋለኛው ነው፤

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

፵ እናም ህዝቡን ለማዳንና ወደ ዓለም ይመጣል፤ በሰሙ ለሚያምኑም መተላለፋቸውን በራሱ ላይ ይወስዳል፤ እነዚህም ዘለአለማዊ ህይወት ያላቸው ናቸው፣ እናም ደህንነት ለሌላ ለማንም አይመጣም።

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

፵፩ ስለዚህ ለኃጢአተኞች የሞት እስር ከመፈታት በስተቀር ቤዛነት እንዳልተፈጸመ ሆነው ይቆያሉ፤ እነሆም፣ ሁሉም ከሞት የሚነሱበት፣ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ፊት የሚቆሙበትና፣ እንደሰራቸውም የሚፈረድባቸው ቀን ይመጣል።

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

፵፪ እንግዲህ፣ ጊዜያዊ ሞት ተብሎ የሚጠራ ሞት አለ፤ እናም ሁሉም ከዚህ ከጊዜያዊው ሞት ይነሱ ዘንድ፣ የክርስቶስ ሞት የጊዜያዊ ሞትን እስር ይፈታል።

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

፵፫ መንፈስም ከሰጋ ጋር ፍፁም በሆነ ሁኔታ በድጋሚ አንድ ይሆናል፣ እግርና እጅ እናም መገጣጠሚያዎች ተገቢ በሆነ ሁኔታ፣ እኛ አሁን ባለን አምሳል ይመለሳሉ፤ እናም ልክ አሁን እንደምናውቅ እያወቅንና፣ የጥፋታችን ሁሉ ትውስታ ግልፅ እየሆነልን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እንቀርባለን።

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

፵፬ እንግዲህ፣ ይህ ደግሞ መመለስ ለሁሉም፣ ለሽማግሌዎችና ለወጣቶች፣ ለታሰሩና ነፃ ለሆኑትም፣ ለሴትና ለወንድ፣ ለኃጢአተኞችና ለፃድቃን ይሆናል፤ እናም እንዲትም የራስ ፀጉራቸውም እንኳን አይጠፋም፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉም ነገር፣ ልክ እንደሁኑ፣ ወይም በሰውነት፣ በፍጹም መልክ ይመለሳል፣ እናም አንድ ዘለአለማዊ አምላክ በሆኑት በወልድ በክርስቶስና በእግዚአብሔር አብ፣ እንዲሁም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት፣ መልካም ወይም ክፋዎች ቢሆኑ፣ እንደሰራቸው ሊፈረድባቸው መልስ ለመስጠት ይመጣሉ።

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

፵፭ አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ስለሚሞተው ሰውነታችን ሞት እናም ደግሞ ስለሚሞተው ሰውነታችን ትንሳኤ ተናግራለሁ። ይህ የሚሞተው ሰውነት ወደማይሞተው ሰውነት ይነሳል፣ ይህም ማለት ከሞት፣ እንዲሁም ከመጀመሪያው ሞትም ወደ ህይወት፣ ከእንግዲህም ደግሞ እንዳይሞቱ ይነሳል እልሁለሁ፤ መንፈሳቸው ከሰውነታቸው ጋር አንድ ይሆናል፣ ከእንግዲህም አይለያይም፤ እንደዚህም አንድ የሆነው ሰውነትም መንፈሳዊና የማይሞት የማይበሰብሰብ ይሆናል።

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

አሁን፣ አሙሌቅ እነዚህን ቃላት በጨረሰ ጊዜ ህዝቡ በድጋሚ መገረም ጀመረ፣ እናም ደግሞ ዚኤዘርም መንቀጥቀጥ ጀመረ። እናም የአሙሌቅ ቃል አበቃ፣ ወይም የፃፍኩት ሁሉ ይህ ነው።

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

አልማ 1፪

፩ አሁን አልማ የአሙሌቅ ቃል ዚኤዘርምን ዝም ማሰኘቱን ሲመለከት፣ አሙሌቅ ዚኤዘርም በመዋሸትና በማታለል ሊያጠፋው ሲሞክር እንደያዘው ተመልክቷልና፣ እናም ጥፋቱ በማወቁ ምክንያት መንቀጥቀጥ እንደጀመረ ስለተመለከተ፣ አፋን ከፍቶ ለእርሱ መናገርና፣ የአሙሌቅን ቃላት ማረጋገጥ፣ እናም ከዚያን በላይ የሆኑትን ነገሮች መግለጽ ወይም አሙሌቅም ካደረገው በላይ ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍትን መግለጽ ጀመረ።

፪ አሁን አልማ ለዚኤዘርም የተናገረው ቃላት በአካባቢው ላሉት ሰዎች ተሰምቶ ነበር፤ ህዝቡ ብዙ ነበሩና፣ እናም በዚህ መንገድ ተናገረ፤

፫ አሁን ዚኤዘርም በሀሰተኝነትህና በተንኮል ተይዘህል፣ አንተ ለሰዎች ብቻ ሳይሆን ለእግዚአብሔርም ዋሽተህልና፤ እነሆም፣ እርሱ ሀሳብህን በሙሉ ያውቃል፣ እናም ያንተ ሀሳብ በሙሉ በእርሱ መንፈስ አማካኝነት ለእኛ እንድናውቀው እንደሚሆን ትመለከታለህ፤

፬ እንግዲህ እኛን ተሳድቦህ ለመጣል ህዝቡንም ለመዋሸትና ለማታለል በእኛ ላይ ያደረከው ዕቅድህ እጅግ የረቀቀ ዕቅድ እንደሆነ እናውቃለን፣ እንደዲያብሎስም የረቀቀ ነው—

፭ አሁን ይህ የጠላትህ ዕቅድ ነበር፣ እናም እርሱ ስልጣኑን በአንተ አሳይቷል። አሁን ለአንተ ያልኩትን ለሁሉም እንደምላቸው እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ።

፮ እናም እነሆ ለሁላችሁም እላችኋለሁ ይህ የጠላት ወጥመድ ነው፣ ይህም ለእርሱ እንድትገዙ ለማድረግ ለምርኮ ባለው ስልጣኑ መሰረት፣ በሰንሰለቱም ይከባችሁ ዘንድ፣ በዘለአለማዊ ጥፋት ሰንሰለት ይመታችሁም ዘንድ፣ ይህን ህዝብ ለመያዝ ያጠመደው ነው።

፯ እንግዲህ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ዚኤዘርም እጅግ መንቀጥቀጥ ጀመረ፣ እርሱም በይበልጥ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል አምኗልና፤ እናም ደግሞ አልማና አሙሌቅ ስለእርሱ እውቀት እንዳላቸው አመነ፣ የልቡን ሀሳብና መሻት እንደሚያውቁ አምኗልና፤ በትንቢት መንፈስ መሠረት ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች እንዲያውቁ ስልጣን ተሰጥቷቸው ነበርና።

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

፳፯ እናም ዚኤዘርም ስለእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ይበልጥ ያውቅ ዘንድ በትጋት ይጠይቃቸው ጀመር። እናም ለአልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ አሙሌቅ ስለሙታን ትንሳኤ፣ ሁሉም ከሞት ይነሳል፣ ፃድቅም ሆነ ኃጢአተኛ፣ እናም በሰራቸው እንዲፈረድባቸው በእግዚአብሔር ፊት መጥተው ይቆማሉ ያለው ምን ማለቱ ነው?

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

፳፱ እናም አሁን አልማ እነዚህን ነገሮችን እንዲህ በማለት ማብራራት ጀመረ፣ ለብዙዎች የእግዚአብሔርን ሚስጥር እንዲያውቁ ተስጥቷቸዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ ለሰዎች ልጆች ለእርሱ በሚሰጡት ትኩረትና ትጋት መሰረት እንዲሰጣቸው ከሚፈቅደው የቃሉ ክፍል በስተቀር እንዳይካፈሉ ጥብቅ ትዕዛዝ ውስጥ ገብተው ነበር።

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

፴ እናም ስለዚህ ልቡን የሚያጠጥር፣ እርሱም ከቃሉ ትንሹን ክፍል ይቀበላል፤ እናም ልቡንም የማያጠጥር ለእርሱ ሁሉንም በሙላት የእግዚአብሔርን ሚስጥር እስከሚያውቅ ድረስ ከቃሉ ትልቅ ክፍል ይሰጠዋል።

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

፴፩ እናም ልባቸውን የሚያጠጥሩ ሚስጥሩን በተመለከተ ምንም እስከማያውቁ ድረስ የቃሉ ትንሽ ክፍል ይሰጣቸዋል፤ እና ከእዚያም በዲያብሎስ ምርኮ ይወሰዳሉና፣ እስከሚጠፋም በፈቃዱ ይመራሉ። እናም የሲኦል ስንሰለትም ማለት ይህ ነው።

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

፴፪ እናም አሙሌቅ ሞትን በተመለከተ፣ ከሚሞት ሰውነት ወደ ማይሞት ሰውነት ስለመነሳት፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔርም የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት እንደሰራችን ሊፈረድብን ስለመቅረባችን በግልፅ ተናግሯል።

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

፴፫ ከዚያም ልባችን ከጠጠረ፣ አዎን፣ በውስጣችን እስካማይገኝ ድረስ በቃሉ ልባችንን ካጠጠርን፣ ከዚያም በኋላ ጉዳያችን የከፋ ይሆናል፣ እንኮነናለን።

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inasmuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

፴፬ ቃላቶቻችን ይፈርዱብናል፣ አዎን ሰራዎቻችን ሁሉ ይፈርዱብናል፤ እንከን የሌላብንም በመሆን እንገኝም፣ እናም ሀሳባችንም ደግሞ ይፈርድብናል፤ እናም በዚህ አስከፊ ሁኔታ ወደ አምላካችን ለመመልከት እንደፍርም፣ እናም አለቶቻችንና ተራራዎቻችን ከእርሱ ፊት እንዲደብቁን በላያችን ላይ እንዲወድቁ ብናዛቸው እጅግ እንደሰታለን።

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

፲፭ ነገር ግን ይህ ሊሆን አይችልም፣ ወደፊት መምጣትና በክብሩ እናም በሰልጣኑና በኃይሉ፣ በክብሩና በአለቅነቱ መቆም፣ እናም በዘላለማዊ እፍረታችን ፍርድ በሙሉ ትክክል እንደሆነ፣ እርሱም በሰራው ሁሉ ትክክል እንደሆነና፣ ለሰው ልጆች መሃሪ እንደሆነ፣ እንዲሁም በሰው የሚያምኑትንና ለንሰሃ የሚሆን ፍሬን የሚያሰገኙትን ማንኛውንም ሰው ለማዳን ሰልጣን እንዳለው እናረጋግጣለን።

፲፮ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ ሞት፣ እንዲሁም መንፈሳዊው ሞት የሆነው ሁለተኛው ሞት ይመጣል፣ ከአዚያም በኋላ ጊዜያዊ ሞትን የሚሞት መንፈሳዊ የሆነውን ሞትን ይሞትበታል፤ አዎን፣ ለፅድቅም በሆነ ነገር ሁሉ ይሞታል።

፲፯ ቅጣታቸው እንደ አሳት ባህርና ዲን፣ ነበልባሉም ከዘላለም እስከዘላለም ወደ ሰማይ እንደሚወጣው የሚሆንበት ጊዜም ይህ ነው፤ እና ያም በሰይጣን ኃይልና ምርኮ መሰረት፣ እነርሱን እንደፈቃዱ ተገዢ በማድረግ፣ በዘላለማዊው ጥፋት የሚታሰሩበት ጊዜ ነው።

፲፰ ከዚያም፣ እላችኋለሁ፣ እነርሱም ቤዛነት እንዳልተፈጸመ ሆነው ይቆያሉ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ መሰረት ሊድኑ አይችሉም፤ እናም መሞት አይችሉም ምክንያቱም ከእንግዲህ መበሰበሰ አይኖርምና።

፲፱ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ይህንን ንግግር እንደጨረሰ፣ ህዝቡ ይበልጥ መገረም ጀመረ፤

፳፻ ነገር ግን አንቲዮና የሚባል ሰው ነበር፣ በእነርሱም መካከል ዋና ገዢ የነበረው መጣና እንዲህ አለው፣ ሰው ከሞት ይነሳል እናም ከሙታን ወደማይሞተውም ይለወጣል፣ ነፍሱም በጭራሽ አይሞትም ብለህ የተናገርከው ይህ ምንድን ነው?

፳፭ የመጀመሪያ ቤተሰቦቻችን እንዳይገቡና ከህይወት ዛፍ እንዳይወሰዱ እናም ለዘላለም እንዳይኖሩ እግዚአብሔር ኪሩቤልንና የነበልባሉን ሰይፍ በዔድን ገነት በሰተምሰራቅ አስቀምጧል በማለት ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ሰ የተናገሩት ምን ማለት ነው? እናም ለዘላለም እንዲኖሩ ምንም እድል እንዳልነበረ እንመለከታለን።

፳፮ አሁን አልማ እንዲህ አለው፣ እኔ እንድገልፀው የነበረው ነገር ይህ ነው። አሁን አዳም በእግዚአብሔር ቃል መሰረት የተከለከለውን ፍሬ በመመገቡ መውደቁን ተመልክተናል፤ እናም በመውደቁ የሰው ዘር በሙሉ የሚጠፋና የሚወድቅ እንደሆነም በዚህ እናያለን።

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

፳፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ እላችኋለሁ፤ በዚያን ጊዜ ለአዳም ከህይወት ዛፍ ፍሬ መመገብ የሚቻለው ቢሆን ኖሮ፣ ሞት አይኖርም ነበር፤ እናም ቃሉም ዋጋ የሌለው ይሆን ነበር፤ ይህንን በበላችሁ ጊዜ በእርግጥ ትሞታላችሁ ብሎም ተናግሮ ነበርና፤ እግዚአብሔርንም ውሸታም ያደርገው ነበር።

፳፬ እናም ሞት፣ አዎን፣ በአሙሌቅ የተነገረው ጊዜያዊ ሞት በሰው ዘር ላይ መምጣቱን እንመለከታለን፤ ይሁን እንጂ የሰው ልጅ ንስሃ ይገባ ዘንድ የተሰጠው ጊዜ ነበር፤ ስለሆነም ይህ ህይወት የሙከራ ጊዜ፣ እግዚአብሔርን ለመገናኘት የመዘጋጀ ጊዜ፣ ከትንሣኤ በኋላ ለሚሆነው እኛ ለተነገርነው መጨረሻ ለሌለው ሁኔታ መዘጋጀ ጊዜ ይሆናል።

፳፭ አሁን፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ በነበረው የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ባይሆን ኖሮ፣ የሙታን ትንሳኤ ሊሆን ባልቻለም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን የተነገረውን የሙታን ትንሳኤ የሚያመጣ የቤዛነት ዕቅድም ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

፳፮ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችን ሄደውና የህይወት ዛፍን መመገብ ቢችሉ ኖሮ የሚዘጋጁበት ሁኔታ ሳይኖራቸው ለዘላለም ደስታ የሌላቸው በሆኑ ነበር፤ እናም የቤዛነት ዕቅድም በከሸፈና የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ውጤት ሳይኖረው ዋጋ የሌለው በሆነም ነበር።

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን ሰዎች መሞት እንዳለባቸው ተመድቦ ነበር፤ እናም ከሞት በኋላ፣ ለፍርድ፣ እንዲሁም እኛ የተናገርነው ዓይነት የመጨረሻ ለሆነ ፍርድ መምጣት አለባቸው።

፳፰ እናም እግዚአብሔር እነዚህ ነገሮች ለሰው ልጆች መምጣት እንዳለባቸው ከመደብ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ሰዎችም የተወሰኑላቸውን ነገር በተመለከተ ማወቅ እንደነበረባቸው ተመለከተ፤

፳፱ ስለዚህ ከእነርሱ ጋር እንዲነጋገሩ፣ ሰዎችንም ክብሩን እንዲመለከቱ ያደረገ መላዕክት ላከ።

፴ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ ሰውን መጥራት ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ እግዚአብሔር ከሰዎች ጋር ተነጋገረ፤ እናም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ተዘጋጅቶ የነበረውን የቤዛነት ዕቅድም እንዲያውቁ አደረገ፤ እናም ይህን እንዲያውቁ ያደረገው በእምነታቸውና በንስሃቸው እንዲሁም በቅዱሱ ስራቸው መሰረት ነው።

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

፲፩ ስለዚህ፣ ጊዜያዊ የነበሩትንም ነገሮች በተመለከተ የመጀመሪያዎቹን ትዕዛዛት በመተላለፋቸው፣ እናም እንደ አማልክት መልካሙን ከክፉ እንዲያውቁ በመሆናቸው፣ እራሳቸውን ለመስራት በሚችሉበት ሁኔታ፣ ወይም እንደፍላጎታቸውና እንደደስታቸው፣ ክፉ ወይም መጥፎውን ለማድረግ በሚችሉበት ቦታ እያሉ፣ ለሰዎች ትዕዛዛትን ሰጠ።

፲፪ ስለዚህ እግዚአብሔር ስለቤዛነት ዕቅድ እንዲያውቁ ካደረገ በኋላ፣ ቅጣቱ ሁለተኛ ሞት፣ ይህም ጻድቃንን በሚመለከት ነገሮች የዘለአለም ሞት በሆነው መጥፎ እንዲያስረዱ ትዕዛዛትን ሰጣቸው፤ ለእንደነዚህ ዓይነቱ የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ኃይል ሊኖረው አይችልምና፣ ምክንያቱም በቸሩ አምላክ ኃያልነት የፍርድ ስራዎች ሊጠፉ አይቻላቸውምና።

፲፫ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር በልጁ ስም ሰዎችን ጠራ፣ (ይህም የተዘረጋው የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ነው) እንዲህም አለ፡ ገሰሃ የምትገቡ፣ እናም ልባችሁን የማታጠጥሩ ከሆነ፣ ከዚያም በአንድያ ልጄ አማካኝነት ምህረትን አደርግላችኋለሁ።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ማንኛውም ገሰሃ የሚገቡ እናም ልባቸውን የሚያጠጥሩ ለኃጢአታቸው ስርየት በአንድያ ልጄ አማካኝነት ምህረት ይገባቸዋል፤ እና እነዚህም በእረፍቱ ይገባሉ።

፲፭ እናም ማንኛውም ልባቸውን የሚያጠጥሩና ክፋትን የሚያደርጉ፣ እነሆ፣ በእረፍቱ እንደማይገቡ በቁጣዬ እምላለሁ።

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነሆ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ልባችሁን የምታጠጥሩ ከሆነ በጌታ እረፍት ውስጥ አትገቡም፤ ስለዚህ መተላለፋችሁ ቁጣውን በእናንተ ላይ በመጀመሪያ ጥፋት እንዳደረገው እንዲልክ ያነሳሳዋል፣ አዎን፣ ለዘለዓለም ለነፍሳችሁ ጥፋት እንደቃሉ የመጨረሻ ቁጣውን እንደ መጀመሪያው ይልካል፣ ስለዚህ በቃሉ መሰረት በመጀመሪያው ሞት ልክ እንደ መጨረሻው ይሆንባችኋል።

፲፯ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ስለምናውቅና፣ እውነት በመሆናቸው፣ ገሰሃ እንግባና ልባችንን አናጠጥር፣ እግዚአብሔር ለእኛ በሰጠው በሁለተኛው ትዕዛዝ ቁጣውን በእኛ እንዲያደርግም እንቀሰቅሰው፤ ነገር ግን በቃሉ መሰረት ወደተዘጋጀው የእግዚአብሔር እረፍት እንግባ።

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

አልማ ፲፫

፩ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ትዕዛዛት ለልጆቹ ወደሰጠበት ጊዜ አዕምሮአችሁን እጠቁማለሁ፤ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ነገሮች ለህዝብ እንዲያስተምሩ የልጁ ቅዱስ ሥርዓት መሰረት በሆነው በቅዱስ ሥርዓቱ ካህናትን መሾሙን እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ።

፪ እናም ካህናቱ የተሾሙት በልጁ ሥርዓት መሠረት ነበር፣ በሰርዓቱም ህዝቡ ወልድን ለቤዛቸው በምን ሁኔታ መመልከት እንዳለባቸው ያውቁ ዘንድ ነው።

፫ እናም የተሾሙበት ሥርዓት በዚህ ሁኔታ ነበር—እናም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ በእግዚአብሔር በቀደመው እውቀት መሰረት በእምነታቸውና በመልካም ስራዎቻቸው ተጠርተዋል፣ ተዘጋጅተዋል፤ በመጀመሪያ ደረጃ መጥፎና ጥሩውን እንዲመርጡ ተትተዋል፤ ስለዚህ መልካሙን በመምረጣቸውና ታላቅ እምነትን በመለማመዳቸው በቅዱሱ አጠራር፣ አዎን፣ ለእንደእነዚህ አይነት ሰዎች በቤዛነት ዝግጅት ጋር፣ እናም መሰረት፣ በተዘጋጀው ቅዱስ ጥሪ ተጠርተዋል።

፬ እናም በእምነታቸው የተነሳ ለዚህ ቅዱሱ ጥሪ እንደዚህም ተጠርተዋል፣ ይህ ሆኖ ሳለ፣ ሌሎች በልባቸው ጠጣርነትና በአዕምሮአቸው መታወር የእግዚአብሔርን መንፈስ አይቀበሉ፣ በሌላ መልኩ፣ በዚህ ባይሆን ኖሮ እንደወንድሞቻቸው ታላቅ መብት ይኖራቸው ነበር።

፭ በአጠቃላይ በመጀመሪያ ደረጃ እነርሱ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር አንድ ዓይነት አቋም ነበራቸው፣ ይህ ቅዱሱ ጥሪም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ልባቸውን ላላጠጠሩት ተዘጋጅቷል፣ የተዘጋጀውም በአንድያ ልጁ የኃጢያት ክፍያ አማካኝነት በኩል እና ውስጥ ነበር—

፮ እናም በቅዱሱ ጥሪው እንዲህ በመጠራትና፣ ወደ እረፍቱም ይገቡ ዘንድ ለሰው ልጆች ትዕዛዛቱን ለማስተማር በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ሰርዓት መሠረት ወደ ታላቁ ክህነት ተሹመዋል—

፯ ይህም ታላቁ ክህነት ከአለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ከነበረው ከወልድ ሥርዓት መሰረት ነው፤ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር፣ መጀመሪያም ቀናት ሆነ ፍፃሜ አመታት የሌለው፤ ለሁሉም ነገር በቀደመው እውቀቱ መሰረት ከዘለዓለም አስከዘለዓለም የተዘጋጀ ነው—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

፳፯ አሁን በእንደዚህ ዓይነት ሁኔታ ተሹመዋል—በቅዱሱ ጥሪም ተጠርተውና፣ በቅዱሱ ስርዓት ተሹመው፣ ጥሪውና፣ ሹመቱ፣ እና ታላቁ ክህነት መጀመሪያና መጨረሻ የሌለውን የቅዱሱን ስርዓት ታላቅ ክህነት ተቀብለዋል—

፳፰ መጀመሪያ ቀናት ሆነ መጨረሻ አመታት በሌለው፣ በፀጋ፣ ፍትህና እውነት በተሞላው በአብ አንድያ ልጅ፣ እንደ ወልድ ስርዓት መሠረት ለዘለአለም ሊቀ ካህናት እንደዚህ ሆኑ። እናም እንደዚህ ነው። አሜን።

፳፱ እንግዲህ፣ ስለቅዱሱ ስርዓትም ሆነ ስለዚህ ታላቁ ክህነት በተመለከተ በተናገርኩ ጊዜ፣ ብዙዎች የተሾሙና የእምላክ ሊቀ ካህን የሆኑ ነበሩ፤ እናም ይህም በታላቁ እምነታቸውና ንስሃ በመግባታቸው፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ባላቸው ብፁዕነት ንስሃ ለመግባትና ከመጥፋትም ፅድቅን ለመሰራት በመምረጣቸው ምክንያት ነው፤

፴፬ ስለዚህ በዚህ ቅዱስ ስርዓት ተጠርተው ነበር፣ ተቀድሰውም ነበር፣ እናም በበጎ ደም ልብሳቸው እስከሚነጣ ታጥበው ነበር።

፴፭ እንግዲህ እነርሱ በቅዱስ መንፈስ ከተቀደሱ በኋላ፣ ልብሳቸው ከነጣ፣ በእምላክ ፊት ንፁህና እንከን የለሽ ከሆኑ፣ ኃጢአትን ከመጥላት በቀር ሊመለከቱትም አልቻሉም፣ እናም ንፁህ የሆኑና ወደጌታ እምላካቸው እረፍት የገቡ ብዙዎች፣ እጅግ ብዙዎች፣ ነበሩ።

፴፮ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ራሳችሁን ትሁት እንድታደርጉ፣ እናም ለንስሃም ብቁ የሆነ ፍሬን እንድታመጡ፣ እናንተም በእረፍቱ ትገቡ ዘንድ እፈልጋለሁ።

፴፬ አዎን፣ እኔ በተናገርኩት ተመሳሳይ ሥርዓት መሠረት ሊቀ ካህን የነበረው፣ ታላቁ ክህነትን ለዘለአለም እንደተቀበለው መልክ ይዳቅ ጊዜ እንደነበሩት ሰዎች ራሳችሁን ትሁት አድርጉ።

፴፯ እናም ለዚህ መልክ ይዳቅ ነበር አብርሃም አሰራት የከፈለው፣ አዎን፣ አባታችን አብርሃም ከነበረው ሀብት እንኳን አንድ አሰረኛውን አሰራት ከፍሏል።

፴፰ አሁን ይህ የሥርዓቱም ሁኔታ ሆኖ ወይም ይህ የእርሱ ሥርዓት ሆኖ፣ በዚህ ህዝብ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ልጅ ይመለከቱ ዘንድ እነዚህ ስርዓቶች በዚህ ሁኔታ ነበር የተሰጡት፣ እና ይህም ለኃጢአታቸው ሥርዓትም ወደፊት ወደእርሱ ይመለከቱት ዘንድ፣ ወደጌታም ዕረፍት ይገቡበት ዘንድ ነው።

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

፲፯ እንግዲህ ይህ መልክ ዪዳቅ በሳሌም ምድር ንጉሥ ነበር፤ እናም ህዝቡም በክፋትና በእርኩስታቸው የጠነከሩ ነበሩ፤ አዎን፤ ሁሉም የተሳሳቱ ነበሩ፤ በሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋትም ተሞልተው ነበር።

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

፲፰ ነገር ግን መልክ ዪዳቅ ታላቅ እምነትን ተለማመደ፤ የታላቅ ክህነት ሀላፊነትን በእግዚአብሔር ቅዱሱ ስርዓት መሰረት በመቀበል ለህዝቡ ንስሃን ሰበከ። እናም እነሆ፤ እነርሱ ንስሃ ገቡ፤ በዘመኑም መልክ ዪዳቅ ሰላምን በምድር ውስጥ መሰረተ፤ ስለዚህ የሳሌም ንጉሥ በመሆኑ የሰላም አለቃ ተብሎ ተጠርቷል፤ እናም በአባቱም በታች ነገሰ።

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

፲፱ አሁን፤ ከፊቱ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ ከእርሱ በኋላ ደግሞ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን ማንም ታላቅ አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ፤ በይበልጥ ስለእርሱ በልዩ ጠቅሰዋል።

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

፳ አሁን ይህን ጉዳይ እንደገና መናገር አያስፈልገኝም፤ የተናገርኩት ይበቃል። እነሆ፤ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ከፊታችሁ ይገኛሉ፤ የምታጣምሙት ከሆነ ለጥፋታችሁ ይሆናል።

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

፳፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት ለእነርሱ በተናገረ ጊዜ፤ እጅን ዘርግቶ በኃይል እንዲህ በማለት ይጮህ ነበር፤ አሁን የንስሃ ጊዜ ነው፤ የደህንነት ቀን ቀርባለችና፤

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

፳፪ አዎን፤ እናም የጌታ ድምፅ፤ በመልእኩ እንደበት፤ ለሀገር ሁሉ አውጇል፤ አዎን፤ በታላቅ ደስታ የምሰራች ወሬ ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ያውጀዋል፤ አዎን፤ እናም በህዝቡ መካከል፤ አዎን፤ በምድር ፊት እስከዳርቻ ለተበተኑትም እንኳን፤ እነዚህን የምሰራች እንዲሰሙ ያደርጋል፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ወደእኛ መጥተዋል።

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

፳፫ እናም እኛ እንድንረዳቸው ዘንድ፤ እንዳንሳሳት ዘንድ፤ በግልፅ አባባል እንድናውቃቸው ተደርገዋል፤ እናም ይህም የሆነው በባዕድ ምድር በመዘዋወራችን ነው፤ ስለዚህ፤ እኛ እነዚህን የምሰራች ወሬዎች በወይን እትክልት ቦታዎቻችን ሁሉ ስለታወጁልን በይበልጥ ሞገስን አግኝተናል።

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

፳፬ እነሆም፤ መላዕክት በዚህ ጊዜ በምድራችን ላይ ለብዙዎች እያወጁ ናቸው፤ እናም የዚህም ዓላማ በክብሩ ለሚመጣበት ጊዜ የሰው ልጆችን ልብ ለማዘጋጀት ነው።

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

፳፭ እናም አሁን ስለእርሱ መምጣት በመላዕክት አንደበት የሚነገሩትን አስደሳች ዜና ለማዳመጥ ብቻ እየጠበቅን ነን፤ ጊዜው እየመጣ ነው፤ እንዴት እንደፈጠነ እናውቅም። በእኔ ቀናት እንዲሆን ዘንድ እግዚአብሔር ይፍቀደው፤ ነገር ግን በፍጥነት ወይም ዘግይቶ ቢሆን ይሁን፤ በእዚህም እደሰታለሁ።

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

፳፮ እናም ይህ በመልእኩ አንደበት፣ በሚመጣበት ጊዜ፣ እርሱን በተመለከተ በውስጣቸው በነበረው የትንቢት መንፈስ መሰረት የተናገሩት የአባቶቻቸው ቃላት እንደሚሟሉ ለእውነተኛና ለቅዱሳን ሰዎች እንዲታወቅ ይደረጋል።

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

፳፯ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ከልቤ ውስጣዊ ቦታ፣ እዎን እስከህመም በሚሆን በታላቅ ጭንቀት፣ ቃሌን ታደምጡኝ ዘንድ፣ እናም ኃጢአታችሁን ታስወግዱና፣ የንስሃችሁን ጊዜ እንዳታዘገዩት እመኛለሁ፤

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

፳፰ ነገር ግን በጌታ ፊት ራሳችሁን ትሁት ታደርጉ ዘንድና፣ ቅዱስ ስሙን ትጠሩ ዘንድ፣ እናም ያለማቋረጥ እንድትተጉ እንዲሁም እንድትጸልዩ፣ ከሚቻላችሁ በላይም እንዳትፈተኑም፣ እናም ትሁት፣ የዋህ፣ ታዛዥ፣ ታጋሽ፣ ፍቅር የሞላባችሁና ፅኑ መከራን ቻይ በመሆን በመንፈስ ቅዱስ የምትመሩ እንድትሆኑ እመኛለሁ።

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

፳፱ በጌታ እምነት ይኑራችሁ፣ ዘለአለማዊ ህይወትን ለመቀበል በተሰፋ የተሞላችሁ ሁኑ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ እንድትሉና ወደእረፍቱም እንድትገቡ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ሁልጊዜም በልባችሁ ይሁን።

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

፴ እናም ቁጣውን በላያችሁ ላይ እንዳታመጡ፣ በሲኦል ስንሰለትም እንዳትታሰሩ፣ በሁለተኛ ሞትም እንዳትሰቃዩ፣ ጌታ ንስሃን ይሰጣችሁ።

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

፴፩ እናም አልማ በዚህ መፅሐፍ ያልተፃፉ ከዚህ የበለጡትን ብዙ ቃላት ለህዝቡ ተናገረ።

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

አልማ 10

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ለህዝቡ መናገሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ ብዙዎች በቃሉ አመኑ፤ እናም ንስሃ መግባትና ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍትን መመርመር ጀመሩ።

፪ ነገር ግን ብዙዎች አልማንና አሙሌቅን ለማጥፋት ፈልገው ነበር፤ አልማ ለዚህከሮም በተናገራቸው ቃላት ግልፅነት ተቆጥተው ነበርና፤ እናም ደግሞ አሙሌቅ ዋሽቶናል፤ እናም ህጋቸውንና ደግሞ የህግ አዋቂዎቻቸውንና ዳኞቻቸውን ተሳድሷል ብለዋልና።

፫ እናም ደግሞ በአልማና በአሙሌቅ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም በክፋታቸው ላይ በግልፅ በመመስከራቸው፣ በድብቅ ሊያጠፏቸው ፈለጉ።

፬ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ አላጠፏቸውም፤ ነገር ግን ወሰዱዎቻቸውና በጠንካራ ገመድ አሰሩአቸው፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ዋና ዳኛ ፊት አቀረቡአቸው።

፭ እናም ህዝቡ ወደፊት መጣና በእነርሱ ላይ መስከረ— በህጉ ላይና በህግ አዋቂዎቻቸውና በምድሪቱ ዳኞች፣ ደግሞም በምድሪቷ ላይ ያሉትን ህዝቦች ሁሉ ላይ ክፉ እንደተናገሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ ከእነድ አምላክ በላይ እንደሌለና እርሱ በህዝቡ መካከል ልጁን ይልካል፤ ነገር ግን እያድናቸውም ብለዋል በማለት መስከሩባቸው፣ እናም እንደዚህ ዓይነት ብዙ ነገሮችን ህዝቡ በአልማና በአሙሌቅ ላይ መስከረ። አሁን ይህ የተደረገው በምድሪቱ ዋና ዳኛ ፊት ነበር።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በተነገሩበት ቃላት ዚህከሮም ተገርሞ ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ በህዝቡም መካከል በውሽታም ቃላቱ ስለአዕምሮአቸው መታወር ያደረገውን ያውቃል፤ እናም ነፍሱ በጥፋቱ እውቀት የተነሳ መስቃየት ጀመረች፤ አዎን በሲኦል ህመም መከብብ ጀመረ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለህዝቡም እንዲህ በማለት መጮህ ጀመረ፤ እነሆ እኔ ጥፋተኛ ነኝ፤ እነዚህ ሰዎችም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እንከን የለሽ ናቸው። እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ ለእነርሱ መለመን ጀመረ፤ ነገር ግን እንዲህ በማለት ሰደቡት፤ እንተ ደግሞ በዲያብሎስ የተያዘህ ነህን? እናም ተፋቡት፣ ከእነርሱም መካከል እርሱን፣ እናም ደግሞ በአልማና በአሙሌቅ በተነገሩት ቃላት ያመኑትን ሁሉ አውጥተው ጣሉ፤ እናም አውጥተው ጣሉአቸው፣ በድንጋይ የሚወረውሩባቸው ሰዎችንም ላኩባቸው።

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

፳፮ እናም ሚስቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን በአንድ ላይ አመጡ፤ እናም ማንኛውም በእግዚአብሔር ያመነም ሆነ እንዲያምን የተማረን ወደ እሳት እንዲጣል አደረጉ፤ ደግሞም ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍትን የያዙትን መዛግብቶቻቸውን አመጡና፤ ደግሞ በእሳት ይቃጠሉና ይጠፉ ዘንድ ወደእሳቱ ጣሉአቸው።

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና አሙሌቅን ወስዶና በእሳት የተበሉትን ጥፋት ይመለከቱ ዘንድ ወደ ሰማዕት ቦታ ወስዶቻቸው።

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

፲ እናም አሙሌቅ በእሳት የተበሉትን ሴቶችና ልጆች ስቃይ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እርሱም ደግሞ ህመሙ ተሰምቶት ነበር፤ እናም ለአልማ እንዲህ አለ፡ ይህንን አስቃቂ ትዕይንት እንዴት ልንመለከት እንችላለን? ስለዚህ እጆችንን እንዘርጋ፤ በውስጣችን ያለውንም የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል እንለማመድ፤ እናም እነርሱን ከነበልባሉ እሳት እናድናቸው።

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

፲፩ ነገር ግን አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ መንፈስ እጆቼን መዘርጋት እንደሌለብኝ ገታኝ፤ እነሆ ጌታ ወደእራሱ በክብር ተቀብሏቸዋልና፤ እናም ይህንን ነገር እንዲያደርጉ ወይም እንደልባቸው መጠጠር ህዝቡ ይህን ነገር ያደርጉ ዘንድ የፈቀደላቸው፤ በእነርሱ ላይ በቁጣው የሚመጣው ፍርድ ጻድቅ ይሆን ዘንድ ነው፤ እናም የንፁሃን ደም በእነርሱ ላይ ለምስክርነት ይቆማል፤ አዎን፤ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀን በእነርሱ ላይ በኃይል ይጮሃል።

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

፲፪ አሁን አሙሌቅ ለአልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ እኛንም ደግሞ ምናልባት ያቃጥሉን ይሆናል።

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

፲፫ እናም አልማ እንዲህ አለ፡ እንደጌታ ፈቃድ ይሁን። ነገር ግን እነሆ ሰራችን አላለቀም፤ ስለዚህ አያቃጥሉንም።

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

፲፬ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ እሳቱ የተጣሉት ሰውነቶቻቸው እናም ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር አብረው የተጣሉት መዝገቦቻቸው ሲቃጠሉ፣ የምድሪቱ ዋና ዳኛ፣ በታሰሩት በአልማና በአሙሌቅ ፊት ቆመ፤ እናም በእጁ ፊታቸው ላይ መታቸውና እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እናንተ ይህንን ካያችሁ በኋላ በድጋሚ ለዚህ ህዝብ ወደ እሳቱ ባህርና ዲን እንደሚጣሉ ትሰብካላችሁን?

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

፲፭ እነሆ፣ በእሳት የተጣሉትን ለማዳን ሀይል እንደሌላችሁ ትመለከታላችሁ፤ ወይም እግዚአብሔርም እነርሱ ከእናንተ እምነት በመሆናቸው አላዳናቸውም። እናም ዳኛው በድጋሚ ፊታቸው ላይ መታቸው፣ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ጠየቃቸው፣ ስለራሳችሁስ ምን ትላላችሁ?

፲፮ እሁን ይህ ዳኛ ጌዴዎንን ከገደለው ኔሆር ሰርዓትና እምነት ጋር ነበር።

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና አሙሌቅ ምንም አልመለሱለትም፤ እናም በድጋሚ መታቸውና ወደ ወህኒ ቤት እንዲጣሉ ለባለሰልጣኖች አሳልፎ ሰጣቸው።

፲፰ እናም ለሶስት ቀናት በወህኒ በተጣሉ ጊዜ፣ የኔሆር ኃይማኖተኞች የሆኑ ብዙ ጠበቃዎችና ዳኞች፣ እንዲሁም ካህናት፣ እንዲሁም መምህራን መጡ፤ እናም እነርሱን ለማየት ወደ ወህኒ ቤት መጡና፣ ስለ ብዙ ቃላት ጠየቁአቸው፣ ነገር ግን ምንም አልመለሱላቸውም ነበር።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዳኛው ከፊታቸው ቆመና እንዲህ አላቸው፣ የዚህን ህዝብ ጥያቄ ለምን አትመልሱም? ወደነበልባሉ እናንተን ለመጣል ስልጣን እንዳለኝ አታውቁምን? እናም እንዲናገሩ አዘዛቸው፣ ነገር ግን ምንም አልመለሱም።

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ጉዳያቸውም ተመልሰው ሄዱ፣ ነገር ግን በሚቀጥለው ቀን በድጋሚ መጡ፤ እናም ዳኛው ደግሞ በድጋሚ በፊታቸው ላይ መታቸው። ብዙዎችም ደግሞ መጡና፣ መቷቸው፣ እንዲህም አሉአቸው፣ ይህንን ህዝብ ለመፍረድና ህጋችንን ለመኮነን በድጋሚ ትቆማላችሁን? እንደዚህ ዓይነት ታላቅ ሀይል ካላችሁ ራሳችሁን ለምን አታድኑም?

፳፩ እናም እንደነዚህ ያሉ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገሩአቸው፣ ጥርሶቻቸውንም አፏጨባቸውና፣ ተፋባቸው፣ እንዲህም አሉአቸው፣ ስንኮነንስ ምን እንመስላለን?

፳፪ እናም እንደነዚህ ያሉ ብዙ ነገሮችን አሉዋቸው፣ አዎን፣ እንደነዚህ ያሉ ነገሮችን ሁሉ እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩዋቸው። ለብዙ ቀናትም ተሳለቁባቸው። እናም እንዲራቡ ምግብ፣ እንዲጠሙ ውሃን ለብዙ ቀናት ከለከሉአቸው፤ ደግሞም እንዲራቆቹ ልብሶቻቸውን ነጠቁአቸው፤ እናም በጠንካራ ገመድ ታስረው በወህኒ ቤት የቆዩት እንዲህ ነበር።

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ቀናት ከተሰቃዩ በኋላ (እና ይህም በአስረኛው ወር በአስራ ሁለተኛው ቀን በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ አስረኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ነበር) ዋናው የአምራካ ዋና ዳኛና፣ ብዙ መምህራናቻቸውና፣ የህግ አዋቂዎቻቸው፣ አልማና አሙሌቅ በሲባጎ ወደ ታሰሩበት ወህኒ ቤት ሄዱ።

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

፳፬ እናም ዋናው ዳኛ በፊታቸው ቆመና፣ በድጋሚ መታቸው፣ እንዲህም አለ፡ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ካላችሁ ራሳችሁን አስለቅቁ፣ ከእዚያም እኛም በቃላችሁ መሰረት ጌታ ይህንን ህዝብ እንደሚያጠፋ እናምናለን።

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም፣ አስከመጨረሻውም እነዚህን ቃላት ደግመው እየተናገሩ፣ ወደ እነርሱ ተጠጉና መቼቸው፤ እናም የመጨረሻው በተናገራቸው ወቅት የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በአልማና በአሙሌቅ ላይ ነበር፣ እናም ተነሰተው በእግራቸው ቆሙ።

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

፳፮ እናም አልማ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፡ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ ለምን ያህል ጊዜ ነው ይህንን ታላቅ ስቃይ የምንሰቃየው? አቤቱ ጌታ፣ አስከመዳን ድረስ በክርስቶስ ባለን እምነታችን መሰረት ጥንካሬን ሰጠን። እናም የታሰሩበትን ገመድ በጠሱት፤ ህዝቡም ይህንን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ መሸሽ ጀመሩ፣ የጥፋት ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ መጥቷልና።

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ፍርሃታቸው ታላቅ ስለነበር በመሬት ላይ ወደቁና፣ የወህኒ ቤቱን የመውጫ በር አላገኙትም ነበር፤ እናም መሬት በኃይል ተንቀጠቀጠች፣ የወህኒ ቤቱ ግድግዳም ለሁለት ተከፈለ ወደ ምድርም ወደቁ፣ እናም አልማና አሙሌቅን የመቼት ዋናው ዳኛና፣ የህግ አዋቂዎቻቸውና፣ ካህናት፣ እንዲሁም መምህራን በፍርስራሹ ተገደሉ።

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

፳፰ እናም አልማና አሙሌቅ ከወህኒ ቤቱ ወጡ፣ እናም አልተጎዱም ነበር፤ በክርስቶስ ላይ በነበራቸው እምነት ጌታ ኃይልን ሰጥቷቸዋልና። ወዲያውም ከእስር ቤቱ ወጡና፣ ከታሰሩበትም ገመድ ተፈትተው ነበር፤ እናም ወህኒ ቤቱ ፈራርሶ ወደቀና፣ ከአልማና ከአሙሌቅ በሰተቀር በወህኒ ቤቱ የነበሩት ነፍሳት ሁሉ ተገደለው ነበር፤ እናም በፍጥነት ወደ ከተማው ሄዱ።

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

፳፱

አሁን ጨኸቱን የሰሙ ሰዎች የሆነውን ለማወቅ ህዝቡ በሩጫ ተሰብስበው መጡ፤ አልማና አሙሌቅ ከእስር ቤት ወጥተው የወህኒ ቤቱ ግድግዳ ፈራርሶ በመሬት መውደቁን ሲመለከቱ በታላቅ ፍርሀት ተመቱና፤ ፍየል ከነልጆችዋ ከአንበሶች ፊት እንደምትሸሸው ከአልማና ከአሙሌቅ ፊት ሸሹ፤ እና እንደዚህም ከአልማና ከአሙሌቅ ፊት ሸሹ።

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

አልማ 15

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና አሙሌቅ ከከተማው እንዲወጡ ታዘው ነበር፤ እናም ወጥተው ሄዱና፤ ወደ ሲዶም ምድር ወጡ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ በአልማ ቃል በማመናቸው ከአሞኒያህ ምድር የተባረሩትንና በድንጋይ የተመቱትን ሰዎች ሁሉ አገኙአቸው።

፪ እናም በሚሰቶቻቸውና በልጆቻቸው ላይ የደረሱትን ሁሉና፣ ደግሞ እነርሱን በተመለከተ እናም ስለመዳናቸው ኃይል ተረኩላቸው።

፫ እናም ደግሞ ዚኤዘርም በክፋቱ የአዕምሮ ጭንቀት የተነሳ፣ አልማና አሙሌቅ ከእንግዲህም አይኖሩም በማለት በመገመቱ በሀይለኛ ንዳድ ታሞ በሲዶም ውስጥ ተኛ፤ እናም በክፋቱም ምክንያት ተገድለዋል ብሎ ገምቶ ነበር። እናም ይህም ታላቅ ኃጢአትና ሌሎች ኃጢአቶቹ፣ መዳኛ ሳያገኝ፣ እስከሚቆሰል ራሱን አስቃዩት፤ ስለዚህ በሚያቃጥል እሳት መንገብገብ ጀመረ።

፬ እንግዲህ፣ አልማና አሙሌቅ በሲዶም ምድር ውስጥ መሆናቸውን ሲሰማ፣ ልቡ መደፋፈር ጀመረ፤ እናም ወደ እርሱ እንዲመጡ ፈልጎ፣ በፍጥነት መልዕክት ላከባቸው።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላከውን መልዕክቱን ተቀብለው በፍጥነት ወደ እርሱ ሄዱ፤ ወደ ዚኤዘርም ቤት ገቡም፤ እናም ታሞ በአልጋው ላይ አገኙት፣ በንዳዲም ተዳክሞ ነበር፤ አዕምሮውም በክፋቱ ምክንያት እጅግ ቆሰሎ ነበር፤ እናም ሲመለከታቸው እጇን ዘረጋ፣ እንዲፈውሱትም ለመናቸው።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ በእጇ በመያዝ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ ለማዳን የሆነውን የክርስቶስን ኃይል ታምናለህን?

፯ እናም እንዲህ በማለት መለሰለት፡ አዎን፣ አንተ ያስተማርካቸውን ቃላት በሙሉ እምናለሁ።

፰ እናም አልማ እንዲህ አለ፡ በክርስቶስ ቤዛነት ካመንህ መፈወስ ትችላለህ።

፱ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለ፡ አዎን፣ እንደቃልህ እምናለሁ።

፲ እናም አልማ እንዲህ ሲል ወደ ጌታ ጮኸ፡ አቤቱ ጌታ አምላካችን፣ በዚህ ሰው ላይ ምህረትን አድርግና በክርስቶስ ባለው እምነቱ ፈውሰው።

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

፲፩ እናም አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ዚኤዘርም በእግሮቹ ዘለለና፣ መራመድ ጀመረ፤ ይህም የተደረገው በህዝቡ ሁሉ ታላቅ መገረም ነበር፣ እናም የዚህ እውቀትም በሲዶም ምድር ሁሉ ተሰራጨ።

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

፲፪ እናም አልማ በጌታ ዚኤዘርምን አጠመቀው፤ ከእዚያም ጊዜ ጀምሮ ለህዝቡ መሰበክ ጀመረ።

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

፲፫ እናም አልማ በሲዶም ምድር ቤተክርስቲያንን አቋቋመ፣ እናም ለመጠመቅ የፈለጉትን ሁሉ በጌታ ለማጥመቅ ካህናትንና መምህራንን ቀባ።

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ብዙ ነበሩ፤ በሲዶም ዙሪያ ካሉት ከሁሉም አካባቢ መጡና ተጠመቁ።

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

፲፭ ነገር ግን በአሞሊህ ምድር ያሉትን ሰዎች በተመለከተ፣ ልባቸው የጠጠረና እንገታቸው የደነደነ ሆኖ ቀጠለ፤ እናም የአልማንና የአሙሌቅን ኃይል በሙሉ የመጣው ከዲያብሎስ ነው እያሉ ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ ምክንያቱም ኃይማኖታቸው የኔሆር ነበርና፣ እናም ለኃጢአት ንስሃ መግባትንም አያምኑም ነበር።

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና አሙሌቅ፤ አሙሌቅ በአሞሊያህ ምድር የነበሩትን ሁሉንም ወርቅ፣ ብርና የከበሩ ነገሮችን ለእግዚአብሔር ቃል በመተው፣ በአንድ ወቅት ጓደኞቹ በነበሩት እናም በአባቱና በነገዱ ተወግዞ ነበር፤

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

፲፯ ስለሆነም፣ አልማ በሲዶም ቤተክርስቲያንን ካቋቋመ በኋላ፣ መገታቱን ተመለከተ፣ እዎን፣ ሰዎች ከልባቸው ኩራት እንደተገቱ፣ እናም ከሰይጣን፣ ከሞትና ከጥፋት እንዲድኑ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እራሳቸውን ትሁት ሲያደርጉ እናም በቅዱስ ስፍራቸው በመሰዊያ ፊት እግዚአብሔርን ለማምለክ ያለማቋረጥ ለመጠበቅና ለመጸለይ እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ መሰብሰብ እንደጀመሩ ተመለከተ፤

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

፲፰ እሁን አስቀድሜ እንደተናገርኩ እንዲሁም አልማ እነዚህን ነገሮች ከተመለከተ በኋላ፣ አሙሌቅን ወሰደና ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ይዘት ሄደ፣ ወደ ቤቱም ወሰደው፣ በመከራውም አገለገለውና በጌታ እንዲበረታ አደረገው።

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

፲፱ እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የነገሱበት አስረኛው የመሣፍንቱ የንግስ ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

አልማ 16

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፋውያን ላይ በመሣፍንቱ አሰራ አንደኛ ዓመት የንግሥት ዘመን፣ በሁለተኛው ወር አሰራ አምስተኛ ቀን፣ በዛራሔምላ ታላቅ ሰላም ሆነ፣ ጦርነትም ይሁን ፀብ ለተወሰኑ ዓመታት፣ እንዲሁም እስከ አሰራ አንደኛው ዓመት በሁለተኛው ወር እስከ አምስተኛው ቀን ድረስ እንኳን አልነበረም፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ የጦርነት ጨኸትተሰማ።

፪ እነሆም፣ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በምድረበዳው በኩል በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ ወደ አሞኒህ ከተማ ሄዱ፣ እናም ህዝቡን መግደል ከተማዋንም ማጥፋት ጀመሩ።

፫ እናም እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ኔፋውያን እነርሱን ከምድሪቱ ለማስወጣት በቂ ወታደሮችን ከመመልመልቸው በፊት፣ በአሞኒህ ከተማ ያሉትንና ደግሞ ጥቂት በኖህ ዳርቻ ዙሪያ ያሉትን ሰዎች አጠፋዋቸው፣ እናም ሌሎችን በምርኮኛነት ወደ ምድረበዳው ወሰዱአቸው።

፬ እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን ወደ ምድረበዳው በምርኮ የተወሰዱትን ለማግኘት ፈለጉ።

፭ ስለዚህ፣ በኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ላይ ዋና ሻምበል ሆኖ የተሾመው (ዘራም ተብሎ የሚጠራው፣ እናም ሌሂና አሃ የተባሉ ሁለት ወንድ ልጆች ያሉት)—እሁን ዘራምና ሁለቱ ወንድ ልጆቹ አልማ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ላይ ሊቀ ካህን መሆኑን በማወቃቸው፣ እናም የትንቢት መንፈስ እንዳለው በመስማታቸው፣ ስለዚህ ጌታ በላማናውያን በምርኮ የተወሰዱባቸውን ወንድሞቻቸውን ለመፈለግ ወደ ምድረበዳው የት መሄድ እንዳለባቸው ለማወቅ ወደ እርሱ ሄዱ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ይህንን ጉዳይ በተመለከተ ጌታን ጠየቀ። እናም አልማ ተመለሰና እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን በምድረበዳው በስተደቡብ በማንቲ ምድር ዳርቻ ራቅ ብሎ የሲዶምን ወንዝ ያቋርጣሉ። እናም እነሆ በሲዶም ወንዝ በስተምስራቅ ከእነርሱ ጋር ትገናኛላችሁ፣ እናም በላማናውያን በምርኮ የተወሰዱትን ወንድሞቻችሁን ጌታ ለእናንተ ይሰጣችኋል።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘራምና ወንድ ልጆቹ ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር የሲዶምን ወንዝ አቋርጡ፣ እናም በማንቲ ዳርቻ በምድረበዳው በስተደቡብ በኩል፣ በሲዶም ወንዝ በስተምስራቅ ዘመቱ።

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

፳፯ እናም በላማናውያን ወታደሮች ላይ መጡባቸው፣ እናም ላማናውያን ተበታተኑና ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ፤ እናም በላማናውያን የተማረኩ ወንድሞቻቸውን ወሰዱና፣ በምርኮ ከተወሰዱት ውስጥ አንድም ነፍስ አልሞተባቸውም ነበር። እናም በወንድሞቻቸው ምድራቸውን ሊወርሱ ዘንድ ተወሰዱ።

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

፳፱ እናም የመሣፍንቱ አሰራ አንደኛ ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ፤ ላማናውያን ከምድሪቱ ወጡና፣ የአሞኒህውያን ህዝቦችም ጠፋ፤ አዎን፣ በህይወት የነበሩ አሞናውያን ሁሉ፣ እናም ደግሞ በታላቅነቷ የተነሳ እግዚአብሔር ሊያጠፋት አይቻለውም የተባለላት ታላቋ ከተማቸውም ጠፋች።

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

፲ እገር ግን እነሆ፣ በአንድ ቀን ባዶ ሆነች፤ እናም ሬሳዎች በምድረበዳው ውሾችና በዱር አውሬዎች ተቆራረጡ።

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

፲፩ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከብዙ ቀናት በኋላ ሬሳዎቻቸው በምድሪቱ ላይ ተቆለሉና፣ ጥልቅ ባልሆነ ሽፋን ተሸፈኑ። እናም እንዲሁም ሸታው በማየሉ ህዝቡ ለብዙ ዘመናት የአሞኒህን ምድር ለመያዝ አልገቡም ነበር። ይህም የኔሆራውያን መውደም ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር፤ የተገደሉት የኔሆርን ኃይማኖት ተከታዮች ነበሩና፣ እናም ምድራቸው ባዶ ሆና ቀረች።

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

፲፪ እናም መሣፍንቱ በኔፊ ህዝቦች ላይ እስከሚነግሱበት አሰራ አራተኛ ዓመት ድረስ ላማናውያን በኔፊ ህዝቦች ላይ ለጦርነት አልመጡም። እናም ለሶስት ዓመታት የኔፊ ህዝብ በምድሪቱ ላይ የማያቋርጥ ሰላምን አገኙ።

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

፲፫ እናም አልማና አሙሌቅ ለህዝቡ ስለሰላም ለመስበክ በቤተመቅደሶቻቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ በቅዱስ ሥፍራዎቻቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ በአይሁድ ስርዓት በተገነቡት ምክራቦቻቸው ሄዱ።

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

፲፬ እናም ቃላቸውን ላዳመጡአቸው ሁሉ፣ ያለማዳላት ሳያቋርጡ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል አካፈሉአቸው።

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

፲፭ እናም አልማና አሙሌቅ፣ ደግሞም ከዚህ የበለጡ ለሰራው የተመረጡ ብዙዎች በምድሪቱ ላይ ቃሉን ለመስበክ ሄዱ። እናም ቤተክርስቲያኗ በምድሪቱ ላይ በዙሪያው በኔፋውያን ሁሉ መካከል ተቋቋመች።

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

፲፮ እናም በእነርሱ መካከል ምንም ዓይነት እኩል ያልሆነ አልነበረም፤ ጌታ የሰው ልጆችን አዕምሮ ለማዘጋጀት እንዲሁም በመምጫው ጊዜ በእነርሱ መካከል የሚሰበከውን ቃል ለመቀበል ልባቸውን እንዲያዘጋጁ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ መንፈሱን አፈሰሰ—

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

፲፯ በቃሉ ላይ ልባቸውን እንዳያጠጥሩ፣ የማያምኑ እንዳይሆኑ፣ እናም ወደ ጥፋት እንዳይሄዱ፣ ነገር ግን ቃሉን በደስታ ይቀበሉት ዘንድ እናም ቅርንጫፉ ወደ እውነተኛው ወይን እንዲዳቀሉ ዘንድ፣ እነርሱም ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው እረፍት ይገቡ ዘንድ ነው።

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

፲፱ አሁን ውሸቶችንም፣ ማታለልንም፣ ቅናትንም፣ ጠብንም፣ ተንኮልንም፣ ሰድብንም፣ ሰርቆትንም፣ ዝርፊያንም፣ መቀናትንም፣ ግድያንም፣ ዝሙት መፈፀምንም፣ እናም ሁሉም አይነት ምንዘርናን እንዲያሰወግዱ ከህዝቡ መካከል የሰበኩት እነዚያ ካህናት፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች እንዳይሆኑ ጮሁ—

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

፳ በቅርብ የሚመጡትን ነገሮች ካህናቱ በማወጅ፤ እዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ልጅ መምጣት፣ ሰቃዩንና ሞቱን፣ እናም ደግሞ ከሙታን መነሳቱን በማወጅ ጮሁ።

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

፳፩ እናም ብዙዎች የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሚመጣበትን ስፍራ በተመለከተ ጠየቁ፤ እርሱም ከትንሣኤው በኋላ እንደሚገለጥላቸው ተምረው ነበር፤ እናም ህዝቡ ይህንን ያዳመጠው በታላቅ ሀሴትና ደስታ ነበር።

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

፳፮ እናም አሁን ቤተክርስቲያኗ በምድሪቱ ላይ ከተመሰረተች በኋላ—በዲያብሎስ ላይ ድል ካገኘች፣ እናም በንፅህና በምድሪቱ ላይ የጌታ ቃል እንድ ላይ ከተሰበከ በኋላ፣ እናም ጌታ በህዝቡ ላይ በረከትን አፈሰሰ—በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ አሰራ አራተኛው የመሣፍንት የንግሰ ዘመን በዚሁ ተፈፀመ።

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

ለእግዚአብሔር ቃል በመንግሥቱ የነበራቸውን መብት የናቁት፣ እናም ላማናውያንን ለመሰበክ ወደጌፊ ሞድር የሄዱት የሞዳያ ልጆች፣ የሰቃያቸውና የመዳናቸው ጋሪክ—አልማ እንደመዘገበው።

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

አልማ 17

Alma 17

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ከጌዴዎን ሞድር ከደቡብ በኩል ወደ ማንቲ ሞድር ሲጓዝ፣ እነሆ በመገረም ከሞዳያ ልጆች ጋር ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሲጓዙ ተገናኙ።

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

፪ እንዲሁም የሞዳያ ልጆች መልአኩ ለመጀመሪያ ጊዜ ሲገለጥለት ከአልማ ጋር ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ አልማ ወንድሞቹን በመመልከቱ እጅግ ተደስተ፤ እናም ደስታውን ይበልጥ የጨመረው አሁንም በጌታ ወንድሞቹ በመሆናቸው ነበር፤ እዎን፣ እናም እውነትን በማወቅ የጠነከሩ ነበሩ፤ ትክክለኛ ማስተዋል የነበራቸው፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ያውቁ ዘንድ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትን በትጋት የሚያጠኑ ሰዎች ነበሩ።

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

፫ ነገር ግን ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ እራሳቸውን በብዙ ጸሎትና ጾም አተገቡ፤ ስለዚህ የትንቢት መንፈስና፣ የራዕይ መንፈስ ነበራቸው፣ እናም በሚያስተምሩበት ጊዜም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰልጣን አስተማሩ።

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

፬ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በላማናውያን መካከል ለአስራ አራት ዓመታት አስተማሩ፤ እናም ብዙዎችን ወደ እውነት በማምጣት አጥጋቢ ውጤት አግኝተው ነበር፤ አዎን በቃላቸው ኃይልም ስሙን ለመጥራትና በፊቱም ኃጢአታቸውን ለመናዘዝ ብዙዎች በእግዚአብሔር መሰዊያ ፊት ቀረቡ።

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

፭ አሁን የጉዞአቸው ሁኔታ ይህን ይመስል ነበር፣ በብዛት ተሰቃይተው ነበርና፤ በአካልም ሆነ በእዕምሮ በረሃብ፣ በጥማትና በድካም ብዙ ተሰቃዩ፣ እናም ደግሞ በመንፈስ ብዙ ሰሩ።

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

፮ አሁን ጉዞአቸውም እነዚህ ነበሩ፣ በመሣፍንቱ በመጀመሪያው ዓመት፣ አባታቸው ለእነርሱ ለመሰጠት የፈለገውን መንግሥት፣ እናም ደግሞ ይህ የህዝቡ ምኞት ነበር፣ ከተቃወሙ በኋላ አባታቸው ሞዳያን ተሰናበቱ፤

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

፮ ይህን እንጂ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወጥተው ሄዱ፤ እናም ጎራዴአቸውንና ጦራቸውን፣ ቀስቶቻቸውንና፣ ሻምላቸውን፣ እንዲሁም ወንጭፎቻቸውን ወሰዱ፤ እናም በምድረበዳ ባሉበት ጊዜ ምግባቸውን ያዘጋጁ ዘንድ ይህን አደረጉ።

፯ እናም ወደ ኔፊ ምድር የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለላማናውያን ለመስበክ ለመሄድ ከመረጧቸው ጋር ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄዱ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ለብዙ ቀናት ተጓዙ፤ እናም ጌታ ከእነርሱ ጋር ይሄድ ዘንድ መንፈሱን ይሰጣቸው ዘንድና፣ ከእነርሱ ጋር ይቆዩ ዘንድ፣ ወንድሞቻቸው ላማናውያኖችን ወደ እውነት ለማምጣት፣ የሚቻል ከሆነም ትክክል ያልሆነውን፣ የአባቶቻቸውን ወግ መጥፎን ይረዱት ዘንድ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ እንዲሆኑ በርትተው ያሙ እንዲሁም ጸለዩ።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ በመንፈሱ ጎበኛቸውና፣ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ተፀናኑ። እነርሱም ተፀናኑ።

፲፩ እናም ደግሞ ጌታ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ወደ ወንድሞቻችሁ ወደ ላማናውያን ሄዱ፤ ቃሉንም መስርቱ፤ ይህን እንጂ በእኔ ለእነርሱ መልካም ምሳሌ ታሳዩ ዘንድ በሰቃያችሁ ፅናትና ትእግስት ይኑራችሁ፤ እናም ለብዙ ነፍስ መዳኛ በእጆቼ መሳሪያ አደርጋችኋለሁ።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሞዛያ ልጆችና፣ ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር የነበሩት፣ ልብ የጌታን ቃል ወደ ላማናውያን በመሄድ ለመናገር ድፍረትን አገኙ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በላማናውያን ምድር ዳርቻ በደረሱ ጊዜ፣ በመክራቸው ወቅትም በኋላ በድጋሚ እንደሚገናኙ በጌታ በማመን እርስ በርስ ተለያዩና፣ አንዱ ከሌላኛው ተከፈሉና ተለዩ፤ ለመስራት በአራሳቸው ላይ የወሰዱት ስራ ታላቅ እንደሆነ ገምተዋልና።

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

፲፬ እና በእርግጥም ታላቅ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም የጌታን ቃል ዱር፤ ልቦ ጠጣርኝና፤ አሰፈሪ ለሆኑ ሰዎች ለመሰበክ በእራሳቸው ላይ ወስደውታልና፤ ህዝቡም ኔፋውያንን በመግደልና በመሰረቅ እንዲሁም በመዝረፍ የሚደሰት ነበር፤ እናም ልባቸው በሀብት ላይ፤ እንዲሁም በወርቅና በብር፤ እናም በከበሩት ድንጋዮች ላይ የተደገፈ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ እነዚህን ነገሮች በእጃቸው ሳይሰሩ በግድያና በዝርፊያ ማግኘትን ተመኙ።

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

፲፭ እነርሱ እንደዚህ ከንቱ ሰዎች ነበሩ፤ ብዙዎቻቸው ጣዖትን አምላኪዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም በአባቶቻቸው ባህል የተነሳ የአምላክ እርግጫን በእነርሱ እርጭ ነበር፤ ይህም ቢሆን ንስህ እስከገቡ ድረስ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ለእነርሱ ተዘርግተውላቸዋል።

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

፲፮ ስለዚህ፤ እነርሱም ወደ ንስህ፤ እናም ምናልባትም የቤዛነትን ዕቅድ ወደማወቅ ያመጡአቸው ዘንድ፤ ለዚህም ምክንያት ነበር የሞዛያ ልጆች ስራውን በእራሳቸው ላይ የወሰዱት።

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

፲፯ ስለዚህ እራሳቸውን ከሌላኛው ለዩ፤ እናም ከመካከላቸው ለእነርሱ በተሰጠው በእግዚአብሔር ቃልና ኃይል መሰረት እያንዳንዱ ሰው ብቻውን ሄደ።

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

፲፰ እንዲሁም አሞን ከመካከላቸው ዋና ስለነበር፤ ወይም እነርሱን ረዳቸው፤ እናም እንደጥሪአቸው መሰረት ከባረካቸውና የጌታን ቃል ካካፈላቸው፤ እናም ከመሄዱም በፊት ከረዳቸው በኋላ ከእነርሱ ተለየ፤ እንደዚህም የተለያዩ ጉዞአቸውን በምድሪቱ አደረጉ።

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

፲፱ እናም አሞን ወደ እስማኤል ምድር ሄደ፤ ምድሪቱም የተጠራችው ላማናውያን በሆኑት በእስማኤል ልጆች ሰም ነበር።

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

፳ እናም አሞን በእስማኤል ምድር በገባ ጊዜ፤ በእጃቸው የወደቁትን ኔፋውያን ሁሉ ማሰር፤ እናም በንጉሱ ፊት መውሰዳቸው ባህል ስለነበር፤ ላማናውያን ወሰዱትና አሰሩት፤ እናም እንደ ፈቃዱና ደስታው ለመግደል፤ ወይም በምርኮ ለማቆየት፤ ወይም ወደ ወህኒ ለመጣል፤ ወይም ከራሱ አገር ለማስወጣት፤ ንጉሱ እንደ ፍላጎቱ ያደርግ ዘንድ እንደዚህ ይተውላት ነበር።

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

፳፩ እናም አሞን በእስማኤል ምድር በነገሰው ንጉስ ፊት ተይዞ ቀረበ፤ ስሙም ላሞኒ ይባል ነበር፤ እርሱም የእስማኤል ዝርያ ነበር።

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

፳፪ እናም በምድሪቱ ከላማናውያን፣ ወይም ከእርሱ ህዝቦች፣ ጋር ለመኖር ፈቃዱ እንደሆነ አምንን ንጉሱ ጠየቀው።

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

፳፫ እናም አምን እንዲህ አለው፣ አዎን፣ ከዚህ ህዝብ ጋር ለተወሰነ ጊዜ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ምናልባት እስከምሞትባት ቀን ድረስ ለመኖር እፈልጋለሁ።

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ላሞኒ በአምን እጅግ ተደስተና፣ የታሰረበት እንዲፈታ አደረገ፤ እናም አምን ከሴት ልጆቹ አንዱን እንዲያገባለት ፈለገ።

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

፳፭ ነገር ግን አምን እንዲህ አለው፣ አይሆንም፣ ነገር ግን አገልጋይህ አሆናለሁ። ስለዚህ አምን ለንጉሱ ላሞኒ አገልጋይ ሆነ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በላማናውያን ባህል መሰረት የላሞኒን መንጋዎችን ለመጠበቅ ከሌሎች አገልጋዮች ጋር ተሰማራ።

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

፳፮ እናም ለሶስት ቀናት ንጉሱን ካገለገለ በኋላ፣ የሴቡስ ውሃ ተብሎ ወደሚጠራው ውሃ ወዳለበት ሰፍራ ከብቶቻቸውን ከላማናውያን አገልጋዮች ጋር ውሃ ለማጠባት ሄደ፣ እናም ላማናውያን በሙሉ ከብቶቻቸው ውሃ እንዲያገኙ ወደ እዚህ ቦታ መርተዋቸው ነበር—

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ አምንና የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች መንጋዎቻቸውን ወደዚህ የውሃ ሰፍራ እየሄዱ በወሰዱ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ ወደውሃው ከመንጋዎቻቸው ጋር የነበሩት የተወሰኑ ላማናውያን ቆሙ፣ እናም የአምንንና የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች መንጋዎችን በታተኑአቸው፣ እናም በብዙ አቅጣጫ እስከሚበታተኑም አባረሩአቸው።

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

፳፰ እንግዲህ የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች እንዲህ በማለት ማጉረምረም ጀመሩ፣ እንግዲህ ንጉሱ እነዚህ ሰዎች በክፋታቸው መንጋዎቻቸውን በመበተናቸው ምክንያት በወንድሞቻችን ላይ እንዳደረገው ይገድለናል። እናም እንዲህ በማለት በሀይል አለቀሱ፣ እነሆ መንጋዎቻችን ተበትነዋል።

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

፳፱ እንግዲህ መገደላቸውን ፈርተው አለቀሱ። እንግዲህ አምን ይህንን በተመለከተ ጊዜ ልቡ በደስታ ተሞላ፤ እንዲህም አለ፣ ለንጉሱ እነዚህን ከብቶች በመመለስ፣ የአገልጋይ ጓደኞቼን ልብ አሸንፍ ዘንድ፣ በቃሌም እንዲያምኑ እመራቸው ዘንድ ለእነዚህ ከእኔ ጋር አገልጋዮች ለሆኑት ኃይሌን፣ ወይም በውስጤ ያለውን ሀይል አሳያቸዋለሁ።

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

፴ እናም አሁን፣ እነዚህ ወንድሞቼ በማለት የጠራቸውን ስቃይ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ይህ የአምን ሀሳብ ነበር።

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንዲህ በማለት በቃሉ አበረታታቸው። ወንድሞቹ፣ አትፍሩም መንጋዎቹን ለመፈለግም እንሂድ፣ እናም በእንድ ላይ እንሰበሰባቸዋለን፣ ወደ ውሃው ሰፍራ እንመልሳቸዋለንም፣ እንደዚህም መንጋዎቹን ለንጉሱ እንጠብቃለን፣ እርሱም አይገድለንም።

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መንጋዎቹን ፍለጋ ሄዱ፣ አምንንም ተከተሉት፣ እናም በፍጥነት ርጡና፣ የንጉሱን መንጋዎች መለሱአቸው፤ በእንድ ላይ ወደ ውሃው በድጋሚ ሰበሰቡአቸው።

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

፴፫ እናም እነዚያ ሰዎች በድጋሚ ከብቶቹን ለመበታተን ተነሱ፤ ነገር ግን አምን ለወንድሞቹ እንዲህ አላቸው። መንጋዎቹ እንዳይሸሹ ክበቡአቸው፤ እናም እኔ እሄዳለሁና፣ ከብቶቻችንን ከሚያባርሩት ጋር አጣላለሁ።

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

፴፬ ስለዚህ፣ አምን እንዳዘዘው አደረጉ፤ እርሱም ሄደና በሴቡስ ውሃ አጠገብ የነበሩትን ለመጣላት ተነሳ፤ እናም እነርሱ በቁጥራቸው ብዙ ነበሩ።

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

፴፭ ስለዚህ ከእነርሱ አንዱ ሰው እርሱን እንደፈለገው ለመግደል ይችላል በማለት በመገመታቸው አምንን አልፏትም ነበር፣ ጌታ ለሞዛያ ልጆቹን ከእጃቸው እንደሚያወጣ ቃል መግባቱን አላውቁምና፣ ስለጌታም ቢሆን ምንም እያውቁም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በወንድሞቻቸው ጥፋት ተደሰቱ፤ እናም በዚህ ምክንያት የንጉሱን ከብቶች ለማባረር ተነስተዋል።

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

፴፮ ነገር ግን አምን ተነሳ እናም በወንጭፋ ድንጋይ በእነርሱ ላይ መወርወር ጀመረ፤ አዎን፣ በታላቅ ሀይል ድንጋይ በመካከላቸው በወንጭፋ ወረወረ፤ እናም የተወሰኑትን በመግደሉ በሀይሉ መደንቅ ጀምሮ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ወንድሞቻቸው ስለተገደሉባቸው ተቆጡና፣ እርሱ እንዲወድቅ ቆርጠው ነበር፣ ስለዚህ በድንጋዮቻቸው ሊመቱት እንዳልቻሉ በመመልከታቸው ሊገድሉት ዲላቸውን ይዘው መጡ።

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

፴፯ ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ አምንን ለመምታት ዲላውን ያነሳ ማንኛውንም ሰው አምን በጎራዴው እጆቻቸውን መትቶ ቆረጠ፤ እስከገረመው ድረስ በጎራዴው ጫፍ እጆቻቸውን በመምታት ምታቸውን ተቋቋመውና፣ ከፊቱ መሸሽ ጀመሩ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በቁጥር ጥቂት አልነበሩም፤ እናም በክንዱ ጥንካሬም እንዲሸሹ አደረገ።

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

፲፯ አሁን በወንጭፋ ሰድሰት ሰዎች ወደቁ፣ ነገር ግን ከመሪያቸው በስተቀር ማንንም በጎራዳው አልገደለም፤ እናም በእርሱ ላይ የተነሱትን እጅ ሁሉ መትቶ ቆረጠ፣ እናም እነርሱ ጥቂት አልነበሩም።

፲፱ እንግዲህ አርቆ ካሸሻቸው በኋላ ተመለሰ፣ እናም ከብቶቻቸውን ውሃ አጠጠሉቸውና ወደንጉሱ ግጦሽ መለሱቸው፣ እናም እርሱን ሊገድሉ የፈለጉትን በእሞን ጎራዳ የተቆረጡትን እጆች ይዘው ወደንጉሱ ሄዱና፣ ላደረጉአቸው ነገሮች ምስክር እንዲሆኑ ወደ ንጉሱ ተወሰዱ።

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

አልማ ፲፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ላሞኒ አገልጋዮቹ በፊቱ እንዲቆሙና ስለሁሉም ነገሮች ድርጊቱን በተመለከተ እንዲመሰክሩ አደረገ።

፪ እናም ሁሉም ስለተመለከቱአቸው ነገሮች ሁሉ በመሰከሩ ጊዜ፣ ንጉሱ አሞን መንጋዎቹን በመጠበቁ፣ እናም ደግሞ እርሱን ለመግደል ከፈለጉት ጋር ለመጣላት ባለው ታላቅ ኃይል ታማኝነቱን በተማረ ጊዜ፣ እጅግ ተደነቀ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ በእርግጥ ይህ ከሰው በላይ ነው። እነሆ፣ ይህ በግድያቸው የተነሳ ታላቅ ቅጣት በህዝቡ ላይ የላከው ታላቅ መንፈስ አይደለምን?

፫ እናም ለንጉሱ እንዲህ ሲሉ መለሱለት፡ እርሱ ታላቅ መንፈስም ይሁን ሰው አናውቅም፣ ነገር ግን፣ የምናውቀው ይህን ያህል ነው፣ በንጉሱ ጠላቶች መገደል አይቻልም፤ በባለሙያነቱና በታላቅ ጥንካሬው የተነሳ ከእኛም ጋር እስካለ ድረስ የንጉሱን ከብቶች ለመበታተን አይችሉም፤ ስለዚህ፣ የንጉሱ ወዳጅ መሆኑንም እናውቃለን። እናም እንግዲህ፣ ንጉሱ ሆይ፣ ሰው እንደዚህ ታላቅ ኃይል ይኖረዋል ብለን አናምንም፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ እንደማይገደል እናውቃለን።

፬ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉሱ እነዚህን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ፣ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ አሁን ይህ ታላቁ መንፈስ እንደሆነ አውቃለሁ፤ እናም በወንድሞቻችሁ እንዳደረግሁት እንዳልገድላችሁ በዚህን ጊዜ ህይወታችሁን ለማቆየት የመጣ ነው። እንግዲህ አባቶቻችን የተናገሩት ታላቁ መንፈስ ይህ ነው።

፭ አሁን ይህ ታላቁ መንፈስ መኖሩን ላሞኒ ከአባቶቹ የተቀበለው ወግ ነው። ምንም እንኳን በታላቁ መንፈስ ያመኑ ቢሆንም፤ ያደረጉት ማንኛውም ነገር ትክክል እንደሆነ ገምተዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ አገልጋዮቹን በመግደል ስህተት እንደሰሩ በመፍራት ላሞኒ በእጅግ መፍራት ጀመረ፤

፮ በውሃው ስፍራ ወንድሞቻቸው መንጋዎቻቸውን በማባረራቸው ብዙዎችን ገድሏል፣ እናም ከብቶቻቸውንም ስላሰበተኑ የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች ተገደሉ።

፯ ይህም በእነርሱ መካከል የመዝረፍ ልምድ ሆኖ፣ አሁን በዚያም የተበተኑትን ወደምድራቸው ለመንዳት ይችሉ ዘንድ፣ ላማናውያን በሴቡስ ውሃ አጠገብ በመቆም የሰዎችን ከብቶች ማባረር ልምዳቸው ነበር።

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ላሞኒ አገልጋዮቹን እንዲህ በማለት ጠየቃቸው፡ እንደዚህ ዓይነት ታላቅ ኃይል ያለው ሰው የት ነው?

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ አሉት፡ እነሆ እርሱ ፈረሶችህን እያበላ ነው። አሁን ንጉሱ ከብቶቻቸውን ውሃ ከማጠጣታቸው በፊት፡ ፈረሶቹንና ሰረገላዎቹን እንዲያዘጋጁ፣ እናም ወደኔፊ ምድር እንዲወሰዱት አገልጋዮቹን እዝዞ ነበር፤ የምድሪቱ ሁሉ ንጉስ በሆነው የላሞኒ አባት በኔፊ ምድር ላይ ታላቅ ግብዣ ተመድቦ ነበርና።

፳፱ እንዲሁም ንጉስ ላሞኒ አሞን ፈረሶቹንና ሰረገላዎቹን ማዘጋጀቱን በሰማ ጊዜ ይበልጥ በአሞንም ታማኝነት ተደንቆ፣ እንዲህ አለ፡ በእርግጥ እንደዚህ ሰው ከአገልጋዮቹ ሁሉ መካከል ታማኝ አገልጋይ የለም፣ ትዕዛዛቱንም ሁሉ እንኳን ለመፈፀም አስተውሏልና።

፴፬ አሁን በእርግጥ ይህ ታላቁ መንፈስ እንደሆነ አውቃለሁ፤ እናም እርሱ ወደ እኔ እንዲመጣ አፈልጋለሁ፣ ነገር ግን አልደፍርም።

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ለንጉሱና ለአገልጋዮቹ ፈረሶቹንና ሰረገላዎቹን ካዘጋጀ በኋላ፣ ወደ ንጉሱ ገባ፣ እናም የንጉሱ ፊት እንደተለወጠ ተመለከተ፤ ስለዚህ እርሱም ከፊቱ መመለስ ጀመረ።

፴፮ እናም ከንጉሱ አገልጋዮች አንዱ እንዲህ አለው፡ ራባና፣ ማለትም ሲተረጎም ኃያል ወይንም ታላቅ ንጉስ ነው፤ ንጉሳቸው ኃያል እንደሆነ ይቆጥሩታልና፤ እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ ራባና፣ ንጉሱ እንድትቆይ ይፈልጋል።

፴፬ ስለሆነም አሞን ወደ ንጉሱ በመዞር እንዲህ አለው፡ ንጉስ ሆይ ለአንተ ምን እንዳደርግ ትፈልጋለህ? እናም ንጉስ እንደነርሱ ሰዓት ለአንድ ሰዓት ያህል ምንም አልመለሰለትም፣ ምክንያቱም ለእርሱ ምን ማለት እንዳለበት አላወቀምና።

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን በድጋሚ አለው፡ ከእኔ ምን ትፈልጋለህ? ነገር ግን ንጉሱ ምንም አልመለሰለትም።

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አዎን በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ በመሞላቱ የንጉሱን ሀሳብ አስተዋለ። እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ ከብቶችህንና አገልጋዮችህን እንደጠበቅኩኝ፤ አገልጋዮችህንና መጋዎችህን ለመከላከል ሰባቱን ወንድሞቻቸውን በወንጭፍና በጎራዴ እንደገደልኩኝ፤ እናም የሌሎችን እጅ የቆረጥኩትን በመሰማትህ ነው፤ እነሆ፤ ለአስደናቂ ነገሮችህ መንሰኤስ ይህ ነውን?

፲፯ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፡ ድንቅ ነገሮችህ ታላቅ የሆኑት እንዴት ነው? እነሆ፤ እኔ ሰው ነኝ፤ እናም የአንተ አገልጋይ ነኝ፤ ስለዚህ፤ አንተ የፈለከውን ማንኛውንም ትክክል ነገር አደርጋለሁ።

፲፰ አሁን ንጉሱ እነዚህን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ አዎን ሃሳቡን እንደተረዳ ስለተመለከተ በድጋሚ ተደነቀ፤ ነገር ግን ቢሆንም፡ ንጉሱ ላሞኒ አፋን በመክፈት እንዲህ አለው፡ አንተ ማን ነህ? ሁሉንም ነገሮች የሚያውቅ ታላቁ መንፈስ ነህን?

፲፱ አዎን፤ እኔ አይደለሁም በማለት መለስ።

፳ እናም ንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፡ ታዲያ የልቤን ሀሳብ እንዴት ልታውቅ ቻልህ? አንተ በድፍረት ተናገርና፤ እነዚህን በተመለከተ ንገረኝ፤ እናም ደግሞ በምን ኃይል ከብቶቼን የበተኑትን ወንድሞቼን እጆች እንደመታሃቸው ንገረኝ—

፳፩ እናም አሁን እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ የምትናገረኝ ከሆነ፤ የፈለግኸውን ሁሉ አስጥሃለሁ፤ እናም አስፈላጊ ከሆነ፤ በሠራዊቶቼ እጠብቅሀለሁ፤ ነገር ግን አንተ ከሁሉም በላይ ኃያል እንደሆንክ አውቃለሁ፤ ይህን እንጂ፤ ከእኔ የፈለግኸውን ማንኛውንም አስጥሀለሁ።

፳፪ እንግዲህ አዎን ብልህ ቢሆንም፤ የሚጎዳም ባለመሆኑ፤ ለላሞኒ እንዲህ አለው፡ በምን ሀይል እነዚህ ነገሮች ለማድረግ እንደምችል ብነግርህ ቃሉን ትሰማኛለህን? እናም ይህም ከአንተ የፈለግሁት ነገር ነው።

፳፫ እናም ንጉሱ እንዲህ ሲል መለሰለት፡ አዎን፤ ቃልህን በሙሉ አምናለሁ። እናም እርሱ እንደዚህ ነበር በብልህነት የተያዘው።

፳፬ እናም አዎን በድፍረት ለእርሱ መናገር ጀመረና፤ እንዲህ አለው፡ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ ታምናለህን?

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሲል መለሰለት፡ ይህ ምን ማለት እንደሆነ አላውቅም።

፳፮ እናም አዎን እንዲህ አለው፡ ታላቅ መንፈስ እንዳለ ታምናለህን?

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

፳፯ እናም እርሱ አዎን አለ።

፳፰ እናም አዎን፣ ይህ እግዚአብሔር ነው አለ። እናም አዎን በድጋሚ አለው፣ ይህ እግዚአብሔር የሆነው ታላቅ መንፈስ በሰማይና በምድር ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ የፈጠረ እንደሆነ ታምናለህን?

፳፱ እርሱም አዎን፣ በምድር ላይ ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ እንደፈጠረ አምናለሁ፤ ነገር ግን የሰማያትን አላውቅም።

፴ እናም አዎን እንዲህ አለው፣ ሰማያት እግዚአብሔርና ቅዱሳን መላዕክቱ የሚኖሩበት ቦታ ነው።

፴፩ እናም ንጉስ ላሞኒ እንዲህ አለ፣ ይህ ከመሬት በላይ ነውን?

፴፪ እናም አዎንም አለ፣ አዎን፣ እናም የሰው ልጆችን ሁሉ ወደታች ይመለከታል፤ የልባቸውን ሀሳብና መሻት በሙሉ ያውቃልም፤ ምክንያቱም ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ሁሉም በእጁ ተፈጥረዋል።

፴፫ እናም ንጉስ ላሞኒ እንዲህ አለ፣ አንተ የተናገርካቸውን እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ አምናለሁ። አንተ ከእግዚአብሔር የተላከህ ነህን?

፴፬ አዎን እንዲህ አለው፣ እኔ ሰው ነኝ፤ እናም በመጀመሪያ ሰው በእግዚአብሔር አምሳል ተፈጥሯል፣ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ይህ ህዝብ ትክክልና እውነት ወደ ሆነው እውቀት ይመጡ ዘንድ እንዳስተምር በቅዱስ መንፈስ ተጠርቻለሁ።

፴፭ እናም እውቀትንና፣ ደግሞ ኃይልን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ባሉት እምነቴና ፍቃዴ የሚሰጠኝ የመንፈሱ ክፍል ከእኔ ጋር ይኖራል።

፴፮ አሁን አዎን እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ከዓለም መፈጠርና ደግሞ ከአዳም መፈጠር ጀምሮ፣ እናም የሰው መውደቅን በተመለከተ ሁሉም ነገሮች ነገረው፣ እናም አባታቸው ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ድረስ እንኳ የነበሩትን ታሪኮቹንና በነብያት የተነገሩትን የህዝቡን ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትን መተረክና መዘርዘር ጀመረ።

፴፯ እናም ደግሞ ለእነርሱ (ይህም ለንጉሱና ለአገልጋዮቹ ነበርና) በምድረበዳ ውስጥ የነበሯቸውን የአባቶቻቸውን ጉዞና የእነርሱን ረሃብና ጥማት እንዲሁም ድካምና ሌሎችንም ሁሉ ሰቃያቸውን ነገራቸው።

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

፴፰ እናም ደግሞ ስለላማንና ልሙኤል፣ ደግሞም ስለእስማኤል ልጆች አመፅ ተናገረ፣ አዎን፣ አመፅቸውን ሁሉ ተረከላቸው፤ እናም ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከአሁን ያሉትን መዛግብቱና ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት ገለፀላቸው።

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

፴፱ ነገር ግን ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ተዘጋጅቶ ስለነበረው የቤዛነትን ዕቅድ አብራራላቸው፤ እናም ስለክርስቶስ መምጣትም አስታወቃቸውና፣ የጌታን ስራዎች ሁሉ እንዲያውቁት አደረገ።

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

፵ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ ከተናገረ በኋላ፣ እናም ለንጉሱ አብራራቸው፣ ንጉሱም የተናገረውን በሙሉ አመነው።

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

፵፩ እናም ወደ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል መጮህ ጀመረ፣ አቤቱ ጌታ ምህረትህን አድርግ፤ በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ ያደረከውን የበዛ ምህረትን፣ በእኔና በህዝቤ ላይ አድርግ።

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

፵፪ እናም አሁን፣ ይህንን በተናገረ ጊዜ እንደሞተ ሰው በመሬት ላይ ወደቀ።

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

፵፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዮቹ ወሰዱት፣ ወደ ሚስቱ ተሸክመው ወሰዱትና፣ በአልጋው ላይ አስተኙት፤ እናም ለሁለት ቀንና ምሽት እንደሞተ ሰው ተኛ፤ ሚስቱ፣ ወንድና ሴት ልጆቹም በሃዘን ተቀመጡ፣ እንደ ላማናውያንም በሆነ ወግ ስለአርሱ እጅግ አለቀሱ።

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

አልማ 19

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሁለት ቀናትና ከሁለት ምሽት በኋላ ሙታኖቻቸውን ለመቅበር ባዘጋጁት ስፍራ ሰውነቱን በመውሰድ በመካነ መቃብር ሊያሳርፉት ነበር።

፪ እንዲሁም ንግስቲቱ የአምንን ዝና በመሰማቷ፣ መልዕክተኛ ላከች እናም ወደ እርሷ እንዲመጣ ፈለገች።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አምን እንደታዘዘው አደረገና፣ ወደ ንግስቲቱ ሄደ፣ እርሱ ምን እንዲያደርግ እንደምትፈልገው ለማወቅም ፈለገ።

፬ እናም እርሷም አለችው፣ የባለቤቱ አገልጋዮች አንተ የቅዱሱ አምላክ ነቢይ መሆንህን አሳወቁኝ፣ እናም አንተ ብዙ ተአምራትን የማድረግ ኃይል እንዳለህም ነገሩኝ፤

፭ ስለዚህ፣ ሁኔታው ይህ ከሆነ፣ ባለቤቱን ሄደህ እንድትመለከተው እፈልጋለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ለሁለት ቀናትና ለሁለት ሌሊት በአልጋው ላይ ተኝቷልና፤ እናም እንዳንደች አልሞተም ይላሉ፣ ነገር ግን ሌሎች ሞቷል እንዲሁም ሸቷል፤ እናም በመቃብሩ ማረፍ አለበት ይላሉ፤ ነገር ግን እንደ እኔ፣ ለእኔ አልሸተተኝም።

፮ እንግዲህ፣ ይህ አምን የፈለገው ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም ንጉሱ ላሞኒ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ስር እንደሆነ ያውቅ ነበርና፤ እርሱም ያለማመን ጥቁር መጋረጃው ከአዕምሮው እንደተወሰደ ያውቅ ነበር፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔር የክብር ብርሃን የሆነው፣ የቸርነቱ አሰገራሚ ብርሃን የነበረው ብርሃን በአዕምሮው ውስጥ በርቷል—አምን፣ ይህ ብርሃን በነፍሱ ውስጡ እንደዚያ ያለን ደስታ አምጥቷል፤ የጨለማው ዳመና ተበትኗል፣ እናም የዘለባለማዊው ህይወት ብርሃን በነፍሱ ውስጡ ተቀጣጥሏል፤ አምን፣ ይህ እራሱን እንዲሰት እንዳደረገው አውቋል፣ እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር ተወሰዷል—

፯ ስለዚህ፣ ንግስቲቱ ከእርሱ የፈለገችው የእርሱን ፍላጎት ብቻ ነበር። ስለዚህ፣ ንግስቲቱ እንደፈለገችው ንጉሱን ለመመልከት ሄደ፤ እናም ንጉሱን ተመለከተና ንጉሱ እንዳልሞተም አውቆ ነበር።

፰ እናም ለንግሥቲቱም አላት፣ እርሱ አልሞተም፣ ነገር ግን በእግዚአብሔር ተኝቷል፣ እናም በማግሰቱ በድጋሚ ይነሳል፤ ስለዚህ አትቅበሩት።

፱ አምንም አላት፣ ይህን ታምኚአለሽን? እርሷም አለችው፣ ከአንተ ቃልና ከአገልጋዮቻችን ቃል በስተቀር ምንም ማረጋገጫ የለኝም፤ ይሁን እንጂ አንተ የተናገርከው እንደሚሆን አምናለሁ።

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

፲ አሞንም አላት፡ አንቺ በታላቁ እምነትሽ የተባረክሽ ነሽ፤ እኔም እልሻለሁ፣ አንቺ ሴት፣ በኔፋውያን ሁሉ መካከል እንደዚህ ያለ ታላቅ እምነት አልነበረም።

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዚያ ሰዓት ጀምሮ አሞን ይነሳል ብሎ እሰካለበት ሰዓት እስከሚቀጥለው ቀን ድረስ የባሏን መኝታ ጠበቀች።

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን በተናገረው መሰረት ተነሳ፤ እናም በተነሳም ጊዜ እጁን በሴቲቱ ላይ ዘረጋና፣ አለ፡ የእግዚአብሔር ስም የተባረከ ነው፣ እንዲሁም አንቺም የተባረክሽ ነሽ።

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

፲፫ አንቺ ልክ በህይወት እንዳለሽ፣ እነሆ፣ አዳኜን አይቻለሁ፤ እናም እርሱ ይመጣል፣ ከሴትም ይወለዳል፣ እናም በሰው የሚያምኑትን የሰው ዘር ሁሉ ያድናል። እንግዲህ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ልቡ በሀሴት ተሞላ፣ እንደገናም በደስታ ተዋጠ፣ እናም ንግስቲቱ ደግሞ በመንፈሱ በመሸነፏ ሰመጠች።

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

፲፬ እንግዲህ አሞን በወንድሞቹ በላማናውያን፣ በኔፋውያን መካከል እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር ልጆች ሁሉ መካከል በክፋታቸውና በባህላቸው ታላቅ ሀዘን እንዲሆን ባደረጉት ላይ በፀሎት የጌታ መንፈስ በእነርሱ ላይ መሆኑን በተመለከተ ጊዜ ተነበረከከ፣ እናም እግዚአብሔር ለወንድሞቹ ባደረገው በትጋት ፀለየ፣ እንዲሁም በምሰጋና ነፍሱን አፍሰሶ አቀረበ፤ እና እርሱም ደግሞ በደስታ ተዋጠ፤ ሶስቱም ወደ ምድር ወደቁ።

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

፲፭ እንግዲህ፣ የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች እንደወደቁ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ወደ ጌታ መጮህ ጀመሩ፤ የጌታ ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ ሆኗልና፤ በንጉሱ ፊት ቆመው ሰለአሞን ታላቅ ኃይል የመሰከሩት እነርሱ ናቸውና።

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቷም በነበረው ታላቅ ራዕይ መሠረት ለብዙ ዓመታት ወደጌታ ከተለወጠችው እቢሽ ከተባለች ላማናዊት ሴት በስተቀር ሁሉም ወደ ምድር እስኪወድቁ ድረስ ባላቸው ሀይል በፀሎታቸው የጌታን ስም ጠሩ—

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

፲፯ ወደ ጌታ የተለወጠች በመሆኗ፣ እንዲታወቅ ባለማድረግ የላሞኒ አገልጋዮች በሙሉ በመሬት ላይ መውደቃቸውን፣ እናም ደግሞ እመቤቷም፣ ንግስቲቱምና፣ ንጉሱ፣ እንዲሁም አሞን በመሬቱ ላይ መዘረፈን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል መሆኑን አውቃ ነበር፤ እናም ይህን ገምታ፣ ህዝቡን በመካከላቸው ምን እንደደረሰ በማሳወቅ ይህን አጋጣሚ ሰዎቹ ሲመለከቱ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል እንዲያምኑ ያደርጋቸዋል ብላ ገመተች፣ ስለዚህ ይህን ለህዝቡ ለማሳወቅ ከቤት ወደ ቤት ርጠች።

፲፰ እናም ህዝቡ በንጉሱ ቤት ራሳቸውን በእንድ ላይ መሰብሰብ ጀመሩ። እናም ብዙዎች መጡና፣ ለመገረማቸው፣ ንጉሱን፣ ንግሥቲቱንና አገልጋዮቻቸው በመሬት ላይ እንደተዘረጉና፣ ሁሉም እንደሞተ በመሬት ላይ ተዘርግተው እንደነበር ተመለከቱ፤ ደግሞም አሞንን ተመለከቱት፣ እናም እርሱ ኔፋዊያን እንደነበረ ተመለከቱ።

፲፱ እናም አሁን ህዝቡ እርስ በርስ ማጉረምረም ጀመሩ፣ ጥቂቶች በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲሁም በንጉሱ ላይ እና በቤቱ ላይ እርሱ ኔፋውያን በምድሪቱ ላይ እንዲቀሩ ስለፈቀደ የመጣ ታላቁ ክፋት ነው አሉ።

፳ ነገር ግን ሌሎች እንዲህ በማለት ወቅሱአቸው፣ ንጉሱ ይህን ክፋ ነገር በቤቱ ላይ ያመጣው ራሱ ነው፣ ምክንያቱም በሲበስ ውሃ አካባቢ ከብቶችን የተበተነባቸውን አገልጋዮችን ገድሏልና።

፳፩ እናም ደግሞ እነርሱም የንጉሱ የሆኑትን ከብቶች ያባረሩት በውሃው አጠገብ በቆሙት ተወቅሱ፣ እናም በሲበስ ወንዝ አጠገብ የንጉሱን ከብቶች በሚጠብቅበት ጊዜ ብዙ ወንድሞቻቸውን ስለገደሉባቸው በአሞን ተቆጥተውት ነበር።

፳፪ እንግዲህ፣ በአሞን ጎራዴ ወንድሙ ከተገደለበት አንዱ በአሞን በመቆጣቱ አሞንን ለመግደል ጎራዴውን አውጥቶ ሊያሳርፍበት ወደ እርሱ ሄደ፤ እናም ሊመታው ጎራዴውን ባነሳ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ሞቶ ወደቀ።

፳፫ አሁን ጌታ ለአባቱ ለሞዛያ፣ አድነዋለሁ፣ እናም እንደ አሞንትህም ይሆንለታል ብሎታልና፣ አሞን ሊገደል እንደማይችል እንመለከታለን—ስለዚህ ሞዛያ እርሱን ለጌታ በአደራ ሰጥቷል።

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞንን ለመግደል ጎራዳውን ያነሳውን መሞቱን ህዝቦቹ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ በሁሉም ላይ ፍርሃት ወደቀባቸው፣ እናም፣ እርሱን ወይም እነዚያን የወደቁትን ለመንካት አልደፈሩም፤ የዚህ የታላቁ ኃይል መንስኤም ምን ሊሆን እንደሚችል፣ ወይም እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ ምን ማለት ሊሆኑ እንደሚችሉ በድጋሚ እርስ በርስ መገረም ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ታላቅ መንፈስ ነው የሚሉ ብዙዎች በመካከላቸው ነበሩ፣ እናም ሌሎች በታላቁ መንፈስ ተልዳል ይሉ ነበር፤

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

፳፮ ነገር ግን ሌሎች እንዲህ በማለት ይወቅሱታል፣ እርሱም ከኔፋውያን እነርሱን ለመቅጣት የተላከ ጭራቅ ነበር።

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

፳፯ እናም ጥቂቶች አሞን በታላቁ መንፈስ በክፋታቸው የተነሳ እነርሱን ለማስቃየት የተላከ ነው፤ እናም ሁልጊዜ ኔፋውያንን የሚጠብቅ፣ ከእጃቸው ምንጊዜም የሚያስለቅቃቸው ታላቅ መንፈስ ነው፤ እናም ይህ ታላቁ መንፈስ በጣም ብዙ የላማናውያን ወንድሞቻቸውን ያጠፋ ነው ይሉ ነበር።

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

፳፰ እናም ፀቡ በመካከላቸው እጅግ የከፋ መሆን ጀመረ። እናም በሚጣሉበት ጊዜ፣ ህዝቡ በአንድነት ተሰብስቦ እንዲመጣ ያደረገችው ሴት አገልጋይ መጣችና፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ፀብ መሆኑን በተመለከተች ጊዜ እምባ እስኪወጣት እንኳን እጅግ አዝና ነበር።

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሄደችና ከመሬት ንግስቲቱ ትነሳ ዘንድ በእጇ እነሳቻት፤ እናም እጇን እንደነካቻት ተነሳችና፣ በእግሮችቱ ቆመች፣ በሀይለኛ ድምፅ እንዲህም ስትል ጮኸች፤ አቤቱ ከመጥፎ ሲኦል ያዳንከኝ የተባረከው ኢየሱስ! አቤቱ የተባረከህ እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ምህረትን አድርግ!

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

፴ እናም እርሷ ይህንን በተናገረች ጊዜ፣ በደስታ ተሞልታ ለመረዳት አስቸጋሪ የሆኑትን ነገሮች በመናገር አጨበጨበች፤ ይህንንም ባደረገች ጊዜ ንጉስ ላሞኒን በእጃችቱ ያዘችው፣ እናም እነሆ ተነሳና በእግሮቹ ቆመ።

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

፴፩ እናም ወዲያው በህዝቡ መካከል ያለውን ፀብ በተመለከተ ጊዜ ሄደ፣ እነርሱንም ወቀሰና በአሞን እንደበት ተነግሮ የሰማውን ማስተማር ጀመረ፤ እናም ቃሉን ከሰሙት ብዙዎች አመኑና፣ ወደ ጌታ ተለወጡ።

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

፲፪ ነገር ግን ከእነርሱ መካከል ቃሉን መስማት ያልፈለጉ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ በመንገዳቸው ሄዱ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እምን በተነሳ ጊዜ ደግሞ እነርሱን አገለገለ፤ ደግሞም የላምኒ አገልጋዮች ሁሉም እንዲህ አደረጉ፤ እናም ሁሉም ልባቸው እንደተለወጠ፤ ክፉ ለማድረግም ከእንግዲህ ፍላጎት እንደሌላቸው ለህዝቡ እንድ ዓይነት ነገር አወጁ።

፲፬ እናም እነሆ ብዙዎች ለሰዎቹ መላዕክትን እንደተመለከቱ ከእነርሱም ጋር እንደተነጋገሩ ተናገሩ፤ እና እንደዚህም የእግዚአብሔርን ነገሮች፣ ዓድቅነቱንም ነገሩአቸው።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቃላቸውን ያመኑ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ብዙ ያመኑት ተጠመቁ፤ ዓድቅ ሰዎችም ሆኑና፣ በመካከላቸው ቤተክርስቲያን አቋቋሙ።

፲፮ እናም የጌታ ስራ በላማናውያን መካከል ተጀመረ፤ እንደዚህም ጌታ መንፈሱን በእነርሱ ላይ ማፍሰሱን ጀመረ፤ እናም ንስሃ በሚገቡ ሰዎችና በሰሙ ለሚያምኑት ህዝብ ሁሉ ክንዱ መዘርጋቱን እንመለከታለን።

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

አልማ ፳

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ቤተክርስቲያንን ካቋቋሙ በኋላ፣ አምንን ለአባቱ ለማሳየት ከእርሱ ጋር ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ይሄድ ዘንድ ንጉስ ላሞን ፈለገ።

፪ እናም የጌታ ድምፅ ወደ አሞን እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣ እነሆም ንጉሱ ህይወትህን ሊያጠፋ ይፈልጋልና ከእርሱ ጋር ወደ ኔፊ ምድር አትሂድ፤ ነገር ግን ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር ሂድ፤ እነሆ፣ ወንድምህ አርን፣ ደግሞም ሙሎቁና አማ በወህኒ ቤት አሉና።

፫ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ይህንን በሰማ ጊዜ፣ ለላሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ እነሆ፣ ወንድሜ እናም ወንድሞቻችንን በሚዶኒ በወህኒ ናቸው፣ እናም ላስለቅቃቸው ወደዚያው እሄዳለሁ።

፬ አሁን ላሞን ለአሞን አለው፣ በጌታ ጥንካሬ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ማድረግ እንደምትችል አውቃለሁ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከአንተ ጋር ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር እሄዳለሁ፤ እንቲኖሞኖ የተባለው የሚዶኒ ንጉስ ጓደኛዬ ነውና፤ ስለዚህ ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር እሄዳለሁ፣ ወንድሞችህን እንዲለቅ ንጉሱን አባብለዋለሁ። አሁን ላሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ ወንድሞችህ በወህኒ ቤት እንደሆኑ ማን ነገረህ?

፭ እናም አሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ ከእግዚአብሔር በቀር ማንም አልነገረኝም፣ እንዲህም አለኝ—ሂድና ወንድሞችህን አስለቅቅ፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በሚዶኒ ምድር በወህኒ ናቸውና።

፮ እናም ላሞን ይህን በሰማ ጊዜ አገልጋዮቹ ፈረሶቹንና ስረገላዎቹን እንዲያዘጋጁ አደረገ።

፯ እናም ለአሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ ና እኔ ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር ከአንተ ጋር እሄዳለሁ እናም ንጉሱ ወንድሞችህን ከወህኒ እንዲለቃቸው አለምናለሁ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞንና ላሞን ወደዚያ ቦታ በተጓዙ ጊዜ፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ንጉስ የሆነውን የላሞንን አባት አገኙት።

፱ እናም እነሆ፣ የላሞን አባት እንዲህ አለው፣ ለልጆቼና ለህዝቤ በዓል በማደርግበት ታላቅ ቀን በዚያ በዓል ላይ ለምን አልመጣህም?

፲ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ አለው፣ ከእዚህ ከሃስተኛ ልጆች እንዲሁ ከሆነው ከኔፋዊ ጋር ወዴት ትሄዳለህ?

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላሞኒ እርሱን ማሰባጨትን ፈርቶ ወዴት እንደሚሄድ በዝርዝር ነገረው።

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ በራሱ መንግሥት የዘገየባቸውንና አባቱ ወደ አዘጋጀው በዓል ያልሄደበትን ምክንያቶች ሁሉ ነገረው።

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

፲፫ እናም አሁን ላሞኒ እነዚህን ሁሉ ነገሮች በዝርዝር በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ አባቱ በእርሱ ተቆጥቶ ሰለነበር ተቆጣ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ ላሞኒ፣ እነዚህን የውሸት ልጆች የሆኑትን ኔፋውያን ልታሰለቅቃቸው ነው። እነሆ፣ እነርሱ አባቶቻችንን ዘርፈዋል፤ እናም አሁን ልጆቹ በማታለልና፣ በውሸታቸው እኛን ለማጭበርበር ንብረታችንን በድጋሚ ለመዝረፍ መጥተዋል።

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

፲፬ አሁን የላሞኒ አባት አሞንን በጎራዴው እንዲገድለው ላሞኒን አዘዘው። እናም ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድርም ደግሞ እንዳይሄድ፣ ነገር ግን ከእርሱ ጋር ወደ እስማኤል ምድር እንዲመለስ አዞት ነበር።

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

፲፭ ነገር ግን ላሞኒም አለው፡ አሞንን አልገድለውም፣ ወደ እስማኤል ምድርም አልመለሱም፣ ነገር ግን የአሞንን ወንድሞች ለማሰለቅቅ ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር እሄዳለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ትክክለኛ ሰዎችና የእውነተኛው አምላክ ነቢያት እንደሆኑ አውቃለሁና።

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

፲፮ አሁን አባቱ እነዚህን ቃላት በሰማ ጊዜ ተቆጥቶት ነበር፣ እናም መሬት እስከሚወድቅ ድረስ ለመምታት ጎራዴውን መዘዘበት።

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

፲፯ ነገር ግን አሞን ወደፊት በመምጣት ቆመ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ ልጅህን አትግደል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከእነተ ይልቅ እርሱ ቢወድቅ ይሻላል፣ ምክንያቱም እነሆ እርሱ ለኃጢአቱ ንስሃ ገብቷል፤ ነገር ግን በዚህን ጊዜ በቁጣህ እንተ ብትወድቅ ነፍሱህ መዳን አትችልም።

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

፲፰ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ከማድረግ ብትቆጠብ መልካም ነው፤ ልጅህን ብትገድል፣ የንፁህ ልጅ ደም ከምድር ወደ ጌታ ወደ አምላኩ ለበቀል ይመጣ ዘንድ ይጮህ ነበር፤ እናም ምናልባትም በነፍሱም ትሞታለህና።

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

፲፱ አሁን አሞን እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረው ጊዜ እንዲህ ሲል መለሰለት፡ ልጆቼን መግደል ካለብኝ የንፁህን ደም ማፍሰሱን አውቃለሁ፤ እርሱን ለማጥፋት የፈለግኸው እንተ ነህና።

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

፳ እናም አሞንን ለመግደል እጁን ዘረጋ። ነገር ግን አሞን ምቱን ተቋቋመው፣ እናም ደግሞ መጠቀም እንዳይችል ክንዲን መታው።

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

፳፩ እንግዲህ አዋን ለገድለው እንደሚችል ንጉሱ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ህይወቱን እንዲያተርፍለት አዋንን ለመነው።

፳፪ ነገር ግን አዋን ጎራዴውን አነሳ፣ እናም አለ። እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ ከወህኒ ቤት እንዲወጡ አድርገህ ካልሰጠኸኝ አመታሀለሁ።

፳፫ እንግዲህ ንጉሱ ህይወቱን አጣለሁ ብሎ በመፍራቱ እንዲህ አለ። እኔን ካዳንኸኝ ከመንግሥቱም እኩሌታውን እንኳን ቢሆን የጠየቅኸውን ሁሉ እሰጥሃለሁ።

፳፬ እንግዲህ አዋን እንደፍላጎቱ በሸመገለው ንጉስ ላይ ተፅዕኖ እንዳለው በተመለከተ ጊዜ እንዲህ አለው፣ ወንድሞቼን ከወህኒ ለቀህ የምትሰጠኝ ከሆነ፣ እናም ደግሞ ላሞኒ መንግሥቱን ባለበት ካቆየ፣ እናም አንተ በእርሱ የማትከፋ ከሆነክ፣ ነገር ግን በማንኛውም ነገር እንዳሰበው፣ እንደፍላጎቱ እንዲሰራ የምትሰጠው ከሆነ አድንሃለሁ፣ አለበለዚያ መትቼ በመሬት ላይ አጥልሃለሁ።

፳፭ አሁን አዋን እነዚህን ቃላት በሚናገርበት ጊዜ፣ ንጉሡ ህይወቱ በመትረፋ መደሰት ጀመረ።

፳፮ እናም አዋን እርሱን የማጥፋት ፍላጎት እንደሌለው በተመለከተ ጊዜና፣ ለልጁ ለላሞኒ ያለውን ታላቅ ፍቅርም ደግሞ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እጅግ ተገረመ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለ። ይህ ሁሉ አንተ የፈለከው በመሆኑ፣ ወንድሞችህን እለቃለሁ፣ እናም ልጄ ላሞኒ መንግሥቱን ይዞ እንዲቆይ እፈቅዳለሁ፣ እነሆ፣ ልጄ መንግሥቱን ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከዘለአለም እንዲያቆይ እፈቅድልሁለሁ፤ እናም ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ እኔ አላስተዳድረውም—

፳፯ እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞችህ ከወህኒ ቤት እንዲለቀቁ አደርጋለሁ፣ እናም አንተና ወንድሞችህ በመንግሥቱ ወደ እኔ ለመምጣት ትችላላችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም አንተን ለመመልከት በሀይል እፈልጋለሁ። ንጉሱ አዋን በተናገራቸው ቃላትና ደግሞ ልጁ ላሞኒ በተናገራቸው ቃላት ተገረመ፣ ስለዚህ እነርሱን ለመረዳት ፈልጎ ነበር።

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አዋንና ላሞኒ ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር ጉዞአቸውን ቀጠሉ። እናም ላሞኒ በምድሪቱ ንጉስ ፊት ሞገሰን አገኘ፤ ስለዚህ የአዋን ወንድሞች ከወህኒ ቤት ወጡ።

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

፳፱ እናም አሞን ራቁታቸውን በመሆናቸው፣ በሲባሳ በጥብቅ በመታሰራቸው፣ ቆዳቸው ቆሰሎ ባገኛቸው ጊዜ፣ እጅግ አዝናኝ ነበር። እናም በረሃብ፣ በጥምና በሁሉም ዓይነት ስቃዮች ተሰቃይተዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በስቃያቸው ሁሉ ትዕግስት ነበራቸው።

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

፴ እናም፣ ይህ በመሆኑ የበለጠ ጠጣርና እንገተ ደንዳና በሆኑ ሰዎች እጅ መውደቅ ዕድላቸው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ቃላቸውን አላዳመጡም፣ ጣሉአቸውም፣ መቼአቸውም፣ እናም ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር እስከሚደርሱም እንኳን ከየቤታቸው ወደቤትና፣ ከቦታ ቦታ አስወጡአቸው፤ ከእዚያም ተወሰዱና ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ተጣሉም፣ በጠንካራ ገመድ ታሰሩም፣ እናም ለብዙ ቀናት በወህኒ ቤት ቆዩና በላሞኒና በአሞን ተለቀቁ።

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

እርንና፣ ሙሎቂ፣ እና ወንድሞቻቸው ለላማናውያን የሰበኩበት ታሪክ።

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

አልማ ፳፩

Alma 21

፩ እንግዲህ አሞናና ወንድሞቹ በላማናውያን ሞድር ዳርቻ በተለያዩ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ እርን በላማናውያን ኢየሩሳሌም ተብላ ወደ ሞትጠራበት፣ እንደ አባቶቻቸው የትውልድ ሥፍራ ስም ወደተጠራችው ስፍራ ጉዞውን አደረገ፤ እናም ስፍራውም ራቅ ያለና በሞርሞን ዳርቻ ነበር።

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

፪ ላማናውያንና አማሌቂውያን፣ እናም የአሙሎን ሰዎች፣ ኢየሩሳሌም በመባል የታወቀች ታላቅ ከተማን ገንብተው ነበር።

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

፫ እንግዲህ ላማናውያን እጅግ ጠጣር ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን አማሌቂውያን እናም አሙሎናውያን ይበልጥ ጠጣሮች ነበሩ። ስለዚህ ላማናውያንም ልባቸውን እንዲያጠጥሩ፣ በክፋታቸውና በእርኩስታቸውም እንዲጠናከሩ አደረጉአቸው።

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርን ወደ ኢየሩሳሌም ከተማ መጣ፣ እናም በመጀመሪያ ለአማሌቂውያን መሰበክ ጀመረ። እናም በምኩራባቸው መሰበክ ጀመረ፣ ምክንያቱም እንደነሆራውያን አሠራር ምኩራብ ስርተዋልና፤ ብዙ አማሌቂውያንና አሙሎናውያን የነሆርን ስርዓት የሚከተሉ ነበሩና።

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

፭ ስለዚህ፣ እርን በአንደኛው ምኩራብ ህዝቡን ለማስተማር በገባ ጊዜ፣ እናም ለእነርሱ በሚናገር ጊዜ፣ እነሆ አንድ አሙሌቃዊ ተነሳና፣ ከእርሱም ጋር እንዲህ በማለት መጣላት ጀመረ፣ አንተ የመሰከርከው ያ ምንድነው? መልእክን ተመልክተሃልን? መላዕክት ለምን ለእኛ አይገለጡልንም? እነሆ እነዚህ ሰዎች እንደ አንተ ሰዎች መልካም አይደሉምን?

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

፮ ደግሞም ንስሃ ካልገባን እንጠፋለን ብለሃል። የልባችንን ሃሳብና መሻት እንዴት አወቅህ? ንስሃ ለመግባት ምክንያት እንዳለን እንዴት አወቃችሁ? የጽድቅ ሰዎች አለመሆናችንን እንዴት አወቃችሁ? እነሆ ቅዱሳን ስፍራዎችን ስርተናል፣ እናም እግዚአብሔርን ለማምለክ አራሳችንን በአንድ ላይ እንሰበሰባለን። ጌታ ሰዎችን ሁሉ እንደሚያድን እናምናለንና።

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

፯ አሁን እርንም እንዲህ አለው፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሰው ልጆችን ከኃጢአታቸው ለማዳን እንደሚመጣ ታምናለህን?

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

፳፮ እናም ሰውየው አለው፡ እንደዚህ ያለ ምንም ነገር ታውቃለህ ብለን እናምንም። በእነዚህ የሞኝ ባህሎች እናምንም። ወደፊት ስለሚመጡ ነገሮች እንደምታውቅ እናምንም፤ አባቶችህ እናም ደግሞ አባቶቻችን ይመጣሉ ብለው የተናገሯቸውን በተመለከተ ያውቃሉ ብለን እናምንም።

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

፳፱ አሁን እርን የክርስቶስን መምጣት በተመለከተ እናም ደግሞ የሙታንን ትንሳኤ በተመለከተና በክርስቶስ ሞት፣ እና ስቃይና በደሙ የኃጢያት ክፍያ ካልሆነ በቀር ለሰው ዘር ምንም ቤዛ እንደማይኖር ለማስረዳት ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍትን ገለጠላቸው።

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች ማብራራት በጀመረ ጊዜ፣ በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ ያሾፉበትም ጀመሩ፤ እናም የተናገሯቸውን ቃላት ለመስማት አልፈለጉም።

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

፲፩ ስለዚህ፣ የሚናገረውን መስማት አለመፈለጋቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ከምኩራባቸው ወጥቶ ሄደና፣ አኒ-አንቲ ወደምትባል መንደር ሄደ፣ እናም በዚያ ሙሉቄ ቃሉን ለእነርሱ ሲሰብክላቸው፣ ደግሞም አማንና ወንድሞቹንም አገኘ። እናም ቃሉን በተመለከተ ከብዙዎች ጋር ተከራከሩ።

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ ልቡን እንዳጠጠረ ተመለከቱ፣ ስለዚህ ሄደና ወደ ሚዶኒ ምድር መጡ። እናም ለብዙዎች ቃሉን ሰበኩ፣ ያስተማሩትን ቃላት ያመኑትም ጥቂት ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

፲፫ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እርንና የተወሰኑ ወንድሞቹ ተወስደና፣ ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ተጣሉ፣ እናም ቀሪዎቹ ከሚዶኒ ምድር በዙሪያው ወዳሉ ሥፍራዎች ሸሹ።

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

፲፬ እናም ወደ ወህኒ ቤት የተጣሉት በብዙ ነገሮች ተስቃይተዋል፤ እናም በላሞኒና አሞን እጅ ተለቀቁ፣ እናም በእነርሱ ምግብና ልብስ ተሰጣቸው።

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

፲፭ እናም ቃሉን ለማወጅ በድጋሚ ሄደና፣ ለመጀመሪያ ጊዜ ከወህኒ ተለቀቁ፤ እናም እንደዚህ ተስቃይተው ነበር።

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

፲፮ እናም በጌታ መንፈስ በሚመሩበት በማንኛውም ቦታ በአማሌቂውያን እያንዳንዱ ምኩራብ፣ ወይም ለመግባት በሚችሉበት በማንኛውም የላማናውያን ጉባኤ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለመስበክ ሄዱ።

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ ይባርካቸው ጀመረ፤ ይህም ሆኖ ብዙዎችን እውነትን ወደ ማወቅ አመጡ፤ አዎን፣ ብዙዎችን ኃጢአታቸውንና ትክክል ያልሆነውን የአባቶቻቸውን ወግ ያሰረዱ እቸው ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞንና ላሞኒ ከሚዶኒ ምድር የወርሳው ምድር ወደ ሆነው ወደ እስማኤል ምድር ተመለሱ።

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

፲፱ እናም ንጉስ ላሞኒ አሞን እንዲያገለግለው ሆነ አገልጋዩ እንዲሆንም አልፏቸዋል።

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

፳ እናም ነገር ግን በእስማኤል ምድር ምክራብ እንዲሰራ አደረገ፤ እናም ህዝቡ ወይም በአገዛዙ ስር ያለው ህዝብ እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ።

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

፳፩ እናም በእነርሱ ተደሰተ፣ ብዙ ነገሮችንም አስተማራቸው። እናም ህዝቡ በእርሱ ስር እንደነበሩና፣ ነፃ ህዝብ እንደነበሩ፣ በአባቱ ከንጉሱም ጭቆና ነፃ እንደሆኑም ነገራቸው፤ ምክንያቱም አባቱ በእስማኤል ምድርና በዙሪያው ባሉት ምድር በሚኖሩት ሰዎች ላይ ይገዛ ዘንድ ሰጥቶታል።

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

፳፪ እናም በንጉስ ላሞኒ አገዛዝ ስር የሆነ ምድር ከሆነ እንደፍላጎታቸው በማንኛውም ባሉበት ቦታ ጌታ አምላካቸውን ለማምለክ ነፃነት እንዳላቸውም ደግሞ አወጀላቸው።

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshipping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

፳፫ እናም አሞን ለንጉስ ላሞኒ ህዝብ ሰበከ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ስለፅድቅ የሆኑትን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ሁሉንም ነገሮች አስተማረ። በሙሉ ትጋትም በየቀኑ መከራቸው፤ እናም ቃሉን አዳመጡትና የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ቀናኢ ሆነው ነበር።

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

አልማ ፳፪

፩ እንግዲህ አሞን ያለማቋረጥ የላሞኒን ሰዎች በማስተማር ላይ እያለ፣ ወደ አርን እና ወንድሞቹ ታሪክ እንመለሳለን፤ እርሱ ከሚደረገው ወጥቶ ከሄደ በኋላ በመንፈስ ወደኔፊ ሞድር፣ እንዲሁም ከእስማኤል ሞድር በስተቀር በሞድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ንጉሥ ወደ ሆነውም ቤት እንኳን ተመርቷል፤ እናም እርሱም የላሞኒ አባት ነበር።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አርን ከወንድሞቹ ጋር ወደ ንጉሱ ቤተመንግስት ሄደና፣ ከንጉሱ ፊት ሰገደ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ፣ ንጉስ ሆይ፣ አንተ ከወህኒ ቤት የለቀቅኸን፣ የአሞን ወንድሞች ነን።

፫ እናም አሁን፣ ንጉስ ሆይ፣ ነፍሳችንን የምታተርፍ ከሆነ፣ አገልጋዮችህ እንሆናለን። እናም ንጉሱ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ተነሱ ህይወታችሁን እሰጣችኋለሁ፣ አገልጋዮቹ እንድትሆኑም አልፈቅድም፤ ነገር ግን እንድትሰብኩልኝ እጠይቃችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በጥቂቱም እንኳን ቢሆን በወንድማችሁ አሞን ደግነትና በቃሉ ታላቅነት አዕምሮዬ ታውኳልና፤ እናም እርሱ ከሚደረገው ወጥቶ ከአናንተ ጋር ለምን እንዳልመጣም ምክንያቱን ለማወቅ እፈልጋለሁ።

፬ እናም አርን ለንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ የጌታ መንፈስ ወደሌላ ቦታ እንዲሄድ ጠርቶታል፤ እርሱም የላሞኒን ህዝብ ለማስተማር ወደ እስማኤል ሞድር ሄዷል።

፭ አሁን ንጉሱ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፡ ስለጌታ መንፈስ የተናገራችሁት ይህ ምንድን ነው? እነሆ እኔን የሚያውከኝ ነገር ይህ ነው።

፮ እናም ደግሞ አሞን—ንስሃ የምትገቡ ከሆነ ትድናላችሁ፣ እናም ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በመጨረሻው ቀን ትጣላላችሁ በማለት የተናገረው ይህ ምንድን ነው?

፯ እናም አርንም መለሰለትና፣ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ እግዚአብሔር መኖሩን ታምናለህን? እናም ንጉሱም እንዲህ አለ፡ አማሌቂውያን እግዚአብሔር አለ እንደሚሉ አውቃለሁ፣ እርሱን ለማምለክ እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ይሰበሰቡ ዘንድ ቅዱስ ሥፍራን እንዲሰሩ ፈቃድ ሰጥቻቸዋለሁም። እናም አንተ አሁን እግዚአብሔር አለ የምትል ከሆነ እነሆ እኔ አምናለሁ።

፰ እናም አሁን አርን ይህን በሰማ ጊዜ ልቡ ሃሴት ማድረግ ጀመረች፣ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ እነሆ አንተ ህያው እንደሆንክ፣ ንጉስ ሆይ፣ እግዚአብሔርም አለ።

፱ እናም ንጉሱም እንዲህ አለ፡ አባቶቻችንን ከኢየሩሳሌም ሞድር ያወጣው ያ ታላቁ መንፈስ እግዚአብሔር ነውን?

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

፲ እናም እርን እንዲህ አለው፡ አዎን እርሱ ያ ታላቁ መንፈስ ነው፤ እናም በሰማይና በምድር ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ ፈጥሯል። ይህንን ታምናለህን?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ አዎን ታላቁ መንፈስ ሁሉን ነገሮች እንደፈጠረ አምናለሁ፤ እነዚህን ሁሉ በተመለከተ እንድትነግረኝም እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም ቃልህን አምናለሁ።

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርን ንጉሡ ቃሉን እንደሚያምነው በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ከአዳም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ያሉትን ከቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት ለንጉሡ ያነብሉት ጀመረ— እግዚአብሔር ሰውን በአምሳሉ እንዴት እንደፈጠረ፣ እናም እግዚአብሔር ሰውን ትዕዛዛትን እንደሰጠው፣ እናም በመተላለፉ የተነሳም ሰው እንደወደቀ አነበበ።

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king— how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

፲፫ እናም እርን ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍትን ከአዳም መፈጠር ጀምሮ፣ የሰዎችን መውደቅ በፊቱ በማኖር፣ በሰጋ ያሉበትን ሁኔታ፣ እናም ደግሞ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ፣ በክርስቶስ በኩል፣ በሰሙ ለሚያምኑ ሁሉ የተዘጋጀውን የቤዛነት ዕቅድ አስረዳው።

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

፲፬ እናም ሰው በመውደቁ የተነሳ ስለራሱ በማንኛውም ነገር ብቁ ለመሆን አይችልም፤ ነገር ግን የክርስቶስ ስቃይና ሞቱ በእምነታቸውና በንስሃቸውና በሚመሳሰሉት አማካይነት ለኃጢአታቸው ክፍያ ይሆናል፤ እናም እርሱም የሞትን አስራት በጣጥሷል፤ ሞትም ድል አይኖረውም፤ እናም የሞት መውጊያ በክብር ተሰፋ ይዋጣል፤ እናም እርን እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ለንጉሱ አስረዳ።

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርን እነዚህን ነገሮች በሙሉ ለንጉሱ ካስረዳው በኋላ፣ ንጉሱ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረ፡ እንተ የተናገርከውን ይህን ዘላለማዊ ህይወት እንዳገኝ ምን ማድረግ አለብኝ? አዎን፣ ከእግዚአብሔር እንድወለድ፣ እናም ይህ እርኩስ መንፈስ ከደረጌ እንዲነቀል፣ መንፈሱን ተቀብዬ በደስታ እሞላ ዘንድ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀንም እንዳልጣል፣ ምን ማድረግ አለብኝ? እነሆ፣ ያለኝን ሁሉ እተዋለሁ፣ አዎን ይህን ታላቁን ደስታም እቀበል ዘንድ መንግስቴን አለቃለሁ።

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

፲፮ ነገር ግን እርን እንዲህ አለው፡ ይህንን ነገር ከፈለግህ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከሰገድህ፣ አዎን፣ ለኃጢአትህ ሁሉ ንስሃ ከገባህና፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከሰገድህ፣ እናም እንደሞትቀበል በማመን ሰሙን በእምነት ከጠራህ የፈለከውን ተሰፋ ታገኛለህ።

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሮን እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ንጉሱ በጉልበቱ ተነበርክኮ በጌታ ፊት ሰገደ፣ አዎን፣ በመሬትም ላይ እራሱን ዘረጋ፣ እናም እንዲህ በማለት በኃይል ጮኸ።

፲፰ እቤቱ እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ አሮን እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ ነግሮኛል፤ እናም እግዚአብሔር ካለና፣ እንተ እግዚአብሔር ከሆንክ፣ አንተንም እንዳውቅ ታደርጋለህን፣ እናም ከሞት እነሳ ዘንድና፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን እድን ዘንድ፣ አንተን ለማወቅ ኃጢአቱን በሙሉ አተዋለሁ። እናም እንግዲህ ንጉሱ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እንደሞተ አይነት ወደቀ።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አገልጋዮቹ ርጡና፣ በንጉሱ ላይ የሆነውን ሁሉ ለንግስቲቱ ነገሯት። እናም አርሷ ወደንጉሱ መጣች፤ እንደሞተ መውደቁን ባየችም ጊዜና፣ ደግሞ አሮንና ወንድሞቿ ለመውደቁ እንደሞክንያት በመሆን መቆማቸውን በተመለከተች ጊዜ፣ በእነርሱ ተቆጣች፣ እናም አገልጋዮቻቸው ወይም የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች፣ እነርሱን ወሰደው እንዲገድሉአቸው አዘዘች።

፳ እሁን አገልጋዮቹ ንጉሱ የወደቀበትን መንስኤ ያውቃሉ፣ ስለዚህ በአሮንና በወንድሞቹ ላይ እጃቸውን ለመጫን አልደፈሩም፤ እናም ንግስቲቱን እንዲህ በማለት ተማፀኗት፣ እነሆ ከእነዚህ አንዱ ከሁላችንም በላይ ኃያል የሆኑትን ሰዎች እንድንገድል ለምን ታዢናለሽ? ስለሆነም በፊታቸው እንወድቃለን።

፳፩ እንግዲህ ንግስቲቱ የአገልጋዮቹን ፍርሃት በተመለከተች ጊዜ በአርሷም ላይ ክፉ የሆነ ነገር እንዳይመጣባት እጅግ መፍራት ጀመረች። እናም አገልጋዮቿ አሮንና ወንድሞቹን እንዲገድሉ ህዝቦችን እንዲጠሩ አዘዘች።

፳፪ እንግዲህ አሮን የንግስቲቱን ፅኑ ውሳኔ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ የህዝቡንም ልቦና ጠጣርነት የሚያውቅ በመሆኑ፣ ብዙዎች እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ከሰበሰቡ፣ እናም ታላቅ ፀብና ረብሻ በመካከላቸው ይኖራል ብሎም ፈራ፤ ስለዚህ አሮን እጁን አንሰቶ ንጉሱን ከመሬት አነሳውና፣ እንዲህ አለው፣ ቁም። እናም ብርታትን አግኝቶ በአግሩ ቆመ።

፳፫ እንግዲህ ይህ የተደረገው በንግሥቲቱና በብዙዎቹ አገልጋዮች ፊት ነበር። እናም ይህንንም በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እጅግ ተገረሙና መፍራት ጀመሩ። እናም ንጉሱ ተነሳን፣ ይሰብክላቸው ጀመር። ለእነርሱም ሰበከና፣ እንዲህም ሆኖ ቤተሰቦቹ በሙሉ ወደጌታ ተለወጡ።

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

፳፬ እንግዲህ በንግሥቲቱ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት ብዙዎች በእንድነት ተሰብስበው ነበር፤ እናም በአሮንና ወንድሞቹም የተነሳ በመካከላቸው ብዙዎች ማጉረምረም ጀምረው ነበር።

፳፭ ነገር ግን ንጉሱ በመካከላቸው ቆመና፣ አገለገላቸው። እናም በአሮንና ከአርሱ ጋር በነበሩት መረጋጋትን አገኙ።

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ የህዝቡን መረጋጋት በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ አሮንና ወንድሞቹ በህዝቡ መካከል እንዲቆሙና ቃሉን እንዲሰብኩ አደረገ።

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ባሉት ሰዎች መካከል፣ በዙሪያውም ባለው ክልል በባህሩም ዳርቻ፣ በምስራቅና በስተምዕራብ፣ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር በምድረበዳው ከምስራቁ ባህር ጀምሮ እስከምዕራብ በሚከፍለው በቀጭኑ መንገድ፣ እናም በባህሩም ዳርቻና በምድረበዳው ዳርቻ፣ በዛራሔምላ በስተሰሜን በኩል በማንቲ ዳርቻ በሲዶም ወንዝ ምንጭ በኩል፣ ከምስራቅ ወደምዕራብ በሚፈሰው በኩል አዋጅ ላኩ—እናም ይህም ላማናውያንና ኔፋውያን የተከፈሉበት ነው።

፳፰ እንግዲህ፣ ብዙዎቹ የላማናውያን ስራ ፈቶች በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ኖሩ፣ እናም በድንኳን ኖሩ፤ በኔፊ ምድር ውስጥ በስተምዕራብ ምድረበዳው በኩልም ተዘረጉ፤ እዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በዛራሔምላ ምድር በስተምዕራብ በኩል፣ በባህሩ ዳርቻና፣ በኔፊ ምድር በስተምዕራብ በመጀመሪያው የአባቶቻቸው የርሰት ሥፍራ እናም በባህሩ ዳርቻ ነበሩ።

፳፱ እናም ደግሞ ኔፋውያን ካባረሩአቸው አካባቢ በባህሩ ዳርቻ በስተምስራቅ በኩል ብዙ ላማናውያን ነበሩ። እናም በዚያም ኔፋውያን ሙሉ በሙሉ በላማናውያን ሊከበቡ ተቃርበው ነበር፤ ይህን እንጂ ኔፋውያን በምድረበዳው ወሰን በስተሰሜን በኩል፣ በሲዶም ወንዝ መነሻ፣ ከምስራቅ እስከምዕራብ፣ በምድረበዳው ዙሪያ ያሉትን ሥፍራዎች ተቆጣጥረዋል፣ በስተሰሜን በኩል፣ ለጋስ ብለው በሚጠሩት ምድር እስከሚመጡም ድረስ እንኳን ተቆጣጥረዋል።

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

፴፯ እናም ይህም ወደ ሰሜን የሚርቅ ሆኖ፣ የዛራሔምላ ህዝቦች በመጀመሪያ ያረፉበት ስፍራ በመሆኑ ያገኙበት ስለአጥንታቸው የተናገርንባቸው ሰዎች ኖረውበት እናም ተደምስሰውበት ወደነበረው ምድር ውስጥ እየገባ፣ የወደመ ስፍራ ብለው የሚጠሩትን ያዋሰን ነበር።

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

፴፱ እናም እነርሱም በምድረበዳው በሰተደቡብ በኩል መጡ። በሰተሰሜን በኩል ያለው ቦታም የወደመው ስፍራ ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር፤ እናም በሰተደቡብ በኩል ያለው ምድር ለጋስ ተብሎ ይጠራል፣ ይህም በተለያዩ የዱር አውሬዎች ተሞልቶ የነበረ፣ ከፊሎቹም ምግብ ፍለጋ ከሰሜን በኩል የመጡ ነበሩበት፣ ምድረበዳው ነበር።

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

፵፩ እናም አሁን፣ ለኔፋውያን እስከ ለጋሱ ምድርና እስከ ወደመው ስፍራ ከባህሩ ከምስራቅ እስከ ምዕራብ ርቀቱም የአንድ ቀን ተኩል ጉዞ ብቻ ነበር፤ እናም የኔፊና የዛራሔምላ ምድር ከሞላ ጎደል በውሃ የተከበበ ነበር፤ በሰተሰሜንና በሰተደቡብ ምድር መካከል ቀጭን ሥፍራ ነበር።

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

፵፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን ለጋሱን ምድር፣ ከምስራቅ እስከ ምዕራቡ ባህር፣ ይኖሩበት ነበር፤ እናም ኔፋውያን ለማናውያን በሰተሰሜን ምንም ሀብት እንዳይኖራቸው፣ በሰተሰሜንም ያለውን ሥፍራ እንዳያጥለቀልቁት በብልሃታቸው ከጠባቂዎቻቸውና ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር በሰተደቡብ ባለው ሥፍራ አገዱአቸው።

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

፵፬ ስለዚህ በኔፊ ምድር እና በዙሪያው ካለው ምድረበዳ በሰተቀር ለማናይቶች ምንም ይዘታዎች ሊኖሯቸው አልቻሉም። ለማናውያን ለእነርሱ ጠላት በመሆናቸው፣ በየትኛውም አቅጣጫ እንዳያስቃዩአቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ እንደፍላጎታቸው የሚሸሹበትን ሃገር ያገኙ ዘንድ እንግዲህ በኔፋውያን ይህ ብልህነት ነው።

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

፵፭ እናም አሁን እኔ፣ ይህን ካልኩኝ በኋላ፣ ወደ አሞንና አሮን፣ ኦምነርና ሂምኒ፣ እናም ወንድሞቻቸው ታሪክ በድጋሚ እመለሳለሁ።

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

አልማ ፳፫

Alma 23

፩ እነሆ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ንጉስ በእሞን፣ በእርን፣ በአምነር፣ በሂምኒ፣ እንዲሁም የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በማንኛውም ቦታ በየትኛውም በምድሪቱ ክፍል ለመሰበክ በሚሄዱት ወንድሞቻቸው ላይ እጃቸውን እንዳይጫኑ በህዝቦቹ ሁሉ መካከል አዋጅ ላከ።

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

፪ አዎን፣ ለማሰር እጃቸውን በእነርሱ ላይ በማድረግ ወይንም በወህኒ ቤት እንዳይጥሏቸው፣ ወይም እንዳይተፋባቸውም፣ እንዳይመቱአቸውም፣ ከምኩራባቸው እንዳያባርሩአቸውም፣ እንዳይገርፉአቸውም፣ ድንጋይም እንዳይወረውሩባቸውም፣ ነገር ግን ወደቤቶቻቸው እናም ደግሞ ወደ ቤተመቅደሶቻቸውና ወደተቀደሱት ሰፍራዎቻቸው ውስጥ ለመግባት ነጻ ፍቃድ እንዲኖራቸው በመካከላቸው አዋጅ ላከ።

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

፫ እናም እንደዚህ እንደፍላጎታቸውም የጌታን ቃል እንደፍላጎታቸው ለመሰበክ ይሄዱ ዘንድ፣ ምክንያቱም ንጉሱና ቤተሰቦቹ ወደጌታ ተለውጠዋል፤ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል የሚከላከለው እንዳይኖርበት ነገር ግን በምድሪቱ ላይ በሙሉ እንዲሆን፣ ህዝቡም መጥፎውን የአባቶቻቸውን ወግ ለማሳመን፣ እናም ሁሉም የእርስ በርስ ወንድሞች መሆናቸውን እንዲያምኑ፣ ወይም እንዳይገድሉ፣ ወይም እንዳይዘርፉና፣ ወይም እንዳይሰርቁ፣ ወይም ዝሙትንም እንዳይፈፀሙ፣ ወይም ክፉ የሆኑትንም ነገሮች እንዳይፈፀሙ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ለህዝቡ አዋጁን ላከ።

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ አዋጁን በላከ ጊዜ፣ እርንና ወንድሞቹ ከከተማ ወደ ከተማ ተጓዙ፣ ከአንዱ ማምለኪያ ቦታ ወደ ሌላኛው በመጓዝ፣ ቤተክርስቲያኖችን በማቋቋም፣ እናም ካህናትንና መምህራን በላማናውያን ምድር በሙሉ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል እንዲሰብኩና እንዲያስተምሩ ቀደሱአቸው፤ እናም እንደዚህ ታላቅ ስኬትንም ማግኘት ጀመሩ።

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

፭ እናም በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ጌታን ወደማወቅ መጡ፣ አዎን፣ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት በኔፋውያን ባህል ወደማመንም መጡ፤ እናም እስከአሁኑ ጊዜ የተላለፉትን መዝገቦችና ትንቢቶችም ተማሩ።

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

፮ እናም ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ በርግጥም ብዙዎች እንዳመኑትም፣ ወይም በራዕይና በትንቢት መንፈስ፣ እናም በውስጣቸው ድንቅ ስራን በሚሰራው በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል መሰረት በእምንና በወንድሙ ሰበብ ብዙዎች እውነቱን ወደ ማወቅ የሚመጡት—እዎን እንዲሁም አላችኋለሁ፣ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ በሰብከታቸው አምነው የነበሩ ላማናውያን ሁሉ፣ እናም ወደጌታ ተለውጠው የነበሩ፣ መንገዳቸውንም አልሳቱም ነበር።

፯ እነርሱም ፃድቃን ህዝቦች ሆኑ፣ ከእንግዲህ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር እንዲሁም ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር እንዳይጣሉ የአመፀ መሣሪያቸውን ጣሉ።

፰ አሁን፣ ወደጌታም የተለወጡት እነዚህ ናቸው።

፱ በእስማኤል ምድር የነበሩት የላማናውያን ሕዝቦች፣

፲ እናም ደግሞ በሚዶኒ ምድር የነበሩት የላማናውያን ሕዝቦች፣

፲፩ እናም ደግሞ በኔፊ ከተማ የነበሩት የላማናውያን ሕዝቦች፤

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ በሼሎም ምድር የነበሩትና፣ በሻምሎን ምድር የነበሩት፣ እናም በልሙኤል ከተማና፣ በሻምሎንም ከተማ የነበሩት የላማናውያን ሕዝቦች።

፲፫ እናም እነዚህ ወደጌታ የተለወጡት የላማናውያን ከተሞች ስም ነበሩ፤ እናም የአመፃቸውን መሳሪያዎች፣ እዎን፣ ሁሉንም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን የጣሉት እነዚህ ናቸው፤ እናም ሁሉም ላማናውያን ነበሩ።

፲፬ እናም ከእንዲ በስተቀር አማሌቂውያን አልተለወጡም ነበር፤ ከአሙሎናውያንም ማንም አልተለወጠም፤ ነገር ግን ልባቸውን፣ ደግሞም በዚያ በከፊል በምድሪቱ፣ እዎን እናም መንደሮቻቸውን ሁሉና ከተሞቻቸውን ሁሉ የሚኖሩት ላማናውያን ልብም አጠጥረውት ነበር።

፲፭ ስለሆነም፣ ንስሃ የገቡባቸውንና እውነትን እንዲያውቁ የተደረጉባቸውን እናም የተለወጡባቸውን የላማናውያን ከተሞች ሁሉ ሰይመናቸው።

፲፮ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱና የተለወጡት ከወንድሞቻቸው ተለይተው ይታወቁ ዘንድ ስም እንዲኖራቸው ፈለገ፤ ስለዚህ ንጉሱ ከእርንና ከብዙ ካህናቶቻቸው ጋር እነርሱ እንዲለዩ የሚሰጣቸውን ስም በተመለከተ ተመካከሩ።

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰማቸውንም አንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች በማለት ጠሩአቸው፤ እናም በዚህ ስም ተጠሩና፤ ከዚያን ጊዜ በኋላ ላማናውያን ተብለው አልተጠሩም።

፲፰ እናም ታታሪ ሰዎች መሆን ጀመሩ፤ እዎን፣ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር ወዳጅ ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከእነርሱም ጋር ጓደኝነትን ጀመሩ፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔር እርግጫን ከዚያን ጊዜ በኋላ አልተከተላቸውም።

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

አልማ ፳፬

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሌቂውያንና፣ አሙሎናውያንም፣ በአሙሎን ምድር፣ ደግሞ በሌላም ምድር የነበሩት ላማናውያንም፣ እናም በኢየሩሳሌም ምድርና፣ በአጠቃላይ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ የነበሩት፣ ያልተለወጡት፣ እናም የአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂን ስም ያልወሰዱት፣ በአማሌቂውያንና በአሙሎናውያን በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ለማስቆጣት ተነሳሳተው ነበር።

፪ እናም ጥላቻቸው በእነርሱ ላይ መሪር ነበር፤ እንዲህም ሆኖ በንጉሳቸውም ላይ እስከሚያምፁ ድረስ፣ እርሱ ንጉሳቸው እንዲሆን አልፏልጉም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ህዝብ ላይም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን አነሱ።

፫ እንግዲህ ንጉሱ በልጁ ላይ መንግሥቱን አወደቀ፣ እናም ስሙን አንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂ በማለት ጠራው።

፬ እናም ንጉሱ ላማናውያን በእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ላይ ለጦርነት ዝግጅት በጀመሩበት ዓመት ሞተ።

፭ እንግዲህ አሞንና ወንድሞቹ እንዲሁም ከእርሱ ጋር የመጡት ሁሉ ላማናውያን ወንድሞቻቸውን ለማጥፋት መዘጋጀታቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ምድያም ምድር መጡ፣ እናም እዚያ አሞን ወንድሞቹን በሙሉ ተገናኘ፤ እናም እራሳቸውን ከላማናውያን ለመከላከል ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባቸው ከላሞኒና ደግሞ ከአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ጋር ለመወያየት ወደ እስማኤል ምድር መጡ።

፮ እንግዲህ ወደ ጌታ ከተለወጡት ሰዎች መካከል በወንድሙ ላይ የጦር መሣሪያን የሚያነሳ አንድም ሰው አልነበረም፤ ለጦርነትም ቢሆን ምንም ዓይነት ዝግጅት ማንም አያደርግም፤ አሞን እናም ደግሞ ንጉሳቸው ለጦርነት እንዳይዘጋጁ አዟ።

፯ እንግዲህ፣ ይህንን በተመለከተ ለህዝቡ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፡ የተወደዱትንም ሕዝቦቼን፣ ታላቁ አምላካችን በቸርነቱ እነዚህን ኔፋውያን ወንድሞቻችን ለእኛ እንዲሰብኩ፣ እናም የአባቶቻችንን ክፉ ባህሎች እንዲያሳምኑን ስለላካቸው እግዚአብሔር አምላኬን አመሰግናለሁ።

፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ከእነዚህ ከኔፋውያን ወንድሞቻችን ጋር ጓደኝነት እንድንጀምር፣ ልባችንን ለማራራት የመንፈሱን ክፍል ስለላከልን ታላቁ አምላኬን አመሰግናለሁ።

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህንን ጓደኝነት በመጀመር ጎጠኦቻችንንና ብዙ ግድያዎችን መፈፀማችንን ስላመንን ደግሞ አምላኬን አመሰግናለሁ።

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

፲ እናም ለእነዚህን ነገሮች ንስሃ እንድንገባ ስለፈቀደልንና፣ ደግሞ ለፈፀምናቸው ጎጠኦቻችን ግድያዎች ይቅር ስላለን፣ እናም ጥፋታችንን በልጁ አማካኝነት ከልባችን ስለወሰደው አምላኬን፣ አዎን ታላቅ የሆነውን አምላኬን አመሰግናለሁ።

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

፲፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ (ከሰው ዘር ሁሉ በላይ የጠፋን እኛ በመሆናችን) ለጎጠኦቻችን ሁሉ እንዲሁም በርካታ ግድያዎችን ለፈፀምንበት ንስሃ ለመግባት፣ እናም እነዚህን እግዚአብሔር ከልባችን እንዲያሰወግድልን ለማድረግ የምንችለውን ሁሉ ይህ ብቻ ስለነበረ፣ ምክንያቱም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በበቂ ሁኔታ ንስሃ ገብተን እርሱም ጥፋታችንን ሊወሰድ በሚችልበት ሁሉ ልናደርግ የምንችለው ሁሉ ይህ ነበርና፤

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

፲፪ እንግዲህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እግዚአብሔር እንከናችንን በመውሰዱ፣ እናም ጎራዳዎቻችን ስላበሩ፣ ከእንግዲህ ጎራዳዎቻችንን በወንድሞቻችን ደም አናጎድፋቸው።

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ አይሆንም፣ በወንድሞቻችን ደም እንዳይጎድፉ ዘንድ ጎራዳዎቻችንን እናስቀምጣቸው፤ ምናልባትም ጎራዳዎቻችንን በድጋሚ ካጎደፍናቸው ለጎጠኦቻችን ክፍያ በሚሆነው በታላቁ አምላካችን ልጅ ደም ከእንግዲህ ሊነፀ አይችሉም ይሆናልና።

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

፲፬ እናም ታላቁ አምላክ በእኛ ላይ ምህረትንና፣ እንዳንጠፋ እነዚህን ነገሮች እናድናውቃቸው አድርጓል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ነፍሶቻችንን ለጆቻችንን ከመውደዱ ያህል ድረስ ስለሚወድ አስቀድሞ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድናውቃቸው አድርጓል፤ ስለዚህ፣ የደህንነት ዕቅድ ለእኛ እንዲሁም ለወደፊቱ ትውልድ እንዲታወቅ በምህረቱ በመላዕክቱ ጎብኝቶናል።

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

፲፭ አቤቱ አምላካችን እንዴት መሀሪ ነው! እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ጉድፋችንን ከራሳችን ለማሰወገድ ይህን ያህል ብቻ ማድረግ በመቻላችን እናም ጎራዳዎቻችን እንዲያበሩ በመደረጋቸው፣ ቃሉን ለእኛ ከሰጠንና በዚህም ንጹህ ካደረገን በኋላ ጎራዳዎችን በወንድሞቻችን ደም እንዳልበከልን በመጨረሻው ቀን፣ ወይም በፊቱም እንዲፈረድብን በምንቆምበት ቀን ለአምላካችን ምስክር እንዲሆኑ፣ ጎራዳዎቻችን እያበሩ እንድንጠብቃቸው እንደብቃቸው።

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ወንድሞቻችን ሊያጠፉን ከፈለጉ፣ እነሆ፣ ጎራዳዎቻችንን እንደብቃቸዋለን፤ አዎን፣ በመጨረሻው ቀንም እንዳልተጠቀሙን ባቸው ምስክር ይሆኑ ዘንድ እንጸባራቁ እንዲሆኑ በመሬቱ ውስጥ እንደብቃቸዋለን፤ እናም ወንድሞቻችን የሚያጠፉን ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ ወደ አምላካችን እንሄዳለንም፣ እንድናለንም።

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

፲፯ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ይህንን አባባል በጨረሰና፣ ህዝቡም በአንድ ላይ በተሰበሰበ ጊዜ፣ ጎራዳያቸውን፣ እናም የሰው ደም ለማፍሰስ የሚያገለግሉትን መሳሪያዎች ሁሉ ወሰዱና፣ በመሬት ውስጥም ቀበሩአቸው።

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

፲፱ እናም ይህንን ያደረጉት ከእንግዲህ መሳሪያዎቹን የሰው ልጆችን ደም ለማፍሰስ በድጋሚ እንደማይጠቀሙበት በእነርሱ አመለካከት ለእግዚአብሔርና ለሰዎች ምስክር እንዲሆን ነበር፤ እናም ይህን ያደረጉት የወንድሞቻቸውን ደም ከማፍሰስ ህይወታቸውን አሳልፈው እንደሚሰጡና፣ ከወንድም ከመውሰድ ይልቅ ለእርሱ መስጠት እንደሚሻል ነበር፤ እናም ሰራ በመፍታት ጊዜያቸውን ከማሳለፍ በእጆቻቸው ብዙ እንደሚሰሩ ለማረጋገጥና ከእግዚአብሔርም ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ለመግባት ነው።

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

፳ እናም እነዚህ ላማናውያን እንዲያምኑና እውነትን እንዲያውቁ በመጡ ጊዜ፣ የፀኑ እንደነበሩ፣ እናም ኃጢአትን ከመፈፀም ሞት እንደሚሻላቸው እንደዚህ ተመልክተናል፤ የሰላም መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንደደበቁ፣ ወይም የጦርነት መሳሪያዎቻቸውንም ለሰላም ሲሉ እንደደበቁ ተምልክተናል።

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወንድሞቻቸው ላማናውያንም ለጦርነት ተዘጋጁና፣ ንጉሱን ለማጥፋትና፣ ሌላውንም በቦታው ለመተካት፣ እናም ደግሞ የእንቲ-ኔሬ-ሌሂዎች ህዝቦችንም ከምድሪቱ ለማጥፋት ወደ ኔሬ ምድር መጡ።

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

፳፪ እናም ህዝቡ ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ መምጣታቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ከእነርሱ ጋር ለማገናኘት ሄዱና፣ በፊታቸውም ወደ መሬት ዝቅ አሉላቸው፣ እናም የጌታን ስም መጥራት ጀመሩና፤ ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ በመጡና በጎራዳው እነርሱን መግደል በጀመሩ ጊዜ በዚህ ሁኔታ ነበሩ።

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

፳፪ እናም የሚቋቋማቸውን ሳያገኙ አንድ ሺህ አምስት የሚሆኑትን ገደሉ፤ እናም እነርሱ ከአምላካቸው ጋር ለመኖር በመሄዳቸው የተባረኩ እንደሆኑ እናውቃለን።

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

፳፫ እናም ለማናውያን ወንድሞቻቸው ከጎራዳው እንዳልሸሹ እንዲሁም ወደ ቀኝም ሆነ ወደግራ ፈቀቅ አለማለታቸውን፣ ነገር ግን እንደወደቁና እንደጠፉ፣ እናም በጎራዳው እየጠፉ እያለ አምላካቸውን ማመስገናቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ—

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

፳፬ እናም ለማናውያን ይህንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እነርሱን ከመግደል ተገቱ፤ እናም በጎራዳው ለወደቁት ወንድሞቻቸው በውስጣቸው ልባቸውም ያዘኑ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፣ ስላደረጓቸውም ነገሮች ንስሃ ገብተዋልና።

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ጣሉና፣ በድጋሚ አይወስዱአቸውም፣ ምክንያቱም በፈፀሟቸው ግድያዎች ተፀፀተዋልና፤ እናም እነርሱን ለመግደል ክንዳቸውን በእነርሱ ላይ በሚያነሱት ምህረት በመተማመን እንደ ወንድሞቻቸው ተንበረከኩ።

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከተገደሉት በበለጠ የእግዚአብሔር የሆኑት በዚያን ቀን ተጨመሩ፤ እናም እነዚያ የተገደሉትም ዓድቃን ነበሩ፣ ነገር ግን እነርሱ እንደዳኑ ስለዚህ ለጥርጣሬ ምንም ምክንያት አልነበረንም።

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

፳፯ እናም ከእነርሱ መካከል ኃጢአተኛ የሆነ የተገደለ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን ከሺዎች የሚበልጡ እውነትን ወደማወቅ መጥተዋል፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ለህዝቡ ደህንነት በብዙ መንገድ እንደሚሰራ እንመለከታለን።

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

፳፰ እሁን ብዙዎቹን ወንድሞቻቸውን የገደሉት ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ለማናውያን አማሌቂውያን እና አሙሎናውያን ነበሩ፣ ብዙዎቹም የኔሆር ስርዓትን የሚያሟክተሉ ነበሩ።

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

፳፱ እንግዲህ፣ የጌታን ሰዎች ከተቀላቀሉት መካከል፣ አማሌቂውያንም ሆነ አሙሎናውያን የተባሉ፣ በኔሆር ስርዓትም የሚጓዙ አልነበሩም፣ ነገር ግን እነርሱ የላማንና የልሙኤል ዝርያዎች ነበሩ።

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

፴ እናም ህዝቡ በጌታ መንፈስ አንዴ ከታነፁ፣ እናም ፅድቅን በሚመለከቱ ነገሮች ታላቅ እውቀትን ካገኙ በኋላ፤ እናም ወደ ኃጢአተና መተላለፍ በመውደቃቸው ይበልጥ ጠጣሮች መሆናቸውንና፣ ሁኔታቸውም እነዚህን ነገሮች በጭራሽ የማያውቁ ከሚመስለው ይበልጥ የከፋ እንደሆነ በዚህ በግልጽ ለመለየት ይቻላል።

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

አልማ ፳፭

፩ እናም እነሆ፣ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ወንድሞቻቸውን በመግደላቸው ይበልጥ ተናደዱ፤ ስለዚህ በኔፋውያን ላይ ለበቀል ማሉ፤ እናም በዚያን ጊዜ የአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ሰዎችን ለመግደል ሙከራ አላደረጉም ነበር።

፪ ነገር ግን ወታደሮቻቸውን ወሰዱና፣ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ዳርቻ ሄዱ፣ እናም በአምኒህ ምድር ያሉትን ሰዎች አጠቁለቸው፣ እናም አጠፋቸው።

፫ እናም ከዚያን በኋላ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ብዙ ውጊያ ነበራቸው፣ በዚህም ተባረሩበትና ተገደሉበት።

፬ እናም ከተገደሉት ላማናውያን መካከል የአሙሎንና የወንድሞቹ ዘሮች፣ የኖህ ካህናት የነበሩት ናቸው፣ እናም በኔፋውያን እጅ ነበር የተገደሉት፤

፭ እናም ቀሪዎቹ፣ በሰተምሰራቅ በኩል በምድረበዳው ከሸሹ በኋላ፣ እናም በላማናውያን ላይ ኃይላቸውንና ስልጣናቸውን ያለአግባብ በመያዛቸው፣ በርካታ ላማናውያን በእምነታቸው የተነሳ በእሳት እንዲጠፉ ተደረገ—

፮ ለብዙዎቹ፣ ብዙ ጥፋት ከደረሰባቸው እናም ከተሰቃዩ በኋላ፣ እርጉና ወንድሞቹ በምድራቸው የሰበኩትን ቃል ማስታወስ ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ የአባቶቻቸውንም ወግ አለማመንና፣ በጌታ በማመን፣ እናም ለኔፋውያን ታላቅ ኃይልን እንደሰጣቸው ማመን ጀመሩ፤ እናም እንደዚህ ብዙዎች በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ተለውጠው ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የአሙሎን ልጆች ቅሪት የሆኑት ገዢዎች፣ እነርሱ፣ አዎን፣ በእነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ የሚያምኑት እንዲገደሉ አደረጉ።

፰ እንግዲህ ይህ ሰማዕት ብዙዎች ወንድሞቻቸውን በቁጣ እንዲታወኩ አደረገ፤ እናም በምድረበዳው ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ ላማናውያንም የአሙሎንን ዘር ማደንና፣ መግደል ጀመሩ፤ እናም በምድረበዳው በሰተምሰራቅ በኩል ሸሹ።

፱ እናም እነሆ በዚህን ጊዜ እነርሱ በላማናውያን ታደኑ። ስለዚህ አቢናዲ በእሳት እንዲሞት ዘንድ ሰላደረጉት የካህናቱ ዘሮች በተመለከተ የተናገረው ቃል ተፈፀመ።

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

፲ በእኔ ላይ የምታደርጉት ነገር ወደፊት ሊመጣ ያለው ነገር ምሳሌ ነው በማለት ተናግሮአቸው ነበር።

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

፲፩ እናም እንግዲህ ለእግዚአብሔር ባለው እምነት ለመጀመሪያ ጊዜ ሞትን በእሳት እንዲቀጣ የተደረገው እቢናዲ ነበር፤ አሁን እርሱ ይህን ማለቱ ነበር፤ እርሱ እንደተሰቃየው ብዙዎች በእሳት ሞት ይሰቃያሉ።

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

፲፪ እናም ለኖህ ካህናትም ዘርቻቸው እርሱን እንዲደረጉት ብዙዎችን በእሳት እንደሚገድሉ፤ እናም ልክ እረኛ የሌላቸው በጎች እንደሚባረሩትና በዱር አውሬዎች እንደሚበሉት ወደሌላ ሀገርም እንደሚበታተኑና እንደሚገደሉ ነገራቸው፤ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ዘርቻቸው በላማናውያን በመባረራቸው፣ በመታደናቸውና በመመታታቸው እነዚህ ቃላት ተረጋግጠው ነበር።

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ኔፋውያንን ማሸነፍ አለመቻላቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ወደራሳቸው ምድር ተመለሱ፤ እናም ብዙዎች በእስማኤል ምድርና በኔፊ ምድር ለመኖር ሄዱ፤ እናም እንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ከነበሩትም የእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ጋር ተቀላቀሉ።

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

፲፬ እናም ወንድሞቻቸው እንዲደረጉት የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ቀበሩና፣ ፃድቃን ህዝብም መሆን ጀመሩ፤ እናም በጌታ ጎዳና ተራመዱና፣ ትዕዛዛቱንና ህግጋቱን ጠበቁ።

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

፲፭ እዎን፣ እናም የሙሴን ህግ ጠብቀዋል፤ በአሁኑም ጊዜ ሁሉም ስላልተፈፀመ የሙሴን ህግ መጠበቅ አስፈላጊ ነበርና። ነገር ግን የሙሴ ህግ ቢኖርም የክርስቶስን መምጣት ይጠበቁ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም የሙሴ ህግ የመምጣቱ ምልክት መሆኑን አሰበው ስለነበር፤ እናም ክርስቶስም ለእነርሱ እስከሚገለጥ ድረስ የውጪአዊውን ሥርዓታቸውን ማከናወን እንዳለባቸው ስለሚያምኑ ነው።

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

፲፮ እንግዲህ ደህንነትም በሙሴ ህግ እንደሚመጣ አልገመቱም፤ ነገር ግን የሙሴ ህግ በክርስቶስ ያላቸውን እምነት ያጠነክራል፤ እናም እነዚያ ነገሮች ይመጣሉ ብሎ በተናገረው በትንቢት መንፈስ ተስፋ በማድረግ፣ በእምነታቸው የዘለዓለማዊውን ደህንነት ተስፋ ያደርጋሉ።

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

፲፯ እናም አሁን እነሆ አምንም፣ አሮንም፣ ኦምነርም፣ ሒምነም፣ እናም ወንድሞቻቸው በላማናውያን መካከል ድልን ስላገኙ፣ ጌታም እንደጸሎታቸው ስለሰጣቸውና ቃሉን ደግሞ በዝርዝር ስላረጋገጠላቸው እጅግ ተደስቱ።

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

አልማ ፳፮

Alma 26

፩ እናም አሁን፣ አዎን ለወንድሞቹ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፣ እንዲህም ይላሉ፣ ወንድሞቹ፣ እነሆ እንዲህ ብዬ እናገራችኋለሁ፣ ለደስታችን እንዴት ታላቅ ምክንያት አለን፤ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር በጀመርን ጊዜ እግዚአብሔር ታላቅ በረከትን ሊሰጠን እንደሚችል መገመት እንችላለን?

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

፪ እናም አሁን፣ እርሱ ምን ዓይነት ታላቅ በረከት በእኛ ላይ አድርጓል? ብዬ እጠይቃችኋለሁ፣ ይህንን ለመናገርስ ትችላላችሁን?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

፫ እነሆ፣ እኔ እመልሰላችኋለሁ፤ ወንድሞቻችን፣ ለማናውያን በጨለማ ነበሩ፤ አዎን፣ እንዲያውም በጨለማው ገደል፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሰንቶቹ ናቸው ድንቁጥ የእግዚአብሔር ብርሃን የተመለከቱት! እናም ይህንን ታላቅ ሰራም ለመፈፀም በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ መሆናችን፣ ይህ በእኛ ላይ የወረደው በረከት ነው።

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

፬ እነሆ፣ ሺዎቹም ተደሰቱ፣ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔር በረትም መጡ።

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

፭ እነሆ፣ እርሻው ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር፣ እናም እናንተ ስላጨዳችሁና፣ በጉልበታችሁ ስለሰበሰባችሁ፣ አዎን፣ ቀኑን ሁሉ ስለሰራችሁ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ እናም የነደዎቻችሁን ቁጥር ተመልከቱ! እናም እንዲያባከኑ በየጎተራዎቹ ይሰበሰባሉ።

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garner, that they are not wasted.

፮ አዎን፣ እነርሱም በመጨረሻው ቀን በውሽንፍሩ አይመቱም፤ አዎን፣ በአውሎ ንፋሱም አይበታተኑም፤ ነገር ግን ውሽንፍሩ ሲመጣ ሁሉም በቦታቸው በእንድ ላይ ይሰበሰባሉ፣ ውሽንፍሩም ዘልቆ ሊገባ አይቻለውም፤ አዎን፣ በሃያሉ ነፋስ ጠላታቸው ሊወሰዳቸው ወደሚፈልግበትም የትኛውም ቦታ ቢሆን አይገፋም።

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነርሱ በአውድማው ጌታ እጅ ናቸው፣ እናም የእርሱ ናቸው፤ እርሱም በመጨረሻው ቀን ያስነሳቸዋል።

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

፰ የአምላካችን ስም የተባረከ ይሁን፤ በመዝሙር እናወድስው፤ አዎን ለቅዱስ ስሙ ምስጋና እናቅርብ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ለዘለዓለም ፅድቅን አድርጓልና።

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

፱ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ባንመጣ ኖር፣ እነዚህ የተወደዱ ወንድሞቻችን፣ እኛንም እጅግ የሚወዱን፣ ለእኛ ያላቸው ጥላቻ የከፋ ይሆን ነበር፣ አዎን እናም ደግሞ እነርሱ ለእግዚአብሔር ባዕዳን በሆኑ ነበር።

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አዎን እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ወንድሙ አርን እንዲህ በማለት ወቀሰው፡ አዎን ደስታህ ወደኩራት ይወስድሃል ብዬ አፈራለሁ።

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

፲፩ ነገር ግን አዎን እርሱን እንዲህ አለው፡ በራሴ ጉልበት እንዲሁም በጥበቤ አልኩራም፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ደስታዬ ሙሉ ነው፣ አዎን፣ ልቤ በደስታ ይሞላል፣ እናም በአምላኬ ሐሴት አደርጋለሁ።

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

፲፪ አዎን፣ እኔ ምንም እንዳልሆንኩ አውቃለሁ፤ ጉልበቴን በተመለከተ ደካማ ነኝ፤ ስለዚህ በራሴ አልኩራም፣ ነገር ግን በአምላኬ እኩራለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም በእርሱ ኃይል ሁሉንም ነገር ማድረግ እችላለሁና፤ አዎን፣ እነሆ፣ በዚህ ምድር ብዙ አስደናቂ ተዓምራትን አድርገናል፣ ለዚህም ስሙን ለዘለዓለም እናወድሳለን።

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ ሰንት ሺህ ወንድሞቻችንን ነው እግዚአብሔር ከሲኦል እስራት የፈታው፣ እናም የቤዛነትን ፍቅር እንዲዘምሩ ተደረጉ፣ እናም ለዚህም ምክንያቱ በውስጣችን ባለው በቃሉ ኃይል የተነሳ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ ለመደሰትስ ታላቅ ምክንያት አይኖረንምን?

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

፲፬ አዎን፣ ልዑል እግዚአብሔር በመሆኑ እርሱን ለዘለዓለም ለማወደስ ምክንያት አለን፣ እናም ወንድሞቻችንን ከሲኦል ሰንሰለት አስለቅቋልና።

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

፲፭ አዎን፣ እነርሱም በዘለአለማዊው ጨለማና ጥፋት ተከበው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ወደ ዘለአለማዊው ብርሃን፣ አዎን፣ ወደ ዘለአለማዊው ደህንነት አመጣቸው፤ እናም ወደር በሌለው ፍቅሩም ተከበዋል፤ አዎን እናም ይህን ታላቅና ድንቅ ስራ በመስራታችን በእጆቹ መሳሪያ ሆነን ነበር።

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

፲፮ ስለዚህ፣ እኛ እንደነቃለን፤ አዎን በጌታ እንደነቃለን፤ አዎን፣ ደስታችን ሙሉ በመሆኑ ሐሴት እናደርጋለን፤ አዎን አምላካችንን ለዘለዓለም እናወድሳለን። እነሆ፣ በጌታ ከመጠን በላይ ለመደነቅ የሚችል ማን ነው? አዎን፣ ስለታላቁ ኃይሉና፣ ስለምህረቱ፣ እናም ለሰው ልጆች ስላለው ፅናት አብዝቶ መናገር የሚችል ማን ነው? እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ ከተሰማኝ ጥቂቱን ለመናገር አልችልም።

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

፲፯ አምላካችን ከአስቃቂው ከኃጢአትና ከተበላሸው ሁኔታችን ሲያስለቅቅን እንደዚህ መሃሪ እንደሚሆንልን ማን ለመገመት ይቻለዋል?

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

፲፰ እነሆ፣ በቁጣም ቢሆን ቤተክርስቲያኗን በኃይል በማስፈራራት ለማጥፋት ሄድን።

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

፲፱ ከቤቱ እንግዲህ፣ ወደአስቃቂው ጥፋት ለምን አልተወገም፣ አዎን፣ የፍርድ ጎራዴስ በእኛ ላይ እንዲወድቅ፣ እናም ወደዘላለማዊው ጥፋት እንዲጥለን ለምን አላደረገም?

፳ ከቤቱ ይህም ሀሣብ ነፍሴን እንድትኮበልል አድርጓት ነበር፤ እነሆ፣ እግዚአብሔር ፍርድን በእኛ ላይ አላደረገም፣ ነገር ግን በታላቁ ምህረቱ ከዘላለማዊው ሞትና ስቃይ አሳልፎን፣ እንዲሁም ወደ ነፍሳችን ደህንነት አምጥቶናል።

፳፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚያውቅ ተፈጥሯዊው ሰው ማን ነው? ንስሃ ከገባው በስተቀር እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚያውቅ ማንም የለም አላችኋለሁ።

፳፪ አዎን፣ ንስሃ ለሚገቡ፣ እምነትን ለሚለማመደውና፣ መልካምን ለሚሰራው፣ እንዲሁም ሳያቋርጡ ለሚፀልዩው፣ ለእንደእነዚህ ዓይነቶቹ የእግዚአብሔርን ሚስጥር እንዲያውቁ ይሰጣቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ ለእንደእነዚህ አይነቶቹ ተገልፀው የማያውቁት ነገሮች እንዲገለፁላቸው ይሰጣቸዋል፤ አዎን እናም ለእነዚህ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩትን ነፍሳት ለንስሃ እንዲያመጡ ይሰጣቸዋል፣ እኛም ወንድሞቻችንን ለንስሃ እንድናመጣቸው እንደተሠጠን እንዲሁ ይሆናል።

፳፫ እናም ወንድሞቼ በዛራሔምላ ምድር ላሉት ወንድሞቻችን ወደኔፊ ምድር ለወንድሞቻችን ለላማናውያን ለማስተማር እንሄዳለን እንዳልናቸው፣ እናም በማሾፍ እንደሳቁብን ታስታውሳላችሁን?

፳፬ እንዲህ ብለውናልና፣ ላማናውያንን እውነትን ወደማወቅ ማምጣት እንደሚቻላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እንደ አንገተ ደንዳና ህዝቦች እንደነበሩት፤ በደም መፍሰስ ልባቸው እንደተደሰተው፤ ጊዜያቸውንም በክፋት እንዳሳለፉት፣ አቅጣጫቸውም ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ሕጉን እንደሚተላለፉት የሆነውን ላማናውያንን የአባቶቻቸው ወግ ትክክል እንዳልነበር ለማሳመን ይቻላል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? አሁን ወንድሞቼ ይህ የእነርሱ አነጋገር እንደሆነ አስታውሱ።

፳፭ እናም በተጨማሪ እንዲህ አሉ፣ እነርሱንና ክፋታቸውን ከምድሪቱ እንድናጠፋ፣ እኛንም እንዳይወሩን እናም እንዳያጠፉን መሳሪያዎቻችንን በእነርሱ ላይ እንታጠቅ።

፳፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው የመጣነው ወንድሞቻችንን ለማጥፋት ባለ ዓላማ አይደለም፣ ነገር ግን ጥቂት ነፍሳትን ለማዳን ባለ ዓላማ ነው።

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

፳፯ እናም ልባችን በተጨነቀ ጊዜና፣ ወደኋላችን ለመመለስ በተዘጋጀን ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ አፀናናን፣ እናም እንዲህ አለን፣ በወንድሞቻችሁ በላማናውያን መካከል ሂደና፣ ስቃያችሁን በትዕግስት ያዙት፣ እናም መልካም ውጤትን እንድታገኙ አደርጋችኋለሁ።

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

፳፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እኛ መጥተናልና፣ ከእነርሱ መካከል ሆነናል፤ እናም በስቃያችን ትዕግስተኞች ነበርንም፣ በማንኛውም የህይወት ውጣውረዶች ተስቃይተናልም፤ አዎን፣ የዓለምን ምህረት ላይ ተስፋ በማድረግ ከቤት ወደቤት ተጉዘናል—በዓለም ምህረት ብቻ ሳይሆን በእግዚአብሔርም ምህረት ተስፋ አድርገናል።

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

፳፱ እናም በየቤቶቻቸው ገባንና፣ አስተማርናቸውም፣ በጎዳናዎቻቸው ላይ አስተማርናቸውም፤ አዎን፣ በኮረብታዎቻቸውም ላይ አስተማርናቸው፤ እናም፣ በቤተመቅደሶቻቸውና በምኩራባቸው ገባንም፣ አስተማርናቸውም፤ ተሳረርንና፣ ተሳለቁብንም፣ ተፋብንም፣ ፊታችንንም መቱት፤ እናም በድንጋይ ተወገርንና ተወሰደን በጠንካራ ገምዶች ታሰርን፣ ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ተጣልንም፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ጥበብ በድጋሚ ተለቅቅን።

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

፴ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ስቃይ ተስቃይተናል፣ እናም ይህ ሁሉ የሆነውም ምናልባት ጥቂት ነፍሳትን የምናድንበት መንገድ እንድንሆን ነበር፤ እናም ምናልባት ጥቂቶችን ለማዳን ምክንያት ለመሆን ከቻልን ደስታችን ሙሉ ይሆናል ብለን ገምተን ነበር።

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

፴፩ እናም እነሆ፣ የሰራችንን ፍሬ መመልከት እንችላለን፤ እናም እነርሱ ጥቂት ናቸውን? እኔ ግን አይደሉም እላችኋለሁ፤ እነርሱ ብዙ ናቸው፤ አዎን ለወንድሞቻቸውና ደግሞ ለእኛ ባላቸው ፍቅር የተነሳ ከልባቸው መሆኑን እንመስክራለን።

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

፴፪ እነሆም የጠላቶቻቸውን ነፍስ እንኳን ከማጥፋት ህይወታቸውን መስዋዕት ማድረጉ ይሻላቸዋል፤ እናም ለወንድሞቻቸው ባላቸው ፍቅር የተነሳ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን በምድር ውስጥ በጥልቅ ቀበሩት።

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

፴፫ እናም አሁን እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ እንደዚህ ያለ ታላቅ ፍቅር አለን? እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ በኔፋውያን መካከልም እንኳን የለም።

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

፴፬ እነሆም በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ መሣሪያዎቻቸውን ያነሳሉ፤ ነገር ግን እንዲገደሉአቸው አይፈቅዱም። ነገር ግን እነሆ ከእነዚህ ሰንቶቹ ናቸው ህይወታቸውን አሳልፈው የሰጡት፤ እናም በፍቅራቸውና ለኃጢያት ባላቸው ጥላቻ ምክንያት ወደ አምላካቸው መሄዳቸውን እናውቃለን።

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

፲፭ አሁን ለመደሰት ምክንያት የለንምን? አዎን፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ እንደእኛ ለመደሰት ታላቅ ምክንያት ያላቸው ሰዎች በጭራሽ የሉም፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደስታዬ በአምላኬ እስከምኮራም እንኳን ደርሷል፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ሁሉም ሰልጣን፣ ሁሉም ጥበብ፣ እናም ሁሉም ግንዛቤ አለውና፤ ሁሉንም ነገር ያውቃልና፣ እርሱ እስከ ደህንነትም እንኳን ንሰሃ ለሚገቡትና በሰሙ ለሚያምኑት መሀሪ ነውና።

፲፮ እናም ይህ ኩራት ከሆነ፣ እኔም እንደዛው እኮራለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ የእኔ ህይወትና ብርሃን ነው፤ ደስታዬና ደህንነቴ፣ እናም ከዘለዓለማዊው ጥፋት የእኔ ቤዛ ነውና። አዎን የእስራኤል ዛፍ ቅርንጫፍ ለሆኑት እናም በእንግዳው ምድር ለጠፉት ለዚህ ህዝብ የሚያሰበው አምላክ ሰሙ የተባረከ ይሁን፤ አዎን፣ እኛ በባዕድ ምድር ለምንከራተተው የሚያሰበው የአምላኬ ሰም የተባረከ ይሁን አላለሁ።

፲፱ እንግዲህ ወንድሞቼ፣ እግዚአብሔር በየትኛውም ምድር ለሚገኙት ህዝቦቹ እንደሚያሰብ እንመለከታለን፤ አዎን፣ ህዝቡን ያሰባል፣ እናም የእንጀት ምህረቱም በምድር ላይ ሁሉ ናቸው። እንግዲህ ይህ የእኔ ደስታና ታላቁ ምስጋናዬ ነው፤ አዎን፣ እናም ለአምላኬ ምስጋናዬን ለዘለአለም አቀርባለሁ። አሜን።

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

አልማ ፳፯

Alma 27

፩ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለጦርነት የሄዱት እነዚያ ላማናውያን፣ እነርሱን ለማጥፋት ብዙ ከታገሉ በኋላ፣ ጥፋታቸውን መሻት ከንቱ ሆኖ ባገኙት ጊዜ፣ በድጋሚም ወደኔፊ ሞድር ተመለሱ።

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሌቂውያን፣ በደረሰባቸው ሽንፈት ሞክንያት እጅግ ተቆጡ። እናም ኔፋውያንን ለመበቀል እንዳልቻሉ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ በወንድሞቻቸው በአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂ ህዝቦች ላይ ሰዎችን በቁጣ ማነሳሳት ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ በድጋሚ እነርሱን ማጥፋት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

፫ እንግዲህ እነኚህ ህዝቦች በድጋሚ መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ለማንሳት እምቢተኞች ሆኑ፣ እናም በጠላቶቻቸው ፍላጎት መሠረት ለመሞት ፈቃደኞች ሆኑ።

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

፬ እንግዲህ አሞንና ወንድሞቹ በተወደዱባቸው እናም እጅግ በወደዱአቸው መካከል ይህን የጥፋት ስራ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ—ከዘለዓለማዊው ጥፋት እነርሱን ለማዳን እንደመልእክ ከእግዚአብሔር እንደተላኩ ተመስለዋል—ስለዚህ፣ አሞንና ወንድሞቹ ይህን ታላቅ ጥፋት በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ እጅግ አዘኑ፣ እናም ለንጉሱ እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩ።

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

፭ እነኚህን የጌታ የሆኑትን ሰዎች በአንድ ላይ እንሰብስባቸው፣ እናም ወደ ኔፋውያን ወንድሞቻችን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሞድር እንወረድና፣ እንዳንጠፋ ከጠላቶቻችን እጅ እናምልጥ።

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

፮ ነገር ግን ንጉሱ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ፣ ብዙ ግድያዎችንና ኃጢአቶችን በእነርሱ ላይ በመፈፀማችን ኔፋውያን ያጠፋናል።

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

፯ እናም አሞን እንዲህ አለ፣ እሄዳለሁና፣ ጌታን እጠይቀዋለሁ፣ እናም እርሱ ወደ ወንድሞቻችን ሂዱ ቢለን፣ ትሄዳላችሁን?

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

፰ እናም ንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፣ አዎን፣ ጌታ ሂዱ ብሎ ከተናገረን፣ ወደ ወንድሞቻችን እንሄዳለን፣ እናም በእነርሱ ላይ የፈፀምናቸውን ግድያዎችና ኃጢአቶች እስክንክስ አገልጋዮቻቸው እንሆናለን።

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

፱ ነገር ግን አሞን እንዲህ አለው፣ በወንድሞቹ መካከል ማንንም በባርነት መያዝ በእባቱ ከተመሰረተው ህግ ላይ ተቃራኒ ነው፤ ስለዚህ እንሂድ እናም በወንድሞቻችን ምህረት ላይ እንመካ።

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

፲ ገር ግን ንጉሱ እንዲህ አለው፡ ጌታን ጠይቅ፣ እናም እርሱ ሄዶ ካለን እንሄዳለን፤ አለበለዚያ በምድሪቱ እንጠፋለን።

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ሄደና ጌታን ጠየቀ፡ ጌታም እንዲህ አለው፡

፲፪ ይህ ህዝብ እንዳይጠፋ ከዚህ ምድር አስወጣቸው፡ ምክንያቱም ላማናውያን ወንድሞቻቸውን ለመግደል በሚያውኩ አማሌቂውያን ልብ ስይጣን በሀይል ይዘታልና፤ ስለዚህ ከዚህ ምድር ውጣ፤ እናም በዚህ ትውልድ ያለ ህዝብ የተባረከ ነው፡ እጠብቀዋለሁና።

፲፫ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ጌታ የተናገረውን ቃል ሁሉ ሄዶ ለንጉሱ ተናገረ።

፲፬ እናም ህዝቦቻቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ፤ አዎን፣ የጌታ የሆኑትን ሰዎች በሙሉ፣ እናም ከብቶቻቸውንና መንጋዎቻቸውን በሙሉ በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም ከምድሪቱ ወጥተው ሄዱና፣ የኔፊን ምድር ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወደሚከፍለው ምድር በዳ ደረሱ፣ ወደ ምድሪቱ ዳርቻ አጠገብም ደረሱ።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ፣ እኔና ወንድሞቼ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር እንሄዳለን፣ እናንተም እኛ እስከምንመለስ ድረስ እዚህ ትቆያላችሁ፤ እናም በምድራቸው እንድትመጡ እንዲፈቅዱ የልብ ፍላጎታቸውን ለማወቅ እንሞክራለን።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ወደ ምድሪቱ በሄደ ጊዜ፣ እርሱና ወንድሞቹ በተነገረው ቦታ አልማን አገኙት፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህም እስደሳች ግንኙነት ነበር።

፲፯ እንግዲህ የአሞን ደስታ ሙሉ እስኪሆን ታላቅ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በአምላኩም ደስታ ተውጦ ነበር፤ ጉልበቱ እንኳን እስከሚደክም ድረስ፤ እናም በድጋሚ በመሬት ላይ ወደቀ።

፲፰ እንግዲህ ይህ ታላቅ ደስታ አይደለምን? እነሆ እውነተኛ ንስህ ገቢ እና ትሁት ደስታን ፈላጊ ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም የማይቀበለው ደስታ ነው።

፲፱ እንግዲህ አልማ ወንድሞቹን በማግኘቱ ደስታው በእውነት ታላቅ ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ የእርን፣ ኦምነርና፣ የሄምኒ ደስታ ታላቅ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ደስታቸው ከጉልበታቸው በላይ አልነበረም።

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ ወንድሞቹን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር፣ እንዲሁም ወደራሱ ቤትም፣ በመምራት መለሳቸው። እናም ሄዱና፣ በወንድሞቻቸው በላማናውያን መካከል በኔፊ ምድር የሆኑትን ነገሮች ለዋናው ዳኛ ተናገሩ።

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him: Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዋናው ዳኛ የአንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ሰዎች የሆኑትን በምድሪቱ ይገቡ ዘንድ በሚመለከት የህዝብን ድምፅ ለመፈለግ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ አዋጅ ላከ።

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የህዝቡ ድምፅ እንዲህ በማለት መጣ፡ እነሆ፣ በባህሩ በስተምስራቅ በኩል ያለው ለጋሰን ምድር የሚያገናኘውን፣ በለጋሰም ምድር በስተደቡብ ያለው የኢየርሾን ምድር እንተዋለን፤ እናም ይህ የኢየርሾን ምድር እንዲወርሱት ለወንድሞቻችን የምንሰጠው ምድር ነው።

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

፳፫ እናም እነሆ፣ በኢየርሾን ምድር ወንድሞቻችንን እንጠብቃቸው ዘንድ በኢየርሾንና በኔፊ ምድር መካከል ወታደሮቻችንን እናስቀምጣለን፤ እናም ይህን ለወንድሞቻችን የምናደርገው በወንድሞቻቸውም ላይ መሳሪያዎቻቸውን በማንሳት ኃጢአት እንዳይፈፀሙ ባላቸው ፍርሀት ምክንያት ነው፤ እናም ይህ ታላቅ ፍርሃት የመጣው ለበርካታ ግድያዎቻቸውና አስቃቂ ኃጢአታቸው ከገቡት መሪ ገሰሃ የተነሳ ነው።

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

፳፬ እናም እሁን እነሆ፣ የኢየርሾን ምድር ይወርሱ ዘንድ ይህንን ለወንድሞቻችን እናደርጋለን፤ እናም ወታደሮቻችንን ለማቆየት የምንረዳበት ነገር የሚሰጡን ከሆነ በወታደሮቻችን ከጠላቶቻቸው እንጠብቃቸዋለን።

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞን ይህንን በሰማ ጊዜ፣ ወደ አንቲ-ኔፊ-ሌሂዎች ሰዎች ተመለሰ፣ ደግሞም አልማ ከእርሱ ጋር ድንኳናቸውን በተከሉበት ምድረበዳ ተመለሱና፣ ይህንን ነገር ሁሉ እንዲያውቁ አደረጉአቸው። እናም አልማ ከአሞንና፣ ከእርሱ እንዲሁም ከወንድሞቹ ጋር የእርሱን መለወጥ ተረክላቸው።

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ ነገርም በመካከላቸው የታላቅ ደስታ መንስኤ ነበር። እናም ወደ ኢየርሾን ምድር ሄዱና፣ የኢየርሾን ምድርን በባለቤትነት ወሰዱ፤ እናም በኔፋውያን የአሞን ህዝብ ተብለው ተጠሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከዚያን ጊዜም በኋላ በዚህ ስም ተለይተው ይታወቃሉ።

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

፳፯ እናም እነርሱ ከኔፊ ህዝብ ጋር ነበሩ፣ ደግሞም የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ከነበሩት ሰዎች ጋር ተቆጠሩ። እናም ለእግዚአብሔርና፣ ደግሞ ለሰዎች ባላቸው ቅንነት ይለዩ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም በሁሉም ነገር ፍፁም ታማኝና ቀጥተኞች ነበሩ፤ እናም እስከመጨረሻ በክርስቶስ እምነት ፅኑ ነበሩ።

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

፳፰ እናም የወንድሞቻቸውን ደም ማፍሰስን በታላቅ ጥላቻ ተመለከቱ፤ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ መሣሪያን ለማንሳትም በጭራሽ ሊገፋፉ አይቻሉም፤ እናም በክርስቶስና በትንሳኤው ባላቸው ተስፋና ግንዛቤ፣ ሞትን በፍርሃት ደረጃ በጭራሽ አልተመለከቱም፤ ስለዚህ ሞታቸው በክርስቶስ ሞት ድል ተነስቷል።

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

፳፱ ስለዚህ ወንድሞቻቸውን ለመምታት ጎራዴውን እንዲሁም ሻቡላውን ከመውሰዳቸው በፊት በወንድሞቻቸው ሊደርስባቸው በሚችል እጅግ በሚያስቅቅና በሚያስቃይ ሁኔታ ሞትን ይቀበላሉ።

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

፴ እናም እነርሱ ቅንዓት ያላቸውና የተወደዱ ሰዎች፣ በጌታም እጅግ የተወደዱ ሰዎች ነበሩ።

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

አልማ ፳፰

Alma 28

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የአሞን ህዝብ በኢየርሾን ምድር ከሰፈሩ፣ እናም ደግሞ ቤተክርስቲያንም ካቋቋሙባት በኋላ፣ የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች በኢየርሾን ምድር ዙሪያ፣ አዎን፣ በዛራሌምላ ምድር ዳርቻ ዙሪያ ተመደቡ፤ እነሆ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች ወንድሞቻቸውን በምድረበዳው ተከትለዋቸው ነበር።

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

፪ እናም በዚያ አሰገራሚ ውጊያ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በሁሉም ህዝብ መካከል ለሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ታይቶ የማይታወቅ አይነት እንኳን፤ አዎን፣ እናም በአሰር ሺዎች የሚቆጠሩ ላማናውያን ተገደሉ፣ ወደ ውጪም ተበተኑ።

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

፫ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በኔፋውያን መካከል አሰገራሚ ግድያ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ላማናውያን ተባረሩና ተበታተኑ፣ እናም የኔፊ ህዝብ በድጋሚ ወደ ሥፍራቸው ተመለሱ።

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

፬ እናም አሁን ይህ ታላቅ ሀዘንና ልቅሶ በኔፋውያን ህዝብ ሁሉ መካከል የተሰማበት ጊዜ ነበር—

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

፭ አዎን፣ ባልቴቶቹ ለባሎቻቸው፣ ደግሞም አባቶች ለወንድ ልጆቻቸውና፣ ሴት ልጅ ለወንድሟ፣ አዎን፣ ወንድምም ለአባቱ በማዘን ልቅሶአቸው ተሰምቷል፤ እናም የሀዘን ልቅሶ በሁሉም መካከል ተሰምቷል፣ ለተገደሉ ወገኖቻቸው ሁሉ ሀዘን ነበር።

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

፮ እናም አሁን ይህ አሳዛኝ ቀን ነበር፤ አዎን፣ የማስተዋልም ጊዜና፣ እጅግ የሚጸምበትና የሚጸለይበት ጊዜ ነበር።

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

፯ እናም በዚህ በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል አሥራ አምስተኛው የመሳፍንት አገዛዝ አበቃ፤

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

፰ እናም ይህ አሞንና ወንድሞቹ በኔፊ ምድር ውስጥ የነበራቸው ጉዞአቸው፣ በምድሪቱ ሰቃያቸው፣ ሀዘናቸውና መከራቸው፣ እናም ለማስተዋል የማይቻል ደስታቸው፣ እንዲሁም በኢየርሾን ምድር ያሉ ወንድሞች አቀባበላቸውና ደህንነታቸው ታሪክ ነው። እናም አሁን የሰው ልጆች ሁሉ አዳኝ ጌታ ለዘለዓለም ነፍሳቸውን ይባርክ።

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

፱ እናም ይህ በኔፋውያን መካከል የነበረው ፀብና ደግሞ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል የነበረው ጦርነት ታሪክ ነው፤ እናም አሥራ አምስተኛው የመሳፍንት አገዛዝ በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

፲ እናም ከመጀመሪያው ዓመት ጀምሮ እስከ አሥራ አምስተኛው ዓመት ድረስ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ነፍሳት ጠፍተዋል፤ አዎን፣ አስቃቂ የደም መፍሰስም ነበር።

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

፲፩ እናም በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት ሰውነቶች በምድር ውስጥ ሲቀበሩ ብዙዎች ደግሞ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት በምድር ገፅ ተቆልለው በሰብሰዋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ብዙ ሺህዎች ለአለቁት ወገኖቻቸው አዝነዋል፣ ምክንያቱም በጌታ ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት በዚያም መጨረሻ ለሌላው ሰቃይ እንደተመደቡ የመፍራት ምክንያት ነበራቸውና።

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

፲፪ ሌሎች ብዙ ሺዎች ዘርቻቸው በመጥፋታቸው ቢያዝኑም፣ ነገር ግን በተስፋ፣ እናም በጌታ ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት መጨረሻ በሌለው ደስታ በእግዚአብሔር ቀኝ እጅ በኩል ለመኖር እንደሚነሱ በማወቃቸው ይደሰቱ፣ እናም ሐሴት ያደርጉ ነበር።

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

፲፫ እናም በኃጢአትና በመተላለፍምና የሰው ልጆችን የልብ ለማጥመድ ብልህ በሆነው እቅዱ በሚመጣው በዲያብሎስ ሀይል ምክንያት የሰዎችን ልዩነት ታላቅነቱን እንዴት እንደሆነ እንደዚህ ለመመልከት ይቻላል።

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

፲፬ እናም በጌታ የወይን ስፍራ ሰዎች እንዲሰሩ ታላቁን የትጋት ጥሪ እንደዚህ እንመለከታለን፤ እናም የታላቁን ሀዘንና፣ ደግሞ የደስታን መንስኤ ምክንያትንም እንደዚህ እንመለከታለን—በሞቱና በሰዎች መጥፋት የተነሳ ሃዘን፣ እናም በክርስቶስ የህይወት ብርሃንም ምክንያት ደስታን እንመለከታለን።

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

አልማ ፳፱

Alma 29

፩ አቤቱ፣ እንደሄድ እናም ምድሪቱን በሚያንቀጠቅጠው ድምፅ፣ በእግዚአብሔር መለከት እናገር ዘንድና ለማንኛውም ሰው ንሰሃን እናገር ዘንድ፣ መልዓክ በሆንኩና የልቤም መሻት በሞላልኝ!

፪ አዎን፣ ንሰሃ እንዲገቡና ወደአምላካችን እንዲመጡ፣ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይም ከዚህ የበለጠ ሀዘን እንዳይኖር፣ እንደነገድንድም ድምፅ ለማንኛውም ነፍስ ንሰሃን እናም የቤዛነትን ዕቅድ አውጅ ነበር።

፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ሰው ነኝ፤ እናም በፍላጎቴ ኃጢአትን አሰራለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ በሰጠኝ ነገሮች መረካት ይገባኛልና።

፬ ጠንካራ የሆነውን ፍትሀዊውን የአምላክ አዋጅ በፍላጎቴ መለወጥ አይገባኝም፣ ምክንያቱም ለህይወታቸውም ይሁን ለሞታቸው አንደፍላጎታቸው እርሱ እንዲሰጣቸው አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን ለሰዎች እንደ ፈቃዳቸው ለደህንነትም ይሁን ለጥፋት መደብ፣ አዎን መለወጥ የማይችል አዋጅ በማወጅ እንደሚሰጣቸው አውቃለሁ።

፭ አዎን፣ እናም መልካምና መጥፎ የሆነው በሰዎች ሁሉ ፊት እንደመጣ አውቃለሁ፤ መልካሙን ከመጥፎው የማያውቅ እንከን የለሽ ነው፤ ነገር ግን መልካምና መጥፎውን ለሚያውቅ ለእርሱ አንደፍላጎቱ፣ ፍላጎቱ መልካምም ይሁን መጥፎ፣ ህይወትም ይሁን ሞት፣ ደስታም ይሁን የህሊና ፀፀት ይሰጠዋል።

፮ እንግዲህ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ማወቁን በመመልከት፤ ከተጠራሁበት የበለጠ ስራስ ለማከናወን ለምን እፈልጋለሁ?

፯ ለምንስ መልእክ ሆኜ እስከምድር ዳርቻ መናገር እስከምችል እመኛለሁ?

፰ እነሆም ጌታ ለሀገሮች ሁሉ ቃሉን በጥበብ፣ አዎን፣ ሊኖራቸው የሚገባውን ነገር ሁሉ እንዲያስተምሩ የራሳቸውን ሀገር እና ቋንቋ ሰጥቷል፤ ስለዚህ ጸድቅና እውነት በሆነው መሰረት ጌታ በጥበብ እንደሚመሰክር እንመለከታለን።

፱ ጌታ ያዘዘኝን አውቃለሁ፣ እናም በዚህም እደስታለሁ። በራሴ አልኮራም፣ ነገር ግን ጌታ እኔን ባዘዘኝ በዚያ እኮራለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ይህም ምናልባት ጥቂት ነፍሳትን ወደ ንሰሃው በማምጣት በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሳሪያ እሆን ዘንድ በዚህ እመካለሁ፤ እናም ይህም የእኔ ደስታ ነው።

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

፲ እናም እነሆ፣ ብዙዎቹ ወንድሞቼ በእውነት ንስህ መግባታቸውን፣ እና ወደጌታ አምላካቸው መምጣታቸውን በተመለከትኩ ጊዜ፣ ከዚያም ነው ነፍሴ በደስታ የተሞላችው፤ በዚያም ጌታ ምን እንዳደረገልኝ፣ አዎን፣ ፀሎቴንም እንኳን እንደሰማልኝ ለማስታወስ እችላለሁ፤ አዎን በዚያም የምህረት ክንዶቹ በእኔ ላይ መዘርጋታቸውንም አስታውሳለሁ።

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

፲፩ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የአባቶቻችንን ምርኮ አስታውሳለሁ፤ ጌታ ከባርነት እንደለቀቃቸው በእርግጥ አውቃለሁ፣ እናም በዚህም ቤተክርስቲያኗን አቋቁሟል፤ አዎን፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር፣ የአብርሃም አምላክ፣ የይስሀቅ አምላክ፣ እንዲሁም የያዕቆብ አምላክ ከባርነት ለቋቋሙል።

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

፲፪ አዎን፣ የአባቶቻችንን ምርኮ ሁልጊዜም አስታውሳለሁ፤ እናም ከግብፃውያን እጅ ያስለቀቃቸው አምላክ ከባርነት እነርሱንም አስለቅቋል።

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

፲፫ አዎን፣ እናም ይኸው አምላክ ቤተክርስቲያኗን በመካከላቸው አቋቁሟል፤ አዎን፣ ይኸውም አምላክ ቃሉን ለህዝቡ እንድሰብክ በቅዱሱ ጥሪው ጠራኝ፤ እናም ብዙ ድልም ሰጠኝ፤ በዚህም ደስታዬ የተሞላ ነው።

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

፲፬ ነገር ግን በራሴ ሰኬታማነት ብቻ አልደስትም፣ ነገር ግን በኔሪ ምድር በነበሩት ወንድሞቼ ሰኬታማነት ደስታዬ ይበልጥ ሙሉ ነው።

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ እነርሱ እጅግ ሰሩም፣ በርካታ ፍሬን አምጥተዋልም፤ እናም ደመወዛቸው እንዴት ታላቅ ይሆናል!

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

፲፮ አሁን፣ የእነዚህን የወንድሞቼን ሰኬት ባሰብኩ ጊዜ ነፍሴ ከሰጋዬ እንደተለየች ያህል ትወሰዳለች፣ በመሆኑም ደስታዬም ታላቅ ነው።

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

፲፯ እናም አሁን እግዚአብሔር ለወንድሞቼ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት እንዲቀመጡ ለእነርሱ ይፈቀድላቸው፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የሰራቸው ውጤት የሆኑት ሁሉ ከእንግዲህ እንዳይሄዱባቸው፤ ነገር ግን ለዘላለም እርሱን ያወድሱት። እናም እኔ እንደተናገርኩት እንደቃሌም እንዲሆን የእግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ ይሁን። አሜን።

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

አልማ ፱

፩ እነሆ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የአሞን ህዝብ በኢየርሾን ምድር ከተቋቋሙ በኋላ፣ እናም እናም ደግሞ ላማናውያን ከምድሪቱ ከተባረሩ እናም የሞቱባቸው በነዋሪው ከተቀበሩ በኋላ—

፪ አሁን የሞቱባቸው ቁጥራቸው እጅግ ብዙ ስለነበር አልተቆጠሩም፤ ከነፋውያን የሞቱትንም ለመቁጠር አይቻሉም ነበር—ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ሙታኖቻቸውን ከቀበሩ በኋላ፣ እናም ደግሞ ከጾማቸውና፣ ከሀዘናቸው፣ እንዲሁም ከፀለዩበት ቀናት በኋላ (እናም ይህም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በአስራ ስድስተኛው የመሣፍንት አገዛዝ ዘመን ነበር) በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ የማያቋርጥ ሰላም መሆን ጀመረ።

፫ አሞን፣ እናም ህዝቡ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ጥረት አደረጉ፤ እናም በሙሴ ህግ መሰረትም የእግዚአብሔርን ስርዓቶች ለመፈፀም የሚተጉ ነበሩ፤ የሙሴን ህግም እስኪፈፀም ለመጠበቅ ተምረው ነበርና።

፬ እናም ህዝቡ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በኔፊ ህዝቦች ላይ በነገሱበት በአስራ ስድስተኛው የመሣፍንት ዘመን ውስጥ ሁሉ ምንም ሁከት አልነበረባቸውም።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ሰባተኛው የመሣፍንት የንግስ ዘመንም መጀመሪያም ላይ የማያቋርጥ ሰላም ነበር።

፮ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ሰባተኛው ዓመት በስተመጨረሻ አንድ ሰው ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር መጣ፣ እርሱም ፀረ ክርስቶስ ነበር፤ እናም ስለክርስቶስ መምጣት በነቢያቱ የተነገሩትን ትንቢቶች በመቃረን መሰበክ ጀመረ።

፯ እንግዲህ የሰዎችን እምነት የሚፃረር ህግ አልነበረም፤ ምክንያቱም ሰዎችን እኩል የማያደርግ ህግ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ፈፀሞ የተቃረነ ነውና።

፰ ስለዚህ ቅዱስ መጽሐፍ እንዲህ ይላልና፡ የምታመልኩትን ዛሬ ምረጡ።

፱ እንግዲህ ሰው እግዚአብሔርን ለማገልገል ከፈለገ ይህ ልዩ መብቱ ነው፤ ወይም፣ በእግዚአብሔር ካመነ እርሱን ማገልገል መብቱ ነው፤ ነገር ግን በእርሱ ካላመነ እርሱን ለመቅጣት ምንም ዓይነት ህግ የለም።

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

፲ ነገር ግን የሚገድል ከሆነ በሞት ይቀጣል፤ እናም
ዘራፊ ከሆነም ደግሞ ይቀጣል፤ የሚሰርቅ ከሆነም ደግሞ
ይቀጣል፤ እናም ዝሙትን ከፈጸመ ይቀጣል፤ አዎን ለዚህ
ሁሉ ኃጢአቶች ተቀጥተዋል።

But if he murdered he was punished unto death;
and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he
stole he was also punished; and if he committed
adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this
wickedness they were punished.

፲፩ ሰው እንደወንጀሉ የሚዳኝበት ህግ ነበርና። ይሁን እንጂ
የሰውን እምነት የሚፃረር ህግ አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ ሰው
ባጠፋበት ብቻ የሚቀጣበትም ህግ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሰዎች
ሁሉ እኩል አቋም ነበራቸው።

For there was a law that men should be judged ac-
cording to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no
law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was pun-
ished only for the crimes which he had done; there-
fore all men were on equal grounds.

፲፪ እናም ይህ ቆሪሆር የሚባለው ፀረ ክርስቶስ፣ (እናም
ህጉ በእርሱ ላይ መሰረት የማይችለው) ክርስቶስ
እንደሌለ ለህዝቡ ማስተማር ጀመረ። እናም እንዲህም
በማለት ሰበከ።

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor,
(and the law could have no hold upon him) began to
preach unto the people that there should be no
Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

፲፫ አቤቱ በሞኝና በከንቱ ተሰፋ የታሰራችሁ፣ ለምን
ራሳችሁን በከንቱ ነገሮች ትገድባላችሁ? ክርስቶስን ስለ
ለምንስ ትጠብቃላችሁ? ምክንያቱም ማንም ሰው
የሚመጣውን ማንኛውንም ነገር ማወቅ አይችልም።

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a
vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such fool-
ish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man
can know of anything which is to come.

፲፬ እነሆ እነዚህ ትንቢት ብላችሁ የምትጠሩላቸው፣
በቅዱሳን ነቢያት ሲወርዱ መጥተዋል የምትሏቸው
ነገሮች፣ እነሆ እነርሱ የአባቶቻችሁ ከንቱ ወግ ናቸው።

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies,
which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, be-
hold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

፲፭ እርግጠኝነታቸውን እንዴት ታውቃላችሁ? እነሆ
ያላያችኋቸውን ነገሮች ለማወቅ አትችሉም፤ ስለዚህ
ክርስቶስ እንደሚኖርም ለማወቅ አትችሉም።

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye can-
not know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye
cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

፲፮ ወደፊትም ትመልከታላችሁ፣ እናም የኃጢአታችሁን
ስርየት እየን ትላላችሁ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ የአዕምሮ
አብደት ውጤት ነው፤ እናም ይህ የአዕምሮአችሁ አብደት
የመጣው እናንተ ወዳደሆኑ እምነት በሚመራችሁ
በአባቶቻችሁ ወግ ምክንያት ነው።

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of
your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied
mind; and this derangement of your minds comes
because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead
you away into a belief of things which are not so.

፲፯ እናም ለሰው ልጆች የኃጢአት ክፍያም መሆን
እንደማይችል፤ ነገር ግን ማንኛውም ሰው በዚህ ህይወት
አድሉን የሚወስነው እራሱ በሚያደርገው ነው እያለ
እንደነዚህ ያሉ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናገራቸው፤ ስለዚህ
እያንዳንዱ ሰው በተሰጥኦው ይበለፀጋል፣ እያንዳንዱም
ሰው በጉልበቱ ያሸንፋል፤ እናም ማንም ሰው ያደርገው
የነበረው ሁሉ ወንጀል አልነበረም።

And many more such things did he say unto them,
telling them that there could be no atonement made
for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life
according to the management of the creature; there-
fore every man prospered according to his genius,
and that every man conquered according to his
strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

፲፰ እናም እርሱ ህዝቡን ሰበከ፣ የብዙዎችንም ልብ አሳተ፣
በኃጢአታቸው እራሳቸውን ቀና እንዲያደርጉ አደረገ፤
አዎን ብዙ ሴቶችንና ደግሞ ወንዶችን ዝሙት
እንዲፈፀሙ አደረገ—ሰው ሲሞት፣ በእዚያም ሁሉም
ነገር እንደተፈጸመ ነግሯቸዋል።

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away
the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their
heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many
women, and also men, to commit whoredoms
—telling them that when a man was dead, that was
the end thereof.

፲፱ እንግዲህ ይህ ሰው በአንድ ወቅት የላማናውያን ህዝብ በነበሩት በአሞን ህዝቦች መካከል እነዚህን ነገሮች ለመሰበክ ወደ ኢየርሾን ሞድር ሄደ።

Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

፳ እገር ግን እነሆ እነርሱ ከአብዛኞቹ ኔፋውያን የበለጠ ብልህ ነበሩ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱን ወሰዱትና፣ አሰሩት፣ እናም ህዝብ ላይ ሊቀ ካህን ወደሆነው ወደ አሞን ዘንድ ወሰዱት።

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ከምድሪቱ ተወሰደ እንዲወጣ አደረገ። እናም ወደ ጌዴዎን ሞድር መጣና፣ ደግሞ ለህዝቡ መሰበክ ጀመረ፣ እናም በዚያ ብዙ ድል አላገኘም ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ተወሰደና ታሰረ፣ እናም ወደ ሞድሪቱ ሊቀ ካህንና ደግሞ በዋናው ዳኛ ፊት ቀርቧልና።

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሊቀ ካህኑም እንዲህ አለው፣ የጌታን መንገድ ለማሳት ለምን ትሄዳለህ? ይህንን ህዝብ ደስታውን ለማቋረጥ ለምን ክርስቶስ የለም ብለህ ታስተምራለህ? ከቅዱሳን ነቢያት ትንቢት ሁሉ ተቃራኒ የሆነውን ለምን ትናገራለህ?

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

፳፫ እንግዲህ የሊቀ ካህኑም ስም ጊደና ነበር። እናም ቆሪሆር እንዲህ አለው፣ ከንቱ የሆነውን የአባቶችህን ወግ አላስተምርም፣ እናም ያለአግባብ ኃይላቸውንና ሥልጣናቸውን በእነርሱ ላይ ለማድረግ፣ እራሳቸውንም ቀና እንዲያደርጉ ነገር ግን በቃላቶችህ መጥፎ እንዲሰማቸው፣ ደንቆ ለማድረግ፣ ይህንን ህዝብ ከንቱ በሆነው ስርዓትና በጥንት ካህናት የተመሰረተውን አሰራር ለማሰር ይህንን ህዝብ አላስተምርም።

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

፳፬ እንተም ይህ ህዝብ ነፃ ነው ብለሃል። እነሆ፣ እነርሱ በባርነት ናቸው አላለሁ። የጥንት ትንቢቶች እውነት ናቸው ብለሃል። እነሆ፣ እነርሱ እውነት መሆናቸውን አታውቅም አላለሁ።

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

፳፭ በወላጆቻቸው መሳሳት ምክንያት ይህ ህዝብ ጥፋተኛና የወደቀ ነው ትላላችሁ። እነሆ፣ ልጅ በወላጆቹ ምክንያት ጥፋተኛ አይሆንም አላለሁ።

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

፳፮ እናም ደግሞ ክርስቶስ ይመጣል ብለሃል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ክርስቶስ እንደሚኖር አታውቅም አላለሁ። እናም ደግሞ እንተ ለዓለም ኃጢአት ይሞታል ብለሃል—

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

፳፯ እናም ይህን ህዝብ ከንቱ በሆነው በአባቶች ወግና እንደ ፍላጎትህ መሰረት እንደዚህ ትመራለህ፤ እናም በባርነት እንዳሉም፣ በእጆቻቸው በሰሩትም ራሳህን ታንደላቅቅበት ዘንድ፣ በድፍረትም ለመመልከት እንዳይደፍሩና፣ በልዩ መብቶቻቸውና በዕድላቸውም ለመደሰት እንዳይደፍሩ ተገዢ ታደርጋቸዋለህ።

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

፳፰ አዎን፣ እንደራሳቸው ፍላጎት ያሰራቸውን፣ እና በወገቻቸውና ህልምቻቸው፣ ቅዠታቸውና፣ ራዕዮቻቸው፣ እናም የማስመስል ሚስጥርቻቸው እንዲያምኑ ያደረጓቸውን ካህናቶቻቸውን እናሳዝናቸዋለን ብለው ይፈራሉ፣ እናም ያንኑ ማድረግ ነበረባቸውና፣ እንደቃሎቻቸው የማያደርጉም ከሆነ እነርሱ አምላክ ብለው ያሉትን—አንድ ያልታወቀን፣ እስከዛሬ ያልታየን፣ ወይንም እስከዛሬ ያልታወቀን አምላክ እናሳዝናለን ይላሉ።

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

፳፱ እንግዲህ ሊቀ ካህኑና ዋናው ዳኛ የልቡን ጠጣርነት በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ አዎን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ መሳደቡን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ለቃሉ ምንም መልስ አልሰጡም፤ ነገር ግን እንዲታሰር አደረጉ፤ እናም ለሹማምንቶቹ አሰረከቡት፣ እናም ከዋናው ዳኛ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ገዢ ከነበረው ከአልማ ፊት ይቀርብ ዘንድ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ላኩት።

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዋናው ዳኛና ከአልማ ፊት በቀረበ ጊዜ፣ በጌዴዎን ምድርም ያደርግ እንደነበረው ማድረጉን ቀጠለ፣ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔርንም ሰም በከንቱ ማንሳቱን ቀጠለ።

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

፴፩ እናም በአልማ ፊት ጮክ ብሎ ለመናገር ተነሳ፣ እናም በህዝቡም ድካም ለመንደላቀቅ፣ በከንቱው የአባቶቻቸው ወግ ይመሯቸዋል በማለት ካህናቶቹንና መምህራንን በመሳደብ ይከሳቸው ጀመር።

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

፴፪ እንግዲህ አልማ እንዲህ አለው፦ በዚህ ህዝብ ስራ አለመንደላቀቅንን ታውቃለህ፤ እነሆም ከመሣፍንት አገዛዝ ጀምሮ ምንም እንኳን በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ሁሉ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለህዝቡ ለማወጅ የተጓዘኩ ቢሆንም እስካሁን ድረስ ራሴን ለመርዳት ስርቼአለሁ።

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

፴፫ እናም በቤተክርስቲያን ውስጥ ብዙ ሰራዎችን የሰራሁ ቢሆንም ለሰራዬ እንደ ሰኒን እንኳን አልተቀበልኩም፤ ከፍርድ ወንበሩ በስተቀር ወንድሞቼም አልተቀበሉም፤ እናም በዚያም የተቀበልነው በህጉ መሰረት ለጊዜአችን ነበር።

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

፴፬ እናም አሁን በቤተክርስቲያኗ ለሰራገበት ምንም የማናገኝ ከሆነ በወንድሞቻችን ደስታ ሐሴት እናደርግ ዘንድ በቤተክርስቲያኗ እውነትን ለማወጅ ማገልገላችን እኛን ምን ይጠቅመናል?

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

፴፭ እንተ ራሱን እኛ ምንም ጥቅም እንዳልገኘን ባወቅህ ጊዜ ከህዝቡ ጥቅም እንድናገኝ ነው የምንሰብከው ለምን አልህ? እናም አሁን በህዝቡ ልብ ውስጥ ደስታን እንደሚፈጥር አድርገን ይህንን ህዝብ እንዳታለልን ታምናለህን?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

፴፮ እናም ቆሪሆር አዎን በማለት መለሰ።

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

፴፯ እናም አልማ እንዲህ አለ፡ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ ታምናለህን?

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

፴፰ እናም አላምንም ሲል መለሰ።

And he answered, Nay.

፴፱ እንግዲህ አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ በድጋሚ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ ትክዳለህን? እናም ደግሞ ክርስቶስን ትክዳለህን? እነሆም እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፡ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለና ደግሞ ክርስቶስ እንደሚመጣ አውቃለሁ።

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

፵ እናም አሁን እግዚአብሔር እንደሌለ፣ ክርስቶስም እንደማይመጣ ምን ማረጋገጫ አለህ? ከቃላትህ በስተቀር ምንም ማረጋገጫ የለህም እላለሁ።

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

፵፩ ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት ለመሆናቸው ለምስክርነት ሁሉም ነገር አሉኝ፤ እናም እንተ ደግሞ እውነት ለመሆናቸው ሁሉም ነገሮች ለምስክርነት አሉህ፤ እናም እንተ እነዚህን ትክዳለህን? እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን ታምናለህን?

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

፵፪ እነሆ፣ ማመንህን አውቃለሁ፣ ነገር ግን እንተ ለውሽት መንፈስ ተገዢ ሆነሃል፣ እናም በውስጥህ ሥፍራ እንዳይኖረው የእግዚአብሔርን መንፈስ ክደሃል፤ ነገር ግን ዲያብሎስ በእንተ ላይ ሰልጣን አለው፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ልጆች ያጠፋበት ዘንድ በዕቅዱ በእንተ ላይ ገዢ ሆኗል።

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

፵፫ እናም አሁን ቆሪሆር ለአልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ እግዚአብሔር መኖሩን ለማመን እችል ዘንድ ለእኔ ሞልክትን የምታሳየኝ ከሆነ፣ አዎን፣ ኃይል እንዳለው አሳየኝ፣ እናም በቃልህ እውነተኛነት አምናለሁ።

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

፱፬ ነገር ግን አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ በቁ ምልክት እግኝተሃል፤ አምላክህን ትፈትናለህን? የወንድሞችህ ሁሉና፤ ደግሞ የቅዱሳን ነቢያት ምስክርነትን ባገኘህ ጊዜ ምልክት እሳየኝ ትላለህን? ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት በፊትህ ቀርበውልሃል፤ አዎን፤ እናም ሁሉም ነገር እግዚአብሔር መኖሩን ያመለክታሉ፤ አዎን፤ ምድርም እንኳን፤ እናም ሁሉም በምድር ገፅ ላይ ያሉት ነገሮች በሙሉ፤ አዎን እናም የምድር እንቅስቃሴ፤ አዎን፤ እናም ደግሞ በተለመደው ሁኔታ የሚንቀሳቀሱት ፕላኔቶች ታላቅ ፈጣሪ እንዳለ ያመለክታሉ።

፱፭ እናም የዚህን ህዝብ ልብ በማሳሳት እግዚአብሔር የለም ብለህ ለመመስከር ትሄዳለህን? እናም የእነዚህን ሁሉ ምስክርነት ትክዳለህን? እንዲህም አለ፡ አዎን፤ ምልክትን ካሳየኝኝ እክዳለሁ።

፱፮ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ፤ በልብህ ጠጣርነት፤ አዎን፤ ነፍሱህም እንድትጠፋ ዘንድ የእውነትን መንፈስ ስለምትቃወም አዝኜአለሁ።

፱፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፤ በውሸታሙና በሚሸነግለው ቃልህ ብዙ ነፍሳትን ወደጥፋት ከማምጣት ይልቅ ነፍሱህ ብትጠፋ ይሻላል፤ ስለዚህ በድጋሚ ከካድህ እነሆ እግዚአብሔር ይመታሃል፤ ደንቆሮም ትሆናለህ፤ ከእንግዲህም አፍህን ለመክፈት አትችልም፤ ከእንግዲህም ይህንን ህዝብ አታታልልም።

፱፰ እንግዲህ ቆሪሆር እንዲህ አለው፡ የእግዚአብሔርን መኖር አልክድም፤ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር እንዳለ አላምንም፤ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ አላለሁ፤ እግዚአብሔር እንዳለም አንተ አታውቅም፤ እናም ምልክትን ካሳየኝኝ አላምንም።

፱፱ እንግዲህ አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ ይህን ለአንተ በቃሌ መሰረት ዲዳ እንድትሆን ለምልክት እስጥሃለሁ፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ስም፤ ከእንግዲህ እንዳትናገር ዲዳ እንድትሆን ይህን አላለሁ።

፻ እንግዲህ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፤ በአልማ ቃል መሰረትም ለመናገር እንዳይችል ቆሪሆር ዲዳ ሆነ።

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

፶፩ እናም ዋናው ዳኛ ይህን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ለቆሪሆር እንዲህ በማለት ፃፈለት፡ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል አምነሀልን? አልማ በማን ላይ ምልክቱን እንዲያሳይ ፈልገህ ነበር? ለአንተ ምልክቱን ለማሳየት ሌሎችን እንዲያሰቃይ ትፈልጋለህ? እነሆ፣ ምልክትን አሳይቶሀል፤ እናም አሁን ከዚህ በላይ ትከራከራለህ?

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

፶፪ እናም ቆሪሆር እጁን አነሳ፣ እንዲህም በማለት ፃፈ፡ ዲዳ መሆኔን አውቃለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም ለመናገር አልቻልኩም፤ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በቀር ማንም በእኔ ላይ ይህን ማምጣት እንደማይችል አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ሁል ጊዜም እግዚአብሔር እንዳለም አውቅ ነበር።

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

፶፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ዲያብሎስ አሳተኝ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በመልእክ አምሳል ታየኝ፣ እናም እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ሂድና ህዝቡ ሁሉ ወደ ማይታወቀው አምላክ በተሳሳተው መንገድ ሄደዎልና መልሳቸው። እናም እንዲህ አለኝ፡ እግዚአብሔር የለም፤ አዎን፣ ማለት ያለብኝንም አስተማረኝ። ቃሉንም አስተማርኩኝ፤ እናም ለሰጋዊ አዕምሮ የሚያሰደስቱ በመሆናቸው አስተማርኳቸው፤ እናም አጥጋቢ ውጤት አስከማገኝ ድረስ አስተማርኳቸው፣ እንዲህም ሆኖ በእርግጥም እውነት መሆናቸውንም አመነኩኝ፤ ይህንንም ታላቅ እርግጥን በራሴ ላይ አስከማመጣው ድረስ እውነትን የተቃወምኩት ለዚህም ነው።

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

፶፬ እንግዲህ እርሱ ይህንን በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እርግጥኑ ከእርሱ እንዲወሰድ አልማ ወደ እግዚአብሔር እንዲጸልይ ለመነው።

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

፶፭ ነገር ግን አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ ይህ እርግጥን ከአንተ ከተወሰደ በድጋሚ የህዝቡን ልብ ወደ ስህተት ትመራለህ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ እስከፈቀደ ድረስ ይህ በአንተ ላይ ይሆናል።

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

፶፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርግጥኑ ከቆሪሆር አልተወሰደም፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ ወደውጪ ተጣለና፣ ከቤት ወደ ቤት ምግብ በመለመን ተዘዋወረ።

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

፶፯ እንግዲህ በቆሪሆር ላይ የሆነው ወዲያውኑ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ተወራ፤ አዎን፣ አዋጁ በቆሪሆር ቃል ለሚያምኑት በፍጥነት ንስሃ እንዲገቡ አለበለዚያ ተመሳሳዩ ፍርድ በእነርሱ ላይ እንደሚመጣ በማወጅ አዋጁ ለምድሪቱ ነዋሪዎች ሁሉ በዋናው ዳኛ ተላከ።

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

፶፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም ስለቆሪሆርን ኃጢያት አመኑ፤ ስለዚህ ሁሉም በድጋሚ ወደ ጌታ ተለወጡ፤ እናም ይህም በቆሪሆር መተላለፍ ስለነበረው ማብቂያ ሆነ። ቆሪሆርም እራሱን ለመርዳት ከቤት ቤት በምግብ ልመና ዞረ።

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

፶፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ፣ አዎን ከኔፋዒያን መካከል እራሳቸውን የለዩትና ዞራማውያን ብለው የጠሩት፣ ዞራም ተብሎ በሚጠራው ሰው በተመሩት መካከል በሄደ ጊዜ—እናም በእነርሱ መካከል በሄደ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ እስከሚሞት ድረስ ተረማመዱበትም ተረጋገጡበት።

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

፷፩ እናም እኛ የጌታን መንገድ የሚያሰተውን የእርሱን መጨረሻ እንመለከታለን፣ እንደዚህም ዲያብሎስ በመጨረሻው ቀን ልጆቹን እንደማይደግፍ ነገር ግን በፍጥነት ወደሲኦል እንደሚጎትታቸው እንመለከታለን።

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

አልማ ፴፩

Alma 31

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪሆር ከሞተ በኋላ፣ ዘራማውያን የጌታ ጎዳናን መበከላቸውን እናም መሪያቸው የነበረው ዘራም የሰዎችን ልብ ጣኑትን ለማምለክ እንዲያጎነብሰ መምራቱን አልማ ወራውን በመስማቱ ልቡ በህዝቡ ኃጢአት ምክንያት መታወክ ጀመረ።

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

፪ በህዝቡ መካከል ያለውን ክፋት ማወቅ ለአልማ ታላቅ ሀዘን ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ልቡም ዘራማውያን ከኔፋውያን በመለየታቸው እጅግ አዘነ።

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

፫ አሁን በዛራሔምላ በሰተምሰራቅ በባህሩ ዳርቻ፣ በኢየርሾን ምድር በሰተደቡብ፣ ላማናውያን በሞሉበት በምድረበዳው በደቡብ ዳርቻ አንቲዮኑም ብለው በሚጠሩት ሰፍራ ውስጥ ዘራማውያን እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ።

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

፬ አሁን ዘራማውያን ከላማናውያን ጋር የህብረት ስምምነት ያደርጋሉ፣ እናም ይህም ለኔፋውያን የታላቅ ጥፋት መንስኤ ይህናል በማለት ኔፋውያን እጅግ ፈሩ።

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

፭ እናም አሁን፣ የቃሉ መሰበክ ህዝቡ ትክክለኛውን እንዲሰራ የሚመራ ታላቅ ዘንባሌ ስላለው—አዎን፣ ይህም ከጎራዴ፣ ወይም ከሚሆንባቸው ማንኛውም ነገር፣ የበለጠ በአዕምሮአቸው ላይ ውጤት ይኖረዋል—ስለዚህ አልማ ኃያል ውጤት ያለውን የእግዚአብሔር ቃል በጎነት መሞከራቸው አስፈላጊነቱን አሰበ።

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

፮ ስለዚህ አሞንን፣ አሮንንና፣ ኦምነርን ወሰደ፤ እናም ሂሚኒን በዛራሔምላ ቤተክርስቲያን ተወው፤ ነገር ግን ቀዳሚያቹ ሶስቱን ከእርሱ ጋር ወስዳቸውና፣ ደግሞ በሜሌቅ የነበሩትን አሙሌቅንና፣ እና ዚኤዘርምን፣ ደግሞም ሁለት ወንድ ልጆቹን ወሰደ።

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

፯ እንግዲህ ሔለማን የሚባለውን ትልቁን ልጁን ከእርሱ ጋር አልወሰደውም፤ ነገር ግን ከእርሱ ጋር የወሰዳቸው ስማቸው ሺብሎንና፣ ቆሪያንቶን ይባላሉ፤ እናም ቃሉን በዘራማውያን መካከል ለመሰበክ ከእርሱ ጋር የሄዱት ስማቸው እነዚህ ናቸው።

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblom and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

፰ እናም ዘራማውያን ከኔፋውያን የተገነጠሉ ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ተሰብኮላቸው ነበር።

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

፱ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እናም ስርዓቶቹ በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት ባለመጠበቃቸው በታላቅ ስህተት ውስጥ ወደቁ።

፲ ወደፊተኛው እንዲያገቡ ዕለት ዕለትም እግዚአብሔርን በመለመን በፀሎታቸው የሚቀጥሉበትን የቤተክርስቲያኗን ስርዓት አላከበሩም።

፲፩ አዎን፣ በአጠቃላይ፣ የጌታን መንገድ በብዙ ሁኔታዎች አጣመዋል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ለዚህ ምክንያት አልማና ወንድሞቹ ለእነርሱ ቃሉን ለመሰበክ ወደምድሪቱ ሄደዋል።

፲፪ እንግዲህ፣ ወደምድሪቱ በመጡ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ለመገረማቸው ዛሬውያን ምክራብን ሠርተው አገኙአቸው፣ እናም የጌታ ቀን ብለው በሚጠሩት ቀንም በሳምንት አንድ ቀን በአንድ ላይ እራሳቸውን ይሰበሰባሉ፤ እናም አልማና ወንድሞቹ እይተውት በማያውቁት ሁኔታ ያመልካሉ፤

፲፫ በምክራባቸው ለመቆሚያነት ከጭንቅላት በላይ ከፍ ያለን ቦታ በመሀከሉ ስርተው ነበር፤ እናም ጫፉም ላይ ለመግባት የሚያስችለው አንድን ሰው ብቻ ነበር።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ማምላክ የፈለገ መሄድና በጫፉ ላይ መቆም አለበት፤ እናም ወደሰማይ እጁን በመዘርጋት፣ እናም በኃይል እንዲህ በማለት ይጮሃል፦

፲፭ ቅዱስ፣ ቅዱስ እግዚአብሔር፤ አንተ አምላክ መሆንህን እናምናለን፣ ቅዱስ መሆንህንና፣ አንተ መንፈስ እንደነበርክ፣ መንፈስም እንደሆንክ፣ እናም ለዘለዓለም መንፈስ እንደምትሆን እናማንለን።

፲፮ ቅዱስ እግዚአብሔር፣ ከወንድሞቻችን እንደለየኸን እናምናለን፤ እናም በአባቶቻቸው ሞኝነት የተሰጧቸውን የወንድሞቻችንን ወግ እናምንም፣ ነገር ግን አንተ እኛ ቅዱሳን ልጆችህ እንድንሆን እንደመረጣክን እናምናለን፣ እናም ደግሞ ክርስቶስ እንደሌለ እንድናውቅ አድርገኸናል።

፲፯ ነገር ግን አንተ ትናንትም፣ ዛሬም ለዘለዓለም አንድ ነህ፤ እናም በዙሪያችን ያሉ ሁሉ በቁጣህ ወደሲኦል እንዲጣሉ በተመረጡ ጊዜ፣ እኛ እንድንድን መርጠኸናል፤ ስለዚህም ስለቅድስናችን አቤቱ እግዚአብሔር እናመሰግንሀለን፣ እናም ደግሞ በክርስቶስ በማመን በሚያስተሳስራቸው፣ ልባቸውን ከአንተ ከሚያርቀው በወንድሞቻችን ከንቱ ወግ እንዳንመራ ስለመረጣኸን እናመሰግንሀለን።

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

፲፰ እናም አቤቱ አግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ እኛ የተመረጣንና ቅዱስ ሰዎች በመሆናችን በድጋሚ እናመሰግንሁለን። አሜን።

፲፱ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና ወንድሞቹ፣ እናም ልጆቹ ይህንን ጸሎት ከሰሙ በኋላ ያለመጠን ተገረሙ።

፳ እነሆም፣ ሁሉም ሰው ሄዶ ይህንን ጸሎት አቀረበ።

፳፩ እንግዲህ የሰፍራው ስም ራሜዩምጵቶም ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር፤ እርሱም ትርጓሜው ቅዱስ መቆሚያ ማለት ነው።

፳፪ እንግዲህ ከዚህ መቆሚያ እያንዳንዱ ሰው ይኸንኑ ጸሎት ያቀርባል፤ አምላካቸውን በእርሱ ስለተመረጡ፣ እናም እርሱም በወንድሞቻቸው ወግ እንዳይመሩ ስላደረገ፣ እናም ልባቸው ምንም ስለማያውቁት ስለሚመጡት ነገሮችም ስላልተወሰደ አምላካቸውን አመሰገኑት።

፳፫ አሁን፣ ህዝቡ በዚህ ሁኔታ ምስጋናውን ካቀረቡ በኋላ ወደ ቤቱ ተመለሱ፤ በቅዱሱ መቆሚያ ተሰብስበው በድጋሚ በዚህ ሁኔታ ምስጋናን እስከሚያቀርቡ ድረስ ስለ አምላካቸውም በድጋሚ አልተናገሩም።

፳፬ እንግዲህ አልማ ይህንን በተመለከተ ጊዜ ልቡ አዘኖ ነበር፤ እርሱ ኃጢአተኛና ብልሹ የሆኑትን ሰዎች መሆናቸውን ተመልክቷልና፤ አዎን ልባቸውንም በወርቅ፣ በብር፣ እናም በሚያምሩ ነገሮች ላይ ማድረጋቸውን ተመለከተ።

፳፭ አዎን እናም ደግሞ ልባቸው በኩራታቸው በፋከራ ሲነሳሳ ተመለከተ።

፳፮ እናም ድምፁን ወደሰማይ ከፍ አደረገና፣ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፡ አቤቱ ጌታ ሆይ አገልጋዮችህ በሰው ልጆች መካከል እንደዚህ ዓይነቱን ታላቅ ኃጢአት ሲሰሩ ለመመልከት እስከመቼ ከዚህ በታች በሰጋ እንዲኖሩ ትፈቅዳለህ?

፳፯ እነሆ፣ አምላክ ሆይ፣ እነርሱ ወደአንተ ይጮኻሉ፣ እናም ይሁን እንጂ ልባቸው በኩራታቸው ተሞልቷል። እነሆ፣ አምላክ ሆይ፣ በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች እስከ ማበጥ ድረስ ሲኩራሩ በአንደበታቸው ግን ወደአንተ ይጮሃሉ።

፳፰ አምላክ ሆይ፣ ውድ ልብሶቻቸውም፣ ቀለበቶቻቸውም፣ አምባሮቻቸውንም፣ የወርቅ ጌጣጌጦቻቸውንም፣ እናም የሚያጌጡባቸው የተከበሩ ነገሮቻቸው ሁሉ ተመልክት፤ እናም እነሆ ልባቸው በእነዚህ ላይ ነበር፣ ግን ወደ አንተ ይጮሁሉም እንዲህም ይላሉ—ሌሎች በሚጠፉበት ጊዜ እኛ በአንተ የተመረጣን ስለሆነ አምላክ ሆይ እናመሰግንሁለን።

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

፳፱ አዎን፣ እናም አንተ ክርስቶስ አለመኖሩን እንዳሳወቅሃቸውም ይናገራሉ።

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

፴ ጌታ አምላክ ሆይ፣ እንደዚህ ዓይነት ክፋትን እና ታማኝ አለመሆንን በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ለምን ያህል ጊዜ ትፈቅዳለህ? ጌታ ሆይ፣ በደካማነቴ እታገሰ ዘንድ ብርታትን ትሰጠኛለህ። ምክንያቱም እኔ ደካማ ነኝና፣ እናም በእነዚህ ሰዎች መካከል እንደዚህ ዓይነት ክፋት ነፍሴን ያስጨንቃል።

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

፴፩ አምላክ ሆይ፣ ልቤ እጅግ አዝናል፤ በክርስቶስ ነፍሴን ታፀናናለህ። ይህንንም በእኔ ላይ በህዝቡ ክፋት የሚመጣውን ስቃይ በትዕግስት እታገሰው ዘንድ ጌታ ሆይ ብርታትን ትሰጠኛለህ።

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

፴፪ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ነፍሴን ታፀናናለህ፣ እናም ለእኔና፣ ደግሞ ከእኔ ጋር ለሚያገለግሉት ጓደኞቼ—አዎን፣ አሞንና፣ አሮንንም፣ አምነርንም፣ ደግሞ አሙሌቅንም፣ ዚኤዘርምንም፣ እናም ደግሞ ሁለት ወንድ ልጆቼንም— መቃናትን ሰጠን፤ አዎን፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ እነኚህን ሁሉ ታፀናናለህ። አዎን በክርስቶስ ነፍሳቸውን ታፀናናለህ።

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

፴፫ በህዝቡ ክፋትም የተነሳ በእነርሱ ላይ የሚመጣውን ስቃይ ይሸከሙ ዘንድ ብርታትን እንዲያገኙ ትሰጣቸዋለህ።

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

፴፬ ጌታ ሆይ፣ እኛም በድጋሚ እነርሱን ወደ ክርስቶስ በማምጣት ድልን እናገኝ ዘንድ ለእኛ ትፈቅድልናለህ።

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

፴፭ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ የእነርሱ ነፍስ ውድ ነው፣ እናም ብዙዎቹ ወንድሞቻችን ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ሆይ፣ እነዚህን ወንድሞቻችንን በድጋሚ ወደእነተ እናመጣቸው ዘንድ ኃይልና ጥበብን ሰጠን።

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

፴፮ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ከእርሱ ጋር በነበሩት ላይ ሁሉ እጁን አጨበጨበ። እናም እነሆ፣ እጁን በእነርሱ ላይ ባጨበጨበ ጊዜ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ተሞሎ።

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

፴፯ እናም ምን መመገብ እንዳለባቸውም ሆነ መጠጣት እንዳለባቸው እንዲሁም ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባቸው ሳያስቡ አንዳቸው ከሌላኛው አራሳቸውን ለዩ።

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

፴፰ እናም ጌታ እንዳይራቡ ወይም እንዳይጠሙ ሁሉን አቀረበላቸው፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በክርስቶስ ፍቅር ከመዋጥ በስተቀር ምንም ስቃይ እንዳያገኛቸው ብርታትን ሰጣቸው። እንግዲህ ይህም በአልማ ፀሎት መሰረት የሆነ ነበር፤ እና ይህ ደግሞ እርሱ በአምነት በመፀለዩ ነበር።

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

አልማ ፴፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ሄዱና፣ በሰዎቹ ምክራብና፣ በቤታቸው በመግባት የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል መሰበክ ጀመሩ፤ አዎን እናም ቃሉን በእነርሱ መንገድም እንኳን ሰበኩ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመካከላቸው ብዙ ከሰሩ በኋላ፣ በደሃው ህዝብ መካከል መልካም ውጤት ማግኘት ጀመሩ፤ ምክንያቱም፣ እነሆ፣ በልብሳቸው ቆሻሻነት የተነሳ ከምክራቡ ተባርረው ነበርና—

፫ የረከሱ ናቸው ተብሎ ሰለተቆጠሩ እግዚአብሔርን ለማምለክ ወደ ምክራብ ለመግባት አልተፈቀደላቸውም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ ድሆች ነበሩ፤ አዎን፣ በወንድሞቻቸው እንደ አተላ ተቆጥረው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በዓለም ነገሮች ድሆች ነበሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ በልባቸውም ድሆች ነበሩ።

፬ አሁን፣ አልማ በኦኒዳ ኮራብታ ላይ ለህዝቡ ሲያሰተምር፣ እና ሲናገር ሰለእነርሱም እኛ የተናገርነው፣ በዓለም ነገሮች ድሆች የሆኑት፣ እና በልባቸው ድሃ የሆኑ ብዙ ህዝብ ወደ እርሱ መጡ።

፭ እናም እነርሱ ወደአልማ መጡ፤ እናም ከመካከላቸው ዋና የሆነው እንዲህ አለው፣ እነሆ እነኚህ ወንድሞቼ ምን ያድርጉ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በድህነታቸው በሰዎች ሁሉ፣ አዎን በተለይ በካህናቶቻችን፣ ተጠልተዋል፤ ምክንያቱም በእራሳችን እጆች በእጅግ ጥረን ከሰራናቸው ከምክራቦቻችን አሰወጥተውናል፤ እጅግ ድሆች በመሆናችንም እኛን አባረውናል፤ አምላካችንንም ለማምለክ ምንም ሰፍራ የለንም፤ እናም እነሆ ምን ማድረግ አለብን?

፮ እናም አሁን አልማ ይህንን በሰማ ጊዜ፣ አልማ ፊቱን በፍጥነት ወደ እርሱ አዞረ፣ እናም በታላቅ ደስታ ተመለከተ፤ ምክንያቱም ሰቃያቸው በእውነት እራሳቸውን ዝቅ እንዳደረገና፣ እነርሱ ቃሉን ለመሰማት በዝግጅት ላይ እንደነበሩ ተመለከተ።

፯ ስለዚህ ለሌሎቹ ሰዎች ምንም አልተናገረም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን ለሚመለከታቸው፣ በእውነት ለተፀፀቱት እጁን ዘረጋና፣ ጮኸ፣ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፦

፰ እነሆ በልባችሁ ትሁት እንደሆናችሁ እመለከታለሁ፤ እናም እንደዚያ ከሆናችሁ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ።

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

፱ እነሆ ወንድማችሁ ምን ማድረግ አለብን? ይላል—
ከምኩራባችን ስለተባረርን፣ አምላካችንን ማምለክ
አንችልም።

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—
for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot
worship our God.

፲ እነሆ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ በምኩራባችሁ ብቻ ካልሆነ
እግዚአብሔርን ለማምለክ አንችልም ብላችሁ
ታሰባላችሁን?

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye can-
not worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

፲፩ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ አጠይቃችኋለሁ፣ በሳምንት
አንድ ጊዜ ብቻ እግዚአብሔርን ማምለክ እንዳለባችሁ
ትገምታላችሁን?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye
must not worship God only once in a week?

፲፪ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ትሁት ትሆኑ፣ እናም ጥበብን
ዘንድ ከምኩራባችሁ መባረራችሁ መልካም ነው፤
ምክንያቱም ጥበብን መማራችሁ አስፈላጊ ነው፤
በመባረራችሁ፣ በእጅግ ድህነታችሁ በወንድሞቻችሁ
ስለተጠላችሁ ምክንያት ነው ልባችሁን ትሁት የሆነው፤
ትሁትም የሆናችሁትም ተገድዳችሁ ነው።

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your
synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may
learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn
wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye
are despised of your brethren because of your ex-
ceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of
heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

፲፫ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ትሁት እንድትሆኑ በመገደዳችሁ
እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ እንዳንዴ ሰው ትሁት
እንዲሆን ከተገደደ ንሰሃን ይሻልና፤ እናም አሁን
በእርግጥ ንሰሃ የገባ ሁሉ ምህረትን ያገኛል፤ እናም
ምህረትን ያገኘና፣ እስከመጨረሻው የፀና እርሱ ይድናል።

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble
blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is com-
pelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now
surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he
that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same
shall be saved.

፲፬ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ እንደተናገርኳችሁ፣ ትሁት እንድትሆኑ
በመገደዳችሁ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ በቃሉም የተነሳ
በእውነት ዝቅ ያሉ ከዚህ የበለጠ የተባረኩ ናችሁ
ብላችሁ አትገምቱምን?

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were
compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not
suppose that they are more blessed who truly hum-
ble themselves because of the word?

፲፭ አዎን፣ በእውነት እራሱን ዝቅ ያደረገና፣ ለኃጢአቱ ንሰሃ
የገባ፣ እናም እስከመጨረሻው የፀና፣ እርሱ ይባረካል—
አዎን፣ በከፋው ድህነታቸው ዝቅ እንዲሉ ከተገደዱት
የበለጠ በብዙ ይባረካል።

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth
of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall
be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who
are compelled to be humble because of their exceed-
ing poverty.

፲፮ ስለዚህ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ እንዲያደርጉ ሳይገደዱ
እራሳቸውን ዝቅ ያደረጉት የተባረኩ ናችሁ፤ ወይም
በሌላ አነጋገር፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ያመነ፣ አዎን፣ ቃሉን
እንዲያውቅ ሳይገደድ በልቡም ሳያመነታ የተጠመቀ፣
እርሱ የተባረከ ነው።

Therefore, blessed are they who humble them-
selves without being compelled to be humble; or
rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in
the word of God, and is baptized without stubborn-
ness of heart, yea, without being brought to know
the word, or even compelled to know, before they
will believe.

፲፯ አዎን፣ እንዲህ የሚሉ ብዙዎች አሉ፣ ከሰማይ ምልክትን
ካሳዩኸን፣ እርግጠኝነቱን እናውቃለን፣ ከዚያም
እናምናለን።

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show
unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a
surety; then we shall believe.

፲፰ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ብዬ አጠይቃለሁ፣ ይህ እምነት
ነውን? እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፤ አይደለም፣ ሰው ነገርን
የሚያውቅ ከሆነ ለማመን ምንም መንስኤ የለውም፣
ያውቀዋልና።

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you,
Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause
to believe, for he knoweth it.

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ፈቃድ እያወቀ የሚያደርገው ከሚያምነው፣ ወይም የማመን ምክንያት ያለው እና በመተላለፍ ከሚወድቀው እንዴት ይበልጥ የተረገመ ነው?

፳ እንግዲህ ይህን ነገር በተመለከተ መፍረድ አለባችሁ። እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ በአንድ በኩል የሆነው በሌላ በኩልም ይሆናል፤ እናም ለእያንዳንዱ ሰው እንደሰራው ይሆንለታል።

፳፩ እናም አሁን እምነትን በተመለከተ እንደተናገርኩት፣ እምነት ስለ ነገሮች ፍፁም የሆነ እውቀት አለ ማለት አይደለም፤ ስለዚህ እምነት ካላችሁ እውነት ስለሆኑትና ስለማይታዩት ነገሮች ተስፋ ይኖራችኋል።

፳፪ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ እግዚአብሔር በሰሙ ለሚያምኑት ሁሉ መሃሪ መሆኑን እንድታስታውሱም እፈልጋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ በመጀመሪያ ደረጃ በእርሱ እንድታምኑ፣ አዎን በቃሉም እንኳን እንድታምኑ ይፈልጋል።

፳፫ እናም አሁን፣ ቃሉን በመላዕክት አማካኝነት ለወንዶች፣ አዎን፣ ለወንዶች ብቻ ሳይሆን ለሴቶችም እንዲሁ ይሰጣል። እንግዲህ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፣ ጥበበኞችን እና የተማሩትን የሚያምታቱ ቃላት ህፃናት ልጆች ብዙ ጊዜም ይሰጣቸዋል።

፳፬ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞች፣ አናንተ የተሰቃያችሁና የተጣላችሁ በመሆናችሁ ምክንያት ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባችሁ ከእኔ ለማወቅ በመፈለጋችሁ—አሁን እናንተን በዚያ እውነት በሆነው ብቻ ልፈርድባቸዎ እንደሆነ እንድትገምቱ አልፈልግም—

፳፭ ሁላችሁም ራሳችሁን ዝቅ እንድታደርጉ ተገድዳችኋል ማለቱም አይደለምና፤ ጉዳያቸው ምንም ቢሆንም ከእናንተ መካከል እራሳቸውን ዝቅ የሚያደርጉ ጥቂቶች እንዳሉ በእርግጥ አምናለሁ።

፳፮ እንግዲህ፣ እምነትን በተመለከተ እንደተናገርኩት—ፍፁም እውቀት አይደለም—የእኔም ቃል እንዲህ ነው። እምነትም ፍፁም ዕውቀት እንዳልሆነ፣ በቅድሚያ የእርሱን እርግጠኛነት በፍፁም ልታውቁ አይቻላችሁም።

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አዕምሮአችሁን ካነቃችሁት፣ እናም ካነሳሳችሁት፣ በቃሉም እስከምትለማመዱ እንኳን፣ እናም ቅንጣት ያህል እምነትን ከተለማመዳችሁ፣ አዎን ከማመን በላይ የበለጠ ለመፈለግ ባትችሉም፣ ለቃላቱ በውስጣችሁ ትንሽ ቦታ ለመስጠት እስከምትችሉ ድረስ ይህ ፍላጎት በእናንተ እንዲሰራ አድርጉ።

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

፳፰ እንግዲህ፣ ቃሉን ከዘር ጋር እናነፃፅራለን። እንግዲህ፣ ዘሩ በልባችሁ ውስጥ እንዲተከል ሥፍራን ከሰጣችሁት፣ እነሆ፣ እውነተኛ ዘር ከሆነ ወይም መልካም ዘር ከሆነ፣ ባለማመናችሁ የጌታን መንፈስ በመቃወም የማትጥሉት ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ እርሱም በደረታችሁ ውስጥ ማደግ ይጀምራል፤ እናም ይህ ዕድገት በልባችሁ ውስጥ ሲሰማችሁ፣ በውስጣችሁ እንዲህ ማለት ትጀምራላችሁ— ይህ መልካም ዘር መሆን አለበት፣ ወይም ቃሉ መልካም ነው፣ ምክንያቱም በነፍሴ ውስጥ ማደግ ጀመሯል፤ አዎን ግንዛቤዬን ያበራጃኝ ጀምሯል፤ አዎን፣ ለእኔም አስደሳች መሆን ጀምሯል።

፳፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ እምነታችሁን አያሳድግላችሁምን? እኔ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ይሁን እንጂ እምነታችሁ ወደፍፁም እውቀት ከፍ ባይልም እንኳን ይህ እምነታችሁን አያሳድገውምን?

፴ እርግጥ እነሆ፣ ዘሩ በፋፋና በበቀለ፣ እናም ማደግ በጀመረ ጊዜ፣ ከዚያም ዘሩ መልካም ነው ማለት አለባችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ይፋፋልም፣ ይበቅላልም፣ ማደግ ይጀምራልም። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህ እምነታችሁን አያጠነክርምን? አዎን፣ እምነታችሁን ያጠነክራል፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ መልካም ዘር እንደሆነ እውቃለሁ ትላላችሁና፤ ምክንያቱም እነሆ በቅሏል እናም ማደግ ጀምሯል።

፴፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ይህ መልካም ዘር ለመሆኑ እርግጠኞች ናችሁን? እኔ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ማንኛውም ዘር እራሱን መስል ዘር ይሰጣል።

፴፪ ሰለዚህ፣ ዘሩ የሚያድግ ከሆነ መልካም ነው፤ ነገር ግን የማያድግ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ መልካም አይደለም ሰለዚህ ይጣላል።

፴፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ ልምምዱን በመሞከራችሁና፣ ዘሩን በመትከላችሁ፣ እርሱም በመፋፋቱና፣ በመብቀሉ፣ እናም ማደግ በመጀመሩ ዘሩ መልካም መሆኑን ማወቅ ይገባችኋል።

፴፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ እውቀታችሁ ፍፁም ነውን? አዎን፣ እውቀታችሁ በእዚያ ነገር ፍፁም ነው፣ እምነታችሁም ዘገምተኛ ነው፤ እናም ይህንን በማወቃችሁ፣ ቃልም ነፍሶቻችሁን እንደሚያፋፋ ታውቃላችሁ፣ ደግሞም መብቀሉን ሰላወቃችሁ፣ ግንዛቤአችሁ ብርሃን ማግኘት ይጀምራል፣ እናም አዕምሮአችሁ መስፋፋት ጀምሯል።

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

፲፮፩ አቤቱ ይህ እውነት አይደለምን? እኔ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ምክንያቱም ይህ ብርሃን ነው፣ እናም ብርሃን የሆነው ማንኛውም መልካም ነው፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ የሚለይ ነውና፣ ስለሆነም መልካም መሆኑን ማወቅ ይገባችኋል፤ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህንን ብርሃን ከሞከራችሁት በኋላ እውቀታችሁ ፍፁም ይሆናልን?

፲፮፪ እነሆ አይደለም እላችኋለሁ፣ ወይም እምነታችሁን መተው የለባችሁም፣ ምክንያቱም ዘሩ መልካም መሆኑን ለማወቅ ልምምዱን ትሞክሩ ዘንድ፣ ዘሩን ለመትከል ብቻ እምነታችሁን ተለማምዳችኋልና።

፲፮፫ እናም እነሆ፣ ዛፍ ማደግ ሲጀምር፣ እንዲህ ትላላችሁ፡ ስርን እንዲያገኝ፣ እርሱም እንዲያድግ፣ እናም ፍሬን እንዲያስገኝልን፣ በታላቅ ጥንቃቄ እንከባከበው። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ በተገቢው ጥንቃቄ ከተከባከባችሁት ስር ያገኛልም፣ ያድጋልም፣ እናም ፍሬን ያስገኛል።

፲፮፬ ነገር ግን ዛፉን ከተዋችሁትና፣ ለእንክብካቤው ማሰብ ካቆማችሁ፤ እነሆ ስር እያገኝም፤ እናም የፀሐይ ሙቀት መጥቶ ባቃጠለው ጊዜ፣ ስር ስለሌለው ይደርቃል፤ እናም ትቆርጡትና ትጥሉታላችሁ።

፲፮፭ እንግዲህ፣ ይህም የሆነው ዘሩ መልካም ስላልነበረ አይደለም፤ ወይም ፍሬውም ቢሆን ተፈላጊ ባለመሆኑ አልነበረም፣ ነገር ግን መሬታችሁ መካኒን በመሆኑ፣ እናም ዛፉን አትከባከቡትም፤ ስለዚህ የዚህን ፍሬ አታገኙም።

፲፮፮ እናም ለእዚያ ፍሬ በእምነት ዓይን በመጠበቅ እንደዚህ ቃሉን የማትከባከቡት ከሆነ፣ ከህይወት ዛፍ ፍሬ በጭራሽ መቅጠፍ አትችሉም።

፲፮፯ ነገር ግን ቃሉን የማትከባከቡት ከሆነ፣ አዎን በእምነታችሁ በታላቅ ትጋት፣ ትዕግስት፣ እና ለዚያ ፍሬ በጉጉት በመጠበቅ የማትከባከቡት ከሆነ፣ ይህም ስር ያወጣል፤ እናም እነሆ ይህም ወደ ዘለዓለማዊው ህይወት የሚያድግ ዛፍ ይሆናል።

፲፮፰ እናም ስር እንዲያወጣ ዘንድ ቃሉን ለመከባከብ ትጉ በመሆናችሁና፣ በታማኝነታችሁ እንዲሁም በትዕግስተኛነታችሁ፣ እነሆ፣ የተከበረውን፣ ከጣፋጮች ሁሉ ጣፋጭ የሆነውንና ከነጡት ሁሉ በላይ ነጭ፣ አዎን ከንፁህ ሁሉ በላይ ንፁህ የሆነውን ፍሬ ከጊዜ በኋላ ትቀጥፋላችሁ፤ እናም እርሃባችሁ እስከሚጠፋና፣ ጥማታቸው እስኪቆረጥ ድረስ እንኳን ቢሆን ይህንን ፍሬ ትመገባላችሁ።

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorchem it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

ከዚያም ወንድሞቼ፣ ዛፋ ፍሬ እንዲያሰገኝላችሁ
በመጠበቃችሁ ለእምነታችሁ፣ ለትጋታችሁና፣ ለፅናታችሁ፣
እናም ለታጋሽነታችሁ ደመወዝን ታገኛላችሁ።

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of
your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and
long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth
fruit unto you.

አልማ ፴፫

Alma 33

፩ እናም አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገረ በኋላ፣ እርሱ የተናገረውንም ፍሬ ያገኙ ዘንድ በእንደ አምላክ ማመን እንዳለባቸው፣ ወይንም ዘሩን ወይም በልባቸው መትከል ይገባቸዋል ብሎ እርሱ ስለተናገረው ቃል እንዴት እንደሚተክሉ፣ ወይም እንግዲህ በምን ዓይነት ሁኔታ እምነትን መለማመድ እንዳለባቸው ለማወቅ በመፈለግ ላኩበት።

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

፪ እናም አልማ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ፣ ከምኩራባችሁ በመባረራችሁ አምላካችሁን ማምለክ እንደማትችሉ ተናግራችኋል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፤ አምላክን ማምለክ እንችልም ብላችሁ ከገመታችሁ እጅግ ተሳስታችኋል፤ እናም ቅዱሳት መፃሕፍትን መመርመር አለባችሁ፤ ይህንን አስተምረውናል ብላችሁ ከገመታችሁ አልተረዳችኋቸውም።

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

፫ የጥንቱ ነቢይ ዜናስ፣ ፀሎትን እና አምልኮትን በተመለከተ የተናገረውን ማንበባችሁን ታስታውሳላችሁን?

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

፬ እርሱም እንዲህ ብሏል፣ እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ ፀሎቴን በምድረበዳው በነበርኩበት ጊዜም እንኳን ስለሰማኸኝ እንተ መሃሪ ነህ፤ አዎን፣ ጠላቶቼ ለሆኑትም ለእነዚያ በፀላይኩኝ ጊዜ መሃሪ ነበርክ፣ እናም እነርሱም ለእኔ ደግ እንዲሆኑልኝ አድርገሃል።

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

፭ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ እናም በስፍራዬ ሆኜ ወደአንተ ሰጮህ ምህረትን ሰጥተኸኛል፣ በፀሎቴ ወደንተ ሰጮህ እነሆ ሰምተኸኛል።

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

፮ እናም በድጋሚ አቤቴ እግዚአብሔር ወደቤቴም በተመለሰኩኝ ጊዜ ፀሎቴን ሰምተሃል።

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

፯ እናም፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ወደ አልፍኜም በሄድኩኝ ጊዜና ወደ አንተ በፀላይኩ ጊዜ ሰምተኸኛል።

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

፰ አዎን ልጆችህ በሰዎች ሳይሆን በአንተ እንዲሰሙ ወደ አንተ ሲጮሁ መሃሪ ነህ፣ እናም አንተ ትሰማቸዋለህ።

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

፱ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ አንተ ለእኔ መሃሪ ሆነህል፣ እናም በጉባዔህም መካከል ጩኸቴን ሰማህ።

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

፲ አዎን፣ እናም በተጣልኩና በጠላቶቼ በተጠላሁ ጊዜ ደግሞ ሰምተኸኛል፤ አዎን፣ ጩኸቴን ሰምተሃል፣ በጠላቶቼም ተቆጥተሃል፣ እናም በፈጣኑ ጥፋትህም በቁጣህ ጎብኝተሃቸዋል።

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

፲፩ እናም በሥቃይና በቅንነቴ ምክንያት ሰምተኸኛል፤ እናም በልጅህ አማካኝነት ለእኔ መሃሪ ሆነሃል፤ ስለዚህ በሰቃይ ሁሉ ወደእነተ እጮሀለሁ፣ ደስታዬ በእነተ ነውና፤ በልጅህ አማካኝነት ፍርድህን ከእኔ አርቀሃልና።

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

፲፪ እናም አሁን አልማ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ በጥንት ነቢያት የተፃፉትን እነዚያን ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት ታምናላችሁን?

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

፲፫ አነሆ፣ የምታምኑ ከሆነ፣ ዜናሰ የተናገረውን ማመን አለባችሁ፤ እነሆ እርሱ እንዲህ ብሏልና፡ በልጅህ አማካኝነት ቅጣትህን አርቀሀል።

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

፲፬ እናም አነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍትን እንብባችሁ እንደሆነ እጠይቃችኋለሁ? ካነበባችሁ የእግዚአብሔርን ልጅ እንዴት ላታምኑ ትችላላችሁ?

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

፲፭ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች የተናገረው ዜናሰ ብቻ ነው ተብሎ አልተጻፈም፣ ነገር ግን ዜናቅ ደግሞ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ተናግሯል—

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

፲፮ እነሆም እርሱ እንዲህ ብሏል፡ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ይህ ህዝብ በልጅህ አማካኝነት የሰጠኸውን ምህረት ስለማይረዳ እነተ ተቆጥተሀል።

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

፲፯ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ከጥንት ነቢያት ሁለተኛው ስለእግዚአብሔር ልጅ መሰክሯል፣ እናም ህዝቡ ቃሉን ስላላመኑ በድንጋይ ወግረው ገደሉት።

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

፲፰ ነገር ግን አነሆ፣ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ ስለእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የተናገሩት እነዚህ ብቻ አይደሉም።

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

፲፱ እነሆ ሙሴም ስለእርሱ ተናግሮ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም አነሆ፣ ይህን ቀና ብሎ የተመለከተ እንዲኖር ዘንድ እንደ ሞሳሌ የሆነው በምድረቦዳው ተሰቅሎ ነበር። እናም ብዙዎች ተመለከቱና፣ በህይወት ኖሩ።

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

፳ ነገር ግን የነገሮቹን ትርጉም ጥቂቶች ብቻ ተረዱ፣ እናም ይህም የሆነው በልባቸው ጠጣርነት የተነሳ ነው። ነገር ግን ብዙ ልቦ ጠጣሮች ስለነበሩ አልተመለከቱም፣ ስለዚህም ጠፉ። ያንንም ያልተመለከቱበት ምክንያት እነርሱን እንደሚፈውስ ባለማመናቸው ነበር።

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

፳፩ ወንድሞቼ ሆይ፣ ትፈወሱ ዘንድ በቀላሉ በዓይናችሁ በመመልከት ለመፈወስ የምትችሉ ከሆነ፣ በፍጥነት አትመለከቱምን፣ ወይንስ ትጠፉ ዘንድ ዐይናችሁን በዚያ ላይ ባለማመንስ ልባችሁን ማጠጠር፣ እናም ሰነፍ መሆን ይሻላችኋልን?

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

፳፪ እንዲህ ከሆነ፣ ዋይታ በላያችሁ ይመጣቸዋል፤ ነገር ግን ይህም ካልሆነ፣ በዐይናችሁ ወደዚህና ወደዚያ ተመልከቱ፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ህዝቡን ሊያድን እንደሚመጣና፣ ለህዝቡ ኃጢአት ክፍያ እንደሚሰቃይና እንደሚሞት፣ እናም ሰዎች እንደሰራቸው በመጨረሻውና በፍርድ ቀን እንዲፈረድባቸው በፊቱ ይቆሙ ዘንድ ትንሳኤን ያመጣ ዘንድ በድጋሚ ከሙታን እንደሚነሳ ማመን ጀምሩ።

፳፫ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ይህን ቃል በልባችሁ እንድትተክሉ እፈልጋለሁና፣ ማደግ በጀመረ ጊዜ በእምነታችሁ ተንከባከቡት። እናም እነሆ፣ እርሱም ዛፍ ይሆናል፣ እስከዘለዓለማዊው ህይወትም በእናንተ ያብባል። በልጁም ደስታ አማካኝነት ሸክማችሁን እንዲቀልልላችሁ እግዚአብሔር ይፍቀድላችሁ። እናም ይህን ሁሉ እንኳን ከፈቀዳችሁ ማድረግን ትችላላችሁ። አሜን።

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

አልማ ፴፬

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት ከተናገሩቸው በኋላ በመሬት ላይ ተቀምጦ ነበር፤ እናም አሙሌቅ ተነሳና፤ እንዲህ በማለት እነርሱን ማስተማር ጀመረ፤

፪ ወንድሞቼ እንደማሰበው የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ስለመሆኑ ያስተማርናችሁን የክርስቶስን መምጣት በተመለከተ የተነገሩትን ችላ ማለት የማይቻል ነው፤ አዎን፤ ከእኛ ከመለየታችሁ በፊት እነዚህን ነገሮች በይበልጥ እንደተማራችሁት አውቃለሁ።

፫ እናም በስቃያችሁ የተነሳ ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባችሁ እንዲያሳውቃችሁ የተወደደውን ወንድሜን ለመጠየቅ በመፈለጋችሁና፤ እርሱ የራሳችሁን አዕምሮ እንድታዘጋጁ በመጠኑ ተናግሯል፤ አዎን እናም እምነትና ትዕግስት እንዲኖራችሁ መክሯችኋል—

፬ አዎን፤ የመልካምነቱን ልምምድ እንድትሞክሩት ዘንድ፤ ታላቅ እምነት ኖሯችሁ ቃሉን በልባችሁ እንድትተክሉትም መክሯችኋል።

፭ እናም ቃሉ በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ውስጥ መኖሩን፤ ወይም ክርስቶስ እንደሌለ ያላችሁን ታላቅ ጥያቄ በአዕምሮአችሁ ውስጥ እንደሆነ ተመልክተናል።

፮ እናም በብዙ ማስረጃዎች ቃሉ ደህንነት በክርስቶስ ውስጥ መሆኑን ወንድሜ እንዲረገጠላችሁ ደግሞም ተመልክታችኋል።

፯ ወንድሜም ቤዛነት በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ አማካኝነት እንደሚመጣ የዜናሰን ቃል፤ እናም ደግሞ የዜናቅን ቃል፤ በመጥቀስ ተናገረ፤ እናም ደግሞ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን ለማረጋገጥ የሙሴን ቃላት ጠቀስ።

፰ እናም አሁን፤ እነሆ፤ እኔ ራሴ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን እመስክራለሁ። እነሆ፤ እንዲህም እላችኋለሁ፡ ክርስቶስ የህዝቡን መተላለፍ በእራሱ ላይ ለመሸከም በሰው ልጆች መካከል እንደሚመጣ፤ እናም ለዓለም ኃጢአት ክፍያን እንደሚከፍል አውቃለሁ፤ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ይህን ተናግሯልና።

፱ የኃጢአት ክፍያ መኖሩ አስፈላጊ ነውና፤ በዘለለማዊው አምላክ ታላቅ ዕቅድ መሰረት የኃጢአት ክፍያ መኖር አለበት፤ አለበለዚያ የሰው ዘር ሁሉ መጥፋት እንዳለባቸው የማይቀር ነበር፤ አዎን ሁሉም ጠጣሮች ናቸው፤ አዎን ሁሉም ወድቀዋልና ጠፍተዋል፤ እናም መፈጸሙ አስፈላጊ ከሆነው ከኃጢአት ክፍያ በቀር መጥፋት አለባቸው።

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

፲ ጋላቅ እና የመጨረሻ መስዋዕትነት መኖሩ አስፈላጊ ነውና፤ አዎን፤ የሰውም ሆነ የእንስሳ እንዲሁም የማንኛውም አዕዋፍ መስዋዕትነት አይደለም፤ ምክንያቱም የሰው መስዋዕትነት መሆን አይገባውም፤ ነገር ግን መጨረሻ የሌለው እንዲሁም ዘላለማዊ መስዋዕት መሆን ይገባዋል።

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

፲፩ እንግዲህ ለሌላኛው እንደ ኃጢአቶች ክፍያ ደሙን መስዋዕት ሊያደርግ የሚችል ማንም ሰው የለም። እንግዲህ፤ እንደ ሰው ከገደለ እነሆ ፍፁም የሆነው ህጋችን የወንድሙን ህይወት ያጠፋልን? እኔ ግን አይሆንም አላለሁ።

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

፲፪ ነገር ግን ህጉ የገደለውን ሰው ህይወት ይጠይቃል፤ ስለዚህ ለዓለም ኃጢአት ወሰን ከሌለው የኃጢአት ክፍያ በስተቀር ሊበቃ የሚችል ምንም የለም።

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

፲፫ ስለዚህ፤ ጋላቅና የመጨረሻ መስዋዕትነት መኖሩ አስፈላጊ ነው፤ እናም የደም መፋሰሱ መቆም መሆን አለበት፤ እንዲሁም መሆኑ አስፈላጊ ነው፤ ከዚያም የሙሴ ህግ ይፈፀማል፤ አዎን፤ እያንዳንዱ ነጥብና ምልክት በሙሉ ይፈፀማል፤ እናም የትኛውም ሳይከናወን አይቀርም።

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

፲፬ እናም እነሆ፤ ይህ እያንዳንዱ ትንሽ ክፍል ወደ ጋላቅና የመጨረሻ መስዋዕት የሚጠቁምበት አጠቃላይ የህጉ ትርጓሜ ነው፤ እናም የጋላቅና የመጨረሻ መስዋዕትነት የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ይሆናል፤ አዎን፤ መጨረሻ የሌለውና ዘላለማዊ የሆነው።

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

፲፭ በዚህም በሰው ለሚያምኑ ሁሉ ደህንነትን ያመጣል፤ የዚህ የመጨረሻው መስዋዕት ዓላማ ከፍትህ የሚልቀውን ከእንጀት የሆነን ምህረትን ለማምጣት ነው፤ እንዲሁም ለሰዎች በንስሃ እምነት ይኖራቸው ዘንድ መፍትሄ ለማምጣት ነው።

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

፲፮ እናምእንደዚህም ምህረት የፍትህን ፍላጎት ሊያሟላ ይችላል፤ እናም በጠባቂ ክንዶቹ ይከባቸዋል፤ እምነትንም ንስሃ በመግባት ያልተለማመደ ፍትህ ለሚፈልግበት ህግጋት ሁሉ የተጋለጠ ይሆናል፤ ስለዚህ ለንስሃ እምነት ላለው ብቻ ጋላቅና የዘላለማዊው ዕቅድ ቤዛነት እንዲመጣ የሚሆነው።

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

፲፯ ስለዚህ ወንድሞቼ ለንስሃ እምነታችሁን መለማመድ ትጀምሩ ዘንድ፤ በእናንተም ላይ ምህረት እንዲኖረው ቅዱስ ስሙን መጥራት ትጀምሩ ዘንድ እግዚአብሔር ለእናንተ ይፍቀድላችሁ፤

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

፲፰ አዎን፤ ለምህረት ወደ እርሱ ጨኩኩ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ለማዳን ኃያል ነውና።

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

፲፱ አዎን፣ ራሳችሁን ዝቅ አድርጉ፣ እናም ወደ እርሱ ፀሎታችሁን አታቋርጡ።

፳ በመስካችሁ ሳላችሁ ወደ እርሱ ጨኩ፤ አዎን በመገገግታችሁ ሁሉ ላይ።

፳፩ በቤታችሁ፣ አዎን፣ በቤተሰቦቻችሁ ላይ፣ በጠዋት፣ በቀን እንዲሁም በምሽት ወደ እርሱ ጨኩ።

፳፪ አዎን፣ የጠላቶቻችሁን ኃይል በመቃወም ወደ እርሱ ጨኩ።

፳፫ አዎን፣ የፅድቅ ሁሉ ጠላት የሆነውን ዲያብሎስን በመቃወም ወደ እርሱ ጨኩ።

፳፬ በእርሻችሁ እህሎች ትበለጽጉ ዘንድ ወደ እርሱ ጨኩ።

፳፭ በመስኩ ላይ ያሉት መንገቶችሁ ይበዙላችሁ ዘንድ ስለእነርሱ ጨኩ።

፳፮ ነገር ግን ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ ነፍሳችሁን በእልፍኞቻችሁ፣ እናም በሚሰጥር ቦታዎቻችሁ እንዲሁም በምድረበዳው አፍሱሱ።

፳፯ አዎን፣ እናም ወደ ጌታ በማትጮኩበት ጊዜ፣ ልባችሁ ለደህንነታችሁና፣ ደግሞ በዙሪያችሁ ላሉት ደህንነት ባለማቋረጥ በፀሎት ወደ እርሱ በመትጋት ሙሉ ይሁን።

፳፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፤ ይህ ብቻ ነው ብላችሁ አትገምቱ፤ ምክንያቱም ይህንን ነገር በሙሉ ካደረጋችሁ በኋላ፣ የተቸገሩትንና፣ የታረዙትን ካልረዳችሁ፣ እናም የታመሙትንና የተሰቃዩትን ካልጎበኛችሁና፣ እያላችሁ ለሚሹት ካላችሁ ነገር ካላካፈላችሁ—እኔ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ከእነዚህ ነገሮች የትኛውንም ካላደረጋችሁ፣ እነሆ፣ ፀሎታችሁ ከንቱ ነው፣ እናም ለእናንተ የሚጠቅማችሁ ምንም የለም፤ እናንተም እምነትን እንደሚከዱት ግብዞች ናችሁ።

፳፱ ስለዚህ፣ ቸር መሆንን ካላሰታወሳችሁ፣ (ምክንያቱም ዋጋ ቢስ ነውና) አጣሪዎቹ እንደሚጥሉዎቸው እናም በሰዎች እግር እንደሚረገጡ አተላ ናችሁ።

፴ እናም አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ብዙ ምስክሮችን ከተቀበላችሁ በኋላ፣ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት እነዚህን ነገሮች እንደሚመሰክሩላችሁ እያያችሁ፣ እንድትመጡና ለንስህ ብቁ የሆነ ፍሬ እንድታመጡ ፍላጎቴ ነው።

፴፩ አዎን፣ እናንተ እንድትመጡና፣ ከእንግዲህ ልባችሁን እንዳታጠጥሩ አልጋለሁ፤ እነሆም አሁን የደህንነታችሁ ጊዜና ቀን ነው፤ እናም ስለዚህ ንስሃ የምትገቡ ከሆነና፣ ልባችሁን የማታጠጥሩ ከሆነ፣ ታላቁ የቤዛነት ዕቅድ በፍጥነት በእናንተ ላይ ይሆናል።

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

፴፪ እነሆም፣ ይህ ጊዜ ለሰዎች እግዚአብሔርን ለመገናኘት የዝግጅት ወቅት ነው፤ እዎን፣ እነሆ የዚህ ህይወት ቀናት ሰራቸውን የሚያከናውኑባቸው ቀናቶች ናቸው።

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

፴፫ እናም አሁን፣ ለእናንተ ብዙ ምስክር እንዳላችሁ ቀደም ሲል እንደተናገርኩት፣ ስለዚህ እስከመጨረሻው ድረስ የንሰሃ ቀናችሁን እንዳታዘገቡ አለምናችኋለሁ፤ ለዘላለማዊው ህይወት እንድንዘጋጅ ከተሰጠን ከዚህ የህይወት ቀን በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ በዚህ ህይወት ውስጥ ጊዜያችንን በተሻለ ካልተጠቀምን፣ ከዚያም ሰራ ለመስራት የማንችልበት የጨለማ ምሽት ይመጣል።

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

፴፬ ወደ አስቃቂው ሁኔታ ስትመጡም፣ ንሰሃ አገባለሁ፣ እናም ወደ አምላኬ እመለሳለሁ ለማለት አትችሉም። እንደዚህም ለማለት አትችሉም፤ ከዚህ ህይወት በምትወጡ ጊዜ እናንተን የእራሱ ያደረገው ይኸው መንፈስ በዘላለማዊው ዓለም እናንተን የእራሱ ለማድረግ ስልጣን ይኖረዋል።

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

፴፭ እነሆም እስክትሞቱ ድረስ የንሰሃ ቀናችሁን የምታዘገቡ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ ለዲያብሎስ መንፈስ ተገዢ ትሆናላችሁና፣ የእራሱ አድርጎ ያትምባችኋል፤ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ከውስጣችሁ ይወጣልና፣ በእናንተ ውስጥ ስፍራ አይኖረውም፣ እንዲሁም ዲያብሎስ በእናንተ ላይ ሁሉም ስልጣን ይኖረዋል፤ እናም የኃጢአተኞች የመጨረሻ ሁኔታ ይህ ነው።

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

፴፮ እናም ይህን ያወቅሁት በረከስ ቤተመቅደስ እንደሚይኖር፣ ነገር ግን በፃድቃኖች ልብ ውስጥ እንደሚያድር ጌታ ስለተናገረ ነው፤ እዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ፃድቃኖች በመንግስቱ እንደሚቀመጡ፣ ከዚያም ደግሞ እንደሚይወጡ ተናግሯል፤ ነገር ግን በበጉ ደም ልብሳቸው ይጸዳል።

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

፴፯ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድታስታውሱ እፈልጋለሁ፣ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በፍርሃት ደግነነታችሁን እንድትፈፀሙና፣ የክርስቶስን መምጣት ከእንግዲህ እንዳትክዱ እፈልጋለሁ፤

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

፴፰ ከእንግዲህ ከመንፈስ ቅዱስ ጋር እንዳትጣሉም፣ ነገር ግን እንድትቀበሉትና፣ የክርስቶስን ስም በእራሳችሁ ላይ እንድትወስዱት፤ ራሳችሁን እስከትቢያው ድረስ ዝቅ እንድታደርጉና፣ ባላችሁበት ስፍራ ሁሉ በመንፈስና በእውነት እግዚአብሔርን እንድታመልኩ፤ እናም በየቀኑ በእናንተ ላይ ባደረገው ስለበዛው ምህረቱና በረከቱ በምስጋና እንድትኖሩ እፈልጋለሁ።

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

፲፱ አዎን፤ እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቼ በዲያብሎስ ፈተናም እንዳትወሰዱ፤ እርሱም በእናንተ ላይ ሰልጣን እንዳይኖረው፤ በመጨረሻው ቀንም በእርሱ ስር እንዳትሆኑ ያለማቋረጥ እንድትጸልዩ እመክራችኋለሁ፤ እነሆ እርሱ ምንም መልካም ነገር ዋጋ አይሰጣችሁምና።

፳ እናም አሁን የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ ትዕግስት እንዲኖራችሁና፤ ሰቃያችሁን ሁሉ እንድትታገሱ እመክራችኋለሁ፤ እጅግ ድሆች በመሆናችሁ ከአስወጧችሁም ላይ አጥብቃችሁ አትነቅፉ፤ ያለበለዚያ እንደእነርሱም ኃጢአተኞች ትሆናላችሁና፤

፳፩ ነገር ግን ትዕግስት ይኑራችሁ፤ እናም አንድ ቀን ከሰቃያችሁ ሁሉ እንደምታርፉ ተስፋ በማድረግ ሰቃያችሁን ታገሱ።

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

አልማ ፴፭

፩ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አሙሌቅ ንግግሩን ከጨረሰ በኋላ፣ እራሳቸውን ከህዝቡ ለዩ እናም ወደ ኢየርሾን ምድር መጡ።

፪ እምን እናም የቀሩት ወንድሞች ቃሉን ለዘራማውያን ከሰበኩ በኋላ ደግሞ ወደ ኢየርሾን ምድር መጡ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጣም ታዋቂ የሆኑት ዘራማውያን የተሰበኩትን ቃላት በተመለከተ እርስ በእርሳቸው ከተመካከሩ በኋላ ተንኮላቸውን የሚያጠፋቸው በመሆኑ በቃሉ ተቆጡ፤ ስለዚህ ቃላቱንም አላደመጡትም።

፬ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ የሚኖሩትን ሰዎች በሙሉ መልዕክት ላኩላቸውና፣ ሰበሰቡአቸው፣ እናም የተነገሩትን ቃላት በተመለከተ ከእነርሱ ጋር ተመካከሩ።

፭ እንግዲህ ገዢዎቻቸውና፣ ካህናቶቻቸው፣ እናም መምህራኖቻቸው ለህዝቡ የእነርሱን ፍላጎት እንዲያውቅ አልፈቀዱም፣ ስለዚህ የህዝቡን ሀሳብ በሚሰጥር አወቁ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የህዝቡን በሙሉ ሀሳብ ካወቁ በኋላ፣ በአልማና በወንድሞቹ የተነገሩትን ቃላት የሚደግፉትን ሰዎች ከምድሪቱ አባረሩአቸው፤ እነርሱም ብዙ ነበሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ እነርሱ ወደ ኢየርሾን ምድር መጡ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልማና ወንድሞቹ ሰበኩላቸው።

፰ እንግዲህ በኢየርሾን በነበሩት በእምን ሰዎች ላይ ዘራማውያን ተቆጥተው ነበር፣ እናም የዘራማውያን ዋና ገዢ እጅግ ክፉ ሰው ስለነበር ከዘራማውያን ምድር ወደ እነርሱ የመጡትን ከምድራቸው እንዲወጡ በመፈለጉ ለእምን ህዝብ መልዕክት ላከባቸው።

፱ እናም እርሱ በእነርሱ ላይ በርካታ ማስፈራሪያዎችን ተናገረ። እናም አሁን የእምን ህዝብ ቃሉን አልፈሩም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱን አላሰወጧቸውም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን ወደእነርሱ የመጡትን ምስኪን ዘራማውያንን በሙሉ ተቀበሉአቸው፤ እናም ተንከባከቧቸውና፣ አለበሱአቸው እንዲሁም የውርስ ምድርንም ሰጡአቸው፤ እናም እንደፈለጉት አስተዳደሩአቸው።

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

፲ እንግዲህ ይህም ዘራማውያን በአሞን ህዝብ ላይ ለቁጣ እንዲነሳሱ ቀስቀሳቸው፤ እናም ከላማናውያን ጋር ተቀላቀሉ፤ ደግሞም እነርሱንም በቁጣ ማነሳሳት ጀመሩ።

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

፲፩ እናም ዘራማውያንና ላማናውያን በአሞን ላይና፤ ደግሞ በኔፋውያን ህዝብ ላይ ለጦርነት ዝግጅት ጀመሩ።

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

፲፪ እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ አሰራ ሰባተኛው የንግሥ ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፲፫ እናም የአሞን ህዝብ ከኢየርሾን ምድር ሸሹና፤ ወደ ሜሌቅ ምድር መጡ፤ እናም የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ከላማናውያን ወታደሮች እንዲሁም ከዘራማውያን ወታደሮች ጋር ይጣሉ ዘንድ የኢየርሾን ምድርን ሰጡአቸው፤ እናም በመሣፍንቱ አሰራ ሰምንተኛ የንግሥ ዘመን መጀመሪያ ላይ በላማናውያንና በኔፋውያን መካከል ጦርነት ተጀመረ፤ እናም የጦርነታቸው ታሪክም ከዚህ በኋላ ይቀርባል።

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

፲፬ እናም አልማና፣ አሞን፣ እናም ወንድሞቻቸው፣ ደግሞም የአልማ ሁለት ልጆች በርካታ ዘራማውያንን ወደ ንስሃው ለማምጣት በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መገልገያ ከሆኑ በኋላ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመለሱና፤ ወደ ንስሃው የመጡት ብዙዎች ከምድራቸው ተሰደዱ፤ ነገር ግን በኢየርሾን ምድር የርሰት ሥፍራ ነበራቸው፤ እናም እራሳቸውንና፣ ሚስቶቻቸውን፣ እናም ልጆቻቸውንና፣ ምድራቸውን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን አነሱ።

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

፲፭ እንግዲህ አልማ በህዝቡ ክፋት፣ አዎን ጦርነትና፣ ደም መፋሰስ፣ እናም በመካከላቸው በነበረው ፀብ በማዘኑ፤ በሁሉም ከተሞች እንዲሁም በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከል ቃሉን በመናገሩ፣ ወይም ቃሉን ለመናገር መልዕክት በመላኩ፤ እናም የህዝቡ ልብ መጠጠሩን በመመልከቱና በቃሉም ጥብቅነት የተነሳ መናደድ በመጀመራቸው ልቡ እጅግ አዝኖ ነበር።

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

፲፮ ስለዚህ ለፀድቅ አሰፈላጊ የሆኑትን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ለእያንዳንዱ በየግላቸው ሀላፊነታቸውን ለመስጠት ልጆቹን በአንድ ላይ እንዲሰባሰቡ አደረገ። እናም በአልማ ምዝገባ መሰረት እርሱ የሰጣቸው የትዕዛዛት መዛግብት አሉን።

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

አልማ ፴፮

Alma 36

፩ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ቃሉን አድምጥ፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስከጠበቅህ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ እንደምትበለፀግ ለአንተ እምላለሁ።

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

፪ የአባቶቻችንን ምርኮ በማሰታወስ እኔ እንዲደረግሁት እንድታደርግ እፈልጋለሁ፤ በምርኮ ስለነበሩ ከአብርሃም አምላክና፣ ከይሱህቅ አምላክ፣ እናም ከያዕቆብ አምላክ በስተቀር ማንም ሊያስለቅቃቸው አይችልም፤ እርሱ በእርግጥ ከስቃያቸው አስለቅቋቸዋል።

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

፫ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ ሔሎማን ሆይ፣ እነሆ፣ አንተ ወጣት ነህ፣ እናም ስለዚህ፣ ቃሉን እንድትሰማና ከእኔም እንድትማር እለምንሃለሁ፤ እምነታቸውን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ ያደረጉ ሁሉ፣ በፈተናቸውና፣ በችግራቸው፣ እናም በስቃያቸው እንደሚደገፉና፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ እንደሚደረጉ አውቃለሁ።

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

፬ እናም በራሴ እንደማውቀው እንድታሰብ አልፈልግም—በጊዜያዊው ሳይሆን ነገር ግን በመንፈሳዊው፣ በሰጋዊ አዕምሮዬ ሳይሆን በእግዚአብሔር ነው።

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

፭ እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አልሀለሁ፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ባልወለድ ኖሮ እነዚህን ነገሮች ባላወቅሁ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር፤ በቅዱስ መልአኩ አንደበት፣ እኔ ብቃት ያለኝ በመሆኔ ሳይሆን፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዳውቅ አድርጎኛል፤

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

፮ ከሞዛያ ልጆች ጋር የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ለማጥፋት በመፈለግ እሄድ ነበርና፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ እግዚአብሔር በመንገዳችን እኛን እንዲያቆመን ቅዱስ መልአኩን ላከ።

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

፯ እናም እነሆ፣ የነጎድጓድ ድምፅ በሚመስልና፣ ምድር ሁሉ በሰራችን እስክትንቀጠቀጥ ተናገረን፤ እናም የጌታ ፍርሃት ስለመጣብን በመሬት ላይ ወደቅን።

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ድምፁ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ተነሱ። እናም ተነሳሁና ቆምኩ፣ መልአኩንም ተመለከትኩ።

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

፱ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ራስህን ለማጥፋት ከፈለግህም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ለማጥፋት አትፈልግ።

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሬት ላይ ወደቅሁ፤ እናም ለሶስት ቀንና ሌሊት አፌን ለመክፈትም፣ ሆነ ክንዶቼን ለመጠቀም አልቻልኩም።

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

፲፩ እናም መልእኩ ወንድሞቼ ያዳመጡትን፣ ነገር ግን እኔ ላዳምጠው ያልቻልኩትን ከዚህ የበለጡ ነገሮች ተናገረኝ፤ ራሱን ለማጥፋት ከፈለገህም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ከእንግዲህ ለማጥፋት እትፈልግ የሚለውን ቃሉን ሰሰማ፣ በታላቁ ፍርሃትና መገረም እጠፋለሁ ብዬ በመፍራቴ፣ በመሬት ላይ ወደቅሁ፣ እናም ሌላ ምንም አልሰማሁም።

፲፪ ነገር ግን በሰቃይ ለዘለዓለም ተጨንቄ ነበር፣ ነፍሴ በታላቅ ደረጃ ተጨንቃ፣ እናም በኃጢአቶቼ ሁሉ ተሰቃይታ ነበርና።

፲፫ አዎን፣ በሲኦል ህመም የተሰቃየሁባቸውን፣ ኃጢአቶቼን እናም ክፋቶቼን ሁሉ አስታውሳለሁ፤ አዎን፣ በአምላኬ ላይ ማመዳን፣ እናም ቅዱሳን ትዕዛዛቴን አለመጠበቅን ተመልክቻለሁ።

፲፬ አዎን፣ እናም ብዙዎቼን ልጆቼን ገድያለሁ፣ ይልቁንም ወደጥፋትም እንዲመሩ አድርጌአለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በእጠቃላይ ክፋቶቼ ታላቅ ስለነበሩ፤ ወደ አምላኬ በፊቱ ለመቅረብ ያለኝ ሀሳብ በሚያሰቸግር ሰቃይ ነፍሴን እንድትሰቃይ አደረጋት።

፲፭ በሰራዬም ሊፈረድብኝ በአምላኬ ፊት እንዳልቆ ም ዘንድ፣ ተወግጄ እና በነፍሱና በሰጋዬ ለመጥፋት እንደምችል አሰብበት ነበር።

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ ለሶስት ቀንና ለሶስት ሌሊት በተኮነነኝ ነፍሱ ህመምም እንኳን ተሰቃየሁ።

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጭንቀት በተሰቃየሁ ጊዜ፣ በኃጢአቶቼ ብዛትም በትውስታ በተሰቃየሁ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ስለሆነው ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስለተባለው፣ የዓለምን ኃጢአት ለመክፈል ስለሚመጣው፣ የአባቴን ትንቢት መስማቴን አስታወሰኩኝ።

፲፰ እንግዲህ፣ አዕምሮዬ በዚህ ሀሳብ ላይ በተያዘበት ጊዜ፣ በልቤ እንዲህ በማለት አለቀሰኩ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሆንከው ኢየሱስ ሆይ፣ ለተማረርኩት፣ እና በዘለዓለማዊው የሞት ሰንሰለት ለተከበብኩት፣ ምህረትህ በእኔ ላይ አድርግልኝ።

፲፱ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ይህንን ባሰብኩ ጊዜ፣ ህመሜን ደግሞ ለማስታወስ አልቻልኩም፤ አዎን፣ ከእንግዲህም ወዲያ በኃጢአቴ ትውስታ አልተሰቃየሁም።

፳ እናም አቤቴ፣ እንዴት ያለ ደስታ ተሰማኝ፤ እናም ምን ዓይነት አሰደናቂ ብርሃንን አይቻለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ነፍሴ በህመም እንደተሰቃየች ሁሉ ታላቅ በሆነም ደስታ ተሞላች!

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

፳፩ አዎን፣ ልጄ እንዲህ አልሃለሁኝ፣ እንደ እኔ ህመም ሀያልና መሪር የሆነ ምንም ሊኖር አይችልም። አዎን፣ እናም በድጋሚ ልጄ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ በሌላ መልኩ፣ እንደ እኔ ደስታ ሀያልና ጣፋጭ ሊሆን የሚችል ምንም የለም።

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

፳፪ አዎን፣ አባታችን ሌሂ እንደተመለከተው እግዚአብሔር በዙፋኑ ላይ ተቀምጦ፣ ለእምላካቸው በመዘመር እናም በማወደስ ላይ ባሉት ሰፍር ቁጥር በሌላቸው መላዕክት ተከቦ የተመለከትኩ መሰለኝ፤ አዎን እናም ነፍሴ በእጅጉ በዚያ ሰፍራ መሆንን ናፈቀኝ።

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

፳፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እጆቼና እግሮቼ ብርታትን በድጋሚ አገኜ፣ እናም በእግራ ቆምኩና፣ ለህዝቡም ከእግዚአብሔር መወለዴን ገለፅኩ።

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

፳፬ አዎን፣ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ እስከአሁን ድረስ እንኳን፣ ነፍሳትን ወደ ንስሃ አመጣ ዘንድ፣ እኔ ወደ ቀመስኩት ታላቅ ደስታ እነርሱንም እንዲቀምሱ አመጣቸው ዘንድ፣ እነርሱም ከእግዚአብሔር እንዲወለዱ፣ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ይሞሉ ዘንድ ሳላቋርጥ ሠርቻለሁ።

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

፳፭ አዎን፣ እናም አሁን እነሆ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ጌታ በሰራዬ ፍሬም እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ደስታን ይሰጠኛል።

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

፳፮ እኔ እንዳውቀው ባደረገው ቃል የተነሳ፣ እነሆ ብዙዎች ከእግዚአብሔር ተወልደዋልና፣ እኔ የቀመስኩትን ቀምስቀል፤ እናም እኔ የተመለከትኩትን ተመልክተዋል፤ ስለዚህ የተናገርኳቸውን ነገሮች እኔ እንደማውቅ ያውቃሉ፤ እናም ያለኝ እውቀት ከእግዚአብሔር ነው።

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

፳፯ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ፈተናና፣ መከራ፣ አዎን፣ በሁሉም ዓይነት ሰቃይ ተደግፌአለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔር ከወህኒ፣ ከእስራትና፣ ከሞት አድኖኛል፤ አዎን፣ እናም እምነቴን በእርሱ አደርጋለሁ፣ አሁንም እኔን ያድነኛል።

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

፳፰ እናም በክብር ከእርሱ ጋር እንድኖር በመጨረሻው ቀን እንደሚያስነሳኝ አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን አባቶቻችንን ከግብፅ ስላስወጣና፣ ግብፃውያንን በቀይ ባህር እንዲሰምጡ ስላደረገ እርሱን ለዘለዓለም አወድሳለሁ፤ እናም በኃይሉ ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድር መርቷቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም በተለያዩ ጊዜያት ከባርነትና ከምርኮ አስለቅቋቸዋል።

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

፳፱ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ አባቶቻችንን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር አስወጥቷል፤ ደግሞም በዘለዓለማዊው ኃይሉ እነርሱን ከባርነትና ከምርኮ፣ በየጊዜው እስከ አሁን ድረስም እንኳን፣ አስለቅቋል፤ እናም እኔም ሁልጊዜ ምርኮአቸውን አስታውሳለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ አንተም ምርኮአቸውን እኔ እንደአደረግሁት ማስታወስ ይገባህል።

፴ ሃገር ግን እነሆ፣ ልጄ፣ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስከጠበቅህ ድረስ በምድሪቱ እንደምትበለፀግ እኔ እንደማውቀው ማወቅ አለብህ፤ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስካልጠበቅህ ድረስ ከፊቱ እንደምትወገድ ማወቅ አለብህ። እንግዲህ ይህ በእርሱ ቃል መሰረት ነው።

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

አልማ ፴፯

Alma 37

፩ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ ሌሎማን፣ ለእኔ በአደራ የተሰጠኝን መዛግብት እንድትወስድልኝ አዘሃለሁ፤

፪ እናም ደግሞ በኔፊ ስሌዳ ላይ ያለውን የዚህን ህዝብ ታሪክ እኔ እንዲደረግሁት እንድትጠብቅ አዘሀለሁ፤ እናም እኔ የጠበቅኋቸውን እነዚህን ቅዱስ ነገሮች ሁሉ እኔ እንደጠበቅኋቸው አድርግ፤ ምክንያቱም እነዚህ የተጠበቁት ለመልካም ዓላማ ነውና።

፫ እናም እነዚህን ፅሁፎች የያዙት፣ የቅዱሱን መጻሕፍት ታሪክ የያዙትን፣ የጥንት ቅድመ አባቶቻችንን የትውልድ ሀረግ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ የያዙትን፣ እነዚህ የነሐስ ስሌዳዎች—

፬ እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ተጠብቀው ከአንዱ ትውልድ ወደሌላኛው እንዲተላለፉ፣ እናም ለሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋ፣ እና ህዝብ እስኪደርሱ በውስጣቸው ያለውን ሚስጥር እንዲያውቁ በጌታ እጅ መቀመጥ እንዳለባቸው በአባቶቻችን ተተንብዮአል።

፭ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ከተጠበቁ ስራህነታቸውን ይዘው መቀጠል አለባቸው፤ አዎን፣ እናም እነርሱም፣ አዎን፣ ደግሞም ቅዱስ ፅሁፍ የሆኑትን የያዙ ስሌዳዎችም ስራህነታቸውን ይዘው ይቀጥላሉ።

፮ አሁን ይህ በእኔ ውስጥ ያለ ሞኝነት ነው በማለት ትገምት ይሆናል፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ እንዲህ አልሀለሁ፣ በትንሽና በቀላል ነገሮች ታላቅ ነገሮች ተፈፀመዋል፤ እናም ቀላል መንገዶች ብዙውን ጊዜ ጥበቦችን ያሳፍራሉ።

፯ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ታላቁንና ዘለዓለማዊ አላማውን ለማምጣት በእነዚህ መንገዶች ይሰራል፤ እናም በጣም ቀላል በሆነ መንገድ ጌታ ጥበቦችን ያሳፍራልና፣ የብዙ ሰዎችን ነፍስ ወደ ደህንነት ያመጣል።

፰ እናም አሁን፣ እስከአሁን ድረስ እነዚህ ነገሮች እንዲጠበቁ በእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ ሆኖ ቆይቷል፤ እነሆ፣ የዚህን ህዝብ ትዝታ አሰፍተዋል፣ አዎን፣ እናም ብዙ የጎዳናዎቻቸውን ተሳሳቾችን አሳምነዋል፣ እናም ለነፍሳቸው ደህንነትም እግዚአብሔርን እንዲያውቁ አድርጓቸዋል።

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

፱ አዎን፣ እኔ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ በሚገኙት እነዚህ መዝገቦች ውስጥ ከሚይዟቸው በእነዚህ ነገሮች ባይሆን ኖሮ አዎንና ወንድሞቹ ብዙ ሺህ ለማናውያንን የአባቶቻቸው ወግ የተሳሳተ እንደሆነ ሊያሳምኑአቸው አይችሉም ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እነዚህ ታሪኮች እና ቃላቶቻቸው ወደንስሃ አመጡአቸው፤ ይህም ማለት፣ ጌታ እምላካቸውን እንዲያውቁ እናም በአዳኞቻቸው በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ሐሴትን እንዲያደርጉ አደረጉአቸው።

፲ እና፣ በብዙ ሺህ የሚቆጠሩ እነዚህን፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ፣ አሁን በኃጢአትና በክፋት ልባቸውን የሚያጠጥሩትን አንገተ ደንዳና የሆኑ ኔፋውያን ወንድሞቻችንን አዳኙን ወደ ማወቅ እንደሚያመጡ ማን ያውቃል?

፲፩ አሁን እነዚህ ሚስጥሮች ሙሉ በሙሉ ለእኔ አልታወቁኝም፤ ስለዚህ ይበልጥ ከመናገር ልቆጠብ።

፲፪ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ለሚታወቀው ዓላማ፣ ለመልካም ዓላማ ተጠበቁ ብቻ ካልኩኝ ይበቃኛል፤ ምክንያቱም በስራዎቹ ሁሉ በጥበብ ይመክራልና፣ እናም ጎዳናው ቀጥተኛ መንገዱም አንድ ዘላለማዊ ዙሪያ ነው።

፲፫ አስታውሰ ልጄ ሔለማን ሆይ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት እንዴት ጥብቅ እንደሆኑ አስታውሱ። እናም እርሱ እንዲህ ብሏል፡ ትዕዛዛቴን ከጠበቅህ በምድሪቱ ላይ ትበለፀጋለህ—ነገር ግን ትዕዛዛቴን ካልጠበቅህ ከፊቱ ትለያለህ።

፲፬ እናም ልጄ አሁን ጌታ ቅዱስ የሆኑትን፣ ቅዱስ አድርጎ የጠበቃቸውን እናም ደግሞ ለወደፊቱም ትውልድም ኃይሉን ያሳይበት ዘንድ ለመልካም ዓላማው የሚጠብቃቸውን እነዚህን ነገሮች በአደራ እንደሰጠህ አስታውሱ።

፲፭ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ በትንቢት መንፈስ እናገርሃለሁ፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የምትተላለፍ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ቅዱስ የሆኑት ነገሮች በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ይወሰዱብሃል፣ እናም በንፋሱ ፊት እንዳለ ገለባ እንዲያበጥርህ ለሰይጣን ይሰጥሃል።

፲፮ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ከጠበቅህ፣ እናም በእነዚህ ቅዱስ ነገሮች እግዚአብሔር ባዘዘህ መሰረት ከስራህ (በምታደርጋቸው ነገሮች ሁሉ ወደ ጌታ አቤት እንድትል ይገባልና) እነሆ ከአንተ ሊወሰድብህ የሚችል ምንም ኃይል፣ የምድርም ሆነ የሲኦል፣ አይኖርም፣ ምክንያቱም እግዚአብሔር ቃሉን ሁሉ ይፈፀም ዘንድ ኃይል ነውና።

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

፲፯ ለአንተ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን በሙሉ ይፈፀማልና፤ ለአባቶቻችን የገባውን ቃል ኪዳንም ይፈፀማልና።

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

፲፰ ኃይሉን ለሚመጣው ትውልድ ያሳይ ዘንድ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለመልካም ዓላማው እንደሚጠብቃቸው ቃል ኪዳን ገብቶላቸዋልና።

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

፲፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ብዙ ሺህ ላማናውያንን እውነትን እንዲያውቁ በመመለስ እንዲን ዓላማውን ፈፀሟል፤ በእነርሱም ኃይሉን አሳይቷል፤ እናም ለሚመጣው ትውልድም ደግሞ አሁንም በእነርሱ ኃይሉን ያሳያል፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ነገሮች ይጠበቃሉ።

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

፳ ስለዚህ ልጄ ሔለማን ቃሉን በመፈፀም ትጉህ እንድትሆን እናም እንደተፃፉት የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ትጉህ እንድትሆን አዝሃለሁ።

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

፳፩ እናም አሁን፣ ሀያ አራቱን ስሌዳዎች በተመለከተ፣ ሚስጥሮችንና፣ የጨለማው ስራ፣ እናም የእነርሱን ሚስጥራዊ ስራ፣ ወይም የጠፉት ሰዎች የሚሰጥር ስራ ለዚህ ህዝብ ይገለጥ ዘንድ እንድትጠብቃቸው እናገራለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ግድያቸውን ሁሉና፣ ስርቆታቸውንና፣ ዝርፊያቸውንና፣ ክፋታቸውንና፣ እርኩስታቸውን ሁሉ ለዚህ ህዝብ ይገልጡ ዘንድ፣ አዎን፣ እናም እነዚህን መተርጎሚያዎች አስቀምጥ።

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

፳፪ እነሆም፣ ጌታ ይህ ህዝብ በጨለማው መሥራት፣ አዎን፣ ሚስጥራዊ ግድያንና እርኩስትን፣ ሲጀምር ተመለከተ፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ ንስሃ የማይገቡ ከሆነ ከምድር ገፅ ይጠፋሉ።

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

፳፫ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፡ ለእገልጋዬ ጋዜሌም፣ በጨለማ በብርሃን የሚያንፀባርቀውን ድንጋይ አዘጋጅለታለሁ፤ እኔን ላገለገሉኝም እገልፅላቸዋለሁ፣ የወንድሞቻቸውንም ስራ፣ አዎን፣ ሚስጥራዊ ስራቸውን፣ የጨለማ ስራቸውንና ክፋታቸውን፣ እናም እርኩስታቸውን አሳያቸዋለሁ።

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

፳፬ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ እነዚህ ተርጓሚዎች ጌታ እንዲህ በማለት የተናገረውን ቃላት ይፈፀሙ ዘንድ ተዘጋጅተዋል።

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

፳፭ ሚስጥራዊ ስራዎቻቸውን እና እርኩስታቸውን ከጨለማው ወደ ብርሃኑ አመጣዋለሁ፤ እናም ንስሃ ካልገቡ ከምድረ ገፅ አጠፋችዋለሁ፤ እናም ሁሉ ከዚህ በኋላ ምድሪቷን የራሳቸው ለሚያደርጉ ሀገሮች ሁሉ ሚስጥራቸውንና እርኩስታቸውን ወደ ብርሃን አመጣለሁ።

፳፮ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ እነርሱ ንስሃ እንዳልገቡ እናያለን፤ ስለዚህም ጠፍተዋል፤ እናም እስከዚህ ድረስ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ተፈፀሟል፤ አዎን ሚስጥራዊው እርኩስታቸው ከጨለማው ወጥቷል እናም እኛ እንድናውቀው ተደርጓል።

፳፯ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ፣ መሃላዎቻቸውን፣ ቃል ኪዳናቸውንና፣ ሚስጢራዊ የሆነውን የእርኩስታቸውን ስምምነት ሁሉ እንድትጠብቁ አዘሀለሁ፤ አዎን እናም ምልክቶቻቸውንና አስደናቂ ነገሮቻቸውን ሁሉ እንዳያውቁት ከእነዚህ ሰዎችም ትጠብቃለህ፤ አለበለዚያ በጨለማው ውስጥ እነርሱ ይወድቁ ይሆናል፣ እንዲሁም ሊጠፉ ይችላሉና።

፳፰ እነሆ የጨለማ ሠራተኞቹም በክፋት ሙሉ በሙሉ ባደጉ ጊዜ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል መሰረት የጭለማ ስራን በሚሰሩት ላይ ሁሉ ጥፋት እንደሚመጣቸው በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ እርግጥን አለ፤ ስለሆነም እነዚህ ሰዎች እንዳይጠፉ እመኛለሁ።

፳፱ ስለዚህ ከዚህ ህዝብ ይህንን የመሃላቸውንና የቃል ኪዳናቸውን ሚስጥራዊ እቅድ ትጠብቃለህ፣ እናም ክፋታቸውንና፣ ግድያቸውን፣ እንዲሁም እርኩስታቸውን ብቻ ለእነርሱ እንዲታወቁ አድርግ፤ እናም እንደዚህ ዓይነቱን ኃጢአትና፣ እርኩስት፣ እንዲሁም ግድያ እንዲጠሉ አስተምራቸው፤ እናም ደግሞ ይህ ህዝብ በክፋቱና በእርኩስቱ፣ እንዲሁም በመግደሉ ምክንያት እንደጠፉ አስተምራቸው።

፴ እነሆም ስለኃጢአታቸው ለመናገር ከእነርሱ መካከል የመጡትን የጌታን ነቢያት በሙሉ ገደሉአቸው፤ እናም የተገደሉት ደም በገደሉአቸው ላይ ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ለበቀል ጮኹ፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ በጨለማው ስራተኞችና፣ በሚስጥራዊው ስራዎች ላይ እንደዚህ መጣ።

፴፩ አዎን፣ እናም ሁሉም በክፋት ከማደጋቸው በፊት ንስሃ ካልገቡ በስተቀር፣ በጨለማው ስራተኞች፣ እናም በሚስጥራዊው ስራዎች ላይ ለጥፋትም እንኳን ምድሪቱ ለዘለዓለም ረገማት።

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

፲፪ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ የተናገርኩህን ቃላት አስታውሱ፤ ሚስጥራዊ ዕቅድን ለህዝቡ በአደራ ለመሰጠት አትመን፤ ነገር ግን በኃጢያት እና በክፋት ላይ ዘለዓለማዊ ጥላቻን አስተምራቸው።

፲፫ ንስሃን እናም በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እምነትን ስበክላቸው፤ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ እንዲያደርጉና፣ የዋህ፣ እናም በልባቸው ትሁት እንዲሆኑ አስተምራቸው፤ ማንኛውንም የዲያብሎስ ፈተና በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ባላቸው እምነት እንዲቋቋሙ አስተምራቸው።

፲፬ ለመልካም ስራ በጭራሽ እንዳይታክቱ፣ ነገር ግን የዋህ፣ እናም በልባቸው ትሁት እንዲሆኑ አስተምራቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እንደ እነዚህ ያሉት ለነፍሳቸው ዕረፍትን ያገኛሉና።

፲፭ ልጄ ሆይ፣ አስታውሱ፣ እናም በሳልማሳነትህ ዘመን ጥበብን ተማር፤ እዎን፣ በወጣትነትህ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት መጠበቅን ተማር።

፲፮ አዎን፣ እናም ለድጋፍህ ሁሉ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ጩህ፤ አዎን፣ ስራህ ሁሉ ለጌታ ይሁን፣ እናም ወደ የትኛውም ሥፍራ ብትሄድ በጌታ ይሁን፤ አዎን፣ ሀሳብህ ሁሉ በጌታ የተመራ ይሁን፤ አዎን የልብህ ዝንባሌ ለዘለዓለም በጌታ ላይ ይሁን።

፲፯ በስራዎችህ ሁሉ ከጌታ ጋር ተማከር፣ እናም ለእነተ ጥቅም ይመራሃልና፤ አዎን፣ በምሽት በምትተኛበት ጊዜ በእንቅልፍህ ይጠብቅህ ዘንድ በጌታ ተኛ፤ እናም ጠዋት ከመኝታህ በምትነቃበት ጊዜ ልብህ ሁሉ እግዚአብሔርን በማመስገን ይሞላ፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች የምታደርግ ከሆነ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ ትደረጋለህ።

፲፰ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ አባቶቻችን ኳስ ወይንም ጠቋሚ ብለው ስለሚጠሩት፣ ወይም በትርጉም አቅጣጫን የሚጠቁም መሳሪያ የሆነው፣ አባቶቻችን ሊያሆና ብለው የሚጠሩትን በሚመለከት በመጠኑ የምናገረው አለኝ፤ እናም እርሱንም ጌታ አዘጋጅቶታል።

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፣ እንደዚህ አይነት አስደናቂ የእጅ ስራን ሊሰራ የሚችል ማንም ሰው የለም። እናም እነሆ፣ አባቶቻችን በምድረበዳው ውስጥ እንዲጓዙበት አቅጣጫን ለማሳየት ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

፳ እናም ይህም ይሰራ የነበረው በእግዚአብሔር ባላቸው እምነት መሰረት ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ እግዚአብሔር እንደዚህ የሚሄዱበትን አቅጣጫ እንዲያመለክት እንደሚያደርገው ለማመን እምነት በነበራቸው መጠን፣ እነሆ ተከናውኖላቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ ይህ ተአምራት ነበራቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ ከቀን ቀን በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል የነበሩ ሌሎች ታምራቶች ነበሯቸው።

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

፱፭ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እነዚያ ታምራቶች በትንሽ ነገር የተደረጉ ቢሆንም ድንቅ ስራዎችን አሳይተዋቸው ነበር። እነርሱ ስነፍ ነበሩ፣ እናም እምነታቸውንና ትጋታቸውን መለማመድ ረሱ፣ እናም እነዚያ ድንቅ ስራዎች ቆሙና፣ በጉዞአቸውም ወደፊት አልቀጠሉም፤

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

፱፬ ስለዚህ፣ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ቆዩ፣ እንዲሁም ቀጥታውን መንገድ አልተጓዙም፣ እናም በመተላለፋቸው ምክንያት በረሃብና በጥም ተሰቃዩ።

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

፱፫ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ እነዚህ የነገሮች ጥላ የሌላቸው አለመሆናቸውን እንድትገነዘብ እፈልጋለሁ፤ አባቶቻችን ለዚህ አቅጣጫ ጠቋሚ መሳሪያ ትኩረትን ላለመስጠት ስነፍ በሆኑ ጊዜ (አሁን እነዚህ ነገሮች ጊዜያዊ ነበሩ) አልበለጹም፤ መንፈሳዊ ለሆኑትም ነገሮች ቢሆን እንዲሁ ነው።

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

፱፯ እነሆም አባቶቻችንም ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድር በቀጥተኛው መንገድ የሚያመራቸውን ኮምፓስ መከተሉ አይነት ወደ ዘለዓለማዊው ደስታ የሚያመራ ቀጥተኛው መንገድ የሆነውን የክርስቶስን ቃል መቀበልም ነው።

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

፱፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ አላለሁ፣ ለዚህ ነገር ምሳሌ የለምን? በእርግጥ ይህ አመልካች ጎዳናውን ተከትሎ አባቶቻችንን ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድር እንዳመጣ፣ የክርስቶስንም ቃል ከተከተልናቸው ከዚህ ከሀዘን ሸለቆ እጅግ ወደ ተሻለው የቃል ኪዳን ምድር ይወስደናል።

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

፱፱ ልጄ ሆይ፣ መንገዱ ቀላል በመሆኑ ስነፍ አንሁን፤ ለአባቶቻችንም እንዲሁ ነበርና፣ ለእነርሱም የሚመለከቱት ከሆነ በህይወት ይቆዩ ዘንድ ለዚህ ተዘጋጅቶላቸው ነበርና፤ ለእኛም ቢሆን እንዲሁ ነው። መንገዱ ተዘጋጅቷል፣ እናም የምንመለከት ከሆነ ለዘለዓለም እንኖራለን።

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

፳፬ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ እነዚህን ቅዱስ ነገሮች ጠብቅ፤ አዎን፣ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ተመልከትና ኑር። ወደዚህ ህዝብ ሂድና፣ ቃሉን ተናገር፣ እናም ንቃ። ልጄ ደህና ስንብት።

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

አልማ ፴፰

Alma 38

፩ ልጄ፣ ቃሌን አድምጥ፣ ለሌሎችን እንኳን እንደተናገርኩ ለአንተም ተናግራለሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስከጠበቅህ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ትበለፀጋለህ፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እስካልጠበቅህ ድረስ ከፊቱ እንድትለይ ትደረጋለህ።

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

፪ እናም አሁን፣ ልጄ፣ ለእግዚአብሔር ባለህ ፅኑነት፣ እናም ታማኝነት፣ በአንተ ታላቅ ደስታ እንደሚኖረኝ አምናለሁ፤ በአምላክህ በወጣትነትህ ተስፋ መጣልህን በመጀመርህ፣ ትዕዛዛቱን በመጠበቅ እንደምትቀጥል ተስፋ አደርጋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እስከመጨረሻው የፀና የተባረከ ነው።

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

፫ ልጄ፣ እኔ እንዲህ አልሁለሁ፣ በዘራማውያን መካከል በታማኝነትህ፣ እናም በትጋትህና፣ በፅናትህ እንዲሁም በታጋሽነትህ የተነሳ በአንተ ታላቅ ደስታን አግኝቻለሁ።

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

፬ አንተ ታሰረህ እንደነበርህ አውቃለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም አንተ ለቃሉ ስትል በድንጋይ መወገርህን አውቃለሁ፤ ጌታም ካንተ ጋር በመሆኑ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ በትዕግስት ጸንተህል፤ እናም አሁን ጌታ እንዳሰለቀቀህ አንተም ታውቃለህ።

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

፭ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ሺብሎን፣ አምነትህን በእግዚአብሔር ላይ እስካደረግህ ድረስ ከፈተናህና ከችግርህ፣ እናም ከስቃይህ እንደዚሁ እንደምትላቀቅና፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ እንደምትደረግ እንድትሰታውስ አልፈሁም።

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

፮ እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በራሴ እንዳወቅኋቸው እንድትሰብ አልፈልግም፤ ነገር ግን በውስጤ ያለው የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዳውቅ አደረገኝ፤ ምክንያቱም ከእግዚአብሔር ባልወለድ ኖሮ እነዚህን ነገሮች ባላውቅሁ ነበር።

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጌታ በታላቅ ምህረቱ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል የጥፋት ስራን እንዳቆም እንዲነገረኝ መልእኩን ላከ፤ አዎን፣ እናም መልእኩን ፊት ለፊት ተመለከትኩትና፣ ተናገረኝ፣ ድምፁም እንደነገድኋል ነበር፣ እናም ምድሪቷን በሙሉ አንቀጠቀጣት።

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሶስት ቀንና ሌሊት ነፍሴ በመሪር ህመምና ስቃይ ውስጥ ነበረኝ፤ እናም ወደ ጌታ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ለምህረት እስከምጮህ ድረስ ለኃጢአቱ ስርየትን በጭራሽ አላገኘሁም ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወደ እርሱ ጮህኩና፣ ለነፍሴም ሰላምን አገኘሁ።

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

፳፱ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ በክርስቶስ ብቻ ካልሆነ በቀር መዳን የሚቻልበት ሌላ መንገድ አንደሌለ፣ ከእኔ ትማር ዘንድ ጥበብንም እንድትማር ይህን ነግራህለሁ። እነሆ፣ እርሱ የዓለም ህይወትና ብርሃን ነው። እነሆ፣ እርሱ የእውነትና የፅድቅ ቃል ነው።

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

፲ እናም አሁን፣ ቃሉን ማስተማር እንደጀመርህ ደግሞም ማስተማርን እንድትቀጥል እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም በሁሉም ነገር ትጉህና ራስህን የምትቆጣጠር እንድትሆን እፈልጋለሁ።

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

፲፩ አንተ በኩራት እንዳልተሞላህ አረጋግጥ፤ እዎን፣ በራስህ ጥበብም ሆነ በጉልበትህ እንደማትመካ አረጋግጥ።

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

፲፪ ደፋርነትን ተጠቀም፤ ነገር ግን ኃያልነትህን አትጠቀም፤ እናም ደግሞ በፍቅር ትሞላ ዘንድ ስሜትህን በሙሉ ተቆጣጠር፤ ከሰራ ፈትነት ራስህን ቆጥብ።

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

፲፫ እንደ ዘራማውያን አትጸልይ፣ እነርሱ ሰዎች እንዲሰሙአቸው እንደሚጸልዩ እናም ለብልህነታቸው እንዲወደሱ እንደሚፈልጉ አይተሃቸዋልና።

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

፲፬ አምላክ ሆይ እኛ ከወንድሞቻችን የተሻልን ስለሆንን እናመሰግንህለን አትበል፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ ሆይ ለከንቱነቱ ይቅር በለኝ፣ እናም ወንድሞቼንም በምህረትህ አስታውስ በል—እዎን፣ በሁሉም ጊዜ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከንቱነትህን አረጋግጥ።

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

፲፭ እናም ጌታ ነፍሰህን ይባርክና፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን በሰላም እንድትቀመጥ በመንግሥቱ ይቀበልህ። አሁን ልጄ ሂድ፣ እናም ለዚህ ህዝብ ቃሉን አስተምር። ንቃ። ልጄ ደህና ሁን።

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

አልማ ፴፱

Alma 39

፩ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ለወንድምህ ከተናገርኩት የበለጠ ለአንተ በመጠኑ የምናገረው አለኝ፤ እነሆ፣ የወንድምህን ፅንኑት፣ ታማኝነት እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ትጋቱን አልተመለከትህም? እነሆ፣ ለአንተ ሰጥሩ ምሳሌ አልሆነም?

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

፪ አንተ ግን በዘራማውያን ሰዎች መካከል ወንድምህ እንዳደረገው ለቃላቱ ጆሮህን አልሰጠኸኝም። እንግዲህ ይህ እኔ ከአንተ የምቃረንበት ነው፤ አንተም በጉልበትህ እና በጥበብህ እየኮራህ ሄደህ ነበር።

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

፫ እንግዲህ ልጄ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም። ለእኔ የሚያሳዘነኝን አድርገሃል፤ ምክንያቱም አገልግሎቱን ጥለህ ሄደሃል፣ እናም በላማናውያን ምድር ዳርቻም ጋለሞታዋን አሳቤልን ተከትለህ ወደ ሲሮን ምድር ሄደሃል።

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

፬ አዎን፣ እርሷም የብዙዎቹን ልብ ስርቃለች፤ ነገር ግን ልጄ ይህ ለአንተ የምታመካኝበት አይሆንም። በእደራ ለተሰጠህም ለአገልግሎቱ ታማኝ መሆን ነበረብህ።

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

፭ ልጄ እነዚህ ነገሮች በጌታ አመለካከት የረከሱ እንደሆኑ፤ አዎን፣ የንፁሃንን ደም ከማፍሰስ ወይም መንፈስ ቅዱስን ከመካድ በቀር ከሌሎች ኃጢአቶች ሁሉ ይበልጥ አስከፊ መሆናቸውን አታውቅም?

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

፮ እነሆም፣ በአንተ ውስጥ ሰፍራ የነበረውን መንፈስ ቅዱስን የምትክድ ከሆነ፤ እናም እንደካድከው ካወቅህ፤ እነሆ፣ ይህ ይቅር የማይባል ኃጢአት ነው፤ አዎን፣ እናም ማንም ከእግዚአብሔር ብርሃንና እውቀት ተቃራኒ በመሆን የገደለ፤ ለእርሱም ይቅርታን ማግኘት ቀላል አይደለም፤ አዎን ልጄ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ ለእንደዚህ ዓይነቱ ሰው ይህን ይቅርታን ማግኘት ቀላል አይደለም።

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

፯ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ እንደዚህ አይነት በሆኑ ወንጀሎች ጥፋተኛ እንዳልሆንክ ምኞቱ ነበር። ለአንተ መልካም ባይሆን ፍሮ ነፍሰህን ለማስቃየት ስለወንጀልህ በመናገር አልቀጥልም።

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወንጀልህን ከእግዚአብሔር ለመደበቅ አትችልም፤ እናም ንስሃ ካልገባህ በመጨረሻው ቀን በአንተ ላይ ለምስክርነት ይቆማሉ።

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

፱ እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ለኃጢአትህ ንስሃ መግባትና መተው፣ እናም በዓይንህ ምኞት ከእንግዲህ እንዳትጓዝ እፈልጋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ አሰወግድ፤ ይህንን ካላደረግህ በምንም ዓይነት የእግዚአብሔርን መንግሥት ልትወርስ አትችልምና። አቤቱ፣ አስታውሱ፣ እናም በእራሱህ ውሰደው፣ ከእነዚህም ነገሮች ራሱህን አሰወግድ።

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

፲ እናም በድርጊቶችህ ከታላላቅ ወንድሞችህ ጋር እንድትመካከር አዘሃለሁ፤ እነሆም አንተ ወጣት ነህና፣ በወንድሞችህ እንክብካቤን ያስፈልግሃል። እናም ምክራቸውን አድምጥ።

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

፲፩ በከንቱ ወይም በማይረባ ነገር እንድትመራ አታድርግ፤ በኃጢአተኞች ጋለሞታዎች በድጋሚ ዲያብሎስ ልብህን እንዲያስተው አትፍቀድለት። እነሆ ልጄ ሆይ፣ በዘራማውያን ላይ እንዴት ያለ ታላቅ ክፋትን አምጥተሃል፤ የአንተን ፀባይ በተመለከቱ ጊዜም ቃሉን አላመኑትምና።

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

፲፪ እናም አሁን የጌታ መንፈስ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ የብዙ ሰዎችን ልብ ወደጥፋት እንዳይመሩ ልጆችህን መልካም እንዲያደርጉ አዘዛቸው፤ ስለዚህ ልጄ፣ እግዚአብሔርን በመፍራት ከጥፋቶችህ እንድትቆጠብ አዘሃለሁ፤

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

፲፫ በሙሉ አዕምሮህ፣ ኃይልህ፣ እናም ጉልበትህ ወደ ጌታ እንድትመለስ፤ ከእንግዲህ የማንንም ልብ ወደ ክፋት እንዳትመራም፤ ነገር ግን ወደ እነርሱ እንድትመልሳቸው፣ እናም ጥፋትህንና የሰራኸውን ስህተት እንድትቀበል አዘሀለሁ።

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

፲፬ ሀብትን እንዲሁም የዚህን ዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች አትፈልግ፤ እነሆም፣ ከአንተም ጋር ይዘህቸው ለመሄድ አትችልም።

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

፲፭ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ ስለክርስቶስ መምጣት በመጠኑ እነግርሃለሁ። እነሆ፣ እርሱ ነው በእርግጥ የዓለምን ኃጢአት ሊወስድ የሚመጣው፤ አዎን፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ የደህንነትን የምስራች ዜና ለማወጅ ይመጣል።

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

፲፮ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ለዚህ አገልግሎት የተጠራኸው አዕምሮአቸውን ለማዘጋጀት፣ ወይም ደህንነት ይመጣለት ዘንድ፣ በሚመጣበት ጊዜም ቃሉን እንዲሰሙ የልጆቻቸውን አዕምሮ እንዲያዘጋጁ ለህዝቡ የምስራቸውን ዜና እንድትናገር ነበር።

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ በዚህ ጉዳይ ጭንቀትህን አቀልልሃለሁ። እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች አስቀድመው ለምን እንዲታወቁ ተደረጉ ብለህ ትገረማለህ። እነሆ እንዲህ አልሃለህ፤ በዚህን ጊዜ ያለው ነፍስ በክርስቶስ መምጫ ጊዜ እንደሚኖረው ነፍስ ለእግዚአብሔር ውድ የሆነ አይደለምን?

፲፰ የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ለዚህ ህዝብ እናም ለልጆቻቸው እንዲያውቁት መደረጉ አስፈላጊ አይደለምን?

፲፱ ጌታ መላዕክቱን ለልጆቻችን፣ ወይም እርሱ ከመጣበት ጊዜ በኋላ፣ እነዚህን የምስራቾችን ዜና ያውጅ ዘንድ ለመናገር መላኩ፣ ወደ እኛም ለመላክ የሚቀለው አይደለምን?

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

አልማ ፱

፩ እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ለአንተ በተጨማሪ የምለው ነገር ይህ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም እዕምሮህ ስለሙታን ትንሣኤ ተጨንቋልና።

፪ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ ትንሣኤ የለም፣ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር እንዲህ አላለሁ፣ ክርስቶስ ከመምጣቱ በኋላ ድረስ ይህ የሚሞተው ወደማይሞተው፣ ይህ የሚበሰብሰው ወደማይበሰብሰው አይለወጥም።

፫ እነሆ፣ እርሱ የሙታን ትንሣኤ እንዲሆን ያደርጋል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ልጄ፣ ትንሣኤው ገና ነው። እንግዲህ፣ ሚስጥሩን አገልፀልሃለሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እግዚአብሔር እርሱ ካልሆነ በቀር ማንም የማያውቃቸው ብዙ በአምላክ የተደበቁ ሚስጥሮች አሉ። ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔርን አውቀው ዘንድ በትጋት የጠየቅሁትን አንድ ነገር ለአንተ አሳይሃለሁ፤ እርሱም ትንሣኤን በተመለከተ ነው።

፬ እነሆ፣ ሁሉም ከሙታን እንዲነሱበት የተወሰነ ጊዜ አለ። እንግዲህ ይህ የምመጣበትን ጊዜ ማንም አያውቅም፤ ነገር ግን የተወሰነውን ጊዜ እግዚአብሔር ያውቃል።

፭ እንግዲህ የመጀመሪያዎቹም ሆኑ ሁለተኛዎቹ፣ እንዲሁም ሦስተኞቹ ከሞት የሚነሱበት ጊዜ መኖሩ ልዩነት የለውም፣ ምክንያቱም እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ያውቃልና፤ እናም ይህ እንደሚሆን—ሁሉም ከሞት የሚነሱበት የተወሰነ ጊዜ እንዳለ ማወቅ ለእኔ ይበቃኛል።

፮ እንግዲህ በሞት እናም በትንሣኤ መካከል ጊዜ መኖሩ አስፈላጊ ነው።

፯ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ብዬ አጠይቃለሁ፣ የሰው ነፍስ ከሞተበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ለትንሣኤው እስከተወሰነበት ጊዜ ድረስ ምን ይሆናል?

፰ እንግዲህ ሰዎች እንዲነሱ የተወሰነላቸው ጊዜ ከአንድ የበለጠ ቢሆን ምንም ልዩነት አያመጣም፤ ምክንያቱም ሁሉም በአንድ አይሞቱምና፣ እናም ይህም ምንም አይደለም፤ በእግዚአብሔር ዘንድ ሁሉም እንደ አንድ ቀን ነው፤ እናም ጊዜ በሰዎች ብቻ ይለካል።

፱ ስለዚህ፣ ሰዎች ከሞት የሚነሱበት ቀን ተወስኗል፤ እናም በሞትና በትንሣኤ መካከል ጊዜ አለ። እናም እንግዲህ፣ ይህን ጊዜ በተመለከተም፣ የሰዎች ነፍስ ምን ይሆናል ብዬ ጌታን በትጋት የጠየቅሁት ይህን ነገር ነው፤ እናም የማውቀው ነገር ይህን ነው።

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

፲ እናም ሁሉም ከሞት የሚነሱበት ጊዜው ሲደርስ፤ እግዚአብሔር ለሰው ልጆች የተወሰነውን ጊዜ በሙሉ ማወቁንም ያውቃሉ።

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

፲፩ እንግዲህ፣ በሞትና በትንሣኤ መካከል የነፍስ ሁኔታን በተመለከተ—እነሆ፣ የሰዎች መንፈስ ሁሉ ከዚህ ሟች ከሆነው ሰውነታቸው እንደተለየ፣ አዎን፣ የሰዎች መንፈስ ሁሉ፣ መልካምም ይሁኑ መጥፎ፣ ህይወትን ወደ ሰጣቸው ወደ እግዚአብሔር እንደሚወሰድ በመልእኩ አማካኝነት እንዳውቀው ተደረገ።

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የፃድቃዎች መንፈስ፣ ከሁሉም ችግር፣ ውጣ ውረድና ህዘን ወደሚያርፉበት፣ ገነት ተብላ ወደምትጠራው፣ የአረፍት ቦታ፣ የሰላም ቦታ ውስጥ ወደ ደስታ ሁኔታ ይገባሉ።

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኃጢአተኞች መንፈስ፣ አዎን፣ ክፋዎች የሆኑትም—እነሆም፣ የጌታ መንፈስ ፈንታም ሆነ ድርሻ የላቸውም፤ እነሆም፣ ከመልካሙ ስራ ይልቅ መጥፎውን መርጠዋልና፤ ስለዚህ የዲያብሎስ መንፈስ በውስጣቸው ገብቷል፣ ቤታቸውንም የእርሱ አድርጎታል—እናም እነኚህ ወደ ድቅድቅ ጨለማ ይጣላሉ፤ በዚያም ልቅሶና ዋይታ እናም የጥርስ ማፋጨት ይኖራል፣ ይህም በክፋታቸው የተነሳ፣ በዲያብሎስ ፈቃድም በምርኮ ስለተመሩ ይሆናል።

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

፲፬ እንግዲህ ይህ የክፋዎች የነፍሳቸው ሁኔታ ነው፤ አዎን፣ በጨለማ ውስጥ እናም በአራሳቸው ላይ የእግዚአብሔር ሀይለኛ ንዴት ቁጣ በመጠበቅ አስቃቂውና በአስፈሪውም በሆነ በእንደዚህም አይነት ሁኔታ ሲቆዩ፣ ፃድቃዎችም እስከትንሳኤው ድረስ በገነት ይቆያሉ።

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

፲፭ እንግዲህ፣ ከትንሳኤው በፊት እንደዚህ ዓይነቱን የነፍስ ደስታን እና መከራን የመጀመሪያው ትንሳኤ ነው በማለት የሚረዱት ጥቂት ሰዎች አሉ። አዎን፣ በተነገሩት ቃላት መሠረት የነፍስ ወይንም የመንፈስ መነሳትንና በደስታ ወይንም በችግር መሰየም ምናልባት ትንሳኤ ተብሎ ሊጠራ እንደሚችል አቀበለዋለሁ።

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

፲፮ እናም እነሆ፣ በድጋሚ በክርስቶስ ከሙታን መነሳት ድረስ የነበሩት፣ ወይንም ያሉት ወይንም የሚኖሩት ሁሉ ትንሣኤ፣ የፊተኛው ትንሳኤ እንዳለም ተነግሯል።

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

፲፯ አሁን፣ በዚህ ሁኔታ የተነገረው ይህ የመጀመሪያው ትንሳኤ፣ የነፍስ ትንሳኤ እንዲሁም የደስታቸው ወይም የሥቃያቸው ስያሜ ሊሆን እንደሚችል አልገመትንም። ይህ ትርጉሙ ይሆናል ብለህ መገመትም አትችልም።

፲፰ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን ይህ ከአዳም ጀምሮ እስከ ክርስቶስ ትንሣኤ ድረስ ለነበሩት የነፍስ እና የሰጋ ውህደት ማለት ነው።

፲፱ እንግዲህ ቀድሞ የተነገረኩባቸው ኃጥአንም ሆነ የድቃን ነፍሳቸው ከሰጋቸው ጋር በአንድ ጊዜ ይዋሃዳል ብዬ አልናገርም፤ ሁሉም ይነሳሉ ማለቴ ብቻ በቂ ነው፤ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር፣ ትንሣኤአቸው ከክርስቶስ ትንሳኤ በኋላ ከሞቱት በፊት ይሆናል።

፳ እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ፣ ትንሣኤያቸው በክርስቶስ ትንሣኤ ይመጣል አላልኩሁም፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በክርስቶስ ትንሣኤ እንዲሁም ወደ ሰማይ ባረገበት ጊዜ የድቃኖች ነፍስ ከሰጋቸው ጋር መዋሃዱን አስተያየቴን አሰጣለሁ።

፳፩ ነገር ግን በትንሣኤውም ሆነ ከትንሣኤውም በኋላ እንደዚህ አልልም፤ ነገር ግን ይህንን ያህል እናገራለሁ፣ ሙታን እንደሚነሱ፣ ነፍሱም ከሰጋ ዳግም እስከሚገናኝ እንዲሁም በእግዚአብሔር በተወሰነላቸው ቀን እንደሰራቸው በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በመቆም እስከሚፈረድባቸው ድረስ በሞትና በአካል ትንሳኤ መካከል ጊዜ፣ እናም ነፍስ በደስታ ወይም በሰቃይ የሚገኝበት ጊዜ አለ።

፳፪ አዎን፣ ይህም በነቢያት አንደበት የተነገሩትን ነገሮች በሙሉ ዳግም መመለስን ይመጣል።

፳፫ ነፍስ ወደ ሰጋ፣ ሰጋም ወደ ነፍስ በዳግም ይመለሳል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ማንኛውም እጅና እግር እንዲሁም መገጣጠሚያ ወደ ቀድሞ ቦታው ይመለሳል፤ አዎን፣ የራስ ፀጉርም ቢሆን አይጠፋም፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉም ነገር ወደ ተገቢው እናም ትክክለኛ አቋሙ ይመለሳል።

፳፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ፣ ይህ በነቢያት አንደበት የተነገረው ዳግም መመለስ ነው—

፳፭ እና ከእዚያም የድቃኖች በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት ያበራሉ።

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አስቃቂው ሞት በኃጢአተኞች ላይ ይሆናል፤ ፅድቅ ለሆኑት ነገሮች ሞተዋልና፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ንፁህ አይደሉምና፣ እናም ምንም እርኩስ ነገር የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት ሊወርስ አይችልም፤ ነገር ግን መጥፎ የሆኑትን የሰራቸውን ውጤት እንዲካፈሉ ይጣላሉ፣ እናም መራራውን አተላ ይጎነጩሉ።

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

አልማ ፱፭

፩ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ስለተነገሩት ዳግም መመለስ በተመለከተ በመጠኑ የምለው አለኝ፤ እነሆም፣ እንዳንድ ሰዎች የቅዱሳን መፃሕፍትን ትርጉም ያጣምማሉ፣ እናም በዚህ ነገር ምክንያት እጅግ ተሳስተዋል። እናም አዕምሮህ ይህንን ነገር በተመለከተ ደግሞም እንደተጨነቀ አስተውላለሁ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ላንተ እገልፅልሃለሁ።

፪ ልጄ እንዲህ እልሃለሁ፣ የዳግም መመለስ ዕቅድ በእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ መሰረት አስፈላጊ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም ሁሉም ነገሮች ወደ ተገቢው ስርዓት እንዲመለሱ አስፈላጊ ነው። እነሆ፣ በክርስቶስ ኃይል እና ትንሣኤ መሰረት የሰው ነፍስ ወደ ሰውነቱ መመለሱ፣ እናም ማንኛውም የሰውነት ክፍል ወደ ቀድሞው መመለሱ አስፈላጊ ፍትህ ነው።

፫ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ ሰዎች እንደሰራቸው እንዲፈረድባቸው አስፈላጊ ነው፤ እናም በዚህ ህይወት ስራቸው መልካም ከሆነና፣ የልባቸው ፍላጎት መልካም ከሆነ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ደግሞ መልካም ወደሆነው መመለስ አለባቸው።

፬ እናም ስራቸው መጥፎ ከሆነ፣ በእነርሱ ላይ ለመጥፎ ይመለሱባቸዋል። ስለዚህ፣ ሁሉም ነገር ወደ ተገቢው ስርዓት ይመለሳል፣ ማንኛውም ነገር ወደ ተፈጥሮአዊው አቋም ይመለሳል—ሟች የሆነው የማይሞት በመሆን፣ የሚበሰብሰው ወደ ማይበሰብሰው—የእግዚአብሔርን መንግሥት ለመውረስ መጨረሻ ወደሌለው ደስታም ይነሳሉ—አለበለዚያም የዲያብሎስን መንግሥት ለመውረስ መጨረሻ ወደሌለው ሰቃይ ይነሳሉ፣ እንዲ በዚህኛውም፣ ሌላው በሌላኛው—

፭ እንደኛው ደስታን በመፈለግ ለደስታ ይነሳል፣ ወይም ለመልካም ፍላጎቱም መልካም ሆኖ ይነሳል፣ እናም ለመጥፎ ፍላጎቱ ሌላኛው መጥፎ ሆኖ ይነሳል፤ ቀኑን በሙሉ ክፉ ማድረግ በመፈለጉ ጨለማው በሚመጣበት ጊዜ ለክፋቱ ብድራቱን ይቀበላል።

፮ እናም በሌላ መልኩም እንዲሁ ነው። ለኃጢአቱ ንስሃን ከገባ፣ እናም እስከ ዘመኑ ፍፃሜም ድረስ ፅድቅን ከፈለገ እንዲህ በማድረጉ የጽድቅን ዋጋ ይቀበላል።

፯ በጌታ የሚድኑት እነኚህ ናቸውና፤ አዎን፣ እነዚህ መጨረሻ ከሌለው የጨለማው ምሽት የወጡት፣ የተለቀቁት ናቸው፤ እናም እንደዚህም ይጸናሉ ወይም ይወድቃሉ፤ እነሆም፣ መልካምም ይሁን መጥፎ ለማድረግ በራሳቸው ላይ ፈራጅ ይሆናሉ።

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

፳፯ እንግዲህ፣ የእግዚአብሔር አዋጅ የሚለውጡ አይደሉም፤ ስለዚህ፣ በጌታ መንገድ ለሚራመደው መንገዱ ተዘጋጅቷል፣ በዚህ የሚራመድም ይድናል።

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

፳፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ ልጄ፣ ከዚህ ጊዜ በፊት ኃጢአትን በመፈፀም እንዳደረገው፣ በእነዚህ ትምህርቶች በተመለከተ በአምላክህ ላይ እንድም እንኳን በደልን አታድርግ።

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

፲ ስለዳግሞ መመለስ በመነገሩ ከኃጢአት ወደ ደስታ እመለሳለሁ ብለህ አትገምት። እነሆ እንዲህ እልሃለሁ ክፋት በፍፁም ደስታ ሆኖ አያውቅም።

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

፲፩ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ በተፈጥሮአዊው ሁኔታ ያሉ ሰዎች በሙሉ፣ ወይም እኔ እንደምለው በሰጋ ያሉት ሁሉ፣ በመራራ መርዝና፣ በክፋት ስንሠለት ናቸው፤ በዓለም ያለ አምላክ ናቸው፣ እናም ከእግዚአብሔር ባህርይ ጋር ተቃርነዋል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ከደስታ ባህርይ ጋርም ተቃራኒ በሚሆን ሁኔታ ውስጥ ናቸው።

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

፲፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ዳግሞ መመለስ የሚለው ቃል ትርጉሙ ነገር ከተፈጥሮአዊው ሁኔታ ወስዶ እናም ተፈጥሮአዊ ወዳጊሆነ ቦታ ማስቀመጥ፣ ወይም ከተፈጥሮአዊው ተቃራኒ የሆነውን ቦታ ማስቀመጥ ነውን?

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

፲፫ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ሁኔታው ይህ አይደለም፣ ነገር ግን የዳግሞ መመለስ የቃል ትርጉም መጥፎን ለመጥፎ፣ ስጋን ለስጋ ወይም ዲያብሎስን ለዲያብሎስ መልሶ ማምጣት ነው—መልካም ለሆነው መልካምን፣ ፃድቅ ለሆነው ፅድቅን፣ ፍትሃዊ ለሆነው ፍትህን፤ መሃሪ ለሆነው ምህረትን ማምጣት ነው።

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

፲፬ ስለዚህ ልጄ፣ ለወንድምችህ መሃሪ ለመሆንህ እርግጠኛ ሆን፣ ለሰዎች ፍትሃዊ ሆን፣ በትክክል ፍረድ፣ እናም ያለማቋረጥ መልካምን ስራ፤ እናም ይህንን ሁሉ የምታደርግ ከሆነ ደመወዝህን ታገኛለህ፤ እዋን፣ ምህረት በድጋሚ ይመለስልሃል፤ በድጋሚም ፍትህ ይመለስልሃል፣ በድጋሚም ጸድቃዊ ፍርድ ይመለስልሃል፣ እናም በድጋሚ መልካም ደመወዝ ታገኛለህ።

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

፲፭ የምትልከው በድጋሚ ወዳንተው ይመጣል፣ እናም ዳግሞ ይመለሳልና፤ ስለዚህ ዳግሞ መመለስ የሚባለው ቃል ኃጢአተኛውን ሙሉ በሙሉ ይፈርድበታልም፣ በምንም ዓይነት አያፀድቀውም።

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

አልማ ፱፭

፩ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ ኃጢአተኞችን በመቅጣት የእግዚአብሔርን ፍትህ በተመለከተ፣ እንተ መረዳት የማትችለው እዕምርህን የሚረብሽ ከዚህ የበለጠ በመጠኑ እንዳለ አስተውላለሁ፤ ኃጢአተኞች ወደ ሥቃይ መመደባቸው ፍትሃዊ አይደለም በማለት ገምተሃልና።

፪ እንግዲህ እነሆ ልጄ ይህንን ነገር ለእንተ እገልጻለሁ። እነሆም፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር የመጀመሪያ ቤተሰቦቻችንን ከተወሰዱበት ሰፍራ መሬቱን እንዲያርሱ ከዔድን ገነት ካሰወጣቸው በኋላ—አዎን፣ ሰውን አሰወጣ፣ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በዔድን ገነት በሰተምሰራቅ ጫፍ፣ ኪሩቤልን፣ እናም የምትገለገበጥ የነበረባል ስይፍን፣ የህይወት ዛፍን ለመጠበቅ አስቀመጠ—

፫ እንግዲህ፣ ሰው መልካሙንና መጥፎውን በማወቅ እንደ አምላክ መሆኑን እናያለን፤ እናም እጁን በመዘርጋትና፣ ደግሞ ከህይወት ዛፍ በመውሰድ፣ እናም በሙብላት ለዘለዓለም ለመኖር የሚችል እንዳይሆን፣ ፍሬውንም እንዳይካፈል፣ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ኪሩቤልንና ነበልባል ስይፍን አስቀመጠ—

፬ እናም ለሰዎች የንሰሃ ጊዜ እንደተሰጠም እንመለከታለን፤ አዎን፣ የሙከራ ጊዜ፣ የንሰሃ ጊዜና እግዚአብሔርን የሚያገለግሉበት ጊዜ ተሰጥቷል።

፭ እነሆም፣ አዳም እጁን በፍጥነት ቢዘረጋና ከህይወት ዛፍ ቢበላ፣ እርሱም እንደ እግዚአብሔር ቃልም መሠረት ለዘለአለም በኖረ፣ ለንሰሃም ጊዜ ባልኖረው ነበር፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል ባልተፈጸመና ታላቁ የደህንነት ዕቅድም በከሸፈ ነበር።

፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሰዎች እንዲሞቱ ተወስኗል—ሰለዚህ ከህይወት ዛፍ እንደተለዩም ከምድር ገፅም እንዲሁ ይለያሉ—እናም ሰው ለዘለአለም የጠፋ ሆነ፤ አዎን የወደቀ ሆነ።

፯ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እንተም በዚህ የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችን ከጌታ ፊት ለጊዜውም ይሁን በመንፈስ መለየታቸውን ትመለከታለህ፤ እናም በራሳቸው ፈቃድም ስር የነበሩ መሆናቸውንም ተመልክተሃል።

፰ እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ሰው ከዚህ ጊዜያዊ ሞት ደግሞ መዳኑ ትክክለኛ አልነበረም፣ ምክንያቱም ይህ ታላቁን የደስታ ዕቅድ ያጠፋዋልና።

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

፱ ስለዚህ፣ ነፍስ በጭራሽ ልትሞት ስለማትችል፣ እናም የአዳም ውድቀት በሰው ዘር ላይ ሁሉ ከጌታ ፊት እንዲለዩ ጊዜያዊውን ሞት፣ እናም መንፈሳዊውን ሞት በእነርሱ ላይ በማምጣቱ፣ የሰው ዘርም ከዚህ መንፈሳዊ ሞት ደግሞ ማዳኑ አስፈላጊ ነበር።

፲ ስለዚህ፣ እነርሱ በተፈጥሮአቸው ስጋዊ፣ ሰሜታዊ፣ እናም ዲያብሎሳዊ በመሆናቸው፣ ይህ የሙከራ ጊዜ ለእነርሱ የዝግጅት ጊዜ ሆነ፤ እርሱም የመዘጋጃ ወቅት ሆነ።

፲፩ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ ይህ የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ባይሆን ኖሮ፣ (እንዳልሆነ ቢገመት) እንደሞቱ ነፍሳቸው ከጌታ ፊት ስለሞትለይ አስቃቂ ሁኔታ ላይ እንደሞትሆን አስታውሱ።

፲፪ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ሰውም ባለመታዘዙ ምክንያት በራሱ ላይ ካመጣው ከወደቀበት ሁኔታ ደግሞ ለመመለስ ምንም መንገድ አልነበረም፤

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ በፍትህ መሰረት፣ በዚህ በሙከራው ጊዜ፣ አዎን፣ በዝግጅቱ ወቅት፣ ሰዎች ንስሃ ካልገቡ በቀር የቤዛነት ዕቅድ ተግባራዊ ሊሆን አይችልም፤ በዚህ ሁኔታ ካልሆነ በቀር፣ ምህረት የፍትህን ስራ ካላጠፋው በቀር በስራ ላይ ሊውል አይችልም። እናም የፍትህ ስራ ሊጠፋ አይችልም፤ ከጠፋ ግን እግዚአብሔር አምላክ መሆኑን ያቆማል።

፲፬ እናም የሰው ዘር በሙሉ የወደቁ እንደነበሩና፣ በፍትህ እጅ ላይ፣ አዎን እነርሱን ለዘለአለም ከፊቱ ለመለየት በሚመድበው የእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ ላይም እንደነበሩ እንመለከታለን።

፲፭ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የምህረት ዕቅድ የኃጢያት ክፍያው ካልተከፈለ በቀር ሊመጣ አይችልም፤ ስለዚህ፣ የምህረትን ዕቅድ ለመፈፀም፣ የፍትህን ፍላጎት ለማርካት፣ እግዚአብሔርም ደግሞ ፍፁም፣ እውነተኛ አምላክ፣ እናም መሃሪ አምላክ ይሆን ዘንድ፣ እግዚአብሔር እራሱ ለዓለም ኃጢያቶች የኃጢያት ክፍያ ይሆናል።

፲፮ እንግዲህ፣ የተመደበ ቅጣት ከተመደበው የደስታ አላማ ጋር ተቃራኒ የሆነ፣ እንደ ነፍስ ህይወት ዘለአለማዊ የነበረው ቅጣት ከሌለ በስተቀር ለሰዎች ንስሃ ሊመጣ አይችልም፤ የደስታ አላማም እንደ ነፍስ ህይወት ዘለዓለማዊ ነበር።

፲፯ እንግዲህ፣ ሰው ኃጢያትን ካልፈፀመ በቀር እንዴት ንስሃ መግባት ይችላል? ህግ ከሌለስ እንዴት ኃጢያትን ሊያደርግ ይችላል? ህግስ ቅጣት ከሌለ በቀር እንዴት ሊኖር ይችላል?

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

፲፰ እንግዲህ፣ ለሰዎች የህሊና ፀፀትን ለማምጣት የተመደበ ቅጣት፣ እናም ትክክለኛ ህግም ነበር።

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

፲፱ እንግዲህ፣ ህግ ባይሰጥ ኖሮ—ሰው ከገደለ መሞት ነበረበት—ከገደለ መሞትን የሚፈራ ይሆናልን?

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

፳ እናም ደግሞ፣ ኃጢአትን የሚቃረን ህግም ባይሰጥ ኖሮ ሰዎች ኃጢአትን ለመፈፀም አይፈሩም ነበር።

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

፳፩ እናም ህግ ካልተሰጠ፣ ሰዎች ኃጢአትን ቢፈፀሙ፣ ፍትህ ወይም ምህረት ምን ማድረግ ይችሉበታል፣ በፍጥረት ላይ ምንም ጥያቄ አይኖራቸውምን?

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

፳፪ ነገር ግን ህጉ ተሰጥቷል፣ ቅጣቱም ተመድቧል፣ እናም ንስህ ተፈቅዷል፤ ይህን ንስህ መግባትን ምህረትን ትቀበላለች፤ አለበለዚያም ፍትህ ፍጡራንን ተጠያቂ ያደርጋልና ህግን ያስፈፀማል፣ እናም ህጉ ቅጣትን ያከናውናል፤ ባይሆን ኖሮ ግን የፍትህ ስራ ይጠፋ ነበር፣ እግዚአብሔርም አምላክ መሆኑን ባቆመ ነበር።

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

፳፫ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር አምላክ መሆኑን አያቆምም፣ እናም ምህረት ንስህ በሚገቡት ላይ ይሆናል፣ ምህረትም በኃጢአት ክፍያው አማካኝነት ይመጣል፤ የኃጢአት ክፍያም የሙታን ትንሳኤን ያመጣል፤ እናም የሙታን ትንሳኤ ሰዎችን ወደ እግዚአብሔር ፊት መልሶ ያመጣል፤ እንደዚህ በፍትህና በህግ መሰረት በሰራቸው ሊፈረድባቸው ዘንድ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ደግመው ይመለሳሉ።

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

፳፬ እነሆም፣ ፍትህ የግድ ጥያቄውን ሁሉ ይጠቀማል፣ እናም ደግሞ ምህረት የራሷ የሆነውን በሙሉ የአራሷ ታደርጋለች፤ እናም በእውነት ንስህ ከገባው በቀር ማንም አይድንም።

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

፳፭ ምህረት ፍትህን ይነጥቃል ብለህ ትገምታለህ? እኔ ግን አላለሁ፣ ቅንጣትም እንኳን ያህል ቢሆን አይሆንም። እንዲህ ከሆነ፣ እግዚአብሔር አምላክነቱን ያቆማል።

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

፳፮ እናም እግዚአብሔር ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ያዘጋጀውን ታላቁንና ዘለአለማዊ ዓላማውን እንዲሆን እንደዚህም አድርጓል። በዚህ አይነት የሰዎች ቤዛነትና መዳን፣ እናም ደግሞ መጥፊያቸውና መከራቸው እንደዚህም መጣ።

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

፳፯ ስለዚህ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ማንም የሚመጣ ቢሆን ይምጣና ከህይወት ውኃ በነፃ ይካፈል፤ እና የማይመጣውም ግን እንዲመጣ አይገደድም፤ ነገር ግን በመጨረሻው ቀን እንደሰራው በእራሱ ላይ በድጋሚ ይመለሳል።

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

፳፰ መጥፎ ማድረግን ከፈለገ፣ እናም በጊዜው ንስህ ካልገባ፣ እነሆ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ደግሞ መመለስ መሰረት መጥፎው ነገር በእርሱ ላይ ይደረግበታል።

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

፳፱ እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ከእንግዲህ እንዲያሰቸግሩህ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም ኃጢአትህ ብቻ በዚያ ወደ ንሰሃ በሚያመጣህ ጭንቀት ያሰጩንቅህ።

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

፴ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ከእንግዲህ ወዲያ የእግዚአብሔርን ፍትህ እንድትክድ አልፈልግም። ለራሰህም የእግዚአብሔርን ፍትህ በመካድ ለእያንዳንዱ ጥልቅ ነገር በኃጢአትህ ምክንያት ለመሰጠት አትጣር፤ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ፣ እንዲሁም ምህረቱ፣ እናም ፅናቱ በልብህ በሙላት ተፅዕኖ እንዲያደርግ ፍቀድ፤ እናም ይህ በትህትና ወደ ምድር ያምጣህ።

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

፴፩ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ ሆይ፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ ቃሉን ለመሰበክ በእግዚአብሔር ተጠርተሃል። እናም አሁን ልጄ፣ መንገድህን ተጓዝ፣ ታላቁ የምህረት ዕቅድም በእነርሱ ላይ ባለቤትነት እንዲኖረው ነፍሳትን ለንሰሃ ታመጣ ዘንድ፣ ቃሉን በእውነትና በጥሞና አውጅ። እናም እግዚአብሔር እንደቃሌ ይሰጥህም ዘንድ ይሁን። አሜን።

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

አልማ ፱፻

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የአልማ ልጆች ቃሉን ለማወጅ በህዝቡ መካከል ሄዱ። እናም አልማ፣ እራሱ ደግሞ ማረፍ አልቻለምና፣ ደግሞ ወደፊት ተጓዘ።

፪ አሁን በትንቢቱ መንፈስና ራዕይ አማካኝነት ቃሉንና እውነትን ከመስበካቸው ውጪ ስለሰብከታቸው ከዚህ የበለጠ ምንም የምንለው አይኖርም፤ እናም በተጠሩበት በቅዱሱ የእግዚአብሔር ሥርዓት መሠረት ስበኩ።

፫ እናም አሁን በመሳፍንቱ አገዛዝ በአስራ ስምንተኛው የንግስ ዘመን በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል ስለነበረው የጦርነት ታሪክ እመለሳለሁ።

፬ እነሆም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ዘራማውያን ላማናውያን ሆኑ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በአስራ ስምንተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ላይ የኔፋውያን ሕዝቦች ላማናውያን በአነርሱ ላይ ሲመጡ ተመለከቱ፤ ስለዚህ ለጦርነት ተዘጋጁ፤ አዎን፣ ወታደሮቻቸውንም በኢየርሾን ምድር በአንድ ላይ ስበሱ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ከሺህ ወታደሮቻቸው ጋር መጡ፤ እናም የዘራማውያን ምድር ወደሆነችው ወደ አንቲዮኑም ምድር መጡ፤ እናም ዜራሔምና ተብሎ የሚጠራው ሰውም መሪያቸው ነበር።

፮ እናም አሁን፣ አማሌቂውያን ከላማናውያን የበለጡ ኃጢአተኞችና የገዳይ ፀባይ ያላቸው በመሆናቸው፣ ስለዚህ፣ ዛራሄምናህ በላማናውያን ላይ ዋና ሻምበልን ሾመ፣ እናም ሻምበሎቹ በሙሉ አማሌቂውያንና ዘራማውያን ነበሩ።

፯ አሁን እርሱ ይህንን ያደረገው በኔፋውያን ላይ ያላቸውን ጥላቻ ይጠብቁት ዘንድ፣ እነርሱም የእርሱን ዕቅድ ይፈፀሙ ዘንድ በቁጥጥሩ ስራ ያደርጋቸው ዘንድ ነው።

፰ እነሆም፣ የእርሱ ዓላማ ላማናውያን በኔፋውያን ላይ በቁጣ እንዲነሳሱ ነበር፤ ይህንም ያደረገው በእነርሱም ላይ ታላቅ ኃይልን በግድ ይወስድ ዘንድ፣ እናም ደግሞ ኔፋውያንን በምርኮ ስር በማምጣት በእነርሱ ላይ ኃይል ያገኝ ዘንድ ነው።

፱ እናም አሁን የኔፋውያን ዓላማ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ይጠብቋቸው ዘንድ ምድራቸውንና ቤታቸውን፣ እንዲሁም ሚስቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን ለመደገፍ ነበር፣ እናም ደግሞ እግዚአብሔርን እንደ ፍላጎቶቻቸው ያመልኩ ዘንድ፣ ልዩ መብቶቻቸውንና ጥቅሞቻቸውን፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ነፃነታቸውን ይጠብቁ ዘንድ ነበር።

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

፲ ሰላማናውያን እጅ ቢወድቁ፣ ላማናውያን እውነተኛና ህያው የሆነውን አምላክ እግዚአብሔርን በእውነትና በመንፈስ የሚያመልከው ማንኛውም እንደሚያጠፋ ያውቃሉ።

፲፩ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የአዎን ህዝብ ተብለው በሚጠሩት ወንድሞቻቸው በአንቲ-ኔሬ-ሌሂዎችን ህዝብ ላይ ላማናውያን የከፋ ጥላቻ እንዳላቸው ያውቃሉ— እናም እነርሱ የጦር መሳሪያን አያነሱም፣ አዎን፣ ቃል ኪዳንን ገብተዋል እና ይህንንም አያፈርሱም—ሰለዚህ፣ እነርሱ በላማናውያን እጅ ከወደቁ ይጠፋሉ።

፲፪ እናም ኔፋውያን እነርሱ እንዲጠፉ አልፈለጉም፤ ሰለዚህ የውርስ ምድርንም ሰጡአቸው።

፲፫ እናም የአዎን ህዝብ ለኔሬ ህዝብ ወታደሮቻቸውን ለመርዳት ካሉአቸው ነገር አብዛኛውን ሰጡአቸው፤ እናም ኔፋውያን ብቻ የላማንና ልሙኤል ዝርያ ቅንጅት የሆኑትን ላማናውያንና፣ የእስማኤል ልጆች የሆኑትን፣ እንዲሁም አማሌቂውያንና ዘራማውያን ከነበሩትና፣ አም ከኔፋውያን የተገነጠሉት በሙሉ፣ እናም ከኖህ ካህናት ዝርያ የሆኑትን እንዲቋቋሙ ተገደዱ።

፲፬ እንግዲህ የእነርሱ ዝርያዎችም ቁጥራቸው እንደኔፋውያን የበዛ ነበር፤ እናም ኔፋውያን ደም እስከማፍሰስ ድረስ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር እንዲጣሉ እንዲህ ይገደዱ ነበር።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በአንቲዮኑም ምድር በአንድ ላይ እንደተሰበሰቡ፣ እነሆ፣ የኔፋውያን ሠራዊትም በኢየርሾን ምድር እነርሱን ለመገናኘት ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

፲፮ እንግዲህ፣ የኔፋውያን መሪ፣ ወይንም በኔፋውያን ላይ ዋና ሻምበል በመሆን የተሾመው—ዋናው አዛዥ የኔፋውያንን ሠራዊት በሙሉ የሚያዛቸው—እናም ስሙ ሞሮኒ ነበር፤

፲፯ እናም ሞሮኒ በኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ላይ ሙሉ በሙሉ አዛዥና የጦርነቱ አመራር ሰጪ ሆነ። እናም እርሱ በኔሬ ወታደሮች ላይ ዋና ሻምበል ሆኖ በተሾመበት ጊዜ ህያ አምስት ዓመቱ ነበር።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኢየርሾን ዳርቻ ከላማናውያን ጋር ተገናኘ፤ እናም ህዝቡ በጎራዴና፣ በሻሙላና በሁሉም ዓይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች ታጠቁ።

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

፲፱ እናም የላማናውያን ወታደሮች የኔፊን ህዝብ ወይንም፣ ሞሮኒ ህዝቡን በደረት ኪሱና በእጅ የሚያዝ ጋሻ እንዳዘጋጁቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እራሳቸውን ለመከላከል ጋሻና ደግሞ ወፍራም ልብስ ለብሰው ነበር—

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

፳ እንግዲህ የዜራሔምና ሠራዊት በእንደዚህ ዓይነት ነገር አልተዘጋጁም ነበር፤ እነርሱ ጎራዴ እናም ሻምላቸው፣ ቀስትና ወሰፊንጥሮቻቸውና፣ ድንጋይና ወንጭፎቻቸው ብቻ ነበሩባቸው፤ በወገባቸው ላይ ከታጠቁት ቆዳ በስተቀር እርቃናቸውን ነበሩ፤ አዎን ከዘራማውያንና ከአማሌቂውያን በስተቀር ሁሉም እርቃናቸውን ነበሩ፤

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

፳፩ ነገር ግን በደረት ኪሱም ሆነ በጋሻ አልታጠቁም ነበር— ስለዚህ፣ ምንም እንኳን ብዛታቸው ከኔፋውያን የበለጠ ቢሆንም ኔፋውያን ባሉአቸው የጦር መሳሪያዎች የተነሳ እጅግ ፈርተዋቸው ነበር።

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

፳፪ እነሆ፣ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በኢየርሾን ዳርቻ በኔፋውያን ላይ ለመዋጋት አልደፈሩም፤ ስለዚህ ከእንቲዮኑም ምድር ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ፣ እናም ወደ ማንቲ ምድር ይመጡና ምድሪቱንም ይወስዱ ዘንድ በሲዶም ወንዝ በኩል በምድረበዳው ጉዞአቸውን አደረጉ፤ ምክንያቱም የሞሮኒ ወታደሮች ወዳት እንደሚሄዱ ያውቃሉ ብለው አልገመቱም ነበር።

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

፳፫ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው ወዲያው እንደሄዱ ሞሮኒ የጦር ሰፈራቸውን እንዲመለከቱ በምድረበዳው ሰላዮችን ላከ፤ እናም ሞሮኒ ደግሞ የአልማን ትንቢት በማወቁ፣ የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች እራሳቸውን ከላማናውያን ለመከላከል ወዳት መሄድ እንዳለባቸው ጌታን ለመጠየቅ በመፈለጉ ወደ አልማ ሰዎችን ላከ።

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ ቃል ወደ አልማ መጣና፣ ደካማ በሆነው ክፍል ህዝብን ለማጥቃት ይጀምሩ ዘንድ የላማናውያን ሠራዊት ወደ ማንቲ ምድር ለመምጣት በምድረበዳው በኩል እየተመሙ እንዳለ ለሞሮኒ መልዕክተኞች አልማ አስታወቀ። እናም መልዕክተኞቹ ሄዱና፣ መልዕክቱን ለሞሮኒ ተናገሩ።

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

፳፭ እንግዲህ ሞሮኒ፣ በማንኛውም መንገድ ላማናውያን መጥተው ከተማውን እንዲይወስዱ ዘንድ፣ ከወታደሮቹ የተወሰኑትን በኢየርሾን ሞድር በመተው የቀሩትን ወታደሮቹን ወስደ እናም ወደ ማንቲ ሞድር ሄደ።

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

፳፮ እናም ሞሮኒ በዚያ ስፍራ ያሉት ሰዎች በሙሉ ሞድራቸውንና ሀገራቸውን፣ መብታቸውን፣ እና ነፃነታቸውን ለመጠበቅ ከላማናውያን ጋር እንዲዋጉ በእንድ ላይ እንዲሰባሰቡ አደረገ፤ ስለዚህ ላማናውያን ለሚመጡበት ጊዜም ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ በሞድረበዳው በሲዳም ወንዝ በስተምዕራብ በኩል በነበረው በሲዳም ወንዝ ዳርቻ አጠገብ ባለው ሸለቆ ወታደሮቹ እንዲደበቁ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

፳፰ እናም ሞሮኒ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች የሚመጡበትን ጊዜ ያውቅ ዘንድ በዙሪያው ሰላዮችን አስቀመጠ።

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

፳፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ሞሮኒ የላማናውያንን ፍላጎት ስለሚያውቅ፣ ስለዚህ በሞድሪቱም ላይ ለራሳቸው መንግስትን ያቋቁሙ ዘንድ ወንድሞቻቸውን ማጥፋት እናም በባርነት ስር ማድረግ ፍላጎታቸው ነበር፤

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

፴ እናም ደግሞ ሞድራቸው፣ ነፃነታቸውን እና ቤተክርስቲያናቸውን መጠበቅ የኔፋውያን ፍላጎት ብቻ መሆኑን በማወቅ፣ ስለዚህ በስልት እነርሱን መከላከል ኃጢአት አይደለም በማለት አስበ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በሰላዮቹ አማካኝነት ላማናውያን የትኛውን መንገድ እንደሚወስዱ አወቀ።

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

፴፩ ስለዚህ፣ ሞሮኒ ወታደሮቹን ከፈለ፣ እናም ግማሹን ወደ ሸለቆው ወሰደና፣ በስተምዕራቅ፣ እናም በሪፕላ ኮረብታ በስተደቡብ ሸሽጋቸው፤

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

፴፪ እናም የቀሩትን በሲዳም ወንዝ በስተምዕራብ በኩል፣ እናም በማንቲ ሞድር በታችኛው ዳርቻ በኩል ደበቃቸው።

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

፴፫ እናም እንደፍላጎቱ ወታደሮቹን ካስቀመጠ በኋላ፣ ላማናውያንን ለመገናኘት ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ግማሾቹ የሞሮኒ ወታደሮች በተደበቁበት ስፍራ በኮረብታው በስተሰሜን በኩል መጡ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

፳፭ እናም ላማናውያን ሪፕላ ኮረብታን ሲያልፉና፣ ወደ ሸለቆው ሲመጡ፣ እናም የሲዶምን ወንዝ መሻገር እንደጀመሩ፣ ሌሂ በተባለው ሰው የተመሩት በስተደቡብ በኮረብታው የተሸሸጉት ወታደሮች ወደፊት መጓዝ ጀመሩ፤ እናም በስተምስራቅ ላማናውያንን ከበስተኋላቸው እንዲከቡአቸው አደረገ።

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ኔፋውያን ከበስተኋላቸው እንደመጡባቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ወደ እነርሱ ተመለሱ፣ እናም ከሌሂ ሠራዊት ጋር መዋጋት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

፳፯ እናም ሞትም በሁለቱም ወገን ተጀመረ፣ ነገር ግን በላማናውያን በኩል ይበልጡን አስቃቂ ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም እርቃናቸው በእያንዳንዱ ምት የሞት ሰራን በሚያመጡት በኔፋውያን ጎራዴ እናም ሻሙላ ከባድ ምት ተጋልጦ ነበር።

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

፳፰ በሌላ መልኩ፣ ኔፋውያን በደረት ኪሳቸው፣ እናም በእጅ በሚያዙት ጋሻዎቻቸው፣ እናም በራስ ቆባቸው የሰውነታቸውን አስፈላጊ ቦታዎች በመከላከላቸው ወይም ከላማናውያን ምት የሰውነታቸውን አስፈላጊ ቦታዎች በመከላከላቸው፣ እንደንደ ከኔፋውያን መካከል በላማናውያን ጎራዴዎችና ደም በመፍሰስ ምክንያት የሚወድቁ ነበሩ።

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ላማናውያን በመካከላቸው በነበረው ታላቅ ጥፋት የተነሳ ወደ ሲዶም ወንዝ እስከሚሸሹም ድረስ ፈሩ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

፷ እና እነርሱም በሌሂና በሰዎች እየተሳደዱ ነበር፤ በሌሂም አማካኝነት ወደ ሲዶም ውኃ ተገፋና፣ የሲዶምን ውኃ ተሻገሩ። እናም ሌሂ እነርሱ የሲዶምን ወንዝ እንዳይሻገሩ ወታደሮቹን በወንዙ ዳርቻ እንዲቆዩ አደረገ።

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

፷፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሲዶም ወንዝ በሌላኛው በኩል ሞርኒና ወታደሮቹ ላማናውያኖችን አገኙአቸው፣ እናም እነርሱን ማጥቃትና መግደል ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

፷፪ እናም ላማናውያን ከሞርኒ ሠራዊት ፊት ወደማንቲ በድጋሚ ሸሹ፤ እናም በድጋሚ ከሞርኒ ወታደሮች ጋር ተገናኙ።

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

፷፫ እንግዲህ በዚህ ሁኔታ ላማናውያን በኃይል ተዋጉ፤ አዎን ላማናውያን ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮም እንኳን ቢሆን በታላቅ ብርታትና ድፍረት እንደዚህ ሲዋጉ በጭራሽ አይታወቅም ነበር።

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

፵፬ እናም ላማናውያን በዋና ሻምበሎቻቸውና መሪዎቻቸው በነበሩት በዘራማውያን እና አማሌቂውያን፣ እንዲሁም ዋና ሻለቃቸው በነበረውና፣ ዋና መሪና አዛዥቸው በሆነው ዛራሄምናህ ተቀሰቅሰው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እንደዘንዶ ተዋጉ፣ ብዙ ኔፋውያንም በእጃቸው ተገደሉ፤ አዎን፣ የራስ ቆባቸውን መትተው ሁለት ቦታ ከፈሉባቸው፣ እናም የደረት ኪሶቻቸውን በሱባቸው፣ ብዙዎችን እጆቻቸውንም ቆረጡባቸው፤ እናም ላማናውያኑ በኃያሉ ቁጣቸው እንደዚህ መቼአቸው።

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

፵፭ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ኔፋውያን የተነሳሱት በተሻለ ምክንያት ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የሚዋጉት ለንግሥናም ሆነ ለሰልጣን ሳይሆን፣ ለሀገራቸውና ለነፃነታቸው፣ ለሚስቶቻቸውና ለልጆቻቸው እናም ላሉዋቸው ነገሮች ሁሉ፣ አዎን ለሚያመልኩበት ስርዓትና ለቤተክርስቲያናቸው ነበር።

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

፵፮ እናም ኔፋውያን ለአምላካቸው ይገባዋል ብለው የሚሰማቸውን ስራ ነበር የሰሩት፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ለእነርሱ እናም ደግሞ ለአባቶቻቸው እንዲህ ብሎአቸው ነበርና፣ ለመጀመሪያውም ሆነ ለሁለተኛው ጥፋት ተጠያቂዎች እስካልሆናችሁ ድረስ በጠላቶቻችሁ እጅ እንድትገደሉ አትፍቀዱ።

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

፵፯ እናም በድጋሚ ጌታ እንዲህ አለ፣ ቤተሰቦቻችሁን እስከደም ጠብታ መከላከል ትችላላችሁ። ስለዚህ ኔፋውያን እራሳቸውን፣ ቤተሰቦቻቸውንና ምድራቸውን፣ እናም ሀገራቸውንና፣ መብታቸውንና ኃይማኖታቸውን ለመጠበቅ ከላማናውያን ጋር ተዋጉ።

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

፵፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሞሮኒ ሰዎች የላማናውያንን ኃያልነትና ቁጣ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ በመፍራትና በመሸማቀቅ በፊታቸው ለመሸሽ ሊጀመሩ ነበር። እናም ሞሮኒ የእነርሱን ፍላጎት ተረዳና ቃሉን ወደ እነርሱ ላከና፣ በእንደዚህ ዓይነቱ ሀሳብ ልባቸውን፣ አዎን፣ የምድራቸውን፣ የነፃነታቸውን፣ አዎን፣ ከባርነት ነፃ የመውጣታቸውን ሀሳብንም ቀሰቀሰ።

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

፵፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንን ተመልሰው አጠቁና፣ ወደ ጌታ ወደ አምላካቸው ለነፃነታቸውና ከባርነት እንዲለቁ በእንደ ድምፅ ጮሁ።

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

፶ እናም ላማናውያንን በኃይል መቋቋማቸውን ጀመሩ፤ እናም በዚህ ሰዓት ለነፃነታቸው ወደ ጌታ ጮሁ፣ ላማናውያንም ከፊታቸው መሸሽ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ወደ ሲዶም ውኃም ሸሹ።

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

፶፩ እንግዲህ፣ ላማናውያን በቁጥር ብዙ ነበሩ፤ እዎን፣ ከኔፋውያን በቁጥር እጥፍ ያህል ነበሩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በሲዶም ወንዝ ዳርቻ በሸለቆው በአንድነት እስኪሰባሰቡ ተሰደዱ።

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

፶፪ ስለዚህ የሞርኒ ወታደሮች ላማናውያንን ከሞላ ጎደል ከበቡአቸው፤ እዎን፣ በወንዙ በሁለቱም በኩል፣ እነሆ፣ በሰተምሰራቅም የሌሂ ሰዎች ነበሩና።

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

፶፫ ስለዚህ ዜራሔምና የሌሂን ሰዎች በሲዶም ወንዝ በሰተምሰራቅ፣ እናም የሞርኒን ወታደሮች በሲዶም ወንዝ በሰተምሰራብ፣ በኔፋውያን መከበባቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በፍርሃት ተውጠው ነበር።

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

፶፬ እንግዲህ፣ ሞርኒ ፍርሃታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ የደም መፍሰሱ እንዲቆም ህዝቡን አዘዘ።

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

አልማ ፱፬

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም አቆሙና እርምጃቸውን ፈቀቅ አሉላቸው። እናም ሞርኒ ለዛራሄምናህ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነሆ ዛራሄምናህ፡ እኛ የደም ሰዎች መሆን እንፈልግም። እናንተ በእኛ እጅ ውስጥ መሆናችሁን ታውቃላችሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ልንገድላችሁ እንፈልግም።

፪ እነሆ፡ ለሰልጣን ሰንል ደማችሁን እናፈስው ዘንድ ከእናንተ ጋር ለመዋጋት አልመጣንም፤ ወይም ማናችሁንም በባርነት ቀንበር ስር እንድናመጣችሁ እንፈልግም። ነገር ግን ይህ እናንተ በእኛ ላይ የመጣችሁበት ዋናው ምክንያት ነው፤ አዎን፤ እናም በኃይማኖታችን የተነሳም በእኛ ላይ ተቆጥታችኋል።

፫ ነገር ግን አሁን፤ ጌታ ከእኛ ጋር መሆኑን ተመልክታችኋል፤ እናም እናንተንም በእኛ እጅ ስር እንድትሆኑ ማድረጉን ተመልክታችኋል። እናም አሁን ይህ በኃይማኖታችንና በክርስቶስ ባለን እምነት መሆኑን እንድትገነዘቡ አልገልጋለሁ። እናም አሁን ይህንን እምነታችንን ማጥፋት እንደማትችሉ ትመለከታላችሁ።

፬ እንግዲህ ይህ እውነተኛ የሆነው የእግዚአብሔር እምነት መሆኑን ትመለከታላችሁ፤ አዎን በእግዚአብሔር በእርሱ፤ እናም በእምነታችንና፤ በኃይማኖታችን ታማኝ ሆነን እስከቆየን እንደሚረዳንና እንደሚጠብቀን እንዲሁም እንደሚያድነን ታያላችሁ፤ በመተላለፍ ካልወደቅን እናም እምነታችንን ካልካድን በቀር ጌታ እንድንጠፋ አይፈቅድም።

፭ እናም እንግዲህ፤ ዛራሄምናህ፤ በእምነታችን፤ በኃይማኖታችንና በእምልኮአችን ስርዓት፤ እናም በቤተክርስቲያናችንና ለሚሰቶቻችን፤ ለልጆቻችንም በምናደርገው ቅዱስ ድጋፍ፤ ለምድራችንና ለሀገራችን ባለን የህልውና ነፃነት፤ በእናንተ ላይ ኃይል እንድናገኝ ክንዳችንን ባበረታው አዎን፤ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔርን ቅዱስ ቃል በመጠበቅ ደስታችንን ሁሉ በምናገኝበት፤ እናም ከሁሉም በላይ በእኛ ዘንድ ይበልጥ በተወደደው በኃይሉ አምላክ ስም አዝሃለሁ—

፮ አዎን እናም ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ ለህይወት ባላችሁ ፍላጎቶች ሁሉ እንዲህ ስል አዛችኋለሁ፤ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን ሁሉ ለእኛ አስረክቡን፤ እናም እኛ የእናንተን ደም እንፈልግም፤ ነገር ግን ተመልሳችሁ ከሄዳችሁ ለጦርነት በእኛ ላይ ዳግም ካልመጣችሁ ህይወታችሁን እናተርፍላችኋለን።

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

፯ እናም አሁን፣ ይህንን ካላደረጋችሁ፣ እነሆ በእጃችን ናችሁ፣ እናም ህዝቡን እናንተን እንዲያጠቁና፣ ከምድረ ገፅ እስከምትጠፉ በሰውነታችሁ በሞት ቁሰል እንዲያቁሰሏችሁ አዛለሁ፤ ከዚያም በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ማን ኃይል እንደሚኖረው እንመለከታለን፤ አዎን፣ ወደባርነት የሚመጣው ማን እንደሆነም እንመለከታለን።

፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ዛራሄምናህ ይህንን አነጋገር በሰማ ጊዜ መጣና፣ ጎራዴውንም፣ ሻምላውንም፣ እና ቀሰቱን፣ ለሞሮኒ በእጁ ሰጠውና፣ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችን እነሆ፣ መሳሪያዎቹን በሙሉ እንሰጣችኋለን፣ ነገር ግን እኛም ሆንን ልጆቻችን ልናፈረሰው እንደምንችል ስለምናውቅ መሃላ ልንወሰድ እንፈቅድም፤ ነገር ግን የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችንን ውሰዱ፣ እናም ወደ ምድረበዳው እንድንሄድ ዘንድ ፍቀዱልን፤ አለበለዚያ ግን ጎራዴዎቻችንን መልሰን እንይዛለንና እንጠፋለን ወይንም እናሸንፋለን።

፱ እነሆ፣ የእኛ የእናንተ እምነት አባል አይደለንም፤ እግዚአብሔርም በእናንተ እጅ እንድንወድቅ እንዳደረገን እናምንም፤ ነገር ግን ብልጠታችሁ ከጎራዴያችን እንደጠበቃችሁ እናምናለን። እነሆ፣ የደረት ኪሶቻችሁ እና ጋሻዎቻችሁ ጠብቀዎችኋል።

፲ እናም አሁን ዛራሄምናህ ንግግሩን እንደጨረሰ፣ ሞሮኒ የተቀበለውን ጎራዴና የጦር መሳሪያዎች ወደ ዛራሄምናህ በመመለስ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረ፣ እነሆ፣ ጦርነቱን እንፈፀማለን።

፲፩ እንግዲህ የተናገርኳቸውን ቃላት መልሼ ልወሰድ አልችልም፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ ለጦርነት በድጋሚ እንዳትመለሱ በመሃላው ካልሄዱችሁ በቀር አትሄዱም። እናም በእጃችን ስለሆናችሁ ደማችሁን በመሬት ላይ እናፈሰዋለን፣ ወይንም ያቀረብኳቸውን ሀሳቦች ትቀበላላችሁ።

፲፪ እናም እንግዲህ ሞሮኒ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ዛራሄምናህ ጎራዴውን መልሶ ያዘና፣ በሞሮኒ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፣ ሞሮኒንም ይገድለው ዘንድ ወደ እርሱ ዘንድ ሮጠ፤ ነገር ግን ጎራዴውን ባነሳ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ከሞሮኒ ወታደሮች አንዱ መታውና በመሬት ላይ ወደቀና፣ በእጅታው ተሰበረ፤ እናም ደግሞ የዛራሄምናህን እናት መትቶ ገሸለጠውና በመሬት ላይ ወደቀ። እናም ዛራሄምናህ ከእነርሱ ፊት ወደ ወታደሮቹ መካከል ሸሸ።

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአጠገቡ ቆሞ የነበረው፣ የዛራሄምናህን እናት የገሸለጠው፣ ቆቡን ከፀጉሩ ጋር ከመሬት ላይ አነሳውና፣ በጎራዳው ጫፍ ላይ አስቀመጠው፣ እናም ወደእነርሱም ከፍ አድርጎ በማሳየት በኃይል እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፡

፲፬ ይህ የአለቃችሁ ቆብ የሆነው በመሬት ላይ እንደወደቀ፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን ካልሰጣችሁን እናም በሰላም ለመሄድ ቃል ኪዳን ካልገባችሁ በቀር እንዲሁ በመሬት ላይ ትወድቃላችሁ።

፲፭ እንግዲህ ብዙዎች እነኚህን ቃላት በሰሙበት ጊዜ እናም በጎራዳው ላይ የነበረውን ቆብም በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በፍርሃት ተሞሉ፤ እናም ብዙዎች መጡና፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን በሞሮኒ እግር ስር ጣሉት፣ የሰላም ቃል ኪዳንን ገቡም። እናም ቃል ኪዳን የገቡት ሁሉ ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲሄዱ ፈቀዱላቸው።

፲፮ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ዛራሄምናህ እጅግ ተናደደ፣ እናም ቀሪዎቹ ወታደሮቹ ከኔፋውያን ጋር በኃይል እንዲጣሉ በቁጣ አነሳሳቸው።

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ ሞሮኒ በላማናውያን ግትርነት የተነሳ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡ እንዲወጉአቸውና እንዲገድላቸው አዘዘ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱን መግደል ጀመሩ፤ አዎን እናም ላማናውያን በጎራዳዎቻቸውና በኃይላቸው ተዋጉ።

፲፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የላማናውያን ባዶ ሰውነትና፣ ባዶ ራሶቻቸው ለኔፋውያን የሰሉ ጎራዳዎች ተጋልጠው ነበር፤ አዎን እነሆ ተበሳሰተውና ተመትተው ነበር፣ አዎን፣ እናም በኔፋውያን ጎራዳዎች ፊት በፍጥነት ይወድቁ ነበር፤ እናም የሞሮኒ ወታደር እንደተነበየም መወገድ ጀምረው ነበር።

፲፱ እንግዲህ ዛራሄምናህ፣ እነርሱ በሙሉ ሊጠፉ መቃረባቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ቀሪውን ህይወታቸውን የሚያተርፉት ከሆነ፣ በድጋሚ ለጦርነት ወደ እነርሱ በጭራሽ እንደማይመጡ፣ እርሱ እናም ደግሞ ህዝቡ ቃል ኪዳን እንደሚገቡ ለሞሮኒ በኃይል በመጮህ ቃል ገባ።

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ የሞት ስራ በህዝቡ መካከል በድጋሚ እንዲቆም አደረገ። የጦር መሳሪያዎችንም ከላማናውያን ወሰደ፤ እናም ለሰላም ቃል ኪዳን ከእርሱ ጋር ከገቡ በኋላ ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲሄዱ ተፈቅዶላቸው ነበር።

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

፳፩ እንግዲህ የሞቱባቸው ቁጥር ብዙ በመሆኑ ሊቆጠር አይችልም ነበር፤ እዎን በኔፋውያንም ሆነ በላማናውያን በኩል የሟቸቹ ቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ነበር።

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሞቱባቸውን ወደ ሲዶም ወንዝ ጣሉአቸው፤ እናም ተወስደውና በባህሩ ጥልቅ ውስጥ ተቀብረው ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

፳፫ እናም የኔፋውያንም ሆኑ የሞሮኒ ሠራዊት ተመለሱ፣ እናም ወደ ቤታቸውና ወደ ምድራቸው መጡ።

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

፳፬ እናም በኔፋውያን ላይ አሰራ ስምንተኛው ዓመት የመሣፍንት አገዛዝ በዚህ ተፈፀመ። እናም በኔፊ ስሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፈው የአልማ ምዝገባም ተጠናቀቀ።

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

ሔለማን በዘመኑ ባሰቀመጠው በምዝገባው መሰረት በሔለማን ዘመን የኔፊ ህዝብ የጦርነታቸው እና የፀባቸው ታሪክ።

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

አልማ ፱፭

Alma 45

፩ እነሆ፣ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝብ ጌታ በድጋሚ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ እንዲወጡ ሰላደረጋቸው እጅግ ተደስቱ፤ ስለዚህ ለጌታ ለአምላካቸው ምስጋናን አቀረቡ፤ አዎን፣ እናም እጅግ ምድና፣ ፀለዩም፣ አግዚአብሔርን እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነ ደስታ አመለኩትም።

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ሕዝብ በመሣፍንቱ የአሰራ ዘጠነኛው የግሰስ ዘመን ላይ አልማ ወደ ልጁ ሔለማን መጣ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ ሰለተጠበቁት መዝገቦች በተመለከተ የተናገርኳቸውን ቃላት ታምናለህን?

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

፫ እናም ሔለማን እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ አዎን አምናለሁ።

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

፬ እናም አልማ በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለ፡ በሚመጣው በክርስቶስ ታምናለህን?

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

፭ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለ፡ አዎን፣ የተናገርካቸውን ቃላት በሙሉ አምናለሁ።

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

፮ እናም አልማ በድጋሚ እንዲህ አለው፡ ትዕዛዛቴን ትጠብቃለህን?

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

፯ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አለ፡ አዎን፣ ትዕዛዛቶችህን በልቤ ሙሉ እጠብቃቸዋለሁ።

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

፰ ከዚያም አልማ እንዲህ አለው፡ አንተ የተባረክህ ነህ፤ እናም ጌታ በዚህች ምድር ላይ እንድትበለፀግ ያደርግሃል።

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ለአንተ በመጠኑ የምተነብየው ነገር አለኝ፤ ነገር ግን ለአንተ የምተነብየውን ለሰዎች አታሳውቅ፤ አዎን፣ የምተነብይልህን ትንቢት እስከሚፈፀም ድረስ ማንም እንዲያውቀው አታድርግ፤ ስለዚህ የምነግርህን ቃላት ይጻፉ።

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

፲ እናም ቃላቱ እነዚህ ናቸው፡ እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ህዝብ፣ ኔፋውያን፣ በውስጤ ባለው የራዕይ መንፈስ መሰረት፣ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እራሱን ከገለፀላቸው ከእራት መቶ ዓመታት በኋላ እምነትን በማጣት እንደሚመነጹ አመለከታለሁ።

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

፲፩ አዎን፣ እናም ከዚያም፣ የኔፊ ህዝብ እስከሚጠፋም ድረስ፣ ጦርነትና ቸንፈርን ይመለከታሉ፤ አዎን፣ በመሃከላቸው ረሃብ እና የደም መፋሰስ ይሆናል—

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

፲፪ አዎን፣ ይህም የሆነው እምነት በማጣት በመመንገድና በጨለማው ስራና በእመንዝራነት፣ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋቶች ላይ በመውደቃቸው ነው፤ አዎን፣ እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፣ በታላቁ ብርሃንና ዕውቀት ላይ ኃጢያትን በመፈጸማቸው፤ አዎን፣ ይህ ታላቅ ክፋት ከመምጣቱ በፊት አራተኛው ትውልድም ቢሆን አያልፍም እላችኋለሁ።

፲፫ እናም ያ ታላቁ ቀን ሲመጣ፣ እነሆ፣ አሁን ያሉት፣ ወይንም ከኔፊ ህዝብ ጋር አብረው የተቆጠሩት ወገኖች ከኔፊ ህዝብ ጋር የማይቆጠሩበት ጊዜ በፍጥነት ይመጣል።

፲፬ ነገር ግን ማንም የተረፈ፣ እናም በዚያን ታላቁና ከአስፈሪው ቀን ያልጠፋ፣ የጌታ ደቀ መዝሙር ተብለው ከሚጠሩት ጥቂቶች በስተቀር፣ ከላማናውያን ጋር አብሮ ይቆጠራል፣ እንደ እነርሱም ይሆናሉ፤ እናም ላማናውያን እነርሱን እስከሚጠፉ ድረስም እንኳን ያሳድዷቸዋል። እናም እንግዲህ፣ በኃጢያትም የተነሳ ይህ ትንቢት ይፈጸማል።

፲፭ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ አልማ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለሌላውን ከተናገረ በኋላ፣ ባረከው፣ እናም ደግሞ ሌሎች ወንድ ልጆቹን ባረካቸው፤ ደግሞም ለፃድቃኖች ሲል ምድሪቱን ባረካት።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ አለ፣ ጌታም እንዲህ ይላል—አዎን፣ ይህች ምድር ጥፋት ለሚያደርጉት ለሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ በሙሉ ሲበሰሉ እንዲጠፉ ዘንድ ምድሪቱ የተረገመች ትሆን፤ እናም እንደተናገርኩትም ይሆናል፤ ይህ ለምድሪቱ የእግዚአብሔር እርግማን እንዲሁም በረከት ነው፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ኃጢያትን በትንሹም ቢሆን ሊቀበለው አይቻለውምና።

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ አልማ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ ቤተክርስቲያኗን ባረካት፤ አዎን፣ ከዚህ ጊዜም ጀምሮ በእምነት በመጻፍት የቆሙትን በሙሉ ባረካቸው።

፲፰ እናም አልማ ይህንን ባደረገ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ሜሌቅ ምድር እንደሚሄድ በማድረግ፣ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወጣ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዚህም በኋላ ከእርሱ ምንም አልተሰማም ነበር፤ ስለሞቱም ሆነ ቀብሩ ምንም አላወቅንም።

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

፲፱ እነሆ፣ እርሱ ዓድቅ ሰው መሆኑን ይህን እናውቃለን፤ እናም በመንፈስ መወሰዱን ወይም በጌታ እጅ እንደሙሴ መቀበሩ በቤተክርስቲያን ይህ ንግግር ተሰራጨ። ነገር ግን እነሆ ቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት ጌታ ሙሴን ለራሱ ወስደው ይላሉ፤ እናም አልማንም ደግሞ በመንፈስ ወደ እርሱ ወስድታል ብለን እንገምታለን፤ ስለዚህ በዚህ የተነሳ ስለአልማ ሞትም ሆነ ቀብር ምንም እናውቅም።

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

፳ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ የእስራዊት ዘመናዊ ንግስና መጀመሪያ ላይ ሔለማን በህዝቡ መካከል ቃሉን ለማወጅ ሄደ።

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

፳፩ እነሆም ህዝቡ ከላማናውያን ጋር በመዋጋቱና፣ ትንሽ ፀብና ርብሻ በህዝቡ መካከል በመኖሩ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቃል በመካከላቸው መነገሩ አስፈላጊ እየሆነ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ ውስጥ ደንብ መቋቋሙ አስፈላጊ እየሆነ መጣ።

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

፳፪ ስለዚህ፣ ሔለማንና ወንድሞቹ በምድሪቱ ላይ፣ አዎን፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ባሉት በኔሬ ሰዎች በተያዙት ከተሞች ሁሉ በተክርስቲያኗን በድጋሚ ለማቋቋም ሄዱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ላይ ባሉት በቤተክርስቲያኖቹ በሙሉ ካህናትን እና መምህራንን ሾሙአቸው።

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

፳፫ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሔለማንና ወንድሞቹ በቤተክርስቲያኖቹ ላይ ካህናትንና መምህራንን ከሾሙ በኋላ በህዝቡ መካከል ፀብ ተነሳ፣ እናም የሔለማንና የወንድሞቹንም ቃላት አላዳመጡም።

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

፳፬ ነገር ግን በትዕቢት እያደገ፣ እጅግ ሀብታሞችም በመሆናቸው በልባቸው ኩራት እየተሞሉ ሄዱ፤ ስለዚህ በራሳቸው ግምት ከፍ ብለው በልፅገዋል፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በቅንነት ለመራመድ የሔለማንንና የወንድሞቹን ቃላት አላዳመጡም።

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

አልማ ማገጃ

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሌሎችንና የወንድሞቹን ቃላት መስማት ያልፈለጉት ሁሉ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ በእንድነት ተሰባሰቡባቸው።

፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እነርሱም እስከሚገድሉአቸው ድረስ እጅግ ተቆጥተው ነበር።

፫ አሁን በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ተቆጥተው የነበሩት መሪ ትልቅና ጠንካራ ሰው ነበር፤ እናም ስሙ አማሊቅያ ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር።

፬ እናም አማሊቅያ ንጉስ መሆንን ይፈልግ ነበር፤ እናም የተቆጡት ሰዎችም ደግሞ እርሱ ንጉሳቸው እንዲሆንላቸው ይፈልጉ ነበር፤ እናም ብዙዎቹ በምድሪቱ የበታች ዳኞች የነበሩ ናቸው፣ እነርሱም ስልጣንን ይፈልጉ ነበር።

፭ እናም እርሱን የሚረዱትና ንጉሳቸው እንዲሆን የሚያደርጉት ከሆነ በህዝቡ ላይ ገዢ እደርጋችኋለሁ ባላቸው በአማሊቅያ ሸንገላ ተመርተው ነበር።

፮ አዎን በቤተክርስቲያኗ ላይ ሊቀ ካህን ስለነበሩ፣ ምንም እንኳን ሌሎችን እና ወንድሞቹ ቢሰብኩም፣ አዎን፣ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ላይ ታላቅ እንክብካቤን ቢያደርጉም፣ በአማሊቅያ ወደ መገንጠል ተመሩ።

፯ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ የአማሊቅያን የሸንገላ ቃላት ያመኑ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከቤተክርስቲያኗም እንኳን ተገነጠሉ፤ እናም ምንም እንኳን በላማናውያን ላይ ታላቅ ድል ቢያገኙም፣ እና በጌታ እጅ በዳኑበት ደስታቸው እጅግ ታላቅ ቢሆንም፣ የኔሬ ህዝብ ሁኔታም እንደዚህ እጅግ የማያስተማምን እንዲሁም አደገኛ ነበር።

፰ ስለሆነም የሰው ልጆች ጌታ አምላካቸውን እንዴት በፍጥነት እንደሚዘነጉ፣ አዎን፣ ክፋትን ለመሰራት፣ እናም በክፋ ሰዎችም ለመመራት እንዴት እንደሚፈጥኑ እንመለከታለን።

፱ አዎን፣ እናም እንደ ኃጢአተኛ ሰው በሰው ልጆች መካከል ለታላቅ ኃጢአት መንስኤ ሊሆን እንደሚችል ደግሞ እንመለከታለን።

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hear-
ken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were
gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-
somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against
their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his
name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and
those people who were wroth were also desirous that
he should be their king; and they were the greater
part of them the lower judges of the land, and they
were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of
Amalickiah, that if they would support him and es-
tablish him to be their king that he would make them
rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissen-
sions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman
and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceed-
ingly great care over the church, for they were high
priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed
in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they
dissented even from the church; and thus were the
affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious
and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory
which they had had over the Lamanites, and their
great rejoicings which they had had because of their
deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do for-
get the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity,
and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very
wicked man can cause to take place among the chil-
dren of men.

፲ አዎን፣ አማሊቅያ የብልጠት ዕቅድ ያለው በመሆኑና፣ ብዙ የሽንጋይ ቃላት ያሉት ሰው በመሆኑ፣ የብዙ ሰዎችን ልብ ክፋት እንዲሰሩ፣ አዎን፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያንና፣ እግዚአብሔር የሰጣቸውን የነፃነት መሰረት፣ ወይም ለፃድቃን ሲል በምድር ገጽ ላይ እግዚአብሔር የላከውን በረከት ለማጥፋት እንደሚመራቸው እንመለከታለን።

፲፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ የኔሬ ሠራዊት ዋና ሻምበል የነበረው፣ ይህንን ተቃውሞ በስማ ጊዜ በአማሊቅያ ላይ ተቆጥቶ ነበር።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኮቱን ቀደደና፣ ቁራጨን ወሰዶ በላዩ ላይ አምላካችንን፣ ኃይማኖታችንን፣ እናም ነፃነታችንንና፣ ሰላማችንን፣ እናም ሚስቶቻችንንና፣ ልጆቻችንን ለማስታወስ በማለት ፃፈበትና በእንጨት ጫፍ ላይ አሰረው።

፲፫ እናም የራስ ቆቡንም፣ የደረት ኪሱንም፣ ጋሻውንም አሰረ፣ እናም በወገቡ ላይ ጥሩርን ታጠቀ፤ የተቀደደው ኮቱን ያደረገበትን እንጨትንም ወሰደ (እናም የነፃነት አርማ ብሎም ጠርቶታል) እናም በመሬት ላይ ሰገደና፣ የክርስቲያኖች ቡድን ምድሪቷን የራሳቸው እስካደረጉ ድረስ፣ የነፃነት በረከት በወንድሞቹ ላይ እንዲሆን ወደ አምላኩ በኃይል ጸለየ—

፲፬ እውነተኛ የክርስቶስ አማኞች የነበሩ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል የነበሩ፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ባልሆኑትም እንዲህ ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበርና።

፲፭ እናም የቤተክርስቲያኗ የነበሩት ታማኞች ነበሩ፣ አዎን የክርስቶስ እውነተኛ አማኞች የነበሩት በሙሉ የክርስቶስን ስም፣ ወይም በሚመጣው ክርስቶስ በማመናቸው ክርስቲያን ተብለው የሚጠሩበትን በደስታ ለብሰው ነበር።

፲፮ እናም ስለዚህ፣ በዚህ ጊዜ፣ ሞሮኒ የክርስቲያኖች ጉዳይና የምድሪቱ ነፃነትም ይበልጥ ሞገስን እንዲያገኝ ጸለየ።

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነፍሱንም ለእግዚአብሔር ባፈሰሰ ጊዜ፣ በወደመው ምድር በስተደቡብ ያሉትን ክፍሎች በሙሉ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በአጠቃላይ በምድሪቱ በስሜን፣ በደቡብም ክፍል ያለውን በሙሉ ስም ሰጣቸው— የተመረጠች ምድርና የነፃነት መሬት በማለት ሰየመ።

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ በእርግጥ እኛ የክርስቶስን ስም በመልበሳችን የተጠላን በራሳችን መተላለፍን እስከምናመጣ ድረስ እንድንዋረድ እንዲሁም እንድንጠፋ እግዚአብሔር አይፈቅድም።

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

፲፱ እናም ሞሮኒ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ የተቀደደውን ልብሱን ከፍ በማድረግ በተቀደደው በኩል የተፃፈውን ሰዎች ሁሉ ያዩለት ዘንድ በእየር ላይ አወዛወዘው፣ እናም ድምፁን ከፍ በማድረግም እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፡

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

፳ እነሆ፣ ማንም ይህንን አርማ በምድሪቱ ላይ የጠበቀ በጌታ ብርታት መጥቶ ከእኔ ጋር ይሁን፣ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እንዲባርካቸው መብታቸው፣ እናም ኃይማኖታቸውን እንደሚጠብቁ ቃል ኪዳኑ ይግቡ።

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ እነዚህን ቃላት ባወጀ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ሰዎቹም ልብሶቻቸውን ለምልክት በመቅደድ ወይንም ጌታ አምላካቸውን እንደማይተወም ቃል በመግባት፣ ወይም በሌላ አነጋገር የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የሚተላለፉ ወይንም በመተላለፍ የሚወድቁ ከሆነ እናም የክርስቶስን ስም ለመልበስ የሚያፍሩ ከሆነ እነርሱ ልብሳቸውን እንደቀደዱ ጌታም እነርሱን ይለያቸዋል በማለት የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን በወገባቸው ላይ በመታጠቅ በእንድ ላይ በመሮጥ መጡ።

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

፳፪ እንግዲህ የገቡት ቃል ኪዳን ይህ ነበር፣ እናም ልብሳቸውንም በሞሮኒ እግር ስር በመጣል እንዲህ አሉ፡ በመተላለፍ የምንወድቅ ከሆነ በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን እንደነበሩት ወንድሞቻችን እንደምንጠፋ ከአምላካችን ጋር ቃል ኪዳን ገብተናል፤ አዎን በመተላለፍ የምንወድቅ ከሆነ ልብሶቻችንን እንዲረገጡ በእግርህ ስር እንደጣልናቸው አምላካችንም እኛን በጠላቶቻችን እግር ስር እንድንወድቅ እንዲሁ ያድርገን።

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

፳፫ ሞሮኒ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ እነሆ፣ እኛ የያዕቆብ ዘር ቅሪት ነን፣ አዎን፣ በወንድሞቹ ኮቱ የተቀደደዱበት የዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪት ነን፤ አዎን እናም አሁን እነሆ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ እናስታውስ፣ አለበለዚያ ልብሶቻችን በወንድሞቻችን ይቀደዳሉ፣ እናም ወደ ወህኒ ቤት እንጣላለን፣ ወይንም እንሸጣለን፣ ወይንም እንገደላለን።

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

፳፬ አዎን፣ ነፃነታችንን እንደ የሴፍ ቅሪት እንጠብቅ፤ አዎን ከመዋቱ በፊት የነበሩትን የያዕቆብን ቃላት እናስታውሳ፣ እነሆም፣ የሴፍ ኮት ቅሪት ክፍል የሆኑት እንደተጠበቁና እንዳልበሰቡም ተመልከተ። እናም እንዲህ አለ—የልጄ ልብስ ቁራጭ እንደተጠበቁ ሁሉ የልጄ ዘር ቅሪቶች በእግዚአብሔር እጅ ይጠበቃሉ፣ እናም ወደ እርሱ ይወሰዳሉ፣ የሴፍ ዘር ቅሪቶች ግን እንደ ልብሱ ቁራጭ ቅሪቶች ይጠፋሉ።

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ ነፍሴን ያሳዘናታል፤ ይሁን እንጂ ወደ እግዚአብሔር በሚወሰዱ በእርሱ የዘር ክፍል ምክንያት ነፍሴ በልጄ ትደስታለች።

፳፮ እንግዲህ እነሆ ይህ የያዕቆብ ቋንቋ ነበር።

፳፯ እናም እንግዲህ የሴፍ ዘር ቅሪት የሆኑት፣ እንደልብሱ የጠፉት፣ ከእኛ የተገነጠሉ መሆናቸውን ማን ያውቃል? አዎን፣ እናም በክርስቶስ እምነት ፈጥነን ካልቆምን እኛም እራሳችን እንዲሁ እንሆናለን።

፳፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ይህንን በተናገረ ጊዜ ወደ ፊት ሄደ፤ እናም ደግሞ ተቃውሞ ባለበት ምድር ሁሉ መልዕክተኛን ላከና፣ አማሊቅያንና የተገነጠሉት አማሊቅያውያን ተብለው በሚጠሩት ላይ ይነሱባቸው ዘንድ ነፃነታቸውን ለመጠበቅ የሚፈልጉትን ሰዎች በሙሉ በአንድ ላይ እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ።

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሞሮኒ ሰዎች ከአማሊቅያውያን በቁጥር ብዙ መሆናቸውን አማሊቅያ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እናም ደግሞ ህዝቡ ስለደረገቸው ጉዳዮች ፍትህነት በተመለከተ ጥርጣሬአቸውን ተመልከተ፣ ስለዚህ ዓላማውም አይሳካልኝም ብሎ በመፍራት ፈቃደኛ የሆኑትን ሰዎች ወሰደና፣ ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ሸሸ።

፴ እንግዲህ ሞሮኒም ከእንግዲህ ላማናውያን ከዚህ የበለጠ ብርታት ሊኖራቸው አይገባም ብሎ አሰበ፤ ስለዚህ የአምሊኪውያን ሰዎችን ለማቋረጥ፣ ወይም እነርሱን ለመውሰድና፣ ለመመለስ፣ እናም አማሊቅያን ለመግደል አሰበ፤ አዎን፣ ላማናውያንን በቁጥ በእነርሱ ላይ እንደሚያነሳሳና ከእነርሱ ጋር ለውጊያ እንዲመጡ እንደሚያደርግ አውቋልና፤ እናም አማሊቅያ አላማውን ለማግኘት እንዲህ እንደሚያደርግ ያውቅ ነበር።

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

፲፩ ስለዚህ ሞርኒ በአንድ ላይ የሰበሰባቸውንና፣ ያስታጠቃቸውን፣ እናም ሰላምን ለመጠበቅ ቃል እንዲገቡ ያደረጋቸውን ወታደሮች መውሰድ አስፈላጊ ነው። በማለት አስበ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወታደሮቹን ወሰደ፣ እናም በምድረበዳው ውስጥ የአማሊክያን መንገድ ለመሰበር ድንኳናቸውን በመያዝ ወደ ምድረበዳው ተንቀሳቀሱ።

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደ ፍላጎቱም አደረገና፣ ወደ ምድረበዳው ዘመተ፣ እናም የአማሊክያን ሠራዊት እርምጃ አቋረጠ።

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊክያ ትንሽ ቁጥር ካላቸው ሰዎች ጋር ሸሸና፣ ቀሪዎቹ በሞርኒ እጅ ገቡ፣ እናም ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመልሰው ተወሰዱ።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

፲፬ እንግዲህ፣ ሞርኒ በዋናው ዳኛ የተሾመ፣ እናም በህዝቡ ድምፅ የተመረጠ ሰው በመሆኑ፣ ስለዚህ በኔፋውያን ሠራዊት መካከል በእነርሱ ላይ ስልጣኑን ለመጀመርና ለመመሰረትና እንደፈቃዱ ስልጣን በእነርሱ ላይ ነበረው።

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነፃ መንግሥት ያስተዳድሩበት ዘንድ፣ የነፃነቱን መንስኤ ለመርዳት ወደ ቃል ኪዳኑ ያልገቡትን አማሊክያውያን እንዲገደሉ አደረገ፤ እናም የነፃነቱን ቃል ኪዳን ክደው የነበሩት ጥቂት ብቻ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

፲፮ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ሞርኒ በኔፋውያን በተያዙ ቦታ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ባሉት ሰገነት ላይ የነፃነት ዓርማው እንዲሰቀል አደረገ፤ እናም ሞርኒ የነፃነት ባንዲራን በኔፋውያን መካከል እንደዚህ ተከለው።

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

፲፯ እናም በድጋሚ በምድራቸው ላይ ሰላምን ማግኘት ጀመሩ፣ እናም እስከ አስራ ዘጠነኛው የመሣፍንት አገዛዝ መጨረሻ መቃረቢያ ድረስ ምድሪቱ በሰላም ተዳደረች።

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

፲፰ እናም ሔለማንና ሊቀ ካህናቱም ደግሞ በቤተክርስቲያኗ ስርዓትን አስከበሩ፤ እዎን ለአራት ዓመታት ያህል እንኳን ሰላም በዝቶላቸው እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗም ተደሰተው ነበር።

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በፅናት ነፍሳቸው በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እንደሚድን እያመኑ የሞቱም ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከዓለምም የወጡት በደስታ ነበር።

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

፱ እናም በዓመቱ በአንዳንድ ወቅት ውስጥም በምድሪቱ ተደጋጋሚ በነበረው ንዳድ ጥቂቶች ሞቱ—ነገር ግን ሰዎች በተፈጥሮው የእየር ፀባይ ቢገደዱም እግዚአብሔር የበሽታውን መንስኤ ለማስወገድ መልካም ተክሎችን እና ስሮችን በማዘጋጀቱ ብዙዎች በንዳዱ አልሞቱም—

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

፳፭ ነገር ግን ብዙዎች በእርጅናቸው ሞተዋል፤ እናም እኛ መገመት እንዳለብን ክርስቶስን በማመን የሞቱት በእርሱ ደስተኞች ናቸው።

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

አልማ ፱፯

፩ እንግዲህ እኛም በምዝገባችን ወደ አማሊቅያና ከእርሱ ጋር ወደ ሞድረብዳው ስለሸሹት እንመለስ፤ እነሆም፣ ከእርሱ ጋር የሄዱትን ይዞ ሄደ፣ እናም ወደ ኔፊ ሞድረብ በላማናውያን መካከል ሄደ፣ እናም የላማናውያን ንጉስ ከኔፋውያን ጋር በድጋሚ እንዲዋጉ አራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ እንዲሰበሰቡ አዋጁን በምድሪቱ ላይ እስከሚልክ ድረስ ላማናውያንን በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ለቁጣ እንዲነሳሱ አደረገ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አዋጁ በእነርሱ መካከል በደረሰ ጊዜ እጅግ ፈርተው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ንጉሱን ለማስቀየምም ፈርተው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ህይወታችንን እናጣለን በማለት ስለፈሩም ከኔፋውያን ጋር መዋጋትን አልደፈሩም። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አልተቀበሉም ነበር፣ ወይም ከእነርሱም አብዛኛዎቹ የንጉሱን ትዕዛዛት አልተቀበሉም።

፫ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ታዛዥ ባለመሆናቸው ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ለትዕዛዛቱ ታዛዥ የሆኑትን ሠራዊት መሪነትን ለአማሊቅያ ሰጠ፤ እናም እንዲሄድና የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዲይዙ እንዲያስገድዳቸው አዘዘው።

፬ እናም እነሆ ይህ የአማሊቅያ ፍላጎት ነበር፣ ክፉ ነገርን ለማድረግ የረቀቀ ሰው ነበር፣ ስለዚህ የላማናውያን ንጉስን ከዙፋኑ ለማውረድ በልቡ አቀደ።

፭ እናም አሁን ንጉሱን በሚወዱት ላማናውያን ክፍል ተቀባይነትን አገኘ፤ እናም ታዛዥ ባልሆኑትም ዘንድ ተቀባይነትን ለማግኘት ፈለገ፤ ስለዚህ ኦኒዳ ተብሎ ወደሚጠራው ስፍራ ሄደ፤ ምክንያቱም ላማናውያን በሙሉ ወደዚያ ስፍራ ሸሽተው ነበርና፤ ወታደሮቹ መምጣታቸውን በማወቃቸው፣ እናም እነርሱን እንደሚያጠፋላቸው ስለገመቱ የጦር መሳሪያዎቹ ወዳሉበት ስፍራ፣ ወደ ኦኒዳ ሸሹ።

፮ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት እንደማይገደዱ ቁርጥ ውሳኔን በአዕምሮአቸው ስለቀረጹ አንድን ሰው በራሳቸው ላይ ንጉሳቸው እናም መሪያቸው አድርገው ሾሙ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለጦርነቱ ለመዘጋጀት አንቲጶስ ተብሎ በሚጠራው ተራራ ጫፍ አራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡ።

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

፳፯ እንግዲህ እንደንጉሱ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት የአማሊቅያ አስተሳሰብ አልነበረም፣ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እራሱን የበላይ በማድረግ ያስቀምጥ ዘንድ፣ እናም ንጉሱንም ከተፋኑ ያወርደው ዘንድ እናም መንግሥቱንም ይወሰድ ዘንድ በላማናውያን ወታደሮች መወደድ የእርሱ ፍላጎት ነበር።

፳፱ እናም እነሆ፣ የእርሱም ሠራዊት በአንቲጳስ ተራራ አጠገብ ባለው ሸለቆ ድንኳን እንዲጥሉ አደረገ።

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ ወደ አንቲጳስ ተራራ ስሙም ሌሆንቲ ወደ ተባለው መሪያቸው ከእርሱ ጋር መነጋገር በመፈለጉ ወደ ተራራው ግርጌ ይመጣ ዘንድ በሚሰጥር መልዕክተኛ ላከ።

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሆንቲ መልዕክቱን በተቀበለ ጊዜ ወደ ተራራው ግርጌ መሄድ አልደፈረም ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ እንዲመጣለት ስለፈለገ ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ መልዕክተኛ ላከ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሆንቲ ግን አልመጣለትም፤ እናም በድጋሚ ለሶስተኛ ጊዜ መልዕክተኛ ላከ።

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ሌሆንቲን ከተራራው ለማስወረድ አለመቻሉን ባወቀ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ሌሆንቲ የጦር ስፈር በመጠጋት ወደ ተራራው ሄደ፤ እናም እንዲመጣ በመፈለጉ ሌሆንቲ ጠባቂዎቹን ከእርሱ ጋር ይዞ እንዲመጣ በድጋሚ ለአራተኛ ጊዜ መልዕክተኛን ላከ።

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሆንቲ ከጠባቂዎቹ ጋር ወደ አማሊቅያ በመጣ ጊዜ፣ ሌሆንቲ አማሊቅያን በሠራዊቱ ላይ ሁለተኛ መሪ የሚያደርገው ከሆነ፣ ከወታደሮቹ ጋር በምሽት ጊዜ እንዲመጣና፣ በጦር ስፈራቸው ያሉትን ንጉሱ ትዕዛዝ የሰጣቸውን ሰዎች እንዲከቡክቸው፣ እናም እነርሱንም በሌሆንቲን እጅ አሳልፎ ሊሰጣቸው ፈልጎ ነበር።

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሆንቲ ከራሱ ሰዎች ጋር መጣና፣ የአማሊቅያን ሰዎች ከበቡክቸው፣ ስለዚህ ሌሊቱ ነግቶ ከመንቃታቸው በፊት በሌሆንቲ ወታደሮች ተከበው ነበር።

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መከበባቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እንዲይጠፉ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር እንዲቀላቀሉ ይፈቅድላቸው ዘንድ አማሊቅያን ለመኑት። እናም ይህ አማሊቅያ የሚፈልገው ነገር ነበር።

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የራሱን ሰዎች ከንጉሱ ትዕዛዝ ተቃራኒ በሆነ ሁኔታ አሳልፎ ሰጣቸው። እናም ንጉሱን ከዙፋኑ ለማውረድ ያቀደው ይፈፀም ዘንድ አማሊቅያ የፈለገው ይህንን ነበር።

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

፲፱ እንግዲህ ዋናው መሪያቸው ከተገደለ ሁለተኛውን ዋና መሪ አድርጎ መሾም በላማናውያን መካከል የነበረ ልምድ ነበር።

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ከአገልጋዮቹ አንዱ፣ ሌሆንቲ እንዲሞት ቀስ በቀስ መርዝ እንዲሰጠው አደረገ።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

፳፱ እንግዲህ፣ ሌሆንቲ በሞተ ጊዜ፣ ላማናውያን አማሊቅያን መሪያቸው፣ እናም ዋና አዛዦቸው አድርገው ሾሙት።

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

፷ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ከወታደሮቹ ጋር (ፍላጎቱ ስለተፈፀመለት) ወደ ኔፊ ምድር፣ ወደ ኔፊ ከተማ፣ ዋና ከተማ ወደሆነችው ተንቀሳቀሰ።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

፳፩ እናም ንጉሱ አማሊቅያ ትዕዛዙን ፈፀሟልና አማሊቅያ በርካታ ሠራዊቶቹ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት እንዲሄዱ በአንድ ላይ ሰብስቧቸዋል ብሎ በመገመቱ ከጠባቂዎቹ ጋር እርሱን ለመገናኘት ሄደ።

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

፳፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ንጉሱ እርሱን ለማግኘት በሄደ ጊዜ፣ አማሊቅያ አገልጋዮቹ ንጉሱን እንዲያገኙት እንዲሄዱ አደረገ። እናም እነርሱ ሄዱና፣ በንጉሱ ፊት በታላቅነቱ ያከበሩት ለመምሰል ሰገዱለት።

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ ከኔፋውያን በወሰዱት ወግ ለሠላም ተምሣሌት እንደሆነው እንደላማናውያን ወግ እነርሱን ለማንሳት እጁን ዘረጋ።

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱ የመጀመሪያውን ከመሬት ባነሳው ጊዜ፣ እነሆ ንጉሱን በልቡ ላይ ወጋው፤ እናም እርሱም በመሬት ላይ ወደቀ።

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

፳፭ እንግዲህ የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች ሸሹ፣ እናም የአማሊቅያ አገልጋዮች እንዲህ ሲሉ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ አድርገው ጮኹ።

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

፳፮ እነሆ፣ የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች ልቡን ወጉት፣ እናም እርሱ ወደቀ፣ እነርሱም ሸሹ፤ እነሆ፣ ኑና ተመልከቱ።

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ወታደሮቹ ወደ ፊት እንዲሄዱና፣ ንጉሱ ምን እንደሆነ እንዲመለከቱ አዘዘ፤ እናም ወደ ሰፍራው በመጡበት ጊዜ ንጉሱ ደምቶ ከመሬት ላይ ወድቆ ሲያገኙት፣ አማሊቅያ የተቆጣ አሰመሰሎ እንዲህ አለ፡ ንጉሱን የሚወድ ቢኖር፣ እንዲሄድ ይደረግና፣ የንጉሱንም አገልጋዮች አሳዶ ይግደላቸው።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉሱን የሚወዱት በሙሉ፣ ይህንን ቃላት በሰሙ ጊዜ መጡ፣ እናም የንጉሱን አገልጋዮች ተከታተሉአቸው።

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

፳፱ እናም የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች ወታደሮቹ እንደተከታተሉአቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ፈርተው ነበር፣ እናም ወደ ምድርበዳው ሸሹና፣ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር መጡና፣ ከአሞን ህዝብ ጋር ተቀላቀሉ።

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

፴ እናም የተከታተሉአቸው ወታደሮች በከንቱ ሁኔታ ከተከተሉአቸው በኋላ ተመለሱ፤ እናም አማሊቅያ እንደዚህ በማጭበርበር የህዝቡን ልብ አገኘ።

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለው ቀንም ከሠራዊቱ ጋር ወደ ኔፊ ከተማ ገባ፣ እናም ከተማዋንም ተቆጣጠረ።

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

፴፪ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ንግስቲቱ ንጉሱ መገደሉን በሰማች ጊዜ—አማሊቅያ ለንግስቲቱ ንጉሱ በአገልጋዮቹ መገደሉን፣ እርሱም ከወታደሮቹ ጋር እንደተከተላቸው ነገር ግን ከንቱ እንደነበር፣ እናም እንዲመለሱአቸው መልዕክተኛ በመላክ አሳወቃት—

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

፴፫ ስለዚህ፣ ንግስቲቱ ይህንን መልዕክት በተቀበለች ጊዜ አማሊቅያ የከተማዋን ነዋሪዎች ህይወት እንዲያተርፍ እንደምትፈልግ ላከችበት፤ እናም ደግሞ እርሱ ወደ እርሷ እንዲመጣ ፈለገች፤ እናም ደግሞ የንጉሱን መሞት በተመለከተ ምስክሮችን ለመረጃ እንዲያመጣላት ፈለገች።

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ንጉሱን የገደለውንና፣ ከእርሱ ጋር የነበሩትን አገልጋዮች በሙሉ ወሰደና፣ ንግስቲቱ በተቀመጠችበት ሰፍራ ሄዱ፤ እናም የንጉሱ በራሱ አገልጋዮች መገደሉን ሁሉም መስከሩላት፤ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ አለ፡ እነርሱም ሸሽተዋል፤ ይህ እራሱ በእነርሱ ላይ ምስክር ካይሆንም? የንጉሱን ሞት በተመለከተም እንደዚህ ንግስቲቱን አሳመኗት።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ የንግስቲቱን ድጋፍ ፈለገ፤ እናም አገባትና፤ በማጭበርበሩና፤ በብልጥ አገልጋዮቹ እርዳታ ግዛቱን እንደዚህ አገኘ፤ አዎን፤ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ባሉ በላማናውያንና፤ በልሙኤላውያንና፤ እናም በእስማኤላውያንና፤ ከኔፊ ንግስና እስከቅርብ ጊዜ ድረስ ከኔፋውያን በተገነጠሉት ሁሉ መካከል ንጉስ መሆኑ ታወቀ።

፴፮ እንግዲህ እነዚህ ተገንጣዮች ከኔፋውያን አንድ ዓይነት ትምህርት እና መረጃ ነበራቸው፤ አዎን በዚህ ዓይነት ሁኔታ ስለጌታ እውቀት ተምረው ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ከመገንጠላቸው ብዙም ሳይቆይ፤ እንደ ላማናዊያን ባህል በመጠጣት፤ ለሰንፍና፤ እናም ለሁሉም አይነት-ዘሙትነት ቦታ በመስጠት፤ አዎን፤ ጌታ አምላካቸውን ሙሉ በሙሉ ረሱት፤ ከላማናውያን የበለጠ ጠጣርና፤ ንሰሃን የማይገቡ ስለመሆናቸው፤ እናም ኃጢአተኞችና፤ አስፈሪዎች ስለመሆናቸው ለመተረክ የሚያስገርም ነበር።

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

አልማ ፱፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ግዛቱን እንዳገኘ የላማናውያንን የልብ ስሜት በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ እንዲነሳሱ ቀስቀስ፤ አዎን፤ ሰዎች ኔፋውያንን በመቃወም ከሰገነታቸው ላይ በመሆን ለላማናውያን እንዲናገሩ ሾማቸው።

፪ እናም ወደ መሣፍንቱ የአሰራ ዘጠነኛው የንግስ ዘመን መጨረሻ ላይ አማሊቅያ ልባቸው በኔፋውያን ላይ እንዲነሳሳ አደረገ፤ ዕቅዱን እስከዚህ ድረስ በመፈፀም፤ አዎን በላማናውያን ላይ ንጉስ ለመሆን እንደፈለገው በመደረጉ፤ በምድሪቱ ላይም ደግሞ፤ አዎን፤ እናም በኔፋውያንም ሆነ በላማናውያን ምድር ባሉት ሰዎች ሁሉ ላይ እንዲነግስ ፈለገ።

፫ ስለዚህ የላማናውያንን ልብ በማጠጠሩ፤ እናም አዕምሮአቸው እንዲታወር በማድረጉ፤ እናም ለቁጣ እነርሱን በማነሳሳቱ፤ ብዙ ወታደሮች ኔፋውያንን ለመዋጋት በአንድ ላይ እራሳቸውን እስከሚሰበሰቡ ድረስ ዕቅዱን ፈፀመ።

፬ እርሱም ኔፋውያንን ለመግዛት፤ እናም እነርሱን ወደ ባርነት ለማምጣት የሰዎቹ ቁጥር ታላቅ በመሆኑ ታላቅ ውሳኔን አድርጎ ነበር።

፭ እናም የኔፋውያንን ብርታትና፤ የመጠለያ ቦታዎቻቸውን፤ እናም ደካማ የሆነውን የከተማቸውን ክፍል የሚያውቁ በመሆናቸው ዙሪያውያንን ዋና ሻምበል በማድረግ ሾሞ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱን በሠራዊቱ ላይ ዋና ሻምበል በማድረግ ሾመ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጦር ሰፈራቸውን እነሱና፤ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ወደ ዛራሌምላ ምድር ሄዱ።

፯ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ስልጣንን በማምታታት፤ እና በማጭበርበር እያገኘ ባለበት ጊዜ፤ ሞርኒ፤ በሌላ በኩል የሰዎችን አዕምሮ ለጌታ ለአምላካቸው ታማኝ እንዲሆኑ ያዘጋጅ ነበር።

፰ አዎን፤ የኔፋውያን ወታደሮችን አጠናከረ፤ እናም ትናንሽ ምሽጎችን፤ ወይንም የመጠለያ ሰፍራዎችን እንዲሰሩ አደረገ፤ ወታደሮቹን ለመክበብ መሬቱ እንዲቆለል፤ እናም ደግሞ በድንጋይ ግድግዳም ዙሪያውን፤ ከተሞቻቸውንና የምድሪቱን ዳርቻ፤ አዎን፤ በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ሁሉ ከበበ።

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

፱ እናም በደንብ ባልተዘጋጀው ምሽጋቸው ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች እስቀምጦ ነበር፤ እናም በኔፋውያን የተያዙትን ምድር እንደዚህ አጠረና አጠናከረ።

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

፲ እናም በጌታ ይኖሩ ዘንድ፣ እናም በጠላቶቻቸው የክርስቲያኖች ጉዳይ ተብሎ የተጠራውን ይጠብቁ ዘንድ፣ ነፃነታቸውን፣ ምድራቸውን፣ ሚስቶቻቸውን፣ ልጆቻቸውንና ሰላማቸውን ለመደገፍ ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

፲፩ እናም ሞሮኒ ጠንካራና፣ ኃያል ሰው ነበር፤ እርሱም ፍፁም የሆነ ሰው ቀት ያለው ሰው ነበር፤ እምን በደም መፋሰስ የማይደሰት ሰው ነበር፤ ነፍሱም በሀገሩ መብትና ነጻነት፣ እናም በወንድሞቹ ከመታሰርና ከባርነት መብትና ነጻነት ትደሰታለች፤

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

፲፪ አዎን፣ እግዚአብሔር በህዝቡ ላይ ብዛት ያላቸው ልዩ መብቶችን፣ እናም በረከቶችን በማድረግ ለአምላክ ምስጋናን በማቅረብ ልቡ የተሞላ፤ ለህዝቡ ደህንነት እናም ጥበቃ ሲል እጅግ የሰራ ሰው ነው።

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

፲፫ አዎን፣ እናም እርሱ በክርስቶስ ፅኑ እምነት ያለው ሰው ነበር፤ እናም የህዝቡን መብት፣ ሀገሩንና ኃይማኖቱን፣ ደሙ እስከሚፈስ ድረስ እንኳን ለመጠበቅ መሃላ ምሎ ነበር።

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

፲፬ እንግዲህ አሰፈላጊ ከሆነ ኔፋውያን ደማቸው እስከሚፈሰም ድረስ እንኳን ከጠላቶቻቸው እራሳቸውን እንዲከላከሉ ተምረዋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ህይወታቸውን ከመጠበቅ በቀር በጭራሽ እንዳያጠቁ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በጠላቶቻቸው ላይ ካልሆነ በቀር ጎራዴያቸውን እንዳያነሱ፣ ተምረዋል።

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

፲፭ እናም ይህ እምነታቸው ነበር፣ ይህንንም በማድረግ እግዚአብሔር በምድሪቱ ላይ ያበለፀጋቸዋል፣ ወይንም በሌላ አነጋገር የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ታማኞች እስከሆኑ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ያበለፀጋቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ እንዲሸሹ፣ አለበለዚያም በሚመጣቸው አደጋ መሰረት ለጦርነት እንዲዘጋጁ ያሰጠነቅቃቸዋል፤

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

፲፮ እናም ደግሞ፣ እግዚአብሔርም ከጠላቶቻቸው ለመከላከል ወዳት እንደሚሄዱ እንዲያውቁ ያደርጋቸዋል፣ ይህንንም በማድረግ፣ ጌታ ያድናቸዋል፤ ይህም የሞሮኒ እምነት ነበር፣ እናም በደም መፋሰስ ሳይሆን በመልካም ስራ ሕዝቡን ለመጠበቅ፤ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ክፋትን በመቋቋም ልቡም በዚያ ተመካች።

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

፲፯ አዎን፣ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፤ ሰዎች ሁሉ እንደ ሞርኒ ከሆኑና ከነበሩ፣ እናም የሚሆኑ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ የሲኦል ኃይል እራሱ ለዘለዓለም ይናወጥ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ዲያብሎስም በሰው ልጆች ልብ ላይ ስልጣን በጭራሽ ባልኖረውም ነበር።

፲፰ እነሆ እርሱም የሞዛያ ልጅ እንደነበረው እንደ አዎን ዓይነት ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም እንደሌሎቹ የሞዛያ ልጆች ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች እንደነበሩት እንደ አልማና ልጆቹ ነበር።

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ሔለማንና ወንድሞቹ ለህዝቡ ከሞርኒ ያነሰን አገልግሎት የሰጡ አልነበሩም፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ሰብከዋል፣ እናም ቃላቸውን የሰሙአቸውን ሰዎች በሙሉ ለንስሃ አጥምቀዋቸዋል።

፳ እናም እነርሱ ሄዱና፣ ህዝቡ በቃላቸው የተነሳ በጌታ የተመረጡ እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ አደረጉ፣ እናም አዎን ለአራት ዓመታትም ያህል በራሳቸው መካከል ከጦርነትና ከፀብ ነፃ ሆኑ።

፳፩ ነገር ግን፣ እንደተናገርኩት፣ በአሰራ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ፣ አዎን፣ በመካከላቸው ሰላም ቢሆንም እንኳን፣ ሳይፈልጉ ከወንድሞቻቸው ከላማናውያን ጋር እንዲጣሉ ተገደዱ።

፳፪ አዎን፣ እናም በአጠቃላይ ፈቃደኞች ባይሆኑም እንኳን፣ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለብዙ ዓመታት ጦርነትን በጭራሽ አላቆሙም ነበር።

፳፫ እንግዲህ በደም መፋሰሱ ደስተኞች ባለመሆናቸው በላማናውያን ላይ ጦርነት በማስነሳታቸው አዝነው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም ይህ ብቻም አልነበረም—ብዙ ወንድሞቻቸውንም ከዚህ ዓለም ወደ ዘለአለማዊው ዓለም ከአምላካቸው ጋር ለመገናኘት ሳይዘጋጁ እንዲላኩ መንስኤ በመሆናቸው አዝነው ነበር።

፳፬ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በአንድ ወቅት ወንድሞቻቸው በነበሩት፣ አዎን፣ እናም ከቤተክርስቲያናቸው በተገነጠሉትና፣ ትተዋቸው በሄዱት፣ እናም ከላማናውያን ጋር በመሆን ሊያጠፋቸው በሄዱት አረመኔ ሰዎች ጭካኔ ሚስቶቻቸውና፣ ልጆቻቸው እንዲጨፈጨፉና እንዲያጠፏቸው ዘንድ ህይወታቸውን ለመስጠት ለመፍቀድ አልቻሉም።

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hear-ken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inso-much that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nine-teenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluc-tantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwith-standing their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shed-ding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, un-prepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የጠበቀ እስካለ
ድረስ ወንድሞቻቸው በነፋውያን ደም ደስታን እንዲያገኙ
ለመመልከት አይቻላቸውም፤ ምክንያቱም የእግዚአብሔር
ቃል ኪዳን እንደነበረው፣ ትዕዛዛቱን ከጠበቁ በምድሪቱ
ላይ ይበለፅጋሉ።

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should
rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as
there were any who should keep the commandments
of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they
should keep his commandments they should prosper
in the land.

አልማ ፱፱

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት አስራ አንደኛ ወር፣ በወሩ አስረኛ ቀን፣ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች ወደ አሞኒህ ምድር እንደቀረቡ ታዩ።

፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ከተማዋ በድጋሚ ተገንብታ ነበር፣ ሞርኒም በከተማዋ ዳርቻ ሠራዊቱን አስፍሯል፣ እናም በዙሪያቸው ከላማናውያን ጦርና ድንጋይ የሚጋርዳቸውን አፈር ቆልለዋል፤ እነሆም፣ በድንጋይና በጦር ይዋጉ ነበርና።

፫ እነሆ የአሞኒህ ከተማ ድጋሚ ተሰርታ ነበር ብያለሁ። እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ግማሹ ክፍል በድጋሚ ተሰርቶ ነበር፤ እናም ላማናውያን ከህዝቡ ክፋት የተነሳ አንዴ አጥፍተውት ስለነበር በድጋሚ በቀላሉ የሚያዝ ነው በማለት ገምተው ነበር።

፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ቁጣቸው ምን ያህል ታላቅ ነበር፤ እነሆም፣ ኔፋውያን በዙሪያቸው ያለውን ተረተር ቆፍረው ቆለሉ፣ ይህም ትልቅ በመሆኑ ላማናውያን በዚህ ላይ ጥቃትን ይፈፀሙ ዘንድ ድንጋይ እናም ጦር ለመወርወር አልቻሉም፣ መግቢያቸው በኩል ካልሆነም በቀር በእነርሱ ላይ ለመምጣትም አልቻሉም ነበር።

፭ እንግዲህ በዚህ ጊዜ የላማናውያን ዋና ሻምበል፣ ኔፋውያን የሰፍራቸውን ደህንነት ለማዘጋጀት ባደረጉት ጥበብ እጅግ ተደንቆ ነበር።

፮ እንግዲህ የላማናውያን መሪዎች በቁጥር ብዙ በመሆናቸው፣ አዎን ከዚህ ቀደም እንዳደረጉት በእነርሱ ላይ ለመምጣት እድሉን ለመጠቀም እንችላለን ብለው ገምተው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በጋሻዎችና፣ በደረት ኪሶቻቸው አራሳቸውን አዘጋጅተው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ከቆዳ በተሰሩ ልብሶች፣ አዎን፣ እርቃናቸውን በሚሸፍኑላቸው ወፍራም ልብሶች፣ አራሳቸውን አዘጋጅተው ነበር።

፯ እናም እንደዚህ በመዘጋጀታቸውም በቀላሉ ወንድሞቻቸውን እንደሚያሸንፉና በባርነት ቀንበር ስር እንደሚያደርጉ፣ ወይም እንደፍላጎታቸውም እንደሚገድሉአቸውና እንደሚጨፈጭቷቸው ገምተዋል።

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በከፍተኛ ሁኔታ እስከሚገርማቸው ድረስ በሌላ ልጆች መካከል ታይቶ በማይታወቅ ሁኔታ ተዘጋጅተው ነበር። እንግዲህ በሞርኒ ትዕዛዝም መሰረት ለጦርነቱ በላማናውያን ላይ ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን፣ ወይንም አማሊቅያውያን በእንደዚህ ዓይነት የጦርነት ዝግጅት እጅግ ተገርመው ነበር።

፲ እንግዲህ ንጉሰ አማሊቅያ ከኔፊ ምድር ከሠራዊቱ ፊት የሚመጣ ቢሆን ኖሮ፣ ምናልባት ላማናውያን የኔፋውያንን አሞኒህ ከተማ እንዲያጠቁ ያደርግ ነበር፣ እነሆ እርሱ ለህዝቡ ደም ምንም ደንታ የለውምና።

፲፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አማሊቅያ እራሱ ወደ ጦርነቱ አልመጣም። እናም እነሆ፣ ዋናው ሻምበሉ በአሞኒህ ከተማ ኔፋውያንን ለማጥቃት አልደፈረም፤ ሞሮኒ በኔፋውያን የሚደረጉትን ጉዳዮች በመቀየሩ፣ ላማናውያን በአፈገፈጉበት ሰፍራ ተቆጥተውና በእነርሱ ላይ ለመምጣት አልቻሉም ነበር።

፲፪ ስለዚህ ላማናውያን ወደ ምድረበዳው አፈገፈጉ፣ እናም የጦር ሰፍራቸውን ወሰዱና፣ በሁለተኛ ደረጃ ኔፋውያንን ለማጥቃት የሚመች ጥሩ ሰፍራ ብለው ወደ ገመቱት የኖህ ምድር ቀጠሉ።

፲፫ ላማናውያን ሞሮኒ ም ሆነ፣ የደህንነት ምሽግ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ባሉት እያንዳንዱ ከተማ ዙሪያ መመሸጉን አላወቁም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ በቆራጥ ውሳኔ ወደ ኖህ ምድር ዘመቱ፤ አዎን፣ የላማናውያን ዋና ሻምበል መጣ፣ እናም የከተማዋን ህዝብ ለማጥፋት መሃላ አደረገ።

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በሚገርማቸው ሁኔታ፣ የኖህ ከተማ፣ ደካማ ሰፍራ የነበረችው፣ አሁን፣ በሞሮኒ አማካኝነት፣ ጠንካራ ሆነች፣ አዎን፣ ከአሞኒህም ከተማ እንኳን በመብለጥ ጠንካራ ሆነች።

፲፭ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ ይህ በሞሮኒ የነበረ ብልህ ሁኔታ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በአሞኒህ ከተማ ይፈራሉ፤ እናም እስከአሁን የኖህ ከተማ የምድሪቱ ደካማው ክፍል በመሆኑ፣ ስለዚህ በዚያ ሰፍራ ለመዋጋት ይሄዳሉ ብሎ ገምቶ ነበር፣ ይህም ነገር የሆነው ሞሮኒ እንደተመኘው ነበር።

፲፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ሞሮኒ ሌሂን በከተማዋ ላይ ዋና ሻምበል በማድረግ ሾሞት ነበር፤ እናም በሲዳም ወንዝ በሰተምሰራቅ ባለው ሸለቆም ከላማናውያን ጋር የተዋጋው ይኸው ሌሂ ነበር።

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ሌሂ ከተማዋን ማስተዳደሩን ላማናውያን ባወቁ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ተቆጡ፣ ምክንያቱም ሌሂን እጅግ ይፈሩት ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ዋናው ሻምበላቸው ከተማዋን ለማጥቃት መሃላ ምሎ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ እነርሱም ሠራዊታቸውን አምጥተው ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

፲፰ እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን የተገነባው ግንብ ረጅም በመሆኑ፣ እናም በዙሪያው የተቆፈረው ኩሬ ጥልቅ በመሆኑ በመግቢያው በኩል ካልሆነ በቀር ወደ ደህንነታቸው ምሽግ በሌላ መንገድ መግባት አልቻሉም።

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

፲፱ እናም ኔፋውያን ወደ ምሽጉ ላይ ድንጋይና ቀስቶቻቸውን በመጣል በማንኛውም መንገድ ለመውጣት የሚሞክሩ ሰዎችን ሁሉ ለማጥፋት ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

፳ ስለዚህም፣ አዎን፣ ጠንካራ ሰዎቻቸውም፣ በጎራዳዎቻቸው እናም በወንጭፎቻቸው፣ በመግቢያው በኩል ወደ ደህንነት ቦታቸው ለመምጣት የሚሞክሩትን ሁሉ ለመምታት ተዘጋጅተው ነበር፤ እናም ከላማናውያን አራሳቸውን ለመከላከል እንደዚህ ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ሻምበሎች ወታደሮቻቸውን መግቢያው በር ድረስ አምጥተዋቸው ነበር፣ እናም ወደ ደህንነት ስፍራቸውን ለመግባት ከኔፋውያን ጋር መጣላት ጀመሩ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በጎይል እስከሚገደሉም ድረስ በተደጋገመ ጊዜ ወደኋላ እንዲሸሹ ተደርገዋል።

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

፳፪ እንግዲህ በመግቢያው በኩል በኔፋውያን ላይ ድል መቀዳጀት አለመቻላቸውን ባወቁ ጊዜ፣ ወደሰራዊታቸው መድረስ ይችሉ ዘንድ ለመዋጋትም እኩል እድል እንዲያገኙ ምሽጎቻቸውን ቆፈሩት፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በዚህ ሙከራቸው በላያቸው ላይ በተወረወረባቸው ድንጋይና የጦር ቀስት ተደመሰሱ፤ እናም አፈሩን በመግፋት ጉድጓዱን ከመሙላት ይልቅ በተወሰነ ደረጃ በቆሰሉና በሞቱ ሰዎች ጉድጓዱን ሞሉት።

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

፳፫ ኔፋውያን በጠላቶቻቸው ላይ ሁሉ እንዲህ ሀይል ነበራቸው፤ እናም ላማናውያን ዋና ሻምበሎቻቸው በሙሉ እስከሚገደሉ ድረስ ኔፋውያንን ለማጥፋት ሞከሩ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከአንድ ሺህ የሚበልጡ ላማናውያን ተገደሉ፤ በሌላ መልኩ፣ ከኔፋውያን አንድም ነፍስ እንኳን አልጠፋም ነበር።

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

፳፬ በመግቢያው በኩል ለላማናውያን ቀስቶች የተጋለጡ ሀምሳ የሚጠጉ ሰዎች ቆሰለው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በጋሻዎቻቸው፣ እናም በደረት ኪሶቻቸውና፣ በቆሶቻቸው ተከልለው ሰለነበር፣ ቁስሎቻቸው ሁሉ በእግሮቻቸው ላይ ነበር፣ ብዙዎቹም በጣም ቆሰለው ነበር።

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ዋና ሻምበሎቻቸው በሙሉ መገደላቸውን ለማናውጥን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ሁሉም ወደ ምድረበዳው ሸሹ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ በትውልዱ ኔፋውያን ለሆነው አማሊቅያ ንጉሳቸው ስለታላቁ ሸንፈታቸው ለመናገር ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ተመለሱ።

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም በኔፋውያን ላይ ፍላጎቱን ባለማግኘቱ በህዝቡ እጅግ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ እርሱም በባርነት ቀንበር ስር እንዲሆኑ አላደረጋቸውም ነበር።

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

፳፯ አዎን፣ እጅግ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፣ እናም እግዚአብሔርንና፣ ደግሞ ሞርኒን ረገመ፣ ደሙንም አጠጣለሁ ብሎ መሃላ ፈፀም ነበር፤ እናም ይህም የሆነው ለህዝቡ ደህንነት ሲል ሞርኒ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቁ ነበር።

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሌላ መልኩ የኔፊ ህዝብ ወደር በሌለው ኃይሉ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ስላሰለቀቃቸው ጌታ አምላካቸውን አመሰገኑ።

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

፳፱ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ የአስራ ዘጠነኛው የንግስ ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፴ አዎን፣ እናም በሌላውም በሺብሎን፣ እናም በቆሪያንቶንና፣ በአዎን እንዲሁም በወንድሞቹ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በንሰሀ በመጠመቅና ከህዝቡ መካከል እንዲሰብኩ በተላኩት በቅዱሱ የእግዚአብሔር ስርዓት በተሾሙት ሁሉ የታወጁትን የእግዚአብሔር ቃላት በትህትና ስላደመጡ በህዝብ መካከል የማያቋርጥ ሰላም፣ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ እጅግ ታላቅ ብልፅግና ነበር።

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

አልማ ፻

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ለጦርነት መዘጋጀቱንም ሆነ ህዝቡን ከላማናውያን መከላከሉን አላቆመም፤ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን መጀመሪያ ወታደሮቹ እንዲጀምሩ በማድረግ፣ በኔፋውያን የተያዙትን ምድር ሁሉ የተቆለለውን አፈር በከተማው ዙሪያ መቆፈር እንዲጀምሩ አደረገ።

፪ እናም በተቆለለው አፈር በጫፋ ላይ ግንድ እንዲሆን አደረገ፤ አዎን፣ በከተማው ዙሪያ በሰው ቁመት የተሰራ የእንጨት አጥር እንዲሆን አደረገ።

፫ ከእንጨት በተሰራው ላይ በግንዱ ዙሪያ ሹል እንጨት እንዲሰራ አደረገ፤ እናም የሾለው እንጨት ጠንካራና ከፍ ያለ ነበር።

፬ እናም በሹል እንጨት የተሰሩትን እንዲከልሉ ምሶሶ እንዲቆም አደረገ፤ እናም የላማናውያን ድንጋይና ቀስቶቹ የሞሮኒን ወታደሮች መምታት እንዳይችሉ በማማዎቹ ላይ የጥበቃ ሰፍራ እንዲሆን አደረገ።

፭ እናም ማማው እንደ ፍላጎታቸውና ብርታታቸው፣ በከተማዋ ግንብ ለመጠጋት የሞከሩትን ለመግደል ከላይ ሆነው ድንጋይ ለመወርወር እንዲችሉ ሆኖ ነበር የተዘጋጀው።

፮ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ባሉት ከተሞች ዙሪያ ሞሮኒ ጠላቶችን ለመከላከል ጠንካራ ምሽግ እንደዚህ አዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ወታደሮቹ በምድረበዳው ወደ ምስራቅ እንዲሄዱ አደረገ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በራሳቸው ምድር በሰተምስራቅ በምድረበዳው የነበሩትን ላማናውያን ሁሉ በዛራሔምላ ምድር በሰተደቡብ ወደነበረው ወደራሳቸው ምድር አስወጡአቸው።

፰ እናም የኔፌ ምድር ከምስራቅ ባህር እስከ ምዕራብ ባህር ድረስ በቀጥተኛ መንገድ የተቋቋመ ነበር።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ላማናውያንን በሰተሰሜን ከነበረው ርሰታቸው ሁሉ በምስራቅ በኩል ከምድረበዳው ባሰወጣቸው ጊዜ፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር የሚኖሩ ነዋሪዎችንና በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ ያሉትን በሰተምስራቅ በምድረበዳው እስከ ባህሩ ዳርቻ ድረስም እንኳን እንዲጓዙ እናም ምድሪቱን እንዲወርሱ አደረገ።

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

፲ እናም ደግሞ በሰተደቡብ በራሳቸው ምድር ዳርቻ ሠራዊቱን አስቀመጠና፣ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ወታደሮቹንና ህዝቡን ይጠብቅ ዘንድ ምሽግ እንዲሰሩ አደረገ።

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

፲፩ እናም በምድረቦዳው በምስራቅ እናም ደግሞ በሰተምዕራብ በኩል የላማናውያን ጠንካራ ምሽጎችን አጠፋ፣ አዎን፣ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድርና በኔፊ ምድር መካከል፣ ከባህሩ ከምዕራብ ጀምሮ እስከሲዶም ወንዝ ጫፍ መሸገ— ኔፋውያን በሰሜን በኩል ያለውን መሬት በሙሉ፣ አዎን፣ እንደፍላጎታቸውም ከለጋስ ምድር በሰተሰሜን በኩል ያለውን ምድር በሙሉ ያዙ።

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

፲፪ ሞርኒ በየቀኑ በቁጥር ከሚጨምሩት ሠራዊቶቹ ጋር፣ ስራው ለእነርሱ የጥበቃ ማረጋገጫ በመሆኑ፣ ላማናውያንን ከራሳቸው ምድር በምድራቸውም ባሉት ሀብቶቻቸው ላይ ስልጣን እንዳይኖራቸው ጉልበታቸውን፣ እናም ስልጣናቸውን ለማጥፋት ፈለገ።

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን የከተማዋን መሰረት ጀመሩና፣ የከተማዋንም ስም ሞርኒ ብለው ጠሯት፤ እናም ይህ በባህሩ በሰተምስራቅ በኩል ነበር፤ እናም በላማናውያን ይዘታ ሥር በሆነው በደቡብ ዳርቻ ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

፲፬ እናም ደግሞ የአሮንንና የሞርኒን ወሰን የሚያገናኘውን በሞርኒና በአሮን ከተማ መካከል የከተማ መሰረትን ጀመሩ፤ እናም የከተማዋን ወይም የምድሪቱን ስም ኒፋአያህ ብለው ጠሯት።

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

፲፭ እናም ደግሞ በዚያው ዓመት በሰተሰሜን በኩል ብዙ ከተሞችን መሰራት ጀመሩ፣ አንድ በተለየ ሁኔታ የሰሩትን ሌላ ብለው ጠሩት፣ ይህም በባህሩ ሰርጥ ዳርቻ በሰተሰሜን በኩል ነበር።

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

፲፮ እናም ሀያኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the twentieth year.

፲፯ እናም በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ አንደኛ ዓመት መጀመሪያ የንግስና ዘመን ላይ የኔፊ ህዝብ በእንደዚህ ዓይነት ብልጽግና ላይ ነበር።

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፲፰ እናም እጅግ በለፀጉ፣ እናም እጅግም ሀብታም ሆኑ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ተባዙና በረቱ።

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

፲፱ እናም ጌታ ለሰው ልጆች ያደረገውን ቃል በሙሉ ለመፈፀም እንዴት መሀሪና ፍትሀዊ እንደሆነ እንመለከታለን፤ አዎን፣ ለሌላ በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን ቢሆን፣ እንዲህ ብሎ የተናገራቸው ቃላት የተረጋገጡ መሆናቸውን ለመመልከት እንችላለን።

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

፳፻ እንተ እና ልጆቻህ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ እናም እነርሱ የተባረኩ ይሆናሉ፤ ትዕዛዛቴንም እስከጠበቁ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ይበለፀጋሉ። ነገር ግን ትዕዛዛቴን እስካልጠበቁ ድረስ ከጌታ ፊት እንደሚለዩ አስታውሱ።

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

፳፻ እናም እነዚህ ቃል ኪዳኖች ለኔፊ ህዝብ እውነትነታቸው እንደሚረጋገጥ እናያለን፤ ይህ በመካከላቸው የነበረው ፀብና ጥል፤ አዎን፣ ግድያቸውና፣ ዝርፊያቸው፣ ጣኦት አምላኪነታቸውና፣ እርኩስታቸው በእነርሱም ላይ ጦርነትና ጥፋትን አምጥቶባቸው ነበርና።

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

፳፻ እናም በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ኃጢአተኞች ወንድሞቻቸው በባርነት በተመደቡ፣ ወይም በጎራዴ በጠፉ፣ ወይም እምነት አጥተው በመነሙኑ፣ እናም ከላማናውያን ጋር በተቀላቀሉ ጊዜ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ታማኝ የነበሩት እነዚያ በሁሉም ጊዜ ድነዋል።

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

፳፻ ነገር ግን እነሆ እንደሞሮኒ ጊዜ አዎን፣ በመሣፍንቱ በሀያ እንደኛ የንግስና ዘመን በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን፣ ከኔፊ ጊዜ ጀምሮ በኔፊ ሰዎች መካከል በጭራሽ እንዲህ ያለ ደስታ አልነበረም።

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ሁለተኛ የንግስና ዘመንም እንዲህ በሰላም ተፈፀመ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ሀያ ሶስተኛው ዓመት።

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ አራተኛ የንግስና ዘመን መጀመሪያ ላይ፣ በሌሂ ምድር ዳርቻ ላይ ተገጣጥመው በነበሩት የሌሂን ምድር እና የሞሪያንተንን ምድር በተመለከተ በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል በተፈጠረው ፀብ ባይሆን ኖሮ በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል ሰላም በሆነ ነበር፤ ሁለቱም በባህሩ ስርጥ ዳርቻ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

፳፻ እነሆም፣ የሞሪያንተንን ምድር የራሳቸው ያደረጉት ሰዎች ከሌሂ ምድር ትንሹን ክፍል ይገባናል ብለው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ የሞሪያንተን ህዝብ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ጦር እስኪያነሱ ድረስ በመካከላቸው የጋለ መጣላት ተጀምሮ ነበር፣ እናም በጎራዴዎቻቸው እነርሱን ለመግደል ቆርጠው ነበር።

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

፳፻ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የሌሂን ምድር የያዙት ሰዎች ወደ ሞሮኒ የጦር ሰፈር ሸሹ፣ እናም እርዳታን ለማግኘት ለእርሱ አቤት አሉ፤ እነሆ አልተሳሳቱም ነበርና።

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ሞሪያንተን ተብሎ በሚጠራው ሰው የተመሩት የሞሪያንተን ህዝብ፣ የሌሂ ህዝብ ወደ ሞርኒ የጦር ሰፈር መሸሻቸውን ባወቁ ጊዜ፣ የሞርኒ ወታደሮች በእነርሱ ላይ እንደሚመጡ እናም እንዲያጠፋላቸው እጅግ ፈርተው ነበር።

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

፳፱ ስለዚህ፣ ሞሪያንተን ወደሰሜን በትልቅ ውኃ ወደተሸፈነው ስፍራ እንዲሸሹ እናም በሰተሰሜን በኩል ያለውን መሬት እንዲይዙ ልባቸውን አነሳሳ።

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

፴ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህንን ዕቅድ (ለሃዘን ምክንያት ይሆን የነበረውን) እንዲፈፀም ማድረግ ይችሉ ነበር፣ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሞሪያንተን ሰሜታዊ ስለነበር፣ እነሆም በእንዲት ገረዱ ተቆጣ፣ እናም ክፋኛ መታት።

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሷ ሸሸችና፣ ወደ ሞርኒ የጦር ሰፈር መጣች፣ እናም የሆነውን ሁሉ በተመለከተና፣ ደግሞ ወደ ሰሜን ለመሸሽ ያላቸውን ሙከራ ለሞርኒ ነገረችው።

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

፴፪ እንግዲህ በለጋስ ወይም በሞርኒ የነበሩ ሠዎች የሞሪያንተንን ቃል በመስማት እናም ከህዝቡም ጋር ይቀላቀላሉ፣ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር የከፋ ሁኔታን ሊያስከትል የሚችል የምድር ክፍሎችን ያገኛሉ፣ አዎን፣ ውጤቱም ለነፃነታቸው ውድቀት መንስኤ ሊሆን የሚችል ነው ብለው ፈርተው ነበር።

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

፴፫ ስለዚህ ሞርኒ፣ ከጦር ሰፈራቸው፣ የሞሪያንተንን ስዎች እርምጃ ለማቋረጥ፣ ወደ ሰሜን ክፍል እንዲያሸሹም ለማቆም ወታደር ላከ።

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ወደመው ምድር ወሰን እስከሚመጡ ድረስ አላቋረጧቸውም ነበር፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ሰሜን በኩል በቀጭኑ የባህሩ ማለፊያ በኩል አዎን፣ በባህሩ በኩል በሰተምዕራብና በሰተምስራቅ በኩል እርምጃቸውን አቋረጡ።

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሞርኒ የተላኩት ሠራዊቶች፣ ቴኦክሎም ተብሎ በሚጠራ ሰው የተመሩት፣ የሞሪያንተንን ህዝብ አገኙ፤ እናም የሞሪያንተን ህዝብ ግትር ነበር፣ በእርሱ (በኃጢአተኛና በሽንጋይ ቃላቱ በመቀስቀሳቸው የተነሳ) ጦርነቱም በመካከላቸው ሆነ፣ በዚያም ቴኦክሎም የሞሪያንተንን ገደለውና፣ ወታደሮቹን አሸነፈ፣ እናም በሞርኮም ወሰዱአቸውና፣ ወደ ሞርኒ የጦር ሰፈር ተመለሱ። እናም በዚሁ የመሣፍንቱ ሀያ አራተኛው የንግስና ዘመን በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ ተፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፳፮ እናም የሞሪያንተንን ህዝብ እንደዚህ ነበር የተመለሱት። እናም ሰላሙን ለመጠበቅ ቃል ኪዳን ከገቡ በኋላ ወደ ሞሪያንተን ምድር ተመለሱና፣ በእነርሱና በሌላ ህዝብ መካከል አንድነት ሆነ፤ እናም ደግሞ የሌላ ህዝብ ወደራሳቸው ምድር ተመለሱ።

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔሬ ህዝብ ሰላምን መልሰው በመሰረቱበት በዚሁ ዓመት፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ፍፁም ትክክል በሆነ ሁኔታ የፍርድ ወንበሩን ቦታ ይዞ የነበረው ሁለተኛው ዋና ዳኛም ኒፋኦህ ሞተ።

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

፳፰ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እናም በአልማና በአባቱ ከሁሉም ነገር በላይ ቅዱስ ተደርገው የተገመቱትን መዝገቦች ከአልማ አልቀበልሞ ብሎ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ አልማ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለልጁ ሔለማን ሰጠው።

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

፳፱ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ የኒፋኦህ ልጅ በአባቱ ቦታ የፍርድ ወንበሩን እንዲይዝ ተመደበ፤ እዎን በትክክል እንዲፈርድና፣ ሰላምንና፣ የህዝቡን ነፃነት እንዲጠብቅ፣ እናም ጌታ እምላካቸውን ለማምለክ ቅዱስ የሆነውን ልዩ መብታቸውን እንዲፈቅድላቸው፣ እዎን፣ በጊዜው ሁሉ እግዚአብሔርን ምክንያት እንዲደግፍና እንዲከላከል፣ እናም ኃጢአተኞችን እንደወንጀላቸው ወደ ፍርድ ለማምጣት፣ በመሀላና፣ በቅዱስ ስርዓት ዋና ዳኛ በመሆንና፣ በህዝቡ ላይ ገዢ ሆኖ ተሹሞ ነበር።

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

፴ እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ሰውም ፓሆራን ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር። እናም ፓሆራን የአባቱን ወንበር ያዘና፣ በሀያ አራተኛ ዓመት መጨረሻም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የንግስናውን ዘመን ጀመረ።

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

አልሞፕ ፶፩

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ አምስተኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን መሬታቸውን በተመለከተ በሌሂና በሞሪያንተን ህዝብ መካከል ሰላምን መሰረቱ፣ እናም ሀያ አምስተኛውን ዓመት በሰላም ጀመሩ፤

፪ ይህን እንጂ፣ የኔፊ ህዝብ በምድሪቱ በሙሉ ለረጅም ጊዜ ሰላምን ማቆየት አልቻሉም፣ ምክንያቱም ዋናውን ዳኛ ፓሆራንን በተመለከተ በህዝቡ መካከል ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ እነሆ፣ ከህዝቡ የተወሰነው ክፍል በህጉ ጥቂት ነጥቦች እንዲለወጡ ፈልገው ነበርና።

፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ፓሆራን ህጉን አልለወጠም፣ እንዲለወጥም አልፈቀደም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ የህጉን መለወጥ በተመለከተ ከአቤቱታቸው ጋር ድምፃቸውን የላኩትንም አላዳመጣቸውም ነበር።

፬ ስለዚህ፣ ህጉ እንዲለወጥ የፈለጉት በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ከእንግዲህ ዋና ዳኛ እንዲሆን አልፈለጉም፤ ስለዚህ ይህንን በተመለከተ የጋለ ፀብ ተነሳ፣ ነገር ግን እስከ ደም መፋሰስ አልነበረም።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ፓሆራን ከፍርድ ወንበር ዙፋን እንዲወርድ ፈልገው የነበሩት የንጉሱ ሰዎች ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ህጉ ነፃ መንግሥቱን በመጣል እናም ምድሪቱም በንጉስ እንዲገዛ ፈልገው ነበር።

፮ እናም ፓሆራን በምድሪቱ ላይ ዋና ዳኛ ሆኖ እንዲቀር የሚፈልጉ ለራሳቸው ነፃ ሰዎች የሚለውን ስም ወስደው ነበር፤ እናም እንደዚህ በመካከላቸው ክፍፍል ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም ነፃ ሰዎቹ መብታቸውንና፣ በነፃው መንግሥት የኃይማኖታቸውን ነፃነት ለመጠበቅ መሀል እንዲሁም ቃል ኪዳን ገብተው ነበርና።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንዲህ ዓይነቱ ፀብ በህዝቡ ድጋፍ መልስ አግኝቶ ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የህዝቡ ድምፅ የነፃ ሰዎችን ደገፈና፣ ፓሆራን የፍርድ ወንበር ያዘ፣ ይህም በፓሆራን ወንድሞች እናም በነፃነት ሰዎች መካከል ታላቅ ደስታን ፈጠረ፤ ደግሞም ብዙዎቹ የነፃነት ሰዎች ንጉሳዊ የሆነውን ስርዓት እንዳይቃወሙ፣ ነገር ግን የነፃነቱን መንስኤ እንዲከላከሉ ተገደው ነበር።

Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

፳፯ እንግዲህ ንጉሶቹን ይደግፉ የነበሩት፣ በትውልድ ታላቅ ስፍራ የነበራቸው፤ እናም ንጉስ ለመሆንም የፈለጉ ነበሩ፤ እናም ኃይልንና ስልጣንን በህዝቡ ላይ በሚፈልጉትም ይደግፉ ነበር።

፳፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል እንደዚህ ዓይነት ፀብ ወሳኝ የሆነበት ጊዜ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም እነሆ፣ አማሊቅያ የላማናውያን ሰዎችን ልብ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በድጋሚ እነሳሰቶ ነበር፤ እናም ከምድሪቱ ከሁሉም ክፍል ወታደሮችን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰበና፣ አስታጠቃቸው፣ እናም በሙሉ ትጋቱ ለጦርነት አዘጋጃቸው፤ ምክንያቱም የሞርኒን ደም ለመጠጣት ምሎ ነበርና።

፳፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እርሱ የገባው ቃል ኪዳን የተጣደፈ መሆኑን እንመለከታለን፤ ይሁን እንጂ እራሱን እና ወታደሮቹን ከኔፊውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት አዘጋጀ።

፴፬ አሁን የእርሱ ወታደሮች ከዚህ ቀደም እንደነበሩት ታላቅ አልነበሩም፣ ምክንያቱም ብዙ ሺዎች በኔፊውያን ተገድለው ነበርና፤ ነገር ግን ታላቅ ውድቀት ቢደርስባቸውም፣ አማሊቅያ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ለመምጣት የሚያፈራ እስከሚሆን ድረስ፣ በሚያሰገርም ሁኔታ ብዙ ወታደሮችን በአንድነት ሰብሰቦ ነበር።

፴፭ አዎን፣ አማሊቅያም ቢሆን ራሱ ላማናውያንን በመምራት መጥቶ ነበር። እናም ይህም የነበረው በመሣፍንቱ የሀያ አምስተኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን ነበር፤ እናም በዚሁ ጊዜ ነበር ኔፊውያን ዋና ዳኛ የነበረውን ፓሆራንን በተመለከተ ለፀባቸው መፍትሔ መፈለግ የጀመሩት።

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የንጉሱ ሰዎች ተብለው የሚጠሩት ሰዎች ላማናውያን ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት መምጣታቸውን በሰሙ ጊዜ በልባቸው ተደስተው ነበር፤ እናም በዋናው ዳኛና፣ ደግሞ በነፃነቱ ሰዎች፣ እጅግ በመቆጣታቸው የጦር መሳሪያቸውን ለማንሳት አልፈቀዱም፣ ሀገራቸውንም ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎችን አላነሱም ነበር።

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ ይህንን፣ እናም ደግሞ በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ ላማናውያን መምጣታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እነርሱን ለመጠበቅ በታላቅ ትጋት ከእርሱ ጋር አብረው የሰሩት ሰዎች ግትር በመሆናቸው እጅግ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በእጅግ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ ነፍሱም በእነርሱ ላይ በቁጣ ተሞልታ ነበር።

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ወደ ምድሪቱ ገዢ እንዲያነበው የፈለገውን፣ እናም ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል የሚቃወሙትን እንዲያሰገድድ፣ አለበለዚያም እንዲገድላቸው ለእርሱ (ለሞሮኒ) ስልጣንን እንዲሰጠው ከህዝቡ ድጋፍ ጋር አቤቱታውን ላከ።

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

፲፮ በህዝቡ መካከል እንደዚህ ዓይነቱን ፀብና ተቃውሞ ማቆም የእርሱ የመጀመሪያው ጥንቃቄ ነበር፤ እነሆ ይህ ከዚህ ቀደም የጥፋታቸው ሁሉ መንስኤ ስለነበር ነው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡም ድምፅ የተነሳ ይህ ተፈቅዶ ነበር።

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ የንጉሱን ሰዎች፣ ትምክህታቸውንና፣ ክብራቸውን እንዲያጠፋ፣ እናም እንዲገድሉላቸው፣ አለበለዚያም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዲወስዱና፣ ነፃነታቸውን እንዲደግፉ እንዲያደርጉ ወታደሮቹን አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሠራዊቱ በሰዎቹ ላይ ዘመቱ፤ እናም እነርሱ ትምክህታቸውንና ክብራቸውን እንደዚህ ያህል ገፈፋቸው፣ ከሞሮኒ ሰዎች ጋር ለመዋጋት የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ሲያነሱ በጎራዳዎቻቸው ድባቅ ተመቱና ተገደሉ።

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከተቃዋሚዎቹ አራት ሺህ የሚሆኑት በጎራዳው ተመትተው ነበር፤ እናም በጦርነቱ ያልተገደሉት መሪዎቻቸውን በዚህን ጊዜ አነርሱን ለፍርድ ለማቅረብ ጊዜ ባለመኖሩ ተወሰደውና ወደ ወህኒ ቤቱ ተጣሉ።

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

፳ እናም ከተቃዋሚዎቹ የተቀሩት፣ በጎራዳ ተመትተው ከተገደሉት ይልቅ፣ የነፃነት አርማን ደገፉ፣ እናም በምሶሶዎቻቸው ላይና፣ በከተሞቻቸው ላይ የነፃነት አርማቸውን እንዲሰቅሉና፣ ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዲያነሱ ተገደዱ።

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

፳፩ እናም የንጉሱ ሰዎች ተብለው በመጠራት ዳግም እንዳይታወቁ ሞሮኒ የንጉሱ ሰዎች የሆኑትን ፍፃሜ አደረገ፤ እናም የልዑልነት ደም አለን በሚሉት ትምክህተኛና ግትር ሰዎች ላይ እንደዚህ መጨረሻቸውን አደረገ፤ ነገር ግን እንደ ወንድሞቻቸው እራሳቸውን ትሁት ማድረግና፣ ከባርነት ለመላቀቅ በጀግንነት እንዲሞጉ አደረጋቸው።

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

፳፪ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ በህዝቡ መካከል ጦርነቱ፣ እናም ፀቡ እንዲቆምና፣ ህዝቡ ለሰላምና ለሰልጣኔ ባሰገደደ፣ እናም ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት እንዲዘጋጁ ህጎችን ባዘጋጀ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን በባህሩ ዳርቻ ወደሞርኒ ምድር መጥተው ነበር።

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን በሞርኒ ከተማ በበቂ ሁኔታ ጠንካሮች አልነበሩም፤ ስለዚህ አማሊቅያ ብዙዎችን ኔፋውያን በመግደል፣ እንዲሸሹ አደረገ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ከተማዋን፣ አዎን፣ ሞሽጋቸውን በሙሉ ያዘ።

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

፳፬ እናም ከሞርኒ ከተማ የሸሹት ወደ ኒፋኦህ ከተማ መጡ፤ እናም ደግሞ የሌሂ ከተማ ሰዎች እራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡና፣ ዝግጅት አደረጉና፣ ላማናውያንን በጦርነት ለመቀበል እራሳቸውን አዘጋጅተው ነበር።

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

፳፭ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ አማሊቅያ ላማናውያን በኒፋኦህ ከተማ ለመዋጋት እንዲሄዱ አልፈቀደላቸውም፣ ነገር ግን በባህሩ ዳርቻ እንዲቆዩ አደረገ፣ ሰዎችንም በሁሉም ከተማ በማድረግ ከተሞቹን እንዲከላከሉ እናም እንዲጠብቁ ተዋቸው።

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

፳፮ እናም የኒፋኦህን ከተማና፣ የሌሂን ከተማ፣ የሞሪያንተንንም ከተማ፣ የአምነርን ከተማ፣ እናም የጊድን ከተማ፣ እንዲሁም የሙሊቅን ከተማ፣ ሁሉንም በባህሩ ዳርቻ በስተምሰራቅ የሚገኙትን ከተሞች መያዙን ቀጠለ።

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

፳፯ እናም በአማሊቅያ ጮሌነት ላማናውያን ቁጥር ሰፍሮ በሌላቸው ሠራዊቶቻቸው፣ በሞርኒ ምሽግ የተመሸጉትን ብዙ ከተሞችን አገኙ፤ እነዚህም በሙሉ ለላማናውያን ጠንካራ ስፍራዎችን ሰጣቸው።

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን፣ ኔፋውያንን ከፊታቸው በማባረርና ብዙዎችን በመግደል ወደላጋሰ ምድር ወሰን ዘመቱ።

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

፳፱ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሪያንተንን የገደለውን፣ እናም ህዝቡንም ከመሸሽ ካቆማቸው ከቴአንኩም ጋር ተገናኙ።

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ከበርካታ ወታደሮቹ ጋር፣ የላጋሰን ምድር፣ እናም ደግሞ በስተሰሜን በኩል ያለውን መሬት ለመውሰድ ወደፊት የተጓዘውን አማሊቅያንም ደግሞ አቆመው።

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

፲፩፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ በቴአንኩም እናም በእርሱ ሰዎች በመመለሱ፣ እነርሱም ታላቅ ጦረኞች በመሆናቸው ቁጣን አገኙ፤ ማንኛውም የቴአንኩም ሰው የሆነ ለማናውያንን በብርታት እንዲሁም በጦር ስልት ስለሚበልጠው፣ ስለዚህም ለማናውያን ላይ የበላይነትን አገኙ።

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

፲፩፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ጨለማ እስከሚሆን ድረስ አስፈራሩአቸውና ገደሉአቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቴአንኩምና፣ ሰዎቻቸው በላጋስ ምድር ዳርቻ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤ አማሊቅያም በባህሩ ዳር በኩል ባለው የባህር ዳርቻ በኩል ድንኳኑን ተከለና፣ በዚህም ሁኔታ ነበር የተባረሩት።

And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

፲፩፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ፣ ቴአንኩምና አገልጋዩ በቀስታ በምሽት ወጡ፣ ወደ አማሊቅያ የጦር ሰፈርም ሄዱ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ በሰራቸውና በቀኑ ሙቀት የተነሳ እጅግ በመድከማቸው እንቅልፍ ጥሏቸው ነበር።

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

፲፩፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቴአንኩም በቀስታ በድብቅ በመሆን ወደ ንጉሱ ድንኳን ገባና፣ በጦር ልቡን ወጋው፣ እናም እርሱም የንጉሱ አገልጋዮች እንዲይነቁ ሞቱን በፍጥነት አደረገው።

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

፲፩፭ እናም ቴአንኩም በድጋሚ በሚሰጥር ወደራሱ የጦር ሰፈር ተመለሰ፣ እናም እነሆ፣ ሰዎቹም ተኝተው ነበር፣ እርሱም ቀስቀሳቸውና፣ ያደረጋቸውን ነገሮች በሙሉ ነገራቸው።

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

፲፩፮ እናም ለማናውያን ነቅተው በእነርሱ ላይ ይመጣሉ ብሎ በመፍራቱ ወታደሮቹ እንዲዘጋጁ አደረገ።

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

፲፩፯ እናም በኔፌ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ የሀያ አምስተኛ የንግስ ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ፤ እናም የአማሊቅያ ዘመንም እንዲህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

አልማ ፶፪

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሆያ ሰድስተኛ የንግስ ዘመን፣ እነሆ፣ በመጀመሪያው ወር በጠዋት ላማናውያን ሲነቁ፣ እነሆ፣ አማሊቅያ በራሱ ድንኳን ውስጥ ሞቶ አገኙት፤ እናም ደግሞ በዚያን ቀን ቴአንኩም ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት ዝግጁ መሆኑን ተመለከቱ።

፪ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ላማናውያን ይህንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ፈርተው ነበር፤ እናም ወደ ሰሜን ክፍል ለመዝመት ከነበራቸው ዕቅድ አንፃር ዕቅዳቸውን ተዉት፤ ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋርም ወደ ሙሌቅ ከተማ አፈገፈጉና፣ በምሽጋቸውም ጥበቃን ፈለጉ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የአማሊቅያ ወንድም በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ ሆኖ ተሾመ፤ እናም ስሙ አሞሮን ይባል ነበር፤ የአማሊቅያ ወንድም ንጉስ አሞሮን በአማሊቅያ ምትክ እንዲነግስ ተሾሞ ነበር።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞሮን በደም መፋሰስ የተወሰዱትን ከተሞች ህዝቡ እንዲቆጣጠር አዘዘ፣ የትኞቹንም ከተሞች ብዙ ደም ያለማፋሰስ አልወሰዱም ነበር።

፭ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ቴአንኩም ላማናውያን የወሰዷቸውን ከተሞችና የያዟቸውን ቦታዎች ለመቆጣጠር ቆራጥ ውሳኔ አድርገው እንደነበር ተመለከተ፤ እናም ደግሞ ቴአንኩም በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ መሆናቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ ላማናውያንን በምሽጋቸው ውስጥ እንዲሉ ለማጥቃት መሞከሩ አሰፈላጊ አለመሆኑን አሰበ።

፮ ነገር ግን የእርሱ የሆኑትን ሰዎች ለጦርነት ያዘጋጀ በማስመስል በዙሪያው እንዲሆኑ አደረገ፤ አዎን፣ እናም በኔፋውያን ከተሞች ዙሪያ ግንብ ገነባ፣ እናም ጠንካራ ስፍራን አዘጋጀ፣ ይህንንም ያደረገው በእርግጥ እራሱን ከእነርሱ ለመከላከል ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ወታደሮቹን ለማጠናከር ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች እስከሚልክ ድረስ ለጦርነት መዘጋጀቱን ቀጠለ።

፰ እናም ደግሞ ወደ እርሱ እጅ የገቡትን እስረኞችን በሙሉ እንዲጠብቁ ሞሮኒ መመሪያዎችን ላከ፤ ላማናውያን ብዙ እስረኞችን በመውሰዳቸው፣ ለወሰዱአቸው ማሰለቀቂያ ይሆኑ ዘንድ የላማናውያን የሆኑትን እስረኞች እንዲጠብቁ ማድረግ ነበረበት።

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

፱ እናም ደግሞ የለጋሰን ምድር እንዲመሸጋት፣ እናም ለማናውያን ሥፍራዎቹን በመያዝ በሁሉም አቅጣጫ ለማጥቃት ኃይልን እንዲያገኙባቸው፣ ወደሰሜኑ በኩል የሚወሰደውን ቀጭኑን ጎዳና እንዲከላከል ትእዛዛትን ላከበት።

፲ እናም ደግሞ ሞሮኒ ያለበትን ምድር በመከላከል ታማኝ እንዲሆን በመፈለጉና፣ በዚያች ምድር ለማናውያንን በሁሉም አጋጣሚ በሰልጣኑ እስካለ ድረስ ለማጥቃትና፣ በተገኘው ሥልጣን ወይም በሌላ መንገድ ከእጃቸው የወጡትን ከተሞች ዳግም ለመያዝ እድልን እንዲፈልግ፣ እናም ደግሞ በላማናውያን እጅ ያልወደቁትን በዙሪያው ያሉትን ከተሞች ምሽግ እንዲጠናከር ፈልጎት ነበር።

፲፩ እናም ደግሞ እንዲህ አለው፣ ወደ አንተ እመጣ ነበር፣ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን በባህሩ በሰተምዕራብ በኩል ባለው ምድር ዳርቻ እየመጡብን ነው፤ እናም እነሆ፣ በእነርሱ ላይ እዘምታለሁ፣ ስለዚህ ወዳንተ ልመጣ አልችልም።

፲፪ እንግዲህ፣ ንጉሱ (አሞሮን) ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወጣ፣ እናም ለንግስቲቱ የወንድሙን መሞት ነገራት፣ እናም ብዙ ሰዎችን በአንድነት ሰበሰባ፣ በባህሩ በሰተምዕራብ ዳርቻም በኩል በኔፋውያን ላይ ዘመቱ።

፲፫ እናም ኔፋውያንን ለማጥቃትና ከባህሩ በሰተምዕራብ ካለው ዳርቻም ኃይላቸውን እንዲያሰወጡ ሞክሮ ነበር፤ እርሱ የወሰዳቸውን ከተሞች እንዲወርሱ የተዋቸውን በባህሩ በምስራቅ ዳርቻ በኩል ደግሞ ኔፋውያንን እንዲያጠቁአቸው፣ እናም እንደ ኃይላቸው፣ በሰራዊቶቻቸው ጉልበት መሰረት የእነርሱን ምድሮች እንዲወሰዱም አዘዘአቸው ነበር።

፲፬ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ስድስተኛ ዓመት ንገሳ መጨረሻ ላይ ኔፋውያን በእንዲህ ያለ አደገኛ ሁኔታ ላይ ነበሩ።

፲፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ስድስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ቴአንኩም በሞሮኒ ትዕዛዝ፣ መርኒም የምድሪቱን ደቡብ፣ እና ምዕራብ ዳርቻዎች ለመጠበቅ ወታደሮችን በአቋቋመው፣ እናም ቴአንኩም ከህዝቡ ጋር የተቀማውን ከተሞች በድጋሚ ለማስመለስ ዘመቻውን ወደለጋሰ ምድር አድርጎ ነበር፤

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቴአንኩም በሙሉቅ ከተማ ላይ ጥቃትን ለማድረግ፣ እናም የሚቻል ከሆነ በድጋሚ ለመውሰድ ትዕዛዝ ተቀበለ።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቴአንኩም በሙሉቅ ከተማ ላይ ጥቃት ለማድረስ ተዘጋጀ፣ እናም በላማናውያን ላይ ከወታደሮቹ ጋር ለመዝመት ዝግጅት አደረገ፤ ነገር ግን በምሽጋቸው በነበሩበት ጊዜ እነርሱን ማሸነፍ የማይቻል መሆኑን ተመልክቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ለወታደሮቹ ተጨማሪ ኃይልን ያገኝ ዘንድ የሞሮኒን መምጣት ለመጠበቅ ዕቅዱን ተወላ፣ ወደላጋስ ከተማ በድጋሚ ተመለሰ።

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ሰባተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን መጨረሻ ላይ ሞሮኒ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር በላጋስ ምድር ደረሰ።

፳፱ እናም በሀያ ስምንተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ፣ ሞሮኒና ቴአንኩም እናም በርካታ ዋና ሻምበሎች ስለጦርነቱ—ላማናውያን ከእነርሱ ጋር እንዲዋጉ ለማስወጣት፤ ወይም ኔፋውያን በጥቂት ዘዴዎች ላማናውያንን ከጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው እንዲያስወጡአቸው በድጋሚም በእነርሱ ላይ ኃይልን ያገኙ ዘንድ፣ እናም በድጋሚ የሙሉቅን ከተማ ለመውሰድ ምን ማድረግ እንዳለባቸው ተማከሩ።

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሙሉቅን ከተማ ወደሚጠብቁት የላማናውያን ሠራዊት መሪ ወደሆነው፣ ያዕቆብ ተብሎ ወደሚጠራው፣ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር በሁለቱ ከተሞች መካከል ባለው ባዶ ስፍራ እንዲገናኙ እንደሚፈልጉ መልዕክተኛ ላኩ። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ዘራማዊ የነበረው፣ ያዕቆብ፣ በገላጣው ስፍራ ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመገናኘት ከሠራዊቱ ጋር አልመጣም።

፷፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በገላጣው ስፍራ ሞሮኒ እነርሱን እንደሚያገኛቸው ተስፋ ስላልነበረው፣ ስለዚህ፣ ላማናውያንን ከጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው ያወጣቸው ዘንድ እንድን ዕቅድ አዘጋጀ።

፷፪ ስለዚህ ቴአንኩም ጥቂት ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች እንዲወስድ፣ እናም በባህሩ ዳርቻ አጠገብ እንዲዘምቱ አደረገ፤ እናም ሞሮኒና፣ ወታደሮቹ በምሽት በሙሉቅ ከተማ በስተምዕራብ በኩል ወደ ምድረበዳው ሄዱ፤ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀን፣ የላማናውያን ጠባቂዎች ቴአንኩምን ባገኙት ጊዜ፣ ርጡ፣ እናም ለመሪያቸው ለያዕቆብ ነገሩት።

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በቴክንኩም ላይ ዘመቱ፤ እናም በቁጥርም የቴክንኩም ሰዎችን በቁጥር ትንሽ ስለነበሩ እናሽንፋቸዋለን ብለው ገመቱ። እናም ቴክንኩም የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በእርሱ ላይ መምጣታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ በሰሜን በኩል በባህሩ ዳርቻ ማፈገፈግ ጀመረ።

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን እርሱ መሸሹን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ድፍረትን አገኙና በወኔ ተከታተሉቸው። እናም በከንቱ የተከተሉቸውን ላማናውያን ቴክንኩም ባሳደዱቸው ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ሞርኒ ከእርሱም ጋር የነበሩት ሰራዊቶቹን እንዲዘምቱና ከተማዋን እንዲይዙ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

፳፭ እናም እንደዚህም አደረጉና፣ ከተማዋን ለመከላከል የቀሩትን፣ አዎን፣ ሁሉንም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ያላሰረከቡትን በሙሉ ገደሉቸው።

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

፳፮ እናም ቴክንኩምን አሳደውት ከሚመለሱት ላማናውያን ጋር ለመገናኘት ከሚቀሩት ወታደሮች ጋር እየዘመተ እያለ፣ የሞርኒ ሰራዊት ክፍል እንደዚህ የሙሉቅን ከተማ ያዙ።

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በለጋስ ምድር አጠገብ እስከሚመጡ ድረስ ቴክንኩምን ተከተሉት፣ እናም ከሌሂና ለጋስ ከተማን እንዲጠብቁ ከተተዉት ጥቂት ወታደሮች ጋር ተገናኙ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

፳፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ የላማናውያን የጦር አዛዥ ሌሂ ከወታደሮቹ ጋር ወደ እነርሱ መምጣታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ሌሂ በእነርሱ ላይ ከመድረሱ በፊት የሙሉቅን ከተማ ለመያዝ እንችልም ብለው በመፍራታቸው በድንጋጤ ሸሹ፤ እነርሱም በጉዞአቸውም የተነሳ ደክመው ነበር፣ እናም የሌሂ ሰዎች ግን አልደከሙም ነበር።

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

፳፱ እንግዲህ ላማናውያን ሞርኒ ከወታደሮቹ ጋር ከበሰተጀርባቸው እንደሆነ አላወቁም ነበር፣ እናም ሁሉም የፈሩት ሌሂንና የእርሱን ህዝቦች ነበር።

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

፴ እንግዲህ ሌሂ ላማናውያንን ሞርኒንና ወታደሮቹን እስከሚያገኙ ሊይዛቸው አልፈለገም ነበር።

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን እርቀው ከማፈገፈጋቸው በፊት በኔፋውያን፣ በአንድ በኩል በሞርኒ፣ እናም በሌላ በኩል በሌሂ ሰዎች ተከበው ነበር፤ ሁሉም ነቃ ያሉና በጥንካሬ የተሞሉ ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን ላማናውያን ብዙ ስለተጓዙም ደክመው ነበር።

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

፲፪ እናም ሞሮኒ እነርሱ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እስከሚያሰረክቡ ድረስ ህዝቡ እንዲያጠቃቸው አዘዘ።

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ያዕቆብ፣ መሪያቸው በመሆኑ፣ እንዲሁም ዞራማዊ በመሆኑ፣ እናም የማይሸነፍ መንፈስ ስለነበረው፣ ላማናውያን በኃይል ከሞሮኒ ጋር እንዲዋጉ መራቸው።

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

፲፬ ሞሮኒ ላማናውያን በሚጓዙበት እቅጣጫ ስለነበረ፣ ስለዚህም ያዕቆብ እነርሱን ለመግደል፣ እናም መንገዱን ወደ ሙሉቅ ከተማ ለመቁረጥ ወስኖ ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሞሮኒና ህዝቡ እጅግ ኃይለኞች ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከላማናውያን ፊት አላፈገፈጉም ነበር።

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሁለቱም በኩል እጅግ በኃይል ተዋጉ፤ እናም በሁለቱም በኩል ብዙዎች ሞቱ፤ አዎን እናም ሞሮኒ ቆሰሎ ነበር፣ ያዕቆብም ተገድሎ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

፲፮ እናም ሌሂ በኃይል ከጠንካራዎቹ ህዝቦቹ ጋር ከጀርባቸው በሀይል አጥቅቷቸው፣ ላማናውያንም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን አሰረኩቡ፤ እናም የተቀሩት እጅግ ግራ በመጋባታቸው ወዴት መሄድም፣ ሆነ እንዴት መዋጋት እንዳለባቸው አያውቁም ነበር።

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

፲፯ እንግዲህ ሞሮኒ ግራ መጋባታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እንዲህ አላቸው፤ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን ወደዚህ ስፍራ የምታመጡ፣ እናም የምታሰረክቡ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ ደማችሁን ማፍሰሳችንን እናቆማለን።

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ይህንን ንግግር በሰሙ ጊዜ፣ ዋና አዛዦቻቸው፣ ከሞት የተረፉት ሁሉ፣ ወደፊት በመምጣት በሞሮኒ እግር ስር የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ጣሉት፣ እናም ደግሞ ህዝቦቻቸውን በሙሉ እንደዚሁ እንዲያደርጉ አዘዙቸው።

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

፲፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ያልጣሉ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ጎራዴዎቻቸውን ያልሰጡ ተወሰዱና፣ ታሰሩ፣ እናም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውንም ተቀመሩና፣ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር ወደ ለጋስ ሞድር ለመሄድ ተገደዱ።

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

፳ እናም እሁን የተወሰዱት እሰረኞች ከተገደሉት፣ አዎን፣ ከሁለቱም በኩል ከተገደሉት በቁጥር ይበልጡ ነበር።

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

አልማ ፶፫

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን በላማናውያን እስረኞች ላይ ጠባቂዎችን አስቀመጡ፤ እናም እነርሱ እንዲሄዱና፤ የእራሳቸውን ሙታን፤ አዎን፤ እናም ደግሞ የተገደሉትን ኔፋውያንን እንዲቀብሩ አስገደዱአቸው፤ ሞርኒም እነርሱ ስራቸውን በሚሰሩበት ጊዜ እንዲጠብቁአቸው ሰዎችን አስቀመጠ።

፪ እናም ሞርኒ ከሌሂ ጋር ወደ ሙሌቅ ከተማ ሄደና፤ የከተማዋን ስልጣን ወሰደና ለሌሂ ሰጠው። እናም እነሆ፤ ይህ፤ ሌሂም፤ ከሞርኒ ጋር በጦርነቱ በአብዛኛው ክፍል የነበረ ነው፤ እናም ሌሂ እንደ ሞርኒ ዓይነት ሰው ነበር፤ ሁለቱም ለየራሳቸው በሚያደርጉት ጥበቃ ተደሰቱ፤ አዎን፤ እርስ በእርስም ይዋደዱ ነበር፤ ደግሞም በኔሬ ህዝብ ሁሉ ይወደዱ ነበር።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ከእነርሱ ወገን የሞቱትን፤ እናም ደግሞ ከኔፋውያን የሞቱትን ቀብረው ከጨረሱ በኋላ፤ ወደ ለጋሰም ምድር ተመልሰው እንዲሄዱ ተደረጉ፤ እናም ቴአንኩም፤ በሞርኒ ትዕዛዛት፤ እነርሱ ጉድጓዶችን በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ እንዲሁም በለጋሰ ከተማ በመቆፈር ስራ እንዲጀምሩ አደረገ።

፬ እናም ለከተማዋ ቅርብ በሆነው ወንዝ ዳርቻ በጉድጓዱ በኩል ከእንጨት አጥር እንዲሰሩ አደረገ፤ እናም በእንጨት በተሰራው አጥር ላይም ከጉድጓዱ አፈር በማውጣት አስቀመጡ፤ እናም እንደዚህ ላማናውያንን ለጋሰን ምድርና ዙሪያውን በጠንካራ እንጨት አጥርና አፈር ትልቅ ከፍታም እንዲኖረው እስከሚያደርጉ ድረስ እንዲሰሩ አደረጓቸው።

፭ እናም ይህች ከተማም ከዚህም በኋላ እጅግ ጠንካራ ምሽግ ሆነች፤ በዚህችም ከተማ፤ አዎን፤ በራሳቸው እጅ እንዲሰሩ በአደረጉአቸው ግንብ ውስጥ የላማናውያን እስረኞችን ጠበቁ። እንግዲህ ላማናውያን እስረኞች በሚሰሩበት ወቅት መጠበቅ ቀላል በመሆኑ ሞርኒ ላማናውያንን እንዲያስራቸው ተገዶ ነበር፤ እናም በላማናውያን ላይ ጥቃት በሚያደርግ ጊዜ ጦሩ በሙሉ ከእርሱ ጋር እንዲሆኑ ፈልጎ ነበር።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ ሞርኒ ታላቅ ከሆኑት የላማናውያን ሠራዊቶች በአንዱ ላይ ድልን ተቀዳጅቶ ነበር፤ እናም በኔሬ ምድር የላማናውያን ጠንካራ ምሽግ የነበረውን የሙሌቅን ከተማ አግኝቷል፤ እናም እስረኞችን ለመጠበቅም ደግሞ ጠንካራ ምሽግ እንደዚህ ሰርቷል።

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያን ዓመት ከላማናውያን ጋር ጦርነትን አልሞከረም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን የራሱን ሰዎች ለጦርነት እንዲዘጋጁ፤ አዎን፤ እናም ከላማናውያንም ለመጠበቅ ሞሽግን እንዲሰሩ፤ አዎን፤ እናም ደግሞ ሴቶቻቸውና ልጆቻቸውን ከረሃብና ከሰቃይ እንዲወጡና፤ ለወታደሮቻቸው ምግብ እንዲያገኙ አስደርጓል።

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

፳፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በባህሩ በሰተምዕራብ በደቡብ በኩል ሞሮኒ በሌለበት፤ በኔፋውያን መካከል በነበረው አለመስማማት በመካከላቸው መለያየት እንዲፈጠር በመደረጉ፤ አዎን፤ በዚያች ምድር ክፍል የነበሩትን ከተሞች እስከሚያገኙ ድረስ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በኔፋውያን ላይ ጥቂት ብልጫን አገኙ።

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

፳፪ እናም በመካከላቸው በነበረው ክፋት የተነሳ፤ አዎን፤ በነበረው መለያየትና ሴራ እጅግ አደገኛ በሆነ ሁኔታ ነበሩ።

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

፳፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ፤ በመጀመሪያ ላማናውያን ስለነበሩት የአዎን ሰዎች የምናገረው እንደ ነገር አለኝ፤ ነገር ግን በአዎንና በወንድሞቹ፤ ወይንም በእግዚአብሔር ቃልና ኃይል፤ ወደ ጌታ ተለውጠዋል፤ እናም ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተወስደዋል፤ እና በኔፋውያን ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ ተጠብቀዋል።

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

፳፬ እናም በመሃላቸው ምክንያት በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ከመውሰድ ተቆጥበዋል፤ ከዚህ በኋላ በጭራሽ ደም ላለማፍሰስ መሃላን ሰጥተው ነበር፤ እናም በመሀላቸው ምክንያት ይጠፋም ነበር፤ አዎን፤ አዎንና ወንድሞቹ ለህዝቡ ሩህሩህና ታላቅ ፍቅር ባይኖራቸው ኖሮ እራሳቸውን በወንድሞቻቸው እጅ እንዲወድቁ ባደረጉነበር።

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

፳፭ እናም በዚህ የተነሳ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተወስደው ነበር፤ እናም በኔፋውያን ያለማቋረጥ ተጠበቁ።

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

፳፮ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ አደጋውንና፤ ስቃዩን፤ እናም ለእነርሱ ሲሉ ኔፋውያን የደረሰባቸውን መከራ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ አዘኑ፤ እናም ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን በማንሳት ለመዋጋት ፈለጉ።

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ለማንሳት ሲሉም፣ በሌሎች ወንድሞቹ ማግባባት ተሸነፉ፣ ምክንያቱም የገቡትን መሃላ ለማፍረስ ተቃርበው ነበርና።

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

፲፭ እናም ሌሎችም ይህንን በማድረጋቸው ነፍሳቸውን ያጣሉ ብሎ ፈርቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ወደዚህ ቃል ኪዳን የገቡ ሁሉ በዚህ ጊዜ በእደገኛው ሁኔታ ላይ ያሉትን የወንድሞቻቸውን ስቃይ እንዲመለከቱ ተገድደው ነበር።

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

፲፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ከጠላቶቻቸው ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ላለማንሳት ወደቃል ኪዳኑ ያልገቡ ብዙ ወንድ ልጆች ነበሯቸው፣ ስለዚህ በዚህ ጊዜ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ለማንሳት የሚችሉ ሁሉ እራሳቸውን ሰብሰበው፣ እናም እራሳቸውን ኔፋውያን ብለው ጠሩ።

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

፲፯ እናም ለኔፋውያን ነፃነት ለመዋጋት ቃል ኪዳን ገቡ፤ አዎን፣ ህይወታቸውን እስከማጣት ድረስ ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል፤ አዎን፣ ነፃነታቸውን አሳልፈው በጭራሽ እንደሚይደሉ፣ ነገር ግን በሁሉም ሁኔታዎች ኔፋውያንን እናም እራሳቸውን ከባርነት ለመከላከል እንደሚዋጉ ቃል ገብተዋል።

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

፲፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ሁለት ሺህ የሚሆኑ ወጣት ወንዶች ቃል ኪዳን ገብተዋል፣ እናም ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን አነሱ።

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

፲፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ከዚህ በፊት ኔፋውያንን ፈፅሞ ጉዳት ያልነበሩ ቢሆኑም በዚህ ጊዜ ደግሞ ታላቅ ረዳት ሆኑላቸው፤ ምክንያቱም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ወስደዋል፣ እናም ሌሎችን መሪያቸው እንዲሆንም ፈልገዋል።

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

፳ እናም ሁሉም ወጣት ወንዶች ነበሩና፣ በድፍረትም፣ እናም ደግሞ በብርታትና በእንቅስቃሴአቸው በጣም ጀግኖች ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ይህ ብቻም አልነበረም— በሁሉም ጊዜ በተሰጣቸው በማንኛውም ነገር ታማኝ ሰዎች ነበሩ።

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

፳፩ አዎን የእውነት እና የጥሞና ሰዎች ነበሩ፣ ምክንያቱም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት እንዲጠብቁና በፊቱም በቅንነት እንደሚረመዱ ተምረዋልና።

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

፳፪ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሎችን በምድሪቱ በደቡብ በባህሩ በምዕራብ በኩል ግንባር ያሉትን ሰዎች ለመርዳት ከሁለት ሺህዎቹን ብላቴና ሠራዊት በመምራት ዘመተ።

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

፳፫ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ስምንተኛ የንግስና ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

አልማ ፶፬

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በመሠናገቱ ሀያ ዘጠነኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ውስጥ አሞርን እስረኞችን ለመለዋወጥ በመፈለጉ ወደ ሞርኒ መልዕክተኛን ላከ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ ላማናውያንን ለመርዳት የቀረበውን ድጋፍ ለራሱ ህዝቦች ድጋፍ እንዲሆን በመፈለጉ በጥያቄው እጅግ ደስታ ተሰማው፤ እናም ደግሞ የራሱን ህዝብ ወታደሮቹን እንዲያጠናክሩለት ፈለገ።

፫ እንግዲህ ላማናውያን በርካታ ሴቶችና ልጆችን ማርከው ነበር፤ እናም ከሞርኒ እስረኞች ውስጥ፣ ወይንም ሞርኒ ከማረካቸው መካከል ምንም ሴትም ሆነ ልጅ አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ ሞርኒ ከላማናውያን በሚቻለው ሁሉ የኔፋውያን እስረኞች የሆኑትን ብዙዎችን ለማግኘት በእርቅ ላይ ወሰነ።

፬ ስለዚህ ሞርኒ ደብዳቤ ፃፈ፣ እናም በአሞርን አገልጋይ ላከ፣ ይኸው አገልጋይም ደብዳቤ ወደ ሞርኒ አምጥቶ የነበረው ነው። እናም ለአሞርን የፃፈው ቃል እንዲህ ይላል፦

፭ እነሆ፣ አሞርን፣ በህዝቤ ላይ ያደረጋችሁትን፣ ወይንም የአንተ ወንድም በእነርሱ ላይ ያነሳውን፣ እናም ከሞተም በኋላ ጦርነቱን ለመቀጠል ስለወሰንከው ጦርነት በተመለከተ በመጠኑ ፅፌአለሁ።

፮ እነሆ፣ ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ፣ እናም ሠራዊቶቻችሁን ወደ ራሳችሁም ምድር ወይንም የኔፊ ምድር ወደሆነው ካልወሰዳችሁ በእናንተ ላይ ስለሚንዘብባለው ስለእግዚአብሔር ፍትህ እና የኃያሉ ጎራዴ ቁጣ በመጠኑ ልንገርህ።

፯ አዎን፣ ልትሰሟቸው የምትችሉ ቢሆን ኖር፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች እነግራችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ እናም የመግደል ዓላማችሁን ካልተዋችሁ፣ እናም ወደራሳችሁ ምድር ከወታደሮቻችሁ ጋር ካልተመለሳችሁ፣ እንደ አንተና ወንድምህ እንደነበራችሁበት ግድያ ያደረጉትን ሊቀበላቸው ስለሚጠብቀው፣ አስቃቂውን ሲኦል በተመለከተ እነግራችኋለሁ።

፰ ነገር ግን አንዴ እነዚህን ነገሮች ስላልተቀበላችሁ፣ እናም ከጌታ ህዝብም ጋር ስለተዋጋችሁ፣ እንደዚሁ በድጋሚ እንደምታደርጉት አገምታለሁ።

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እናንተን ለመቀበል ተዘጋጅተናል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ያሰባችሁትን ካልተዋችሁ፣ እነሆ የዚያን ያልተቀበላችሁትን እግዚአብሔር ቁጣውን በራሳችሁ ታደርጋላችሁ፣ እንዲሁም በፍጹም እስክትጠፉ ድረስ።

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

፲ ነገር ግን ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ እናንተ ካልለቀቃችሁ በቀር ወታደሮቻችን በእናንተ ላይ ይመጣሉ፣ እናም በቅርቡ ሞት ይመጣባችኋል፣ ከተሞቻችንንና መሬታችንንም መልሰን እናገኛለን፤ አዎን፣ እናም ኃይማኖታችንንና የእምላካችንን ሁኔታ እንጠብቃለን።

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

፲፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ በከንቱ የተናገርኩ ይመስለኛል፤ ወይንም አንተም የሲኦል ልጅ እንደሆንክ አገምታለሁ፣ ስለዚህ ለአንድ አሰሪኛ የአንድን ሰው፣ ሚስቱንና ልጆቹን ካልለቀቃችሁ በስተቀር፣ እስረኞችን አልለወጥም፤ ይህንን የምታደርጉ ከሆነ እስረኞችን እንለወጥላለን።

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

፲፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህንን የምታደርጉ ከሆነ፣ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር በእናንተ ላይ እመጣባችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ሴቶችና ልጆች ሳይቀሩ አስታጥቃቸዋለሁ፣ እናም በእናንተ ላይ እመጣባችኋለሁና፣ የመጀመሪያው የውርሳችን ምድር ወይም ወደራሳችሁ ምድር ድረስ እከተላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደም ለደም፣ አዎን፣ ህይወትም ለህይወት ይሆናል፤ እናም ከምድር ገፅ እስከምትጠፋም ድረስ አዋጋህለሁ።

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ እኔና ህዝቤ ተቆጥተናል፤ እኛን ለመግደል ፈልጋችሁ ነበር፣ እናም እኛ እራሳችንን ብቻ ለመከላከል ፈልገን ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከዚህ የበለጠም ልታጠፉን ከፈለጋችሁ ልናጠፋችሁ እንፈልጋለን፤ አዎን፣ እናም የመጀመሪያው ውርሳችን የሆነችውን ምድራችንንም እንፈልጋለን።

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

፲፬ አሁን ደብዳቤዬን እጨርሳለሁ። እኔ ሞሮኒ ነኝ፣ የኔፋውያን ህዝብ መሪ ነኝ።

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አሞሮን ይህንን ደብዳቤ በተቀበለ ጊዜ፣ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ እናም ለሞሮኒ ሌላ ደብዳቤ ፃፈ፣ እናም የፃፈው ቃልም እንዲህ ይል ነበር፡

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

፲፮ እኔ የላማናውያን ንጉስ የሆንኩ አሞሮን ነኝ፤ እናንተ የገደላችሁት የአማሊቅያ ወንድም ነኝ። እነሆ፣ ደሙን በእናንተ እበቀላለሁ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ማስፈራሪያችሁን ስለማልፈራ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር እመጣባችኋለሁ።

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

፲፯ እነሆ፣ በትክክል ለእነርሱ የሆነውን የመንግስት መብታቸውን እስኪጠቃቸው ድረስ አባቶቻችሁ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ግፍ ሰሩባቸው።

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

፲፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን የምትጥሉ ከሆነ፣ እናም መንግሥት በትክክል ለሚገባቸው ራሳችሁን የምታሰገዙ ከሆነ፣ ህዝቤ የጦር መሳሪያውን እንዲጥልና ከእንግዲህ እንዳይዋጋ አደርጋለሁ።

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

፲፱ እነሆ፣ በእኔና በህዝቤ ላይ ብዙ የሚያስፈሩ ንግግር ተናግራችኋል፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ማስፈራሪያችሁን አልፈራነውም።

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

፳ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ለጦር ሰዎቹ ምግብ አስቀምጥላቸው ዘንድ በጥያቄ መሰረት በደስታ እስረኞችን እቀያየራለሁ፤ እናም ኔፋውያንን በእኛ አገዛዝ ስር ለማድረግ ወይንም ለዘላለም እስከሚጠፉ ዘላለማዊ የሆነ ጦርነት እናስነሳለን።

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

፳፩ እናም አልተቀበላችሁትም ያላችሁትን እግዚአብሔር በተመለከተ፣ እነሆ፣ እንደዚህ ዓይነት ፍጡር እናውቅም፤ እናንተም አታውቁም፤ ነገር ግን እንደዚህ ዓይነት ፍጡር ካለ እናውቀውም፣ ነገር ግን እኛንም ሆነ እናንተን ፈጥሯል።

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

፳፪ እናም ዲያብሎስና ሲኦል ካለ እነሆ እናንተ ከገደላችሁት እንደዚህ ወዳለው ሰፍራ ሄዷል ካላችሁበት ከወንድሜ ጋር እንድትኖሩ አይልካችሁምን? ነገር ግን እነዚህ ነገሮች ምንም አይደሉም።

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

፳፫ እኔ አሞሮን ነኝ፣ እናም አባቶቻችሁ ከኢየሩሳሌም እንዲወጣ ያሰገደዱት የዘራም ወገን ነኝ።

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

፳፬ እናም እነሆ አሁን ደፋር ላማናዊ ነኝ፣ እነሆ ይህ ጦርነት የተደረገው ለተበደሉበት ብቀላ ለማግኘትና፣ ለመንግሥታቸው መብታቸውን ለመጠበቅና ለማግኘት ነው፤ እናም ለሞሮኒ የፃፍኩትን ደብዳቤ እደመድማለሁ።

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

አልማ ፶፭

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ይህንን ደብዳቤ ሲቀበል ይበልጥ ተናደደ፣ ምክንያቱም አሞሮን ያጭበርባሪነቱን ፍፁም እውቀት እንዳለው ያውቅ ስለነበር፤ አዎን፣ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ለጦርነት ለመሰለፍ የተነሳሳበት መንስኤው ትክክል እንዳልሆነ አሞሮን ማወቁን እርሱም ያውቃል።

፪ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ እነሆ፣ በደብዳቤዬ እንደገለፅኩት ዓላማውን ካልቀየረ ከአሞሮን ጋር እስረኞች አልለወጥም፤ ምክንያቱም ከነበረው የላቀ ኃይል እንዲኖረው አልፈክድም።

፫ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን የወሰዷቸውን እስረኞች የሚጠብቁበትን ሰፍራ አውቃለሁ፤ እናም አሞሮን በደብዳቤዬ የጠየቅሁትን ሰላልሰጠኝ እነሆ በቃሌ መሰረት አደርጋለሁ፤ አዎን በሞሮኒ ሰዎች መካከል ለሰላም አቤት እስከሚሉ ድረስ ሞትን አፈልጋለሁ።

፬ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ይህንን ቃል በተናገረበት ጊዜ፣ በሞሮኒ ሰዎች መካከል የላማን ትውልድ የሆነ ሰው ምናልባት ያገኝ ዘንድ በህዝቡ መካከል ፍተሻ እንዲሆን አደረገ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማን ተብሎ የሚጠራ አንድ ሰው አገኝ፤ እናም እርሱ በአማሊቅያ የተገደለው የንጉሱ አንድ አገልጋይ ነበር።

፮ እናም ኔፋውያን እስረኞችን በሚጠብቁት ላይ ላማንና ቁጥር ያላቸው የእርሱ ሰዎች እንዲሄዱ ሞሮኒ አደረገ።

፯ አሁን ኔፋውያን በጊድ ከተማ ይጠበቁ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሞሮኒ ላማንን በመሾም እናም ጥቂት ቁጥር ያላቸው ሰዎችም ከእርሱ ጋር እንዲሄዱ አደረገ።

፰ እናም ምሽት በሆነ ጊዜ ላማን ኔፋውያንን ወደሚጠብቁት ሄደ፣ እናም እነሆ፣ ሲመጣ ተመለከቱትና ጠሩት፤ ነገር ግን እንዲህ አላቸው፡ አትፍሩ፣ እነሆ፣ እኔ ላማናዊ ነኝ። እነሆ፣ ከኔፋውያን አምልጠናል፣ እነርሱም ተኝተዋል፤ እናም እነሆ ወይናቸውንም ወሰድንና ከእኛ ጋር አምጥተናል።

፱ እናም ላማናውያን ይህንን ቃል በሰሙ ጊዜ በደስታ ተቀበሉት፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩት፤ ወይኑን ይዘህ ስለመጣህ ተደስተናል፣ ደክሞናልና እንድንጠጣው ከወይኑ ሰጠን።

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

፲ ነገር ግን ላማን እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት እስከምንሄድ ወይናችንን እናትርፍ። ነገር ግን ይህ አባባል በይበልጥ ከወይኑ ለመጠጣት እንዲፈልጉ አደረጋቸው።

፲፩ እንዲህም አሉ፡ እኛ ደክሞናል፣ ስለዚህ ከወይኑ እንውሰድ፣ እናም ከጥቂት ጊዜ በኋላ በኔፋውያን ላይ ለመሄድ ብርታት እንዲሰጠን የወይኑ ድርሻችንን እንቀበላለን።

፲፪ እናም ላማን፣ እንደፍላጎታችሁ ልታደርጉ ትችላላችሁ አላቸው።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወይኑን በብዛት ጠጡ፤ ጣዕሙም አስደስቶአቸው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ይበልጥ በብዛት ጠጡ፤ እናም የተዘጋጀውም ጠንካራ እንዲሆን ተብሎ ስለነበር ኃይለኛ ነበር።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጠጡና፣ ተደሰቱ፣ እናም ከጥቂት ጊዜ በኋላ ሁሉም ሰክረው ነበር።

፲፭ እናም እንግዲህ ላማንና የእርሱ የሆኑት ሁሉም መስከራቸውን፣ እናም ኃይለኛ እንቅልፍ እንደያዛቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ሞርኒ ተመለሱና የሆነውን ነገር በሙሉ ነገሩት።

፲፮ እናም አሁን ይህ በሞርኒ ዕቅድ መሰረት ነበር። እናም ሞርኒ ተከታዮቹን በጦር መሳሪያዎች ትጥቅ አዘጋጃቸው፤ ላማናውያን ኃይለኛ እንቅልፍ በያዛቸውና በስክራ ጊዜ ወደ ጊድ ከተማ ሄዱ፣ እናም ሁሉም እስከሚታጠቁ ድረስም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ለአስረኞቹ ወርውረው ስጡአቸው፤

፲፯ አዎን፣ ሴቶቻቸውን፣ እናም ልጆቻቸውን በሙሉ ብዙዎች የጦር መሳሪያዎችን መጠቀም የሚችሉትን ሁሉ ሞርኒ አስታጠቃቸው፤ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ ፍፁም በሆነ ፀጥታ ነበር የተከናወኑት።

፲፰ ነገ ግን ላማናውያንን ቀስቅሰዋቸው ቢሆን ኖሮ፣ እነሆ ሰክረው ስለነበር፣ እናም ኔፋውያን ለገድሉአቸው ይችሉ ነበር።

፲፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ የሞርኒ ፍላጎት አልነበረም፤ በግድያም ሆነ በደም መፋሰስ አይደለትም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን ህዝቡን ከጥፋት በማዳን ይደሰታል፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በራሱ ላይ የግፍ ስራን አያመጣም፣ ላማናውያንን አያጠቃም፣ እናም በሰካራቸው አያጠፋቸውም።

፳ ነገር ግን ፍላጎቱን ፈጸመ፤ በከተማዋ ግንብ ዙሪያ የነበሩትን ኔፋውያን እስረኞች አስታጥቆ ነበር እናም በግንቡ ውስጥ ያሉትን ሥፍራዎች እንዲወሰዱ ኃይልን ሰጥቷቸው ነበር።

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

፳፩ እናም ከእርሱ ጋር የነበሩትን ሰዎች አንድ እርምጃ እንዲረቁ አደረገ፤ እናም የላማናውያንን ወታደሮች ከበቡአቸው።

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

፳፪ እናም እነሆ ይህ የተፈፀመውም በምሽት ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ላማናውያን ጠቀት ሲነቁ ከግንቡ በውጭ በኩል በኔፋውያን መከበባቸውን ተመለከቱ፤ እናም በውስጥ በኩል የነበሩት እስረኞቻቸውም ታጥቀው ከበዋቸው ነበር።

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

፳፫ እናም ላማናውያን በኔፋውያን ላይ ስልጣን እንደነበራቸውም ተመልክተው ነበር፤ እናም በዚህ ሁኔታ ከኔፋውያን ጋር መዋጋታቸው አስፈላጊ ሆኖ አላገኙትም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሊቀ ሻምባሎቻቸው የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ይፈልግ ነበር፤ እናም ወደፊት አመጡአቸውና፤ ምህረትን በመለመን በኔፋውያን እግር ስር ጣሉአቸው።

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

፳፬ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ የሞሮኒ ፍላጎት ነበር። የጦር ምርኮኛ አድርጎ ወሰዳቸው፣ ከተማዋንም ያዘ፤ እናም ኔፋውያን የነበሩት እስረኞችን በሙሉ እንዲለቀቁ አደረገ፤ እናም እነርሱ ከሞሮኒ ወታደሮች ጋር ተቀላቀሉ፣ ለወታደሮቹም ታላቅ ድጋፍ ነበሩ።

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እስረኞች አድርጎ የወሰዳቸውን ላማናውያን በጊድ ከተማ ዙሪያ ያሉትን ምሽጎች ለማጠናከር ስራ እንዲጀምሩ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደፍላጎቱ የጊድን ከተማ ምሽግ ባደረገ ጊዜ፣ እስረኞቹ ወደ ለጋስ ምድር እንዲወሰዱ አድርጎ ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ከተማዋን እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነ ኃይል ያሰጠብቅ ነበር።

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ይህንን ያህል ሴራ ቢያደርጉም ኔፋውያን የያዙአቸውን እስረኞች በሙሉ ጠበቁአቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ በድጋሚ ወሰደውት የነበረውን ምድርና የበላይነታቸውን ተቆጣጠሩ።

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን በድጋሚ ድል ማድረግ ጀመሩ፣ እናም ጥቅማቸውንና መብታቸውን ማስጠበቅ ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

፳፱ ብዙ ጊዜ ላማናውያን እነርሱን በምሽት ለመክብብ ይሞክሩ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በዚህ ሙከራቸው ብዙ እስረኞቻቸውን አጥተዋል።

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

፴፬ እናም በሰካር ወይም በመርዝ ያጠፏቸው ዘንድ ለኔፋውያን ወይኖቻቸውን ሊሰጧቸው ብዙ ጊዜ ሞክረዋል።

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

186 ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ኔፋውያን በሰቃያቸው ጊዜ ጌታ እምላካቸውን ለማስታወስ የዘገዩ አልነበሩም። በእነርሱ ወጥመድም ሊያዙ አይችሉም ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ለጥቂት ለማናውያን እስረኞች በቅድሚያ ካልሰጡ በቀር ከወይኑአቸው አይጠጡላቸውም ነበር።

187 እናም በመካከላቸው መርዝ እንዲይሰጣቸው ይጠነቀቁ ነበር፤ ወይኑ ለለማናውያን መርዝ ከሆነ ለኔፋውያንም መርዝ ይሆናልና፤ እናም መጠጦቻቸውን በሙሉ እንደዚህ ቀመሱ።

188 እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የሞሪያንተንን ከተማ ለማጥቃት ሞርኒ ዝግጅት ማድረጉ አስፈላጊ ነበር፤ እነሆም ለማናውያን የሞሪያንተንን ከተማ አጅግ ጠንካራ አስከምትሆን ድረስ በድካማቸው መሸገጥታል።

189 እናም ለማናውያን አዲስ ኃይል ወደ ከተማዎ፣ እናም ደግሞ አዲስ አቅርቦቶችን፣ ያለማቋረጥ ያመጡ ነበር።

190 እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ዘጠነኛ የንግስ ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

አልማ ፶፮

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሠላሳኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን፣ በመጀመሪያው ወር በሁለተኛው ቀን፣ በዚያች ምድር ክፍል ያሉትን ሰዎች ሁኔታ የሚገልፅ ደብዳቤ ሞርኒ ከሔለማን ተቀበለ።

፪ እናም የፃፋቸው ቃላት እንዲህ የሚሉ ነበሩ፡ በጌታ እንዲሁም በጦርነቱ ወቅት በመከራው ጊዜ የተወደድክ ውድ ወንድሜ፣ ሞርኒ፣ እነሆ፣ የተወደድክ ወንድሜ፣ በዚህች ምድር ጦርነታችንን በሚመለከት በመጠኑ የምነግርህ አለኝ።

፫ እነሆ አምን ከኔሬ ምድር ያመጣቸው እነዚያ ሰዎች ሁለት ሺህ ወንድ ልጆች—አሁን እነዚህ የአባታችን የሌሂ ትልቅ ልጅ የላማን ዝርያዎች እንደሆኑ ታውቃለህ፤

፬ አሁንም እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ በተመለከተ ስለምታውቅ ስለወጋቸውም ሆነ ስለአለማመናቸው አልነግርህም—

፭ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ሁለት ሺህ ወጣት ሰዎች የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዳነሱ እናም መሪያቸው እንደሆነ መፈለጋቸውን መናገር ይበቃኛል፤ እናም እኛ ሀገራችንን ለመከላከል ወደፊት መጥተናል።

፮ እናም አሁን ደግሞ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ደም ለማፍሰስ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ላለማንሳት አባቶቻቸው የገቡትን ቃል ኪዳን በተመለከተ ታውቃለህ።

፯ ነገር ግን በሀያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት፣ ለአነርሱ የነበረንን ስቃያችንንና መከራችንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ቃል ኪዳናቸውን ለማፍረስ እናም እኛን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ለማንሳት ተቃርበው ነበር።

፰ ነገር ግን በወሰዱት ቃል ኪዳን መሟላት መንስኤ በተጨማሪ እንዳንስቃይ በመፍቀድ እግዚአብሔር ያበረታናል ብዬ በመገመቴ፣ ይህን የገቡትን መሃላ እንዲያፈርሱ አልፈክም።

፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ደስታ የምናገኝበት አንድ ነገር ይህ ነው። እነሆም፣ በሀያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት፣ እኔ ሔለማን፣ የዚያች ምድር መሪ አድርገህ የሾምከውን አንቲጶስን ለመርዳት ወደ ይሁዳ ከተማ እነዚህን ሁለት ሺህ ወጣት ሰዎች በመምራት ዘመትኩ።

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

፲ እናም ሁለት ሺህ ልጆቼን (ልጆች ተብሎ ለመጠራት ብቁ ነበሩና) ከአንቲዱስ ሠራዊት ጋር ቀላቀልኳቸው፤ በዚህም ኃይል አንቲዱስ እጅግ ተደስቶ ነበር፤ እነሆም፣ የእርሱ ሠራዊት በላማናውያን ተቀንሰው ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም የእነርሱ ኃይል ትልቅ ቁጥር ያለውን ህዝባችንን ገደለውብናልና፤ ለዚህ እንድናዝንም አድርጎን ነበር።

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

፲፩ ይሁን እንጂ በዚህ ነጥብም እራሳችንን እናፅናለን፤ እነርሱ የሞቱት ለሀገራቸው፣ እናም ለአምላካቸው መንስኤ ነው፤ አዎን እናም እነርሱ ደስተኞች ናቸው።

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

፲፪ እናም ላማናውያን ደግሞ ብዙ እስረኞችን ያዙ፣ ሁሉም ዋና አዛዦች ነበሩ፤ ሌሎቹን በህይወት አላተረፉአቸውም ነበር። እናም እነርሱ በዚህን ጊዜ በኔሬ ምድር ነበሩ ብለን እንገምታለን፤ ካልተገደሉ ይህ ነበር ሁኔታው።

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

፲፫ እናም አሁን የጀግናቻችንን ደም በማፍሰስ ላማናውያን ያገኙአቸው ከተሞች እነዚህ ናቸው፡

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

፲፬ የማንቲ ምድር፣ ወይንም የማንቲ ከተማና፣ የዚኤዘርም ከተማ፣ እናም የቁሜኒ ከተማና፣ የአንቲፓራ ከተማ።

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

፲፭ እኔ በይሁዳ ከተማ ሰደርስ በላማናውያን የተያዙት ከተሞች እነዚህ ናቸው፤ እናም አንቲዱስና የእርሱ የሆኑት በጉልበታቸው ከተማውን ምሽግ ለማድረግ ሲደክሙ አገኘላቸው።

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

፲፮ አዎን፣ እናም ከተማቸውን ለመጠበቅ ሲሉ በቀን በጀግንነት በመዋጋታቸው በምሽትም በድካም ስለሰሩ ሰውነታቸው እንዲሁም መንፈሳቸው ደክሞ ነበር፤ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ታላቅ ሰቃይ እንደዚህ ተሰቃይተዋል።

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

፲፯ እናም አሁን እነርሱ በዚህች ሰፍራ ለማሸነፍ ወይንም ለመሞት ቆርጠው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ይህችን ከእኔ ጋር ያመጣኋት ትንሽ ኃይል፣ አዎን የእኔም ልጆች፣ ታላቅ ተሰፋንና ብዙ ደስታን እንደሰጡአቸው በሚገባ ልትገምት ትችላለህ።

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

፲፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን የአንቲዱስ በወታደሮቹ ታላቅ ብርታትን መቀበሉን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ለውጊያ በይሁዳ ከተማም ላይ ወይንም በእኛ ላይ በድጋሚ እንዳይመጡ በአሞሮን ትዕዛዛት ተገደዱ።

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

፲፱ እናም በጌታ እንደዚህ ተወድደን ነበር፤ በድካማችን ላይ ምናልባት ቢመጡ በቁጥር ትንሽ በሆኑት ወታደሮቻችን ባጠፏቸው ነበር። ነገር ግን እኛ እንደዚህ ተጠብቀን ነበር።

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

፳፩ እነርሱም የወሰዱአቸውን ከተሞች እንዲያስተዳድሩ በአሞሮን ታዘው ነበር። እናም ሀያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ። እናም በሀያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ከተማችንንና እራሳችንን ለመከላከል አዘጋጀን።

፳፪ እንግዲህ ላማናውያን ወደእኛ እንዲመጡ ፈልገን ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም በጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው ጥቃት ለማድረግ አልፈለግንም ነበርና።

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በስተሰሜን በኩል የሚገኙትን ሌሎች ከተሞቻችንን በምሽትም ሆነ በቀን ላማናውያን አልፈው እንዲያጠቁን እንቅስቃሴአቸውን ለመቆጣጠር በዙሪያችን ሰላዮችን አስቀምጠን ነበር።

፳፬ በከተሞቹም እነርሱን ለመቋቋም በበቂ ሁኔታ ጠንካሮች እንዳልነበሩ እናውቅ ነበርና፤ ስለዚህ እኛን የሚያልፉ ከሆነ ከጀርባቸው ለማጥቃት እናም በተመሳሳይ ጊዜ በግንባር ከእነርሱ ጋር ከጀርባቸው ለመገናኘት ፈልገን ነበር። ልናሸንፋቸው እንችላለን ብለንም ገምተን ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በዚህም ፍላጎቶቻችን ተበሳጭተን ነበር።

፳፭ በቂ ብርታት ሳይኖራቸው እንሸነፋለን ብለው በመፍራታቸው፣ ከሙሉ ወታደሮቻቸው ጋርም ይሁን ከጥቂቶች አልፈውን ለመሄድ አልደፈሩም ነበር።

፳፮ በዛራሔምላ ከተማም ላይ ቢሆን ለመዝመት አልደፈሩም ነበር፤ በኔሬሃያም ከተማ ላይ የሲዶምን ምንጭ ለማቋረጥ አልደፈሩም ነበር።

፳፯ እናም በነበራቸው ኃይል የወሰዱአቸውን ከተሞች ለመጠበቅ ወሰነው ነበር።

፳፰ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት በሁለተኛው ወር፣ ከሁለት ሺህ ልጆቻችን አባቶች ብዙ ሰንቆች መጥተውልን ነበር።

፳፱ እናም ደግሞ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ሁለት ሺህ ሰዎች ወደ እኛ ተልከው ነበር። እናም ከአስር ሺዎቹ ሰዎች ጋርና፣ ለእነርሱ፣ እናም ደግሞ ለሚሰቶቻቸውና ለልጆቻቸው ሰንቅ አዘጋጅተን ነበር።

፳፺ እናም ላማናውያን ኃይላችን ቀን በቀን መጨመሩንና፣ ለድጋፋችን ሰንቅ እንደደረሰን በመመልከታቸው፣ መፍራት ጀመሩ፣ እናም ሰንቅና ሀይል መቀበላችንን ማቆም የሚቻላቸውም ቢሆን ተመኝተው ለጥቃት ገሰገሱ።

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

፴፯ እንግዲህ በዚህ መንገድ ላማናውያን መጨነቅ መጀመራቸውን በምንመለከትበት ጊዜ፣ እንድን ሰቅድ በእነርሱ ላይ ተግባራዊ ለማድረግ ፈለግን፤ ስለዚህ እንዲሁ ከትናንሽ ልጆቹ ጋር ወደ ጎረቤት ከተማ ልክ ወደ ጎረቤት ከተሞች ስንቅ የምንወስደው ያለ በማስመሰል እንድዘምት አዘዘኝ።

፴፱ እናም በባህሩ ዳርቻ ከከተማዋ ርቀን የሄድን በመምሰል ወደ አንቲፓራ ከተማ አጠገብ ዘምተን ነበር።

፵ፀ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ስንቃችንን የያዘን በመምሰል ወደዚያች ከተማ ለመጓዝ ወደፊት ዘመትን።

፵፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንዲሁ የወታደሮቹን ክፍል በመያዝ የተቀሩትን ከተማዋን እንዲጠብቁ በማድረግ ሄደ። ነገር ግን ከጥቂት ወታደሮቹ ጋር ወደፊት እስከምሄድ እናም በአንቲፓራ ከተማ አጠገብ እስከመጣሁ ድረስ አልዘመተም ነበር።

፵፪ እናም አሁን፣ በአንቲፓራ ከተማ የላማናውያን ጠንካራ ወታደሮች ሰፍረው ነበር፤ እዎን፣ በቁጥርም እጅግ ብዙ ነበሩ።

፵፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በሰላዮቻቸው በተነገራቸው ጊዜ፣ ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር በመሆን ወደፊት መጡና በእኛ ላይ ዘመቱ።

፵፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከፊታቸው በሰሜን በኩል ሸሸን። እናም ጠንካራ የነበሩትን የላማናውያን ሠራዊት እንደዚህ በመምራት ከእዚያ አስወጣናቸው፤

፵፭ እዎን፣ የአንቲጳስ ወታደሮች በኃይል እንዳባረሩአቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ወደቀኝም ሆነ ወደግራው እስከማይመለሱበት፣ ነገር ግን ጉዞአቸውን ከኋላችን እኛን በቀጥታ እየተከተሉእስከሚቀጥሉበት በብዙ ርቀትም መራናቸው፤ እናም፣ አንቲጳስ እነርሱ ላይ ከመድረሱ በፊት ዓላማቸው እኛን ለመግደል እንደነበር ገመትን፣ እናም ይህም የሆነው በህዝባችን እንዳይከበሱ ነበር።

፵፮ እናም እንግዲህ አንቲጳስ አደጋ ላይ መሆናችንን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ የወታደሮቹን ጉዞ አፋጠነው። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ምሽት ነበር፣ ስለዚህ እኛን አልደረሱብንም፣ አንቲጳስም ቢሆን አልደረሰባቸውም፤ ስለዚህ በምሽት ሰፈርን።

፵፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከመንጋቱ በፊት፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን ያሳድዱን ነበር። አሁን ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት በብቃት ጠንካራ አልነበረንም፤ እዎን፣ ትንሾቹ ወንድ ልጆቹ በእጃቸው እንዲወድቁ አልፈቅድም፣ ስለዚህ ጉዞአችንን ቀጠልን፣ እናም ጉዞአችንን ወደ ምድረባዳው አደረግን።

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

፱ እንግዲህ እነርሱ እንከበባለን ብለው በመፍራታቸው ወደቀኝም ሆነ ወደግራ ለመዞር አልደፈሩም ነበር፤ ያጠቁኛል ብዬ በመፍራቱ እኔም ወደቀኝም ሆነ ወደግራ አልዞርኩም፤ እናም ጥቃታቸውንም ለመቋቋም እንችልም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እንገደላለንና እነርሱም ያመልጣሉ፤ እናም ምሽት እስከሚሆንም ድረስ ወደ ምድረበዳው ቀኑን በሙሉ ሸሸን።

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

፱፭ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሆነ፤ የጠዋት ፀሀይ በእኛ ላይ ስትሆን፤ ላማናውያን እኛን መቅረባቸውን ተመለከትን፤ እናም ሸሸን።

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

፱፮ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ፤ ከመቆማቸው በፊት በርቀት አልተከታተሉንም ነበር፤ እናም ይህ የነበረው በሰባተኛው ወር በሶስተኛው ቀን ጠዋት ነበር።

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

፱፯ እናም አሁን፤ አንቲዱስ እንደደረሰባቸው አናውቅም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ለሰዎቹ እንዲህ አልኩ፤ እነሆ፤ በወጥመዳቸው እስከሚይዙን ድረስ ወደ እነርሱም እንድንመጣ ዘንድ ቆመው እንደሆነ አናውቅም፤

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

፱፱ ስለዚህ ልጆቼ ምን ትላላችሁ፤ እነርሱን ለመዋጋት ትሄዳላችሁን?

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

፱፳ እናም አሁን እንዲህ አልሃለሁ፤ የተወደድክ ወንድሜ ሞርኒ፤ እንዲህ ያለን ታላቅ ድፍረትን በጭራሽ በኔፋውያን ሁሉ መካከል አላየሁም።

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

፱፳፮ ሁልጊዜም ልጆቼ ብዬ እንደምጠራቸው (ሁሉም ወጣቶች ሩቸውና) እነርሱም እንዲህ አሉኝ፤ አባታችን፤ እነሆ አምላካችን ከእኛ ጋር ነው፤ እናም እንድንወድቅ አይፈቅድም፤ እንሂድ፤ ብቻችንን የሚተዉን ከሆነ ወንድሞቻችንን እንግድልም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ የአንቲዱስን ሠራዊት እንዳያሸንፉ ዘንድ እንሂድ።

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

፱፳፯ እንግዲህ ፈፅሞ ተዋግተውም አያውቁም፤ ይሁን እንጂ ሞትን አይፈሩም ነበር፤ እናም ከህይወታቸው የበለጠ ለአባቶቻቸው ነፃነት በይበልጥ ያሰቡ ነበር፤ አዎን፤ ጥርጣሬ ከሌለባቸው እግዚአብሔር እንደሚጠብቃቸው በእናቶቻቸውም ተምረዋል።

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

፱፳፰ እናም እናቶቻቸው የተናገሩትን ቃላት እንዲህ ሲሉም ነገሩኝ፤ እናቶቻችንም ይህን እንደሚያውቁት ጥርጣሬ የለንም።

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

፱፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኛን ይከታተሉን ወደነበሩት ላማናውያን ከሁለት ሺህዎቹ ጋር ተመለሰኩ። እናም አሁን እነሆ፤ የአንቲዱስ ሠራዊት ደርሰውባቸው ነበር፤ እናም አስቃቂው ጦርነት ተጀምሮ ነበር።

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

፮ የአንቲዱስ ሠራዊት በዚያች በትንሽ ጊዜ ረጅም ጉዞ ተጉዘው በመድከማቸው በላማናውያን እጅ ለመውደቅ ተቃርበው ነበር፤ እናም ከሁለት ሺህዎቹ ጋር ባለመለስ ኖሮ ያሰቡት ይሳካላቸው ነበር።

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

፯፩ በጉዞአቸው ፍጥነት በመድከማቸው፣ አንቲዱስ፣ እናም ብዙዎቹ የእርሱ መሪዎች በጎራዴ ወድቀው ነበር— ስለዚህ መሪዎቻቸው ስለወደቁባቸው የአንቲዱስ ሰዎች በመረበሻቸው ከላማናውያን ፊት ማፈገፈግ ጀምረው ነበር።

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

፯፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በረቱና፣ እነርሱን ማሳደድ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ሌላማን ከሁለት ሺህዎቹ ጋር ወደእነርሱ በመጣና በእጅ ይገድሏቸው በጀመሩ ጊዜ ላማናውያን በታላቅ ኃይል እየተከተሏቸው ነበር፤ እናም የላማናውያን ሠራዊት በሌላማን ላይ እስከሚመለሱ ድረስ ያጠቁቸው ጀመር።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

፯፫ እናም የአንቲዱስ ሰዎች ላማናውያን መመለሳቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ህዝባቸውን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰቡና፣ እንደገና በላማናውያን ጀርባ ላይ መጡባቸው።

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

፯፬ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ እኛ የኔፌ ህዝብ፣ የአንቲዱስ ህዝብና እኔ ከሁለት ሺህዎቹ ጋር ላማናውያንን ከብብንና፣ ገደልናቸው፣ አዎን፣ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እስከሚያስረክቡ፣ እናም ደግሞ እራሳቸውን የጦር ምርኮኛ እስከሚያደርጉ ድረስ ተገደሉ።

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

፯፭ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በእኛም ሙሉ በሙሉ በምርኮ ከተያዙ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ብዙ ወጣቶች ተገድለዋል ብዬ በመፍራቱ ከእኔ ጋር የተዋጉትን ወጣቶች ቆጠርኳቸው።

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

፯፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ለእኔ ታላቅ ደስታ የሆነው ከእነርሱ እንዲትም ነፍስ መሬት ባለመውደቁ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በእግዚአብሔርም ጥንካሬ እንደተዋጉ ያህል ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ሰው በጭራሽ በእንደዚህ ዓይነት ታምራዊ በሆነ ጉልበት ተዋግቶ አይታወቅም ነበር፤ እናም በእስገራሚ ኃይል በላማናውያን ላይ ስለወደቁ፣ እስፈርተዋቸውም ነበር፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ላማናውያን እራሳቸውን የጦር ምርኮኛ አድርገው ሰጡ።

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

እናም፣ ከላማናውያን ወታደሮች እንጠብቃቸው ዘንድ ለእስረኞቻችን ቦታ ስለሌለን፤ ስለዚህ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ላክናቸው፤ ያልሞቱትን የእንቲጶስ ሰዎችንም ከእነርሱ ጋር ልክናቸዋል፤ እናም የተቀሩትን ወሰጄ ከብላቴና አምናውያን ጋር አደባለቅሁአቸው፤ ጉዞአችንንም ወደ ይሁዳ ከተማ አደረግን።

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

አልማ 57

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከንጉሱ፣ አሞርን፣ የጦር ምርኮኞቹን የምንለቅለት ከሆነ የእንቲፓራ ከተማ እንደሚለቅልኝ የሚገልፅ ደብዳቤ ደረሰኝ።

፪ ነገር ግን ባሉን ወታደሮች የእንቲፓራን ከተማ ለመውሰድ እርግጠኞች እንደሆንን፣ እናም ለከተማዋ ሲባል እስረኞችን በመለዋወጥ እራሳችንን እንደ ሞኝ መገመት እንደሚገባንና፣ እስረኞቻችንን በመለዋወጥ ብቻ ነው እንደምንለቃቸው ለንጉሱ ደብዳቤ ላክኩለት።

፫ እናም አሞርን እስረኞችን ስለማይቀያየር ደብዳቤዬን አልተቀበለውም፤ ስለዚህ ወደ እንቲፓራ ከተማ ለመሄድ ዝግጅት ማድረግ ጀመርን።

፬ ነገር ግን የእንቲፓራ ከተማ ህዝብ ከተማዋን ትተው ሄዱ፣ እናም ወደ ሌላኛው የያዙአቸው ከተማቸው ለመመሸግ ሸሹ፤ እናም የእንቲፓራ ከተማ በእጃችን ወደቀች።

፭ እናም የመሣፍንቱ ሀያ ሰምንተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሀያ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ቀለብ ተቀበልን፣ እናም ደግሞ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ለወታደሮቻችን ተጨማሪ ኃይልና በዙሪያውም ካሉት ሀገሮች ስድስት ሺህ ሰዎችን፣ ከዚህ በተጨማሪ ስልሳ አምናውያን ልጆች ከእኔ ትንንሾች ሁለት ሺህ ክምችቶች ወንድሞቻቸው ጋር ለመቀላቀል መጡ። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እኛ ጠንካሮች ነበርን፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በርካታ ቀለብ መጥተውልን ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቁሜኒን ከተማ ለመከላከል ከተቀመጡት ሠራዊት ጋር ውጊያ ማድረግ ፍላጎታችን ነበር።

፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ፤ በቅርቡ ፍላጎታችንን እንደፈጸምን አሳይህለሁ፤ አዎን፣ በጠንካራው ኃይላችን፣ ወይም ከጠንካራ ኃይላችን ክፍል ጋር፣ የሰንቅ አቅርቦትን ከመቀበላቸው ጥቂት ቀደም ብሎ በምሽት የቁሜኒን ከተማ ከበብናት።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በከተማዋ ዙሪያ ለበርካታ ምሽት መሸግን፤ ነገር ግን ከነጎራዴያችን ተኝተን ነበር፤ እናም ለማናውያን ብዙ ጊዜ እንደምከሩት በምሽት መጥተው እንዳይገድሉን ጠባቂዎችን አስቀመጥን፤ ነገር ግን ይህን በሚሞክሩበት ጊዜ ሁሉ ደሞቻቸው ፈሰሱ ነበር።

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

፲ ከጊዜ በኋላ ሰንቆቻቸው ደረሱ፣ እናም ወደከተማዎ በምሽት ለመግባት ተቃርበው ነበር። እናም ለማናውያንን ሳይሆን ያገኙት እኛን ኔፋውያንን ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ እነርሱንና ቁሳቁሶቻቸውን ወሰድን።

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

፲፩ እናም በዚህ ሁኔታ ለማናውያን ከሚደገፉበት ቢቆረጡም፣ እነርሱ ከተማዎን ለማስቀረት ቆርጠው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህን ሰንቆች ወሰድን ወደ ይሁዳ፣ እናም እስረኞቻችን በዛራሔምላ መላካችን አስፈላጊ ነበር።

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙ ቀናት ከማለፋቸው በፊት ለማናውያን የእርዳታ ተስፋቸውን ሁሉ ማጣት ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ ከተማዎን በእጃችን ሰጡን፤ እናም የቁሜኒን ከተማ ለማግኘት ያቀድነውን አከናወንን።

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

፲፫ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ እስረኞቻችን ብዙ ሰለነበሩ፣ ቁጥራቸው ብዙ ቢሆንም ሠራዊታችንን ሁሉ እስረኞቹን በመጠበቅ እንድንጠቀም ወይም እነርሱን እንድንገድላቸው ተገድደን ነበር።

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

፲፬ እነሆ በርካታ እስረኞች ያመልጡና በድንጋይና፣ በዲላ፣ እናም በእጃቸው ባሉት ማንኛውም ዓይነት መሳሪያዎች ስለሚዋጉን፣ የጦር ምርኮኞች እንዲሆኑ እራሳቸውን አሳልፈው ከሰጡ በኋላ ከሁለት ሺህ የሚበልጡትን ገድለናል።

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, inasmuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

፲፭ ስለዚህ ህይወታቸውን ማጥፋት ወይም እስከ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ድረስም በእጃችን ባለው ጎራዴ መጠበቃችን አስፈላጊ ሆነብን፤ እናም ደግሞ ከለማናውያን የወሰድናቸው ቢኖረንም፣ ቀለባችን ለራሳችንም ሰዎች እንኳን የሚሆን በቂ አልነበረም።

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

፲፮ እናም አሁን፣ በዚህ አሰቸጋሪ ሁኔታ፣ የጦር ምርኮኞቹን በተመለከተ መወሰን እጅግ አሰቸጋሪ ጉዳይ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እነርሱን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ለመላክ ወሰንን፤ ስለዚህ ሰዎችን መረጥን፣ እናም ለእስረኞቻችን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር እንዲወሰዱ ኃላፊነት ሰጠናቸው።

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

፲፯ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በማግስቱ ተመለሱ። እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እስረኞቹን በተመለከተ አልጠየቅናቸውም፤ እነሆም፣ ለማናውያን በእኛ ላይ ነበሩ፣ እናም በጊዜው በእጃቸው ከመውደቅ አድነውን ነበር። እነሆም፣ አሞሮን እነርሱን ለመርዳት አዲስ ቀለብና፣ ደግሞ ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ወታደሮችን ልኮላቸው ነበርና።

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከአሰረኞች ጋር የላክናቸው ሰዎች እኛን ለማሸነፍ በተቃረቡ ጊዜ ላማናውያንን ለመያዝ በወቅቱ ደረሱ።

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

፳፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሁለት ሺህ ስልሳ የሆኑት ወታደሮቹ በኃይል ተዋጉ፤ አዎን፣ በላማናውያን ፊት የማይበገሩም ነበሩ፤ እናም ተቃዋሚዎቻቸውን በሙሉ ገደሉአቸው።

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

፳፻ እናም ቀሪዎቹ ወታደሮቻችን ከላማናውያን ፊት ለመሸሸ በተቃረቡበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ሁለት ሺህ ስልሳዎቹ የማይበገሩ እንዲሁም ተስፋ የማይቆርጡ ነበሩ።

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

፳፻፩ አዎን፣ እናም የታዘዙትን ቃላት በሙሉ በትክክል አከናወኑ፣ እንዲሁም ጥረት አደረጉ፤ አዎን፣ እንደ እምነታቸውም ለእነርሱ ሆነ፤ እናም ከእናቶቻቸው የተማሩትን ለእኔ የተናገሩትን ቃላት አሰታወስኩኝ።

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

፳፻፪ እናም እሁን እነሆ፣ ይህንን ታላቅ ድል ለማግኘት ያሰቻሉ እነዚህ ልጆቹ፣ እናም አሰረኞቹን እንዲያጓጉዙ የተመረጡት ሰዎች ነበሩ፤ ላማናውያንን ያሸነፉት እነርሱ ነበሩ፤ ስለዚህ ወደ ማንቲ ከተማ ተነድተው ተመለሱ።

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

፳፻፫ እናም የቁሜኒ ከተማችንን በመያዝ ቀጥልን፣ እናም ሁላችንም በጎራዴ አልጠፋንም ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ብዙም ጥፋት ደርሶብናል።

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

፳፻፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ከሸሹ በኋላ፣ ከሞቱት ሰዎቹ መካከል የቀሩት ቁሰላኞች እንዲወሰዱና፣ ቁሰላቸው እንዲታሰር ትዕዛዝ በፍጥነት ሰጠሁኝ።

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

፳፻፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙ ደም ስለፈሰሰባቸው ከእኔ ሁለት ሺዎቹ መካከል ሁለት መቶ የሚሆኑት እራሳቸውን ሰተው ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቸርነት፣ እናም ለመደነቃችንና፣ ደግሞ ለሠራዊታችን ደስታ መሰረት፣ ከእነርሱ አንድም ነፍስ አልጠፋብንም ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከእነርሱ መካከልም በብዙ ያልቆሰለ አንድም ነፍስ አልነበረም።

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

፳፻፮ እናም እሁን፣ መጠበቃቸው ለሠራዊታችን ሁሉ አሰገራሚ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በሺዎች የሚቆጠሩት ወንድሞቻችን በተገደሉ ጊዜ እነርሱ ተርፈው ነበር። እናም ይህ የሆነው ፃድቅ እግዚአብሔርም እንዳለና፣ ማንም ካልተጠራጠረ በእግዚአብሔር አሰደናቂው ኃይል እንደሚጠበቅ እንዲያምኑ በተማሩት ባላቸው ታላቅ እምነት የተነሳ በኃይሉ እግዚአብሔር ድንቅ ስራ እንደሆነ በትክክል እናመለክታለን።

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

፳፯ እንግዲህ እነዚህ የተናገሩት ለእነዚህ ይህ ነበር፤ እነርሱ ወጣቶች ናቸው፣ እናም አስተሳሰባቸው ፅኑ ነው፣ እናም እምነታቸውን ሳያቋርጡ በእግዚአብሔር አድርገዋል።

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

፳፰ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የቆሰሉትን ሰዎች ከተንከባከብንና፣ የሞቱብንን፣ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ የነበሩትን የሞቱትን ላማናውያን ከቀበርን በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሞድር ይዘዋቸው ጉዞ ስለጀመሩት እስረኞች በተመለከተ ጊድን ጠየቅነው።

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

፳፱ እንግዲህ ጊድ ሞድሪቱ እየጠበቁ እንዲወሰዷቸው በተመደቡት ቡድኖች ላይ የተሾመው ሊቀ ሸምበላቸው ነበር።

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

፴ እናም አሁን፣ ጊድ የተናገረኝ ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፤ እነሆ፣ ከእስረኞቻችን ጋር ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሞድር ጉዞ ጀምረን ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያንን የጦር ሰፈር እንዲጠብቁ የተላኩትን የሠራዊታችንን ሰላዮች አገኘናቸው።

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሲሉ ወደ እኛ ጮኹ—እነሆ፣ የላማናውያን ሠራዊት ወደ ቁሜኒ ከተማ በመሄድ ላይ ናቸው፣ እናም እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን ያጠቁቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ህዝባችንን ያጠፋሉ።

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እስረኞቻችን እንዲበረቱ ያደረጋቸውን ጩኸታቸውን ሰሙ፤ እናም በአመፅ በእኛ ላይ ተነሱ።

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በማመፃቸው ጎራዳዎቻችንን በእነርሱ ላይ አሳረፍንባቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእንድንትም ወደ ጎራዳው ርጡ፣ በእርሱም ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸው ተገደሉ፤ እናም ቀሪዎቹ አመለጡና፣ ከእኛ ሸኹ።

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

፴፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በሸሹ ጊዜ፣ እኛም ልንደርሰባቸውም ስላልቻልን፣ ጉዞአችንን በፍጥነት ወደ ቁሜኒ ከተማ አደረግን፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቻችን ከተማዋን እንዲጠብቁ እንረዳቸው ዘንድ በጊዜ ደረሰን።

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

፴፭ እናም እነሆ ከጠላቶቻችን እጅ በድጋሚ አመለጥን። እናም የእምላካችን ስም የተባረከ ይሁን፤ እነሆም እርሱ ነው እንድንተርፍ ያደረገን፤ አዎን፣ ይህንን ታላቅ ነገር ለእኛ አድርጎልናል።

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የጊድን ቃል፣ እኔ ሔለማን፣ በሰማሁኝ ጊዜ፣ እኛን እንዳንጠፋ በመጠበቅ በነበረው በጌታ ቸርነት በታላቅ ደስታ ተሞልቼ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም የሞቱት ነፍሶች በእምላካቸው ዘንድ እንደሚጻርፍ እምናለሁ።

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

አልማ ፶፰

፩ እናም እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ የሚቀጥለው ዓላማችን የማንቲን ከተማ መያዝ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በጥቂት ሰዎቻችን ከከተማቸው ለማስወጣት አይቻለንም ነበር። እነሆም፣ ቀደም ሲል ያደረግነውን ያስታውሱ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ከጠንካራ ምሽጋቸው በዘዴ ለማስወጣት አልተቻለም ነበር።

፪ እናም በቁጥርም ከእኛ ወታደሮች የሚልቁ ስለነበር ወደ ጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው በመሄድ ለማጥቃት አልደፈርንም ነበር።

፫ አዎን፣ እናም እኛ መልሰን የወሰድናቸውን እነዚያን የምድሮች ክፍል ለመጠበቅ ሰዎቻችንን መጠቀም አስፈላጊ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወታደራዊ ኃይል፣ እናም ደግሞ ኦዲዲስ ሰንቆችን እናገኝ ዘንድ መጠበቁ አስፈላጊ ነበር።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ስለህዝባችን ጉዳይ እንዲያውቅ ለማድረግ ወደ ምድራችን ገዢ መልዕክተኛ ላክሁኝ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ሰንቆችንና፣ ወታደራዊ ኃይልን ለማግኘት ጠበቅን።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ጥቂቱ ብቻ ነበር የጠቀመን፤ ምክንያቱም ለማናውያንም ደግሞ ከቀን ወደ ቀን ታላቅ ብርታትን ይቀበላሉ ነበርና፤ እናም ደግሞ በርካታ ሰንቆችን፤ እናም በዚህ ጊዜ የነበርንበት ሁኔታዎች እነዚህ ነበሩ።

፮ እናም ለማናውያን ከጊዜ ወደጊዜ እኛን ለማጥቃት ገሰገሱ፣ እናም እኛን ለማጥፋትም ስልት ቀየሱ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በማፈገፈጋቸውና በጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው ምክንያት ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት ለመምጣት አልቻልንም።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምግብ አጥተን ልንጠፋ እስከምንቃረብ ድረስ በእንደዚህ ዓይነት አስቸጋሪ ሁኔታ ለብዙ ወራት ጠበቅን።

፰ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ እኛን ለመርዳት ሲባል በሁለት ሺህ ሠራዊት የተጠበቀ ምግብ ተቀበልን፤ እናም እራሳችንንና ሀገራችንን በጠላት እጅ እንዳይወድቁ አዎን ስፍር ቁጥር ከሌላቸው ጠላቶች ጋር ለመዋጋት የተቀበልነው እርዳታ ሁሉ ይህ ነው።

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

፱ እናም እንግዲህ ይህ ለችግሩ መንስኤ ምን እንደሆነ፣ ወይም ተጨማሪ ኃይል ለምን እንዳልላኩልን ምክንያቱን እናውቅም፤ ስለዚህ እዝነን ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ በማንኛውም መንገድ የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ በምድራችን ላይ ይሆናል፤ ውጤቱም ለእኛ መሸነፍ፣ እናም ፍፁም ጥፋት ይሆናል በሚል ፍርሃት ተሞልተን ነበር።

፲ ስለዚህ እግዚአብሔር እንዲያበረታንና፣ ከጠላቶቻችን እጅ እንዲያድነን፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ህዝባችንን ለመርዳት፣ ከተሞቻችንንና፣ ምድራችንን፣ እናም ሀብታችንን እናስመልስ ዘንድ ብርታትን ይሰጠን ዘንድ ከልባችን ፀለይን።

፲፩ አዎን፣ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ አምላካችን እኛን እንደሚያድነን ለማረጋገጥ ጎብኝቶናል፤ አዎን፣ ለነፍሳችን ስላምን ተናግርናል፣ ታላቅ እምነትንም ሰጥቶናል፣ እናም በእርሱም ለመዳናችን ተስፋ እንዲኖረን አድርጎል።

፲፪ እናም ጠላታችንን ለማሸነፍና፣ ምድራችንንና፣ ሀብታችንንና፣ ሚስቶቻችንንና፣ ልጆቻችንንና፣ የነፃነታችን መንስኤ የሆኑትን ለመጠበቅ ወሰንን፣ ባገኘነውም ጥቂት ኃይል ድፍረትን አገኘን።

፲፫ እናም ባለን ኃይል ሁሉ በማንቲ ከተማ ወደነበሩት ላማናውያን ሄድን፤ እናም በከተማዋ አቅራቢያ በሚገኘው ምድረበዳ ድንኳኖቻችንን ተከልን።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለው ቀን፣ በከተማዋ አጠገብ በምድረበዳው ዳርቻ መሆናችንን ላማናውያን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ የወታደሮቻችንን ቁጥር እንዲሁም ጥንካሬ ለማወቅ ሰላዮቻቸውን ላኩብን።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደቁጥራችን ብዛት ጠንካራ አለመሆናችንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ እናም ከእኛም ጋር ለመዋጋትና፣ እኛን ለመግደል የማይመጡ ከሆነ፣ እርዳታው ይቋረጥብናል ብለው በመፍራትና ደግሞ በበርካታ ሰራዊታቸው በቀላሉ ልናጠፋቸው እንችላለን ብለው በመገመታቸው፤ ስለዚህ ከእኛ ጋር ለመዋጋት ዝግጅት ጀመሩ።

፲፮ እናም ከእኛ ጋር ለመዋጋት ዝግጅት ማድረጋቸውን በተመለከትን ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ጊድ ከጥቂት ሰዎቹ ጋር እራሱን በምድረበዳው እንዲሸሽግ አደረገሁ፣ ደግሞም ቲኦመነርና ጥቂት ሰዎች እራሳቸውን በምድረበዳው እንዲሸሽጉ አደረገሁ።

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

፲፮ እንግዲህ ጊድና የእርሱ ሰዎች በሰተቀኝ በኩል፣ እናም የተቀሩት በሰተግራ በኩል ነበሩ፤ እናም እራሳቸውን በሽሽጉ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን ከእኛ ጋር ለመዋጋት በመጀመሪያ ጊዜ በወጡበት ድንኳናችንን በተከልንበት ስፍራ፣ ከተቀሩት ወታደሮቹ ጋር ቀረሁ።

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ከበርካታ ሠራዊቶቻቸው ጋር በእኛ ላይ መጡ። እናም በመጡ ጊዜና በጎራዴ ሊያጠቁን በተቃረቡ ጊዜ፤ ከእኔ ጋር የነበሩትን ህዝቦቹን ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲያፈገፍጉ አደረግሁ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን እኛን ይገድሉን ዘንድ በጣም እጅግ ፍላጎታቸው በታላቅ ፍጥነት ተከተሉን፤ ስለዚህ ወደ ምድረበዳው ተከተሉን፤ በጊድ፣ እናም በቲአምነር መካከል ስናልፍም በላማናውያን አልተገኙም ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inso-much that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ባለፉ ጊዜ፣ ወይንም ሠራዊቱ ባለፉ ጊዜ፣ ጊድና ቴአምነር ከተሸሽጉበት ስፍራ ወጡ፤ እናም ወደከተማዋ እንዳይመለሱ የላማናውያን ሰላዮችን ቆርጠው አስቀሩአቸው።

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ቆርጠው ካስቀሩአቸው በኋላ፣ ወደ ከተማዋ ሮጡና እስከሚያጠፉአቸው፣ እናም ከተማዋንም እስከሚወሰዱ ድረስ፣ ከተማዋን እንዲጠብቁ የቀሩትን ጠባቂዎች አጠቁአቸው።

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

፳፫ እንግዲህ ይህ የሆነው ከጥቂት ጠባቂዎቻቸው በሰተቀር ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲሄዱ ላማናውያን ለሠራዊቶቻቸው በሙሉ ስለፈቀዱላቸው ነበር።

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጊድና ቴአምነር በዚህ ዘዴ ጠንካራ ምሽጋቸውን ወሰዱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ዛራሔምላ በምድረበዳው ብዙ ከተጓዘን በኋላ፣ ወደ አንድ አቅጣጫ ተጓዘን።

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

፳፭ እናም ላማናውያን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር መዝመታቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ እጅግ ፈሩ፣ ይህም የሆነበት ወደ ጥፋት የሚመራቸው ዕቅድ የተዘጋጀ መሰሏቸው ስለነበር ነው፤ ስለዚህ በድጋሚ ወደ ምድረበዳው ማፈገፈግ ጀመሩ፤ አዎን፣ በመጡበት መንገድም ተመለሱ።

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ምሽት ነበርና፣ ድንኳናቸውን ተክለው ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም የላማናውያን ዋና አዛዦች ኔፋውያን በጉዞአቸው ደክመዋል በማለት ገምተው ነበር፤ እናም ወታደሮቻቸውን ሁሉ ከፊት እንዲሰወጡ ስለገመቱ፣ በዚህም የተነሳ የማንቲን ከተማ በተመለከተ አላሰቡባትም ነበር።

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

፳፮ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ምሽት በሆነ ጊዜ፣ የእኔ ሰዎች እንዲይተኙ፣ ነገር ግን በሌላ አቅጣጫ ወደ ማንቲ ምድር ወደፊት እንዲሄዱ አደረግሁ።

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

፳፯ እናም በዚህ በምሽቱ ጉዞአችን የተነሳ፤ እነሆ፣ በሚቀጥለው ቀን ላማናውያን በርቀት ቀድመናቸው ስለነበር አስቀድመን ወደ ማንቲ ከተማ ደረስን።

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓይነት ሰልጣ፣ ደም መፋሰስ ሳይኖር፣ የማንቲን ከተማ ያዝን።

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በከተማዋ አጠገብ በደረሱ ጊዜና፣ ከአነሱ ጋር ለመገናኘት መዘጋጀታችንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ እጅግ ተገርመው ነበር፣ እናም ወደ ምድረ-በዳው እስከሚሸሹ ድረስ በታላቅ ፍርሃት ተውጠው ነበር።

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

፴ እዎን፣ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ሠራዊት ከምድሪቱ ክፍል ሁሉ ሸሽተው ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ብዙ ሴቶችንና ልጆችን ይዘው ከምድሪቱ ወጡ።

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

፴፩ እናም በላማናውያን የተወሰዱት እነዚያ ከተሞች ሁሉ በዚህን ጊዜ በእኛ ቁጥጥር ሥር ናቸው፤ እናም በላማናውያን ምርኮኞች ሆነው ከተወሰዱት በቀር አባቶቻችንና፣ ሴቶቻችን፣ እናም ልጆቻችን ወደ ቤታቸው ተመለሱ።

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

፴፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወታደሮቻችን በቁጥር በርካታ የሆኑትን ከተሞች፣ እና በርካታ ንብረቶች ለመጠበቅ ጥቂት ናቸው።

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

፴፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእኛ የነበሩትን ሰፍራዎች፣ እናም ከተሞች እስከምናገኝ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ድልን በሰጠን አምላካችን እምነት አለን።

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

፴፬ እንግዲህ መንግሥት የበለጠ ድጋፍን ለእኛ የማይሰጥበትን መንስኤ አናውቅም፤ ወደ እኛ የመጡትም ሰዎች ለምን ታላቅ ድጋፍ እንዳላገኘን አያውቁም።

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

፴፭ እነሆ፣ ድል እንዳላገኛችሁ ለመሆን እንደሚችል፣ እናም ወታደሮችን ወደዚያ ምድር ወስደህም እንደሆነ እንገምታለን፤ ይህ ከሆነ ለማጉረምረም እንፈልግም።

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

፴፮ እናም ይህ ካልሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ ስለዚህ በመንግስት መከፋፈል ምክንያት በተጨማሪ ሰዎችን ለእኛ እርዳታ እንደሚይደሉ እንፈራለን፣ ከላካቸው የበለጠ በቁጥር ብዙ መሆናቸውን እናውቃለን።

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

፴፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ ይህ ምንም ማለት አይደለም—ምንም እንኳን ወታደሮቻችን ደካሞች ቢሆኑ፣ እግዚአብሔር እንደሚያድነን እናምናለን፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከጠላቶቻችን አጅ ያሰለቅቀናል።

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

፴፰ እነሆ፣ ይህ በሀያ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ ነበር፣ እኛም ምድሮቻችንን ይዘናል፤ እናም ላማናውያን ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ሸሸተዋል።

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

፴፱ እናም በከፍተኛ ሁኔታ የተናገርኳቸው የአዎን ህዝቦች ወንድ ልጆች፣ በማንቲ ከተማ ከእኔ ጋር ናቸው፤ ጌታም ረድቷቸዋል፣ አዎን፣ እናም አንድም ነፍስ እንኳን እስከማይጠፋ ድረስ በጎራዴ እንዲይጠፉ ተጠብቀዋል።

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

፵ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በብዛት ቆሰለዋል፣ ይሁን እንጂ እግዚአብሔር ነፃ ባደረገቸው በዚያ ነፃነት በፅኑነት ቆመዋል፤ እናም ከቀን ወደ ቀንም ጌታ እምላካቸውን በማስታወስ ጠንቃቆች ናቸው፤ አዎን፣ ህጎቻችንና፣ ፍርድን፣ እንዲሁም ትዕዛዛቱን፣ ለመጠበቅ ጥረት አድርገዋል፤ እናም የሚመጣውን በተመለከተ ስለተተነበየው እምነታቸውም ጠንካራ ነው።

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

፵፩ እናም አሁን፣ የተወደድህ ወንድሜ ሞሮኒ፣ እኛን የፈወሰንና፣ ነፃ ያደረገን ጌታ እምላካችን፣ ያለማቋረጥ በፊቱ ይጠብቅህ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ህዝቦቹን ይውደድ፣ ለእኛም እርዳታ የነበሩትን ላማናውያን የወሰዱብንን ንብረቶች ለማግኘት ድል እንድታገኝ እርሱ ይርዳህ። እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ ደብዳቤዬን አደመድማለሁ። እኔ ሔለማን፣ የአልማ ልጅ ነኝ።

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

አልማ ፶፱

፩ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሠላሳኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ሞሮኒ የሌላማንን ደብዳቤ ተቀብሎ ካነበበ በኋላ፣ በደህንነቱ አዎን፣ ሌላማን የተቀሙትን ምድሮች ለማግኘት ባደረገው ታላቅ ድል እጅግ ተደስቶ ነበር።

፪ አዎን እናም ሞሮኒ እርሱ በነበረበትም ምድር ሁሉ ዙሪያ ያሉት ይደስቱ ዘንድ ለህዝቡ ይህ ሁሉ እንዲታወቅ አስደረገ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ በአስደናቂ ሁኔታ በድጋሚ ያገኛቸውን ምድሮች ለመጠበቅ እንዲችሉ፣ ሌላማንን ወይንም የሌላማን ወታደሮችን ለማበርታት ሰዎች እንዲሰባሰቡ እንደፈለገ ለፓሆራን በፍጥነት ደብዳቤ ላከ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ይህንን ደብዳቤ በላከ ጊዜ፣ የቀሩትንና ላማናውያን የወሰዱባቸውን ከተሞች ያገኝ ዘንድ በድጋሚ ዕቅድ ማቀድ ጀመረ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ዝግጅት በሚያደርግበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ከሞሮኒ ከተማና፣ ከሌሂ ከተማና፣ ከሞሪያንተን ከተማ የተሰባሰቡት የኔፋውያን ሰዎች በላማናውያን ጥቃት ደረሰባቸው።

፮ አዎን፣ ከማንቲ ምድር እናም በዙሪያው ካለው ምድር እንዲሸሹ የተገደዱትም በዚህች ምድር ከላማናውያን ጋር ሊቀላቀሉ መጡ።

፯ እናም በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ሰለነበሩ፣ አዎን፣ እናም በአሞሮን ትዕዛዝ ከቀን ቀን ጥንካሬን በማግኘታቸው በኔፋውያን ሰዎች ላይ መጡና፣ በአስቃቂ ሁኔታ ያጠቁአቸው ይገድሉአቸው ጀመሩ።

፰ እናም ወታደሮቻቸው በቁጥር ብዙ ሰለነበሩ የተቀሩት የኔፋያህ ሰዎች እንዲሸሹ ተገደዱ፤ እናም ከሞሮኒ ሠራዊት ጋር ተቀላቀሉ።

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

፱ እናም እንግዲህ ከተማዋን ህዝቡ እንዲጠብቅ ለመርዳት ሞሮኒ ወደ ኔፋውያን ከተማ ሰዎች ተልከዋል ብሎ ገምቶ ነበር፤ እናም ከተማዋን ከእነርሱ እጅ ዳግም ከመውሰድ ይልቅ በላማናውያን እጅ እንዲይገባ መጠበቅ ቀላል መሆኑን በማወቁ ከተማዋን በቀላሉ ይጠብቋታል ብሎ ገምቶ ነበር።

፲ ስለዚህ የያዛቸውን ሰፍራዎች ለመጠበቅ ኃይሉን ከእርሱ ጋር አስቀርቶ ነበር።

፲፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ሞሮኒ የኔፋውያን ከተማ መወሰዱን በተመለከተ ጊዜ እጅግ አዝናኖ ነበር፤ እናም በህዝቡ ክፋት የተነሳ በወንድሞቻቸው እጅ መውደቅ እንደሚገባቸው መጠራጠር ጀመረ።

፲፪ እንግዲህ ዋና ሻምበሎች የነበራቸው ጥርጣሬ ይህ ነበር። እነርሱም በህዝቦች ክፋት ምክንያት ተጠራጠሩና ተደነቁ፤ እናም ይህ የሆነው ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ ድል በማግኘታቸው ነው።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ የሀገራቸውን ነፃነት በተመለከተ በመንግሥቱ ግዴላሽነት ተቆጥቶ ነበር።

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephihah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephihah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

አልማ ፳

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ ለሀገሪቱ አስተዳዳሪ፣ ለፓሆራን በድጋሚ ፃፈና፣ የፃፈውም ቃል እንዲህ ይል ነበር፣ እነሆ፣ በዛራሔምላ ከተማ ዋና ዳኛና፣ በምድሪቱ አስተዳዳሪ ለሆነው ለፓሆራን፣ እናም ደግሞ የጦር ጉዳያቸውን በተመለከተ እንዲያስተዳድሩና እንዲመሩ ከእነዚህ ሁሉ መካከል በህዝብ ለተመረጡት፣ ደብዳቤዬን አቀርባለሁ።

፪ እነሆም፣ በወቀሳ መልክ ለእነርሱ በመጠኑ የምለው አለኝ፤ እነሆም፣ እናንተ ራሳችሁም ሰዎችን በእንድ ላይ እንድትሰበሰቡና፣ በጎራዴና፣ በሻምላ፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ዓይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች እንድታስታጥቁ እናም ለማናውያን ወደ ምድራችን በመጡበት በየትኛውም አቅጣጫ እንድትልኩአቸው ተሹማችኋል።

፫ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ እኔ ራሴና፣ ደግሞ የእኔ ሰዎችና፣ ደግሞ ሌሎችን፣ እና የእርሱ ሰዎች ታላቅ የሆነን ስቃይ ተስቃይተናል፤ አዎን፣ በረሃብ፣ በጥማትና፣ በድካም፣ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ስቃይ ተስቃይተናል።

፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተስቃየነው ይህ ሁሉ ቢሆን ኖሮ፣ እናገረመርምም እንዲሁም ወቀሳ አናቀርብም ነበር።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በህዝባችን መካከል ግድያው ከፍተኛ ነበር፣ አዎን፣ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ በጎራዴው ወድቀዋል፣ ለወታደሮቻችን በቂ ብርታትንና እርዳታን ብታደርጉ ኖሮ፣ ውጤቱም ሌላ በሆነ ነበር። አዎን በእኛም ላይ ችላ ባይነታችሁ ታላቅ ነበር።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ የዚህ እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ችላ ባይነት መንስኤን ማወቅ እንፈልጋለን፤ አዎን፣ ለሀሳብ የለሽነትታችሁ ምክንያትን ማወቅ እንፈልጋለን።

፯ ጠላቶቻችሁ በዙሪያችሁ የሞትን ስራ በሚያስራጩበት ወቅት በዙፋናችሁም ምንም ሳታሰቡ ለመቀመጥ እንችላለን ብላችሁ ታስባላችሁን? አዎን፣ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ወንድሞቻችሁን ሲገድሉባችሁ—

፰ አዎን፣ ለእርዳታ ወደእናንተ የሚመለከቱትንም፣ አዎን በእናንተም እንዲደገፉ በምትገኙበት ቦታ ያስቀምጡአችሁ ሲገድሉባችሁ፣ አዎን፣ ወታደሮችን እንዲያበረቱአቸው ወደእነርሱ ለመላክ፣ እናም ብዙ ሺህ የሚሆኑትን በጎራዴ ከመቆረጥ ባዳናችሁ ነበር።

Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም—ብዙዎች ለዚህ ህዝብ ደህንነት ታላቅ ፍላጎት ስለነበራቸው እስከሚወጡ፣ እናም ደማቸው ፈሶም እስከሚሞቱ ድረስ ስንቃችሁን ያዛችሁባቸው፤ አዎን፣ እናም ለእነርሱ እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ግዴላሽነት ስለነበራችሁ ይህንን ያደረጉት በረሃብ ሊጠፉ ሲቃረቡ ነበር።

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

፲ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ— የምትወደዱ መሆን ነበረባችሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ለዚህ ህዝብ ደህንነትና፣ ነፃነት ይበልጥ በትጋት ራሳችሁን ማነሳሳት ነበረባችሁ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት ሰዎች ደም ለበቀል በራሳችሁ ላይ እስከሚመጣ ድረስ ችላ አላችኋቸው፤ አዎን፣ ጩኸታቸው፣ እናም ሰቃያቸው ሁሉ በእግዚአብሔር ዘንድ የታወቀ ነው—

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

፲፩ እነሆ፣ እናም በታላቁ የእግዚአብሔር ቸርነት ምክንያት ምንም ነገር ሳትፈፀሙ ያደነናል፣ እርሱም ትቶአችሁ በዙፋናችሁ ላይ መቀመጥ እንችላለን ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እነሆ፣ ይህንን የምትገምቱ ከሆነ ግምታችሁ ከንቱ ነው።

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

፲፪ ብዙዎች ወንድሞቻችሁ ስለሞቱ በኃጢአታቸው ነው የተገደሉት ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እኔ እላችኋለሁ፣ እንደዚህ የምትገምቱ ከሆነ ግምታችሁ ከንቱ ነው፤ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁና፣ ብዙዎች በጎራዴ ሞተዋል፤ እናም እነሆ ይህ ኩነይያችሁ ነው፤

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

፲፫ ጌታ ትክክለኛው ፍርድና ቅጣቱ በኃጢአተኞች ላይ ይሆን ዘንድ ፃድቃኖች እንዲገደሉ ይፈቅዳል፤ ስለዚህ ፃድቃኖች ስለተገደሉ የጠፉ ናቸው ብላችሁ አትገምቱ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ በጌታ በአምላካቸው ዘንድ ያርፋሉ።

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

፲፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እላችኋለሁ እጅግ ሰነፎች በመሆናቸው፤ አዎን፣ በመንግስታችንም ሰንፍና ቢሆን፣ እናም ለወንድሞቻቸውም፣ አዎን፣ ለተገደሉትም ቢሆን ባላቸው ታላቅ ችላ ባይነት፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቅጣት በእነዚህ ሰዎች ላይ እንዳይሆን በጣም አፈራለሁ።

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

፲፭ በአመራራችን በተጀመረው ኃጢአት ባይሆን ኖሮ ጠላቶቻችን በእኛ ላይ ኃይልን እንዳያገኙ ለመቋቋም ይቻላል ነበር።

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

፲፮ አዎን፣ በራሳችን መካከል በተጀመረው ጦርነት ባይሆን ኖሮ፤ አዎን፣ በራሳችን መካከል ብዙ ደም መፋሰስ እንዲሆን ባደረጉት በንጉሡ ሰዎች ባይሆን ኖሮ፤ አዎን፣ በመካከላችን ፀብ በነበረበት ጊዜ፣ ቀደም ሲል እንዳደረግነው እራሳችንን በአንድ ላይ ብናደርግ ኖሮ፤ አዎን፣ የንጉሥ ሰዎች በእኛ ላይ እንደፈለጉት ኃይልና ስልጣን ባይሆን ኖሮ፤ በመካከላችን ለብዙ ደም መፋሰስ ምክንያት የሆነውን ጎራዳዎችን ከማንሳት ይልቅ፣ ለነፃነታችን ምክንያት እውነተኛቸው ቢሆኑ፣ እናም ከእኛ ጋር ተቀላቅለው በጠላቶቻችን ላይ ቢሄዱ፣ አዎን፣ በጌታ ብርታት ወደ እነርሱ ብንሄድ ጠላቶቻችንን እንበታትናቸው ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም ይህ የሚሆነው የጌታ ቃሉ ይፈፀም ዘንድ ነው።

፲፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን ምድራችንን ለመውሰድ መጥተዋል፣ እናም ህዝባችንን በጎራዳ እየገደሉ፤ አዎን፣ ሴቶቻችንንና፣ ልጆቻችንን፣ እናም ደግሞ ምርኮኞች እድርገው እየወሰዱአቸው ናቸው፣ ሁሉንም ዓይነት ሰቃይ እንዲሰቃዩ እያደረጉአቸው ናቸው፤ ይህም ኃይልና ሥልጣን በሚሹ ታላቅ ኃጢያት፣ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም በእነዚያ የንጉስ ሰዎች ምክንያት ነው።

፳ አዎን፣ ነገር ግን ይህንን በተመለከተ ለምን ብዙ አላለሁኝ? እራሳችሁም ብትሆኑ ስልጣንን የምትፈልጉ መሆናችሁን እናውቅም። እናንተ ለሀገራችሁ ከሀዲ እንደሆናችሁም እናውቅም።

፳፩ ወይም ችላ ያላችሁን፣ ምግብም እንዳይላክልን እናም ደግሞ ወታደሮቻችን እንዲጠናከሩ ሰዎች እንዳይላኩ ያደረጋችሁበት ምክንያት በሀገራችን ዋና ስፍራ በመሆናችሁ፣ እናም በጠባቂዎች በመከበባችሁ ነውን?

፳፪ የጌታ የእምላካችሁን ትዕዛዛት ረስታችኋልን? አዎን አባቶቻችን በምርኮ እንደነበሩ ረስታችኋልን? ከጠላቶቻችን እጅ ብዙ ጊዜ መለቀቃችንን ረሳችሁትን?

፳፫ ወይም በዙፋናችን እንደተቀመጥን እና ጌታ የሰጠንን ዘዴዎች ሳንጠቀምባቸው ያድነናል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን?

፳፬ አዎን፣ በሺዎች እንዲሁም በእስር ሺዎች ያለሰራ በተቀመጡት ተከብባችሁ፤ በዙሪያችሁ በምድሪቱ ዳርቻ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት በጎራዳ በተገደሉ ጊዜ፤ አዎን፣ በቆሰሉና በደሙ ጊዜ ያለሰራ ትቀመጣላችሁን?

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

፳፬ አሁንም ተቀምጣችሁ እነዚህን ነገሮች በምትመለከቱበት ጊዜ እግዚአብሔር እንከን የሌላችሁ አድርጎ ይቆጥረናል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? እነሆ እኔ ግን እንደዚህ አድርጎ አይቆጥራችሁም አላለሁ። እንግዲህ የመያዣው እቃ ውስጥ በመጀመሪያ እንዲጠራ፣ እናም ደግሞ የእቃው ውጭ እንዲጠራ እግዚአብሔር መናገሩን እንዲያስተውሉ አፈልጋለሁ።

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

፳፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ለሰራችሁት ሰራ ጎሰሃ ካልገባችሁና፣ በሰራችሁ ጎቁ ካልሆናችሁ፣ እንዲሁም በድጋሚያ ያገኛትን የሀገራችንን ክፍል ይደግፋት ዘንድና፣ ምናልባት ደግሞ በዚህኛው ክፍል የተቀረውን ጎብረታችንን እናገኝ ዘንድ፣ እናም ወደ እኛምና፣ ደግሞ ለሌሎችም፣ ምግብና ሰው ካልላካችሁ፤ እነሆ የውስጥ መያዣችንን እቃ፣ አዎን የመንግስታችን የበላይ ሹማምንቶችንም ቢሆን፣ እስከምናጠራ ከላማናውያን ጋር መጣላቱ አስፈላጊ አይደለም።

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

፳፻ እናም የደብዳቤዬን መልስ ካልሰጠኝኝ በቀር፣ እናም ወጥተህና እውነተኛውን የነፃነት መንፈስ ካላሳየኸኝና፣ ወታደሮቻችንን ካላበረታህና ካላጠናከርህና፣ ለድጋፋቸው ምግብ ካልሰጠኝቸው እነሆ የነፃነት ሰዎቹን ይህንን ክፍል እንዲያስተዳድሩ እተዋቸዋለሁ፤ እናም ሌላ ኃይል በእነርሱ ላይ መሰራት እንዳይችል የእግዚአብሔርን ብርታትና በረከት በእነርሱ ላይ አደርጋለሁ—

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

፳፻ እናም ይህን የማደርገው በታላቁ እምነታቸው፣ እናም በመከራቸው ጊዜ በነበራቸው ትዕግስት ነው—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

፳፻ እናም ወደ እናንተ እመጣለሁና፣ በመካከላችሁ ነፃነት የሚፈልግ ቢኖር፣ አዎን፣ የቀረም የነፃነት ብልጭታ ቢኖር፣ እነሆ፣ ኃይልና ስልጣንን ያለአግባብ በመካከላችሁ የሚያነሳሱት እንኳን እስከሚጠፉ ድረስ አመፅ አስነሳለሁ።

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

፳፻ አዎን፣ እነሆ ኃይላችሁንም ሆነ ስልጣናችሁን አፈረሁ፤ ነገር ግን እምላኬን ነው የምፈራው፤ እናም እንደትዕዛዛቱ ሀገሪን ለመከላከል ጎራዴዬን እነሳለሁ፤ እናም በክፋታችሁ የተነሳ ነው ብዙዎች የጠፉት።

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

፳፻ እነሆ ይህ ጊዜው ነው፤ አዎን አሁን ጊዜው ደርሷል፣ ራሳችሁን፣ ሀገራችሁንና፣ ልጆቻችሁን ለመከላከል ካላነሳሳችሁ የፍትህ ጎራዴ በእናንተ ላይ ይንዠባለላል፤ አዎን፣ እናም በእናንተ ላይ ይሆናል፣ እንዲሁም ፈፀሞም ለጥፋታችሁ ይሆናል።

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

፱ እነሆ፣ ከእናንተ እርዳታን እጠብቃለሁ፤ እናም፣ እርዳታችንን እንድናገኝ ካልሰራችሁ በቀር፣ እነሆ፣ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድርም እንኳን እመጣለሁና፣ ለነፃነታችን መንስኤ የዚህን ህዝብ እድገት ለማገድ ስልጣን ከዚህ ወዲያ ሊኖርህ እስከማይችል ድረስ በጎራዴ እመታሃለሁ።

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

፲፩ እነሆም፣ ጌታ እንድትኖር፣ እናም ፃድቅ ህዝቡን ለማጥፋት በክፋትህ እንድትጠነክር አይፈቅድልህም።

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

፲፪ እነሆ ክፋትህ ክብርህን እና የዓለምን ከንቱ ነገሮች ለመውደድ ሆኖ እያለ፣ ጌታ በእባቶቻቸው ወግ ምክንያት ጥላቻ ያላቸውን፣ አዎን እናም ይኸውም ከእኛ በተገነጠሉት ላይ በተጨማሪቸው ለማናውያን ላይ ጌታ በፍርድ እንደመመጣቸውና፣ ራሳችሁን ያድናችኋል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን?

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

፲፫ የእግዚአብሔርን ህግጋት መተላለፍህን ታውቃለህ፣ እናም እነዚህን በእግርህ መርገጥህንም ታውቃለህ። እነሆ ጌታ እንዲህ ብሎኛል፡ ገዢ አድርገህ የሾምካቸው ለጋጠኑታቸው እና ለክፋታቸው ንስሃ ካልገቡ ከእነርሱ ጋር ሄደህ መዋጋት ይኖርብሃል።

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

፲፬ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ እኔ፣ ሞሮኒ፣ የአምላኬን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ በገባሁት ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት እገፋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል እንድትቀበሉ እፈልጋለሁ፣ እናም ከቀለባችሁና፣ ከሰዎቻችሁ ላኩልኝ፣ እናም ደግሞ ለሔለማን በፍጥነት ላኩለት።

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

፲፭ እናም እነሆ ይህንን የማታደርጉ ከሆነ በፍጥነት ወደ እናንተ እመጣለሁ፤ እነሆም፣ እግዚአብሔር በረሃብ እንድንጠፋ አይፈቅድም፤ ስለዚህ በጎራዴም ቢሆን ከምግባችሁ ይሰጠናል። እንግዲህ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ፈፀሙ።

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

፲፮ እነሆ፣ እኔ ሊቀ ሻምባል ሞሮኒ ነኝ። ፍላጎቴ ለስልጣን ሳይሆን፣ ነገር ግን ይህን ጎትቶ ለማውረድ ነው። የዓለምን ክብር ሳይሆን፣ የአምላኬ ክብርን እናም የሀገሬን ነፃነትና ደህንነት ነው የምፈልገው። እናም ደብዳቤዬን አበቃለሁ።

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

አልማ ፳፩

፩ እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ ለዋናው ገዢ ደብዳቤውን ከላከ በኋላ፣ ወዲያውኑ ከዋናው ገዢ ፓሆራን ደብዳቤ ደረሰው። እናም የተቀበለው ቃል እንዲህ ይላል።

፪ እኔ ፓሆራን የዚህች ምድር ዋና ገዢ የሆንኩ፣ በሠራዊቱ ሊቀ ሻምባል ለሆነው ሞርኒ ይህንን መልዕክት ልኬአለሁ። እነሆ፣ ሞርኒ እልሀለሁኝ፣ በታላቁ ሰቃይህ አልደሰትም፤ አዎን፣ ይህ ነፍሴን ያሳዝናታል።

፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በሰቃይህ የሚደሰቱት አሉ፣ አዎን፣ በእኔ እናም የነጻነት ሰዎች በሆኑት ህዝቦቼ ላይ በአመፀ ተነስተዋል፣ አዎን፣ ለአመፀ የተነሱት በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ናቸው።

፬ እናም የፍርድን ወንበር ከእኔ ለመውሰድ የፈለጉት የዚህ የታላቁ ክፋት መንስኤ ናቸው፤ ምክንያቱም ታላቅ የሽንገላ ቃላት ተጠቅመዋል፣ እናም በመካከላችን የአደገኛ ሰቃይ መንስኤ እንዲሆን የብዙዎችን ልብ ለውጠዋል፤ ሰንቆቻችንን ይዘውብናልና፣ ወደ አንተም እንዳይመጡ ነፃ የሆኑትን ሰዎቻችንን አሰፈራርተውብናል።

፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ከፊታቸው እኔንም አባረውኛል፣ እናም ከእኔጋ ለማግኘት ከምችላቸው ያህል ሰዎች ጋርም ወደ ጌዴዎን ምድር ሸሽቻለሁ።

፮ እናም እነሆ፣ በዚች ምድር አዋጅ ልኬአለሁ፤ እናም እነሆ ሀገራቸውንና ነፃነታቸውን ለመከላከልና፣ ስህተቶቻችንንም ለመበቀል የጦር መሳሪያቸውን ለማንሳት በየቀኑ ወደእኛ ይሰበሰባሉ።

፯ እናም በእኛ ላይ ለአመፀ የተነሱት፣ አዎን፣ እነርሱ አስከሚፈሩን፣ እናም ለውጊያ በእኛ ላይ ለመምጣት አስከሚይደፍሩም ድረስ ወደ እኛ መጥተዋል።

፰ ምድሪቱን እንዲሁም የዛራሔምላ ከተማን ይዘዋል፤ በእነርሱም ላይ ንጉሥን ሹመዋል፣ እናም ለላማናውያን ንጉስም ጽፏል፣ በዚህም ከእርሱ ጋር አንድነት ኖሯቸዋል፤ በዚህም አንድነት የዛራሔምላን ከተማ ለማስተዳደር ተሰማማ፤ በሚያስተዳድርበት ጊዜም ላማናውያን የተቀረውን ምድር ያሸንፋሉ፤ እናም በላማናውያን በተሸነፉ ጊዜም በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ በመሆንም ይሾማል በማለት ገምቶ ነበር።

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

፱ እናም እንግዲህ፡ በደብዳቤህ ላይ ወቅሰኸኛል፡ ነገር ግን ይህ ምንም አይደለም፡ እኔም አልተቆጣሁም፡ ነገር ግን ከልብህ ታላቅነት ተደስቻለሁ። እኔ ፓሆራን የህዝቤን መብትና ነፃነት የምጠብቅበትን የፍርድ ወንበራን ብቻ ከመመለስ በቀር ስልጣንን አልፈልገም። እግዚአብሔር ነፃ ባደረገን በዚያ ነፃነት ህይወቴ ትጻፋለች።

፲ እናም እንግዲህ፡ እነሆ፡ ኃጢያትን ደም እስከሚፈስ ድረስ እንቃወማለን። ለማናውያን በምድራቸው የሚቆዩ ከሆነ ደማቸውን አናፈስውም።

፲፩ ወንድሞቻችን በእመፀ ካልተነሳሱ፡ እናም ጎራዴአቸውን በእኛ ላይ ካላነሱ ደማቸውን አናፈስም።

፲፪ በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ አስፈላጊ ከሆነ እንዲሁም እርሱ እንድናደርገው ካዘዘን እራሳችንን በባርነት ቀንበር ስር ማድረግ ይኖርብናል።

፲፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ እግዚአብሔር እራሳችንን በጠላቶቻችን ስር እንድናደርግ አያዘንም፤ ነገር ግን እምነታችንን በእርሱ ላይ ማድረግ አለብን፡ እናም እርሱ ያድነናል።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፡ የተወደድክ ወንድሜ፡ ሞርኒ፡ ክፋትን እንቃወም፡ እናም በቃል ለመቃወም የማንችላቸውን ክፋቶችን፡ አዎን፡ እንደሚያምጹትና ከእኛ እንደሚገነጠሉት አይነት፡ ነፃነታችንን እናገኝ ዘንድ፡ በቤተክርስቲያን ታላቅ ጥቅም እናም በአዳኞችንና በአምላካችን እንደሰት ዘንድ፡ እነርሱን በጎራዴዎቻችን እንቃወማቸው።

፲፭ ስለዚህ፡ ከጥቂት ሰዎችህ ጋር በፍጥነት ወደ እኔ ና፡ እናም የቀሩትን በሌሂና በቴክኒኩም ትዕዛዝ ስር እንዲሆኑ ተዋቸው፤ በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ መሰረት፡ ደግሞም በእነርሱ ውስጥ ባለው የነፃነት መንፈስ በዚያ ምድር ጦርነቱን እንዲመሩ ስልጣንን ሰጣቸው።

፲፮ እነሆ አንተ ወደ እኔ እስከምትመጣ ድረስ እንዳይጠፋ ጥቂት ሰንቅ ልኬላቸዋለሁ።

፲፯ ወደዚህ ስፍራ ለዘመቻህ ያለህን ኃይል በሙሉ በእንድነት አሰባሰብ፤ እናም በአምላካችን ባለን እምነት በኃይል በተቃዋሚዎቹ ላይ በፍጥነት እንሄዳለን።

፲፰ እናም ወደ ሌሂና ቴክኒኩም ለመላክ ተጨማሪ ሰንቅ እናገኝ ዘንድ የዛራሔምላን ከተማ እንወስዳለን፤ አዎን፡ በጌታ ኃይልም በእነርሱ ላይ እንሄዳለን፡ እናም ለዚህ ታላቅ ጥፋትም ፍፃሜ እንዲሆን እናደርጋለን።

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ሞርኒ፣ በወንድሞቻችን ላይ መዝመት ትክክል ይሁን አይሁን ምን ማድረግ እንዳለብኝ በመጠኑ ተጨንቄ ስለነበር፣ ደብዳቤህን በማግኘቴ ተደስቻለሁ።

፳ ነገር ግን ንሰሃ ካልገቡ በእነርሱ ላይ መሄድ አለባችሁ በማለት ጌታ እንዳዘዘህ ተናግረሃል።

፳፩ የሌሂንና፣ ቴክንኩምን እምነት ማጠናከርን አረጋግጥ፤ እንዳይፈሩ ንገራቸው፤ እነርሱን፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እግዚአብሔር ባደረጋቸው ነፃነት የሚጸኑትን ያድናልና። እናም እንግዲህ ለተወደደው ወንድሜ ሞርኒ ደብዳቤዬን አበቃለሁ።

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

አልማ ፳፪

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ ይህንን ደብዳቤ በተቀበለ ጊዜ ስሜቱ ተነሳሰቶ ነበር፤ እናም በፓሆራን ታማኝነት፣ ደግሞም ለሀገሩ ነፃነት ከሀዲ ስላልነበረ በታላቅ ደስታ ተሞልቶ ነበር።

፪ ነገር ግን ፓሆራንን ከፍርድ ወንበር ባባረረት ኃጢአትም ደግሞ እጅግ አዝናኝ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በአጠቃላይ በሀገራቸው ላይ እናም ደግሞ በአምላካቸው ላይ ባመጡት አዝናኝ ነበር።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደ ፓሆራን ፍላጎት ሞርኒ ጥቂት ሰዎችን ወሰደ፤ እናም ለሌሂና፣ ቴኦክሎም በቀሪዎቹ ወታደሮች ላይ አዛዥ አደረጋቸው፤ ጉዞውንም ወደ ጌዴዎን ሞድር አደረገ።

፬ እናም በደረሰበት ስፍራ ሁሉ የነፃነት አርማውን አነሳ፣ እናም ወደ ጌዴዎን ሞድር በዘመተበት ሁሉ የሚችለውን ኃይል አገኘ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ወደ አርማው በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ፣ እናም በባርነት ስር እንዳይወድቁ ለነፃነታቸው ለመታገል ጎራዴያቸውን አነሱ።

፮ እናም ሞርኒ የሚችለውን ሁሉ ሰው በአንድነት በሰበሰበ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ጌዴዎን ሞድር መጣ፤ እናም ጠንካራ ከሆኑት ከፓሆራን ወታደሮችም ጋር ቀላቀላቸው፣ እነርሱም ከዛራሔምላ ሞድር ነፃ የሆኑትን ሰዎች ካሰወጡት ከተቃዋሚዎች ንጉስ፣ እናም ሞድሪቴን ከወሰደው ከፓኩስ የበለጠ ጠንካሮች ሆኑ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒና ፓሆራን ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሞድር ሄዱ፣ እናም ከተማዋን አጠቁና፣ ለውጊያም የፓኩስን ሰዎች አገኙባቸው።

፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ፓኩስ ተገደለና የእርሱም ሰዎች እስረኞች ሆነው ተወሰዱ፣ እናም ፓሆራን ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ ተመለሰ።

፱ እናም በህጉ መሰረት የፓኩስ ሰዎች፣ እናም ደግሞ በሞርኩ ተወሰደው ወሀኒ ቤት የተጣሉት የንጉስ ሰዎች በህጉ መሰረት ተገደሉ፤ አዎን፣ ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል የጦር መሳሪያ ያልያዙት ሁሉ፣ ነገር ግን ይህንን በመቃወም የተዋጉት፣ አዎን፣ የፓኩስና የንጉስ ሰዎች፣ እንዲገደሉ ተደረገ።

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

፲ እናም ይህን ህግ ለሀገራቸው ደህንነት ሲባል በጥብቅ መከተሉ እንደዚህ አስፈላጊ ሆነ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ነፃነታቸውን ሲክድ የተገኘ ማንኛውም በህጉ መሰረት በፍጥነት ይገደል ነበር።

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

፲፩ እናም እንደዚህ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳኛ የንግስ ዘመን ተፈፀመ፤ ሞሮኒ እናም ፓሆራን በዛራሔምላ ምድር በህዝባቸው መካከል ለነፃነታቸው ምክንያት ታማኝ ባልሆኑት ላይ ሁሉ የሞት ፍርድ በመፍረድ ስላምን መሠረቱ።

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳ አንደኛ የንግስ ዘመን መጀመሪያ ላይ፣ ሞሮኒ ምግብ በፍጥነት እንዲላክ፣ እናም ደግሞ ስድስት ሺህ ወታደሮች ሔለማንን ምድሪቱን ለመጠበቅ እንዲረዱት ዘንድ እንዲላኩ አዘዘ።

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

፲፫ እናም ደግሞ ስድስት ሺህ የሚጠጉ ሰዎች ከበቂ ምግብ ጋር ወደ ሌሂና ቴአንኩም ወታደሮች እንዲላኩ አደረገ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህም የተደረገው ምድሪቱን ከላማናውያን ለመጠበቅ ነበር።

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒና ፓሆራን በዛራሔምላ ምድር ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች በመተው፣ ላማናውያንን በዚያች ከተማ ለማሸነፍ በመቁረጥ ወደ ኔፋውያን ምድር ጉዞአቸውን አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ምድሪቱ በዘመቱ ጊዜ ከላማናውያን በርካታ ሰዎችን ያዙና፣ ብዙዎቹን ገደሉ፣ እናም ስንቃቸውንና የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን ወስዷቸው።

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ፣ እነርሱን ከወሰዱ በኋላ፣ በኔፋውያን ላይ በድጋሚ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንዲያነሱ ቃል ኪዳን እንዲገቡ አደረጉአቸው።

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

፲፯ እናም ይህንን ቃል ኪዳን በገቡም ጊዜ ከአምን ህዝብ ጋር እንዲኖሩ ላኩአቸው፤ እናም ያልሞቱት ቁጥር ወደ አራት ሺህ ይጠጋ ነበር።

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንን በላኩአቸው ጊዜ ጉዞአቸውን ወደ ኔፊያህ ምድር ቀጠሉ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ኔፊያህ ከተማ በመጡ ጊዜም፣ በኔፊያህ ከተማ አጠገብ በሜዳው ላይ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ።

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

፳፱ እንግዲህ ሞሮኒ በሜዳው ላይ ላማናውያን መጥተው እንዲዋጉ ፈልጎ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ላማናውያን ያላቸውን ታላቅ ድፍረት በማወቃቸው፣ እናም በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ መሆናቸውን ተመለከቱ፣ ስለዚህ በእነርሱ ላይ ለመምጣት አልደፈሩም፤ ስለዚህ በዚያን ቀን ለውጊያ አልመጡም ነበር።

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

፳፻ እናም ምሽቱ በመጣም ጊዜ፣ ሞሮኒ በምሽት ጨለማ ሄደ፣ እናም በግንቡ ጫፍ ላይ ላማናውያን ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር የጦር ምሽግ ያደረጉበትን ከተማ በሰለላ ለማየት ሄደ።

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

፳፻፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመግቢያው በኩል በሰተምሰራቅ ነበሩ፣ እናም ሁሉም ተኝተው ነበር። እናም አሁን ሞሮኒ ወደ ወታደሮቹ ተመለሰና፣ ከግንቡ ጫፍ ወደ ውስጥ እንዲሆኑም ለማድረግ በፍጥነት ጠንካራ ገመድ እንዲሁም መሰላል እንዲያዘጋጁ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

፳፻፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒ የእርሱ የሆኑት ሰዎች እንዲሄዱ፣ እናም በግንቡ ጫፍ እንዲመጡ፣ እንዲሁም ወደ ከተማው፣ አዎን፣ በሰተምሰራቅ በኩልም እንኳን ላማናውያን ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር ወዳልሰፈሩበትም እንዲወርዱ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

፳፻፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጠንካራው ገመድና፣ መሰላል አማካኝነት በምሽት ሁሉም ወደ ከተማው ገቡ፤ ጠዋት በሆነም ጊዜ ሁሉም በከተማው ግንብ ውስጥ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

፳፻፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ላማናውያን በተነሱ ጊዜና የሞሮኒ ወታደሮች በግንቡ ውስጥ መሆናቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በበሩም ሽሽተው እስከሚወጡ ድረስ እጅግ ፈርተው ነበር።

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

፳፻፭ እናም አሁን ሞሮኒ ከፊቱ መሸሻቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ የእርሱ ሰዎች በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲዘምቱ አደረገና፣ ብዙዎችን ገደሉ፣ እናም ሌሎች ብዙዎችን ከበቡአቸው፣ እናም በእስረኛነት ወሰዱአቸው፤ እናም የተቀሩት በባህሩ ዳርቻ ወደነበረው ወደ ሞሮኒ ምድር ሸሹ።

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

፳፻፮ ሞሮኒ፣ እናም ፓሆራን አንድም ነፍስ ሳይጠፋባቸው የኒፋኦስን ከተማ እንዲህ ወሰዱ፤ እናም የተገደሉ ብዙ ላማናውያን ነበሩ።

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

፳፻፯ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ እስረኞች የነበሩ ብዙ ላማናውያን ከአዎን ሰዎች ጋር ለመገናኘት፣ እናም ነፃ ሰው ለመሆን ፈለጉ።

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

፳፻፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙዎች እንደፍላጎታቸው ተደርጎላቸዋል።

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

፳፱ ስለዚህ የላማናውያን እስረኞች በሙሉ የአዋን ህዝቦች አባል ሆኑ፤ እናም ተግተው መሰራት፣ መሬት ማረሰ፣ ሁሉንም ዓይነት እህል መዝራትና፣ ሁሉንም ዓይነት ከብቶችና፣ መንጋዎች ማርባት ጀመሩ፤ እናም እንደዚህ ኔፋውያን ከታላቁ ሸክማቸው አረፉ፤ አዋን ከላማናውያን እስረኞች በሙሉ ተላቀቁ።

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

፴፬ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ ሞሮኒ የኒፋኦያህን ከተማ ካገኘ በኋላ፣ የላማናውያን ወታደሮችን የቀነሱአቸውን ብዙ እስረኞችንም ከወሰደ በኋላ፣ እናም እስረኞች ተደርገው የተወሰዱትን ኔፋውያንን ብዙዎችን በድጋሚ ሰላገኙ የሞሮኒን ወታደሮች ተጠናክሩ፤ ስለዚህ ሞሮኒ ከኒፋኦያህ ከተማ ወደ ሌሂ ሞድር ሄደ።

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ሞሮኒ በእነርሱ ላይ መምጣቱን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ በድጋሚ ፈሩ፣ እናም ከሞሮኒ ወታደሮች ፊት ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒና ሠራዊቱ ከሌሂና ከቴኦኒኩም ጋር እስከሚያገኙአቸው ድረስ ከአንዱ ከተማ ወደ ሌላኛው ተከተሉአቸው፤ እናም ላማናውያን ከሌሂና ከቴኦኒኩም በባህሩ ዳርቻ ወደ ሞሮኒ ሞድር እስከሚመጡ ድረስ ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

፴፯ እናም የላማናውያን ሠራዊቶች በሞሮኒ ሞድር አንድ እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ ሁሉም በአንድነት ተሰበሰቡ። አሁን አሞሮን፣ የላማናውያን ንጉሥም ደግሞ ከእነርሱ ጋር ነበር።

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

፴፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በሞድረበዳው በሰተደቡብና፣ በሞድረበዳው በሰተምሰራቅ እስከሚከበቡ ድረስ፣ ሞሮኒና፣ ሌሂ፣ እናም ቴኦኒኩም በሞሮኒ ሞድር ዳርቻ ዙሪያ ከወታደሮቻቸው ጋር ሰፈሩ።

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

፵፩ እናም በምሽት እንደዚህ ሰፈሩ። እነሆም፣ ኔፋውያንና፣ ደግሞ ላማናውያን በጉዞው ታላቅነት ምክንያት ደክሞአቸው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ከቴኦኒኩም በሰተቀር በምሽት ምንም ዓይነት የጦር ሰልት አልወሰኑም ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በአሞሮን እጅግ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም አሞሮንና ወንድሙ አማሊቅያ ይህ ታላቅና፣ መጨረሻ የሌለው ጦርነት በእነርሱና በላማናውያን መካከል ለተደረገው፣ ለረጅሙ ጦርነትና፣ ደም መፋሰስ አዋን እናም ለከፋ ረሃብ መንሰኤ መሆናቸውን ስላሰበ ነበር።

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቴክኒኩም በቁጣ ወደ ለማናውያን የጦር ሰፈር ሄደ፤ በከተማዋ ግንብ ውስጥም ገባ። እናም ከቦታ ቦታ በገመድ ሄዶ ንጉሱን አገኘው፤ በእርሱም ላይ ጦር ወረወረበት፣ እርሱም በልቡ አጠገብ ወጋው። ነገር ግን እነሆ ንጉሱ ከመሞቱ በፊት አገልጋዮቹን ቀሰቀሳቸው፣ እነርሱም ቴክኒኩምን ተከተሉት፣ እናም ገደሉት።

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

፳፯ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ሌሂና ሞርኒ ቴክኒኩም መሞቱን ባወቁ ጊዜ እጅግ አዝነው ነበር፤ እነሆ እርሱ ለሀገሩ በጥንካሬ የተወገ፣ አዎን፣ ለነፃነት እውነተኛ ጓደኛ የሆነ ሰው ነበር፤ እናም በብዙ አስቃቂ ስቃይ እጅግ ተስቃይቶ ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ ሞተ፣ እናም ምድር ሁሉ ወደሚሄዱበት ሄዷል።

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

፳፰ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ሞርኒ በሚቀጥለው ቀን ዘመተና፣ በታላቅ ሁኔታ እስከሚገድሏቸው ድረስ ወደ ለማናውያን መጡ፤ እናም ከምድሪቱ አባረሩአቸው፤ እናም ሸሹ፣ እንዲሁም በዚያን ጊዜ በኔፋውያን ላይ አልተመለሱም።

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

፳፱ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳ አንደኛ የንግሥና ዘመን ተፈፀመ፤ እናም ለብዙ አመታት ጦርነትና፣ ደም መፋሰስ፣ እናም ረሃብና፣ ስቃይ ነበራቸው።

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

፴ እናም በኔፊ ሰዎች መካከል ግድያና፣ ፀብና፣ መከፋፈል፣ እንዲሁምም ሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋት ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ለፃድቃኖች ሲባል፣ አዎን፣ በፃድቃኖች ፀሎትም ምክንያት እነርሱ ድንዋል።

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

፴፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል በነበረው ታላቅ ጦርነት እርዝማኔና ጦርነቱ እጅግ ረጅም በመሆኑ ብዙዎች ጠጣሮች ሆኑ፤ እናም ብዙዎች በስቃያቸው የተነሳ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እራሳቸውን እስከሚያዋርዱ፣ በጥልቅ ትህትናም ዝቅ እስከሚሉ ለሰላሶች ነበሩ።

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለላማናውያን ይበልጥ የተጋለጠውን ምድር በብቁ ጠንካራ እስኪሆኑ ድረስ ሞርኒ ምሽግ ካደረገ በኋላ፣ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመለሰ፤ እናም ደግሞ ሔለማን ወደ ትውልድ ሰፍራው ተመለሰ፤ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል እንግዲህ ሰላም ተመሰረተ።

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

፵፫ እናም ሞርኒ ሞርኒህ ተብሎ ለሚጠራው ልጁ የሠራዊቱን መሪነት አሳልፎ ሠጠ፤ እናም ቀሪውን ጊዜውን በሰላም ያሳልፍ ዘንድ በቤቱ ተቀመጠ።

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

፵፬ እናም ፓሆራን ወደፍርድ ወንበሩ ተመለሰ፤ እናም ሔሎማን ለህዝቡ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለመሰበክ ሀላፊነትን ተቀበለ፤ ብዙ ጦርነቶችና ፀብ ስለነበሩ በቤተክርስቲያኗ በድጋሚ ደንብ ማውጣት አስፈላጊ ሆኖ ነበር።

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

፵፭ ስለዚህ፣ ሔሎማንና ወንድሞቹ ሄዱና፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ብዙ ኃጢአተኞችን ለማሳመን ተናገሩ፤ ብዙዎችንም ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሃ እንዲገቡ፣ እናም በጌታ በአምላካቸው እንዲጠመቁ አደረጉቸው።

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

፵፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ በድጋሚ የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን አቋቋሙ።

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

፵፯ አዎን፣ እናም ህጉን በተመለከተ ደንብ ወጣ። እናም ዳኞቻቸውንና፣ ዋና ዳኞቻቸውን ተመረጡ።

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

፵፰ እናም የኔፊ ህዝብ በምድሪቱ ላይ በድጋሚ መበልፀግ ጀመሩና፣ በድጋሚ በምድሪቱ ተባዙና እጅግ ጨመሩ። እናም እጅግ ሀብታም መሆን ጀመሩ።

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

፵፱ ነገር ግን ሀብታም እንዲሁም ጠንካሮች፣ እናም የበለፀጉ ቢሆኑም በኩራት ከፍ ብለው አልታዩም፤ ወይም ጌታ አምላካቸውንም ለማስታወስ አልዘገዩም፤ ነገር ግን በፊቱ እራሳቸውን እጅግ አዋርደው ነበር።

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

፶ አዎን፣ ጌታ ታላላቅ ነገሮችን እንዴት እንዳደረገላቸው፣ ከሞትና፣ ከባርነት፣ እናም ከእስርና፣ ከሁሉም ዓይነት ሰቃይ እንዳዳናቸው፣ እናም ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅግ እንዴት እንዳስለቀቃቸው ያስታውሱ ነበር።

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

፶፩ እናም እንደቃሉ ጌታ እስከሚባርካቸው ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ሳያቋርጡ ይፀልዩ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ በምድሪቱ ላይ በረቱም በለፀጉም።

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

፶፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ ተፈፀሙ። እናም ሔሎማን በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳ አምስተኛ የንግስ ዘመን ሞተ።

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

አልማ ፳፫

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ በመሠፍንቱ ሰላሳ ስድስተኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በአልማ ለሌላማን የተሰጡትን ቅዱሳን ነገሮችን ሺብሎን ተረከባቸው።

፪ ሺብሎንም ፃድቅ ሰው ነበር፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊትም በቅንነት ይራመድ ነበር፤ እናም ያለማቋረጥ እርሱም፣ ደግሞ ወንድሙም፣ መልካም ለመስራት የጌታ አምላካቸውን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ጥረት ያደርጉ ነበር።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒም ሞተ። የመሠፍንቱ ሰላሳ ስድስተኛ የንግስና ዘመንም እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሠፍንቱ ሰላሳ ሰባተኛ የንግስና ዘመን ብዙ ሰዎች፣ እንዲሁም በአንድነት ወደ አምስት ሺህ አራት መቶ የሚጠጉ፣ ከሚሰቶቻቸው እናም ከልጆቻቸው ጋር ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ወጥተው በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል ሄዱ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሀጋዝ፣ እጅግ ትጉህ ሰው ስለነበር፣ ስለዚህ ሄደና በወደመው ስፍራ በላጋስ ምድር ዳርቻ እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ መርከብ ሰራ፤ እናም በቀጭኑ በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በሚያመራው መንገድ ወደ ምዕራብ ባህር ላከው።

፮ እናም እነሆ፣ በውስጡ የገቡና ብዙ ሰንቅ ይዘውም የተጓዙ ብዙ ኔፋውያን፣ እናም ሴቶችና ልጆች ነበሩ፣ ጉዞአቸውንም ወደ ሰሜን አቅጣጫ አደረጉ። እናም ሰላሳ ሰባተኛው ዓመት ተፈፀመ።

፯ እናም በሰላሳ ስምንተኛው ዓመት ይህም ሰው ሌላ መርከቦችን ሰራ። እናም ደግሞ የመጀመሪያዋ መርከብ ተመለሰችና፣ ከዚህ የበለጡ ብዙ ሰዎችም ገቡባት፤ እናም እነርሱ ደግሞ ብዙ ሰንቅ ያዙና፣ በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል በድጋሚ ተላኩ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዚህ በኋላ ስለአነርሱ ምንም አልተሰማም ነበር። በጥልቅ ባህሩ ውስጥ ሰጥመዋል ብለን ገምተንም ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌላኛዋ መርከብም ሄደች፤ እርሷም የት እንደደረሰችም አላውቅንም ነበር።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል የሄዱ ብዙ ሰዎች ነበሩ። እናም ሰላሳ ስምንተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳ ዘጠነኛ የንግስና ዘመን፣ ሺብሎንም ሞተ፣ እናም ወደዚያች ምድር ለሄዱት ሰዎች ስንቅ ለመውሰድ ቆሪያንቶን በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል በመርከብ ሄደ።

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

፲፩ ስለዚህ ሺብሎን ከመሞቱ በፊት ለሌሎች ልጅ፣ በአባቱ ስም ሌሎን ተብሎ ለሚጠራው፣ ቅዱስ የሆኑትን ነገሮች መስጠቱ አሰፈላጊ ነበር።

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

፲፪ እናም እነሆ፣ በሌሎን እጅ የነበሩት የተቀረጹ ጽሑፎች ሁሉ ተፅፈው፣ እናም በአልማ እንዲሄዱ ከታዘዙት በስተቀር፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ በሰው ልጆች መካከል ተልከዋል።

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

፲፫ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ቅዱስ ሆነው መቀመጥ ይኖርባቸዋል፣ እናም ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ መተላለፍ ይኖርባቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ በዚህ ዓመት ሺብሎን ከመሞቱ በፊት እነዚህ ነገሮች ለሌሎን ተሰጡት።

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ደግሞም በዚህ ዓመት ጥቂት ወደ ላማናውያን የሄዱ ተገንጣዮች ነበሩ፤ እናም በኔፋውያን ላይ በድጋሚ ለቁጣ ተነሳሰተው ነበር።

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

፲፭ እናም ደግሞ በዚህ ዓመት ከሞሮኒህ ሰዎች ጋር፣ እንዲሁም ከሞሮኒህ ወታደሮች ጋር ለመዋጋት ከብዙ ወታደሮች ጋር በመሆን መጡ፤ ሆኖም ላማናውያን ተሸነፉና ወደራሳቸው ምድር በድጋሚ ተመልሰው ተባረሩና በብዙ ጥፋትም ተሰቃዩ።

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

፲፮ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሰላሳ ዘጠነኛ የንግስና ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፲፯ እናም የአልማ ታሪክና፣ የልጁ የሌሎን፣ እንዲሁም ደግሞ የልጁ የሺብሎን ታሪክ በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

መፅሐፈ ሔለማን

የኔፋውያን ታሪክ። የእነርሱም ጦርነትና ፀብ፣ እናም መለያየታቸው። እናም ደግሞ የሔለማን ልጅ በነበረው፣ የሔለማን መዝገብ መሰረት፣ እናም ደግሞ በልጆቹ መዛግብት መሰረት፣ ከክርስቶስ መምጣት በፊት እርሱ እስከመጣበት ጊዜ ድረስ የነበረው የብዙ ቅዱሳን ነገሮች ትንቢቶች። እናም ደግሞ ብዙ ላማናውያን ተለውጠዋል። የመለወጣቸው ታሪክ። እስከ ክርስቶስ መምጣት ድረስ መፅሐፈ ሔለማን ተብሎ በተጠራው በሔለማንና በልጆቹ መዝገብ መሰረት የላማናውያን ፅድቅና፣ የኔፋውያን ኃጢአት፣ እና እርኩሰት፣ እናም ሌሎች የመሣሰሉ ታሪኮች።

ሔለማን ፩

- ፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ አርባኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን፣ በኔፋውያን ህዝቦች መካከል ከባድ ችግር መሆን ጀመረ።
- ፪ እነሆም ፓሆራን ሞተ፣ እናም ምድር ሁሉ ወደሚሄዱበት ሄደ፤ ስለዚህ የፓሆራን ልጆች ከነበሩት መካከል የፍርድ ወንበርን ማን መውሰድ ይገባል በሚል ከባድ ፀብ ተጀመረ።
- ፫ እንግዲህ የፓሆራን ልጆች፣ ለፍርድ ወንበሩ ይጣሉ የነበሩት፣ ደግሞም ህዝቡ እንዲጣሉ የሚያደርጉት ስማቸው እነዚህ ናቸው፣ ፓሆራን፣ ፓእንኪ፣ እናም ፓኩሜኒ ነበሩ።
- ፬ እንግዲህ የፓሆራን ወንዶች ልጆች እነዚህ ብቻ አይደሉም (ምክንያቱም እርሱ ብዙ ነበሩት)፤ ነገር ግን እነዚህ ለፍርድ ወንበሩ ይጣሉ የነበሩት ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ሶስት ቦታ መከፋፈል እንዲሆን አደረጉ።
- ፭ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ፓሆራን በህዝቡ ድምፅ ዋና ዳኛ፣ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ገዢ እንዲሆን ተሾመ።
- ፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ፓኩሜኒ የፍርድ ወንበሩን ማግኘት እንደማይችል በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ከህዝቡ ድምፅ ጋር ተባበረ።

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ፓኦንኪ እናም ከህዝቡ መካከል ገዢነቸው እንዲሆን ከፈለጉት ሰዎች ጥቂቶች እጅግ ተናደው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሰዎቹ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ እንዲያምጹ መሸንገል ሊጀምር ተዘጋጅቶ ነበር።

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይኸንን በሚያደርግበት ወቅት፣ እነሆ ተወሰደ ነበርና፣ እንደ ህዝቡም ድምፅ ክስ ቀርቦበት ነበር፣ እናም ሞት ተፈረደበት፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ በእመፅ ተነሳሰቶና፣ የህዝቡን ነፃነት ለማጥፋት ተመኝቶ ነበርና።

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

፱ እንግዲህ ፓኦንኪ ገዢነቸው እንዲሆን የፈለጉት ሰዎች ሞት እንደተፈረደበት በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፤ ስለዚህ ተናደው ነበር፣ እናም እነሆ፣ ወደ ፓሆራን የፍርድ ወንበርም እንድ ቂሽቁመንን ላኩ፣ እናም ፓሆራንን በፍርድ ወንበሩ ላይ እንዳለ ገደለው።

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

፲ እናም የፓሆራን አገልጋዮችም ተከትለውት ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ የቂሽቁመን ሸሽቱ ፈጣን በመሆኑ ማንም ሰው ሊደርስበት አልቻለም።

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

፲፩ እናም ወደላኩት ሰዎች ዘንድ ሄደ፣ እናም ሁሉም ቃል ኪዳን ገቡ፣ አዎን፣ ቂሽቁመን ፓሆራንን መግደሉን ለማንም ላለመናገር በዘለአለማዊው ፈጣሪያቸው ስም ቃል ኪዳን ገቡ።

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

፲፪ ስለዚህ፣ ቂሽቁመን ፓሆራንን በገደለበት ጊዜ በመደበቁ፣ በኔፌ ህዝብ መካከል አይታወቅም ነበር። እናም ቂሽቁመንና ከእርሱ ጋር ቃል የገቡት ቡድኖቹ ሁሉ እንዳይገኙ በመሆን እራሳቸውን ከህዝቡ ጋር ቀላቀሉ፤ ነገር ግን የተገኙት በሙሉ ሞት ተፈረደባቸው።

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

፲፫ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ፓኩሜኒ በወንድሙ ፓሆራን ሞትክ ለመንገስ በህዝቡ ድምፅ ዋና ዳኛና ገዢ እንዲሆን ተሾሞ ነበር፤ እናም ይህ በመብቱ መሰረት ነበር። ይህ ሁሉ የተደረገውም በመሣፍንቱ አርባኛው ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን ነበር፤ ይህም ፍፃሜው ነበር።

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ አርባ አንደኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን፣ ለማናውያን ለመቆጠር የማይችሉ ብዛት ያላቸውን ወታደሮች በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ፤ እናም በጎራዴም፣ በሻምላም፣ በጦርም፣ በቀስትም፣ እናም በብረት ኮፍያና፣ በደረት ኪስ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ዓይነት ጋሻዎች አስታጠቁአቸው።

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

፲፭ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት በድጋሚ መጡ። ቆሪያንተመር ተብሎ በሚጠራው ሰው ይመሩ ነበር፤ እርሱም የዛራሔምላ ትውልድ ነበር፤ እናም እርሱ ከኔፋውያን መካከል የተገነጠለ ነበር፤ እርሱም ትልቅና ኃያል ሰው ነበር።

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

፲፮ ስለዚህ፣ የላማናውያን ንጉስ ስሙም ቱባሎት ተብሎ የሚጠራ፣ የአሞሮን ልጅ የነበረ፣ ቆሪያንተመር ኃያል ሰው በመሆኑ፤ በጉልበቱ፣ እናም ደግሞ በታላቅ ጥበቡ ኔፋውያንን ለምቋቋም ይችላል፣ እርሱንም በመላክ በኔፋውያን ላይ ኃይልን አገኛለሁ ብሎ ገመተ—

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

፲፯ ስለዚህ ላማናውያንን በቁጣ እንዲነሳሱ አደረገና፣ ሠራዊቱን በአንድ ላይ ሰበሰበ፣ እናም ቆሪያንተመርን መሪያቸው እንዲሆን ሾመው፣ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር እንዲዋጉ ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር እንዲዘምቱ አደረገ።

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመንግሥቱም ውስጥ ባለው ፀብና ችግር የተነሳ፣ በዛራሔምላ ምድር በቂ የሆኑ ጠባቂዎችን አለቆመጡም ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ላማናውያኖች በምድራቸው መሐል ወደ ታላቋን የዛራሔምላ ከተማ መጥተው ለማጥቃት አይደሩም በማለትም ገምተው ነበርና።

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

፲፱ ነገር ግን እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ከሰራዊቱ ፊት ዘመተና፣ ወደ ከተማዋ ነዋሪዎች መጣ፣ እናም ጉዞአቸውም በታላቅ ፍጥነት ስለነበር በዚህም የተነሳ ለኔፋውያን ወታደሮቻቸውን በአንድ ላይ ለመሰብሰብም ጊዜ አልነበራቸውም።

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

፳ ስለዚህ ቆሪያንተመር በከተማው መግቢያ ላይ የነበሩትን ጠባቂዎች ገደለ፣ እናም ከመላው ሠራዊቱ ጋር ወደ ከተማው ገቡ፤ እናም ከተማዋን በሙሉ አስከሟወሰዱ ድረስ ተቃዋሚዎቻቸውን በሙሉ ገደሉአቸው።

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዋና ዳኛ የነበረው ፓኩሜኒ፣ ከቆሪያንተመር ፊት ወደ ከተማዋ ግንብ ሸሸ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመርም ከግንቡ ጋር በማጋጨት መታው፣ በዚህም የተነሳ እርሱ ሞተ። የፓኩሜኒ ቀናትም በዚሁ ተፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

፳፪ እናም እንግዲህ ቆሪያንተመር የዛራሔምላን ከተማ መያዙን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ እናም ኔፋውያን በፊታቸው መሸሻቸውንና፣ መገደላቸውን፣ እናም መወሰዳቸውንና ወደ ወህኒ ቤት መጣላቸውን፣ እንዲሁም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ጠንካራ ምሽግን እንደወሰደ በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ይሄ ድድር ዘንድ ልቡ ደፈረ።

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

፳፫ እናም እንግዲህ በዛራሔምላ ምድር አልቀረም፤ ነገር ግን ከብዙ ወታደሮቹ ጋር ወደ ለጋስ ከተማ ተጓዘ፤ ምክንያቱም የምድሪቱን ሰሜናዊ ክፍል ያገኝ ዘንድ ወደፊት መጓዝ እና መንገዱንም በጎራዴ ለማጥራት የእርሱ ውሣኔ ነበርና።

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

፳፬ እናም፣ ታላቁ ብርታታቸው በምድሪቱ መካከል መሆኑን ገመተ፤ ስለዚህ በትንሽ ቡድኖች ብቻ እንጂ አራሳቸውን በአንድነት ለመሰብሰብ ብዙ ጊዜ አልሰጣችውም፤ እናም በዚህም ሁኔታ አጠቁአቸውና፣ ወደምድርም ቆርጠው ጣሏቸው።

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

፳፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በርካታ ቁጥር ያላቸው ኔፋውያን ቢገደሉም፣ በምድሪቱ መካከል የነበረው የቆሪያንተመር ጉዞ ለሞሮኒያሃ ትልቅ ጥቅም ሰጠው።

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

፳፮ እነሆም ሞሮኒያሃ ለማናውያን በምድሪቱ ወደ መሐል ደፍረው እንደማይመጡ፣ ነገር ግን ከዚህ በፊት እንዳደረጉት ከተሞቹን በዳር በኩል ያጠቃሉ በማለት ገምቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሞሮኒያሃ ጠንካራ የሆኑ ወታደሮቻቸው በሰፍራዎች ዙሪያ የሚገኙትን እነዚያን ዳርቻዎች እንዲጠብቁ አደረገ።

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ለማናውያን እንደርሱ ፍላጎት አልፈሩም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ወደ ምድሪቱ መሃከል መጡ፣ እናም ዋና ከተማ የሆነችውን የዛራሔምላን ከተማን ወሰዱ፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ዋና ወደ ሆኑት ቦታዎችም እየሄዱ፣ ወንዶችና፣ ሴቶችንና ልጆችን በመግደል፣ ብዙ ከተሞችንና፣ ብዙ ጠንካራ ምሽጎችን እየወሰዱ ነበር።

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

፳፰ ነገር ግን ሞሮኒያሃ ይህንን ባወቀ ጊዜ፣ ለሂ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር እነርሱን ወደ ለጋስ ምድር ከመምጣታቸው በፊት እንዲያስቆሙአቸው ወደ ግንባር ላከው።

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

፳፱ እናም እርሱም እንዲህ አደረገ፤ እናም ወደ ለጋስ ምድር ከመምጣታቸው በፊት አስቆማቸው፤ ወደ ዛራሔምላም ምድር ተመልሰው ማፈገፈግ እስኪጀምሩም ድረስ ተዋጋቸው።

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒህ ሲያፈገፍጉ ጦርነት ገጠማቸው፤ እናም እጅግ አስቃቂ ደም መፋሰስ እስከሚሆንም ተዋጉ፤ አዎን፤ ብዙዎች ተገደሉ፤ ከተገደሉትም መካከል ቆሪያንተመር ይገኝ ነበር።

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, inso-much that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

፲፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን በሁሉም አቅጣጫ በኔፋውያን በመከበባቸው በሰሜን፣ በደቡብ፣ በምስራቅም ሆነ በምዕራብ በኩል ለማፈግፈግ አልተቻላቸውም።

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

፲፪ እናም ቆሪያንተመር ላማናውያን ኔፋውያን መካከል እንዲገቡ አድርጓል፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በኔፋውያን ኃይል ውስጥ ዋሉ፣ እርሱ ራሱም ተገደለ፣ እናም ላማናውያን ለኔፋውያን እጃቸውን ሰጡ።

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮኒያ የዛራሔምላን ከተማ በድጋሚ ወሰደ፤ እናም እስረኛ ተደርገው የተወሰዱት ላማናውያን ከምድሪቱ በሰላም እንዲወጡ አደረገ።

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

፲፬ እናም የመሣፍንቱ አርባ አንደኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በዚሁ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

ሔለማን ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ አርባ ሁለተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ሞርኒህ በድጋሚ በኔፋውያን እና በላማናውያን መካከል ሰላምን ከመሰረተ በኋላ፣ እነሆ የፍርድ ወንበሩን ሰፍራ የሚይዝ ማንም አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ በህዝቡ መካከል የፍርድ ወንበሩን ማን ይያዘው በሚል ፀብ ተጀመረ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሔለማን ልጅ የነበረው፣ ሔለማን በህዝቡ ድምፅ የፍርድ ወንበሩን እንዲይዝ ተሾመ።

፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ፓሆራንን የገደለው ቂሽቁመን ደግሞም ሔለማንን ለማጥፋት አደፈጠ፤ እናም ኃጢአቱን ማንም እንዲያውቅበት ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ በገቡት ጓዶቹ ተደግፎ ነበር።

፬ በብዙ ቃላት እጅግ ባለሙያ የሆነ፣ እናም ደግሞ የግድያንና የዝርፊያን ድብቅ ስራ ለማከናወን ጥበብ የነበረው አንድ ጋድያንቶን የተባለ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እርሱም የቂሽቁመን ቡድን መሪ ሆነ።

፭ ስለዚህ በፍርድ ወንበሩ ካሰቀመጡት በቡድኑ ውስጥ ያሉትን አባላት በህዝቡ መካከል ኃይልና ስልጣን እንደሚሰጣቸው እነርሱን፣ እናም ደግሞ ቂሽቁመንንም ሸነገላቸው፣ ስለዚህ ቂሽቁመን ሔለማንን ለማጥፋት ፈለገ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሔለማንን ለማጥፋት ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ በሚቀርብበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ አንዱ የሔለማን አገልጋይ በምሽት ወጥቶ በድብቅ በዚህ ቡድን ሔለማንን ለማጥፋት የተያዘውን ዕቅድ አውቆ እናም ስለአገኘው—

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ቂሽቁመንን አገኘውና ምልክት ሰጠው፤ ስለዚህ ሔለማንን ይገድለው ዘንድ የፍርድ ወንበሩን እንዲያሳዩው በመፈለግ፣ ቂሽቁመን ዓላማውን ለእርሱ አሳወቃቸው

፰ እናም የሔለማን አገልጋይ የቂሽቁመንን የልቡን ሀሳብና እንዴት ዓላማው ለግድያም እንደሆነ፣ እናም ደግሞ የእርሱ ቡድን አባሎች በሙሉ ለግድያና፣ ለዝርፊያና ስልጣንን ለማግኘት መሆኑን ባወቀ ጊዜ፣ (እናም ይህ ሚስጥራዊ ዕቅዳቸውና ህብረታቸው በመሆኑ) የሔለማን አገልጋይ ለቂሽቁመን እንዲህ አለው፦ ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ እንሂድ።

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

፱ እንግዲህ ይህ ቁሽቁመንን እጅግ አስደሰተው፤ ምክንያቱም ያቀደውን እፈጸማለሁ በማለት በመገመቱ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የሌላማን አገልጋይ፣ ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ በሚሄዱበት ጊዜ፣ ቁሽቁመንን ልቡ ላይ ወጋው፣ እርሱም ሳያቃሰት ወድቆ ሞተ። እናም አገልጋዩ ርጠና፣ ለሌላማን የተመለከተውንና፣ የሰማውን፣ እናም ያደረገውን ነገሮች በሙሉ ነገረው።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌላማን እነዚህን የዘራፊ እናም የሰውር ገዳዮች ቡድንን በህጉ መሰረት ተይዘው ይገደሉ ዘንድ ሰዎችን ላከ።

፲፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጋድያንቶን ቁሽቁመን አለመመለሱን ባወቀ ጊዜ እጠፋለሁ በማለት ፈራ፤ ስለዚህ ቡድኖቹ እንዲከተሉት አደረገ። ከምድሪቱ በሚሰጠር ወጥተው ወደ ምድረበዳ ሸሹ፤ እናም ከዚህ በኋላ ሌላማን እንዲያመጣቸው ሲላክ ከየትም መገኘት አልቻሉም።

፲፪ እናም ከዚህ በኋላ ስለጋድያንቶን ከዚህ በላይ ይነገራል። እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሳፍንቱ አገዛዝ አርባ ሁለተኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

፲፫ እናም እነሆ፣ በዚህ መፅሐፍ መጨረሻ ይህ ጋድያንቶን የመሸነፍ አዎን፣ የኔፋውያን፣ ፍፁም መጥፋት ምክንያት እንደሆነ ትመለከታላችሁ።

፲፬ እነሆ ይህን በመፅሐፈ ሌላማን መፈፀሚያ ውስጥ ነው ማለቱ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን የፃፍኩትን ታሪክ በሙሉ ከወሰድኩበት ከኔሬ መፅሐፍ መጨረሻ ማለቱ ነው።

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

ሌሌማን ፫

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ አርባ ሶስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን በህዝቡ መካከል ጥቂት ልዩነት በፈጠረው ቤተክርስቲያን ካለው ጥቂት ኩራት በስተቀር በኔሬ ህዝብ መካከል ፀብ አልነበረም፤ ይህ ጉዳይም በአርባ ሶስተኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ ላይ ተስተካከለ።

፪ እናም በአርባ አራተኛው ዓመት በህዝቡ መካከል ፀብ አልነበረም፤ በአርባ አምስተኛው ዓመትም ብዙ ፀብ አልነበረም።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአርባ ስድስተኛው ዓመት፣ አዎን ብዙ ፀብና መገንጣጠሎች ነበሩ፤ ስለሆነም ከዛራሔምላ ምድር የወጡ እጅግ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ወደ ሰሜን በኩል ምድሪቱን ለመውረስ ሄዱ።

፬ እናም በታላቁ ውሃ እንዲሁም ወንዝ እስከሚደርሱ ድረስ እጅግ ብዙ ተጓዙ።

፭ አዎን፣ ቀደም ሲል በብዙ ሰዎች ተሰፍርበት የነበረ በመሆኑም የተነሳ በሁሉም ስፍራ ባዶ ባልሆነው እንዲሁም ምንም ደን በሌለበት የምድሩ ክፍሎች ሁሉ ውስጥ በሙሉ ተበተኑ።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ ከደኑ በስተቀር ባዶ የሆነ ስፍራ በምድሪቱ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን ቀደም ሲል ምድሪቱን ወርሰው በነበሩት ሰዎች ታላቅ ጥፋት የተነሳ ምድሪቱ የወደመች ተብላ ትጠራ ነበር።

፯ እናም በምድሪቱ ገፅ ትንሽ ዛፍ ብቻ የነበረ በመሆኑ፣ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በምድሪቱ ለመኖር የሄዱ በሰሜንቶ ሥራ ባለሙያዎች ሆኑ፤ ስለዚህ የሚኖሩበትንም ቤት ከሰሜንቶ ስርተዋል።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ተባዘና፣ ተሰራጩ፣ እንዲሁም ከምድሪቱ ከደቡብ በኩል ወደ ሰሜን ተጓዙ፣ እናም ከባህሩ በስተደቡብ እስከባህሩ በስተ ሰሜን፣ ከባህሩ በስተምዕራብ እስከ ባህሩ በስተምስራቅ ድረስ ምድሪቱን በሙሉ መሸፈን እስከሚጀምሩ ድረስ ተበተኑ።

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

፱ እናም በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል የነበሩት ሰዎች በድንኳንና፣ በሰሜንቶ በተሰራው ቤት ውስጥ ፍሩ፣ እናም ከጊዜ በኋላም ቤቶቻቸውን መሰሪያ፣ አዎን፣ ከተሞቻቸውንና፣ ቤተመቅደሶቻቸውንና፣ ምኩራቦቻቸውንና፣ ቅዱስ የሆኑ ቦታዎቻቸውንና ሁሉም ዓይነት ህንፃዎቻቸውን መሰሪያ እንጨት ይኖራቸው ዘንድ በምድሪቱ ላይ ማንኛውንም ዓይነት ዛፍ እንዲያድግ አደረጉ።

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል እጅግ የእንጨት እጥረት ስለነበር፣ ከሌላ ስፍራ ብዙ በመርከብ ያሰመጡ ነበር።

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

፲፩ እና በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል ያለው ህዝብ ብዙ ከተሞችን ከእንጨትና ከሰሜንቶ ይሰሩ ዘንድ አስቻሏቸው።

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በትውልዳቸው ላማናውያን የነበሩ ብዙ የአዋን ሰዎችም ደግሞ ወደዚህች ምድር ሄዱ።

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

፲፫ እናም እንግዲህ ስለዚህ ህዝብ ስራ የተቀመጡ፣ በብዙዎቹ በእነዚህ ሰዎች የተለዩ፣ እናም ትልቅ የሆኑ እነርሱን በተመለከተ የሚናገሩ ብዙ መዛግብት ተጠብቀዋል።

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የዚህ ህዝብ ስራ መቶኛው ክፍል፣ አዎን፣ የላማናውያንና የኔፋውያንና፣ ጦርነታቸውና፣ ፀባቸው፣ እናም ጥላቸውና፣ ሰበካቸውም፣ ትንቢታቸውም፣ የመርከብ ጉዞአቸውና፣ የመርከብ አሰራራቸውንና፣ የቤተመቅደስ አሰራራቸውንና፣ የምኩራቦቻቸውንና፣ የቅዱሳን ስፍራዎቻቸውንና፣ ፅድቃቸውንና፣ ኃጢአታቸውንና፣ የግድያቸውንና፣ ስርቆታቸው፣ እናም የዝርፊያቸው፣ እንዲሁም የሁሉም ዓይነት እርኩሰትና ዝሙት ታሪክ በዚህ ስራ ውስጥ ሊጠቃለሉ አይችሉም።

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

፲፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ብዙ መጻሕፍትና ከሁሉም ዓይነት ብዙ መዛግብት አሉ፣ እናም በኔፋውያን በተለይ ተጠብቀዋል።

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

፲፮ እናም ኔፋውያን በመተላለፍ እስከሚወድቁና እስከሚገደሉ፣ እስከሚዘረፉና፣ እስከሚታደኑና፣ እስከሚባረሩ፣ እናም እስከሚታረዱና፣ በምድር ገፅ ላይ እስከሚበተኑ፣ እንዲሁም ኔፋውያን ተብለው መጠራት እስከሚያቆሙ ድረስ ከላማናውያን ጋር እስከሚቀላቀሉ፣ እነርሱ ኃጢአተኞችና፣ አረመኔዎች፣ እናም ኃይለኞች እስከሚሆኑ፣ አዎን፣ ላማናውያንም እንኳን እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ ከአንዱ ትውልድ ወደ ሌላኛው በኔፋውያን ተላልፈዋል።

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

፲፯ እናም አሁን እኔም በድጋሚ ወደራሴ ታሪክ አመለሳለሁ፤ ስለዚህ የተናገርኳቸው የሆኑት ታላቁ ፀብና፣ ረብሻና፣ ጦርነት፣ እናም ጥል፣ በኔፋውያን መካከል ከተፈፀመ በኋላ ነበር።

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

፲፰ እርባ ስድስተኛው የመሠፍንቱ የንግስ ዘመንም ተፈፀመ፤

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ አሁንም ታላቅ ፀብ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እንዲሁም በእርባ ስባተኛው ዓመትም፣ እናም ደግሞ በእርባ ስምንተኛውም ዓመት።

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

፳ ይሁን እንጂ ሌላውን በፅድቅና በእኩልነት የፍርድ ወንበሩን ያዘ፤ አዎን የእግዚአብሔርን ስርዓትና፣ ህግጋት፣ እናም ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ጥረት አደረገ፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ትክክል የሆነውን ያለማቋረጥ ያደርግ ነበር፤ በምድሪቱም ላይ እስከሚበለፀግ ድረስ እንደ አባቱ ኖሯል።

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ ሁለት ወንድ ልጆች ነበሩት። ለታላቅየው የኔፊን ስምና፣ ለታናሽየው የሌሂን ስም ሰጣቸው። እናም በጌታ ማደግ ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሠፍንቱ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በእርባ ስምንተኛው ዓመት የንግሥ ዘመን ማብቂያ ገደማ በኔፋውያን መካከል ጦርነት፣ እናም ፀብ በመጠኑ መቆም ጀመረ።

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሠፍንቱ እርባ ዘጠነኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን፣ እነርሱም በዚያን ጊዜም ቢሆን በመንግስት ከበላይ በነበሩት ከማይታወቁት፣ ሁሉም በተረጋጋው ስፍራ ቀማኛው ጋድያንቶን ካደራጀው የሚሰጥር ሴራዎች በስተቀር በምድሪቱም የማያቋርጥ ሰላም ተመስረተ፤ ስለዚህ ከምድሪቱም ፈፅሞ አልጠፋም ነበር።

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚሁ ዓመት በቤተክርስቲያና እጅግ ታላቅ ብልፅግና ሆነ፤ በሺዎች የሚቆጠሩትም ወደ ቤተክርስቲያና መጡ፣ እናም ንስሃ በመግባት ተጠመቁ።

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

፳፭ እናም የቤተክርስቲያና ብልፅግናም ታላቅ ሆኖ፣ እናም በጣም ብዙ በረከት በህዝቡ ላይ ስለወረደ፤ ታላላቅ ካህናትና፣ መምህራንም እራሳቸው ከልክ በላይ ተገርመው ነበር።

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጌታ ስራ ብዙ ነፍሳትን፣ አዎን እስር ሺዎችን ያህል፣ በማጥመቅ፣ እናም ወደ እግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያና በማምጣት በለጸገ።

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

፳፯ ስለዚህ ጌታ ከልብ በመሆን ቅዱስ ስሙን ለሚጠሩ ሁሉ እርሱ መሀሪ እንደሚሆን እንደዚህ እንመለከታለን።

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

፳፰ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በሆነው በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስም ለሚያምኑ፣ የሰማይ በር ለሁሉም ክፍት እንደሆነም እንደዚህ እንመለከታለን።

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

፳፱ አዎን፣ ማንም ቢሆን ህያው የሆነውንና ኃያል የሆነውን፣ የዲያብሎስን ዕቅድ፣ ብልጠትና ወጥመድ የሚበታትነውን፣ እናም የክርስቶስ የሆኑትን ሰዎች በቀጭኑና ጠባብ በሆነው ጎዳና፣ ኃጢአተኞችንም ሊውጣቸው ከተዘጋጀው ከዘለዓለማዊው ጉስቁልና ባሻገር የሚመራቸውን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል አጥብቆ የያዘ—

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

፴ ነፍሳቸውም፣ አዎን የማይሞተው ነፍሳቸው በመንግስተ ሰማያት በእግዚአብሔር ቀኝ እጅ፣ ከእብርሃምና፣ ከይስሀቅ፣ እናም ከያዕቆብና፣ ከቅዱሳን አባቶቻችን ጋር ለማስቀመጥ፣ ከእንግዲህም ወደውጭ አይሄዱ ዘንድ እንደሚያደርግ እንመለከታለን።

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

፴፩ እናም በዚህ ዓመት በዛራሔምላ ምድር፣ እናም በዙሪያው ሁሉ፤ በኔፋውያን በተያዙት ቦታዎች እንኳን ሁሉ የማያቋርጥ ደስታ ነበር።

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእርባ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት ሰላምና እጅግ ታላቅ ደስታ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ በመሣፍንቱም ሀምሳኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን የማያቋርጥ ሰላምና ታላቅ ደስታ ነበር።

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

፴፫ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ—ወደ እግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ሳይሆን፤ ነገር ግን የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ተብለው እራሳቸውን ከሚጠሩት ሰዎች ልብ ውስጥ—መግባት ከጀመረው ኩራት በስተቀር በመሣፍንቱ ሀምሳ አምስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመንም ሰላም ነበር

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

፴፬ እናም ብዙዎች ወንድሞቻቸውን እስከሚያሳድዱአቸው ድረስ በኩራት ተወጠሩ። አሁን ይህ ታላቅ ክፋት ትሁት የሆኑትን ሰዎች ይበልጥ ለታላቅ ሰደት እናም ሰቃይ እንዲገፉ የሚያደርግ የነበረው።

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

፴፭ ይሁን እንጂ ዘወትር ጾሙ፣ እንዲሁም ፀለዩ፣ እናም ነፍሳቸውን በደስታና በመፅናናት እስከሚሞሉ ድረስም፣ አዎን፣ ልቦቻቸውን ለእግዚአብሔር በፍቃድ በመስጠት በሚመጣው ቅድስና ልቦቻቸው እንዲጸዱና እንዲቀደሱ እስከሚያደርጉ ድረስ በትሁትና እየጠነከሩ፣ እናም በክርስቶስ እምነታቸውን እየጸኑ ሄዱ።

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ ልብ ውስጥ ከገባው ታላቅ ኩራት በቀር ሀምሳ ሁለተኛው ዓመትም በሰላም ደግሞ ተፈፀመ፤ እናም የዚህ መንስኤ በምድሪቱ ከነበራቸው እጅግ ታላቅ ሀብትና ብልፅግና ነበር፤ ይህም በእነርሱ ከቀን ወደ ቀን እየጨመረ ሄደ።

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሀምሳ ሶስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ሌሊማን ሞተ፤ ታላቁ ልጁ ኔፊም በእርሱ ምትክ መንገስ ጀመረ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የፍርድ ወንበሩንም በጽድቅና በእኩልነት ያዘው፤ አዎን የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ጠበቀና፤ በእባቱ መንገድ ተራመደ።

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

ሔለማን ፬

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሀምሳ አራተኛው ዓመት በቤተክርስቲያኗ ብዙ መለያየት ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ ደም እስከሚፈስ ድረስ በህዝቡ መካከልም ፀብ ነበር።

፪ እናም አማፅያን የሆኑት ተገደሉና፣ ከምድሪቱ ተባረሩ፣ እናም ወደ ላማናውያን ንጉስ ሄዱ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንን ከኔፋውያን ጋር በውጊያ ለማወክ ጥረት አደረጉ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ላማናውያን የእነዚያን የተገነጠሉትን ቃል ለመስማት እስከማይፈልጉም እጅግ ፈርተው ነበር።

፬ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሀምሳ ስድስተኛው ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን ከኔፋውያን ወደላማናውያን የሄዱ ተቃዋሚዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም በኔፋውያን ላይ ለቁጣ በማነሳሳት ድልን አገኙ፤ እናም ሁሉም በዚያን ዓመት በሙሉ ለጦርነት ተዘጋጅተው ነበር።

፭ እናም በሀምሳ ሰባተኛው ዓመት ለውጊያ በኔፋውያን ላይ መጡና፣ የሞትን ስራ ጀመሩ፤ እዎን በመሣፍንቱ ሀምሳ ስምንተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን የዛራሔምላን ምድር እዎን እናም ደግሞ ከሊጋስ ምድር አጠገብ ያሉትን ቦታዎች በሙሉ ለመያዝ ድል አገኙ።

፮ እናም ኔፋውያንና የሞርኒህም ወታደሮች ወደ ሊጋስ ምድር ተባረሩ፤

፯ እናም ከባህሩ በስተምዕራብ በኩል እስከምስራቅ ከላማናውያን እራሳቸውን ሸሽጉ፤ ኔፋውያን ሰሜናዊውን ሀገራቸውን ለመከላከል ወታደሮቻቸውን የሸሽጉበት፣ እና ያስፈሩበት መስመር የአንድ ቀን ጉዞ ያህል ነበር።

፰ እናም እነዚያ ከኔፋውያን የተገነጠሉት ከብዙ ላማናውያን ወታደሮች እርዳታ ጋር በምድሪቱ በደቡብ በኩል ያሉትን የኔፋውያንን ይዘታዎች በሙሉ አገኙ። እናም ይህ ሁሉ የሆነው በመሣፍንቱ ሀምሳ ስምንተኛና ዘጠነኛ የንግስ ዘመን ነበር።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ስልሳኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ሞርኒህ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር የምድሪቱን ብዙ ቦታዎች ለማግኘት ተሳካሊት፤ እዎን እነርሱም በላማናውያን እጅ የወደቁትን ብዙ ከተሞች በድጋሚ አገኙ።

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ስልሳ አንደኛ የንግስና ዘመን የይዘታዎቻቸውን ግማሽ እንኳን በድጋሚ ለማግኘት ተሳካላቸው።

፲፩ እንግዲህ ይህ የኔፋውያን ታላቅ ጥፋት፣ እናም በመካከላቸው የነበረው ታላቅ ሞት፣ በመካከላቸው በነበረው በኃጢአተኝነታቸውና በእነርሱ ርኩሰና ገይሆኑ ኖሮ አይኖርም ነበር፤ እዎን፣ እናም ይህ ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል ነን በሚሉትም መካከል የሚገኝም ነበር።

፲፪ እናም ይህም በልባቸው ኩራት፣ እጅግ ሀብታም በመሆናቸው የተነሳ፣ እዎን ድሆችን በመጨቆናቸው፣ ለረሃብተኞችም ምግባቸውን ስለከለከሉአቸው፣ ከታሪዙት የሚለብሱትን በመከልከላቸው፣ ትሁት የሆኑ ወንድሞቻቸውንም በጥፊ ስለመቱአቸው፣ ቅዱስ በሆነውም ስለተሳለቁ፣ የትንቢትን እና የራዕይን መንፈስ በመካዳቸው፣ በመግደላቸው፣ በመዘረፋቸው፣ በመዋሽታቸው፣ በመሰረቃቸው፣ ዝሙትን በመፈፀማቸው፣ ለፀብ በመነሳሳታቸው፣ እናም ወደኔፊ ምድር፣ ከላማናውያን መካከል፣ ጥለው በመሄዳቸው ምክንያት ነበር—

፲፫ እናም በዚህ በታላቁ ኃጢአታቸው የተነሳና፣ በጉልበታቸውም በመኩራታቸው፣ በእራሳቸው ጥንካሬ ተትተው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ አልበለፀጉም፣ ነገር ግን ተሰቃዩና፣ ተመቱ፣ እናም ምድሪቱን በሙሉ ለማጣት እስከሚቀርቡ ድረስ ከላማናውያን ፊት ተባርረዋል።

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሞሮኒህ በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ለሀዘቡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ሰበከላቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ የሔላማን ልጆች የነበሩት ኔፊና ሌሂ፣ ለሀዘቡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ሰበኩ፣ እዎን እናም ስለክፋታቸውና፣ ለኃጢአታቸው ንስሃ ካልገቡ በእነርሱ ላይ ምን እንደሚመጣም ተነበዩላቸው።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንስሃ ገቡ፤ እናም ንስሃ በመግባታቸውም መበልፀግ ጀመሩ።

፲፮ ሞሮኒህ ንስሃ መግባታቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ የንብረቶቻቸውን ግማሽ እናም የምድራቸውን ግማሽ እስከሚያገኙ ድረስ እነርሱን ከቦታ ቦታ፣ እንዲሁም ከከተማ ከተማ ለመምራት ሞከረ።

፲፯ እናም የመሣፍንቱ ሥልሳ አንደኛ የንግስና ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ስልሳ ሁለተኛ የንግስና ዘመን ሞሮኒህ ከላማናውያን ይበልጥ ይዘታዎችን ማግኘት አልቻለም።

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

፲፱ ስለዚህ የተቀረውን ምድር የማግኘት ዕቅዳቸውን ተወት፤ ምክንያቱም ለማናውያን እጅግ ብዙ ስለ ነበሩ ለኔፋውያን በእነርሱ ላይ ይበልጥ ኃይልን ለማግኘት አስቸጋሪ ሆነ፤ ስለዚህ ሞሮኒህ የወሰዳቸውን ቦታዎች ለማቆየት ወታደሮቹን በሙሉ አሰማራ።

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ቁጥር ብዙ በመሆኑ፣ ላማናውያን እንዳያሸንፏቸው፣ እናም እንዳይረገጧቸውና፣ እንዳይገድሏቸው፣ እንዲሁም እንዳያጠፏቸው ዘንድ ኔፋውያን በጣም ፈርተው ነበር።

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

፳፩ አዎን የአልማን ትንቢቶች፣ እናም ደግሞ የሞዛያን ቃላት ማስታወስ ጀመሩ፤ እናም አንገተ ደንዳና ህዝቦች መሆናቸውንና፣ የእግዚአብሔርንም ትዕዛዛት ከንቱ እንዳደረጉ ተመለከቱ፤

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

፳፪ እናም የሞዛያን፣ ወይም ጌታ ለህዝቡ እንዲሰጥ ያዘዘውን፣ ህግ እንደለወጡትና በእግራቸው እንደረገጡት፣ እናም ህግጋቶቻቸው እንደተበላሹና፣ እነርሱም እንደ ላማናውያን አይነት ኃጢአተኞች እስኪሆኑ ድረስ ሳጥያተኛ ህዝቦች እንደሆኑ ተመለከቱ።

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

፳፫ እናም በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ቤተክርስቲያኗ መመንመን ጀመረች፤ እናም በትንቢት መንፈስና፣ በራዕይ መንፈስ እምነት ማጣት ጀመሩ፤ የእግዚአብሔር ፍርድም በእነርሱ ላይ በአትኩሮት ተመለከታቸው።

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

፳፬ እናም እንደ ወንድሞቻቸው እንደ ላማናውያን ደካማ መሆናቸውን፣ እናም የጌታ መንፈስም ከዚህ በኋላ እንዳላዳናቸውም ተመለከቱ፤ አዎን፣ የጌታ መንፈስ ቅዱስ ባልሆነ ቤተመቅደስ ስለማይኖርም ከእነርሱ ሸሽ—

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

፳፭ ስለዚህ ጌታ በአስደናቂውና፣ ወደር በሌለው ኃይል እነርሱን መጠበቁን አቆመ፤ ምክንያቱም እምነት ወደማጣትና፣ በአስቃቂ ኃጢአት ወድቀዋልና፤ እናም ላማናውያን ከእነርሱ ይልቅ እጅግ ብዙ መሆናቸውን፣ እናም ወደጌታ እምላካቸው በታማኝነት ካልጸኑ በማይቀር ሁኔታ መጥፋት እንዳለባቸው ተመለከቱ።

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

፳፮ እነሆም የላማናውያን ጥንካሬ እንደ እነርሱ ጥንካሬ፣ እንዲሁም እንደ ሰው ለእንደ ሰው አይነት፣ መሆኑን ተመለከቱ። እናም ስለዚህ ወደዚህ ታላቅ መተላለፍ እንደዚህ ወደቁ፤ አዎን፣ በጥቂት ዓመታት በመተላለፋቸውም ምክንያት እንደዚህ ደካሞች ሆኑ።

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

ሌሌማን ፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚሁ ዓመት፣ እነሆ፣ ኔፊ ሴዞራም ተብሎ ለሚጠራ ሰው የፍርድ ወንበሩን ሰጠ።

፪ ህግጋቶቻቸው፣ እናም መንግሥታቸው በህዝቡ ድምፅ በመቋቋሙ፣ እናም መልካምን ከመረጡት ክፉውን የመረጡት ቁጥር ብዙ በመሆኑ ለጥፋት በሰለዋል፣ ምክንያቱም ህጎቹ ተበላሽተዋል።

፫ አዎን እናም ይህ ብቻም አልነበረም፤ ለጥፋታቸው ካልሆነ በቀር በህግም ሆነ በፍትህ መገዛት አስከማይችሉ ድረስ አንገተ ደንዳናዎች ነበሩ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊ በክፋታቸውም የተነሳ ታከተው፤ እናም የፍርድ ወንበሩን ለቀቀና፣ በቀሩት ቀኖቹ፣ እንዲሁም ደግሞ ወንድሙ ሌሂ በቀሩት ቀኖቹ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለማስተማር ኃላፊነትን ወሰዱ።

፭ አባታቸው ሌሌማን የተናገረውን ቃላት አሰታውሰዋል። እናም እርሱ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፦

፮ እነሆ፣ ልጆቼ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ እንድታስታውሱት አፈልጋለሁ፣ እነዚህንም ቃላት ለህዝቡ እንድታውጁ አፈልጋለሁ። እነሆ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ለቀው የወጡትን የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችንን ሰም ሰጥቻችኋለሁ፤ ይህንን ያደረግሁትም ሰማችሁን ሰታሰቡ እነርሱን ታስታውሱ ዘንድ ነው፤ እናም እነርሱን ሰታሰታውሱ ሰራቸውን ታስታውሱ ዘንድ ነው፤ ሰራቸውንም ሰታሰታውሱ መልካም እንደነበሩ እንዴት እንደተባለና፣ ደግሞ እንደተፃፈ እንድታውቁ ዘንድ ነው።

፯ ስለዚህ፣ ልጆቼ፣ እንደ እነርሱ እንደተባለው እናም እንደተፃፈው ስለእናንተ እንዲባልና ደግሞ እንዲጻፍ መልካም የሆኑትን እንድታደርጉ አፈልጋለሁ።

፰ እናም እንግዲህ ልጆቼ፣ እነሆ ከዚህ የበለጠ እንድታደርጉ የምፈልገው አለኝ፣ ይህ ፍላጎቴም ለመኩራት ብላችሁ እነዚህን ነገሮች አታድርጉ፤ ነገር ግን በሰማይ ለራሳችሁ፣ አዎን ዘለዓለማዊ የሆነ እናም የማይጠፋን የሰማይ ሀብትን ታከማቹ ዘንድ፣ አዎን ለአባቶቻችን ይሰጣሉ ብለን ላለመገመት ምክንያት እንደሌለን አይነት የዘለዓለም ህይወት የተከበረ ሰጦታ ይኖራችሁ ዘንድ ይሁን እነዚህን ነገሮች አድርጉ።

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

፱ ክብሩ ልጆቹ አስታውሱ፣ ንጉሰ ቢንያም ለህዝቡ የተናገረውን ቃላት አስታውሱ፣ አዎን፣ በሚመጣው በአዳኙ የኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ደም ካልሆነ በቀር የሰው ልጅ ሊድንበት የሚችልበት መንገድም ሆነ ዘዴ የለም፤ አዎን፣ ዓለምን ለማዳን እንደሚመጣም አስታውሱ።

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

፲ እናም ደግሞ አሙሌቅ በአሞሊህ ከተማ ለዚኤዝርም የተናገራቸውን ቃላት አስታውሱ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ጌታ በእርግጥ ህዝቡን ለማዳን እንደሚመጣ ተናግሯልና፤ ነገር ግን ከኃጢአታቸው ሊያድናቸው እንጂ፣ ከኃጢአታቸው ሊፈውሳቸው አይመጣም።

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

፲፩ እናም ጌታ በንሰሃ የተነሳ ከኃጢአታቸው እንዲያድናቸው ከአብ ሰልጣን ተሰጥቶታል፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡን ወደማዳን ሰልጣን እንዲሁም ወደነፍሳቸው ደህንነት የሚያመጣቸውን የንሰሃን የምስራች ሁኔታ ለመናገር መላዕክቱን ልኳል።

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

፲፪ እናም አሁን ልጆቹ አስታውሱ፣ አስታውሱ፣ አዳኝ በሆነው የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በሆነው በክርስቶስ ዓለት መሰረታችሁን መገንባት እንዳለባችሁ፤ ዲያብሎስ ኃይሉን ንፋሱን፣ አዎን፣ በአውሎ ነፋስ እንደሚወረወር ዘንጉን በላክ ጊዜ፣ አዎን በረደው፣ እናም ኃይለኛው ውሽንፍር በሚመታችሁ ጊዜ፣ እርግጠኛ መሰረት በሆነው ሰዎች ከገነቡበት ሊወድቁበት በማይችሉበት አለት ላይ ስለገነባችሁ እናንተን ወደ ሰቃይና ወደባህር ስላጤና መጨረሻ ወደሌለው ዋይታ ጎትቶ ለመጣል ኃይል አይኖረውም።

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህ ቃላትን ነበር ሔለማን ለልጆቹ ያስተማራቸው፤ አዎን፣ ብዙ ያልተፃፉ ነገሮችንም እናም ደግሞ ብዙ የተፃፉ ነገሮችንም አስተምሯቸዋል።

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

፲፬ እናም ቃላቱን አስታውሰዋል፤ እናም ስለዚህ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ከላጋስ ከተማ በመጀመር በኔሬ ህዝብ ሁሉ መካከል የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለማስተማር ተጓዙ።

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

፲፭ እናም ከዚያን በኋላ ወደ ጊድ ከተማና፣ ከጊድ ከተማ ወደ ሙሌቅ ከተማ ሄዱ፤

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

፲፮ እናም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል ከነበሩት ከኔሬ ሰዎች ጋር እስከሚጓዙ ድረስ ከአንዱ ከተማ ወደ ሌላኛው ሄዱ፤ እናም ከዚያ ከላማናውያን መካከል ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተጓዙ።

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከኔፋውያን የተገነጠሉትን ብዙዎች እስከሚያሳፍሩ፣ ኃጢአታቸውን በመናዘዝ ለንሰሃ እስከሚጠመቁ፣ እናም የሰሩትን ሰህተት ለማረም ጥረት በማድረግ ወደ ኔፋውያን በፍጥነት እስከሚመለሱ ድረስ በታላቅ ኃይል ስብከውላቸው ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊና ሌሂ ይናገሩ ዘንድ ኃይልና ስልጣን ስለተሰጣቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ ምን መናገር እንዳለባቸው ስለተሰጣቸው በታላቅ ኃይልና ስልጣን ለላማናውያን ሰበኩ—

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

፲፱ ስለዚህ በዛራሔምላ ምድር እንዲሁም በዙሪያው የነበሩት ሰሞንት ሺህ ላማናውያን ለንሰሃ እስከሚጠመቁ፣ እናም የአባቶቻቸው ወግ ኃጢአት መሆኑን እስከሚያምኑ ድረስ ላማናውያኑም እጅግ እስኪገረሙ ይናገሩ ነበር።

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊና ሌሂ ከዚያ ቦታ ወደ ኔፊ ምድር ለመሄድ ጉዞአቸውን ቀጠሉ።

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም በላማናውያን ወታደሮች ተወሰዱና፣ ወህኒ ቤት፣ አዎን አምንና ወንድሞቹ በሊምሂ አገልጋዮች ተጥለውበት በነበረው በዚህ ወህኒ ቤት ተጣሉ።

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

፳፪ እናም ለብዙ ቀናት ያለምግብ በወህኒ ቤት ከተጣሉ በኋላ፣ እነሆ ይገድሉአቸው ዘንድ እነርሱን ለማውጣት ወደ ወህኒ ቤቱ ሄዱ።

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንቃጠላለን በማለት እጃቸውን በእነርሱ ላይ ለማሳረፍ እስከሚፈሩ እንኳን ኔፊና ሌሂ እሳት በሚመስል ነገር ተከበው ነበር። ይሁን እንጂ፣ ኔፊና ሌሂ አልተቃጠሉም ነበር፤ ልክ በእሳት መካከል የቆሙ ይመስሉ ነበር እናም አልተቃጠሉም ነበር።

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

፳፬ እናም በእሳት አምድ መከበባቸውን እናም እንደማይቃጠሉ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ ልባቸው ተበረታታ።

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

፳፭ ላማናውያን እጃቸውን ለመጫን እንዳልደፈሩ ተመለከቱ፤ አጠገባቸው ለመቅረብም አልደፈሩም፤ ነገር ግን ተደንቀው ዲዳ የሆኑ በመሞስል ቆሙ።

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊና ሌሂ ቆሙ፣ እናም ለእነርሱም እንዲህ በማለት መናገር ጀመሩ። እትፍሩ፣ እነሆም እኛን ለመግደል እጃችሁን በእኛ ላይ ማድረግ እንደማትችሉ የምታዩትን ይህን እስገራሚ ነገር የሚያሳያችሁ እግዚአብሔር ነው።

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

፳፯ እናም እነሆ ይህንን ቃላት በተናገሩ ጊዜ መሬቱ በኃይል ተንቀጠቀጠ፤ እናም የወህኒ ቤቱ ግድግዳ በመሬት ላይ የተንከባለለ እስከሚመስል ድረስ ተንቀጠቀጠ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ አልወደቁም። እናም እነሆ በወህኒ ቤት ውስጥ የነበሩት ላማናውያንና ተገንጥለው የነበሩት ኔፊውያን ነበሩ።

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በደመና ጭጋግም ተሸፈኑ፤ እናም አስቃቂ የሆነ ከባድ ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ መጣ።

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በደመናው ጭጋግ ከበላይ በኩል በሚመስል ሁኔታ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ፤ እናም መልካም ዜናን ለእናንተ እንዲናገሩ የላኳቸውን አገልጋዮቹን ለማጥፋት ከእንግዲህ አትሹ።

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህንን ድምፅ በሰሙ ጊዜና፣ የሙብረቅ ድምፅ አለመሆኑን፣ ታላቅ የሁካታም ጫጫታ ድምፅ አለመሆኑን ተመለከቱ፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ፍፁም የሆነ እርጋታ ያለው ለሰላሳ ድምፅ ነበር፤ ልክ እንደሹኩኩክታ፣ እናም ነፍሰንም እንኳን የሚወጋ ነበር—

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

፴፩ እናም ድምፁ ለሰላሳ ቢሆንም፣ እነሆ መሬቱ በኃይል ተንቀጠቀጠ፤ የወህኒ ቤቱ ግድግዳ ወደመሬት የሚወድቅ በመምስል በድጋሚ ተንቀጠቀጠ፤ እናም እነሆ እነርሱን የሸፈናቸው የደመናም ጭጋግ አልተበተነም ነበር—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

፴፪ እናም እነሆ ድምፅ በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ መንግስተ ሰማያት ቀርባለችና፤ እናም ከእንግዲህ አገልጋዮቹን ለማጥፋት አትሞክሩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መሬት በድጋሚ ተንቀጠቀጠችና፣ ግድግዳው ተናወጠ።

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

፴፫ እናም ደግሞ ለሶስተኛ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ድምፅ መጣና፣ በሰው ሊነገሩ የማይችሉ አስደናቂ ቃላት ተናገረ፤ እናም ግድግዳው በድጋሚ ተንቀጠቀጠና ምድር ተሰነጣጥቃ የተከፈለች እስከሚመስል ድረስ ተናወጠች።

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የደመናው ጭጋግ ስለሸፈናቸው ላማናውያን ለመሸሽ አልቻሉም፤ አዎን እናም ደግሞ በላያቸው ላይ በመጣው ፍርሃት የተነሳ አይንቀሳቀሱም ነበር።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

፴፭ እንግዲህ ከኔፋውያን የተወለደ፣ በአንድ ወቅት በእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን አባል የነበረ ነገር ግን ተለይቶ የሄደ አንድ ሰው በመካከላቸው ነበር።

፴፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሌላ አቅጣጫ ዞረና፣ እነሆ በደመናው ጭጋግ ውስጥ የኔፊንና የሌሂን ፊት ተመለከተ፤ እናም እነሆ ፊታቸውም ልክ እንደመላዕክት እጅግ ያበራ ነበር። ወደሰማይ ሲመለከቱም ተመለከታቸው፤ እናም ወደሚመለከቱት ፍጡር ድምፃቸውን ከፍ እንደሚያደርጉ ወይም እንደሚነገገሩ ዓይነት መስለዋል።

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ ሰው ይመለከቱ ዘንድ ወደ ህዝቡ ጮኹ። እናም እነሆ ለመዞርና ለመመልከት ሀይል ስለተሰጣቸው ዞረና ተመለከቱ፤ እናም የኔፊንና የሌሂን ፊት ተመለከቱ።

፴፰ እናም ለሰውየውም እንዲህ አሉ፡ እነሆ ይህ ሁሉ ነገር ምን ማለት ነው፣ እናስ እነዚህ ሰዎች የሚነገገሩት ከማን ጋር ነው?

፴፱ እንግዲህ የሰውየው ሰም አሚናዳብ ይባል ነበር። እናም አሚናዳብ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፡ እነርሱ ከእግዚአብሔር መላእክት ጋር ይነገገራሉ።

፵ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን እንዲህ አሉት፡ ይህ የጨለማው ጭጋግ እኛን ከመሸፈን ይወገድ ዘንድ ምን እናድርግ?

፵፩ እናም አሚናዳብ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ አልማና፣ አሙሌቅ፣ እናም ዚኤዝርም ባስተማሯችሁ በክርስቶስም እምነት እስከሚኖሯችሁ ድረስ ድምፃችሁን በማንሳት ንስሃ መግባት እንዲሁም ማልቀስ ይገባችኋል፤ እናም ይህንን በምታደርጉበት ጊዜ የሸፈናችሁ የጨለማ ጭጋግ ይወገድላችኋል።

፵፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምድርን በማንቀጥቀጥ ወዳናወጠው ድምፅ ሁሉም መጮህ ጀመሩ፤ አዎን የደመናው ጭጋግ እስከሚበታተን ድረስም ጮኹ።

፵፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አይኖቻቸውን ወዲህና ወዲያ አዞሩ፣ እናም የደመናው ጭጋግ ለቋቸው መሄዱን ተመለከቱ፣ እነሆ እነርሱ፣ አዎን፣ እያንዳንዱ ነፍስ በእሳቱ አምድ መከበቡን ተመለከተ።

፵፬ እናም ኔፊና ሌሂ በላማናውያን መካከል ነበሩ፤ አዎን ተከበው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ልክ በሚነድ ነበልባል መካከል እንዳሉ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ እነርሱን የሚጎዳም ሆነ የወህኒ ቤቱን ግድግዳ የሚያቃጥል አልነበረም፤ እናም ለመናገር በሚያዳግት እንዲሁም በክብር በተሞላ ደስታ ተሞልተው ነበር።

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

፱፻፭ እናም እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቅዱስ መንፈስ ከሰማይ መጣና፣ ወደ ልባቸው ገባ፣ እናም በእሳት የተሞሉ ይመስል ነበር፣ አስደናቂ ቃላትንም መናገር ይችሉ ነበር።

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

፱፻፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አንድ ድምፅ፣ አዎን የሚያምር ድምፅ፣ ልክ እንደሹኩሹክታ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

፱፻፯ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ በነበረው በተወዳጅ ባላችሁ እምነት ምክንያት ስላም፣ ስላም ለእናንተ ይሁን።

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

፱፻፰ እናም እንግዲህ ይህንን በሰሙ ጊዜ ድምፁ ከመጣበት ቦታ ለመመልከት ዐይናቸውን ወደ ላይ አነሱ፤ እናም እነሆ ሰማይ ሲከፈት ተመለከቱ፤ መላዕክትም ከሰማይ መጡና አገለገሏቸው።

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

፱፻፱ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ያዩና የሰሙ ወደ ሶስት መቶ የሚጠጉ ነፍሳት ነበሩ፤ እናም እንዲሄዱና፣ እንዲይገረሙ፣ እናም እንዲይጠራጠሩ ታዘዙ።

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ሄዱ፤ እናም ለህዝቡ ተናገሩ፣ በምድሪቱም ዙሪያ ሁሉ ባጠቃላይ ስለተመለከቱት እንዲሁም ስለአዩአቸው ነገሮች በሙሉ ተናገሩ፤ የተቀበሉት መረጃ ታላቅ በመሆኑ ብዙዎች ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ተቀይረው ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

፲፩ እናም ብዙዎች ያመኑትም የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውንና፣ ደግሞ ጥላቻቸውንና የአባቶቻቸውን ወግ ተዉ።

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ለኔፋውያን ምድራቸውን ተዉላቸው።

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

ሔለማን ፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የመሣፍንቱ ሰልሳ ሁለተኛው ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በተፈፀመ ጊዜ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ ሆኑ፣ እናም ኡብዛኞቹ ላማናውያን ፃድቃኖች ሆነው በእምነታቸው ብርታት እንዲሁም ፅኑነት ፅድቃቸው ከኔፋውያን ይበልጥ ነበር።

፪ እነሆም ብዙ ኔፋውያን ጠጣሮች፣ እንዲሁም ንስሃ የማይገቡ፣ እናም በእጠቃላይ ክፋዎች ነበሩ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በመካከላቸው የመጡትን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃልና፣ ሁሉንም ሰብከትና፣ ትንቢት አልተቀበሉም ነበር።

፫ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በላማናውያን መለወጥ የተነሳ፣ አዎን፣ በመካከላቸው በተቋቋመችው የእግዚአብሔር ቤተክርስቲያን ምክንያት የቤተክርስቲያኗ ሰዎች ታላቅ ደስታ ነበራቸው። እናም እርስ በእርሳቸው በመተባበር፣ እናም እንደኛው ሌላኛውን አሰደሰቱ፣ ታላቅ ደስታም ነበራቸው።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙ ላማናውያን ወደ ዛራሔምላ ሞድር መጡና፣ ለኔፋውያን ሰዎች ስለመለወጣቸው ተናገሩ፣ እምነት እንዲኖራቸውም እንዲሁም ንስሃ እንዲገቡ አጥብቀው መከሯቸው።

፭ አዎን፣ እናም ኡብዛኛዎቹ ብዙዎቹን የእግዚአብሔርና የበጉ ትሁት ተከታዮች እንዲሆኑ ወደ ጥልቅ ትህትና ለማምጣት በታላቅ ኃይል ስልጣን ሰበኩላቸው።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ብዙዎቹ ላማናውያን በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል ተጓዙ፤ እናም ደግሞ ኔፊና ሌሂ ህዝቡን ለመሰበክ በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል ተጓዙ። እናም ሰልሳ ሦስተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

፯ እናም እነሆ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ስላም ሆነ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ኔፋውያን ወደፈለጉት ማንኛውም ስፍራ፣ ከኔፋውያንም ሆነ ከላማናውያን ጋር ተጓዙ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንም ደግሞ ከላማናውያንም መካከል ሆነ ከኔፋውያን መካከል መሄድ በፈለጉበት ስፍራ ሁሉ ሄዱ፤ እናም እንዳቸው ከሌላኛቸው ጋር ለመግዛት እንዲሁም ለመሸጥ እንዲሁም እንደፍላጎታቸው ጥቅም ለማግኘት ነፃ ግንኙነት ነበራቸው።

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, in-
somuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, in-
somuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያንም ሆኑ ነፋውያን እጅግ ሀብታም ሆኑ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብም ሆነ በስተሰሜን የተትረፈረፈ ወርቅና፣ ብር እንዲሁም የከበሩ ብረቶች በብዛት ነበሩአቸው።

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

፲ እንግዲህ የምድሪቱ ደቡብ ክፍል ሌሂ ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር፤ እንዲሁም የምድሪቱ ሰሜን ክፍል በሴዴቅያስ ልጅ ስም ሙሌቅ ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ሙሌቅን በምድሪቱ በሰሜን በኩል እንዲሁም ሌሂን በደቡብ በኩል አምጥቷቸዋልና።

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

፲፩ እናም እነሆ በእነዚህ በሁለቱም ቦታዎች ሁሉም ዓይነት ወርቅና፣ ከሁሉም ዓይነት ብር እንዲሁም የከበረ አፈር ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ በጥንቃቄ የሚሰሩ፣ ሁሉንም ዓይነት አፈር የሚሰሩና የሚያጣሩ ነበሩ፤ ሀብታምችም ሆኑ።

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

፲፪ እህልም በብዛት በስተሰሜን እንዲሁም በስተደቡብ አበቀሉ፤ እናም በደቡብም እንዲሁም በሰሜን በለፀጉ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ተባዙ እንዲሁም እጅግ በረቱ። እናም ብዙ መንጋዎችንና ከብቶችን አዎን በብዛት ጠባቶችን አረቡ።

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

፲፫ እነሆ ሴቶቻቸው ጥረዋልና፣ ፈትለዋል፣ እናም ሁሉንም የተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታ ዓይነት ልብሶችና እርቃናቸውን ለመሸፈን ማንኛውንም ዓይነት ልብስ አዘጋጅተዋል። እናም ስልሳ አራተኛው ዓመት በሰላም እንደዚህ አለፈ።

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

፲፬ እናም በስልሳ አምስተኛውም ዓመት ደግሞ ታላቅ ደስታና ሰላም፣ አዎን ብዙ ስብከትና የሚመጣውን በተመለከተ ብዙ ትንቢቶች ነበሯቸው። እናም ስልሳ አምስተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ስልሳ ስድስተኛ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን፣ እነሆ ሴዞራም ባልታወቀ ሰው በፍርድ ወንበሩ ተቀምጦ ሳለ ተገደለ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚሁ ዓመት፣ በእርሱ ምትክ በህዝቡ የተሾመው ወንድ ልጁ ደግሞ ተገደለ። ስልሳ ስድስተኛው ዓመትም እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

፲፮ እናም በስልሳ ስባተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ላይ ህዝቡ በጎጢያት እጅግ ማደግ ጀመረ።

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

፲፯ እነሆም ጌታ ለቁጣ፣ ለጦርነትም፣ ይሁን ለደም መፋሰስ እንዲይነሳሱ በምድራዊ ሀብት ለብዙ ጊዜ ባረካቸው፤ ስለዚህ ልባቸውን በሀብታቸው ላይ ማድረግ ጀመሩ፤ አዎን በድጋሚም አንዳቸው በሌላኛቸው ላይ እራሳቸውን ከፍ ለማድረግ ፈለጉ፤ ስለዚህ ያገኙም ዘንድ በድብቅ ግድያን፣ እናም ሰርቆትን እንዲሁም ዝርፊያን መፈፀም ጀመሩ።

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

፲፰ እናም አሁን እነሆ የገዳዮቹና የዘራፊዎቹ ቡድን በቁሽቁሙን እንዲሁም ጋድያንቶን የተቋቋሙት ነበሩ። እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ከጋድያንቶን ቡድን ከኔፋውያንም መካከል ብዙዎች ነበሩ። ነገር ግን እነሆ ኃጢአተኞች ከሆኑት ላማናውያን መካከል በቁጥር ብዙ ነበሩ። እናም የጋድያንቶን ሌቦች እንዲሁም ገዳዮች ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር።

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

፲፱ እናም እነርሱ ናቸው ዋናውን ዳኛ ሴዘራምን እንዲሁም ልጁን በፍርድ ወንበሩ ላይ እንዳለ የገደሉት፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ማናቸውም አልተገኙም ነበር።

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

፳ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በመካከላቸው ሌቦች እንዳሉ ባወቁ ጊዜ እጅግ አዘኑ፤ እናም ከምድረ ገፅ እነርሱን ለማጥፋት በኃይላቸው ማንኛውንም መንገድ ተጠቀሙ።

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

፳፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ ሰይጣን የአብዛኞቹን የኔፋውያን ልብ አነሳሳ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ከሌቦቹ ቡድን ጋር በግድያቸው እንዲሁም በዝርፊያቸውና በሰርቆታቸው እንዲይሰቃዩ፣ በማንኛውም አስቸጋሪ ሁኔታ ቢቀመጡ እርስ በራስ እንዲረዳዱ፣ ከእነርሱ ጋር ተቀላቀሉ እናም ወደ እነርሱ ቃል ኪዳን እንዲሁም መሃላ ገቡ።

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የራሳቸው ምልክቶች ነበሩአቸው፤ አዎን፣ ሚስጥራዊ ምልክትና፣ ሚስጥራዊ ቃላት፤ እናም ይህንም ያደረጉት ወደ ቃል ኪዳኑ የገባውን ወንድም ይለዩበት ዘንድ፣ አባሉ ኃጢአት የሆነን ማንኛውንም ነገር ቢያደርግ ቃል ኪዳን በገባው በወንድሙም ሆነ በቡድኑ እንዳይሳዱ ዘንድ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

፳፫ እናም ከሀገራቸው ህግጋት እንዲሁም ደግሞ ከእግዚአብሔር ህግጋት ጋር ተቃራኒ የሆኑትን ግድያዎችና፣ ዝርፊያዎች፣ እናም ሰርቆትና፣ ዝሙትን እንዲሁም ሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋት እንደዚህ ለመፈፀም ይችሉ ዘንድ።

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

፳፬ እናም ከእነርሱ ቡድን የሆነ ማንኛውም ሰው ለዓለም ኃጢአታቸውን እንዲሁም እርኩስታቸውን ቢገልፅ፤ እንደ ሀገራቸው ህግ ሳይሆን በጋድያንቶን እና በቂሽቁመን በተሰጡት የክፋታቸው ህግጋት መሰረት ለፍርድ ይቀርባል።

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ ሚስጥራዊ መሃላና ቃል ኪዳን አልማ ለልጁ ህዝቦችን ወደ ጥፋት የሚወስድ ዘዴ እንዲይሆን በመፍራቱ ወደ ዓለም እንዲይሄድ ያዘዘበት ነው።

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

፳፮ እንግዲህ እነሆ እነዚህ ሚስጥራዊ መሃላዎችና ቃል ኪዳኖች ለሌላማን ከተሰጡት መዛግብት ለጋድያንቶን አልመጡም፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተከለከለውን ፍሬ እንዲቀምሱ የመጀመሪያ ቤተሰቦቻችንን ያታለለው ያው ፍጡር እነዚህን በጋድያንቶን ልብ ውስጥ አስቀምጦ ስለነበር ነው—

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

፳፯ እዎን ወንድሙን አቤልን ቢገድለው ዓለም እንደማያውቀውም ከቃየን ጋር ያሴረው ይኸው ፍጡር ነበር። እናም እርሱም ከቃየንና ከተከታዮቹ ጋር ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ አሴረ።

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

፳፰ ደግሞም ረጅም ግንብ ገንብተው ሰማይ መድረስን በሰው ልጆች ልብ ውስጥ ያደረገው ይህ ፍጡር ነው። እናም እነዚያን ሰዎች ከግንቡ ወደዚህ ምድር የመጡትን የገፋፋቸው፣ ፍፁም ወደሆነ ጥፋት እናም ዘለዓለማዊ ወደሆነው ገሃነም እስከሚጎትታቸው ድረስ የጨለማን እንዲሁም የእርኩስትን ስራ በምድር ገፅ እንዲበተን ያደረገውም ይኸው ፍጡር ነው።

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

፳፱ እዎን፣ አሁንም የጨለማውን ስራ እንዲሁም ሚስጥራዊ ግድያውን እንዲያደርግ በጋድያንቶን ልብ ውስጥ ያሰገባውም ይህ ፍጡር ነው፤ እናም ከሰው ልጅ መፈጠር ጀምሮ እስከዚህ ጊዜ ድረስ ይህን ያመጣው ይኸው ፍጡር ነው።

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

፴ እናም እነሆ የኃጢአት ሁሉ ደራሲው እርሱ ነው። እናም እነሆ፣ እርሱም የጨለማውን ስራ እንዲሁም ሚስጥራዊ ግድያውን ቀጥሎበታል፣ እንዲሁም በሰው ልጆች ልብ ላይ ተፅዕኖ ማድረግ እስከቻለ ይህንን ሴራ፣ መሃላቸውንና ቃል ኪዳናቸውን እንዲሁም ይህንን አስቃቂ የኃጢአት ዓላማ ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ ያስተላልፋል።

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

፴፩ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ በኔፋውያን ልብ ላይ ታላቅ የሆነ ተፅዕኖ አግኝቷል፤ አዎን፣ ስለዚህም እነርሱ እጅግ ኃጢአተኞች ሆነዋል፤ አዎን፣ ብዙዎቹም ከፅድቅ ጎዳና ርቀዋል፤ እንዲሁም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በእግራቸው ስር ረግጠውታል፤ እናም በራሳቸው አመለካከት ሄደዋል፤ እናም ከወርቆቻቸው እንዲሁም ከብራቸው ለራሳቸው ጣኦቶችን ስርተዋል።

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህ ሁሉ ክፋቶች በእነርሱ ላይ የመጡት በረጅም ጊዜ ውስጥ አይደለም፤ ስለዚህ አብዛኛዎቹ ክፋቶች የሆኑት በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሰልሳ ሰባተኛ ዓመት የንግሰና ዘመን ውስጥ ነበር።

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፴፫ እናም ለፃድቃኖች ታላቅ ሀዘን እንዲሁም ለቅሶ፣ በሰልሳ ሰባተኛው ዓመት ደግሞ በክፋታቸው ጨመሩ።

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

፴፬ እናም ለማናውያን በእምላካቸው እውቀት ማደግ፣ አዎን እነርሱ ስርዓቶችንና ትዕዛዛቱን መጠበቅ፣ እናም በፊቱም በእምነት እንዲሁም በቀጥታ መራመድ በጀመሩበት ጊዜ፣ ኔፋውያን እምነት አጥተው መመንመን እንዲሁም በክፋትና በእርኩስት ማደግ መጀመራቸውን እንደዚህ እንመለከታለን።

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

፴፭ እናም በኃጢአታቸውና ልባቸውን በማጠጠራቸው የተነሳ የጌታ መንፈስ ከኔፋውያን መለየት እንደጀመረ እንመለከታለን።

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

፴፮ እናም ለማናውያን የማያስቸግሩና ቃሉን ለማመን ፈቃደኞች በመሆናቸው ጌታ ከመንፈሱ በላያቸው ላይ ማፍሰስ መጀመሩን ተመለከትን።

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለማናውያን የጋድያንቶንን የዘራፊዎች ቡድን አደኑ፤ እናም ይበልጥ ኃጢአተኞች በሆኑትም መካከል የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ሰበኩ፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ የዘራፊዎች ቡድን ከላማናውያን መካከል ፈፀመው ጠፉ።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

፴፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሌላ በኩል እጅግ ኃጢአተኛ ከሆኑት ጀምሮና ፃድቃን የሆኑት አብዛኞቹም በሰራቸው እስከሚያምኑና፣ ከዘረፋት እስከሚካፈሉ፣ እናም በሚሰጥራዊው ግድያቸውና፣ ቅንጅታቸው ከእነርሱ ጋር እስከሚገናኙ ድረስ በማባበል፣ ኔፋውያን እነርሱን አሳደጓቸውና ደገፏቸው።

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

፴፱ እናም እንደዚህ ብቸኛውን የመንግሥት አስተዳደር አገኙ፤ በድሆች እንዲሁም በየዋሆች እንዲሁም ትሁት የእግዚአብሔር ተከታዮች ላይ ጀርባቸውን መለሱባቸው፣ በእግራቸውም ሥር ረገጡአቸው፣ እናም መቼአቸውና፣ አስቃዩአቸው።

፵ እናም በአስቃቂ ሁኔታ እንዲሁም ለዘለዓለማዊው ጥፋት መደረሳቸውን ተመለከትን።

፵፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሰልሳ ስምንተኛ ዓመት የንግሥና ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

የሌላማን ልጅ የኔሬ ትንቢት—ለኃጢአታቸው ንሰሃ ካልገቡ የኔሬን ህዝብ እግዚአብሔር ፍፁም ለማጥፋት በቁጣው እንደሚጎበኝቸው አሰፈራራቸው። እግዚአብሔር የኔሬን ህዝብ በቸነፈር መታ፤ ንሰሃ ገቡ እናም ወደ እርሱ ተመለሱ። ላማናዊው ሳሙኤል ለኔፋውያን ተነበየ።

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN— God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

ሌላማን ፯

Helaman 7

፩ እነሆ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ ሰልፋ ዘጠነኛ የንግስና ዘመን የሌላማን ልጅ ኔሬ፣ ከምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር ተመለሰ።

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

፪ በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል ከነበሩት ሰዎች መካከል ነበር፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለእነርሱ እየሰበከ፣ እናም ብዙ ነገሮችን ለእነርሱ እየተነበየ ነበርና፤

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

፫ እናም ቃሉን ሁሉ አልተቀበሉትም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ከእነርሱ ጋር መቆየት አልቻለም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን በድጋሚ ወደ ትውልድ ስፍራው ተመለሰ።

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

፬ እናም ህዝቡ በእስቃቂው ኃጢአት መሆናቸውን እንዲሁም የጋድያንቶን ሌቦች የፍርድ ወንበሩን መያዛቸውን—በምድሪቱም ላይ ያለአግባብ ኃይልና ስልጣንን በማግኘታቸው፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዝ ወደጎን በመተዋቸው፣ እናም በፊቱም በትንሽም እንኳን መልካምን ባለማድረጋቸው፤ ለሰው ልጆችም በጻድቅ ባለመፍረዳቸው በመምልከት፤

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

፭ ዓድቃኖችንም ዓድቃን በመሆናቸው በመኮነን፤ ጥፋተኞችን፣ እንዲሁም ክፋዎችን በገንዘባቸው ያለቅጣት እንዲሄዱ በመፍቀዳቸው፤ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ በስልጣን የበላይ በመሆን በመቀጠል እንዲገዙ እንደፍቃዳቸው ለመስራት ጥቅምንና የዓለም ክብርን ያገኙ ዘንድ፣ እናም ከዚህ በተጨማሪ፣ በቀላሉ ዝሙትን እንዲፈፀሙና፣ ይሰርቁና፣ ይገድሉ፣ እናም እንደፈቃዳቸው ይፈፀሙ ዘንድ በመፍቀዳቸው—

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

፮ እንግዲህ ብዛት በሌላቸው ጊዜአት ውስጥ ይህ ታላቅ ኃጢአት በኔፋውያን ላይ መጣ፤ እናም ኔሬ ይህንን በተመለከተ ጊዜ ልቡ በደረቱ ውስጥ በሀዘን ተሞልቶ ነበር፤ እናም በነፍሱም ስቃይ ተናገረ፣

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

፳ ከቤቱ አባቱ ኔፊ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ለመጀመሪያ በመጣ ጊዜ መኖር ብቻል እመኝ ነበር፤ በቃል ኪዳኑም ምድር ከእርሱ ጋር ለመደሰት ይቻላል ነበር፤ የእርሱ ሰዎችን በቀላል ልመናን ያዳምጡ፤ የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት በመጠበቅ ፅኑ፤ እናም ክፋትን ለመሰራት የማይቸኩሉ ነበሩ፤ እናም የጌታን ቃላት ለማዳመጥ ፈጣኖች ነበሩ—

፳፩ አዎን፣ ቀናቶቹ በነዚያ ዘመናት ለመሆን ቢችሉ ኖሮ ነፍሴ በወንድሞቹ ፅድቅ ትደሰት ነበር።

፳፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነዚህ የእኔ ቀናት እንዲሆኑ ተደርገዋል፤ እናም ነፍሴ በዚህ በወንድሞቹ ክፋት የተነሳ በሀዘን ትሞላለች።

፳፫ እናም እነሆ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ይህም ወደ ዋናው ገበያ በሚያመራው አውራ ጎዳና፣ በዛራሔምላ ከተማ በነበረው በአትክልት ሰፍራው ግንብ ላይ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ኔፊ በአትክልት ሰፍራው በሚገኘው ግንብ አጎንብሶ ነበር፤ ግንቡም ደግሞ ወደ አውራ ጎዳናው በሚያመራው በመግቢያ በር አጠገብ ነበር።

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እንደንድ ሰዎች በሚያልፉበት ወቅት ኔፊ በግንቡ ላይ ሆኖ ነፍሱን ለእግዚአብሔር ሲያፈስ ተመለከቱ፤ እናም ርጡና፣ ለህዝቡ ምን እንደተመለከቱ ተናገሩ፤ ህዝቡም በዚህ ህዝብ ክፋት ታላቅ የሆነው ሀዘኑን ምክንያት ያውቁ ዘንድ በእንድ ላይ በመሆን መጡ።

፳፭ እናም አሁን ኔፊ በተነሳበት ጊዜ ብዙ ሰዎች በአንድነት ተሰብስበው ተመለከተ።

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አፋንም በመክፈት እንዲህ ብሎ ተናገረ፡ እነሆ፣ ለምንድን ነው ራሳችሁን የሰበሰባችሁት? ስለክፋታችሁ እነግራችሁ ዘንድ ነው?

፳፯ አዎን በታላቅ ክፋታችሁም ምክንያት ልቤ እጅግ በማዘኑ፣ ለአምላኬ ነፍሴን አፈስ ዘንድ በግንቤ ላይ ቆሜአለሁ!

፳፰ እናም በሀዘኔ እንዲሁም በልቅሶዬም ምክንያት በአንድነት ተሰብስባችኋልና፣ ተደንቃችኋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ለመደነቅ እጅግ ያስፈልጋችኋል፤ አዎን፣ መገረምን ይገባችኋል ምክንያቱም ዲያብሎስ በልባችሁ ታላቅ ስፍራን በመያዙ ራሳችሁን ሰጥታችሁታል።

፳፱ አዎን፣ ነፍሳችሁን ወደ ዘለዓለማዊው ስቃይ እንዲሁም መጨረሻ ወደ ሌላው ዋይታ እንዲወረውር ለሚፈልገው መንገድስ እንዴት አድርጋችሁ ትሰጡታላችሁ?

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

፲፯ ክብቱ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ! ለምን ትሞታላችሁ? ወደ ጌታ አምላካችሁ ተመለሱ፣ ተመለሱ። ለምንስ እርሱ ይተዋችኋል?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

፲፰ ይህም ምክንያቱ ልባችሁን ስላጠጠራችሁ ነው፣ አዎን የመልካሙን እረኛ ድምፅ አታዳምጡም፤ አዎን በእናንተም ላይ እንዲቆጣ አነሳሰታችሁታል።

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

፲፱ እናም እነሆ እናንተን ከመሰብሰብ፣ ንሰሃን የማትገቡ ከሆነ እነሆ ለውሾች እንዲሁም ለዱር አውሬዎች ስጋ እስከምትሆኑ ድረስ እናንተን ይበትናችኋል።

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

፳ እቤቱ፣ እርሱ ባዳናችሁ በዚያው ቀን አምላካችሁን እንዴት ልትረሱት ቻላችሁ?

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

፳፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ጥቅምን ለማግኘት ነው፣ በሰዎችም ለመሞገስ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ወርቅና ብርንጭቅ ታገኙ ዘንድ ነው። እናም ልባችሁን በሀብት እንዲሁም በዚህ በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች ላይ አድርጋችኋል፤ ለዚህም ገድላችኋልም፣ ዘርፋችኋልም፣ ሰርቃችኋልም፣ እንዲሁም በጎረቤቶቻችሁ ላይ በሀሰት ምስክር ሆናችኋል፤ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋት ፈፀማችኋል።

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

፳፪ እናም በዚህም ምክንያት ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ ዋይታ በእናንተ ላይ ይመጣል። ንሰሃ የማትገቡ ከሆነ፣ እነሆ፣ ይህች ታላቅ ከተማ፣ እናም በዙሪያው ያሉት፣ በእኛ የተያዙት እነዚያ ታላላቅ ከተሞች ሁሉ ይወሰዱባችኋል፣ በእነርሱም ሥፍራ አይኖሩችሁም፤ እነሆም ጠላቶቻችሁን ለመቋቋም ቀደም ሲል እንዳደረገው ጌታ ብርታትን አይሰጣችሁም።

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

፳፫ እነሆም ጌታ እንዲህ ይላል፣ ለኃጢአታቸው ንሰሃ ከገቡት እናም ቃሉን ካዳመጡት በቀር ለሌሎች ከእንዲ ኃጢአት ይበልጥ ለሌላው ኃይሉን አላሳይም። ስለዚህ አሁን፣ ወንድሞቼ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ፣ ከእናንተ ይልቅ ላማናውያን እንደሚሻልላቸው እንድታዩ አፈልጋለሁ።

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

፳፬ እነሆም፣ እናንተ በተቀበላችሁት ታላቅ እውቀት ላይ ኃጢአትን ባለመፈፀማቸው እነርሱ ከእናንተ የበለጠ ዓድቃን ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ ፈፀምም በምትጠፋበትም ጊዜ እንኳን ጌታ ለእነርሱ መሃሪ ይሆናል፤ አዎን ዘመናቸውን ያራዝማል፣ ዘራቸውንም ያበዛል።

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

፳፭ አዎን፣ በመካከላችሁ ባለው ታላቅ እርኩስት የተነሳ ለእናንተ ወዮውላችሁ፤ እናም አዎን በጋድያንቶን በተቋቋመው ሚስጥራዊ ቡድን ራሳችሁን እንድ አድርጋችኋል!

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

፳፭ አዎን፣ እጅግ ሀብታም በመሆናችሁ፣ ከመልካሙም ባሻገር ከፍ እንዲያደርጋችሁ ወደ ልባችሁ እንዲገባ ባደረጋችሁት ኩራት የተነሳ ዋይታ በእናንተ ላይ ይመጣል!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

፳፮ አዎን፣ በክፋታችሁ እንዲሁም በእርኩስታችሁ የተነሳ ዋይታ ይሁንባችሁ!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

፳፰ እናም ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ ትጠፋላችሁ፤ አዎን፣ ምድራችሁም ከእናንተ ትወሰዳለች፣ እናም ከምድረ ገፅ ትጠፋላችሁ።

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

፳፱ እነሆ አሁን፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በራሴ ይሆናሉ አልልም፣ ምክንያቱም እነዚህን ነገሮች በራሴ አይደለም የማውቃቸው፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዳውቅ ሰላደረገኝ እውነት መሆናቸውን አውቃለሁ፣ ስለዚህ እነርሱ እንደሚሆኑም አመሰክራለሁ።

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

ሔለማን ፰

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊ እነኚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፤ እነሆ ዳኞች የነበሩ፣ ደግሞም የጋድያንቶን የሚሰጥር ቡድን አባላት የሆኑ ሰዎች ነበሩና፣ ተቆጥተውት ነበር፤ እናም ለህዝቡም እንዲህ በማለት በእርሱ ላይ ጮኹ፣ ይህ ሰው ለፈፀመው ወንጀል ይፈረድበት ዘንድ ለምን ይዛችሁት አታመጡትም?

፪ ይህ ሰው ህዝቡን ሲሳደብ፣ እናም ህጋችንን ሲቃወም ለምን ዝም ብላችሁ ታዩታላችሁ፤ ለምን ስትሰሙታላችሁ?

፫ እነሆም ኔፊ ስለህጋቸው ብልሹነት ለእነርሱ ተናግሮ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ ኔፊ ሊፃፉ የማይችሉ ብዙ ነገሮችን ተናግሯል፤ እናም የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት የሚቃረን ምንም አልተናገረም ነበር።

፬ እናም ስለጨለማው ስራቸው በግልፅ ይናገር ስለነበር ዳኞቹም ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ ህዝቡ ስለፈሩ እናም ይጮሁብናል ብለው ስለፈሩ እርሱን ለመንካት አልደፈሩም ነበር።

፭ ስለዚህ በህዝቡ ላይ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኹ፣ ይህ ሰው እኛን እንዲሰድብን ለምን ፈቀዳችሁለት? እነሆም በዚህ ህዝብ ሁሉ ላይ እስከጥፋት ድረስ ይኮንናቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ እነኚህ ታላላቆቹ ከተሞቻችን ከእኛ እንደሚወሰዱ፣ ስለዚህ እኛም በእነርሱ ቦታ እንደማይኖሩን ተናግሯል።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ ይህ የማይቻል እንደሆነ እናውቃለን፣ እነሆም ኃያል ነን፣ እናም ከተሞቻችን ታላላቅ ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ ጠላቶቻችን በእኛ ላይ ስልጣን አይኖራቸውም።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ በኔፊ ላይ በቁጣ እንዲነሳሳ አደረጉ፤ እናም በመካከላቸው ፀብ ቀስቀሱ፤ ጥቂቶችም እንዲህ በማለት የሚጮኹ ነበሩ፣ ይህ ሰው መልካም ስለሆነ ተዉት፣ እናም እነዚህ እርሱ ያላቸው ነገሮች ንስሃ ካልገባን በእርግጥ ይሆናሉ፤

፰ አዎን እነሆ ለእኛ የመሰከረው ፍርድ በሙሉ በእኛ ላይ ይመጣል፤ ስለክፋታችን በትክክል መመስከሩን አውቀናልና። እናም እነሆ እነርሱም ብዙ ናቸው፤ እናም ክፋቶቻችንን እንደሚያውቃቸው ሁሉ የሚደርሱብንን ሁሉንም ነገሮች ያውቃል፤

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

፱ አዎን እናም እነሆ፤ ነቢይ ባይሆን ኖሮ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች መመስከር ባልቻለም ነበር።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊን ለማጥፋት የፈለጉት ሰዎች፤ በፍርሃታቸው እጆቻቸውን በእርሱ ላይ እንዳያደርጉ ተገደው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በጥቂቶች አይኖች ድገፋ በማግኘቱ የተቀሩት እንደሚፈሩ በተመለከተ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ለእነርሱ መናገርን ጀመረ።

፲፩ ስለዚህ እንዲህ በማለት ይበልጥ ለመናገር ተገፋፋ፤ እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ የቀይ ባህር ውሃን በመምታት፣ እናም ለሁለት በመክፈል አባቶቻችን የሆኑትን እስራኤላውያንን በደረቁ መሬት እንዳሻገራቸው፣ እናም ግብፃውያን ወታደሮች ውሃው ተዘግቶባቸው ይውጣቸው ዘንድ ስልጣንን እግዚአብሔር ለዚያ ለአንድ ሰው፣ እንዲሁም ለሙሴ እንደሰጠ አላነበባችሁምን?

፲፪ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እግዚአብሔር ለዚህ ሰው እንደዚህ ዓይነት ስልጣን ከሰጠ፣ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ በእናንተ ላይ ለፍርድ የሚመጣውን አውቅ ዘንድ ስልጣን አልሰጠውም በማለት እርሰ በእርሳችሁ ለምን ትጣላላችሁ?

፲፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ቃሉን ብቻ አይደለም የካዳችሁት፣ ነገር ግን በአባቶቻችን የተነገሩትን ቃላት በሙሉ ክዳችኋል፤ ደግሞም ይህ ታላቅ ስልጣን በተሰጠው በሙሴ የተነገሩትን ቃላት፣ አዎን ስለመሰሉ መምጣት የተናገሯቸውም ቃላት ክዳችኋል።

፲፬ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እንደሚመጣ አልመሰከረምን? እናም የናሰ እባብን በምድረበዳው ውስጥ እንዳነሳ የሚመጣውም እንዲሁ ይነሳል።

፲፭ እናም ብዙዎች አባቡን ተመልክተው በህይወት እንደኖሩ፣ በእምነት፣ በተዋረደ መንፈስ በመሆን የእግዚአብሔርን ልጅ ቢመለከቱ እስከዘለዓለማዊው ህይወት እንኳን ህያው እስከሚሆኑ ድረስም ይኖራሉ።

፲፮ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች የመሰከረው ሙሴ ብቻ አይደለም፣ ነገር ግን ከእርሱ ዘመን ጀምሮ እስከ አብርሃም ዘመን ቅዱሳን ነቢያትም ሁሉ ናቸው።

፲፯ አዎን፣ እናም እነሆ፣ አብርሃም ስለእርሱ መምጣት ተመልክቷልና፣ በሰኑት ተሞልቶ ነበር፤ እናም ተደስቶ ነበር።

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

፲፰ አዎን፣ እናም እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ያውቅ የነበረው አብርሃም ብቻ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን ከአብርሃም ዘመን በፊት በእግዚአብሔር ስርዓት የተጠሩ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ አዎን በልጁም ስርዓት መሠረት እንኳን፤ እናም ይህም ቤዛነትም እንኳን ለእነርሱ እንደሚመጣ፣ ከእርሱ መምጣት ከብዙ ሺህ ዓመታት በፊት ለህዝቡ ይታይ ዘንድ ነው።

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ ከአብርሃም ዘመን ጀምሮ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ብዙ የመሰከሩ ነቢያት መኖራቸውን እንድታውቁ እፈልጋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እነሆ፣ ነቢዩ ዜናስ በድፍረት መሰክሯል፤ ለዚህም ተገድሏል።

፳ እናም እነሆ፣ ደግሞ ዜናቅም፣ ደግሞ ኤፅያስም፣ ደግሞ ኢሳይያስም፣ ኤርምያስም (ስለ ኢየሩሳሌም መጥፋት የተነበየው ይኸው ነቢዩ ኤርምያስ) እናም አሁን እንደ ኤርምያስ ቃል ኢየሩሳሌም እንደጠፋች እናውቃለን። አቤቱ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እንደትንቢቱ መሰረት ለምን አይመጣም?

፳፩ እናም እንግዲህ ኢየሩሳሌም እንደጠፋች በዚህ ትከራከራላችሁን? የሴዴቅያስ ልጆች ከሙሉቅ በስተቀር ሁሉም አልተገደሉም ትላላችሁን? አዎን እናም የሴዴቅያስ ዘሮች ከእኛ ጋር መሆናቸውንና፣ ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር መባረራቸውን አልተመለከታችሁምን? ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም—

፳፪ አባታችን ሌሂ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች በመመሰከሩ ከኢየሩሳሌም እንዲወጣ ተደርጓል። ኔፊም ደግሞ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች መሰክሯል፣ እናም ደግሞ ከሞላ ጎደል አባቶቻችን ሁሉ እስከዚህ ጊዜ ድረስ መሰክረዋል፤ አዎን ስለክርስቶስ መምጣት መሰክረዋል፤ የወደፊቱንም ጠብቀዋል፤ እናም ሊመጣ ባለውም በእርሱም ቀን ተደስተዋል።

፳፫ እናም እነሆ፣ ክርስቶስ አምላክ ነው፣ እርሱም ከእነርሱ ጋር ነው፣ እራሱንም ገልጻለችዋል፣ በእርሱም ድነዋል፤ እናም በሚመጣውም የተነሳ ለእርሱ ክብርን ስጥተውታል።

፳፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በማወቃችሁ፣ እናም ካልዋሻችሁ በቀር ልትክዱአቸው አትችሉም፤ ስለዚህ በዚህም ኃጢአትን ስርታችኋል፤ ምክንያቱም ምንም እንኳን ብዙ ምሰክሮችን የተቀበላችሁ ቢሆንም አዎን እውነት ለመሆናቸው ምሰክር እንዲሆኑ በሰማይ እንዲሁም በምድር ያሉትን ነገሮች በሙሉ ከተቀበላችሁ በኋላ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በሙሉ ስላልተቀበላችሁ ነው።

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

፳፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እውነትን አልተቀበላችሁም እናም በቅዱሱ አምላካችሁም ላይ አምፃችኋል፤ እናም በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን ቢሆን በሰማይ ንፁህ ያልሆነ ነገር ሊመጣበት በማይችለው ሥፍራ ለራሳችሁ የማይበላሽውን ሀብት በማስቀመጥ ፈንታ በፍርድ ቀን የሚሆን ቁጣን በራሳችሁ ላይ ታከማቻላችሁ።

፳፮ አዎን፣ በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን በመግደላችሁ፤ እናም ዝሙት በመፈፀማችሁ እንዲሁም በክፋታችሁ ለዘለዓለማዊው ጥፋት በሰላችኋል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በቅርቡ በራሳችሁ ላይ ይመጣል።

፳፯ አዎን፣ እነሆ ይህም አሁን በደጃችሁ ላይ ነው፤ አዎን፣ ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ ሂዱና ፈልጉ፤ እናም እነሆ የእናንተ ዳኛ ተገድሎና፣ በደሙም ውስጥ ወድቋል፤ በፍርድ ወንበሩ ላይ ለመቀመጥ በፈለገው በወንድሙም ተገድሏል።

፳፰ እናም እነሆ ሁለቱም ደራሲ ጋድያንቶንና የሰዎችን ነፍስ ለማጥፋት የሚፈልገው የክፋው የሆነው የሚሰጥራዊው ቡድን አባላት ናቸው።

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianon and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

ሔለማን ፱

፩ እነሆ እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ ከእነርሱ ጋር የነበሩ አንዳንድ ሰዎች ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ ርጡ፤ እዎን እምስት ነበሩ፤ እናም በተጓዙ ጊዜ በመካከላቸው እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩ፦

፪ እነሆ፣ አሁን ይህ ሰው በእርግጥ ነቢይ መሆኑን፣ እናም እንደዚህ ያሉ ድንቅ ነገሮችን እንዲተነብይ እግዚአብሔር እንዳዘዘው በእርግጥ እናውቃለን። እነሆ፣ እርሱ አዘታል ብለን እናምንም፤ እዎን፣ ነቢይ ነው ብለንም እናምንም፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ስለዋናው ዳኛ ይሞታል በማለት የተናገረው ይህ ነገር እውነት ከሆነ ሌሎች የሚናገራቸው ቃላት እውነት ናቸው ብለን እናምናለን።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኃይል ርጡና፣ ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ መጡ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ዋናው ዳኛ በመሬት ላይ ወድቋልና ከነደሙም ተኝቷል።

፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ እጅግ ተገርመው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በመሬት ላይ ወደቁ፤ ምክንያቱም ኔፊ ስለዋናው ዳኛ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት አላመኑም ነበር።

፭ ነገር ግን አሁን፣ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ አመኑ፣ እናም ኔፊ የተናገረው ቅጣት ሁሉ በህዝቡ ላይ ይመጣል የሚል ፍርሃት በእነርሱ ላይ ሆነ፤ ስለዚህ ተንቀጠቀጡ፣ እናም በመሬት ላይ ወደቁ።

፮ እንግዲህ፣ ዳኛው በተገደለበት ጊዜ ወዲያው— ምስጢራዊ ልብስ ስለበሰው ወንድሙ ተወግቶ፣ እናም እርሱም ሸሸና፣ አገልጋዮቹ ርጡ፣ እናም ለህዝቡ በመካከላቸው ግድያ እንደነበረ ድምፃቸውን ከፍ በማድረግ ተናገሩ፤

፯ እናም እነሆ ህዝቡ በአንድነት በፍርድ ወንበሩ ሰፍራ ራሳቸውን ሰበሰቡ—እናም እነሆ በመገረም በመሬት ላይ የወደቁትን እምስት ሰዎች ተመለከቱ።

፰ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ በኔፊ የአትክልት ሰፍራ በአንድነት ስለተሰበሰቡት ሰዎች ህዝቡ ምንም እያውቅም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እርስ በርሳቸውም እንዲህ ተባባሉ፦ እነዚህ ሰዎች ዳኛውን የገደሉት ናቸው፣ እናም ከእኛ እንዳይሸሹ እግዚአብሔር መቷቸዋል።

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያዙአቸውና፣ አሰሩአቸው፣ ወደ ወህኒ ቤትም ጣሉአቸው። እናም ዳኛው ሰለመገደሉና፣ ገዳዩ ተወሰደና ወደ ወህኒ ቤት እንደተጣሉ ዜናው በሁሉም ሰፍራ ተሰራጨ።

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለው ቀን በተገደለው በዋናው ዳኛ ቀብር ላይ ለማዘን፣ እናም ለመጾም ህዝቡ በአንድ ላይ እራሱን ሰበሰቡ።

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

፲፩ እናም እነዚህ በኔፊ የእትክልት ሰፍራ የነበሩት፣ እናም ቃሉን የሰሙት ዳኞች ደግሞም በቀብር ላይ በአንድነት ተሰብሰበው ነበር።

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ መካከል እንዲህ በማለት ጠየቁ፣ ዋናው ዳኛ መሞቱን በተመለከተ ለመጠየቅ የተላኩት አምስቱ የት አሉ? እናም መለሱና እንዲህ አሉ፡ ልክናችኋል ስላላችኋቸው ስለእነዚህ አምስቱ ምንም እናውቅም፤ ነገር ግን ገዳዮች የሆኑ ወደ ወህኒ ቤት የጣልናቸው አምስት አሉ።

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዳኞቹ እነዚህ ወደእነርሱ እንዲመጡ ፈለጉ፤ እናም አመጡባቸውና፣ እነርሱም የተላኩት አምስቱ እንደነበሩ ተመለክቱ፤ እናም እነሆ ጉዳዩን በተመለከተ ለማወቅ ዳኞቹ ጠየቁአቸውና፣ ያደረጉትን በሙሉ እንዲህ በማለት ነገሩአቸው፡

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

፲፬ ሮጥን፣ እናም ወደ ፍርድ ወንበሩ መጣንና፣ ኔፊ እንደመሰከራቸው ሁሉንም ነገሮች ስንመለከት፣ መሬት አስከምንወድቅም ድረስ ተገረምን፤ እናም ከመገረማችን በተመለስን ጊዜ፣ እነሆ ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ጣሉን።

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

፲፭ እንግዲህ፣ የዚህን ሰውዬ ግድያ በተመለከተ ማን እንዳደረገው እናውቅም፤ እናም አስከዚህ ብቻ ነው የምናውቀው፤ ሮጥንና እንደ ፍላጎታችሁ መጣን፣ እናም እንደ ኔፊ ቃላት መሞቱን ተመለክትን።

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

፲፮ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ዳኞቹ ጉዳዩን ለህዝቡ ገለጹና፣ በኔፊም ላይ እንዲህ ሲሉ ጮኹ፡ እነሆ ይህ ኔፊ ዳኛውን ለመገደል ከአንድ ሰው ጋር ተሰማምቶ ይሆናል፣ ከዚያም እኛን ወደ እርሱ እምነት ለመለወጥ እራሱን ታላቅ ሰው ለማድረግ፣ በእግዚአብሔር የተመረጠና ነቢይ ያደርግ ዘንድ ይህን ለእኛ ይናገራል።

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ይህንን ሰው እናገኘዋለን፣ ስህተቱንም ይናዘዛል፣ እናም የዚህን ዳኛ እውነተኛ ገዳይ እንደናውቀው ያደርገናል።

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በቀብሩ ቀን አምስቱ ነፃ ወጡ። ይሁን እንጂ፣ በኔሬ ላይ በሚናገሩት ቃላት ዳኞቹን ገሰጹአቸው፣ እናም ዳኞቹም ዝም እንዲሉ እስከሚያደርጉአቸው ድረስ አንድ በአንድ ተከራክሯቸው።

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

፲፱ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ኔሬ እንዲወሰድና፣ እንዲታሰር፣ እናም በህዝቡ ፊት እንዲመጣ አደረጉትና፣ እርሱን በሞት እንዲቀጣ ለመክሰስ፣ እንዲቃረናቸው በተለያዩ መንገድ ይጠይቁት ጀመር—

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

፳ እንዲህም አሉት፡ አንተ ከሌሎች ተባባሪ ነህ፤ ግድያውንስ የፈጸመው ይህ ሰው ማን ነው? አሁን ነገረንና ጥፋትህን ተቀበል፤ እንዲህም አሉት፤ እነሆ ገንዘብ ይኸውና፤ እናም ደግሞ የሞትነግረንና፣ ከእርሱ ጋር የተሰማማህበትን የሞታሳውቀን ከሆነ ህይወትህን እናተርፍልሃለን።

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

፳፩ ነገር ግን ኔሬ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እናንተ ሞኞች ሆይ በልባችሁም ያልተገረዘችሁ፤ እውሮች እናም አንገተ ደንዳና የሆናችሁ፣ ጌታ አምላካችሁ በዚህ በኃጢያት መንገዳችሁ እንድትሄዱ ለምን ያህል ጊዜ እንደሚፈቅድላችሁ ታውቃላችሁን?

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

፳፪ አቤቱ፣ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ በዚህ ጊዜ በሚጠብቃችሁ ታላቅ ጥፋት የተነሳ በስቆቃ መጮህ እንዲሁም ማዘን አለባችሁ።

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

፳፫ እነሆ ዋና ዳኞችን የሆነውን ሲኤዘራምን ከሚገድለው ሰውዬ ጋር ተሰማምቻለሁ ብላችኋል። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፡ ይህ የሆነበት መንስኤ ስለዚህ ነገር ታውቁ ዘንድ ስለመሰከርኩ ነው፤ አዎን፣ በመካከላችሁ ያለውን ክፋትና እርኩስት የማወቁ ለምስክር እንዲሆንላችሁ ነው።

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

፳፬ እናም ይህንን በማድረግ ይህንን ነገር እንዲፈጽም ከአንድ ሰው ጋር እንደተሰማማሁ ተናገራችሁ፤ አዎን፣ ይህን ምልክት ስላሳየኋችሁ በእኔ ተቆጣችሁ፣ እናም ህይወቴን ለማጥፋት ፈለጋችሁ።

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

፳፭ እናም አሁን እነሆ ሌላ ምልክት አሳያችኋለሁ፣ እናም በዚህ ነገር እኔን ለማጥፋት እንደምትፈልጉም አያለሁ።

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

፳፮ እነሆ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፡ የሲኤዘራም ወንድም ወደሆነው ወደ ሴኦንቱም ቤት ሂዱ፤ እናም እንዲህ በሉት—

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

፳፯ ስለዚህ ህዝብ ብዙ ክፉ የሚተነብየው አሰመሳዩ ነቢይ፣ ኔሬ፣ ወንድምህን ሲኤዘራምን በመግደል ከአንተ ጋር ተሰማምቷልን?

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

፳፰ እናም እነሆ እርሱ ግን አይደለም ይላችኋል።

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

፳፱ እናም እናንተ እንዲህ ትሉታላችሁ፡ ወንድምህን ገድለኸዋልን?

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

፴ እናም እርሱ በፍርሃት ይቆማል፡ ምን ማለት እንዳለበትም አያውቅም። እናም እነሆ ይክድላችኋል፤ የተገረመ ለመምሰልም ይሞክራል፤ ይሁን እንጂ በዚህ ነገር ተጠያቂ አለሆኑንም ለእናንተ ይናገራል።

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

፴፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ ትመረምሩታላችሁ፤ እናም በልብሱም ጫፍ ላይ ደም ታገኛላችሁ።

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

፴፪ እናም ይህን በተመለከታችሁ ጊዜ እንዲህ ትላላችሁ፡ ይህ ደም ከየት መጣ? የወንድምህ ደም መሆኑንስ እናውቅምን?

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

፴፫ እናም ከዚያን በኋላ ይንቀጠቀጣል፡ እናም ሞት በላይ ላይ የመጣ ይመስል ይገረጣል።

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ትሉታላችሁ፡ በፍርሃትህና ፊትህ በመገርጣቱ፤ እነሆ፤ ጥፋተኛ መሆንህን እናውቃለን።

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

፴፭ እናም ታላቅ ፍርሃት በላይ ላይ ይመጣል፤ እናም ለእናንተ ይናዘዛላችኋል፤ ይህንን ግድያ መፈፀሙንም ከእንግዲህ አይክድም።

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

፴፮ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ በእግዚአብሔር ከተሰጠኝ ኃይል በሰተቀር ሰለጉዳዩ እኔ ኔፊ ምንም አላውቅም በማለት ይነግራችኋል። እና ከዚያም እኔ ታማኝ ሰው መሆኔንና፤ ከእግዚአብሔር ወደ እናንተ የተላኩ መሆኔን ታውቃላችሁ።

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሄዱና፤ ኔፊ እንደተናገራቸው አደረጉ። እናም እነሆ እርሱ የተናገራቸው ቃላት እውነት ነበሩ፤ በቃላቱ መሰረትም ካደ፤ በቃላት መሰረትም ተናዘዘ።

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

፴፰ እናም እርሱም ራሱ በእውነት ገዳይ መሆኑ ተረጋገጠ፤ ስለዚህ አምስቱ እናም ደግሞም ኔፊ ተለቀቁ።

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

፴፱ እናም የኔፊን ቃላት ያመኑ ጥቂት ኔፋውያን ነበሩ፤ እናም ጥቂቶች አምስቱ በወህኒ ቤት በነበሩበት ወቅት በመለወጣቸው በእነርሱ ምስክርነት ያመኑ ነበሩ።

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

፵ እናም እንግዲህ ኔፊ ነቢይ ነበር ብለው የተናገሩ በህዝቡ መካከል ጥቂት ነበሩ።

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

እናም ሌሎችም እንዲህ ሲሉ የተናገሩ ነበሩ፡ እነሆ እርሱ አምላክ ነው፤ አምላክ ባይሆን ኖሮ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ሊያውቃቸው አይቻለውም ነበር። እነሆም፣ የልባችንን ሀሳብ ነግሮናልና ደግሞ ነገሮችንም ነግሮናል፤ እናም የዋናው ዳኛችን እውነተኛ የሆነውንም ገዳይ እንኳን እንድናውቀው አድርጓል።

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

ሔለማን ፲

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ መካከል መከፋፈል ተፈጠረ፤ ስለዚህ ወዲህና ወዲያ ተከፋፈሉ እናም ነፊ በመካከላቸው ቆሞ ሳለ ብቻውን ጥለውት በተለያየ አቅጣጫ ሄዱ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነፊ ጌታ ያሳየውን ነገሮች በልቡ እያሰላሰለ ወደ ራሱ ቤት መንገዱን አቀና።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚያሰላሰልበት ወቅት—በነፊ ህዝብ የጨለማ ሰራ፣ እንዲሁም ግድያና፣ ዝርፊያቸው፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋታቸው እጅግ በማዘኑ— እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በልቡ በሚያሰላሰልበት ወቅት፣ እነሆ፣ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል ወደ እርሱ መጣ፡

፬ ነፊ ባደረገሃቸው ነገሮች አንተ የተባረክህ ነህ፤ ምክንያቱም ለዚህ ህዝብ የሰጠሁህን ቃል በፅኑነት እንዴት እንዳወጅክ አይቻለሁና። እናም አልፈራሃቸውም፣ ለህይወትህም አልሰሰትህም፤ ነገር ግን የእኔን ፈቃድና ትዕዛዛቴን ለመጠበቅ ይህን አድርገሃልና።

፭ እናም እሁን በፅኑነት ይህንን በማድረግህ፣ እነሆ ለዘለዓለም እባርክሃለሁ፤ እናም በቃልህና በሰራህ፣ በእምነትና በተግባርህም ብርቱ አደርግሃለሁ፤ እዎን ከፈቃዱ የሚቃረን ነገር ስለማትጠይቀኝ ሁሉም ነገሮች እንደቃልህ ይሆኑልሃል።

፮ እነሆ፣ አንተ ነፊ ነህ፣ እኔም እግዚአብሔር ነኝ። እነሆ፣ በመላዕክቶቼ ፊት፣ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ስልጣን እንደሚኖርህና፣ እንደ ህዝቡ ክፋት ምድርን በረሃብና፣ በቸንፈር፣ እናም በጥፋት፣ ለመምታት እንደምትችል እገልፅልሃለሁ።

፯ እነሆ፣ በምድር የምታስረው ሁሉ በሰማይ የታሰረ ይሆናል፤ እናም በምድርም የምትፈታው ሁሉ በሰማይ የተፈታ ይሆናል፤ እናም እንደዚህ በዚህ ህዝብ መካከልም ስልጣን ይኖርሃል።

፰ እናም ይህን ቤተመቅደስ ሁለት ቦታ ትከፈል የምትለው ከሆነ እንዲሁ ይሆናል።

፱ እናም ይህንን ተራራ ውደቅና ሜዳ ሁን ብትለው እንዲሁ ይሆናል።

፲ እናም እነሆ፣ እግዚአብሔር ይህን ህዝብ ይመታዋል የምትል ከሆነ እንዲሁ ይሆናል።

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

፲፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እንድትሄድና ሁሉን የሚገዛው ጌታ የእግዚአብሔር እንዲህ አለ ብለህ ለዚህ ህዝብ እንድታውጅ አዘዘህ። ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ እስክትጠፉ ድረስ ትመታላችሁ።

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

፲፪ እናም እነሆ አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እነዚህን ቃላት ለኔሬ በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ኔሬ ቆመ፣ እናም ወደ ቤቱም አልሄደም፣ ነገር ግን በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ተበታትነው ወደ ነበሩት ሰዎች ተመለሰ፤ እናም ንሰሃ ካልገቡ መጥፋታቸውን በተመለከተ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ማወጅ ጀመረ።

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

፲፫ እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ስለዋናው ዳኛ ሞት ኔሬ ታላቁን አስደናቂ ነገር የተናገረ ቢሆንም ልባቸውን አጠጥረው ነበር፣ እናም የጌታን ቃላት አላዳመጡም።

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

፲፬ ስለዚህ ኔሬ የጌታን ቃል እንዲህ በማለት አወጀላቸው፡፡ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ ይላል ጌታ፡፡ እስክትጠፉም ድረስ ትመታላችሁ።

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔሬ ቃሉን በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ልባቸውን በማጠጠር ቀጠሉ፣ እናም ቃሉንም አላዳመጡትም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ስደቡትና፣ ወደ ወህኒ ቤት ይጥሉትም ዘንድ በእጃቸው ሊይዙት ፈለጉ።

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

፲፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ከእርሱ ጋር ነበር፤ እናም እርሱን ይዘው ወህኒ ቤት ሊጥሉት አልቻሉም ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም በመንፈስ ተወሰደ፣ እናም ከመካከላቸውም ተወስዷል።

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሁሉም እስከሚሰብክ ድረስ፣ ወይም በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከል እስከሚልከው ድረስ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል በማወጅ፣ እንደዚህ ከህዝብ ወደህዝብ በመንፈስ ይሄድ ነበር።

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቃሉን አላዳመጡትም ነበር፤ እናም ፀብ ተጀመረ፣ ስለዚህ በመካከላቸው መከፋፈል ሆነና እርስ በእርሳቸው በጎራዴ መገዳደል ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

፲፱ እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ሰባ አንደኛ የንግስ ዘመን በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

ሔለማን ፲፩

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በመሣፍንቱ ሰባ ሁለተኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን ፀቡ ተሰፋፋ፤ ስለሆነም በኔፊ ሰዎች ሁሉ መካከል በምድሪቱ ላይ በሙሉ ጦርነቶች ነበሩ።

፪ እናም ይህንን የጥፋትና የተንኮል ስራ ያከናውኑ የነበሩት እነዚህ ሚስጥራዊ የሆኑት የሌቦች ቡድን ነበሩ። እናም ጦርነቱ በዚህ ዓመት ሁሉ ቆይቷል፤ እናም እስከ ሰባ ስተተኛው ዓመትም ቆይቷል።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት ኔፊ እንዲህ በማለት ወደጌታ ጮኸ።

፬ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ እነዚህ ሰዎች በጎራዴ እንዲጠፉ አትፍቀድ፤ ነገር ግን ጌታዬ ሆይ፣ ጌታ አምላካቸውን እንዲያስታውሱ ለማንሳሳት በምድሪቱ ረሃብ እንዲኖር አድርግ፤ እናም ምናልባት ንስሃ ይገባሉና፣ ወደ አንተ ይመለሳሉ።

፭ እናም በኔፊም ቃል መሰረት ተከናወነ። እናም በኔፊ ሰዎች መካከልም በሙሉ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ረሃብ ሆነ። እናም በሰባ አራተኛው ዓመትም ረሃቡ ቀጠለና፣ የጥፋት ስራው በጎራዴ መሆኑ ቆመ፣ ነገር ግን በረሃብ ኃይለኛ ሆነ።

፮ እናም ይህ የጥፋትም ስራ ደግሞ በሰባ አምስተኛው ዓመት ቀጠለ። ምድሪቱም በመመታትዋ ደረቅ ነበረች፣ በእህል ወቅትም እህልን አልሰጠችም፤ እናም ምድሪቱ በሙሉ ተመታች፤ በላማናውያን እንዲሁም በኔፋውያን መካከልም፣ በምድሪቱ በይበልጥ ክፉ በሆኑት አካባቢ በሺህ የሚቆጠሩት በመመታታቸው ሞቱ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በረሃብ ሊጠፉ መቃረባቸውን ሰዎቹ ተመለከቱና ጌታ አምላካቸውን ማስታወስ ጀመሩ፤ እናም የኔፊንም ቃል ማስታወስ ጀመሩ።

፰ እናም ሰዎቹ ከዋና ዳኞቻቸው እንዲሁም ከመሪዎቻቸው ጋር ኔፊን እንዲህ እንዲሉ መማፀን ጀመሩ፣ እነሆ፣ አንተ የእግዚአብሔር ሰው መሆንህን እናውቃለን፣ እናም ስለዚህ ስለጥፋታችን የተናገርካቸው ቃላት ሁሉ እንዳይፈፀሙ ዘንድ ይህንን ረሃብ ከእኛ እንዲመልሰው ወደ ጌታ አምላካችን ጩህ።

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዳኞቹም በተፈለገው ቃላት መሰረት ኔሬን ተናገሩት። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰዎቹ ንስሃ መግባታቸውንና፣ ትቢያንም ለብስው እራሳቸውን ዝቅ ማድረጋቸውን በተመለከተ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ወደ ጌታ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኹ፦

፲ እቤቱ ጌታ፣ እነሆ እነዚህ ሰዎች ንስሃ ገብተዋል፤ እናም ከመካከላቸው የጋድያንቶን ቡድን የሆኑትን ጨርሰው እስከሚጠፉ አባረዋቸዋል፤ እናም ሚስጥራዊ አሴራቸውንም በምድር ቀብረዋል።

፲፩ እንግዲህ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ በዚህ በትሁትነታቸው ምክንያት ቁጣህን ትመልሳለህን፣ እናም አንተ ባጠፋሃቸው ኃጢአተኛ ሰዎች ቁጣህ በዚህ ያብቃ።

፲፪ ጌታ ሆይ ቁጣህን አዎን፣ ኃያሉ ቁጣህን ትመልሳለህን፤ እናም ይህ ረሃብ በዚህ ምድር እንዲጠፋም አድርግ።

፲፫ ጌታ ሆይ፣ እኔንም አድምጥ፤ እናም እንደቃሌም ይሆን ዘንድ አድርግ፤ እናም ምድርም ፍሬን እንድታፈራ በእህል ወቅት እህል እንድታፈራ በምድር ገፅ ዝናብን አዘንብ።

፲፬ ጌታ ሆይ፣ የጎራዳው ቁጣም ይቆም ዘንድ ረሃብ ይሁን ባልኩ ጊዜም ቃሌን አደመጥህ፤ እና በዚህ ጊዜም እንኳን ቃላቶቼን እንደምታደምጥ አውቃለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እነዚህ ሰዎች ንስሃ ከገቡ አድናቸዋለሁ በማለት ተናግረሃልና።

፲፭ አዎን፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ በረሃቡና፣ በቸነፈሩ፣ እናም በእነርሱ ላይ በመጣው ጥፋትም የተነሳ ንስሃ እንደገቡ ተመልክተሃል።

፲፮ እናም እንግዲህ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ቁጣህን ትመልሳለህ፣ እናም እንደሚያገለግሉህ እንደገና ትሞክራቸዋለህን? እንደዚህ ካደረግህ፣ ጌታ ሆይ በተናገርከው ቃል መሰረት ልትባርካቸው ትችላለህ።

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሰባ ሰድስተኛው ዓመት ጌታ ቁጣውን ከህዝቡ መለሰና፣ በምድር ላይም ዝናብ እንዲዘንብ አደረገ፤ ስለዚህ ይህም በምድር በፍሬዎ ወቅት ፍሬ ሰጣት። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእህል ወቅትም እህል እንዲሆን አደረገ።

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

፲፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ህዝቡ ተደስተና፣ እግዚአብሔርን አከበረ፤ የምድሪቱም ገፅ በሙሉ በደስታ ተሞላ፤ እናም ኔፊን ለማጥፋት ሙከራ አላደረጉም፤ ነገር ግን እንደታላቅ ነቢይና፣ የእግዚአብሔር ሰው፣ ታላቅ ኃይልና ስልጣን ከእግዚአብሔር የተሰጠው በማድረግ አከበሩት።

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ሌሂ የፅድቅ ነገሮችን በተመለከተ ወንድሙም ከእርሱ ያነሰ አልነበረም።

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ሰዎች በምድሪቱ ላይ እንደገና መበልፀግ ጀመሩ፣ እናም ከሰሜን በኩልና፣ ከደቡብ ከባህሩ በሰተምዕራብ እስከባህሩ በሰተምሰራቅ ምድሪቱን በሙሉ እስከሚሸፍኑ ድረስ መብዛት እንዲሁም መሰራጨት ጀመሩ፣ የፈራረሱ ሰፍራዎችንም መገንባት ጀመሩ።

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰባ ስድስተኛው ዓመት በሰላም ተፈፀመ። እናም ሰባ ስባተኛው ዓመትም በሰላም ተጀመረ፤ ቤተክርስቲያኗም በምድር ገፅ ሁሉ ላይ ተሰራጨች፤ የኔፋውያን እንዲሁም የላማናውያን ሰዎች በአብዛኛው የቤተክርስቲያኗ አባላት ነበሩ፣ እናም በምድራቸውም እጅግ ታላቅ ሰላም ነበራቸው፤ እንደዚህም ሰባ ስባተኛው ዓመት ተፈፀመ።

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

፳፪ እናም ደግሞ በሰባ ስምንተኛው ዓመት በነቢያት በሚወጡ የእምነት ነጥቦችን በተመለከተ ከነበረው ጥቂት ፀብ በቀር ሰላም ነበር።

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

፳፫ እናም በሰባ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት ኃያል የሆነ ጥል ተጀመረ። ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊና፣ ሌሂ፣ እናም ብዙዎቹ ወንድሞቻቸው ስለእምነቱ እውነት የሆነውን ነጥብ የሚያውቁት፣ በየቀኑ ብዙ ራዕዮችን ይመለከቱ የነበሩ፤ ስለሆነም ለህዝቡ ሰበኩ፣ በዚህ ዓመት ሰዎቹ ጥሉን እንዲያቆሙ አደረጉ።

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ በመሣፍንቱ የሰማንያ ዓመት የንግስ ዘመን ከጥቂት ዓመታት በፊት ወደላማናውያን የሄዱ፣ ያልታወቀ ቁጥር የነበራቸው ተቃዋሚ የኔፊ ሰዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም የላማናውያንን ስም ለራሳቸው ወሰደው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ ቁጥራቸው ያልታወቀው እውነተኛ የላማናውያን ዝርያዎች፣ በእነርሱ በቁጣ እንዲነሳሱ ተደረጉ፣ ስለዚህ ከወንድሞቻቸው ጋር ጦርነት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

፳፭ እናም ግድያን እንዲሁም ዝርፊያን ፈፀሙ፤ እናም ወደ ተራራውና፣ ምድረበዳው እንዲሁም ሚስጥራዊ ሰፍራዎች እያፈገፈጉ፣ ሊገኙ እንዳይችሉም እራሳቸውን ደበቁ፤ ተቃዋሚዎች ወደ እነርሱ ስለሚመጡ ተጨማሪዎችንም በየቀኑ ተቀበሉ።

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

፳፮ እናም ከጊዜ በኋላ፣ አዎን፣ በትንሽ ዓመታትም፣ እጅግ ታላቅ የሌቦች ቡድን ሆኑ፤ እናም የጋድያንቶንን ሚስጥራዊ አሴር በሙሉ ፈልገው አገኙ፤ እንደዚህም የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች ሆኑ።

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

፳፯ አሁን እነሆ፣ እነዚህ ሌቦች ታላቅ ጥፋትን፣ አዎን፣ በኔፊ ሰዎች መካከልም፣ እናም ደግሞ በላማናውያን ሰዎች መካከል እንኳን ታላቅ ጥፋትን ሰሩ።

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለዚህ የጥፋት ሥራ ማቆሚያ ማድረግ አስፈላጊ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ ወደ ምድረበዳው፣ እናም በተራራው እነዚህን የሌቦች ቡድን እንዲያገኙ እንዲሁም እንዲያጠፉ ጠንካራ ወታደሮችን ላኩ።

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

፳፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት ወደራሳቸው ምድርም በመነዳት ተመልሰው ነበር። እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ስማንያኛው ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በስማንያ እንደኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ወታደሮቹ በእነዚህ የዘራፊዎች ቡድን ላይ ሄዱ፤ ብዙዎችንም አጠፉ፤ እናም ደግሞ እነርሱም እጅግ ብዙ በሆነ ጥፋትም ተጎብኝተው ነበር።

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

፴፩ እናም ተራራውን እንዲሁም ምድረበዳውን የወረሩት የዘራፊዎች ቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ስለነበር ወታደሮቹ ከምድረበዳው እንዲሁም ከተራራው ወጥተው ወደራሳቸው ምድር እንዲመለሱ ተገድደው ነበር።

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ ዓመትም በዚህ ተፈፀመ። እናም ዘራፊዎቹ አሁንም በጣም ጨመሩና፣ እየበረቱ ሄዱ፣ ስለዚህ የኔፊንና፣ ደግሞ የላማናውያንን ወታደሮች በሙሉ ተቋቋሟቸው፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ሰዎች ላይ ሁሉ ታላቅ ፍርሃት እንዲመጣ አደረጉ።

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inasmuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

፴፫ አዎን፣ የምድሪቱን ብዙ ክፍሎች ጎበኝተዋል፣ እናም በእነርሱ ላይም ታላቅ ጥፋትን አድርገዋልና፤ አዎን ብዙዎችንም ገድለው ነበር፣ እናም ሌሎችንም፣ አዎን፣ በተለይም ሴቶቻቸውን እንዲሁም ህፃናት ልጆቻቸውን በምርኮ ወደ ምድረበዳው ወስደዋቸዋል።

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

፴፬ እንግዲህ በክፋታቸው የተነሳ በህዝቡ ላይ የመጣው ይህ ታላቅ ጥፋት እርሱም ጌታ አምላካቸውን እንዲያስታውሱ አደረጋቸው።

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

፴፭ እናም የመሠፍንቱ ሰማንያ እንደኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

፴፮ እናም በሰማንያ ሁለተኛው ዓመት በድጋሚ ጌታ አምላካቸውን መርሳት ጀመሩ። እናም በሰማንያ ሶስተኛው ዓመት በክፋታቸው መጠናከር ጀመሩ። እናም በሰማንያ አራተኛው ዓመት መንገዳቸውን አላሻሻሉም ነበር።

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሰማንያ አምስተኛው ዓመት በኩራታቸውና፣ በክፋታቸው እየበረቱ ሄዱ፤ እናም እንደገና ለመጥፋትም እንደዚህ ደርሰው ነበር።

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

፴፰ እናም ሰማንያ አምስተኛው ዓመትም በዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

ሔለማን 1፪

፩ እናም የሰው ልጆች እንዴት ሀሰተኞች፣ እናም ደግሞ ልባቸው ያልተረጋጋ መሆኑን ለመመልከት እንችላለን፤ እዎን፣ ጌታም እምነታቸውን በእርሱ ላይ ለረገጡ መጨረሻ በሌለው ቸርነቱ ሲባርካቸውና፣ ሲያበለፀጋቸው ለመመልከት እንችላለን።

፪ እዎን፣ እናም በመስካቸውም ላይ ከብቶቻቸውንና፣ መንጋዎቻቸውን፣ በወርቃቸውም፣ በብራቸውም፣ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት የከበሩ ነገሮቻቸውን በሚያበዛላቸው ህዝቡን እናያለን፤ ህይወታቸውን በማትረፍና፣ ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ እነርሱን በማሰለቀቅም፣ ጠላቶቻቸው በእነርሱ ላይ ጦርነት እንዳያውጁ ልባቸውን በሚያራራቡት፤ እዎን፣ እናም በአጠቃላይ ለህዝቡ ደህንነትና ደስታ ሁሉንም ነገሮች በሚያደርግበት ጊዜ፤ እዎን ይህም ልባቸውን የሚያጠጥሩበትና፣ ጌታ እምላካቸውን የሚረሱበት፣ ቅዱስ የሆነውንም በአግራቸው የሚረግጡበት ጊዜ ነው—እዎን፣ ይህም የሆነበት ምክንያት ሰዎቹ ስለተመቻቹ፣ እናም እጅግ በታላቅ ሁኔታ ስለበለፀጉ ነው።

፫ እናም ጌታ ህዝቡን በብዙ ሰቃይ ካልገሰጸቸው፤ እዎን፣ በሞትና በፍርሃትና፣ በረሃብ እናም በሁሉም ዓይነት ቸንፈር ካልገበኛቸው በስተቀር እርሱን እንደማያስታውሱት እናያለን።

፬ አቤቱ የሰው ልጆች እንዴት ሞኞችና፣ ከንቱዎችና፣ ክፋዎች፣ እንዲሁም ዲያብሎስን ተከታዮች፣ እናም እንዴት ኃጢአትን ለመሰራት ፈጣንና፣ መልካምን ለማድረግ እንዴት የዘገዩ ናቸው፣ እዎን የዚያን ክፋ የሆነውን ቃላት ለመስማት፣ እናም በዓለም ከንቱ ነገሮች ላይ ልባቸውን ለማድረግ እንዴት ፈጣን ናቸው!

፭ እዎን፣ በኩራት ለመወጠር ምንኛ ፈጣን ናቸው፤ እዎን፣ ለጉራና፣ ክፋ የሆኑትን ነገሮች ሁሉ ለማድረግ ምንኛ ይፈጥሩሉ፤ እናም ጌታ እምላካቸውን ለማስታወስና፣ ለምክሮቹ ጆሮአቸውን ለመስጠት እንዴት ይዘገያሉ፣ እዎን በጥበብ ጎዳና ስለመራመድ እንዴት ያዘግማሉ!

፮ እነሆ፣ እነርሱን የፈጠረው ጌታ እምላካቸው፣ በእነርሱ ላይ እንዲገዛና እንዲነግስ አይፈልጉም፤ ታላቅ ቸርነትና ምህረት በእነርሱ ላይ ቢኖረውም ምክሩን ችላ ይሉታል፤ እናም መሪያቸው እንዲሆን አልፈለጉም።

፯ አቤቱ የሰው ልጆች ከንቱነት እንዴት ታላቅ ነው፣ እዎን ከመሬት ትቢያ እንኳን ያነሱ ናቸው።

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

፳፯ እነሆም፣ በታላቁ እና በዘለዓለማዊው አምላካችን ትዕዛዝ የምድር ትቢያ እስከሚከፈል ወዲህና ወዲያ ይንቀሳቀሳል።
 ፳፱ አዎን፣ እነሆ በድምጹ ኮረብቶችና፣ እና ተራሮች ይናወጣሉ፣ እናም ይንቀጠቀጣሉ።
 ፲ እናም በድምፁም ኃይል ይሰባበራሉና፣ የተሰተካከሉ ይሆናሉ፤ አዎን፣ እንደ ሸለቆም ይሆናሉ።
 ፲፩ አዎን፣ በድምፁም ኃይል መላዋ ምድር ትንቀጠቀጣለች፤
 ፲፪ አዎን፣ በድምፁም ኃይል፣ የመሠረት ድንጋዮችም ከመሃላቸው ይናወጣሉ።
 ፲፫ አዎን፣ እናም ምድርንም ተንቀሳቀሽ ቢላት— ትንቀሳቀሳለች።
 ፲፬ አዎን፣ ምድሪቱን—ቀኑ ለብዙ ሰዓታት ይረዝም ዘንድ ወደኋላ ተመለሽ ቢላት—ይህም ይሆናል፤
 ፲፭ እናም እንደ ቃሉ መሰረት ምድር ወደኋላ ትንቀሳቀሳለች፤ ለሰውም ፀሐይ የቆመች ሆና ትታያለች፤ አዎን፣ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህም እንዲህ ነው፤ በእርግጥም መሬት ትንቀሳቀሳለች እንጂ ፀሐይ አይደለችምና።
 ፲፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ደግሞ ታላቁ ጥልቅ የሆነውን ውሀም— ድረቅ ቢለው—ይደርቃል።
 ፲፯ እነሆ፣ ይህንን ተራራ—ተነሰ እናም በከተማዋ ላይ እንድትቀበር ውደቅ ቢለው—እነሆ ይሆናል።
 ፲፰ እናም እነሆ፣ አንድ ሰው በምድር ውስጥ ሀብቱን ቢቀብርና ጌታ በደበቀው ክፋት የተነሳ የተረገመ ይሁን ቢለው፣ እነሆ፣ የተረገመ ይሆናል።
 ፲፱ እናም ጌታ—ማንም ሰው ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከዘላለሙ እንዲያገኝህ የተረገምህ ሁን ቢለው— እነሆ፣ ማንም ሰው ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ፣ እናም እስከዘላለሙ አያገኘውም።
 ፳ እናም እነሆ፣ ጌታ አንድን ሰው—በክፋትህ የተነሳ ለዘለዓለም የተረገምህ ትሆናለህ ቢለው—ይህም ይሆናል።
 ፳፩ እናም ጌታ—በክፋታችሁ የተነሳ ከፊቱ ትለያላችሁ ቢል—እንዲያ እንዲሆን ያደርጋል።
 ፳፪ እናም ይህን ለሚለው ለእርሱ ወዮለት፤ ምክንያቱም ክፋትን ለሚያደርግ ይሆናል፤ እናም ሊድን አይቻለውም፤ ስለዚህ፣ በዚህም የተነሳ፣ ሰዎች እንዲድኑ ዘንድ፣ ንስሃም ታውጇል።

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.
 Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.
 And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.
 Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;
 Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.
 Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.
 Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;
 And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.
 And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.
 Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.
 And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.
 And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.
 And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.
 And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.
 And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

፳፫ ስለዚህ፣ ንሰሃ የገቡ፣ እናም የጌታ የእምላካቸውን ድምፅ የሰሙ የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ የሚድኑትም እነዚህ ናቸውና።

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

፳፬ እናም እግዚአብሔር በታላቁ ሙሉ ሰዎች ወደ ንሰሃ እና መልካም ሥራዎች ይመጡ ዘንድ፣ እንደሥራቸውም ከፀጋም ወደ ፀጋ ይመልሳቸው ዘንድ ያድርግላቸው።

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

፳፭ እናም ሰዎች ሁሉ እንዲድኑ እፈልጋለሁ። ነገር ግን በታላቁ እና በመጨረሻው ቀን የሚጣሉ አዎን፣ ከጌታ ፊት የሚጣሉ፣ ጥቂቶች እንዳሉ አንብብናል፤

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

፳፮ አዎን፣ እነርሱም መልካም የሚያደርጉ ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወት ይኖራቸዋል፤ እናም ክፉ የሚያደርጉ ለዘለዓለም ይፈረድባችኋል የሚለውን ቃል ለማሟላት ወደ ዘለዓለማዊው ሰቃይ ይላካሉ። እናም ይህ ነው። አሜን።

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

ሔለማን ፲፫

Helaman 13

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በሰማንያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት ላማናውያን በሙሴ ህግ መሰረት የእግዚአብሔርን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ጠንቃቆች በሆኑበት ጊዜ፣ ኔፋውያን በክፋታቸው፣ አዎን በታላቅ ክፋት ነበሩ።

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት፣ ሳሙኤል የሚባል አንድ ላማናዊ ሰው ነበር፣ እርሱም ወደ ዛራሔምላ ምድር መጣና ለህዝቡ መስበክ ጀመረ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለብዙ ቀናትም ህዝቡን ስለነሰሃ ሰበከ፣ እናም እነርሱ ግን አስወገዱትና፣ እርሱ ወደራሱ ምድር ለመመለስ ተቃርቦ ነበር።

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እንደገና እንዲመለስ ዘንድ፣ እናም ወደ ልቡ የመጡትን ነገሮች ለህዝቡ መተንበይ እንዳለበት የጌታ ድምፅ ወደእርሱ መጣ።

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ወደ ከተማው እንዲገባ አልፈቀዱለትም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሄደ እናም በግንብ ላይ ቆመና፣ እጇን ዘረጋ፣ እናም በኃይል ጮኸና፣ ጌታ በልቡ ያመጣለትን ማናቸውንም ነገሮች ተነበየ።

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

፭ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ እነሆ፤ እኔ ላማናዊው ሳሙኤል፣ ጌታ በልቤ ያስቀመጣቸውን ቃላት እናገራለሁ፤ እናም እነሆ ለዚህም ህዝብ የፍትህ ጎራዴ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ትሆናለች እንድልም በልቤ አስቀመጠ፤ እናም የፍትህ ጎራዴ በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ካልሆነች በስተቀር አራት መቶ ዓመታት አያልፋም።

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

፮ አዎን፣ ይህን ህዝብ ኃያል የሆነው ጥፋት ይጠብቀዋል፤ በእርግጥም በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ይመጣል፣ እናም ንስሃና፣ በእርግጥ ወደዚህ ዓለም በሚመጣውና፣ በብዙ ነገሮች ለሚሰቃየው፣ እንዲሁም ለህዝቡም በሚሞተው በጌታ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እምነት ካልሆነ በቀር ይህን ህዝብ ምንም ሊያድን አይችልም።

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

፯ እናም እነሆ፣ የጌታ መልአክ ለእኔ ይህን ነገረኝና፣ ለነፍሴም መልካም የምሰራች አመጣልኝ። እናም እነሆ መልካሙ የምሰራች ይኖራችሁ ዘንድ ለእናንተ እንድገልፅ ተልኬ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ እኔን አልተቀበላችሁኝም።

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታም እንዲህ ይላል፡ የኔሬ ሰዎች ልብ በመጠጠሩ፣ ንስሃ ካልገቡ ቃሉን ከእነርሱ እወስዳለሁ፣ መንፈሴንም ከእነርሱ አርቃለሁ፣ እናም ከዚህ ወዲያ አልታገሰም፣ የወንድሞቻቸውን ልብ በእነርሱ ላይ አዘራለሁም።

፳፱ እናም እንዲመቱ ከማድረጌም በፊት አራት መቶኛው ዓመት አያልፍም፤ አዎን፣ በጦርነትና በረሃብ፣ እናም በቸነፈር እንበኛቸዋለሁ።

፲ አዎን፣ በኃያሉ ቁጣዬም እንበኛቸዋለሁ፣ እናም የእናንተን ፍፁም ጥፋት የሚመለከቱ አራተኛ ትውልድ የሆኑት ጠላቶቻችሁ በህይወት ይኖራሉ፤ እናም ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ በእርግጥ ይህ ይሆናል ይላል ጌታ፤ እናም የአራተኛውም ትውልድ ጥፋታችሁን ይንበኛሉ።

፲፩ ነገር ግን ንስሃ የምትገቡ እናም ወደ ጌታ አምላካችሁ የምትመለሱ ከሆነ፣ እኔም ቁጣዬን ከእናንተ አርቃለሁ ይላል ጌታ፤ አዎን ጌታም እንዲህ ይላል፡ ንስሃ የሚገቡና ወደ እኔ የሚመለሱ የተባረኩ ናቸው፣ ነገር ግን ንስሃ ለማይገቡት ወዮላቸው።

፲፪ አዎን፣ ለዚህች ለታላቋ የዛራሔምላ ከተማ ወዮላት፤ እነሆም ፃድቃን በሆኑት ምክንያት ነው የዳነችው፤ አዎን፣ ለዚህች ታላቅ ከተማ ወዮላት ይላል ጌታ፤ ብዙዎች፣ አዎን፣ የዚህች የታላቋ ከተማ አብዛኛው ክፍል የሚሆኑት በእኔ ላይ ልባቸውን እንደሚያጠጥሩ አስተውላለሁ፣ ይላል ጌታ።

፲፫ ነገር ግን ንስሃ የሚገቡት የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱን አድናቸዋለሁና። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በዚህች ታላቅ ከተማ ሰላሎት ስለ ፃድቃኖች ባይሆን ኖሮ፤ እነሆ፣ አሳት ከሰማይ እንዲወርድ እናም እንዲያጠፋቸው ባደረግሁ ነበር።

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ስለ ፃድቃን ሲባል ነው የዳነው። ነገር ግን እነሆ ፃድቃኖችን ከመካከላችሁ የምትወረውሩበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፣ ከዚያም ለጥፋት የበሰላችሁ ትሆናላችሁ ይላል ጌታ፤ አዎን በውስጧ ባሉት ክፋትና ርኩሰት የተነሳ ለዚህች ከተማ ወዮላት።

፲፭ አዎን፤ እናም የጌዴዎን ከተማ በውስጧ ሰላለው ክፋትና እርኩሰት ወዮላት።

፲፮ አዎን፣ እናም በኔፋውያን በተያዙት ከተሞችና በዙሪያቸው ላሉት ሁሉ በክፋታቸው እንዲሁም በርኩሰታቸው የተነሳ ወዮላቸው።

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

፲፯ እናም እነሆ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ባሉት በሰዎቹ ድርጊትም፣ አዎን፣ በክፋታቸውና በእርኩስነታቸው የተነሳ እርግማን በምድሪቱ ላይ ይመጣል ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ፤ አዎን፣ ታላቁና እውነተኛው አምላካችን፣ በምድሪቱም ታላቅ እርግማን በመሆኑ በምድር ውስጥ ሀብት የቀበረ ፃድቅ ካልሆነና የደበቀው ለጌታ ካልሆነ መልሶ አያገኘውም።

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

፲፱ ሀብታቸውን ወደ እኔ እንዲደብቁት አፈልጋለሁና፣ አለ ጌታ፤ እናም ሀብታቸውን ለእኔ ለማይደብቁት እርግማን ይሆንባቸዋል፤ ፃድቃኖች ካልሆኑ በቀር ንብረታቸውን ወደ እኔ አይደብቁምና፤ እናም ወደ እኔ ንብረቱንም የማይደብቅ፣ እርሱና፣ ደግሞ ንብረቱ፣ የተረገመ ነው፤ እናም ምድሪቱ በመረገሟ ማንንም አያድነውም።

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

፳ እናም ልባቸውን በሀብታቸው ላይ በማድረጋቸው ንብረታቸውን የሚደብቁበት ቀን ይመጣል፤ እናም ልባቸውን በሀብታቸው ላይ በማድረጋቸውና ከጠላቶቻቸው ሲሸሹ ንብረታቸውን ስለሚደብቁ፤ ወደ እኔም ስለማይደብቁቸው፣ እነርሱም ሆኑ ንብረቶቻቸው የተረገሙ ይሁኑ፤ በዚያም ቀን ይመታሉ ይላል ጌታ።

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

፳፩ እነሆ እናንተ፣ የዚህች ታላቅ ከተማ የሆናችሁ ሰዎች፣ እናም ቃሉን አድምጡ፤ አዎን፣ ጌታ የተናገራቸውንም ቃላት አድምጡ፤ እነሆም እንዲህም አለ፣ በሀብታችሁም የተረገማችሁ ናችሁ፤ እናም ደግሞ በእነርሱ ላይ ልባችሁን ስላደረጋችሁና ለእናንተ እነዚህን የሰጣችሁንም የእርሱን ቃላት ስላላደመጣችሁ ሀብታችሁ ተረግመዋል።

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

፳፪ ጌታ አምላካችሁን በተባረካችሁበትም ሁኔታ አታስታውሱትም፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ አምላካችሁን ባታመሰግኑበትም ሁልጊዜ ሀብታችሁን ታስታውሳላችሁ፤ አዎን ልባችሁ ወደጌታ አልተወሰደም፣ ነገር ግን ለጉራና ለመወጣጠር፣ ለቅናቶች፣ ለፀብ፣ ለተንኮል፣ ለሰደትና፣ ለግድያ፣ እናም ለሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋት በኩራት ያብጣል።

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

፳፫ በዚህም የተነሳ ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በምድሪቱ ላይ፣ እናም ደግሞ በሀብታችሁ ላይ እርግማን እንዲመጣ ያደርጋል፣ እናም ይህ የሆነው በክፋታችሁ ነው።

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

፳፬ አዎን፣ በደረሰው በዚህ ጊዜ፣ ነቢያቱን በማባረራቸውና፣ በመሳሉቸውና፣ እናም በድንጋይ በመውገራቸውና፣ በመግደላቸው፣ እንዲሁም እንደጥንት ጊዜውም እንደደረጉት ሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋት በማድረጋቸው ለዚህ ህዝብ ወዮለት።

፳፭ እናም እንግዲህ በምትናገሩ ጊዜም እንዲህ ብላችኋል፡ ጊዜአችን እንደ ጥንቱ እንደ አባቶቻችን ጊዜ እንኳን ቢሆን ነቢያቶቹን እንገድላቸውም ነበር፤ በድንጋይም እንወግራቸውም ነበር፤ እናም እንወረውራቸውም ነበር።

፳፮ እነሆ አናንተ ከእነርሱ የከፋችሁ ናችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ ስለጋጠሙታችሁ እንዲሁም ስለክፋታችሁ ለመመስከር የጌታን ቃል ለአናንተ ለመናገር በመካከላችሁ ነቢይ ከመጣ፣ በእርሱ ትቆጣላችሁም፣ ታባርሩታላችሁም፣ እናም እርሱን ለማጥፋት ሁሉንም ዓይነት መንገድ ትሻላችሁ፤ አዎን፣ ስራችሁ መጥፎ መሆኑን በመመስከሩ እርሱ ሀሰተኛ ነቢይና፣ ኃጢአተኛ፣ እንዲሁም የዲያብሎስ ነው ትላላችሁ።

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አንድ ሰው ከመካከላችሁ ከመጣና ይህንን አድርጉ፣ ኃጢአት አይደለም፣ አድርጉትና አትሰቃዩም ካላችሁ፣ አዎን እንዲህም ይላል፡ በልባችሁ ኩራትም ተመሩ፤ አዎን፣ በዐይናቸችሁ ኩራትም ተመሩ፤ እናም ልባችሁ እንደፈቀደም አድርጉ—እናም አንድ ሰው በመካከላችሁ ከመጣና እንዲህ ቢላችሁ፣ እርሱን ትቀበሉታላችሁ፣ ነቢይ ነውም ትሉታላችሁ።

፳፰ አዎን፣ እርሱን ታወድሱታላችሁ፣ እናም ለእርሱም ካላችሁ ቁሳቁሶች ትሰጡታላችሁ፣ ከወርቃችሁና ከብራችሁም ትሰጡታላችሁ፣ እንዲሁም ውድ የሆኑ ልብሶችም ታለብሱታላችሁ፤ እናም ሽንጋይ የሆኑ ቃላት ለአናንተ በመናገሩና፣ ሁሉም መልካም ነው በማለቱ፣ በእርሱ ዘንድ ስህተት አታገኙም።

፳፱ እቤቱ አናንተ ኃጢአተኛና ጠማማ ትውልዶች፣ አናንተ ጠጣሮችና አንገተ ደንዳና የሆናችሁ ሰዎች፣ ጌታ ምን ያህል ጊዜ ይታገሰናል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን? አዎን፣ በሞኝ እናም በእውር መሪ ለምን ያህል ጊዜ እንድትመሩ ትፈቅዳላችሁን? አዎን፣ ለምን ያህል ጊዜ ስንድ ከብርሃን ይልቅ ጨለማን የምትመርጡት?

፴ እዎን፣ እነሆ የጌታ ቁጣ በአናንተ ላይ ነዲል፤ እነሆ፣ ምድሪቱንም በክፋታችሁ የተነሳ ረግጧታል።

፴፩ እናም እነሆ፣ ሀብታችሁን መያዝ እንዳትችሉ ከእጃችሁ እንዲያመልጥ የሚረግምበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፤ እናም በድህነታችሁም ወቅት መልሳችሁ አታገኙትም።

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

፲፪ እናም በድህነታችሁም ቀን ወደ ጌታ ትጮኻላችሁ፤ የወውደሚያችሁ ጊዜ ስለደረሰባችሁና ጥፋታችሁም እርግጥ በመሆኑ በከንቱ ትጮኻላችሁም፤ እናም በዚያን ቀን ታለቅሳላችሁና ትጮኻላችሁ አለ የሰራዊት ጌታ። ታለቅሳላችሁም፣ እንዲህም ትላላችሁ፦

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

፲፫ አቤቱ ንሰሃ ብገባና፣ ነቢያቱንም ባልገድል፣ እናም በድንጋይ ባልወግርና፣ ባልወረውራቸው አመኝ ነበር። አዎን፣ በዚያን ቀን እንዲህ ትላላችሁ፦ አቤቱ ሀብታችንን በሰጠን ቀን ጌታ አምላካችንን ብናስታውስ ኖሮ፣ እናም እንዳናጣቸው ከእጃችን አያመልጡም ነበር፤ እነሆ ሀብታችን ከእኛ ሸሽቷልና።

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

፲፬ እነሆ እዚህ መሳሪያ አስቀምጠናል፣ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀን የለም፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ለጦርነት ጎራዴዎቻችንንም በፈለግናቸው ጊዜ ከእኛ ተወስደዋል።

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

፲፭ አዎን ንብረቶቻችንን ደብቀናል፣ እናም ምድሪቱም በመረገሟ ጠፍተውብናል።

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

፲፮ የጌታ ቃል ወደ እኛ በመጣ ጊዜ ንሰሃ በገባን ኖሮ፤ ምክንያቱም እነሆ፣ ምድሪቱ ተረግማለች፣ እናም ሁሉም ነገር ከእጅ አምላጭ ሆነዋል፣ እኛም ልንይዛቸው አልቻልንም።

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

፲፯ እነሆ፣ እኛ በጋኔን ተከበናል፤ አዎን፣ ነፍሳችንን ለማጥፋት በፈለገው መላዕክትም ተከበናል። እነሆ ኃጢአቶቻችን ታላቅ ናቸው። አቤቱ ጌታ፣ ቁጣህን ከእኛ መመለስ አትችልምን? እናም በእነዚያ ቀን የእናንተ ቋንቋ እነዚህ ይሆናሉ።

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

፲፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የሙከራ ቀናት አልፏል፤ እስከዘለዓለም ድረስ እስከሚዘገይ እናም መጥፊያችሁ እርግጥ እስከሚሆን ድረስ የመዳኛ ቀናችሁን አዘገያችሁ፤ አዎን፣ የሀይወት ዘመናችሁን በሙሉ ልታገኙት በማትችሉት ተመኝታችኋል፤ እናም ታላቅና ዘለዓለማዊው ራስ በሆነው ውስጥ ባለው የፅድቅ ተፈጥሮ ተቃራኒ በሆነው ነገር ክፋትን በመሰራት ደስታን ተመኝታችኋል።

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

፲፱ የዚህች ምድር የሆናችሁ ሰዎች፣ አቤቱ ቃሉን እንድታደምጡ እፈልጋለሁ! እናም ንሰሃ እንድትገቡና እንድትድኑ ዘንድ፣ እናም የጌታ ቁጣ ከእናንተ እንዲመለስ ዘንድ እጸልያለሁ።

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

ሔለማን ፲፬

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናዊው ሳሙኤል ሊፃፉ የማይችሉ ከዚህ የበለጡ ታላቅ ነገሮችን ተንብዮአል።

፪ እናም እነሆ እንዲህም አላቸው፡ እነሆ፣ ምልክትን እስጣችኋለሁ፤ ከዚህ ወዲያ አምስት ዓመት ይመጣል፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ከዚያም በሰሙ የሚያምኑትን ሁሉ ሊያድናቸው የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ይመጣል።

፫ እናም እነሆ ይህንን የምስጣችሁ በመምጫው ጊዜ ለምልክት እንዲሆናችሁ ነው፤ እነሆም ከመምጣቱ አንድ ቀን በፊት ባለው ምሽትም ምንም ዓይነት ጨለማ እስከማይሆን ድረስ በሰማይ ታላቅ ብርሃን ይሆናል፤ ለሰዎችም እንደ ቀን ሆኖ ይታያቸዋል።

፬ ስለዚህ፣ ልክ አንድ ቀን እንደሆነና፣ ምሽት እንደሌለ፣ አንድ ቀንና አንድ ሌሊት እናም አንድ ቀን ይሆናሉ፤ ይህም ለምልክት ይሆናችኋል፤ ምክንያቱም የፀሐይ መውጫዋንና መጥለቂያዋን ታውቃላችሁና፤ ስለዚህ ሁለት ቀንና አንድ ምሽት እንደሚሆን በእርግጥ ታውቃላችሁ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ምሽቱ ጨለማ አይሆንም፤ እናም ይህ እርሱም ከመወለዱ በፊት የሚሆነው ምሽት ይሆናል።

፭ እናም እነሆ ተመልክታችኋት የማታውቁት አዲስ ኮከብም ትወጣለች፤ እናም ይህ ለምልክት ይሆናችኋል።

፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ ብቻም አይደለም፤ በሰማይ ብዙ ምልክቶች እንዲሁም አሰደናቂ ነገሮች ይሆናሉ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፡ ሁላችሁም በመሬት ላይ እስከምትወድቁ ትደነቃላችሁ፣ እንዲሁም ትገረማላችሁ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፡ በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሚያምን ዘላለማዊ ህይወት ይኖረዋል።

፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ስለእነዚህም ነገሮች መጥቼ ለእናንተ እንድናገር ጌታ በመላዕክቱ አዘኛል፤ አዎን እነዚህን ነገሮች ለእናንተ እንድትነብይ አዘኛል፤ አዎን፣ እንዲህም ብሎኛል፡ ንስሃ ግቡ እናም የጌታንም መንገድ አቅኑ ብለህ ለዚህ ህዝብ ጩህ።

፲ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ላማናዊ በመሆኔ ጌታ ያዘዘኝን ቃላት ለእናንተ በመናገሪ፣ እናም ለእናንተ ቃሉም አስቸጋሪ በመሆኑ፣ በእኔ ተቆጣችሁ፣ እናም እኔን ለማጥፋት ፈለጋችሁ፤ ከመካከላችሁም አውጥታችሁ ጥላችሁኛል።

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

፲፩ እናም ቃላቴን ትሰማላችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ለዚህ ሰል
ነው ወደ ከተማዎ ግንብ የመጣሁት፣ ሰለዚህ
በክፋታችሁም የተነሳ የሚጠብቃችሁን የእግዚአብሔርን
ቅጣት ትሰሙት እንዲሁም ታውቁት ዘንድ፤ እናም ደግሞ
የንሰሃን ሁኔታ እንድታውቁት ዘንድ የመጣሁት፤

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔርን ልጅ፣ የሰማይና የምድር
አባት የሆነውን፣ ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ የሁሉም ነገሮች
ፈጣሪ የሆነውን፣ የአዲስ ክርስቶስን መምጣት ታውቁ
ዘንድ፤ እናም በሰሙም እንድታምኑ ባለኝ አላማ፣
የመምጣቱን ምልክቶች እንድታውቁቸው መጣሁ።

፲፫ እናም በሰሙ ካመናችሁ፣ በመልካምነቱ ለእነዚህ
ሰርዮትን ታገኙ ዘንድ ለኃጢአታችሁ ሁሉ ንሰሃን
ትገባላችሁ።

፲፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በድጋሚ ሌላ ምልክት እስጣችኋለሁ፤
አዎን፣ የሞቱን ምልክት።

፲፭ እነሆም፣ ደህንነት እንዲመጣ በእርግጥ መሞት
ይገባዋል፤ አዎን፣ ሞቱ ሰዎች በጌታ ፊት እንዲቀርቡ
የሙታን ትንሳኤን እንዲያመጣ ጠቃሚ እንዲሁም
አስፈላጊ ይሆናል።

፲፮ አዎን፣ እነሆ፣ ይህ ሞት ትንሳኤን ያመጣል፣ እናም የሰው
ዘር የሆኑትን በሙሉ ከፊተኛው ሞት ያድናል—መንፈሳዊ
ከሆነው ሞት፣ የሰው ዘር በሙሉ በአዳም መውደቅ ከጌታ
ፊት ተለይተዋል፣ በጊዜያዊም በመንፈሳዊም ሞት
እንደሞቱ ናቸው።

፲፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የክርስቶስ ትንሣኤ የሰው ዘርን፣
አዎን፣ የሰው ዘርን በሙሉ ያድናል፣ እናም ወደ ጌታ
ፊትም ያቀርባቸዋል።

፲፰ አዎን፣ እናም የንሰሃንም አካሄድ ያመጣል፤ ንሰሃ
የሚገባ ቢኖር አይቆረጥምና ወደ እሳቱም አይወረወርም፤
ነገር ግን ንሰሃ የማይገባ ይቆረጣል፣ እናም ወደ እሳቱ
ይወረወራል፤ በድጋሚም መንፈሳዊ ሞት፣ አዎን፣ ሁለተኛ
ሞት በእነርሱ ላይ ይመጣል፤ ለፅድቅ ከሆኑትም
ነገሮችም በሚመለከት በድጋሚ ይቆረጣሉ።

፲፱ ሰለዚህ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች
በማወቃችሁ፣ እናም ባለማድረጋችሁ ራሳችሁን በእርግጥ
ሰር በማድረግ ታስቃያላችሁና፤ እናም ወደዚህ ሁለተኛ
ሞትም ራሳችሁን ትጎትቱታላችሁ።

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent
have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye
might hear and know of the judgments of God which
do await you because of your iniquities, and also that
ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of
Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven
and of earth, the Creator of all things from the begin-
ning; and that ye might know of the signs of his com-
ing, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all
your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of
them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you,
yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may
come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedi-
ent that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of
the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the
presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resur-
rection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first
death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the
fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the
Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things tem-
poral and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth
mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them
back into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repen-
tance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not
hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever re-
penteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and
there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea,
a second death, for they are cut off again as to things
pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing
these things and not doing them ye shall suffer your-
selves to come under condemnation, and ye are
brought down unto this second death.

፳፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ሰለሌላው ምልክት፣ የሞቱን ምልክት፣ በሚመለከት እንደነገርኳችሁ፤ እነሆ በሚሞትበት በዚያ ቀን፣ ፀሐይ ትጨልማለች፣ እናም ለእናንተ ብርሃን አትሰጥም፤ ደግሞ ጨረቃና ከዋክብትም ይጨልማሉ፤ እናም ከሞተበት ጊዜም እንኳን ጀምሮ ለሶስት ቀናት፣ ከሞት እስከሚነሳበት ጊዜ ድረስ፣ በዚህ በምድር ላይ ምንም ብርሃን አይኖርም።

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

፳፬ አዎን፣ ነፍሱን አሳልፎ በሚሰጥበት ጊዜ ለብዙ ሰዓታት ነጎድጓድ እንዲሁም መብረቅ ይሆናል፣ እናም ምድር ትንቀጠቀጣለችና ትናወጣለች፤ እናም በምድር ላይ ያሉ ዓለቶች፣ በዚህ ጊዜ ጠጣር እንደነበሩ የምታውቋቸው ወይም አብዛኛው ክፍል እንደ ጠጣር የነበሩት፣ ከምድር በላይ የነበሩትና ከሥር ያሉትም ሁሉ ይሰባበራሉ፤

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

፳፭ አዎን ሁለት ቦታ ይከፈላሉ፤ እናም ከዚህም በኋላ ተጨማሪውና ተሰነጣጥቀው፣ እናም በምድር ላይ የተሰባበሩ ቁርጥራጮች ሆነው፣ አዎን ከመሬት በላይና በታች ይገኛሉ።

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

፳፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ኃይለኛ ነፋስ ይኖራል፣ እናም ከፍታቸው ትልቅ የሆኑ ተራሮች እንደሸለቆ ዝቅ ይላሉ፣ አሁን ሸለቆ ተብለው የሚጠሩትም በከፍታቸውም ትልቅ የሆኑ ተራሮች ይሆናሉ።

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

፳፬ እናም ብዙ አውራ ጎዳናዎች ይሰባበራሉም፣ ብዙ ከተሞችም የወደሙ ይሆናሉ።

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

፳፯ እናም ብዙ መቃብሮችም ይከፈታሉና ሙታናቸውን አሳልፈው ይሰጣሉ፣ ለብዙ ሰዎችም ብዙ የሆኑ ቅዱሳን ይታዩአቸዋል።

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

፳፰ እናም እነሆ፣ እንደዚህ መልእክት ተናግሮኛል፤ ለብዙ ሰዓታትም ነጎድጓድ እንዲሁም መብረቅ እንደሚሆንም ተናግሮኛል።

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ አለኝ፣ ነጎድጓዱና መብረቁ እንዲሁም አይሉ ነፋስ እያለ እነዚህ ነገሮች ይሆናሉ፤ እናም ለሶስት ቀናትም ምድር በጨለማ ትከበባለች።

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

፳፰ እናም መልእክት እንዲህ አለኝ፣ እነዚህ ምልክቶች እና እነዚህ ድንቅ የሆኑት በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ እንደሚሆኑ ያምኑ ዘንድ፣ በሰው ልጆች መካከል የማያምኑበት ምንም ምክንያት እንዳይኖር ከዚህ የበለጡ ታላቅ ነገሮችን ለብዙዎቹ ይታያሉ—

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

፳፱ እናም ይህም የሚያምን ሁሉ እንዲድን ነው። የሚያምነውም ጻድቃዊ ፍርድ በእርሱ ላይ እንዲመጣ ነው፤ እናም ደግሞ ከተኮነኑ በራሳቸው ላይ የራሳቸውን ፍርድ ያመጣሉ።

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

፴ እናም አስታውሱ ወንድሞቼ የሚጠፋ ቢኖር የሚጠፋው ለራሱ እንደሆነና፣ ክፋትን የሚሰራም ለራሱ የሚሰራ እንደሆነ ከእንግዲህ አስታውሱ፤ እነሆም፣ እናንተ ነፃ ናችሁ፤ ለራሳችሁ እንድትሰሩ ተፈቅዶላችኋል፤ እነሆ እግዚአብሔርም እውቀትን ሰጥቷችኋል እናም እናንተን ነፃ አድርጓችኋል።

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

፴፩ እርሱም መልካምን ከመጣፎ ታውቁ ዘንድ እውቀትን ሰጥቷችኋል፤ እናም ህይወትን አለበለዚያም ሞትን ትመርጡም ዘንድ የነጻ ምርጫ ሰጥቷችኋል፤ እናም መልካምን መሰራት ትችላላችሁ፣ መልካም ወደ ሆነውም ደግማችሁ ትመለሳላችሁ፣ ወይንም መልካም የሆነው ለእናንተ ይመለስላችኋል፤ ወይም ክፉ መሰራት ትችላላችሁ፤ እናም ክፉ የሆነውም ደግሞ ይመለስላችኋል።

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

ሔለማን ፲፭

፩ እናም እንግዲህ፡ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፡ እነሆ፡ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ ቤታችሁ እንደሚወድምባችሁ እናገራለሁ።

፪ አዎን፡ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ፡ ሴቶቻችሁ በሚያጠቡበት ቀን የሚያዝኑበት ታላቅ ምክንያት ይኖራቸዋል፤ ምክንያቱም ለመሸሸም ትሞክራላችሁ እናም የምትሰደዱበት ስፍራ አይኖራችሁም፤ አዎን፡ ለእርጉዞች ወዮላቸው፡ እነርሱም ከባድ ይሆናሉ እናም መሸሸም አይችሉምና፤ ስለዚህም ይረገጣሉ እናም እንዲጠፉም ወደኋላ ይቀራሉ።

፫ አዎን፡ የኔሬ ህዝብ ተብለው ለሚጠሩት እነዚህን ሁሉ ምልክቶች እናም አስደናቂ ነገሮች በሚመለከቱበት ጊዜ ንሰሃ ካልገቡ ወዮላቸው፤ እነሆም፡ በጌታ የተመረጡ ህዝቦች የነበሩ ናቸውና፤ አዎን፡ የኔሬን ህዝብ ወዲቸዋል እናም ደግሞ ገሰጷቸዋል፤ አዎን፡ ስለሚወዳቸው በክፋታቸው ዘመን ቀጥቷቸዋል።

፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ ወንድሞቼ ላማናውያን ስራቸው ያለማቋረጥ ክፋ ስለነበር ጠልቷቸው ነበር፤ እናም ይህም የሆነበት በእባቶቻቸው ወግ ክፋት የተነሳ ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፡ ደህንነት ግን በኔሬውያን ሰብከት የተነሳ መጥቶላቸዋል፤ እናም ለዚህም አላማ ጌታ ቀናቸውን አርዘሞላቸዋል።

፭ እናም አብዛኞቹ ክፍሎች በተወሰነላቸው ጎዳና እንደሚንቀሳቀሱ ልብ እንድትሉ እፈልጋለሁ፡ በእግዚአብሔርም ፊት በጥንቃቄ ይራመዱሉ፤ እናም በሙሴ ህግ መሰረትም ትዕዛዛቱንና ህግጋቱን እንዲሁም ፍርድን ያከብራሉ።

፮ አዎን፡ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፡ አብዛኞቹ ይህንን ያደርጋሉ፤ እናም የተቀሩት ወንድሞቻቸውን ወደ እውነት ያመጡ ዘንድም ያለማቋረጥ ትጋትን ያደርጋሉ፤ ስለሆነም በየቀኑም ቁጥራቸውን ከፍ የሚያደርጉ ብዙዎች አሉ።

፯ እናም እነሆ፡ እናንተ በእራሳችሁ እንደምታውቁት፡ ምስክር ሆናችሁበታልና፡ ብዙዎች ወደ እውነት እውቀት የመጡት፡ እናም ክፋውንና የረከሰውን የእባቶቻቸውን ወግ ያውቁትና፡ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትንም እንዲያምኑ፤ አዎን፡ እምነትና ንሰሃም በልባቸው ለውጥን ስለሚያመጣላቸው ስለተፃፉት ወደ ጌታ እምነትና ወደ ንሰሃው ወደሚመሩት የነቢያት ቅዱስ ትንቢቶቻቸው የተመሩት ሁሉ—

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

፳፯ ስለዚህ፣ ይህንን እንደሚያውቁ የመጡ ሁሉ፣ በእምነታቸውና ነፃ በተደረጉበትም ነገር ፅኑ እናም የማይነቃነቁ መሆናቸውን በእራሳችሁ አውቃችኋል።

፳፰ እናም ደግሞ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻቸውን እንደቀበሩና፣ በሆነ አጋጣሚ ኃጢያትን እንስራለን ብለው በመፍራታቸውም መሣሪያዎቻቸውን ለማንሳት እንደሚፈሩ ታውቃላችሁ፤ አዎን፣ ኃጢያትን ለመስራት መፍራታቸውን ለመመልከት ትችላላችሁ—እነሆም፣ በጠላቶቻቸው እንዲረገጡና እንዲገደሉ ይፈቅዳሉ፣ ጎራዳዎቻቸውንም በእነርሱ ላይ አያነሱም፣ እናም ይህ የሆነበት በክርስቶስ ባላቸው እምነት ነው።

፳፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ በሚያምኑበት በዚያ ነገር ሲያምኑ፣ የማያወላውሉ በመሆናቸው፣ ምክንያቱም አንዴ በተገለፀላቸው ጊዜ ፅኑ በመሆናቸውም፣ እነሆ ጌታ ይባርካቸዋል፣ እናም ኃጢአተኞች ቢሆኑም ዘመናቸውን ያረዝሞላቸዋል—

፴፩ አዎን፣ እምነት አጥተው ቢመነምኑም፣ በአባቶቻችን እንዲሁም ደግሞ በነቢዩ ዜናስ፣ እንዲሁም በሌሎች ብዙ ነቢያት ወንድሞቻችን ለማናውያን ድጋሚ አውነትን ወደማወቅ መመለስን በተመለከተ የተናገሩበት ቀን እስከሚመጣ ድረስ ጊዜ ቀናቸውን ጌታ ያረዝመዋል—

፴፪ አዎን፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ በኋለኞቹ ጊዜያት የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ለወንድሞቻችን ለላማናውያንም ይቀርባል፤ እናም ብዙ ሰቃዮችም የሚመጡባቸው ቢሆንምና፣ በምድር ገፅ ላይም ለመጠለያቸው ሥፍራን ሳያገኙ ወዲህና ወዲያ ቢሰደዱም፣ ቢታደኑም፣ ቢመቱም፣ እናም ከሀገር ውጪ ቢባረሩም፣ ጌታ ለእነርሱ መሃሪ ይሆናል።

፴፫ እናም ይህም የሚሆነው ታላቁና እውነተኛው አረኛ ወደሆነው ወደ አዳኛቸው እውቀት ወደሆነው እውነታዊ እውቀት እንደሚመጡ፣ እናም ከእርሱ በጎችም ጋር አብረው እንደሚቆጠሩ በተተነበየው መሰረት ነው።

፴፬ ስለዚህ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ንስሃ ካልገባችሁ ከእናንተ ይልቅ ለእነርሱ የተሻለ ይሆናል።

፴፭ እነሆም፣ ለእናንተ የታዩት ኃያል ስራዎች ለእነርሱ፣ አዎን፣ በአባቶቻቸው ወግ አማካይነት እምነት አጥተው ለመነመኑት፣ የታዩ ቢሆን ኖሮ በድጋሚ እምነት በማጣት እንደማይመነምኑ እራሳችሁ ለመመልከት ትችላላችሁ።

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

፲፮ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ አለ፡ ፈፅሞ አላጠፋቸውም፡፡
ነገር ግን በጥበብ ቀኔ ወደ እኔ እንዲመለሱ
አደርጋቸዋለሁ፡፡ ይላል ጌታ፡፡

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ስለኔፋውያን እንዲህ
ይላል፡ ንሰሃ ካልገቡና፣ እንደፈቃዳም ካላደረጉ፣ ምንም
እንኳን ብዙ አስደናቂ ስራዎች በመካከላቸው ብሰራም
እምነት ስለሌላቸው ፈፅሞ አጠፋቸዋለሁ፡፡ ይላል ጌታ፤
እናም በእውነት ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ እነዚህም ነገሮች
ይሆናሉ ይላል ጌታ፡፡

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy
them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom
they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the
people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and
observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them,
saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwith-
standing the many mighty works which I have done
among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall
these things be, saith the Lord.

ሔለማን ፲፮

፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በከተማዋ ግንብ ሳሙኤል ላማናዊው ሲናገር ቃሉን ያዳመጡት ብዙዎች ነበሩ። በቃሉ ያመኑ ሁሉ ሄዱና ኔፊን ፈለጉት፤ እናም በመጡና እርሱን ባገኙት ጊዜ፣ በጌታም ለመጠመቅ ፈልገው፣ ኃጢአታቸውን ለእርሱ ተናዘዙ፣ እናም አልካዱም።

፪ ነገር ግን የሳሙኤልን ቃላት የማያምኑ ሁሉ በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም በግንቡም ላይ ድንጋይ ወረወሩበት፣ እናም ደግሞ በግንቡ ላይ ቆሞ ሳለ ቀስቶቻቸውን ወረወሩበት፤ ነገር ግን በድንጋዮቻቸው ሆነ በበቀስቶቻቸው ሊመቱት አስከማይችሉ ድረስ የጌታ መንፈስ ከእርሱ ጋር ነበር።

፫ እንግዲህ እርሱን መምታት እንዳልቻሉ በተመለከቱ ጊዜ፣ በኔፊ ለመጠመቅ አስከማይሄዱ ድረስ በቃሉ ያመኑ ብዙዎች ነበሩ።

፬ እነሆም፣ ክርስቶስ በቅርቡ መምጣቱን ያውቁ ዘንድ ምልክቶችን ድንቅ ነገሮችን በማሳየት፣ ኔፊ አጥምቋልም፣ ተንብዮአልም፣ እናም ሰብኳል፤ በመጮህም ንስሃን ለህዝቡ ተናግሯል፤ በህዝቡም መካከል ተዓምራቶች ሰርቷል—

፭ በቅርቡ ስለሚመጡትም ነገሮች ለእነርሱ በመንገር፣ እንዲያምኑ ባለው አላማ ምክንያት በሚመጡበት ጊዜም ቀደም ብለውም እንዲያውቁት ተደርጎ እንደነበር እንዲያውቁ እና እንዲያስታውሱ ዘንድ አሳይቶአቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ የሳሙኤልን ቃላት ያመኑት ሁሉ ለመጠመቅ ወደ እርሱ ሄዱ፤ ንስሃ በመግባት፣ እና ኃጢአታቸውንም በመናዘዝ መጥተዋል።

፮ ነገር ግን ብዙዎቹ የሳሙኤልን ቃላት አያምኑም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በድንጋይ እንዲሁም በቀስታቸው እርሱን ለመምታት አለመቻላቸውን በተገነዘቡ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ሻምበሎቻቸው እንዲህ በማለት ጮሁ፣ ይህንን ሰው ውስደትና እሰሩት፣ የዲያብሎስ መንፈስ አለበትና፤ እናም በውስጡ ባለው የዲያብሎስ ኃይልም በድንጋይም ሆነ በቀስት ልንመታው አልቻልንም፤ ስለዚህ ያዙትና እሰሩት፣ እናም ወዲያ ውስደት።

፯ እናም እጆቻቸውን ሊጮኑበት በሄዱ ጊዜም፣ እነሆ፣ እራሱን ከግንቡ ላይ ዘለለና፣ ከምድራቸው ሸሽ፤ አዎን ወደ ራሱም ሃገር ሸሸ፣ እናም በራሱ ህዝብ መካከልም መሰበክና መተንበይ ጀመረ።

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

፳፯ እናም እነሆ፣ ከዚህም በኋላ ኔፋውያን ምንም ስለእርሱ አልሰሙም፤ እናም የህዝቡ ጉዳዮች ይኸው ነበሩ።

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

፳፱ እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሠፍንቱ ሰማንያ ስድስተኛ የንግስና ዘመን ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፲ እናም አብዛኞቹ ሰዎችም ከነኩራታቸው እንዲሁም ኃጢአታቸው እየቀሩ፤ እናም ጥቂቶቹ ክፍሎች በእግዚአብሔር ፊት በጥንቃቄ እየተራመዱ፣ የመሠፍንቱ ሰማንያ ሰባተኛ የንግሥና ዘመን ደግሞም እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

፲፩ እናም ደግሞ በመሠፍንቱ ሰማንያ ሰምንተኛ የንግስና ዘመን ሁኔታዎቹ እነዚህ ነበሩ።

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

፲፪ እናም ነገር ግን በመሠፍንቱ ሰማንያ ዘጠነኛ ዓመት የንግስና ዘመን በክፋት ይበልጥ ከመጠጠራቸው፣ እናም በይበልጥ ከእግዚአብሔር ትዕዛዛት ተቃራኒ የሆኑትን በተጨማሪ ከሚሰሩት በስተቀር በሰዎች ጉዳዮች ላይ ትንሽ የሚሆን ለውጥ አልነበረም።

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

፲፫ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በመሠፍንቱ ዘጠናኛ የንግስና ዘመን፣ ለህዝቡ ታላቅ ምልክቶች፣ እና ድንቆች፣ ተሰጥተዋቸው ነበር፤ እናም የነቢያቱ ቃላትም መፈፀም ጀምረው ነበር።

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

፲፬ እናም መላዕክት ለሰዎች ጠቢብ ለሆኑ ሰዎችም ታዩአቸው፣ እናም እነርሱ የታላቁ ደስታ የምሰራችን ነገሩአቸው፤ በዚህም ዓመት የቅዱሳት መጻሕፍት ትንቢቶችም እንዲህ መፈፀም ጀመሩ።

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

፲፭ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ኔፋውያንና ደግሞ ላማናውያን ከሆኑት፣ ከሁሉም በላይ ከሚያምኑት በቀር ሰዎች ልባቸውን ማጠጠር ጀመሩ፤ እናም በጉልበታቸውና በጥበባቸው እንዲህ በማለት መመካትም ጀመሩ።

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

፲፮ ከብዙዎች መካከል ጥቂት ነገሮችን በትክክል ገምተዋል፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተነገሩት እነዚህ ታላቅ እንዲሁም ድንቅ ስራዎች ሁሉ እንደማይመጡ እናውቃለን።

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

፲፯ እናም ምክንያት በማቅረብምና እርስ በእርሳቸው እንዲህ በማለት መጣላት ጀመሩ።

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

፲፰ እንዲህ ያለ ክርስቶስ የሚባል ፍጡር ይመጣል ማለት ተገቢ አይደለም፤ ይህም ከሆነ፣ እናም እርሱም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ፣ እንደተባለውም የሰማይና የምድር አባት ከሆነ በኢየሩሳሌም ላሉት እንደሚያደርገው ለምን አራሱን ለእኛም አይገልፅም?

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

፲፱ አዎን፣ በኢየሩሳሌም ምድር እንደሚያደርገው አራሱን ለምን በዚህች ምድርም አያሳይም?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

፳፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ በእኛ መካከል ሳይሆን ነገር ግን ራቅ ባለ ምድር፣ በማናውቀው ምድር በሚመጣው ታላቅ እና አስገራሚ ነገር እንድናምን የሚያደርግ በአባቶቻችን የተላለፈልን ክፉ ወግ እንደሆነ እናውቃለን፤ ስለዚህ እውነት መሆናቸውን በዓይናችን ለመመስከር ስለማንችል፣ ባለማወቅ እንድንቆይ ማድረግ ይችላሉ።

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

፳፩ እናም ቃልን እንዲያስተምሩን በእነርሱ ስለምንመካ፣ በጮሌነትና፣ በክፋው ሚስጥራዊ ጥበብ፣ እኛን ለቃላቶቻቸው አገልጋዮች እንድንሆንና፣ እንድናገለግላቸው ዝቅ እድርጎ የሚያስቆየን፣ እኛ ልንረዳው የማንችለውን ታላቅ ሚስጥር ይሰራሉ፤ እናም በህይወት ዘመናችን ሁሉ እራሳችንን ለእነርሱ አሳልፈን ከሰጠን እንደዚህ በድንቁርና ያቆዩናል።

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

፳፪ እናም ህዝቦች የማይረቡና ከንቱ በሆኑት ልባቸው ከዚህ የበለጡ ብዙ ነገሮችን ገመቱ፤ እናም ሰይጣን ያለማቋረጥ ክፋት እንዲሰሩ ስለሚበጠብጣቸው ይበልጥ ተረብሸው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ እርሱም መልካም በነበሩት እና በሚመጣው ላይ ልባቸውን ያጠጥሩ ዘንድ አሉባልታንና፣ ፀብን በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ላይ ለማስራጨት ሄዷል።

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

፳፫ እናም በጌታ ህዝቦች መካከል ምልክቶችና አስገራሚ ስራዎች ቢከናወኑም፣ እናም ብዙ አስደናቂ ነገሮችን ቢያደርጉም፣ ሰይጣን በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ ባሉ የሰዎች ልብ ታላቅ ሥፍራን ይዟል።

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

፳፬ እናም በኔሬ ህዝብ ላይ የመሣፍንቱ ዘጠናኛው የንግሥ ዘመን እንደዚህ ተፈፀመ።

And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

፳፭ እናም በሌላማንና በወንድ ልጆቹ ዘገባ መሰረት የሌላማን መጽሐፍ እንዲህ ተጠናቀቀ።

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

ሦስተኛው ኔፊ

የኔፊ መፅሐፍ

የሔለማን ልጅ የነበረው የኔፊ ልጅ

እናም ሔለማን፤ የአልማ ልጅ የነበረው፣ የአልማ ልጅ በሴዴቅያስ የመጀመሪያ የንግስ ዘመን የይሁዳ ንጉሥ የነበረው ከኢየሩሳሌም የወጣው፣ የኔፊ ዝርያ የነበረውና የሌሂ ልጅ የነበረው፣ የሔለማን ልጅ ነበር።

፫ ኔፊ ፩

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዘጠና አንደኛው ዓመት አለፈና ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ ስድስት መቶ ዓመት ሆኖ ነበር፤ እናም ይኸውም ላኮኔዎስ በምድሪቱ ላይ ዋና ዳኛ የሆነበት ዓመት ነበር።

፪ እናም የሔለማን ልጅ ኔፊ፣ የነሀስ ሠሌዳዎቹን በተመለከተና የተፃፉትን መዛግብት በሙሉ፣ እናም ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ በቅድስና የተቀመጡትን ነገሮች በሙሉ በተመለከተ ለታላቁ ልጁ ለኔፊ ኃላፊነትን ሰጥቶት ከዛራሔምላ ምድር ሄደ።

፫ ከዚያም ከምድሪቱ ተለይቶ ሄደ፣ እናም የሔደበትን ስፍራ ማንም አያውቅም ነበር፤ እናም ልጁ ኔፊ መዛግብቶቹን፣ አዎን፣ የዚህን ህዝብ መዝገብ በእርሱ ምትክ ሆኖ አስቀመጠ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዘጠና ሁለተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ፣ እነሆ፣ የነቢያቱ ትንቢት ይበልጥ በሙሉት መፈፀም ጀመረ፤ በህዝቡ መካከል ታላላቅ ምልክቶች እናም ታላላቅ ተዓምራቶች መሆን ጀምረዋልና።

፭ ነገር ግን በላማናዊው ሳሙኤል የተነገሩት ቃላት የተፈፀሙበት ጊዜው አልፎአል ሲሉ ጥቂቶች መናገር ጀምረው ነበር።

፮ እናም በወንድሞቻቸው ሁኔታም በመደስት እንዲህ ማለት ጀመሩ፡ እነሆ ጊዜው አልፎአልና የሳሙኤልም ቃላት አልተፈፀሙም፤ ስለዚህ፣ እናም ይህን ነገር በተመለከተ ደስታችሁና እምነታችሁ ከንቱ ነው።

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም በምድሪቱ ላይ ታላቅ ረብሻ አደረጉ፤ እናም የተነገሩት ነገሮች እንደሚፈጸሙ በመፍራት ያመኑት ሰዎች እጅግ ማዘን ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

፳፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እምነታቸው ከንቱ አለመሆኑን ያውቁ ዘንድ ያንን ቀንና ያንን ምሽት፣ እናም ምንም ምሽት የሌለበትን እንደ አንድ ቀን የሚመስለው ቀን የሚሆንበትን በጽናት ጠበቁ።

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

፳፬ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በነቢዩ ሳሙኤል የተሰጠው ምልክት ካልተፈጸመ በስተቀር ሁሉም በነዚያ ወጎች የሚያምኑት እንዲሞቱ የሚደረግበት በማያምኑት የተመረጠ አንድ ቀን ነበረ።

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፌ ልጅ፣ ኔፌ፣ ይህንን የህዝቡን ክፋት በተመለከተ ጊዜ፣ ልቡ እጅግ አዝኖ ነበር።

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ሄደና በምድሪቱ ላይም ወደቀ፣ እናም ወደ አምላኩ ለህዝቡ፣ አዎን፣ በአባቶቻቸው ወግ ላይ ባላቸው እምነት የተነሳ ሊጠፋ ለተቃረቡት ድገፋ በኃይል ጮኸ።

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቀኑን በሙሉ ወደ ጌታ በኃይል ጮኸ፤ እናም እነሆ የጌታ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል ወደ እርሱ መጣ፣

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

፳፰ ራሱን አቅና፤ እናም ተደሰት፤ እነሆም፣ ጊዜው ቀርቧልና፣ በዚህች ምሽትም ምልክት ይሰጣል፣ እናም በሚቀጥለውም ቀን በቅዱሳን ነቢያቶቹ እንደበት እንዲነገሩ ያደረግሁኋቸውን በሙሉ እንደሚፈጸሙ ለዓለም ለማሳየት ወደ ዓለም አመጣለሁ።

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

፳፱ እነሆ፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ለሰው ልጆች እንዲያውቁቸው ያደረጋቸውን ነገሮች በሙሉ ለመፈጸም፣ እናም የአብንና፣ የወልድን ፈቃድ፣ የአብን ፈቃድ በእኔም አማካኝነት፣ እናም የወልድን በሰጋዬም አማካኝነት ለመፈጸም አመጣለሁ። እናም እነሆ፣ ጊዜው ተቃርቧል፤ በዚህች ምሽትም ምልክት ይሰጣል።

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለኔፌ የተነገሩት ቃላት እንደተነገሩት ተፈጸሙ፤ እነሆም፣ ፀሀይ በምትጠልቅበት ጊዜ ጨለማ አልነበረም፤ እናም ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ ጨለማ ባለመኖሩ ሰዎች መገረም ጀምረዋል።

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

፲፮ እናም የነቢያቱን ቃላት የማያምኑ፤ በመሬት ላይ የወደቁ እናም የሞቱ የሚመስሉ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ ምክንያቱም ታላቁ የጥፋት ዕቅድ በነቢያቱ ቃላት ለሚያምኑት የተወጠነው እንዳልተሳካ ያውቃሉና፤ ተሰጥቶ የነበረው ምልክት ቀድሞውኑ ቀርቦአልና።

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

፲፱ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ በአጭር ጊዜ እንደሚታይ ማወቅ ጀመሩ፤ እዎን በአጠቃላይ በምድር ገጽ ላይ ያሉት፤ ከምዕራብ እስከ ምስራቅ፤ በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን እስከደቡብ ያሉት ሰዎች በሙሉ ወደ መሬት እስከሚወድቁም ድረስ እጅግ ተደንቀው ነበር።

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

፳ እናም የተሰጣቸውም ምልክት መድረሱን አውቀዋልና፤ እናም በክፋታቸውና ባለማመናቸው ምክንያት መፍራት ጀመሩ።

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያን ምሽት በሙሉ ምንም ጨለማ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን እንደ እኩለ ቀን ብርሃን ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በትክክለኛው ሰርዓት መሰረት፤ በጠዋቱ በድጋሚ ፀሀይ ወጣችና፤ በተሰጠው ምልክትም የተነሳ ቀኑም ጌታ የሚወለድበት መሆኑን አውቀው ነበር።

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፤ እዎን፤ ሁሉም ነገሮች፤ እያንዳንዱም በነቢያቱ ቃላት መሰረት ነበሩ።

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

፷ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ደግሞም እንደቃሉ አዲስ ኮከብ ታየ።

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

፷፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዚህ ጊዜ በኋላ ልባቸውን እንዲያጠጥር፤ በታየትም ምልክቶች እንዲሁም አሰገራሚ ነገሮች እንዲያምኑ በሰይጣን አማካኝነት በሰዎች መካከል ውሸት መሰራጨት ጀመረ፤ ነገር ግን እነዚህ ውሸቶችና ማጭበበር ቢኖሩም አብዛኞቹ ማመን ጀመሩ፤ እናም ወደ ጌታ ተለወጡ።

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

፷፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊና፤ ብዙ ሌሎች፤ በሰዎቹ መካከል ለኃጢአት ታላቅ ሰርዓት ወደሚገኝበት ንሰሃ ለማጥመቅ ሔደ። እናም ሰዎቹ በድጋሚ በምድሪቱ ሠላምን ማግኘት ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

፸ እናም ጥቂቶች የሙሴን ህግጋት ማክበር አስፈላጊ አለመሆኑን በቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ለማረጋገጥ በመሰበክ ጥረት ከሚያደርጉት በስተቀር ፀብ አልነበረም። እንግዲህ በዚህ ነገርም ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትን ባለመረዳታቸው ስህተትን ፈጽመው ነበር።

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

፳፭ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በአፋጣኝ ተለወጡ፤ እናም የነበሩትንም ስህተቶች እንዲያውቁ ተደርገው ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ህጉ ገና አለመፈጸሙ፤ እናም በማንኛውም ሁኔታም ሁሉም መፈጸም እንደሚገባቸው እንዲያውቁት ተደርገዋል፤ አዎን፤ ይህም መፈጸም እንዳለበት ቃል ወደ እነርሱ መጣ፤ አዎን፤ ሁሉም እስከሚፈጸም እንዲት ነጥብ ወይም ምልክት አታልፍም፤ ስለዚህ በዚህ ዓመት ስህተታቸውን እንዲያውቁ ተደርገው ነበር፤ እናም ጥፋታቸውን ተናዘዙ።

፳፮ እናም የሁሉም ቅዱሳን ነቢያት የትንቢት ቃላት መሰረት የተሰጡት ምልክቶች በመፈጸም የተነሳ ዘጠና ሁለተኛው ዓመት ምስራች ለህዝቡ አምጥቶ አለፈ።

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በተራራ ከሚኖሩት፣ ምድርን ከወረሩት፣ ይዘታቸውና የሚሰጥር ቦታቸው በጣም ጠንካራ ሆኑ ሰዎች ሊያሸንፏቸው ከማይችሉት የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች በስተቀር ዘጠና ሶስተኛው ዓመት በሰላም ዓለፈ፤ ስለዚህ በርካታ ግድያዎች እናም በህዝቡ ውስጥ ብዙ ግድያዎችን ፈጸሙ፤

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ እነርሱ የሸሹ ብዙ ኔፋውያን ተቃዋሚዎች በመኖራቸው፤ እነርሱም በምድሪቱ በቀሩት ኔፋውያን ላይ ታላቅ ሀዘን እንዲሆን ባደረጉት ምክንያት በዘጠና አራተኛው ዓመት በታላቅ መጠን መጨመር ጀመሩ።

፳፱ እናም ደግሞ በላማናውያን መካከል የታላቁ ሀዘን መንስኤ ነበር፤ እነሆም፣ የደረሱ እናም ዕድሜያቸው የጨመረ ብዙ ልጆች ነበሩአቸውና እናም ራሳቸውን ቻሉና፣ ከጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች ጋር እንዲቀላቀሉ ዘራማዊ በነበሩ በጥቂቶች በውሸታቸው እንዲሁም በሸንጋዩ ቃላቶቻቸው ተመርተው ነበርና።

፷ እናም ደግሞ ላማናውያን እንደዚህ ተስቃዩ፣ እናም በሚያድገው ትውልድ ኃጢአት የተነሳም እምነታቸውና ፅድቃቸው መመናመን ጀመረ።

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

፫ ኔፊ ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ደግሞም ዘጠና አምስተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ አለፈ፣ እናም ሰዎቹ እነዚያን ምልክቶችና የሰሟቸውን አሰገራሚ ነገሮች መርሳት ጀመሩ፣ እናም ከሰማይ በሆነው ምልክት ወይም አሰገራሚ ነገር መደንቃቸው መቀነስ ጀመሩ፤ በዚህም ልባቸው መደንደንና አዕምሮአቸው መታወር ጀመረ፣ እናም ያየአቸውንና የተመለከቱአቸውን በሙሉ አለማመን ጀመሩ—

፪ የሰዎችን ልብ ለመምራትና ለማጭበርበር በሰው እንዲሁም በዲያብሎስ ኃይል በተሰሩት በማለት በልባቸው ጥቂት ከንቱ ነገር አሰላሰሉ፤ እንደዚህም ስይጣን የሰዎችን ልብ በድጋሚ የራሱ አድርጓል፣ በዚህም የተነሳ አሳውሮአቸዋልና የክርስቶስን ትምህርት በተመለከተ የሞኝ እናም ከንቱ ነገር መሆኑን እንዲያምኑ መርቷቸዋል።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰዎቹ በክፋቶቻቸውና በእርኩስቶቻቸው መበርታት ጀመሩ፤ እናም ከእንግዲህ ምልክቶችም ሆኑ አሰገራሚ ነገሮች እንደሚሰጡ አለመኑም፤ እናም ስይጣን የሰዎችን ልብ መምራት፣ መፈተንና በምድሪቱ ታላቅ ክፋትን እንዲሰሩ ማድረግ ቀጠለ።

፬ እናም ዘጠና ስድስተኛው ዓመት፤ ደግሞም ዘጠና ሰባተኛው ዓመት፤ እናም ደግሞ ዘጠና ስምንተኛው ዓመት፣ እንዲሁም ደግሞ ዘጠና ዘጠነኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ አለፉ፤

፭ እናም ደግሞ በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ ንጉስ ከነበረው ሞዚያ ጊዜ ጀምሮ መቶ ዓመት አለፈ።

፮ እናም ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣ ስድስት መቶ ዘጠኝ ዓመታት አለፉ።

፯ እናም ስለ ክርስቶስ ወደ ዓለም መምጣት ለነቢያቱ የተነገሩት ምልክቶች ከተሰጡ ጊዜ አንስቶ ዘጠኝ ዓመታት አለፉ።

፰ እንግዲህ ኔፋውያን ምልክቱ ከተሰጠበት ወይንም ከክርስቶስ መምጣት ጀምሮ ጊዜአቸውን መቁጠር ጀመሩ፤ ስለዚህ ዘጠኝ ዓመታት አለፉ።

፱ እናም የመዛግብቱ ኃላፊነት የነበረው፣ የኔፊ አባት የነበረው፣ ኔፊ ወደ ዛራሄምላ ምድር አልተመለሰም፤ እናም በምድሪቱም በሙሉ ሊገኝ አልቻለም።

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመካከላቸው ብዙ ሰብከቶች እንዲሁም ትንቢቶች ቢላኩም፣ ህዝቦች በክፋታቸው እንደቆዩ ነበር፤ ደግሞም አሰረኛው ዓመት አለፈ፤ እናም ደግሞ አሰራ እንደኛውም ዓመት በክፋታቸው አለፈ።

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአሰራ ሦስተኛው ዓመት በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ጦርነቶች እንዲሁም ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች እጅግ ብዙ ሰለነበሩና፣ ብዙዎችን ሰለገደሉ፤ እናም ብዙ ከተሞችንም ሰለደመሰሱና፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ብዙ ግድያና፣ ሞት ሰላሰራጩ፣ ኔፋውያንም ሆኑ ለማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ እጃቸውን ለጦርነት ማንሳታቸው አስፈላጊ ነበር።

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

፲፪ ስለዚህ፣ ወደ ጌታ የተለወጡት ለማናውያን በሙሉ ከኔፋውያን ወንድሞቻቸው ጋር አንድ ሆኑ እናም ለህይወታቸውና ለሴቶቻቸውና ለልጆቻቸው ደህንነት፣ አዎን፣ ደግሞም ልዩ መብቶቻቸውንና የቤተክርስቲያናቸውን ክብር እናም አምልኮታቸውንና፣ ነፃነታቸውን እንዲሁም ህልውናቸውን እንዲጠብቁ ዘንድ በጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች ላይ መሳሪያዎችን እንዲያነሱ ተገደው ነበር።

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከዚህ አሰራ ሦስተኛው ዓመት ከማለፉ በፊት ኔፋውያን በዚህ እጅግ መሪር በሆነው ጦርነት የተነሳ ፈፀመው እንዲጠፉ ማስፈራሪያ ተደርጎባቸው ነበር።

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከኔፋውያን ጋር አንድ የሆኑት ለማናውያን ከኔፋውያን ጋር ተቆጥረው ነበር፤

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

፲፭ እናም እርግማናቸው ከእነርሱ ተወሰደ ነበር፣ እናም ቆዳቸው እንደኔፋውያን ነጭ ሆኖ ነበር፤

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

፲፮ እናም ወጣት ወንዶቻቸው እንዲሁም ሴት ልጆቻቸው እጅግ መልካም ሆኑ፤ እናም ከኔፋውያን ጋር ተቆጠሩና፣ ኔፋውያን ተብለው ተጠሩ። እናም አሰራ ሶስተኛው ዓመት ተፈፀመ።

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአሰራ አራተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ፣ በዘራፊዎቹ እናም በኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል የነበረው ጦርነት ቀጠለና፣ እጅግ መሪር ሆነ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የኔፊ ህዝብ በሌሎቹ ላይ ጥቂት ብልጫ አግኝተው ነበር፣ ስለዚህ ከምድራቸው አሰወጥተው ወደ ተራራውና ወደ ሚስጥራዊው ሰፍራቸው እንዲሸሹ አደረጉአቸው።

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

፲፰ እናም እስራ ኢራተኛው ዓመት በዚህ ተፈፀመ። እናም በእስራ እምስተኛው ዓመት በኔፊ ህዝብ ላይ መጡባቸው፤ እናም በኔፊ ሰዎች ክፋትና፣ ፀብና ተቃውሞዎች የተነሳ፣ የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች በእነርሱ ላይ ብዙ ብልጫ አገኙ።

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

፲፱ እናም እስራ እምስተኛው ዓመት በዚህ ተፈፀመና፣ እንደዚህም ሰዎቹ ብዙ ሰቃይ ውስጥ ነበሩ፤ የጥፋት ጎራዴም እነርሱን ሊቆርጣቸው እስከሚቃረብ በእነርሱ ላይ ነበር፤ እናም ይህ የሆነው በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ነው።

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

፫ ኔፊ ፫

፮ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ክርስቶስ ከመጣ በእስራ-
ስድስተኛው ዓመት፣ የምድሪቱ ገዢ ላኮኔዎስ፣
ከዘራፊዎቹ ቡድን መሪና እስተዳዳሪ ከሆነው ደብዳቤን
ተቀበለ፤ እናም የተፃፉት ቃላት እንዲህ የሚሉ ነበሩ።

፯ የምድሪቱ ልዑልና ዋና እስተዳዳሪ የሆነከው ላኮኔዎስ፤
እነሆ፣ ይህንን ደብዳቤ እጽፍሃለሁ፤ እናም በጽኑነትህና፣
ደግሞ እናንተ መብታችንና ነፃነታችን ነው ብላችሁ
የምትገምቱትን በመጠበቅ በህዝብህ ጽኑነት፣ ለእነተ
እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ምስጋናን እስጥሃለሁ፤ አዎን፣
ነፃነታችሁንና ንብረታችሁን እናም ሀገራችሁን ወይም
እንደዚህ የምትጠሯቸውን ለመከላከል በእንደ በእምላክ
የተረዳችሁ በመምሰል ፀንታችሁ ቆማችኋል።

፲ እናም ልዑል ላኮኔዎስ፣ ለእኔ የሚያሳዝነኝ ቢኖር በእኔ
ትዕዛዝ ስር ያሉትን፣ በአሁኑ ሰዓት የጦር መሳሪያቸውን
ይዘው የቆሙትን ብዙ ጀግና ሰዎችን፣ በኔፋውያን ላይ
ዝመቱና አጥፋኦቻቸው የሚለውን ቃሉንም በታላቅ ጉጉት
የሚጠብቁትን ለመቋቋም እንደምትችሉ በመገመትህ
እንተ ሞኝ እንዲሁም ከንቱ በመሆንህ ያሳዝነኛል።

፱ እናም እርሱንም በጦር ሜዳው በማረጋገጤ፣
የማይሸነፈውን መንፈሳቸውን አውቃለሁ፤ በእነርሱም ላይ
ብዙ ስህተቶችን በመፈፀማችሁ በእናንተም ላይ
ያለባቸውን ዘላለማዊ ጥላቻ ስለማውቅ፣ ስለዚህ
በእናንተም ላይ የሚመጡ ከሆነ ፍፁም በሆነ ጥፋት
ይጎበኙኦቻችኋል።

፳ ስለዚህ ለደህንነታችሁ በማሰብ፣ ትክክል ነው ብላችሁ
በምታምኑበት ባላችሁ ፅኑነት እናም በጦር ሜዳው
ባላችሁ የጅግንነት መንፈስ ምክንያት ይህንን ደብዳቤ
ጽፎ በራሴ እጅ አሸጌዋለሁ።

፳፩ ስለዚህ በጎራዴ ከሚጎበኙኦቻችሁ፤ እናም ጥፋት
በእናንተ ላይ ከሚመጣ ለህዝቦቹ ከተሞችህን፤
ምድራችሁን እናም ንብረቶችህን እንድትተው በመፈለጌ
ይህንን ለእነተ ጽፎአለሁ።

፳፪ ወይንም በሌላ አነጋገር፣ ራሳችሁን ለእኛ ሰጡ፣ እናም
ከእኛ ጋር እንደ ሁኑና ከሚሰጥር ስራዎቻችን ጋር ተባብሩ፤
እናም እንደ እኛም ትሆኑ ዘንድ ወንድሞቻችን ሁኑ፣
አገልጋዮቻችን አትሁኑ፣ ነገር ግን ወንድሞቻችንና
የሀብቶቻችን ሁሉ አጋር ሁኑ።

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year
from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor
of the land, received an epistle from the leader and
the governor of this band of robbers; and these were
the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the
land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do
give unto you exceedingly great praise because of
your firmness, and also the firmness of your people,
in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your
right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were
supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of
your liberty, and your property, and your country, or
that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble
Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as
to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave
men who are at my command, who do now at this
time stand in their arms, and do await with great
anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites
and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit,
having proved them in the field of battle, and know-
ing of their everlasting hatred towards you because
of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them,
therefore if they should come down against you they
would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it
with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, be-
cause of your firmness in that which ye believe to be
right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would
yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands,
and your possessions, rather than that they should
visit you with the sword and that destruction should
come upon you.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us,
and unite with us and become acquainted with our
secret works, and become our brethren that ye may
be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and
partners of all our substance.

፳፯ እናም እነሆ ይህንን የምታደርጉ ከሆናችሁ፣ የማትጠፋ መሆናችሁን በመሃላ አረጋግጥልሃለሁ፤ ነገር ግን ይህንን የማታደርጉ ከሆነ፣ በሚቀጥለው ወር ወታደሮቹ በአናንተ ላይ እንዲመጡና እጆቻውን ባለመመለስ እናም ህይወታችሁን እንዳያተርፉ፣ ነገር ግን እንዲገድሉአችሁ እናም ፈፅሞ እስከምትጠፉ ድረስ ጎራዳዎች በአናንተ ላይ እንዲያርፉ ማዘዜን በመሃላ አረጋግጣለሁ።

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

፳፰ እናም እነሆ፣ እኔ ጊድያንሒ ነኝ፤ እናም የዚህ የጋድያንቶን ሚስጥራዊ ማህበረሰብ አስተዳዳሪ ነኝ፤ በዚያም ያለው ማህበረሰብ እንዲሁም ስራዎች መልካም መሆናቸውን አውቃለሁ፤ እናም እነርሱም በጥንት ጊዜ የነበሩ ናቸውና ለእኛ ተላልፈውልናል።

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

፳፱ እናም ላኮኔዎስ፣ ይህንን ደብዳቤ ለአንተ እፅፋለሁ፤ እናም የመንግስታቸውን መብት ለመንጠቅ በነበረህ ክፋት የተነሳ ከአንተ የተገነጠሉትን ህዝቦቹን መብት፣ እንዲሁም ይህ ህዝብ መንግስቱንና መብቱን ያለምንም ደም መፋሰስ ይመልስ ዘንድ ምድርህን እንዲሁም ሀብቶችህን እንደምትሰጠኝ ተስፋ አደርጋለሁ፤ እናም ይህንን ካላደረግህ ስለተነፈጉት ነገሮቻቸው እበቀላለሁ። እኔ ጊድያንሒ ነኝ።

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

፴፬ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ላኮኔዎስ ይህንን ደብዳቤ በተቀበለበት ጊዜ ጊድያንሒ የኔፋውያንን ምድር በድፍረት በመፈለጉና፣ ደግሞ ህዝቡንም በማስፈራራቱ፣ እናም ወደ ክፋቶቹና፣ ርኩሳኑ ዘራፊዎች እራሳቸውን በመገንጠል ስህተት ከመስራታቸው በስተቀር ስህተት ያልተቀበሉትን ስህተት እበቀላለሁ በማለቱ እጅግ ተገርሞ ነበር።

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

፴፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህ አስተዳዳሪው፣ ላኮኔዎስ፣ ፃድቅ ሰው ነበር፤ እናም በዘራፊው ፍላጎቶች እንዲሁም ማስፈራራት ሊፈራ አልቻለም፤ ስለዚህ የዘራፊዎቹ አስተዳዳሪ የሆነውን የጊድያንሒን ደብዳቤ አላደመጠም፣ ነገር ግን ዘራፊዎቹ ወደ እነርሱ በሚመጡበት ወቅት ህዝቡም እንዲበረቱ ወደ ጌታ እንዲጮህ አደረገ።

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

፴፮ አዎን፣ ከምድሪቱ በስተቀር ህዝቡም ሴቶቻቸውን፣ እናም ልጆቻቸውን፣ ከብቶቻቸውንና፣ መንጋዎቻቸውን እንዲሁም ሀብቶቻቸውን በሙሉ በአንድነት እንዲሰበሰቡ ዘንድ በመካከላቸው አዋጅን ላከ።

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

፲፬ እናም በዙሪያቸው ሞሽግ እንዲሰራና፣ ጥንካሬአቸውም እጅግ ታላቅ እንዲሆን አደረገ። እናም የኔፋውያንና የላማናውያን ወታደሮች፣ ወይም ከኔፋውያን መካከል የሚቆጠሩ ሁሉ እነርሱን እንዲጠብቁ፤ በዙሪያቸው ጠባቂ ሆነው እንዲቀመጡ፣ እናም በቀንና በምሽት ከዘራፊዎች እንዲጠብቁአቸው አደረገ።

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

፲፭ አዎን፣ እንዲህም አላቸው፦ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ ለኃጢአቶቻችሁ ንሰሃ ካልገባችሁ፣ እናም ወደ ጌታ ካልጮሁችሁ በቀር፣ በየትኛውም መንገድ ቢሆን ከጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች አታመልጡም።

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

፲፮ እናም የላኮኔዎስ ቃላቶች እንዲሁም ትንቢቶች ታላቅ እንዲሁም አስገራሚ በመሆናቸው በህዝቡ ሁሉ ላይ ፍርሀት እንዲመጣ አደረገ፤ እናም እንደላኮኔዎስም ቃላት ለማድረግ እራሳቸው በጋይላቸው ጥረት አደረጉ።

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላኮኔዎስ ዘራፊዎቹ ከምድረበዳው ወጥተው ወደ እነርሱ በሚመጡበት ጊዜ እንዲያዙአቸው በኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ሁሉ ላይ ዋና ሻምበሎች ሾሙ።

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

፲፰ አሁን ከዋና ሻምበሎች መካከል ዋና እናም ከኔፋውያን ሠራዊት ሁሉ ታላቁ አዛዥ የሆነ ተሹሞ ነበር፤ እናም ስሙም ጊድጊድኒ ይባል ነበር።

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

፲፱ እንግዲህ በኔፋውያን ሁሉ መካከል (ክፋት በሚፈጽሙበት ጊዜ ካልሆነ በስተቀር) የራዕይ እንዲሁም ደግሞ የትንቢት መንፈስ ያለቸውን ዋና ሻምበሎች የመሾም ባህል ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ ይህ ጊድጊድኒ በእነርሱ መካከል ታላቅ ነቢይ ነበር፤ ደግሞም ዋና ዳኛም ነበር።

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

፳ እንግዲህ ህዝቡም ለጊድጊድኒ እንዲህ አለው፦ ወደጌታ ፀልይና፣ ዘራፊዎቹን እናጠቃቸው እናም በራሳቸው ምድር እናጠፋቸው ዘንድ ወደ ተራራው እናም ወደ ምድረበዳው እንሂድ።

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

፳፩ ነገር ግን ጊድጊድኒ እንዲህ አላቸው፦ ጌታ ወደዘራፊዎቹ እንዳንሄድ ይከለክላል፤ ወደእነርሱ የምንሄድ ከሆነ ጌታ በእጃቸው እንድንወድቅ ያደርጋል፤ ስለዚህ በምድራችን እምብርት እራሳችንን እናዘጋጃለን፣ እናም ሠራዊታችንን በሙሉ በአንድ ላይ እንሰበሰባለን፣ እናም በእነርሱ ላይ እንሄድም፤ ነገር ግን በእኛ ላይ እስከሚመጡ ድረስ እንጠብቃቸዋለን፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ፣ ይህንን የምናደርግ ከሆነ እነርሱን በእጃችን ስር እንዲወድቁ ያደርጋል።

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአሰራ ሰባተኛው ዓመት፣ በዓመቱ በሰተመጨረሻ፣ የላኮኔዎስ አዋጅ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ተደረሰ፤ እናም ፈረሶቻቸውን፣ ሠረገላዎቻቸውንም፣ የቀንድ ከብቶቻቸውንም፣ እናም መንጋዎቻቸውን ሁሉና፣ ከብቶቻቸውን፣ እህሎቻቸውንም፣ እናም ንብረቶቻቸውን በሙሉ ወሰዱ፣ እናም በሺህዎችና፣ በአስር ሺህዎች፣ ከጠላቶቻቸው ለመከላከል ዘንድ አብረው እንዲሰበሰቡ ወደተመደቡላቸው ሰፍራዎች እስከሚሄዱ ድረስ ዘመቱ።

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

፳፫ እናም የተመረጠችው ምድር የዛራሄምላ ምድር ነበረች፤ እናም ምድሪቱ በዛራሄምላ ምድርና በለጋስ ምድር መካከል ነበረች፤ አዎን፣ በለጋስ ምድርና በወደመው ምድር መካከል ባለው ወሰን።

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

፳፬ እናም ኔፋውያን ተብለው የሚጠሩ፤ በዚህች ምድር ላይ ራሳቸውን በአንድነት የሰበሰቡ ብዙ ሺህ ሰዎች ነበሩ። እንግዲህ በምድሪቱ በሰተሰሜን በኩል በነበረው ታላቅ እርግማን የተነሳ ላኮኔዎስ በምድሪቱ በሰተደቡብ አራሳቸውን በአንድ ላይ እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረገ።

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

፳፭ እናም ከጠላቶቻቸው አራሳቸውን ሸሸጉ፤ እናም በአንድ ምድርና፣ በአንድነት ፍሩም፣ በላኮኔዎስ የተነገሩትንም ቃላት ፈሩ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ለኃጢአቶቻቸው በሙሉ ንስሃ ገቡ፤ እናም ጠላቶቻቸው ሊዋጉአቸው በመጡ ጊዜ እንዲያድናቸው ዘንድ ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው ጸለዩ።

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

፳፮ እናም በጠላቶቻቸው የተነሳ እጅግ አዝነው ነበር። እናም ጊድጊድኒ ከሁሉም ዐይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎችን እንዲሰሩና፣ በትዕዛዙ መሠረት በጦር መሳሪያ፤ እናም ጋሻና፣ ዘለበት እንዲጠናከሩ አደረገ።

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

፫ ኔፊ ፬

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ስምንተኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ የዘራፊዎቹ ወታደሮች ለጦርነት ተዘጋጁ፤ እናም በድንገት ከኮረብታው ላይ ገሰገሱና፣ ከተራራውም፣ ከምድረበዳውና፣ ከጠንካራው ምሽጋቸው፣ እንዲሁም ከሚሰጠራዊው ስፍራዎቻቸው መበታተን ጀመሩ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብና በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን ያለውን ምድር መውሰድ ጀመሩ፤ እናም በኔፋውያን የተተዉትን ምድሮች በሙሉና ባዶ የቀሩትን ከተሞች መያዝ ጀመሩ።

፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በኔፋውያን ከተተዉት ምድሮች ውስጥ የዱር እውራዎችም ሆኑ የሚታደኑ የሉም፣ እናም ከምድረበዳው በስተቀር በዘራፊዎቹ የሚታደን ምንም አልነበረም።

፰ እናም ምግብ ስለሚያስፈልጋቸው፣ ዘራፊዎቹ ከምድረበዳው በስተቀር ለመኖር አልቻሉም፤ ኔፋውያን ምድራቸውን ባዶ በማድረጋቸው፤ እናም ከብቶቻቸውንና መንጋዎቻቸውንና ሁሉንም ቁሳቁሶቻቸውን በመሰብሰባቸው እነርሱ በአንድነት ነበሩ።

፱ ስለዚህ፣ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ፊት ለፊት ውጊያ ከመምጣት በስተቀር ዘራፊዎቹ ለመዝረፍ እንዲሁም ምግብን ለማግኘት ዕድል አልነበራቸውም፤ ኔፋውያንም አንድ ነበሩ፤ እናም በቁጥርም እጅግ ብዙ ስለነበሩና፣ ቁሳቁሶችንና፣ ፈረሶችን፣ እናም ከብቶችንና፣ ከሁሉም ዐይነት መንጋዎችን በማስቀመጣቸው ለሰባት ዓመታት እንደሚያቆያቸው በመዘጋጀት በነዚህም ዓመታት ዘራፊዎቹን ከምድረ ገፅ ለማጥፋት ተስፋ አድርገው ነበር፤ እናም አስራ ስምንተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ አለፈ።

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት ጊድያንሒ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት መሄዱ አስፈላጊ መሆኑን አወቀ፤ ምክንያቱም ካልዘረፉና፣ ካልሰረቁ፣ እናም ካልገደሉ በስተቀር በህይወት የሚቆዩበት መንገድ ሊኖር አይችልም ነበር።

፳፯ እናም ኔፋውያን እንዳይመጡባቸውና እንዳይገደሉላቸው፣ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ እራሳቸውን በመበታተን እህል ሊያመርቱ አልደፈሩም፤ ስለዚህ ጊድያንሒ በዚህ ዓመት ወታደሮቹ ከኔፋውያን ጋር ሄደው እንዲዋጉ ትዕዛዝን ሰጠ።

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለውጊያው መጥተው ነበር፤ ይህም በሰድስተኛው ወር ነበር፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ለውጊያ የሚመጡበትም ቀን ታላቅ፣ እንዲሁም አስፈሪ ነበር፤ እነርሱም የለበሱት እንደዘራፊዎቹ ነበር፤ እናም በወገባቸው ላይ የበግ ቆዳ ታጥቀውና፣ በደም ተነክረው ነበር፤ ራሳቸውንም ተላጭው፣ የራሱ ቆብም በላያቸው ላይ ነበራቸው፤ እናም በጦር መሳሪያቸውና በደም በመነከራቸው የጊድያንሒ ወታደሮች አቋም ታላቅ እንዲሁም አስፈሪ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች የጊድያንሒን ወታደሮች አቋም በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ሁሉም በመሬት ላይ ወደቁ፣ እናም ጌታ አምላካቸው ያድናቸውና ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ ያሰለቅቃቸው ዘንድ ወደ እርሱ ጮሁ።

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጊድያንሒ ወታደሮች ይህንን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ከደስታቸው የተነሳ በሃይል ጮሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ኔፋውያን ወታደሮቻቸውን በመፍራት ይወድቃሉ ብለው ገምተው ስለነበር ነው።

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

፲ ነገር ግን በዚህ ነገር ተቆጥተዋል፣ ምክንያቱም ኔፋውያን አልፈሩአቸውም ነበርና፤ ነገር ግን አምላካቸውን ፈርተው ነበር፣ እናም እንዲጠብቃቸውም ተማፀነውት ነበር፤ ስለዚህ የጊድያንሒ ወታደሮች ወደ እነርሱ በርጡ ጊዜ እነርሱን ለመገናኘት ተዘጋጅተው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በጌታም ብርታት ዘራፊዎቹን ተቀበሉአቸው።

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

፲፩ እናም ጦርነቱ በሰድስተኛው ወር ተጀመረ፤ እናም በዚያ የነበረው ጦርነት ታላቅ እንዲሁም አስፈሪ ነበር፣ አዎን፣ በዚያም የነበረው ግድያ ታላቅ፣ እንዲሁም አስፈሪ ነበር፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ በህዝቡ መካከል እንዲህ ያለ ታላቅ ግድያ በጭራሽ አይታወቅም ነበር።

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, in-
somuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

፲፪ እናም ጊድያንሒ ማስፈራሪያና መሀላ ቢያደርግም፣ እነሆ፣ ኔፋውያን አሸነፏቸው፣ በዚህም የተነሳ ከፊታቸው ማፈገፈግ ጀመሩ።

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, in-
somuch that they did fall back from before them.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጊድጊዳኒ ወታደሮቹ እስከምድረበዳው ዳርቻ እንዲያሳድዱአቸው፤ በእጃቸው የገቡትንም እንዳይተዉአቸው አዘዘ፤ እናም ወደ ምድረበዳው ዳርቻ የጊድጊዳኒ ትዕዛዛት እስከሚፈጸም ድረስ አሳድዱአቸውና ገደሉአቸው።

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቆመውና በድፍረት የተዋጋው ጊድያንሒ በሽሽ ጊዜ ተከተሉት፤ እጅግ ብርቱ በነበረው ጦርነት በመድከሙ ተደረሰበትና ተገደለ። እናም ይህም የዘራፊው ጊድያንሒ መጨረሻ ነበር።

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ወደ ደህንነታቸው ሰፍራ በድጋሚ ተመለሱ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ አስራ ዘጠነኛ ዓመት አለፈ፤ እናም ዘራፊዎቹ በድጋሚ ለመዋጋት አልመጡም፤ በሀያኛውም ዓመት ቢሆን በድጋሚ አልመጡም።

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

፲፮ እናም በሃያ አንደኛው ዓመት ለውጊያ አልመጡም፤ ነገር ግን በሁሉም አቅጣጫ በኔፊ ህዝብ ዙሪያ ለመክበብ መጡ፤ የኔፊን ህዝብ ከምድራቸው ከቆረጡአቸውና በሁሉም አቅጣጫ ከከበቡአቸው፤ እናም ከምሽጉ ውጪ ያሉአቸውን እንቅስቃሴዎች በሙሉ ከከለከሉአቸው፤ እንደፍላጎቶቻቸው እራሳቸውን ለመስጠት እናስገድዳቸዋለን ብለው ገምተው ነበር።

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

፲፯ እንግዲህ ለራሳቸውም ስሙ ዜምነሪያህ የሚባል ሌላ መሪ ሾመው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ይህ ዜምናሪያህ ነው የዚህ ዐይነቱ ከበባ እንዲከናወን ያደረገው።

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

፲፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ይህ ለኔፋውያን ጠቃሚ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ኔፋውያን በመጋዘናቸው በርካታ ስንቅ በማስቀመጣቸው፣ ዘራፊዎቹ ኔፋውያንን በዙሪያቸውም በሚገባ ለብቁ ጊዜ በመክበብ ምንም አይነት ጉዳት ለማምጣት አስቸጋሪ ነበርና።

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

፲፱ እናም በዘራፊዎቹ መካከል በነበረው ስንቅ ትንሽነት፤ እነሆም በህይወት ለመቆየት በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ካገኙት ሥጋ በስተቀር ምንም አልነበራቸውም፤

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የዱር አደኑ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ በቂ አልነበረም፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ዘራፊዎቹ በረሃብ ሊጠፉ ደርሰው ነበር።

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

፳፩ እናም ኔፋውያን ያለማቋረጥ በቀን እንዲሁም በምሽት እየዘመቱና ወታደሮቻቸውን ያጠቁና በሺህ እናም በአስር ሺህ የሚቆጠሩትን ይገደሉአቸው ነበር።

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

፳፪ እናም በቀንና በምሽት በእነርሱ ላይ በሆነው ታላቅ ጥፋትም የተነሳ የዜምነሪያህ ሰዎች ዕቅዳቸውን በመተው ለማፈገፈግ ፈልገው ነበር።

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ዜምነሪያህ ህዝቡ ከተከበቡበት እንዲያፈገፍጉ እንዲሁም በምድሪቱ በሰሜን በኩል ራቅ ወዳለው ሰፍራ እንዲዘምቱ አዘዘ።

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

፳፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ጊድጊድኒ ስለሰቅዳቸው በመገንዘቡ፣ እናም ምግብ በመፈለጋቸውምና፣ በመካከላቸው በነበረው ታላቅ ግድያ መዳከማቸውን በማወቅ፣ በምሽት ወታደሮቹን ላከና፣ የማፈገፈጊያውን መንገድም አገደባቸው፤ እናም በሚያፈገፍጉበት መንገድም ወታደሮቹን አስቀመጠ።

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

፳፭ እናም ይህንን ያደረጉት በምሽት ነበር፤ እናም ከዘራፊዎቹ አልፈው ተጓዙ፤ ስለዚህ በሚቀጥለውም ቀን ዘራፊዎቹ መንገዱን በጀመሩበት ጊዜ ከፊለፊት እንዲሁም ከጀርባቸው ከኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ጋር ተገናኝተው ነበር።

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

፳፮ እናም በስተደቡብ የነበሩትም ሌቦች ከማፈገፈጊያው ቦታ መንገዱ ተገድቦባቸው ነበር። እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ የተደረጉት በጊድጊድኒ ትዕዛዝ ነበር።

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

፳፯ እናም ብዙ ሺህዎች ለኔፋውያን ራሳቸውን እስረኛ አድርገው ሰጥተው ነበር፤ እናም ቀሪዎቹም ተገደሉ።

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

፳፰ እናም መሪዎቻቸው፣ ዜምነሪያህ፣ ተወስደና በዛፋ ላይ አዎን፣ እስከሚሞት ድረስ በጫፋ ላይ ተሰቀለ። እናም እስከሚሞት ድረስ በስቀሉት ጊዜም ዛፋን መሬት ላይ ጣሉትና፣ እንዲህም ሲሉ በሀይል ጮሁ።

And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

፳፱ ይህን ህዝብ በሰልጣን እንዲሁም በሚሰጥራዊ ሴራዎች የተነሳ እነርሱን ለመግደል ለሚፈልጉ፣ ሁሉ፣ ይህ ስው በመሬት ላይ ተቆርጦ እንደተጣለው እነርሱንም እንዲቆረጡ ያደርጓቸው ዘንድ ጌታ ህዝቡን በፅድቅ እንዲሁም በልብ ቅድስና ይጠብቃቸው።

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

፴ እናም ተደሰቱና በድጋሚ በአንድ ድምጽ እንዲህ ሲሉ ጮኹ፣ ይህ ህዝብ የአምላኩን ስም ለጥበቃው እስከጠሩ ድረስ ሁሉ የአብርሃም አምላክ፤ እናም የይሱህን አምላክና የያዕቆብ አምላክ በፅድቅ ይጠብቃቸው።

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጠላቶቻቸው እጅ እንዳይወድቁ በመጠበቅ ታላቅ ነገር ስላደረገላቸው ሁሉም በአንድነት መዘመር እንዲሁም አምላካቸውን ማወደስ ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

፴፪ አዎን፣ ሆሳዕና ለልዑል እግዚአብሔር ብለውም ጮሁ። እናም ልዑል እግዚአብሔር፣ ሁሉን የሚገዛው ጌታ እግዚአብሔር ስሙ የተባረከ ይሁን በማለትም ጮኹ።

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

፴፫

እናም እግዚአብሔር በታላቅ ቸርነቱ ከጠላቶቻቸው
እጅ እንዲወጡ ስላደረጋቸው እንባ እስከሚወጣቸው
ድረስ ልባቸው በደስታ ተሞልቶ ነበር፤ እናም ከንስሃቸውና
ትሁትነታቸው የተነሳ ከዘላለም ጥፋት መዳናቸውን ያውቁ
ነበር።

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the
gushing out of many tears, because of the great good-
ness of God in delivering them out of the hands of
their enemies; and they knew it was because of their
repentance and their humility that they had been de-
livered from an everlasting destruction.

፫ ኔፊ ፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቅዱሳን ነቢያት በሙሉ የተናገሩትን ቃላት በጥቂቱም ቢሆን የተጠራጠሩ ከኔፊ ህዝብ መካከል ህያው ከሆነ ነፍስ እንድም አልነበረም፤ ምክንያቱም እነዚህ መፈጸም እንዳለባቸው ያውቃሉና።

፪ እናም እንደነቢያቱ ቃላት በተሰጡት ብዙ ምልክቶች የተነሳ የክርስቶስ መምጣት አስፈላጊ መሆኑን ያውቁ ነበር፤ እናም በተከናወኑትም ነገሮች የተነሳ ሁሉም ነገሮች በተነገሩት መሰረት መምጣት እንዳለባቸውም ያውቁ ነበር።

፫ ስለዚህ እነርሱም ኃጢአቶቻቸውን፣ እንዲሁም እርኩስቶቻቸውን እንዲሁም ዝሙት መፈጸማቸውን ተወ። እናም ቀንና ምሽት በሙሉ ትጋትም እግዚአብሔርን አገለገሉ።

፬ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የዘራፊዎቹን አስረኞች በሙሉ በመውሰዳቸው በህይወት ያመለጠ ምንም ባልነበረበት ጊዜ፣ አስረኞቹንም ወህኒ ቤት ጣሉአቸውና፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቃልም እንዲሰበክላቸው አደረጉ፤ እናም ለኃጢአታቸው ንስህ የገቡና ከእንግዲህ ወዲያም ላለመግደል ቃል ኪዳን የሚገቡት ሁሉ ተለቀቁ።

፭ ነገር ግን ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ያልገቡ፣ እናም በልባቸው ሚስጥራዊ ግድያውን አሁንም የቀጠሉ፣ አዎን፣ በወንድሞቻቸው ላይ ማስፈራሪያ የሚያደርጉ ተፈርዳባቸዋልና በህጉም መሰረት ተቀጥተዋል።

፮ እናም ብዙ ክፋቶችና ብዙ ግድያዎች የተፈጸሙባቸውን ጥፋቶች፣ እናም ሚስጢራዊና እርኩስ ህብረቶችን ሁሉ እንደዚህ አቆሙ።

፯ እናም እንደዚህ ሃያ ሁለተኛው ዓመት አለፈና፣ ደግሞ ሃያ ሦስተኛው ዓመትም፣ እናም ሃያ አራተኛውና፣ ሃያ አምስተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ አለፉ።

፰ በጥቂቶች ዐይን ታላቅ እንዲሁም አስደናቂ የሆኑ ብዙ ነገሮች ደረሱ፤ ይሁን እንጂ እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ በዚህ መጽሐፍ ውስጥ ሊፃፉ አይቻሉም፤ አዎን፣ ብዛት ባላቸው በእነዚህ ሰዎች መካከል በሃያ አምስት ዓመታት ጊዜ የተከናወኑትን እንደ መቶኛ እንኳን ይህ መጽሐፍ ሊይዘው አይችልም፤

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ የዚህን ህዝብ ታሪኮች በሙሉ የያዙ መዛግብቶች አሉ፤ እናም አጭር ነገር ግን እውነት የሆነው ታሪክ ግን በኔሬ ተሰጥቷል።

፲ ስለዚህ የኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ተብለው በሚጠሩት ሠሌዳዎች ላይ በተቀረጹት የኔሬ መዛግብት መሰረት ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች መዛግብቱን ፅፌአለሁ።

፲፩ እናም እነሆ፣ ታሪኩን በራሴ እጅ በሠራኋቸው ሠሌዳዎች ላይ እፅፋለሁ።

፲፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ስሜ ሞርሞን ይባላል፤ የተጠራሁትም አልማ በህዝቡ መካከል ቤተክርስቲያኑን አቋቁሞ በነበረበት፣ አዎን፣ ከመተላለፋቸው በኋላ በመካከላቸው የተቋቋመው የመጀመሪያው ቤተክርስቲያን ባቋቋመበት በሞርሞን ምድር ስም ነው።

፲፫ እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሆነው፣ የኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ደቀመዝሙር ነኝ። ዘላለማዊ ህይወትንም ያገኛ ዘንድ፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ቃሉን እንዲሰራጭ በእርሱ ተጠርቻለሁ።

፲፬ እናም ቅዱሳን የነበሩት፤ የሞቱት ፀሎት እንደእምነታቸው በእግዚአብሔር ፈቃድ ይፈጸም ዘንድ፣ የተከናወኑት የእነዚህ ነገሮች ታሪክ መፃፍ አስፈላጊ ሆኖ ነበር—

፲፭ አዎን ሌሂ ኢየሩሳሌምን ለቆ ከወጣበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስካሁን የተከናወነውን በያዘው በእነሰተኛው መዝገብ እፅፋለሁ።

፲፮ ስለዚህ የእኔ ጊዜ እስከሚጀመርበት ድረስ ከእኔ በፊት በነበሩት ከተጻፉት ታሪኮች ውስጥ መዛግብቱን እፅፋለሁ፤

፲፯ እናም ከእዚያም በዐይኖቼ የተመለከትኳቸውን ነገሮች ታሪክ ፅፌአለሁ።

፲፰ እናም የፃፍኩትም ታሪክ ትክክለኛ እንዲሁም እውነተኛ መሆናቸውን እውቃለሁኝ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በቋንቋችንም ውሱንነት ምክንያት ልንፅፋቸው የማይቻሉን ብዙ ነገሮች አሉ።

፲፱ እናም አሁን ስለራሴ የምናገረውን አበቃለሁና፣ በፊቴ ስለነበሩት ነገሮች ዘገባዬን እቀጥላለሁ።

፳ እናም እኔ ሞርሞን ነኝና፣ የሌሂ ቀጥተኛ ዘር ነኝ። አባቶቻችንን ከኢየሩሳሌም ምድር በማስወጣቱ (እናም ከምድሪቱ እንዳወጣቸው ከእርሱ ከራሱ በቀር ማንም አያውቅም) እናም ለእኔና ለህዝቤ ለነፍሳችን ደህንነት እውቀትን አብዝቶ ስለሰጠን አምላኬን እንዲሁም አዳኚ የሆነውን ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስን ለማወደስ ምክንያት አለኝ።

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

፳፩ በእርግጥ የያዕቆብን ቤት ባርኳል፤ እናም ለዮሴፍም ዘር መሃሪ ሆኗል።

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

፳፪ እናም የሌሂ ልጆችም ትዕዛዛቱን እስከጠበቁ ድረስ እንደቃሉም ባርኳቸዋልና እንዲበለፀጉ አድርጓል።

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

፳፫ አዎን፣ እናም በእርግጥ በድጋሚም የዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪት የሆኑት ጌታ አምላካቸውን እንዲያውቁ ያደርጋቸዋል።

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

፳፬ እናም ጌታ በእርግጥም ህያው እንደሆነ፣ የያዕቆብ ዘር ቅሪት የሆኑትን በሙሉ በምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ የተበተኑትን ከምድር ከአራቱም ማዕዘን ይሰበሰባቸዋል።

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

፳፭ እናም ከያዕቆብ ቤትም ጋር ቃል ኪዳን እንደገባም፣ የያዕቆብ ቤት በሙሉ ከእነርሱ ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን እንዲያውቁ፣ በራሱም ጊዜ ከያዕቆብ ቤት ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያሟላል።

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

፳፮ እናም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሆነው ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ አዳኞቻቸውን ያውቃሉ፤ እናም ከተበተኑበት ሥፍራ ከምድር ከአራቱም ማዕዘናት ወደራሳቸው ምድር ይሰበሰባሉ፤ አዎን፣ ጌታም ህያው እንደሆነ ይህም ይሆናል። አሜን።

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

፫ ኔፊ ፮

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝብ እያንዳንዱ፣ ከነቤተሰቡ፣ ከብቶቻቸውና መንገዳቸው፣ ፈረሶቻቸውና የቀንድ ከብቶቻቸው እናም የእነርሱ ከሆኑት ሁሉም ነገሮች ጋር በሃያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት ወደራሳቸው ቦታ ተመለሱ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰንቃቸውን በሙሉ አልተመገቡም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ያልተመገቧቸውን ከሁሉም አይነት እህልና፣ ወርቃቸውን፣ እናም ብራቸውንና፣ የከበሩ ነገሮቻቸውን በሙሉ ወሰዱ፣ እናም ከሰሜንና ከደቡብ፣ ከምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን እንዲሁም ከምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል ወደራሳቸው ምድር እንዲሁም ወደ ይዘታዎቻቸው ተመለሱ።

፫ እናም ለማናውያን ሆነው ለመቅረት ይፈልጉ የነበሩት፣ የምድሪቱን ሠላም እንዲጠብቁ ቃል ኪዳን የገቡት ዘራፊዎች፣ ህይወታቸውን ለማቆየት ይሰሩበት ዘንድ በቁጥራቸው መጠን መሬት ተሰጣቸው፤ እናም እንደዚህ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ሠላምን አሰፈኑ።

፬ እናም በድጋሚ በታላቅ ሁኔታ መበልፀግና መጨመር ጀመሩ፤ እናም ሃያ ስድስተኛውና ሃያ ሰባተኛው ዓመት አለፈ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ታላቅ የሆነ ሰምምነት ነበር፤ ህግጋታቸውንም በሚዛናዊነትና በፍትሃዊ ፍርድ መሰረት ሰሩ።

፭ እናም አሁን ህዝቡ ወደመተላለፍ ካልወደቁ በስተቀር በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉ ያለማቋረጥ ለመበልፀግ የሚከለክላቸው ምንም ነገር አልነበረም።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ ጊድጊድና፣ ዳኛው ላኮኔዎስ፣ እናም ተሹመው የነበሩት መሪዎች ነበሩ በምድሪቱ ላይ ይህንን ታላቅ ሠላም የመሰረቱት።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአዲስ ሁኔታም የተሰሩ ብዙ ከተሞች ነበሩ፤ እናም የታደሱ ብዙ አርጌ ከተሞችም ነበሩ።

፰ እናም ብዙ አውራጎዳናዎችም ተሰርተው ነበር፤ እናም ከአንዱ ከተማ ወደ ሌላኛው ከተማና፣ ከአንደኛው ምድር ወደ ሌላኛው፣ እንዲሁም ከሰፍራ ሰፍራ የሚያመሩ ብዙ መንገዶች ተሰርተው ነበር።

፱ እናም ሃያ ሰምንተኛው ዓመት እንደዚህ አለፈ፤ እናም ህዝቡ ዘላቂታ ያለው ሠላምን አገኙ።

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

፲ ገር ግን በሃያ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት በህዝቡ መካከል ጥቂት ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ እናም አንዳንድ ሰዎችም እጅግ ሀብታም በመሆናቸው እስከ ታላቅ ማሳደድም ድረስ በኩራት እንዲሁም ትዕቢት ተነሳሰተው ነበር፤

፲፩ በምድሪቱም ብዙ ነጋዴዎች፣ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ የህግ አዋቂዎች፣ እናም ብዙ ሹማምንት ነበሩ።

፲፪ እናም ህዝቡ እንደ ሀብቱና ለትምህርቱ ባለው ዕድል መሰረት በደረጃ መከፋፈል ጀመሩ፤ አዎን፣ አንዳንድ ሰዎች በድህነታቸው የተነሳ አላዋቂዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ሌሎች ደግሞ ሀብታሞች በመሆናቸው ታላቅ ዕውቀትን ተቀብለዋል።

፲፫ አንዳንድ ሰዎች በኩራት ሲወጠሩ፣ እናም ሌሎች እጅግ ትሁት ነበሩ፤ ሌሎች ወቀሳን በወቀሳ ሲመልሱ እንዲሁም ሌሎች ሰደትንና ሁሉንም አይነት ሰቃዮች ይቀበሉ ነበር፤ እናም በድጋሚም ለመሳደብ አይመለሱም፣ ነገር ግን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ትሁት እንዲሁም የተጸጸቱ ነበሩ።

፲፬ እናም እንደዚህ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ታላቅ ጥፋት መጣ፣ በዚህም የተነሳ በቤተክርስቲያኗ መከፋፈል ተጀመረ፤ አዎን፣ በዚህም የተነሳ በሠላሳኛው ዓመት ወደ እውነተኛው እምነት ተለውጠው ከነበሩት ጥቂት ላማናውያን መካከል በስተቀር፣ በምድሪቱ በሙሉ በተክርስቲያኗ ተከፋፍላ ነበር፤ እናም እነርሱም ፅኑ፣ የማይለወጡ፣ እናም የማይነቃነቁ፣ ባላቸው ትጋት ሁሉ የጌታን ትዕዛዛት ለመጠበቅ ፈቃደኞች በመሆናቸው ከእውነተኛው እምነታቸው አይሸሹም።

፲፭ እንግዲህ የህዝቡ የዚህ ክፋት መንስኤው ይህ ነበር—ይህን ህዝብ ሁሉንም ዐይነት ክፋት እንዲያደርግ ለማነሳሳት፣ እናም በኩራት እንዲወጣጠሩ ለማድረግ፤ ኃይልንና ስልጣንን፣ እናም ሀብትንና የዓለምን ከንቱ ነገሮች እንዲሹ ለመፈተን ስይጣን ታላቅ ሀይል ነበረው።

፲፮ እናም ስይጣን የሰዎችን ልብ ሁሉንም ዐይነት ክፋት እንዲሰሩ እንደዚህ መርቷቸዋል፤ ስለዚህ በሠላሙ ተደስተዋል፣ ነገር ግን ለጥቂት ዓመታት ብቻ ነበር።

፲፯ እናም በሠላሳኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ—ህዝቡም ዲያብሎስ ሊመራቸው በፈለገበት ወደማንኛቸውም ፈተናዎች እንዲገቡና፣ የፈለገውን የትኛውን ዐይነት ክፋት እንዲሰሩ ለረጅም ጊዜ ተለቀው ስለነበር፣ እናም በዚህ በሠላሳኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ላይ እንደዚህ አስቃቂ በሆነ ኃጢያት ውስጥ ነበሩ።

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

፲፰ እንግዲህ ባለማወቅ ኃጢአትን አልሰሩም፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱን በተመለከተ ተምረው ስለነበሩ የእግዚአብሔርን ፈቃድ ያውቁት ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ሆነ ብለው በእግዚአብሔር ላይ አምጸዋል።

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ ይህ በላኮኔዎስ ልጅ በላኮኔዎስ ዘመን ነበር፤ የላኮኔዎስ ልጅ የአባቱን ወንበር ይዞ እናም ህዝቡን በዚህ አመት ያስተዳደረው ነበርና።

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

፳ እናም ስለህዝቡ ኃጢአትና ክፋት በምድሪቱ ላይ በህዝቡ መካከል በመቆም በድፍረት በመሰበክና በመመስከር እናም ጌታ ለህዝቡ የሚያደርገውን ቤዛነት በሌላ አነጋገር የክርስቶስን ትንሳኤ በተመለከተ ከሰማይ ተነሳሰተው የተላኩ ሰዎች ነበሩ። እናም እርሱም በድፍረት ስለሞቱና ስለሰቃዩ መሰከሩ።

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

፳፩ እንግዲህ ስለነዚህ ነገሮች በመመስከራቸው ምክንያት እጅግ የተቆጡ ብዙ ሰዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም ተቆጥተው የነበሩት በአብዛኛው ዋና ዳኞች፣ እናም የካህናት አለቆች፣ እንዲሁም ጠበቃዎች ነበሩ፤ አዎን፣ ጠበቃዎች የነበሩት በሙሉ እነዚህን ነገሮች በመሰከሩት ተቆጥተው ነበር።

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

፳፪ እንግዲህ ቅጣቱም በምድሪቱ ገዢ ካልተፈረመበት በቀር ማንንም በሞት የመቅጣት ስልጣን ያላቸው ጠበቃዎች ዳኛም ሆነ የካህናት አለቃ አልነበሩም።

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

፳፫ እንግዲህ ክርስቶስን የሚመለከቱ ነገሮችን የመሰከሩ፤ በድፍረት የተናገሩ፣ የመሞታቸው እውቀት ወደ አስተዳዳሪው ከሞቱ በኋላ ብቻ እንዲመጣም በዳኞቻቸው በሚሰጥር የተገደሉ ብዙዎች ነበሩ።

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

፳፬ አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህ ማንም ሰው ከምድሪቱ አስተዳዳሪ ስልጣን ካልተሰጠው መገደል የለበትም ከሚለው ከምድሪቱ ህግጋት ጋር የሚቃረን ነበር—

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

፳፭ ስለዚህ የጌታን ነቢያት እንዲሞቱ ከህጉ ውጪ በፈረዱባቸው ዳኞች ላይ በዛራሄምላ ምድር ለነበረው አስተዳዳሪ አቤቱታ ቀረበ።

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

፳፮ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ተወሰዱ፣ እናም በህዝቡ በተሰጠው ህግ መሰረት በሰሩት ወንጀል ላይ እንዲፈረዱባቸው በዳኛው ፊት ቀረቡ።

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

፳፯ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚያም ዳኞች ብዙ ጓደኞችና ወገን ነበሩአቸው፤ እናም ቀሪዎቹ አዎን፣ ሁሉም ጠበቆችና፣ የካህናት አለቆች፣ እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ስብሰበው እናም በህጉም እንዲፈረድባቸው ከቀረቡት ዳኞች ወገኖች ጋር ተቀላቅለው ነበር።

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

፳፰ እናም በአንድነት ወደ ቃል ኪዳን፣ አዎን፣ በጥንት ጊዜ በነበሩት ወደተሰጠው ቃል ኪዳን፣ በጻድቅነት ላይ ለመተባበር በዲያብሎስ ወደተሰጠው እና ወደሚተዳደረው ቃል ኪዳን ገቡ።

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

፳፱ ስለዚህ እነርሱም በጌታ ሰዎች ላይ በአንድነት ተባበሩ፣ እናም እነርሱንም ለማጥፋትና በህጉ መሰረት ሊፈረድባቸው አጥብቆ ከያዛቸው ከፍትህ በግድያ ጥፋተኛ የነበሩትን ለማዳን ቃል ኪዳን ገብተው ነበር።

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

፴ እናም ህጉንና የሀገር መብታቸውን ለማስጠበቅ አልተቀበሉም፤ እናም አስተዳዳሪውን ለማጥፋትና ምድሪቱም ከእንግዲህ በነፃነት እንዳትሆን፣ ነገር ግን በንጉስ አገዛዝ ስር እንድትሆን ንጉስ በምድሪቷ ላይ ለመመስረት እርሱ በርሳቸው ቃል ኪዳን ገቡ።

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

፫ ኔፊ ፯

፩ አሁን እነሆ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ ንጉሥ እንዳልመሰረቱ አሳያችኋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን በዚህ ዓመት፤ አዎን፣ በሰላሳኛው ዓመት፣ በፍርድ ወንበሩ ላይ ጥፋትን አድርሰው ነበር፤ አዎን የምድሪቱንም ዋና ዳኛ ገደሉ።

፪ እናም ህዝቡ እርስ በርስ ተከፋፍሎ ነበር፤ እናም እያንዳንዱ ሰው በቤተሰቡና በነገድና በጓደኞቻቸው በጎሳ ተከፋፍሎ ነበር፤ እንደዚህም የምድሪቱን አስተዳደር አጠፋ።

፫ እናም እያንዳንዱ ጎሳ አለቃ ወይንም መሪ በራሱ ላይ ሾመ፤ እናም እነርሱ ጎሳዎችና የጎሳ መሪዎች ሆኑ።

፬ እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ብዙ ቤተሰብ እናም ነገድና ጓደኞች ያልነበሩት ማንም ሰው አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ ጎሳዎቹም እጅግ ታላቅ ሆኑ።

፭ እንግዲህ ይህ ሁሉ ተደረገ፤ እናም እስካሁን በመካከላቸው ጦርነት አልነበረም፤ እናም ለሰይጣን ኃይል እራሳቸውን የሰጡ ስለነበር ይህ ሁሉ ክፋት በህዝቡ ላይ መጥቷል።

፮ እናም ነቢያቱን በገደሉት ጓደኞችና፣ ነገዶች ሚስጢራዊ ሴራዎች የተነሳ የመንግስት ደንቦች ጠፍተው ነበር።

፯ እናም ይበልጥ ፃድቃን የነበሩት ሰዎች ሙሉ በሙሉ ኃጢአተኞች እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ታላቅ ፀብ እንዲሆን አደረጉ፣ አዎን፣ በመካከላቸው ጥቂት ፃድቃኖች ብቻ ነበሩ።

፰ እናም አብዛኞቹም ሰዎች ውሻ ወደ ትፋቱ እንደሚመለሱ፣ ደግሞም የታጠበች እሪያ በጭቃ ለመንከባለል እንደምትሄድ በድጋሚ ከፅድቅ ወደ ክፋት ሲዞሩ ስድስተኛው ዓመት አላለፈም ነበር።

፱ እንግዲህ በህዝቡ ላይ ታላቅ ክፋትን ያመጣው ይህ ሚስጢራዊው ሴራ እራሳቸውን በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም ከበላያቸው ያዕቆብ ብለው የሚጠሩትን ሰው አስቀመጡ፤

፲ እናም እርሱን ንጉሳችን ብለው ጠሩት፤ ስለዚህ እርሱም በክፋቶቹ ቡድን ላይ ንጉሥ ሆነ፤ እናም እርሱ ስለ ኢየሱስ በመስከሩት ነቢያት ላይ ድምፅ ከሰጡት ዋና የነበር ነው።

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

16 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እያንዳንዱ ህግጋቱን መሪዎቻቸው ከማቋቋሙ በስተቀር በእንድነት እንደተሰበሰቡት የጎሳ ሰዎች አይነት በቁጥር በርካታ አልነበሩም፤ ይሁን እንጂ እርስ በርስ ጠላቶች ነበሩ፤ ምንም እንኳን እነርሱ ፃድቃን ያልነበሩ ቢሆኑም አስተዳደሩን ለማጥፋት ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ከገቡት ጋር በጥላቻ አንድ ሆነው ነበር።

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

17 ስለዚህ ያዕቆብ ጠላቶቻቸው ከእነርሱ ይበልጥ ብዙ መሆናቸውን በመመልከቱ፤ የቡድኑ ንጉስ በመሆኑ፤ ህዝቡን በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን ጫፍ በኩል እንዲሸሹና፤ ከተቃዋሚዎቹም ጋር እስከሚገናኙ ድረስ ለራሳቸው መንግሥት እንዲያቋቁሙ (ብዙ ተቃዋሚዎችም እንዲኖሩ እነርሱን ሸግሎአቸዋልና) እናም ከጎሳ ህዝብ ጋር ለመጣላት በተገቢው ሁኔታ እንዲጠናከሩ ህዝቡን አዘዘ፤ እናም ይህንንም አደረጉ።

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

18 እናም ህዝቡን እስከሚያልፉ ድረስ እንዳይታገዱ ጉዞአቸው አጅግ ፈጣን ነበር። እናም ሠላሳኛው ዓመት እንዲህ ተፈፀመ፤ እናም የኔፊ ህዝብ ጉዳይም ይህ ነበር።

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

19 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሠላሳ አንደኛው ዓመት እያንዳንዱ ሰው በቤተሰቡ፤ በነገድና በየጓደኞቹ በጎሳው ተከፋፍሎ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ እርስ በርስ እንዳይዋጉ ስምምነት ላይ ደርሰው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን አለቆቻቸው እናም መሪዎቻቸው በነበሩት አስተሳሰብ ስለሚመሩ በህግጋት እንዲሁም በመንግሥታቸው አንድ አልሆኑም ነበር። ነገር ግን አንደኛው ጎሳ ሌላኛውን እንዳይተላለፍ ጥብቅ ህጎችን አወጡ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በተወሰነ ደረጃ በምድሪቱ ላይ ስላም ሆነ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ልባቸው ከጌታ ከእምላካቸው ተመልሶ ነበር፤ እናም ነቢያቶችን በድንጋይ ወግረዋልና ከመካከላቸውም አውጥተው ጥለዋቸዋል።

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

20 እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊ—በመላዕክቶችና ደግሞ በጌታ ድምፅ በመጎብኘቱ፤ ስለዚህ መላእክቶችንም በማየቱ፤ እናም የዐይን ምስክር በመሆኑና፤ ስለክርስቶስ አገልግሎት በተመለከተ ያውቅ ዘንድ ሀይል ስለተሰጠው፤ እናም ደግሞ ከፅድቅ ሥራቸው ወደ ክፋትና እርኩስታቸው በፍጥነት ስለመመለሳቸው የዐይን ምስክር በመሆኑ፤

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

፲፮ ስለዚህ በልባቸው ጠጣርነት እናም በእዕምርኦቻቸው መታወር በማዘኑ—በዚያው ዓመት ወደእነርሱ ሄደ፣ እናም በድፍረት ስለንሰሃ እንዲሁም በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እምነት ለኃጢአት ስርየት እንደሚገኝ መመስከር ጀመረ።

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

፲፯ እናም ብዙ ነገሮችን ሰበከላቸውና፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች ሊፃፉ አልቻሉም፣ እናም ግማሹን እንኳን ብቁ አይሆኑም፤ ስለዚህ በዚህ መጽሐፍ አልተፃፉም። እናም ኔሬ በሃይል እንዲሁም በታላቅ ሥልጣን አገለገለ።

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከእነርሱ የበለጠ ሰልጣን ስለነበረው በእርሱ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ የእርሱን ቃል ላለማመን አስቸጋሪ ይሆንባቸዋልና፣ በጌታ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እምነቱ ታላቅ ስለነበር መላእክት በየቀኑ ያገለግሉት ነበርና።

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

፳ እናም በኢየሱስ ስም ዲያብሎስን እንዲሁም እርኩስ መንፈስን አስወጥቷል፤ እናም በህዝቡ በድንጋይ ከተወገረና በሞት እንዲሰቃይ ከተደረገ በኋላ ወንድሙንም እንኳን ከሞት አስነሰቷል።

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

፳፩ እነም ህዝቡ ይህን ተመለከቱ፣ እናም ስለዚህም መስክረዋልና፣ በኃይሉም ምክንያት ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ እናም ደግሞ በኢየሱስ ስም በህዝቡ ፊትም ብዙ ተአምራትን አድርጓል።

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሠላሳ እንደኛው ዓመት አለፈ፣ እናም ወደ ጌታ የተለወጡ ጥቂት ሰዎች ብቻ ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን ብዙዎች በሚያምኑበት በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ በነበረው የእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና መንፈስ እንዲሁም ሥልጣን እንደተጎበኙ በእውነት ለህዝቡ አስታውቀዋል።

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

፳፫ እናም ዲያብሎሶች ከውስጣቸው የወጣላቸውና፣ ከህመማቸውና፣ ከደዌም የዳኑ፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ደርሶ በላያቸው ላይ እንደሰራና እንደተፈወሱ ለህዝቡ በእውነት ገልጸዋል፤ እናም ደግሞ ምልክቶችን አሳዩና፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ጥቂት ታምራቶችን ሰሩ።

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

፳፬ እንደዚህም ሠላሳ ሁለተኛውም ዓመት አለፈ። እናም በሠላሳ ሦስተኛው ዓመት መጀመሪያ ኔሬ ወደ ህዝቡ ጮኸ፤ እናም ንሰሃንና የኃጢአት ስርየትን ሰበከላቸው።

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

፳፭ እንግዲህ ወደ ንሰሃ ከመጡት በውሃ ያልተጠመቀ እንድም እንደሌለ እንድታስታውሱ አፈልጋለሁ።

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

፳፭ ስለዚህ ንሰሀ እንደገቡ እና ለጎጥያታቸው ሰርዮት እንዳገኙ በእግዚአብሔር እና በህዝብ ፊት ምስክር እንዲሆን ወደእነርሱ የሚመጡትን እንደዚህ አይነት ሰዎችም በእነርሱ በውሀ እንዲጠመቁ ዘንድ፣ ለዚህም አገልግሎት ሰዎች በኔሬ ተሹመው ነበር።

፳፮ እናም በዚህ ዓመት መጀመሪያ ለንሰሃ የተጠመቁ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም የዓመቱ አብዛኛው ክፍል አለፈ።

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

፫ ኔፊ ፰

፩ እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በምዝገባችን መሰረት፣ እናም ምዝገባችን እውነት መሆኑን እናውቃለን፣ ምክንያቱም እነሆ፣ መዛግብቱን የጠበቀው ፃድቅ ሰው ነበርና— እርሱም በኢየሱስ ስም ብዙ ታምራቶችን በእውነት አድርጓል፤ እናም ሁለንተናውን ከክፋት ካላነፃው በስተቀር በኢየሱስ ስም ተአምራት ሊሰራ የሚቻለው ማንም ሰው አልነበረም—

፪ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ፣ በዚህ ሰው የጊዜአችን አቆጣጠር የተሳሳተ ካልሆነ፣ ሠላሳ ሦስተኛው ዓመት አልፏል፤

፫ እናም ህዝቡ በላማናዊው ነቢዩ ሳሙኤል የተሰጠውን ምልክት፣ አዎን፣ በዚያ ጊዜም በምድሪቱ ገጽ ለሦስት ቀናት ጨለማ ለሚሆንበት በታላቅ አትኩሮት መመልከት ጀመሩ።

፬ እናም ብዙ ምልክቶች የተሰጡም ቢሆን፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ታላቅ መጠራጠር፣ እናም ፀብ መሆን ጀምሮ ነበር።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሠላሳ አራተኛው ዓመት በመጀመሪያው ወር፣ በወሩ በአራተኛው ቀን፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ በጭራሽ ታይቶ የማይታወቅ ታላቅ ውሽንፍር ተነሳ።

፮ እናም ደግሞ ታላቅና አሰፈሪ የሆነ ኃይለኛ ነፋስም ነበር፤ እናም ምድሪቱን በሙሉ ሲያንቀጠቅጥ የምትከፈት እስከሚመስል የሚያሰፈራ ነጎድጓድ ነበር።

፯ እናም በምድሪቱ ከዚህ በፊት የማይታወቅ እጅግ ኃይለኛ የሆነ መብረቅ ነበር።

፰ እናም የዛራሄምላ ከተማ ተቃጠለች።

፱ እናም የሞሮኒ ከተማ በባህሩ ውስጥ ሰጠመች፣ እናም በዚያ የሚኖሩ ሰዎች ሰጠሙ።

፲ እናም የሞሮኒህ ከተማም በአፈር ተሸፈነች፣ ስለዚህ በከተማዋም ፈንታ ታላቅ ተራራ ሆነ።

፲፩ እናም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል ታላቅና የሚያሰፈሩ ጥፋት ነበር።

፲፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በምድሪቱ በስተሰሜን በኩል ይበልጥ ታላቅና አሰፈሪ የሆነ ጥፋት ነበር፤ እነሆም፣ በኃይለኛው ነፋስና፣ በአውሎ ነፋሱ፣ እናም በነጎድጓዱና መብረቅ፣ እንዲሁም በምድሪቱም እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነው መንቀጥቀጥ የምድሪቱ ገፅታ በሙሉ ተለውጦ ነበር፤

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

፲፫ እናም አውራ ጎዳናዎች ተሰነጣጥቀው ነበር፤ እናም የተሰተካከለው መንገድም ተበላሽቶ ነበር፤ ለጥ ያሉ ብዙ ስፍራዎች ጎርባጣ ሆኑ።

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

፲፬ እናም ብዙ ታላላቅና ታዋቂ ከተሞች ሰጠሙ፤ እናም ብዙዎችም ተቃጠሉና በከተሞቹ ያሉት ህንፃዎች በመሬት ላይ እስከሚወድቁ ድረስ ተንቀጠቀጡና፤ በዚያ የነበሩት ነዋሪዎችም ተገደሉ እናም ስፍራው ባዶ ሆነ።

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

፲፭ እናም ጥቂት ከተሞችም ተርፈው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን የነበረው ጉዳት እጅግ ታላቅ ነበር፤ እናም በእነርሱም ውስጥ ብዙ የተገደሉ ነበሩ።

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

፲፮ እናም በአውሎ ነፋሱ የተወሰዱም ጥቂቶች ነበሩ፤ እናም ከመወሰዳቸው በቀር ወዴት እንደሄዱ የሚያውቅ ማንም አልነበረም።

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

፲፯ እናም ኃያሉ ነፋስ፤ እናም ነጎድጓድና፤ መብረቅና፤ በመሬት መንቀጥቀጡ የተነሳ ምድሪቱ ሙሉ በሙሉ ገፅታዋ ተለወጠ።

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

፲፰ እናም እነሆ፤ አለቶቹም ተሰነጣጠቁ፤ በምድረ ገፅ ላይም ሁሉ ተሰባብሩ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ የተቆራረጡ ብጥስጣሽና በቀጭኑ የተሰነጣጠቁ፤ እናም ፍርክስካሽ ሆነው ተገኙ።

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነጎድጓድም፤ መብረቁም፤ ውሽንፍሩም፤ ኃያሉ ነፋስ፤ እናም የመሬት መንቀጥቀጡ በቆመበት ጊዜ—እነሆም የቆየውም ለሦስት ሰዓታት ነበር፤ ጥቂት ሰዎችም ከዚህ በበለጠ ቆይቷል ብለው ተናገረዋል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፤ እነዚህ ታላቅና አስፈሪ ነገሮች ሁሉ የተከናወኑት ለሦስት ሰዓታት ነበር—እናም ከዚያ በኋላ እነሆ፤ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ጨለማ ነበር።

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ገጽ ሁሉ ላይም ጥቅጥቅ ያለ ጨለማ ነበር፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ያልሞቱት በዚያን ስፍራ የነበሩትም ነዋሪዎች የጨለማው ጭጋግ ሊሰማቸው ይችሉ ነበር፤

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

፳፩ እናም በጨለማውም የተነሳ ምንም ብርሃን ሊሆን አልቻለም ነበር፤ ሻማም ሆነ ችቦም በማንም ሰው ሊቀጣጠል አልቻለም፤ በምርጡ እናም እጅግ ደረቅ በሆነው እንጨትም እሳት ሊቀጣጠል አልቻለም፤ ስለዚህ ባጠቃላይ ምንም ብርሃን ሊሆን አልቻለም፤

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

፳፪ እናም በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ የነበረው የጨለማ ጭጋግ እጅግ ታላቅ በመሆኑ እሳትም ሆነ ጭላንጭል፤ ፀሐይም ሆነ ጨረቃ እንዲሁም ከዋክብት አይታዩም ነበር።

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሦስት ቀናትም ምንም አይነት ብርሃን አልታየም ነበር፤ እናም በህዝቡ ሁሉ መካከልም የማያቋርጥ ሀዘንና፣ ጨኸት፣ እንዲሁም ለቅሶ ነበር፤ አዎን በጨለማውና በላያቸው ላይ በመጣው ታላቅ ጥፋት የተነሳ የህዝቡ ለቅሶ ታላቅ ነበር።

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

፳፬ እናም በአንድ ሰፍራም እንዲህ በማለት ሲጮኹ ተሰምተዋል፣ ከዚህ ታላቅና አሰፈሪ ከሆነው ቀን በፊት ንስሃ ብንገባ ኖሮ፤ እናም ወንድሞቻችን ይተርፉና በታላቁ የዛራሄምላም ከተማም በአሳቱ ባልተቃጠሉም ነበር።

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

፳፭ እናም በሌላ ሰፍራ እንዲህም በማለት ሲጮኹና፣ ሲያዘኑ ተሰምተዋል፣ ከዚህ ታላቅና አሰፈሪ ከሆነው ቀን በፊት ንስሃ ብንገባ፣ እናም ነቢያትን ባንገድል፣ እንዲሁም በድንጋይ ባንወግራቸው፣ እንዲሁም ባንወረውራቸው ኖሮ፤ ስለዚህ እናቶቻችንና፣ መልካም የሆኑት ሴቶች ልጆቻችንና ልጆቻችን ይተርፉ ነበር፤ እናም በታላቁ የሞሮኒህ ከተማ አይቀበሩም ነበር። እናም የህዝቡም ጨኸት እንደዚህ ታላቅና አሰፈሪ ነበር።

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

፫ ኔፊ ፱

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ገጽ ሁሉ ላይ ባሉ ነዋሪዎቹ መካከል አንድ ድምፅ መጥቶ እንዲህ ሲል መጮኹ ተሰማ፡

፪ ለዚህ ህዝብ ወዮ፣ ወዮ ወዮለት፣ ንሰሃ ካልገቡ በስተቀርም ለምድር ነዋሪዎች በሙሉ ወዮላቸው፤ መልካም የሆኑት የህዝቦቹ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች በመገደላቸው ዲያብሎስ ይሰቃል፤ እናም መላዕክቶቹም ይደሰታሉና፤ እናም በክፋታቸውና በእርኩስታቸው የተነሳ ነው የወደቁት!

፫ እነሆ፣ ታላቋን የዛራሄምላን ከተማ እናም ነዋሪዎችዋን በእሳት አቃጥያቸዋለሁ።

፬ እናም እነሆ፣ ታላቋን የሞርኒን ከተማና በዚያም የሚገኙትን ነዋሪዎች በባህሩ ጥልቅ እንዲሰጥሙም አድርጌአለሁ።

፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ክፋታቸውንና ርኩስታቸውን ከፊቴ ለመሸሸግ፣ የነቢያቱ እናም የቅዱሳን ደም ከእንግዲህ በኔ ላይ እንዳይመጣ ታላቋን የሞርኒህን ከተማና ነዋሪዎችዋን በመሬት ውስጥ ሸፍኜአቸዋለሁ።

፮ እናም እነሆ፣ የጌልገላ ከተማ እንድትሰጥም እናም በዚያን ስፍራ የሚገኙት ነዋሪዎችም በምድሪቱ ውስጥ እንዲቀበሩ አድርጌአለሁ፤

፯ እዎን፤ እናም የኦሪህ ከተማና ነዋሪዎችዋ፤ እናም የኢየሩሳሌም ከተማና ነዋሪዎችዋ፤ ከእንግዲህ ወዲያ የነቢያቱና የቅዱሳን ደም በእነርሱ ላይ ወደ እኔ እንዳይመጣ ክፋታቸውን እናም ርኩስታቸውን ከፊቴ ለመሸሸግ በስፍራቸው ውሃ እንዲመጣባቸው አደረግሁ።

፰ እናም እነሆ፣ የጋድያንዲን ከተማና፣ የጋድዮምናን ከተማ፣ እናም የያዕቆብን ከተማና፣ የጊምጊምኖን ከተማ፣ በሙሉ እንዲሰምጡ አደረግኳቸው፣ እናም በስፍራው ኮረብታዎችንና ሸለቆዎችን ሰራሁ፤ ከእንግዲህም ወዲያ የነቢያቱና፣ የቅዱሳን ደም በእነርሱም ላይ ወደ እኔ እንዳይመጣ ክፋታቸውን፣ እናም ርኩስታቸውን ከፊቴ ለመሸሸግ በስፍራው የነበሩትን ነዋሪዎች በመሬት ውስጥ ቀበርኳቸው።

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocom and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ከምድር ኃጢአቶች ሁሉ በላይ በነበረው ኃጢአቶቻቸውና ክፋቶች፤ በሚሰጥራዊው ግድያቸው፣ እንዲሁም በህብረታቸው የተነሳ ታላቋ ከተማ የንጉሥ ያዕቆብ ህዝብ የሰፈረባት ያዕቆቡጋትን በእሳት እንድትቃጠል አደረግሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ነበሩ የህዝቤን ሠላም እናም የምድሪቱን አገዛዝ ያጠፋት፤ ስለዚህ ከእንግዲህም ወዲያ የነቢያቱምና የቅዱሳን ደም በእነርሱም ላይ ወደ እኔ እንዳይመጣ ከፊቴም ለማጥፋት እንዲቃጠሉ አደረግሁ።

፲ እናም እነሆ፣ ስለ ኃጢአታቸውና ርኩሳታቸው እንዲናገሩ የላኳቸውን ነቢያት በማሰወጣት በሰሩት ክፋትና፣ በድንጋይ ስለወገሩአቸው፣ የላማን ከተማና፣ የኢዮቭ ከተማ፣ እናም የጋድ ከተማና፣ የቂሽቁመንን ከተማ፣ እንዲሁም ነዋሪዎቻቸው በእሳት እንዲቃጠሉ አደረግሁ፤

፲፩ እናም ሁሉንም አሰወጥተው ስለወረወሩአቸው፣ በመካከላቸውም ምንም ፃድቅ የሆነ ባለመኖሩ በመካከላቸውም የላኳቸው ነቢያትና፣ ፃድቃኖች ደም ከመሬት ወደ እኔ እንዳይጮህ ክፋቶቻቸው፣ እናም ርኩሳታቸው ከፊቴም ይደበቁ ዘንድ እሳት ላኩባቸውና፣ አጠፋቸው።

፲፪ እናም በክፋቶቻቸውና በርኩሳታቸው የተነሳም በዚህች ምድር፣ እናም በዚህ ህዝብ ላይ ብዙ ታላቅ ጥፋቶች እንዲሆኑ አደረግሁ።

፲፫ አቤቱ ከእነርሱ የበለጠ ፃድቅ በመሆናችሁ እናንተ የተረፉችሁትን ሁሉ እፈውሳችሁ ዘንድ ለኃጥያታችሁ ንሰሃ ገብታችሁ እናም ተለውጣችሁ አሁን ወደ እኔ አትመለሱምን?

፲፬ አዎን በእውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ወደ እኔ ከመጣችሁ ዘለዓለማዊ ህይወትን ታገኛላችሁ። እነሆ የምህረት ክንዳ ወደ እናንተ ተዘርግታለች፣ እናም ማንም ቢመጣ እቀበለዋለሁ፣ እናም ወደ እኔ የሚመጡ የተባረኩ ናቸው።

፲፭ እነሆ እኔ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የሆንኩኝ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ነኝ። ሰማያትንና ምድርን፣ እናም በውስጧ ያሉትን ነገሮች በሙሉ ፈጥራለሁ። ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ ከአብ ጋር ነበርኩኝ። እኔ በአብ እንዳለሁ አብም በእኔ አለ፤ በእኔም የአብ ስሙን አሰከብኻል።

፲፮ የእኔ ወደሆኑት መጣሁና፣ የራሴ የሆኑትም አልተቀበሉኝም። እናም የእኔን መምጣት በተመለከተ ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ተፈጽመዋል።

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

፲፯ እናም ለተቀበሉኝ ሁሉ ለእነርሱ የእግዚአብሔር ልጆች ይሆኑ ዘንድ ሥልጣንን ሰጠኋቸው፣ እናም በሰሜ ለሚያምኑትም ሁሉ እንዲህም አደርጋለሁ፣ እነሆም በእኔም ቤዛነት ይመጣልና በእኔም የሙሴ ህግ ተፈፀሟል።

፲፰ እኔ የአለም ብርሃንና ህይወት ነኝ። አልፋና ኦሜጋ፤ የመጀመሪያ እና የመጨረሻ ነኝ።

፲፱ እናም ከእንግዲህ ደምን በማፍሰስ አታበረክቱልኝም፤ አዎን፣ መስዋዳቶቻችሁና የሚቃጠሉት መስዋዳቶች ማንኛውንም ስለማልቀበል መስዋዳቶቻችሁ እናም የሚቃጠሉት መስዋዳቶቻችሁ ይቆማሉ።

፳ እናም ለእኔም መስዋዳት የተሰበረ ልብና የተዋረደ መንፈስ ታቀርባላችሁ። እናም ወደ እኔም በተሰበረ ልብና በተዋረደ መንፈስ የሚመጣ በእሳትና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ አጠምቀዋለሁ፤ ላማናውያንን እንኳን ቢሆን በመለወጣቸው ወቅት በእኔ በነበራቸው እምነት የተነሳ በእሳት እንዲሁም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ እንደተጠመቁት፣ እናም ይህንንም አያውቁም ነበር።

፳፩ እነሆ ዓለምን ከኃጢአት ለማዳን ለዓለም ቤዛነትን ለማምጣት ወደ ዓለም መጥቻለሁ።

፳፪ ስለዚህ ንስሃ የሚገባን እናም እንደህፃን ልጅ ወደ እኔ የሚመጣንም እቀበለዋለሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንግሥትም እንደነዚህ ላሉት ናትና። እነሆ፣ እንደነዚህ ላሉትም ህይወቴን ሰጥቻለሁና፣ እናም በድጋሚም እንሰቼዋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ የምድር ዳርቻ ሁሉ ንስሃ ግቡ፣ ወደ እኔም ኑና፣ ዳኑ።

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

፫ ኔፊ ፲

፩ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ የነበሩት ሰዎች ሁሉ ይህንን ንግግር አድምጠዋል፣ እናም ስለዚያም መስክረዋል። እናም ከዚህ ንግግር በኋላ በምድሪቱ ላይ ለብዙ ሰዓታት ፀጥታ ነበር፤

፪ የህዝቡም መገረም ታላቅ በመሆኑ ስለተገደሉት ወገኖቻቸው ማልቀስ እናም መጮሃቸውን አቆሙ፣ ስለዚህ ለብዙ ሰዓታት በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይም ፀጥታ ነበር።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ህዝቡም በድጋሚ ድምፅ እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣ እናም ህዝቡ ሁሉ ሰምተውትና፣ መስክረውበት ነበር፣

፬ አቤቱ የእነዚህ የጠፉት ታላላቅ ከተሞች ሰዎች፣ የያዕቆብ ዝርያዎች፣ አዎን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆናችሁ፣ ዶሮ ጫጩትዎችዎን በክንፎችዎ እንደምትሰበሰብ ስንት ጊዜ ሰበሰብኳችሁ እናም መገብኳችሁ።

፭ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ዶሮ ጫጩትዎችዎን በክንፎችዎ እንደምትሰበሰብ ስንት ጊዜ ሰበሰብኳችሁ፣ አዎን፣ አቤቱ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆናችሁ የጠፉት፣ አዎን፣ አቤቱ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆናችሁ እናንተ በኢየሩሳሌም የምትኖሩ፤ እናንተ እንደ ጠፋችሁትም አይነት፤ አዎን፣ ዶሮ ጫጩትዎችዎን እንደምትሰበሰብ ሁሉ እሰበሰባችሁ ዘንድ ስንት ጊዜ ወደድሁ፣ እናም እናንተ ግን አልወደዳችሁም።

፮ እናንተ ያዳንኳችሁ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ አቤቱ ንሰሃ ከገባችሁ እናም በልባችሁ ሙሉ አላማ ወደ እኔ ከተመለሳችሁ ዶሮ ጫጩትዎችዎን በክንፎችዎ ስር እንደምትሰበሰብ ስንት ጊዜ እሰበሰባችኋለሁ።

፯ ካልሆነ ግን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ የአባቶቻችሁ ቃል ኪዳን እስከሚፈፀምበት ጊዜ ድረስ የመኖሪያችሁ ስፍራ ባዶ ይሆናል።

፰ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡ እነዚህን ቃላት ከሰሙ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ወገኖቻቸውንና ጓደኞቻቸውን በማጣታቸው በድጋሚ ማልቀስና መጮህ ጀመሩ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ሁኔታ ሦስቱ ቀናት አለፉ። እናም በጠዋት ነበር፣ እናም ጨለማው ከምድር ገጽ ላይም ተበተነ፣ ምድርም መንቀጥቀጥዋን አቆመች፣ አለቶችም መፈረካከሳቸውን አቆሙና፣ የሚያሰፈራውም ማቃሰት ቆመ፤ እናም ሀይለኛ የነበረው ሁከትም ቆመ።

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

፲ እናም ምድሪቱ በአንድነት ተጣበቀችም፣ ጸናችም፤ እናም በህይወት የተረፉት ሰዎች ሀዘንና፣ ለቅሶ፣ እንዲሁም ዋይታም ቆመ፤ እናም ሀዘናቸው በደስታ፣ እንዲሁም ልቅሶአቸው ወደ ውዳሴና ወደ አዳኛቸው ጌታ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስም ምሰጋና ተለወጠ፤

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

፲፩ እናም በነቢያቱ የተነገሩትም ቅዱሳን መፃሕፍት እስከዚህ ድረስ ተፈፀመዋል።

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

፲፪ እናም የዳኑትም ይበልጥ ፃድቃን የነበሩት ሰዎች ናቸውና፣ ነቢያትን የተቀበሉትና በድንጋይ ያልወገሩአቸውም እነርሱ ነበሩ፤ እናም የተረፉትም የቅዱሳንን ደም ያላፈሰሱት ነበሩ—

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

፲፫ እናም እነርሱም ድነዋልና፣ አልሰመጡም፣ እንዲሁም በምድር ውስጥም አልተቀበሩም፤ በጥልቅ ባህሩ ውስጥም ስጥመው አልቀሩም ነበር፤ እናም በእሳት አልተቃጠሉም፣ አልወደቁባቸውምና፣ በመደፋፈጥ አልሞቱም፤ እናም በአውሎ ነፋሱም አልተወሰዱም ነበር፤ በጭሰና በጨለማውም ጭጋግ አልተሸነፉም ነበር።

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

፲፬ እናም አሁን ማንም የሚያነብ ይረዳ፤ ቅዱስ መጽሐፍ ያለው፣ ይመርምራቸው፣ እናም እነዚህ በእሳትና፣ በጭሰ፣ እንዲሁም በኃይለኛው ነፋስ፣ እናም እነርሱን ለመዋጥ በመሬት መከፈት የሆኑት ሞቶችና፣ ጥፋቶች ሁሉ፣ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ የሆኑት የብዙዎቹ ቅዱሳን ነቢያት ትንቢቶች እንዲፈፀሙ እንደሆነም ይይና ይመልከት።

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ አዎን፣ ብዙዎች በክርስቶስ መምጣት ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች መስክረዋል፣ እናም ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች በመመስከራቸው ተገድለዋል።

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

፲፮ አዎን፣ ነቢዩ ዜኖስ ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች መስክረ፣ እናም ደግሞ ዜኖቅ እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ተናግሯል፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በተለይ የዘርቻቸው ቅሪት ስለሆነው ስለእኛ ተናግረዋል።

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

፲፯ እነሆ፣ አባታችን ያዕቆብ ደግሞ ስለዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪቶች መስክሯል። እናም እነሆ፣ እኛ የዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪቶች አይደለንም? እናም ስለእኛ የሚመስክሩት እነዚህ ነገሮች አባታችን ሌሂ ከኢየሩሳሌም ባመጣቸው የነሃስ ስሌዳዎች ላይ አልተጻፉም?

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሠላሳ አራተኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ፤ እነሆ፣ የተረፉት የኔሬ ሰዎችና ደግሞ ላማናውያን ተብለው የሚጠሩት የተረፉት፣ ታላቅ ደግ ነገርን እንደተመለከቱ፣ እናም በራሳቸውም ላይ ታላቅ በረከት እንደፈሰሰባቸው አሳያችኋለሁ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ክርስቶስ ወደ ሰማይ እንዳረገ ወዲያውም በእውነት ለእነርሱ እራሱን ገለጸላቸው—

፲፱ ሰውነቱን ለእነርሱ አሳያቸውና፣ አገለገላቸው፤ እናም የአገልግሎቱም ታሪክ ከዚህ በኋላ የሚሰጥ ይሆናል። ስለዚህ በዚህ ጊዜ ንግግሬን አቆማለሁ።

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inso-much that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

ህዝቡ በላጋስ ምድር በተሰበሰቡበት ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ለኔሬ ህዝብ እራሱን ገለጸም፣ አስተማራቸውም፤ እናም በዚህ መንገድ ነበር እራሱን ያሳያቸው።

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

፫ ኔሬ ፲፩

3 Nephi 11

፩ እናም እሁን እንዲህ ሆነ የኔሬ ህዝብ የሆኑ በቁጥር ብዙ የነበሩት በላጋስ ምድር በነበረው ቤተመቅደስ ዙሪያ በአንድነት ተሰብስበው ነበር፤ እናም እርሱ በርሳቸውም ተገርመውና ተደንቀው ነበር፤ እናም እንዳቸው ለሌላኛቸውም ታላቅና አስገራሚ የነበሩትን ለውጦች እያሳዩ ነበር።

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

፪ እናም ደግሞ ሰለሞቱ የተሰጠውን ምልክት ተሰጥቶ ስለነበረው ስለዚህ ስለኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ በተመለከተ ይነጋገሩ ነበር።

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ በርሳቸው በሚነጋገሩበትም ወቅት፣ ከሰማይ የመጣ የሚመስል ድምፅ ሰሙ፤ የሰሙትንም ድምፅ ለመረዳት ባለመቻላቸው ዙሪያውን ተመለከቱ፤ እናም ድምፁ ሻካራ አልነበረም፣ ወይም የጨኸት ድምፅም አልነበረም፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ድምፁ አነስተኛ ቢሆንም እንኳን የሰሙት ውስጣቸውን ስንጥቆ ገብቶ፣ በዚህም የተነሳ ከሰውነታቸው ያልተንቀሳቀሰ ክፍል አልነበረም፤ አዎን፣ እስከነፍሳቸው ድረስ ዘልቆ ገብቷል፣ እናም ልባቸውን እንዲቃጠል አድርጓል።

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ ድምፁን ሰሙት፣ እናም አልተረዱትም ነበር።

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

፭ እናም በድጋሚ ለሦስተኛ ጊዜ ድምፁን ሰሙትና፣ ለማዳመጥ ጀርእቸውን ከፈቱ፤ እናም ዐይኖቻቸው ድምጹ ወደነበረበት እየተመለከቱ ነበር፤ ድምፁ ወደሚመጣበት ወደ ሰማይ አቅጣጫም በፅናት ተመለከቱ።

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ለሦስተኛ ጊዜም የሰሙትን ድምፅ ተረዱት፤ እንዲህም አላቸው፦

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

፯ እነሆ በእርሱ ደስ የሚለኝ፤ ሰሜንም ያከበርኩበት፣ የምወደው ልጄ ይህ ነው—እርሱን ሰሙት።

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በተረዱትም ጊዜ በድጋሚ በሰማይ ላይ ዐይናቸውን ጣሉ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ አንድ ሰው ከሰማይ ሲወርድ ተመለከቱ፤ እናም እርሱ ነጭ ልብስ ለብሶ ነበር፤ እናም ወረደና በመካከላቸው ቆመ፤ እናም የህዝቡም ዐይን ሙሉ በሙሉ በእርሱ ላይ ነበር፤ እናም እርሱ በርሳቸውም ለመነጋገር አልደፈሩም ነበር፤ እናም መላዕክት እንደታያቸው በማሰባቸውም ምን ማለት እንደሆነ አላውቁም ነበር።

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም እጁን ዘረጋና፣ ወደ ህዝቡም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረ፣

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

፲ እነሆ፣ እኔ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ነኝ፣ ነቢያት ወደ ዓለም ይመጣል ብለው የመሰከሩልኝም።

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

፲፩ እናም እነሆ እኔ የዓለም ብርሃንና ህይወት ነኝ፤ እናም አብ ከሰጠኝ መራራ ፅዋም ጠጥቻለሁ፣ እናም የዓለምን ኃጢአት በራሴ ላይ በመውሰድም አብን አክብራለሁ፣ በዚህም ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ በሁሉም ነገሮች የአብን ፈቃድ ፈፀሜአለሁ።

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረበት ጊዜ ሰዎቹ ሁሉ በመሬት ላይ ወደቁ፤ ምክንያቱም ክርስቶስ ወደ ሰማይ ካረገም በኋላ በመካከላቸው እራሱን እንደሚያሳይ በነቢያት ተተንብዮ እንደነበር አስታውሰዋልና።

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

፲፬ ተነሱ እናም እጆቻችሁንም በጎኔ እንድታሰገቡና ደግሞ የችንካሬን ምልክት በእጆቼና በእግሮቼ ላይ ትዳሰሱት ዘንድ፣ እኔ የእስራኤል አምላክ፣ እናም የምድር ሁሉ አምላክ መሆኔን፣ ለዓለም ኃጢአቶችም መገደሌንም እንድታውቁ ዘንድ ወደ እኔ ኑ።

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም ሄዱና እጆቸውን በጎኔ አሰገቡ፣ እናም ምስማር የተቸነከሩባቸውን እጆቹንና እግሮቹን ዳሰሷቸው፤ ሁሉም እስከሚደርሳቸው አንድ በአንድ እየሄዱ ይህን አደረጉ፣ እናም በዐይናቸው ተመለከቱ፣ በእጆቻቸው ዳሰሱ፣ እናም በነቢያት ስለመምጣቱም የተነገረለት እርሱ መሆኑን በእርግጥም አወቁና መሰከሩ።

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

፲፮ እናም ሁሉም በሄዱና ለየራሳቸውም በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በአንድነት እንዲህ ሲሉ ጮኹ፦

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

፲፯ ሆሳዕና! የልዑሉ አምላካችን ስም የተባረከ ይሁን! እናም በኢየሱስ እግር ስር ወደቁ፣ እናም አመለኩት።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ለኔሬ ተናገረ (ኔሬ ከህዝቡ መካከል ስለነበር) እናም እርሱ ወደ ፊት እንዲመጣም አዘዘው።

፲፱ እናም ኔሬ ተነሳ፣ ሄደ እናም በጌታ ፊት አጎንበሰና፣ እግሮቹን ሳመ።

፳ እናም ጌታ እንዲነሳ አዘዘው። እናም እርሱም ተነሳና በፊቱ ቆመ።

፳፩ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፣ በድጋሚ ወደ ሰማይ በማርግበት ጊዜም ይህንን ህዝብ እንድታጠምቅ ስልጣንን አስጥሃለሁ።

፳፪ እናም በድጋሚ ጌታ ሌሎችን ጠርቶ በተመሳሳይ ተናገራቸው፤ እንዲያጠምቁም ስልጣንን ሰጣቸው። እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ በዚህ መንገድ ታጠምቃላችሁ፤ በመካከላችሁም ምንም ፀብ አይኖርም።

፳፫ በእውነት እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ በእናንተ ቃላት አምኖ ለጎጠኦቹ ጎሳ የገባና በሰሜም ለመጠመቅ የፈለጉትን በዚህ መንገድ አጥምቁአቸው—እነሆ፣ እናንተ ወርዳችሁ እናም በውሃው መካከል ትቆማላችሁ፣ እናም በሰሜም ታጠምቁአቸዋላችሁ።

፳፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ በሰማቸውም ጠርታችሁ የምትናገሩአቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው።

፳፭ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ በተሰጠኝ ስልጣን መሰረት በአብ፤ በወልድ፤ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ስም አጠምቅሃለሁ። አሜን።

፳፮ እናም በውሃ ውስጥ ታጠልቋቸዋላችሁ፤ እናም ከውሃ ውስጥም በድጋሚ ታወጧቸዋላችሁ።

፳፯ እናም በዚህም መንገድ በሰሜ ታጠምቃላችሁ፤ እነሆም፣ በእውነት አብና፣ ወልድ፣ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስ እንድናቸው አላችኋለሁ፤ እናም እኔ በአብ እንዳለሁ አብም በእኔ ነው፣ እናም አብና እኔም አንድ ነን።

፳፰ እናም በዚህ በማዛችሁ መሰረትም እንደዚህ አጥምቁ። እናም ከዚህ በፊት እንደነበረውም በመካከላችሁ ፀብ አይኖርም፤ ከዚህ በፊት እንደነበረው በትምህርቱ ነጥቦችም ምክንያት በመካከላችሁ ፀብ አይኖርም።

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them— Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

፳፱ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ የፀብ መንፈስ ያለበት፣ የፀብ አባት ከሆነ እናም የሰዎችን ልብ እርስ በርስ እንዲጣሉ በቁጣ ከሚያነሳሳው ከዲያብሎስ እንጂ፤ ከእኔ አይደለም።

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

፴ እነሆ፣ ሰዎችን እንዳቸውን ከሌላኛው ልባቸውን ለቁጣ የሚያነሳሳ ይህ የእኔ ትምህርት አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን እንደነዚህ ያሉ ነገሮች እንዲወገዱ ማድረግ ይህ የእኔ ትምህርት ነው።

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

፴፩ እነሆ፣ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፤ ትምህርቴን ለእናንተ አውጇለሁ።

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

፴፪ እናም ይህ የእኔ ትምህርት ነው፤ ይህም ክብ ለእኔ የሰጠኝ ትምህርት ነው፤ ስለእብ እመስክራለሁ፣ እንዲሁም ክብ ስለእኔ ይመስክራል፤ መንፈስ ቅዱስም ደግሞ ስለእኔና ስለእብ ይመስክራል፤ በማንኛውም ሰፍራ ክብ ሰዎች በሙሉ ንስሃ እንዲገቡና በእኔ እንዲያምኑ አዘዘኸኛል።

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

፴፫ እናም በእኔ ያመነና የተጠመቀ ይድናል፤ እና እነርሱም የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት የሚወርሱ ናቸው።

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

፴፬ እናም በእኔ የማያምን ቢኖርና ካልተጠመቀ እርሱ ይኮነናል።

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

፴፭ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ይህ የእኔ ትምህርት ነው፣ ከእብ መሆኑንም እመስክራለሁ፤ በእኔ የሚያምንም ቢኖር ደግሞም በእብ ያምናል፤ ለእርሱም ስለእኔ ክብ ይመስክርለታል፤ ክብም በእሳት እንዲሁም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ይገባኝዋል።

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

፴፮ እናም ክብ ስለእኔ ይመስክራል፣ መንፈስ ቅዱስም ስለእብና ስለእኔ ይመስክራል፤ ምክንያቱም ክብ እኔና መንፈስ ቅዱስ አንድ ነን።

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

፴፯ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ንስሃ ግቡና እንደ ህፃናት ሁኑ፤ በሰሜም ተጠመቁ፣ አለበለዚያ እነዚህን ነገሮች በምንም መንገድ ልትቀበሉ አትችሉም።

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

፴፰ እናም በድጋሚ እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ንስሃ ግቡና በሰሜም ተጠመቁ፣ እናም እንደህፃናት ሁኑ፣ አለበለዚያ በምንም መንገድ የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስት ልትወርሱ አትችሉም።

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

፴፱ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ይህ የእኔ ትምህርት ነው፣ እናም በዚህም የሚገነባ በእኔ አለት ላይ መሰረቱን የገነባ፣ እናም የሲኦል ደጃችም አያሸንፋቸውም።

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

፱ እናም ከዚህ የበለጠ ወይንም ያነሰ የሚናገርና፣ ይህን እንደ ትምህርቱ የሚመሰርት ቢኖር፣ እርሱ ከክፉ ነው፤ እናም በዓለት ላይ የገነባ አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን በአሸዋው ላይ መስረቱን የገነባው ነው፣ የጥፋት ውሀ ሲመጣና፣ ነፋስ ሲመታው የገሃነም ደጃችም እርሱን ለመቀበል ክፍት ሆነው ይጠብቃሉ።

፵፩ ስለዚህ ወደእነዚህ ህዝቦች ሂዱ፤ እስከአለም ዳርቻም የተናገርኳቸውን ቃላት አስተምሩኳቸው።

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት ለነፋውያንና፡ ለተጠሩት በተናገረበት ጊዜ፤ (የተጠሩት እናም ለማጥመቅ ኃይልንና ሰልጣንን የተቀበሉት አስራ ሁለት ነበሩ) እናም እነሆ፤ እጁንም ወደ ህዝቡ ዘረጋና እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፤ እናንተን እንዲያስተምሩና የእናንተ አገልጋዮች እንዲሆኑ ከመካከላችሁ የመረጥኋቸውን የእነዚህን የአስራ ሁለቱን ቃላት በጥንቃቄ የምታዳምጡ ከሆነ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ እናም እነርሱ በውኃ ያጠምቋችሁ ዘንድ ሰልጣንን ሰጥቻቸዋለሁ፤ በውኃም ከተጠመቃችሁ በኋላ፤ እነሆ፤ እኔ፤ በአሳትና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ አጠምቃችኋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ እኔን ከተመለከታችሁና፤ እኔ መሆኔን ካወቃችሁ በኋላ በእኔ ካመናችሁና፤ ከተጠመቃችሁ እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ።

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

፪ እናም በድጋሚ፤ እናንተ እኔን ማየታችሁንና እኔ መሆኔን ማወቃችሁን በመመስከራችሁ በቃላችሁ ያመኑት ይበልጥ የተባረኩ ናቸው። አዎን፤ በቃላችሁ ያመኑት፤ እናም እራሳቸውን በጥልቅ ትህትና ያወረዱትና፤ የተጠመቁት የተባረኩ ናቸው፤ በአሳትና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ይጎበኛሉ፤ እናም ለኃጢአታቸው ስርየትን ይቀበላሉና።

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

፫ አዎን፤ በመንፈስ ድሆች የሆኑ ወደ እኔም የሚመጡ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ መንግስተ ሰማያት የእነርሱ ናትና።

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

፬ እናም ደግሞ የሚያዝኑ ብጹዐን ናቸው፤ መፅናናትን ያገኛሉና።

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

፭ እናም የዋሆች ብጹአን ናቸው፤ ምድርን ይወርሳሉና።

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

፮ እናም ፅድቅን የሚራቡና የሚጠሙ ሁሉ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ይሞላሉና።

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

፯ እናም ምህረትን የሚያደርጉ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ ምህረትን ያገኛሉና።

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

፰ እናም በልባቸው ንፁሃን የሆኑ ሁሉ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ እግዚአብሔርን ያዩታልና።

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

፱ እናም የሚያስተራርቁ ሁሉ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ የእግዚአብሔር ልጆች ይባላሉና።

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

፲ እናም ስለሰሜ የሚሰደዱ ሁሉ ብጹአን ናቸው፤ መንግስተ ሰማያት የእነርሱ ናትና።

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

፲፩ እናም ሰዎች ሲሰድቡአችሁና፤ ሲያሳድዱአችሁና በሃሰትም ሁሉንም ዐይነት ክፋት በእናንተ ላይ ስለእኔ ሲናገሩባችሁ፤ እናንተ ብጹአን ናችሁ፤

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

፲፪ ታላቅ ደስታም ይኖራችኋል እናም እጅግ ትደስታላችሁ፤ በሰማይም ዋጋችሁ ትልቅ ይሆናልና፤ ከእናንተም በፊት የነበሩትን ነቢያት እንዲሁም አሳድደዋቸዋልና።

፲፫ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፤ እናንተ የምድር ጨው እንድትሆኑ እስጣችኋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን ጨው ጣዕሙን ካጣ ምድር እንዴት ትጣፈጣለች? ነገር ግን ለመጣል፣ እናም በሰዎች እግር በመረገጥ እንጂ ጨውም ከዚያን ጊዜ በኋላ ከንቱ ይሆናል።

፲፬ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፤ የዚህ ህዝብ ብርሃን እንድትሆኑ እስጣችኋለሁ። በኮረብታ ላይ ያለች ከተማ ልትሰወር አይቻላትም።

፲፭ እነሆ፣ ሰዎች ሻማ አብርተው ከዕንቅቡ በታች ያደርጉታልን? አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን በሻማ ማብሪያው ላይ ያደርጉታል፤ እናም በቤቱ ውስጥ ላሉት ሁሉም ብርሃንን ይሰጣል፤

፲፮ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ሰዎች መልካም ስራዎቻችሁን ተመልክተው፣ እናም በሰማይ ያለው አባታችሁን ያከብሩ ዘንድ ብርሃናችሁ በፊታቸው ሁሉ ይብራ።

፲፯ ህጉን ወይንም ነቢያትን ልሸር እንደመጣሁ አታሰቡ። ለመሻር ሳይሆን የመጣሁት ልፈፀመው ነው፤

፲፰ በእውነት እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፤ ከሕግ እንዲት የወጣ ወይም እንዲት ነጥብ ከቶ አታልፍም፤ ነገር ግን በእኔ ሁሉም ተፈፀሟል።

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፣ በእኔ እንድታምኑ ዘንድና፣ ከኃጢአቶቻችሁ ንስህ እንድትገቡ ዘንድ፣ እናም በተሰበረ ልብ እና በተዋረደ መንፈስ ወደ እኔ ትመጡ ዘንድ፣ የአባቴን ህግና ትዕዛዛትን ሰጥቻችኋለሁ። እነሆ፣ ትዕዛዛቱ በፊታችሁ አሉ፣ እናም ህጉም ተፈፀሟል።

፳ ስለዚህ ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እናም ዳኔ፤ እውነት እላችኋለሁና፣ በዚህ ጊዜ ያዘዘኳችሁን ትዕዛዛት ካልጠበቃችሁ በቀር፣ በምንም ምክንያት ወደ መንግስተ ሰማያት አትገቡም።

፳፩ በጥንት ጊዜም በነበሩት አትግደሉ ሲባል ሰምታችኋል፤ እናም ደግሞ በእናንተ ፊትም ተፀፎአል፤ እና የገደለም በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ አደጋ ላይ ይሆናል፤

፳፪ ነገር ግን እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፤ በወንድሙ ላይ የሚቆጣ በእግዚአብሔር ቅጣት አደጋ ላይ ይሆናል። እናም ወንድሙን ጨርቃም ብሎ የሚናገር ቢኖር በምክሩ አደጋ ላይ ነው፤ እናም ሞኝ ብሎ የሚናገርም በገሃነሙ አሳት አደጋ ላይ ነው።

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

፳፫ ስለዚህ ወደእኔ ብትመጡ ወይንም ለመምጣት የምትፈልጉ ከሆናችሁ፣ እናም ወንድማችሁ በእናንተ ላይ አንድ ነገር እንዳለው ካስታወሳችሁ፤

፳፬ ወደ ወንድማችሁም ሂዱ፣ እናም በመጀመሪያ ከወንድማችሁ ጋር ተሰማሙ፤ እናም በልባችሁ ሙሉ ዓላማ ወደእኔ ኑ፣ እናም እኔ እቀበላችኋለሁ።

፳፭ ከጠላታችሁ ጋር በአንድ መንገድ ስትሆኑ ፈጥናችሁ ተሰማሙ፣ ያለበለዚያ ብልጫ እንዳያገኝባችሁ፣ እናም ወደ ወህኒ እንዳትጣሉ።

፳፮ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ያለባችሁን ስኒን እስከምትከፍሉ ከዚያ በምንም መንገድ አትወጡም። እናም በወህኒ በሆናችሁ ጊዜ አንድ ስኒን እንኳን ለመክፈል ትችላላችሁን? እውነት እላችኋለሁ አትችሉም።

፳፯ እነሆ፣ አታመንዝር ተብሎ በጥንቶቹ ተጽፏል፤

፳፰ ነገር ግን እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ወደ ሴት ያየ ሁሉ የተመኛትም ያን ጊዜ በልቡ ከእርሰዋ ጋር አመንዝርክል።

፳፱ እነሆ፣ እናንተ ከእነዚህ ነገሮች ማንኛውም ወደ ልባችሁ እንዲገባ አትፍቀዱ ትዕዛዛትን ሰጥቻችኋለሁ፤

፴ ወደገሃነም ከምትጣሉ ይልቅ በእነዚህም ነገሮች ራሳችሁን ብትክዱ፣ መስቀላችሁንም ብትሸከሙ የተሻለ ይሆናል።

፴፩ ሚስቱን የሚፈታ ህጋዊ የፍቺ ማሰረጃ ይሰጣት የሚል ተፅፏል።

፴፪ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ በማመንዝር ምክንያት ካልሆነ በቀር ሚስቱን የሚፈታ ቢኖር፣ ዝሙት እንድትፈጽም ያደርጋታል ማለት ነው፤ እናም የተፈታችውን የሚያገባ ዝሙትን ፈፀሟል።

፴፫ እናም በድጋሚ በውሸት አትማል ነገር ግን መሐላዎችህን ለጌታ ሰጥ እንደተባለ ሰምታችኋል፤

፴፬ ነገር ግን እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ በፍፁም አትማሉ፤ የአምላክ ዙፋን ነው፣ በሰማይም ቢሆን አትማሉ፤

፴፭ ምድርም የእግሩ መረገጫ ናትና በእርሷም አትማሉ፤

፴፮ በራሳችሁም አትማሉ፣ ምክንያቱም ከራሳችሁ አንዲት ፀጉር እንኳን ጥቁር ወይንም ነጭ ለማድረግ አትችሉምና፤

፴፯ ነገር ግን ቃላችሁ አዎን፣ አዎን፣ አይደለም፣ አይደለም ይሁን፤ ከዚህ የበለጠ የተባለም ከክፉ ነው።

፴፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ለዐይን ዐይን፣ እንዲሁም ለጥርስ ጥርስ ተብሎ ተፅፏል፤

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorce-ment.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;

፴፱ ነገር ግን እላችኋለሁ፣ ከመጥፎ ጋር አትታገሉ፣ ነገር ግን ቀኝ ጉንጭህን በጥፊ ለሚመታህ ሁሉ ሁለተኛውን ደግሞ አዙርለት፤

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

፵ እናም ማንኛውም ሰው በህግ ፊት ቢያቀርባችሁ፣ እናም እጀጠባባችሁን ቢወስድ መኅናፀፊያችሁን ደግሞ እንዲወስድ ፍቀዱለት፤

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

፵፩ እናም ማንም ሰው አንድ ምዕራፍ ትሄድ ዘንድ ቢያሰገድድህ ሁለተኛውን ከእርሱ ጋር ሂድ።

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

፵፪ ለሚጠይቅህ ሰጠው፣ እናም ከአንተ ለመበደር የሚፈልግንም አትከልክልው።

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

፵፫ እናም እነሆ ደግሞ ባልንጀራህን ውደድና ጠላቶችህን ጥላ ተብሎ ተፅፏል፤

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

፵፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ጠላቶቻችሁን ውደዱ፤ የሚረግሟችሁንም ባርኩ፤ ለሚጠሏችሁም መልካምን አድርጉ፣ እናም በከንቱ የሚነቅፉአችሁንና የሚያሳድዱአችሁን ጸልዩላቸው እላችኋለሁ።

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

፵፭ በሰማይ ያለው የአባታችሁ ልጆች እንድትሆኑም፤ ፀሀዩንም ለመጥፎ እና ለመልካም ሰዎች እንድትወጣ ያደርጋልና።

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

፵፮ ስለዚህ በጥንት ጊዜ በህጉ ስር የነበሩትም እነዚያ ነገሮች፣ በእኔ ሁሉም ተፈፀመዋል።

Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

፵፯ በጥንት የነበሩት ነገሮች ተፈፀመዋል፣ እናም ሁሉም ነገሮች አዲስ ሆነዋል።

Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

፵፰ ስለዚህ እንደእኔ ወይንም በሰማይ እንዳለው ፍፁም እንደሆነው አባታችሁ ፍፁም እንድትሆኑ እፈልጋችኋለሁ።

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

፫ ኔፊ ፲፫

፩ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ ለድሆች ምፅዋት እንድትሰጡ እፈልጋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን ለሰዎች ትታዩ ዘንድ ምጽዋታችሁን በፊታቸው እንዳታደርጉ ተጠንቀቁ፤ አለበለዚያ በሰማይ ካለው አባታችሁ ዘንድ ዋጋ አይኖራችሁም።

፪ ስለዚህ፣ ምፅዋታችሁን ስትሰጡ ግብዘች በሰዎች ዘንድ ክብር ይኖራቸው ዘንድ በምኩራብ እናም በጎዳናዎች እንደሚያደርጉት መለከት አታስነፉ። እውነት እላችኋለሁ እነርሱ ዋጋቸውን አግኝተዋል።

፫ ነገር ግን መፅዋዎትን በምትሰጡበት ጊዜ ቀኝ እጃችሁ ግራ እጃችሁ የሚያደርገውን አይወቅ፤

፬ ምፅዋታችሁ በሰውር እንዲሆን፤ እናም በሰውር የሚያያችሁ አባታችሁ በግልፅ ይከፍላችኋል።

፭ እናም በምትፀልዩበት ጊዜ እንደግብዘች አትሁኑ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በምኩራብ እናም በየመንገዱ ዳርቻ በመቆም በሰዎች ለመታየት መፀለይን ይወዳሉ። እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ዋጋቸውን ተቀብለዋል።

፮ ነገር ግን በምትፀልዩበት ጊዜ ወደ እልፍኛችሁ ውስጥ ግቡ፣ እናም በራችሁንም በምትዘገቡበት ጊዜ፣ በሰውር ወደላው አባታችሁ ፀልዩ፣ እናም በሰውር የሚያያችሁ አባታችሁ በግልፅ ይከፍላችኋል።

፯ ነገር ግን አሕዛብም በመናገራቸው ብዛት እንደሚሰሙ ይመስላቸዋል፣ በምትፀልዩበት ጊዜ እንደ እነርሱ በከንቱ አትድገሙ።

፰ ስለዚህ እናንተ እንደ እነርሱ አትምሰሉ፣ ምክንያቱም አባታችሁን ከመጠየቃችሁ በፊት ምን እንደምትፈልጉ ያውቃል።

፱ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ብላችሁ ፀልዩ፣ በሰማይ የምትኖር አባታችን ሆይ፣ ስምህ ይቀደስ።

፲ ፈቃድህ በሰማይ እንደሆነች እንዲሁም በምድር ትሁን።

፲፩ እናም የበደሉንን ይቅር እንደምንል፣ በደላችንን ይቅር በለን፤

፲፪ ከክፉ አድነን እንጂ፣ እናም ወደ ፈተናም አታግባን።

፲፫ መንግሥት ያንተ ናትና፣ እና ሀይልም፣ ክብርም ለዘላለሙ አሜን።

፲፬ ለሰዎች በደላቸውን ይቅር የምትሉ ከሆነ፣ የሰማይ አባታችሁ ደግሞ ይቅር ይላችኋል፤

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

፲፭ ለሰዎች ግን ኃጢአታቸውን ይቅር ባትሉ፤ አባታችሁም ኃጢአታችሁን ይቅር አይላችሁም።

፲፮ ከዚህም በተጨማሪ፣ በምትጸሙበት ጊዜ ፊታቸውን እንደሚያጠወልጉት እንደግብዘኞች አትሁኑ፤ ምክንያቱም ለሰዎች እንደጾመኛ ሊታዩ ፊታቸውን ያጠወልጋሉና። እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ዋጋቸውን ተቀብለዋል።

፲፯ ነገር ግን እናንተ በምትጸሙበት ወቅት ራሳችሁን ተቀቡ፤ እናም ፊታችሁን ታጠቡ፤

፲፰ በሰው ላለው አባታችሁ እንጂ እንደ ጦመኛ ለሰዎች እንዳትታይ፤ በሰው ላይ የሚያያችሁ አባታችሁም በግልፅ ዋጋችሁን ይከፍላችኋል።

፲፱ ብልና ዝገት በሚያጠፋት፣ ሌቦችም ቆፍረው በሚሰርቁት፣ ለራሳችሁ በምድር ላይ ሀብትን አታከማቹ፤

፳ ነገር ግን ብልና ዝገት የሚያጠፋውን፣ እናም ሌቦች ቆፍረው የሚሰርቁትን፣ ለራሳችሁ የሚሆን ሀብትን በሰማይ አከማቹ።

፳፩ ሀብታችሁ ባለበት ልባችሁ ደግሞ በዚያ ይሆናልና።

፳፪ የሰውነት ብርሀን ዐይን ናት፤ ስለዚህ ዐይናችሁ ቀና ብትሆን ሰውነታችሁ ሁሉ ብሩህ ይሆናል።

፳፫ ነገር ግን ዐይናችሁ ክፉ ብትሆን ሰውነታችሁ ሁሉ የጨለመ ይሆናል። ስለዚህ በእናንተ ያለው ብርሃን ጨለማ ቢሆን ጨለማው እንዴት የበረታ ይሆናል!

፳፬ ማንም ሰው ለሁለት ጌቶች ማገልገል አይቻለውም፤ ምክንያቱም አንዱን ይጠልልና ሌላኛውን ይወዳል፣ ወይም ወደ አንዱ ይጠጋል፣ እናም ሌላኛውን ይንቃል። እግዚአብሔርን ማገልገልና ለገንዘብ መገዛት አትችሉም።

፳፭ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በሚናገርበት ወቅት ወደ መረጣቸው አስራ ሁለቱ ተመለከተ፣ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ የተናገርኳቸውን ቃላት አስታውሱ። እነሆም፣ እናንተ ህዝብን እንድታገለግሉ የመረጣኳችሁ ናችሁ። ስለዚህ ስለህይወታችሁ በምትበሉትም ሆነ በምትጠጡት ስለሰውነታችሁ በምትለብሱትም አትጨነቁ። ህይወት ከመብል እንዲሁም ሰውነት ከልብስ አይበልጥምን?

፳፮ ወደ ሰማይ ወፎች ተመልከቱ፤ አይዘሩም አያጭዱምም በጎተራም አይከቱም፤ ነገር ግን የሰማይ አባታችሁም ይመግባቸዋል፤ እናንተ ከእነርሱ የተሻላችሁ አይደላችሁምን?

፳፯ ከእናንተ ተጨንቆ በቁመቱ ላይ አንድ ክንድ መጨመር የሚችል ማንው?

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

፳፰ እናም ስለልብስ ለምን ትጨነቃላችሁ? የሜዳ አበቦች እንዴት እንደሚያድጉ ልብ ብላችሁ ተመልከቱ፤ አይደክሙም፣ አይፈትሉም፤

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

፳፱ እናም ግን እንዲህ አላችኋለሁ፣ ስለሞንስ እንኳ በክብሩ ሁሉ ከእነዚህ እንደእንዲ አልለበስም።

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

፴ ስለዚህ፣ እግዚአብሔር ዛሬ ያለውን ነገም ወደ እቶን የሚጣለውን የሜዳን ሳር በዚህ ሁኔታ የሚያለብሰው ከሆነ፣ እናንተም እምነት የጎደላችሁ ካልሆናችሁ እንዲሁ እናንተንም ያለብሳችኋል።

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

፴፩ ስለዚህ ምን እንበላለን? ምን እንጠጣለን? ምንስ እንለብሳለን? ብላችሁ ምንም አታሰቡ።

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

፴፪ የሰማይ አባታችሁ እነዚህን ነገሮች በሙሉ እንደምትፈልጉ ያውቃል።

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

፴፫ ነገር ግን በመጀመሪያ የእግዚአብሔርን መንግስትና ፅድቁን ፈልጉ፣ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ ይጨመሩላችኋል።

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

፴፬ ስለዚህ ነገ ለራሱ ነገሮች ይጨነቃልና ለነገ ምንም አትጨነቁ። ለክፋቱ ቀኑ ብቁ ነውና።

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

፩ እናም አሁን እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ወደ ህዝቡ ተመለሰ፤ እናም በድጋሚ አፋን ከፍቶ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ እንዳይፈረድባችሁ አትፍረዱ።

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

፪ በምትፈርዱበት ፍርድ ይፈረድባችኋልና፤ እናም በምትሰፍሩበትም መስፈሪያ ደግሞም ይሰፈርላችኋል።

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

፫ እናም በወንድማችሁ ዐይን ያለውን ጉድፍ ስለምን ታያላችሁ፤ ነገር ግን በዐይናችሁ ያለውን ምስሶ ስለምን አትመለከቱም?

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

፬ ወይም ወንድማችሁን ከዐይንህ ጉድፍ ላውጣ ፍቀድልኝ እንዴትስ ትሉታላችሁ? እናም እነሆ በዐይናችሁ ምስሶ አለ።

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

፭ እናንተ ግብዘኝ አስቀድማችሁ በዐይናችሁ ያለውን ምስሶ አውጡ፤ እናም ከዚያም በኋላ ከወንድማችሁ ዐይን ጉድፍን ታወጡ ዘንድ አጥርታችሁ ታያላችሁ።

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

፮ በአግራቸው እንዳይረግጡት ተመልሰውም እንዳይነክሱአችሁ የተቀደሰውን ለውሾች አትሰጡ፤ ዕንቁዎቻችሁንም በእሪያዎች ፊት አትጣሉ።

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

፯ ለምኑ፣ ይሰጣችኋል፤ ፈልጉ፣ ታገኛላችሁ፤ እንኳኑ፣ ይከፈትላችኋል።

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

፰ የሚለምን ሁሉ ይቀበላልና፣ እናም የሚፈልግም ያገኛል፤ እናም ለሚያንኳኑ ይከፈትላቸዋል።

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

፱ ወይም ከእናንተ ልጅ ዳቦ ቢለምነው ድንጋይ የሚሰጠው ማነው?

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

፲ ወይም ዓሳብ ቢለምነው አባብ ይሰጠዋልን?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

፲፩ እናንተ ክፋዎች ስትሆኑ፣ ለልጆቻችሁ መልካም ስጦታ መስጠትን ካወቃችሁ፣ በሰማያት ያለው አባታችሁ ለሚለምኑት እንዴት አብልጦ መልካም ነገርን ይሰጣቸው?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

፲፪ ስለሆነም፣ ሰዎች ሊያደርጉላችሁ የምትወዱትን ሁሉ እናንተም ደግሞ እንዲሁ አድርጉላቸው፣ ህግም ነቢያትም ይህ ነውና።

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

፲፫ በጠበበው ደጅ ግቡ፣ ወደ ጥፋት የሚወስደው ደጅ ስፊ መንገዱም ትልቅ ነውና፤ ወደ እርሱም የሚገቡ ብዙ ናቸው፤

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

፲፬ ምክንያቱም ወደ ህይወት የሚወስደው ደጅ የጠበበ፣ መንገዱም የቀጠነ ስለሆነ፣ የሚያገኙትም ጥቂቶች ናቸው።

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

፲፩ የበግ ለምድ ለብሰው ከሚመጡባችሁ፣ ነገር ግን ውስጣቸው ነጣቂ ተኩላ ከሆኑ ከሀሰተኞች ነቢያት ተጠንቀቁ።

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

፲፪ ከፍሬአቸው ታውቋቸዋለችሁ። ከእሾህ ወይን፣ ወይም ከኩርንችትሰ በለሰ ይለቀማልን?

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

፲፫ መልካም ዛፍ ሁሉ መልካም ፍሬን ያፈራል፤ ክፉ ዛፍም መጥፎ ፍሬ ያፈራል።

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

፲፬ መልካም ዛፍ ክፉ ፍሬ ማፍራት፣ ወይንም ክፉ ዛፍ መልካም ፍሬን ማፍራት አይቻለውም።

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

፲፭ መልካም ፍሬ የማያደርግ ዛፍ ሁሉ ይቆረጣል፣ ወደ እሳትም ይጣላል።

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

፳ ስለዚህ፣ ከፍሬአቸው ታውቋቸዋለችሁ።

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

፳፩ በሰማያት ያለውን የእባቱን ፈቃድ የሚያደርግ እንጂ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ጌታ ሆይ የሚለኝ ሁሉ ወደ መንግስተ ሰማያት የሚገባ አይደለም።

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

፳፪ በዚያ ቀን ብዙዎች ጌታ ሆይ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ በሰምህ ትንቢትን አልተናገርንምን? በሰምህስ አጋንንትን አላወጣንምን? በሰምህስ ብዙ ተአምራትን አላደረግንምን? ይሉኛል።

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

፳፫ እናም ከቶ አላውቃችሁም፣ እናንተ አመፀኞች፣ ከእኔ ራቁ ብዬ አሳውቃቸዋለሁ።

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ ይህን ቃሉን ሰምቶ የሚያደርገው ሁሉ፣ ቤቱን በእለት ላይ እንደሰራ እንደ ጠቢብ ሰው አመሳሰለዋለሁ—

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

፳፭ እናም ዝናብ ወረደና፣ የጥፋት ውሀም መጣ፤ እናም ነፋስ ነፈሰና፣ ቤቱን ገፋው፤ እናም በእለትም ላይ ስለተመሰረተ አልወደቀም።

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

፳፮ እናም ይህንን ቃሉን ሰምቶ የማያደርገው ሁሉ ቤቱን በእሸዋ ላይ እንደሰራ ስነፍ ሰው ይመሳሰላል—

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

፳፯ እናም ዝናቡ ወረደና፣ የጥፋት ውሀም መጣ፣ እናም ነፋሱ ነፈሰና፣ ቤቱን ገፋው፤ ወደቀና፣ አወዳደቁም ታላቅ ነበር።

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

፫ ኔፊ ፲፭

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ንግግሩን በጨረሰ ጊዜ ዐይኑን በዙሪያው ባሉ ሰዎች ላይ አሳረፈ፣ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፦ እነሆ ወደ አባቴ ከማረጌ በፊት ያስተማርኩትን ነገሮች ሰምታችኋል፤ ስለዚህ፣ ይህንን ንግግሪን የሚያስታውስ እናም የሚፈፀም በመጨረሻው ቀን አስነሳዋለሁ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ የሙሴን ህግ በተመለከተ ምን እንዲያደርጉ እንደሚፈልግባቸው የሚገረሙና፣ የሚደነቁ ጥቂቶች እንዳሉ አስተዋለ፤ አሮጌዎቹ ነገሮች እንዳለፉ እናም ሁሉም ነገሮች አዲስ እንደሆኑ የተነገሩትን አልተረዱምና።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፦ አሮጌዎቹ ነገሮች አልፈዋል፣ እናም ሁሉም ነገር አዲስ ሆነዋል ስላልኳችሁ አትገረሙ።

፬ እነሆ፣ ለሙሴ የተሰጠው ህግ ተፈፀሟል አላችኋለሁ።

፭ እነሆ፣ ህጉን የሰጠሁት እኔ ነኝ፤ ከአሰራሌ ህዝቦቹ ጋር ቃል ኪዳን የገባሁትም እኔ ነኝ፤ ስለዚህ ህጉን ልፈጽም ስለመጣሁ ህጉ በእኔ ተፈፀሟል፤ ስለዚህ ይህም መጨረሻ አለው።

፮ እነሆ፣ ነቢያትን አልሸርም፣ ምክንያቱም ብዙዎች በእኔ አልተፈፀሙምና፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ሁሉም ይፈፀማሉ።

፯ እናም አሮጌዎቹ ነገሮች ያልፋሉ ስላልኳችሁ፣ ስለሚመጡት ነገሮች ተነግረው የነበሩትን አልሸርም።

፰ እነሆም፣ ከህዝቤ ጋር የገባሁት ቃል ኪዳን በሙሉ አልተፈጸመም፤ ነገር ግን ለሙሴ የተሰጠው ህግ በእኔ መጨረሻ አለው።

፱ እነሆ፣ እኔ ህግ እንዲሁም ብርሃን ነኝ። ወደ እኔ ተመልከቱ፣ እናም እስከመጨረሻው የጸናችሁ ሁኑ፣ እናም ህያው ትሆናላችሁ፤ እስከመጨረሻው ለሚፀናም የዘላለምን ህይወት እስጠዋለሁና።

፲ እነሆ፣ ትዕዛዝን ሰጥቻችኋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ትዕዛዜን ጠብቁ። እናም ህጉን ነቢያትም ይህ ነው፣ ስለእኔ በእውነት ይመሰክራሉና።

፲፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረበት ጊዜ፣ ለእነዚያ ለመረጣቸው አሰራ ሁለቱ እንዲህ አላቸው፦

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

፲፪ እናንተ የእኔ ደቀመዛሙርት ናችሁ፤ እናም ለዮሴፍ ቤት ቅሪት ለሆኑትም ለእነዚህ ሰዎች ብርሃን ናችሁ።

፲፫ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህች ምድር የርስታችሁ ስፍራ ናት፣ እናም አብም ለእናንተ ይህን ሰጥቷችኋል።

፲፬ እናም በኢየሩሳሌም ለሚገኙት ወንድሞቻችሁ በማንኛውም ጊዜ ይህን እንድናገር አብ ትዕዛዝ አልሰጠኝም ነበር።

፲፭ አብ ከምድሪቱ እንዲወጡ ስለመራቸው የእስራኤል ቤት ስለሆኑት ሌሎች ነገዶች በየትኛውም ጊዜ በኢየሩሳሌም ላሉት ወንድሞቻችሁ እንድናገር ትዕዛዝ አልሰጠኝም።

፲፮ አብም እስከዚህ ድረስ ለእነርሱ እንድናገራቸው አዘኛል።

፲፯ ከዚህም በረት ያልሆኑ ሌሎች በጎች አሉኝ፤ እነርሱንም ደግሞ ላመጣ ይገባኛል፣ ድምፃንም ይሰማሉ፣ አንድም መንጋ ይሆናሉ፣ እርሻውም አንድ ይሆናል።

፲፰ እናም እንግዲህ፣ አንገተ ደንዳና በመሆናቸውና፣ ባለማመናቸው ቃሌን ሊረዱ አልቻሉም፤ ስለዚህ ይህን ነገር በተመለከተ ከዚህ የበለጠ እንዳልናገር በአብ ታዘዝክ ነበር።

፲፱ ነገር ግን፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ በክፋታቸው የተነሳ እናንተ ከእነርሱ ተለይታችኋል ብዬ እንግራችሁ ዘንድ አብ አዘኛል፤ ስለዚህ በክፋታቸውም የተነሳ ነው ስለእናንተ የማያውቁት።

፳ እናም እንደገና እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ሌሎች ነገዶችን አብ ከእነርሱ ለይቷል፤ እናም በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ነው ስለእነርሱ የማያውቁት።

፳፩ እናም እውነት አላችኋለሁ፤ ከዚህም በረት ያልሆኑ ሌሎች በጎች አሉኝ፤ እነርሱን ደግሞ ላመጣ ይገባኛል፤ እነርሱም ድምፃን ይሰማሉ፤ እናም አንድ መንጋና፣ እርሻውም አንድ ይሆናል፣ በማለት የተናገርኩአችሁ እናንተ ናችሁ።

፳፪ እናም ሌሎቹ በጎች አህዛብ ናቸው ብለው ስለገመቱ እኔን አልተረዱኝም፤ ምክንያቱም አህዛብ በእነርሱ ሰብከት እንደሚለወጡ አልተረዱምና።

፳፫ እናም ድምፃን ያዳምጣሉ ማለቴንም አልተረዱም፤ እናም በማንኛውም ጊዜ አህዛብ ድምፃን መሰማት እንደማይችሉ፣ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ አማካኝነት ካልሆነም በቀር ራሴን እንደማልገልፅላቸውም አልተረዱኝም።

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ድምጹን ሰምታችኋልም፣
እይታችሁኛልም፤ እናንተም የእኔ በጎች ናችሁ፤ እናም እብ
ለእኔ ከሰጣቸው መካከልም የተቆጠራችሁ ናችሁ።

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen
me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered
among those whom the Father hath given me.

፫ ኔፊ ፲፮

፩ እናም እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ከዚህች ምድር ወይም ከኢየሩሳሌም ወይም እኔ ካገለገልኩባቸውም ቦታዎች ዙሪያ ያልሆኑ ሌሎች በጎች አሉኝ።

፪ የምናገርባቸውም ገና ድምፃን አልሰሙትምና፤ ወይም በማንኛውም ጊዜ ራሴን አልገለጽኩላቸውም።

፫ ነገር ግን ወደ እነርሱ እንድሄድ ዘንድ፣ እናም ድምፃን ይሰሙና፣ ከበጎቼም ጋር ይቆጠሩ፣ እናም እንድም መንጋ፣ እረኛውም እንድ እንዲሆን ከአብ ትዕዛዝ ተቀብያለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ራሴንም ላሳያቸው እሄዳለሁ።

፬ እናም እኔም ከሄድኩኝ በኋላ ይህንን የተናገርኩትን እንድትፀፉ አዛችኋለሁ፤ ይህ ከሆነ እኔን የተመለከቱኝና፣ በእገልግሎቴ ወቅት ከእኔ ጋር የነበሩት በኢየሩሳሌም ያሉት ህዝቦቼ ስለ እናንተ፣ እናም ደግሞ ስለሚያውቋቸው ሌሎች ነገዶች በመንፈስ ቅዱስ እውነትን ያገኙ ዘንድ አብን በሰሜ ካልጠየቁ፣ በዚህም በእህዛብ ሙሉት በኩል፣ ባለማመናቸው ምክንያት በምድር ገፅ ላይ የሚበተኑት የዘሮቻቸው ቅሪት እንዲመጡ ዘንድ፣ ወይም አዳኛቸው ወደሆንኩት ወደ እኔም እውቀት ይመጡ ዘንድ እናንተ የምትፀፏቸው እነዚህ አባባሎች ይጠበቃሉ እና ለእህዛብም ይገለጻሉ።

፭ እናም ከምድሪቱ ከአራቱም ማዕዘናት እስከሰባቸዋለሁ፤ እናም አብ ከእስራኤል ቤት ከሁሉም ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን እፈፅማለሁ።

፮ እናም እህዛብ ስለእኔ እንዲሁም ስለእኔና ስለአብ ስለሚመስክርላቸው መንፈስ ቅዱስ በማመናቸው የተባረኩ ናቸው።

፯ እነሆ፣ አብም እንዲህ ይላል፣ በእኔም ስለሚያምኑ፣ እናም፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ እናንተ ስለማታምኑ በኋለኛው ቀን እውነት ለእህዛብ ትመጣለች፤ የእነዚህን ነገሮች ሙሉነት እነርሱ እንዲያውቁት ይሆናል።

፰ ነገር ግን አብም ለማያምኑ እህዛብ ወዮላቸው ይላል— እነርሱ ወደዚህች ምድር ገፅ የመጡም ቢሆኑ፣ እናም የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትንም ህዝቦቹን ቢበትኑም፣ እናም ከእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑት ህዝቦቹ ከመካከላቸው ቢጣሉም፣ እናም በእነርሱም እግር ቢረገጡም፤

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

፱ እናም ኦብ ለአህዛብ ባለው ምህረቱና፣ ደግሞ የእስራኤል ቤት በሆኑት ህዝቦቹ ላይ በኦብ በነበረው ቅጣት የተነሳ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ከዚህ ሁሉ በኋላ፣ እናም የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን ህዝቦቹን እንዲመቱና፣ እንዲሰቃዩ፣ እናም እንዲገለሉና፣ ከመካከላቸው እንዲጣሉም፣ በእነርሱ እንዲጠሉና፣ በአህዛብ መካከል እንዲያፋኝባቸው እናም እንዲናቁ ካደረጉኝ በኋላ—

፲ እናም እንዲህ እንድላችሁም ኦብ አዘኛል፣ አህዛብ በዚያ ቀን በወንጌሌ ላይ ኃጢአት ሲፈፀሙ፣ እናም የወንጌሌንም ሙሉነት አንቀበልም ሲሉና፣ ልባቸው ከሀገር ሁሉ በላይ፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ካሉት ሰዎች ሁሉ በላይ ልባቸው በኩራት ሲወጠር፣ እናም በሁሉም አይነት ውሸትና፣ በማጭበርበርም፣ በግብዝነትም፣ በመግደልም፣ በካህናት ተንኮልና በዝሙት፣ እናም በሚሰጥር እርኩስት የተሞሉ ሲሆኑ፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች በሙሉ የሚያደርጉ ከሆነና የወንጌሌን ሙሉነት ካልተቀበሉ፣ እነሆ፣ ኦብ እንዲህ ይላል፣ የወንጌሌን ሙሉነት ከመካከላቸው እወስድባቸዋለሁ።

፲፩ እና ከዚያም፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ ለህዝቤ የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አስታውሳለሁ፣ እናም ወንጌሌንም ለእነርሱ አመጣለሁ።

፲፪ እናም የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ አህዛብ በእናንተ ላይ ስልጣን እንደሌላቸው አሳያችኋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ ለእናንተ የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን አስታውሳለሁ፣ እናም ወደ ወንጌሌ ሙሉ እውቀትም ትመጣላችሁ።

፲፫ ነገር ግን ኦብም እንዲህ ይላል፣ አህዛብ ንስሃ ከገቡ፣ እናም ወደ እኔ ከተመለሱ፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ ከህዝቦቹ መካከል የተቆጠሩ ይሆናሉ።

፲፬ እናም ኦብም እንዲህ ይላል፣ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን ህዝቦቹን በመካከላቸው አልፈው እናም እንደ ጭቃ እንዲረገጧቸው አልፈቅድም።

፲፭ ነገር ግን ወደ እኔ ካልተመለሱና፣ ድምፃን ካልሰሙ፣ እነርሱን አዎን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑት ህዝቦቹ ወደ እነርሱ እንዲሄዱና፣ እንደጭቃም እንዲረገጧቸው አልቅደለሁ፣ እናም ጣዕሙን እንዳጣ ጨውም ሆነው፣ ከዚህ ጊዜ በኋላ ከንቱ እንደሆኑ ነገር ግን እንደሚወረወሩ፣ እናም የእስራኤል በሆኑትም በህዝቦቹ የሚረገጡ ይሆናሉ።

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

፲፮ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ—ለዚህ ህዝብ ይህንን የርሰት ምድራቸውን እንድሰጣቸው አብ እኔን አዘኛል።

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

፲፱ እናም ነቢዩ ኢሳይያስም እንዲህ ሲል የተናገራቸው ቃላት ይፈጸማሉ፦

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

፳ የእንቺ ጠባቂዎች ይጮሁሉ፤ ጌታም ወደ ፅዮን በተመለሰ ጊዜ፣ ዐይን ለዐይን ይተያያሉና፣ በእንድነት ድምጽም ይዘምራሉ።

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

፳፱ እናንተ የኢየሩሳሌም ፍርስራሾች፣ ጌታ ህዝቡን እፅናንቶአልና፤ ኢየሩሳሌምን ታድሳአልና ደስ ይበላችሁ፣ በእንድነትም ዘምሩ።

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

፷ ጌታም የተቀደሰውን ክንዴን በሀገሮች ሁሉ ፊት ገልጿል፤ እናም በምድር ዳርቻም ያሉት ሁሉ የእግዚአብሔርን መድሐኒት ያያሉ።

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

፫ ኔፊ ፲፯

፩ እነሆ፣ እነግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ ወደ ህዝቡ በድጋሚ ዙሪያውን ተመለከተ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፡ እነሆ ጊዜዬ ቀርቦአል።

፪ በዚህ ጊዜ በአባቴ ለእናንተ እንድናገር የታዘዘኩትን ቃሌን በሙሉ ልትረዱ እንደማትችሉ ደካሞች መሆናችሁን አስተውላለሁ።

፫ ስለዚህ፣ ወደቤታችሁ ሂዱና፣ ስለተናገርኳችሁ ነገሮች አስላሰሉ፤ እናም ትረዱና ለሚቀጥለው ቀን እእምሮአችሁን ታዘጋጁ። ዘንድ በሰሜ አብን ጠይቁት፣ እናም እኔም በድጋሚ እመጣለሁ።

፬ ነገር ግን አሁን ወደ አባቴ፣ እናም ደግሞ ራሴን ለጠፋት የእስራኤል ነገዶች ለማሳየት እሄዳለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ለአብ አልጠፉምና፣ እርሱም የት እንደወሰዳቸው ያውቃልና።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እንዲህ በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ዐይኑን በድጋሚ በህዝቡ ላይ በዙሪያው ያደርግ ነበር፤ እናም እንባ እያነቡ መሆናቸውንና፣ እርሱ ከእነርሱ ጋር ትንሽ እንዲቆይ የሚፈልጉ በመምሰል በእርሱ ላይ ያተኮሩ ይመስሉ እንደነበር ተመለከተ።

፮ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ፣ ስለእናንተ እንጀት በርህራሄ ተሞልቷል።

፯ ከእናንተ መካከል በሽተኞች አሉን? ወደዚህ ሰፍራ እምጡአቸው። ከእናንተ መካከል ድውይ፣ ወይንም ዐይነሰውር፣ ወይንም ሸባ፣ ወይንም ለምፃም፣ ወይንም ሰውነታቸው የሰለለ፣ ወይንም ደንቆሮ፣ ወይንም በተመሳሳይ የሚሰቃዩ አሉን? ወደ እዚህ ሰፍራ እምጡአቸው እናም ለእናንተ ከእንጀት ርህራሄ ሰላለኝ እፈውሳቸዋለሁ፤ ውስጤም በምህረት ተሞልቷል።

፰ በእየሩሳሌም ለነበሩት ወንድሞቻችሁ ምን እንዳደረግሁ እንዳሳያችሁ እንደምትፈልጉ እገነዘባለሁ፣ ምክንያቱም እናንተን እንድፈውሳችሁ እምነታችሁ በቂ መሆኑን አይቻለሁና።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህንን በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ህዝቡ በሙሉ በአንድ ልብ ከበሽተኞቻቸው፣ እንዲሁም ከሚሰቃዩትና፣ ከሸባዎቹ፣ እናም ከዐይነ ሰውሮቹና፣ ከዲዳዎቹና፣ በሁሉም ዐይነት በሽታ ከሚሰቃዩ ሰዎች ጋር ሄዱ፤ እናም ወደ እርሱም በቀረቡ ጊዜ እያንዳንዳቸውን ፈውሳቸው።

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

፲ እናም እነርሱም በሙሉ፣ የተፈወሱትም ሆኑ ጤነኛዎቹ፣ በእግሩ ስር ሰገዱና፣ አመለኩት፤ እናም በእንባቸው እግሩ እስከሚታጠብ ድረስ ብዙዎች ወደ እርሱ ቀርበው እግሩን ሳሙት።

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህፃናት ወደ እርሱ እንዲመጡ አዘዘ።

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

፲፪ ስለዚህ ህፃናት ልጆቻቸውን አመጡና በእርሱ ዙሪያም አስቀመጡአቸው፣ እናም ኢየሱስ በመካከላቸው ቆመ፤ እናም ህፃናት በሙሉም ወደ እርሱ እንዲቀርቡ ህዝቡ ቦታ ለቀቀ።

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም በመጡ ጊዜ፣ እናም ኢየሱስ በመካከላቸው በቆመ ጊዜ ህዝቡ በመሬት ላይ እንዲንበረከክ አዘዘ።

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በመሬት ላይ በተንበረከኩም ጊዜ፣ ኢየሱስም በውስጡ እንዲህ ሲል ቃተተ፣ አባት ሆይ የእስራኤል ቤት በሆኑት ሰዎች ኃጢያት አዝኜአለሁ።

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

፲፭ እናም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ እርሱም ደግሞ በመሬት ላይ ተንበረከከ፤ እናም እነሆ ወደ አብ ፀለየ፣ የፀለየባቸውም ነገሮች ምንም ሊፃፉ አይቻሉም፣ የሰሙትም ሰዎች መስክረዋልም።

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

፲፮ እናም በዚህም ሁኔታ መስክረዋል፣ ከዚህ በፊት ዐይን ያላየውን፣ ጆሮም ያልሰማውን፤ ኢየሱስ ወደ አብ ሲናገር ያየናቸው እናም የሰማናቸው ነገሮች ታላቅና አስደናቂ ነገሮችን ነው፤

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

፲፯ እናም እንደበት ሊናገረው አይችልም፣ እንዲሁም በማንም ሰው ሊፃፍ አይችልም፤ ኢየሱስ ሲናገር እኛ እንዳየናቸውና እንደሰማናቸው ያሉ ታላቅና አስደናቂ ነገሮች የሰው ልብ ሊገምተው አይቻለውም፤ እናም ወደ አብ ለእኛ ሲፀልይ በሰማነው ጊዜ ነፍሳችን የተሞላችንበትን ዐይነት ደስታ ማንም ሊገምተው አይቻለውም።

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ወደ አብ መፀለይን በጨረሰ ጊዜ ተነሳ፤ ነገር ግን የህዝቡ ደስታ ታላቅ ስለነበረ እንደተሸነፉም ሆኑ።

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ተናገራቸውና፣ እንዲነሱ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

፳ እነርሱም ከመሬቱ ላይ ተነሱ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ እናንተ በእምነታችሁ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ። እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ደስታዬ ሙሉ ነው።

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

፳፩ እናም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ አለቀሰ፤ ህዝቡም ስለማልቀሱ መሰከሩ፣ እንደ በእንድም ህፃናቶቻቸውን ወሰዳቸውና፣ ባረካቸውም፣ ስለእነርሱም ወደ ኡብ ጸለዩ።

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

፳፪ እናም ይህንንም ሲያደርግ በድጋሚ አለቀሰ፤

And when he had done this he wept again;

፳፫ እናም ለህዝቡ ተናገረና፣ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ ህፃናቶቻችሁን ተመልከቱ።

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

፳፬ እናም ለመመልከት ዐይኖቻቸውን በሰማይ ላይ አደረጉና፣ ሰማያት ሲከፈቱ ተመልከቱ፣ እናም መላዕክቱ ልክ በእሳት መካከል እንደሆነ ከሰማይ ሲወርዱ ተመልከቱ፤ እነርሱም ወርደው ህፃናቱን ከበቡአቸው፣ በእሳቱም ተከበቡ፤ እናም መላዕክት አገለገሉአቸው።

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

፳፭ እናም ህዝቡ ተመልከቱና ሰሙ፣ እናም መሰከሩ፤ ሁሉም እያንዳንዱ ለራሱ ስለተመለከተና ስለሰማ ምስክርነታቸውም እውነት መሆኑን ያውቃሉ፤ እናም በቁጥርም ሁለት ሺህ አምስት መቶ ነፍሳት ገደማ ነበሩ፤ እነርሱም ወንዶች፣ ሴቶችና፣ ህፃናት ነበሩ።

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርቱ ጥቂት ዳቦ እና ወይን ወደ እርሱ እንዲያመጡ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

፪ እና እነርሱ ዳቦውንና ወይኑን ለማምጣት በሄዱበት ጊዜ፣ ህዝቡን በመሬት ላይ እንዲቀመጡ አዘዘ።

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

፫ እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱ ዳቦውንና ወይኑን ይዘው በመጡ ጊዜ፣ ከዳቦው ወስዶ በመቅረስ ባረከው፤ እናም ለደቀመዛሙርቱም ሰጣቸውና እንዲበሉትም አዘዛቸው።

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

፬ እናም በበሉና በተሞሉ ጊዜ፣ ለህዝቡ እንዲሰጡ አዘዘ።

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

፭ እናም ህዝቡም በልተው በተሞሉ ጊዜ፣ ለደቀመዛሙርቱ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ ከመካከላችሁ እንዲ ይሾማል፤ እናም በሰሜ ለሚያምኑትና ለሚጠመቁት ለቤተክርስቲያኔ ህዝቦች ዳቦውን እንዲቆርሰውና በመባረክ እንዲሰጣቸው ስልጣንን አሰጠዋለሁ።

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

፮ እናም እኔ እንዲደረግሁትም ቢሆን፣ እንዲሁም እኔም ዳቦውን እንደቆረሰኩትና እንደባረከሁት እናም ለእናንተ እንደሰጠኋችሁ ይህንን ሁል ጊዜ በቀጣይነት አድርጉ።

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

፯ እናም ይህንን ያሳዩኋችሁን ስጋዬን ለማስታወስ አድርጉ። ይህም ሁልጊዜ እኔን እንደምታስታውሱ ለአብ ለምስክርነት ይሆናል። እናም ሁልጊዜ የምታስታውሱኝ ከሆነ መንፈሴ ከእናንተ ጋር ይሆናል።

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ደቀመዛሙርቱን ከወይኑ በጥቂቱ እንዲወስዱና ከፅዋውም እንዲጠጡ፣ እናም ደግሞ ህዝቡም ይጠጡ ዘንድ እንዲሰጡአቸው አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የተባሉትን አደረጉ፣ ከዚህም ጠጡና ተሞሉ፤ ለህዝቡም ሰጡ፣ እናም እነርሱም ጠጡና ተሞሉ።

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

፲ እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱም ይህንን ባደረጉ ጊዜ ኢየሱስ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ስላደረጋችሁት ስለእነዚህ ነገሮች ተባርካችኋል፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ ትዕዛዛቴን መፈፀም ነው፤ እናም ይህም ያዘዘኋችሁን ለመፈፀም ፈቃደኞች መሆናችሁን ለአብ ይመስክራል።

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

፲፪ እናም ይህን ንስሃ ለገቡትና በሰሜ ለተጠመቁት ሁልጊዜ ታደርጉታላችሁ። እናም ይህንንም ለናንተ ያፈሰሰኩትን ደም ለማስታወስ፤ እኔን ሁልጊዜ እንደምታስታውሱኝ ለአብ ለመመስከር ታደርጉታላችሁ። እናም ሁልጊዜም የምታስታውሱኝ ከሆነ መንፈሴ ከእናንተ ጋር ይሆናል።

፲፫ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድታደርጉ ትዕዛዛትን እሰጣችኋለሁ። እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁል ጊዜ የምታደርጉ ከሆነ፣ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፣ በአለት ላይ ቤታችሁን ስርታችኋልና።

፲፬ ነገር ግን ከእናንተ መካከል ከዚህ የበለጠም ሆነ ያነሰ የሚሰራ፣ በአለቱ ላይ ቤቱን አልሰራም፣ ነገር ግን በአሸዋ ላይ መሰረቱን ስርቷል፤ እናም ዝናብ በሚወርድበትና የጥፋት ውሀ በሚመጣበት፣ እናም ነፋስ በሚነፍሰበትና፣ በሚመታቸው ጊዜ ይወድቃሉ፣ እናም የገሃነም ደጆችም እነርሱን ለመቀበል ክፍት ይሆናሉ።

፲፭ ስለዚህ ለእናንተ እንድሰጣችሁ አብ ያዘዘኝን ትዕዛዛት የምትጠብቁ ከሆነ እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ።

፲፮ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ዘወትር ንቁ መሆን እና መጠለይ አለባችሁ፤ አለበለዚያ በዲያብሎስ ትፈተናላችሁ እናም የእርሱ ምርኮኛም ትሆናላችሁ።

፲፯ እናም በመካከላችሁ እንደጸለይኩት እናንተም ንስሃ በገቡትና በሰሜ በተጠመቁት ህዝቦቼ መካከል በቤተክርስቲያኔ በተመሳሳይ ፀልዩ። እነሆ እኔ ብርሃን ነኝ፤ ምሳሌም ትቼላችኋለሁ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ለደቀመዛሙርቱ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ወደ ህዝቡ በመዞር እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፦

፲፱ እነሆ፣ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ እንዳትፈተኑ ዘወትር መንቃት እናም መጠለይ አለባችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ሰይጣን እንደ ሰንዴ ሊያበጥራችሁ ይፈልጋችኋልና።

፳ ስለዚህ ዘወትር በሰሜ ወደ አብ መጠለይ ይኖርባችኋል፤

፳፩ እናም በሰሜ ትክክል የሆነውን ማንኛውንም ነገር በእምነት እናገኛለን በማለት አብን ከጠየቃችሁት፤ እነሆ ለእናንተ ይሰጣችኋልና።

፳፪ ሚስቶቻችሁ እና ልጆቻችሁ ይባረኩ ዘንድ፣ ዘወትር ከቤተሰቦቻችሁ ጋር በሰሜ ፀልዩ።

፳፫ እናም እነሆ፣ ዘወትር በአንድነት ተሰባስቡ፣ እናም በአንድነት በምትሆኑበት ጊዜ ማንም ሰው ወደእናንተ እንዳይመጣ አትከልክሉ፤ ነገር ግን ወደ እናንተ ይመጡ ዘንድ ፍቀዱላቸውና አትከልክሉአቸው፤

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

፳፫ ነገር ግን ለእነርሱ ፀልዩላቸውና፣ አታባርሩአቸው፤ እናም ዘወትር ወደ እናንተ የሚመጡ ከሆነ ወደ አብም በሰሜ ፀልዩላቸው።

፳፬ ስለዚህ፣ ለዓለም ያበራ ዘንድ ብርሃናችሁን ከፍ አድርጉ። እነሆ፣ እኔ ሳደርግ የተመለከታችሁትም፣ እናንተ ከፍ የምታደርጉት ብርሃን ነኝ። እነሆ ወደ አብ መፀለዩን ተመልክታችኋል፣ እናም ሁላችሁም መስክራችኋል።

፳፭ እናም ማናችሁም ከዚህ እንዳትርቁ ማዘዘን ተገንዝባችኋል፤ ነገር ግን ትዳሰሱና ትመለከቱ ዘንድ ወደ እኔ እንድትመጡ አዝዣችኋለሁ፤ በዚሁም ሁኔታ ለዓለም አድርጉ፤ እናም ይህንን ትዕዛዝ የሚያፈርስ ቢኖር ወደ ፈተናው ለመግባት ለራሱ ፈቅዷል።

፳፮ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ በድጋሚ ወደመረጣቸው ደቀ መዛሙርት ዐይኑን አደረገ፣ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፡

፳፯ እነሆ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ሌላ ትዕዛዝ አስጣችኋለሁ፣ እናም አብም የሰጠኝን ሌሎች ትዕዛዛትን እፈፀም ዘንድ ወደ አባቴ መሄድ ይገባኛልና።

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነሆ፣ ለእናንተ የምሰጣችሁ ትዕዛዝ ይህ ነው፤ ቅዱስ ቁርባን በምታቀርቡበት ጊዜ ለማንም ሰጋና ደሜን ያለብቁነት እንዲወሰድ አትፍቀዱ፤

፳፱ ያለብቁነት ሰጋዬን የሚበላ እናም ደሜን የሚጠጣ ለእነርሱ እርግግንን ይበላልና ይጠጣል፤ ስለዚህ እንድ ሰውም ሰጋዬን እንደሚበላና ደሜን እንደሚጠጣ ብቁ እንዳልሆነ ካወቃችሁ ከልክሉት።

፴ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከመካከላችሁ አታሰወጡት፣ ነገር ግን እርሱን አገልግሎትና በሰሜ ወደ አብ ፀልዩለት፤ እናም በሰሜ ንሰሃ ከገባና ከተጠመቀ ተቀበሉት እናም ሰጋዬንና ደሜን አቅርቡለት።

፴፩ ነገር ግን ንሰሃ ካልገባ፣ ህዝቦቹን እንዳያጠፋ፣ ከህዝቦቹ መካከል አይቆጠርም፣ እነሆ በጎቹን አውቃቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እነርሱም ተቆጥረዋል።

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

፲፪ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ከምኩራባችሁም ሆነ ከማምለኪያ ሰፍራዎቻችሁ አታሰወጡ፣ ምክንያቱም ለእነዚህ አይነት ለማገልገል መቀጠል አለባችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም አንድ ቀን እንደሚለወጡና ጎሰሃ እንደሚገቡ እናም በልባቸው ሙሉ አላማ ወደ እኔ እንደሚመጡ አታውቁምና፣ እናም እፈውሳቸዋለሁ፤ እናንተም ደህንነትን ወደ እነርሱ ለማምጣት መሳሪያ ትሆናላችሁ።

፲፫ ስለዚህ ወደ ፍርድ እንዳትመጡ እነዚህን ያዘዘኳችሁን ቃላት ጠብቁአቸው፤ አብ ለሚፈርድበት ለዚያ ሰው ወዮላት።

፲፬ እናም በመካከላችሁ በነበረው ፀብ ምክንያት እነዚህን ትዕዛዛት አሰጣችኋለሁ። እናም በመካከላችሁ ፀብ ከሌለ እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ።

፲፭ እናም አሁን ለእናንተ ሰልም ወደ አብ መሄዴ አሰፈላጊ በመሆኑ ወደ አብ እሄዳለሁ።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ይህንን ንግግሩን በጨረሰ ጊዜ፣ የመረጣቸውን ደቀመዛሙርት ሁሉንም እስከሚነካ ድረስ አንድ በአንድ በእጁ ነካቸውና፣ እንደነካቸውም ተናገራቸው።

፲፯ እናም ህዝቡም የተናገረውን ቃላት አልሰሙትም፤ ስለዚህ አልመሰክሩም፤ ነገር ግን ደቀ መዛሙርቱ መንፈስ ቅዱስን እንዲሰጡ ሰልጣንን እንደሰጣቸው መሰከሩ። እናም ከዚህ ጊዜ በኋላም ይህ ምሰክርነት እውነት መሆኑንም አሳያችኋለሁ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ሁሉንም በነካቸው ጊዜ፣ ደመና መጣና ህዝቡን ሸፈነው ስለዚህ ኢየሱስን ለማየት አልቻሉም።

፲፱ እናም በተሸፈኑ ጊዜ ኢየሱስ ከእነርሱ ሔደና፣ ወደ ሰማይ አረገ። እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱ ተመለከቱትና በድጋሚ ወደ ሰማይ ማረጉንም መሰከሩ።

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ወደ ሰማይ ባረገ ጊዜ፣ ህዝቡ ተበታተኑና፣ እያንዳንዱም ሰው ሚስቱንና ልጆቹን በመያዝ ወደ ቤቱ ተመለሱ።

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

፪ እናም ህዝቡም ኢየሱስን እንደተመለከቱትና እርሱ እንዳስተማራቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ በሚቀጥለው ቀን እራሱን እንደሚያሳይ ከምሽቱ በፊት ወሬው በህዝቡ መካከል ተዳረሰ።

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

፫ አዎን፣ እናም ኢየሱስን በተመለከተ በምሽት ሁሉ ወሬው በፍጥነት ተዳረሰ፤ አዎን፣ በሚቀጥለውም ቀን ኢየሱስ እራሱን ለህዝቡ በሚያሳይበት ስፍራ ይሆኑ ዘንድ እጅግ ብዙ ቁጥር ወዳላቸው ሰዎች ተልኮ ምሽቱን ሁሉ ተግተው ሰሩ።

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለውም ቀን፣ ህዝቡ በተሰበሰቡ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ኔፊና ከሞት ያሰነሳው ወንድሙ ስሙም ጢሞቴዎስ የተባለውና፣ ደግሞ ዮናስ ተብሎ የሚጠራው ልጁ፣ እናም ደግሞ ማቶኒና፣ ወንድሙ ማቶኒያህ፣ እናም ቁመንና፣ ቁመኖንሒ፣ ኤርሚያስም፣ ሼምኖንም፣ ዮናስም፣ ሴዴቅያስም፣ እናም ኢሳይያስ—እንግዲህ እነዚህም ኢየሱስ የመረጣቸው የደቀመዛሙርቱ ሰዎች ነበሩ—እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ ወደ ፊት ሄዱና በህዝቡ መካከል ቆሙ።

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ህዝቡም በጣም ብዙ ነበር ስለዚህ በእስራ ሁለት ቡድን ቦታ እንዲከፈሉ አደረጉ።

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

፮ እናም እስራ ሁለቱም ህዝቡን አስተማሩ፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ህዝቡም በጉልበቱ ወደታች ምድር ገፅ ላይ እንዲንበረከኩና፣ በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ አብ እንዲጸልዩ አደረጉ።

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

፯ እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱም እንዲሁ በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ አብ ጸለዩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ተነሱና ህዝቡን አስተማሩ።

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

፰ እናም ኢየሱስ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት ባስተማሩ ጊዜ—ቃላቶቹ ኢየሱስ ከተናገራቸው የተለዩ አልነበሩም—እነሆ፣ በድጋሚ ተንበረከኩና በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ አብ ጸለዩ።

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

፱ እናም ይበልጥ ስለሚፈልጉትም ፀላዩ፤ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስ እንዲሰጣቸው ይፈልጉ ነበር።

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

፲ እናም እንደዚህ በሚፀልዩም ጊዜ ወደ ውኃው ጠርዝ ወረዱና ብዙ ህዝብም ተከተላቸው።

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊ ወደ ውኃው ወረደና ተጠመቀ።

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

፲፪ እናም ከውኃው ወጣና ማጥመቅ ጀመረ። እናም ኢየሱስ የመረጣቸውን በሙሉ አጠመቃቸው።

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም በተጠመቁና ከውኃ በወጡ ጊዜ፣ መንፈስ ቅዱስ በላያቸው ላይ ወረደ፣ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስና በእሳት ተሞልተው ነበር።

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

፲፬ እናም እነሆ፣ በእሳት እንደተከበቡ ያህል ሆነው ነበር፤ እናም እርሱም ከሰማይ ወረደና ህዝቡም ይህንን ተመልክቷል፣ ምስክርነታቸውንም ሰጡ፤ እናም መላዕክት ከሰማይ ወረዱና አስተማሩአቸው።

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መላዕክት ለደቀ መዛሙርቱ በሚያስተምሩአቸው ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ኢየሱስ መጣ እናም በመካከላቸው ቆመና፣ አስተማራቸው።

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡንም ተናገረና፣ በድጋሚም በመሬት ላይ እንዲንበረከኩ፣ እናም ደግሞ ደቀመዛሙርቱም በመሬት ላይ እንዲንበረከኩ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም በመሬት ላይ በተንበረከኩም ጊዜ፣ ደቀመዛሙርቱም እንዲፀልዩ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

፲፰ እናም እነሆ፣ መጸለይ ጀመሩ፤ እናም እርሱን ጌታቸውና አምላካቸው በማለት በመጥራት ወደ ኢየሱስ ፀለዩ።

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም ከመካከላቸው ወጥቶ ተለይቶአቸው ሄደና፣ ከእነርሱ ትንሽ ራቅ ብሎ ተራመደ፣ እናም ወደ መሬት አጎነበሰና፣ እንዲህ አለ፡

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

፳ አባት ሆይ፣ እኔ ለመረጣኳቸው ለነዚህ መንፈስ ቅዱስ ስለሰጠሃቸው አመሰግናለሁ፤ እናም በእኔም ባላቸው እምነት ምክንያት ነው ከዓለም የመረጣኳቸው።

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

፳፩ አባት ሆይ፣ በቃላቸው ለሚያምኑት ሁሉ መንፈስ ቅዱስህን ትሰጣቸው ዘንድ እፀልያለሁ።

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

፳፪ አባት ሆይ፡ በእኔም ስለሚያምኑ መንፈስ ቅዱስ ስጥተሃቸዋል፤ እናም ስምተሃቸዋልና በእኔም እንደሚያምኑ ተመልክተሃል፤ እነርሱም ወደ እኔም ፀልየዋል፤ እናም ከእነርሱም ጋር በመሆኔ ወደ እኔ ፀልየዋል።

፳፫ እናም እንግዲህ አባት ሆይ፡ ስለ እነርሱና ደግሞ በእነርሱ ቃል ለሚያምኑ ሁሉ በእኔ ያምኑ ዘንድ፡ አብ ሆይ፡ አንተ በእኔ እንዳለህ፡ እኔም በእነርሱ እሆን ዘንድ እኛም አንድ እንሆን ዘንድ፡ ስለእነርሱ እፀልያለሁ።

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ወደ አብ በፀለየ ጊዜ፡ ወደ ደቀመዛሙርቱ መጣ፤ እናም እነሆ፡ ወደ እርሱ መፀለያቸውን አሁንም ሳያቋርጡ ይቀጥሉ ነበር፤ ምን መፀለይ እንዳለባቸው ስለተገለፀላቸውም በፀሎታቸው ብዙ ቃላት አይናገሩም ነበር፤ በፍላጎትም ተሞልተው ነበር።

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ወደ እርሱ በሚፀልዩበት ጊዜ ባረካቸው፤ የፊቱም ፈገግታ በላያቸው ላይ ነበር፤ የፊቱም ብርሃን ያንፀባርቅባቸው ነበር፤ እናም እነሆ እነርሱም እንደገፀታውና ደግሞ እንደ ኢየሱስ መሳናፀፊያ ነጭ ነበሩ፤ እናም እነሆ ንጣታቸውም ከነጭ ነገር ሁሉ እጅግ የበለጠ ነበር፤ አዎን፤ በምድር ላይም በዚያ ከነበረው ንጣት የበለጠ ሊሆን አይቻለውም ነበር።

፳፮ እናም ኢየሱስ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ፀልዩ፤ ይሁን እንጂ ፀሎታቸውን አላቋረጡም ነበር።

፳፯ እናም በድጋሚ ከእነርሱ ተመለሰ፤ ጥቂትም ራቅ ብሎ ሄደና በመሬትም ላይ አጎነበሰ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲል በድጋሚ ወደ አብ ፀለየ፡

፳፰ አባት ሆይ፡ የመረጥኳቸውን በእምነታቸው የተነሳ ስላነፃሃቸው አመሰግንሃለሁ፤ ለእነርሱ እናም ደግሞ በቃላቸው ለሚያምኑ በቃላታቸው እምነት በእኔ እንደተነጹም፡ በእኔ እንዲነጹ ዘንድ ለእነርሱ እፀልያለሁ።

፳፱ አባት ሆይ፡ በእምነታቸው የተነሳ በእኔ ይነጹ ዘንድ፤ አብ ሆይ፡ አንተ በእኔ እንዳለህ እኔና አንተም አንድ እንደሆንን፤ እኔም በእነርሱ እሆን ዘንድ፤ በእነርሱም እኩብር ዘንድ ስለዓለም ሳይሆን፤ ከአለም ስለሰጠኸኝ ነው የምጸልየው።

፴ እናም ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ወደ ደቀመዛሙርቱ መጣ፤ እናም እነሆ ያለማቋረጥ በፅናት ወደ እርሱ ፀለየ፤ እርሱም በእነርሱ ላይ ፈገግ አለባቸው፤ እናም እነሆ እነርሱ እንደ ኢየሱስ ነጭ ነበሩ።

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

፲፩፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ትንሽ ራቅ በሎ ሄደና፣ ወደ ከብም ፀለየ፤

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

፲፩፪ እናም በፀሎቱ የነበሩትን ቃላት አንደበት ሊናገራቸው፣ ወይም የጸለጻቸውን ቃላት ሰው ሊፅፈው አይቻለውም።

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

፲፩፫ እናም ህዝቡ አዳመጡና መሰከሩ፤ እናም ልባቸውም ተከፈተና የፀሎቱን ቃላት በልባቸው ተረዱት።

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

፲፩፬ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የፀሎቱ ቃላትም እጅግ ታላቅና አስገራሚ ስለነበሩ በሰው ሊፃፉም ሆነ ሊነገሩ አይችሉም።

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

፲፩፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም ፀሎቱን በጨረሰ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ወደ ደቀመዛሙርቱ መጣ፣ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፤ በአይሁዶች ሁሉ መካከል እንደዚህ ያለ ታላቅ እምነት በጭራሽ አላየሁም፤ ስለሆነም ስለማያምኑ እንደዚህ የሆነ ታላቅ ተአምራት ላሳያቸው አልቻልኩም።

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

፲፩፮ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ እናንተ እንዳያችሁት እንደዚህ ታላቅ ነገሮችን የተመለከተ ከእነርሱ ማንም የለም፤ እንደሰማችሁት ታላቅ ነገሮችንም እነርሱ አልሰሙም ነበር።

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

፫ ኔፊ ፳

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡን እንዲሁም ደቀመዛሙርቱን ፀሎታቸውን እንዲያቆሙ አዘዛቸው። እናም በልባቸው መፀለይም እንዲያቆሙ አዘዛቸው።

፪ እናም እንዲነሱና በእግራቸው እንዲቆሙ አዘዛቸው። እናም ተነሱና በእግራቸው ቆሙ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ ዳቦውን ቆረሰውና ባረከው፣ እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱ እንዲበሉት ሰጣቸው።

፬ እናም በተመገቡም ጊዜ ዳቦውን እንዲቆርሱና፣ ለህዝቡ እንዲሰጡ አዘዛቸው።

፭ እናም ዳቦውን ለህዝቡ በሰጡ ጊዜ እርሱ ደግሞ ወይኑን እንዲጠጡ ሰጣቸው፣ እናም ለህዝቡ እንዲሰጡም አዘዛቸው።

፮ አሁን፣ በደቀመዛሙርቱም ይሁን በህዝቡ የመጣ ምንም ዳቦም ሆነ ወይን አልነበረም።

፯ ነገር ግን እርሱ በእውነት ዳቦ እንዲበሉ፣ እናም ደግሞ ወይን እንዲጠጡ ሰጣቸው።

፰ እናም እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ይህንን ዳቦ የተመገበ ለነፍሱ ስጋዬን ይመገባል፣ ይህንን ወይን የጠጣም ለነፍሱ ደሜን ይጠጣል፤ እናም ነፍሱ አትራብም እንዲሁም አትጠማም፣ ነገር ግን ትጠግባለች።

፱ እንግዲህ፣ ህዝቡም በሙሉ በተመገቡና በጠጡ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ በመንፈስ ተሞሉ፤ በእነድም ድምፅ ጮሁ፤ እናም ላዩትና ለሰሙት ኢየሱስ ክብርን ሰጡ።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም ለኢየሱስ ክብርን በሰጡ ጊዜ፣ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ አሁን የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪት ስለሆኑት ስለነዚህ ሰዎች አብ ያዘዘኝን ትዕዛዝ አፈፀማለሁ።

፲፩ እናም የኢሳይያስም ትንቢት ይፈፀማሉ ብዬ የተናገርኳችሁን አስታውሱ—እነሆ እነርሱ ተፅፈዋል፤ እነርሱም ከፊታችሁ ናቸው፤ ስለዚህ መርምሩቸው—

፲፪ እናም የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ እነርሱም ሲፈፀሙ አብም ለህዝቡ የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ይፈፀማል።

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

፲፫ እናም ቅሪቶቹ፣ በምድር ገፅ ላይ የተበተኑት ሁሉ ከምስራቅ፣ ከምዕራብና፣ ከደቡብ፣ እና ከሰሜን ይሰበሰባሉ፤ እናም አዳኞቻቸው ወደሆነው ወደ ጌታ አምላካቸው እውቀት ይመጣሉ።

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

፲፬ እናም አብም ለርሰታችሁ ይህችን ምድር እንድሰጣችሁ አዘኛል።

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ እህዛብ በረከቱን በሚቀበሉበት ሁኔታ ህዝቤንም ከበተኑ በኋላ ንስሃ ካልገቡ—

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

፲፮ ከዚያም እናንተ የያዕቆብ ቤት ቅሪት የሆናችሁ ከእነርሱም መካከል ትሄዳላችሁ፤ ብዙ ከሚሆኑትም መካከል ትሆናላችሁ፤ እናም አንበሳ ከዱር አውሬዎች መካከል እንደሚሆነውና፣ በመካከላቸው ሲሄድ እንደሚረጋገጣቸውና እንደሚቆራረጣቸው፣ እናም ማንም ሊያድናቸው እንደማይቻለው እንደ አንበሳ ገልገል በበጎች መንጋ መካከል እንደሚሆን እናንተም በእነርሱ መካከል ትሆናላችሁ።

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

፲፯ እጅህ በጠላቶችህ ላይ ከፍ ይላል፣ እናም ጠላቶችህ ሁሉ ይጠፋሉ።

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

፲፰ እናም ሰው አውድማውን በሜዳው ላይ እንደሚሰበሰብ ህዝቤን በአንድነት እሰበሰባለሁ።

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

፲፱ አብ ቃል ኪዳን የገባላቸውን ህዝቦቹን፣ አዎን፣ ቀንድሽን ብረት፣ ጥፍርሽንም ናስ እደርጋለሁ። ብዙ ህዝቦችን ታደቅዷለሽ፤ ትርፋቸውንም ለጌታ፣ ሀብታቸውንም ለምድር ሁሉ ጌታ እቀድሳለሁ። እናም እነሆ፣ ይህን የማደርገውም እኔ ነኝ።

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ አብ እንዲህ አለ፣ በዚያ ቀን የፍርድ ጎራዴ በእነርሱ ይመዘዛል፤ እናም አብም ንስሃ ካልገቡ በእነርሱ ላይ ይወድቃል ይላል፤ አዎን፣ በእህዛብ ሀገር ሁሉ ላይም ይወድቃል።

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ ህዝቤንም እመስርታለሁ።

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

፳፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ከአባታችሁ ከያዕቆብ ጋር የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን እፈፅም ዘንድ ይህን ህዝብ በዚህች ምድር እመስርታለሁ፤ እርሷም አዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ትሆናለች። እናም የሰማይ ስልጣናትም በዚህ ህዝብ መካከል ይሆናሉ፤ አዎን፣ እኔም በመካከላችሁ እሆናለሁ።

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

፳፫ እነሆ፣ ሙሴ እንዲህ ሲል የተናገረለት እኔ ነኝ፡
ከወንድሞቻችሁ እንደ እኔ ያለን ነቢይ ጌታ አምላካችሁ
ከመካከላችሁ ያሰነሳል፤ እርሱ የሚላችሁን ሁሉ
ታደምጡታላችሁ። እናም ይህን ነቢይ የማትሰማ ነፍስ
ብትኖር ከዚህ ህዝብ ተለይታ ትጠፋለች።

፳፬ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ከሳሙኤል ጀምሮ
ከእርሱ በኋላ የተናገሩት ነቢያት ሁሉ ስለእኔ
መሰክረዋል።

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ እናንተ የነቢያት ልጆች ናችሁ፤ እናም
የእስራኤል ቤት ናችሁ፣ እግዚአብሔር ለአብርሃም
በዘርህ የምድር ወገኖች ሁሉ ይባረካሉ ብሎ
ከአባቶቻችሁ ጋር ያደረገው የኪዳን ልጆች ናችሁ፤

፳፮ አብም ወደእናንተ በመጀመሪያ እንድነሳ አደረገኝ፣
እናም ከክፋቶቼ እያንዳንዳችሁን እንዳርቅ እናንተን
እንድባርክ ላከኝ፤ እናም ይህም የሆነው እናንተ የቃል
ኪዳን ልጆች ስለሆናችሁ ነው—

፳፯ እናም ከተባረካችሁ በኋላ እንዲህም ሲል አብ
ከአብርሃም ጋር የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ተፈፅሟል፡ በዘርህ
የምድር ወገኖች በሙሉ ይባረካሉ—በእኔም በኩል ወደ
እህዛብ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ወደማፍሰስ፣ ይህም በእህዛብ
ላይ ያለው በረከት ከሁሉም በላይ ሀይለኛ ሆነው
ህዝቤን፣ አቤቱ የእስራኤል ቤትን፣ ይበትናሉ።

፳፰ እናም ለዚህች ምድር ህዝቦች ጀራፍ ይሆናሉ። ይሁን
እንጂ፣ አብም የወንጌሉን ሙሉነት በሚቀበሉበት ጊዜ
ልባቸውን በእኔም ላይ ካጠጠሩ፣ ክፋታቸውን
በአራሳቸው ላይ እመልሰባቸዋለሁ ይላል።

፳፱ እናም ከህዝቤ ጋር የገባሁትን ቃል ኪዳን
አስታውሳለሁ፤ አብም እንዲህ ይላል፡ በራሴም ጊዜ
በእንድ ላይ እነርሱን እንድስበስብ፤ ለዘርቻቸውም
በድጋሚ የእየሩሳሌምን ምድር የሆነውን፣ እናም
ለዘለዓለም የቃል ኪዳን ምድር የሆነችላቸውን
የአባቶቻቸውን ምድር ለመስጠት ቃል ኪዳን
ገብቻለሁና።

፴ እናም የወንጌሉ ሙሉነት ለእነርሱ የሚሰበክበት ጊዜ
ይመጣል፤

፴፩ እናም እኔም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ
እንደሆነኩኝ በእኔ ያምናሉ፣ እናም በሰሜም ወደ አብ
ይፀልያሉ።

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A
prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of
your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all
things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall
come to pass that every soul who will not hear that
prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets
from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as
have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets;
and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the
covenant which the Father made with your fathers,
saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the
kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and
sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you
from his iniquities; and this because ye are the chil-
dren of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the
Father the covenant which he made with Abraham,
saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth
be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost
through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon
the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto
the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this
land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received
the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden
their hearts against me I will return their iniquities
upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have
made with my people; and I have covenanted with
them that I would gather them together in mine own
due time, that I would give unto them again the land
of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the
land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto
them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh,
when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached
unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus
Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the
Father in my name.

፲፪ ጠባቂዎቻቸውም ድምፃቸውን ከፍ ያደርጋሉ፣ እናም በእንድ ድምፅም ይዘምራሉ፤ ዐይን ለዐይንም ይተያያሉና።

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

፲፫ ከዚያም አብ በድጋሚ በእንድነት ይሰበሰባቸዋል፣ እናም ለርሰታቸውም ምድር ኢየሩሳሌምን ይሰጣቸዋል።

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

፲፬ እነርሱም እልል ይላሉ—እናንት የተበላሻችሁ የኢየሩሳሌም ሰፍራዎች በእንድነት ዘምሩ፤ አብም ህዝቡን አፅናንቷል፤ ኢየሩሳሌምን አድኗልና።

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

፲፭ አብም ቅዱስ የሆኑ ክንዶቹን በሀገር ሁሉ ፊት አሳይቷል፤ እናም በዓለም ጫፍ ያሉት ሁሉ የአብን መድሀኒት ይመለከታሉ፤ እናም እኔና አብም እንድ ነን።

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

፲፮ እና ከዚያም የተፃፉትም ይፈፀማሉ፤ ፅዮን ሆይ ንቂ፣ በድጋሚ ንቂና፣ ጥንካሬሽን ልበሺ፤ ኢየሩሳሌም ሆይ፣ ቅዱሲቷ ከተማ ሆይ፣ ያጌጠ ልብሰሽንም ልበሺ፤ ከእንግዲህ ያልተገረዘና ርኩስ ወዳንቺ ዘንድ አይመጣምና።

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

፲፯ ኢየሩሳሌም ሆይ ትቢያሽን አራግፊ፣ ተነሺ፣ ተቀመጧ፤ ምርኮኛይቱ የፅዮን ልጅ ሆይ የእንገትሽን እስራት ፍቺ።

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

፲፰ ጌታ እንዲህ ይላልና፡ በከንቱ ተሸጣችሁ ነበር፤ ያለገንዘብም ትቤዛላችሁ።

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

፲፱ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ህዝቤ ሰሜን ያውቃሉ፤ አዎን በዚያ ቀን የምናገረው እኔ እንደሆንኩም ያውቃሉ።

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

፳ እናም ከዚያም እንዲህ ይላሉ፡ ሰላምን ያበሰር፤ መልካም የሆነውን መልካም የምስራች ወሬ ያመጣ፣ ደህንነትን ያወጀ፣ ለፅዮንም አምላካችሁ ነግሶአል! ያለው፣ መልካም የምስራች ይዞ የመጣው በተራራው ላይ ያለው አግሮቹ እንዴት ያማሩ ናቸው።

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ የሚልም ጩኸት ይሆናል፡ ሽሹ፣ ሽሹ፣ ከዚህ ሰፍራ ተለዩ፣ ርኩስ የሆነውንም አትንኩ፤ ከመካከልዎም ውጡ፤ የጌታን ዕቃ የምትሸከሙ ንፁሃን ሁኑ።

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

፳፪ በችኮላም ሆነ በመሸሸ አትሄዱም፤ ጌታ ከፊታችሁ ይሄዳልና፣ እናም የእስራኤል አምላካም ከኋላችሁ ይሆናል።

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

፳፫ እነሆ አገልጋዩ በማስተዋል ያደርጋል፤ ይከበራል እናም ከፍ ከፍም ይላል፤ እጅግ ታላቅም ይሆናል።

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

፱፬ ብዙዎች በእነተ ተደንቀው ነበር—ፊቱም ከማንኛውም ሰው የበለጠ፣ እናም የሰውነቱም ገጽ ከሰው ልጆች የበለጠ የተበላሸ ነበር—

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

፱፭ በብዙ ሀገርም ላይ ያርከፈክፋል፤ ያልተነገረላቸውንም ያያሉና፣ ያልሰሙትንም ያሰተውላሉና፣ ነገሥታት ሰለ እርሱ አፋቸውን ይዘጋሉ።

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

፱፮ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ አብ እንዳዘዘኝ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ በእርግጥ ይመጣሉ። አብም ከህዝቡ ጋር የገባው ይህ ቃል ኪዳን ይፈጸማል፤ እናም ህዝቦቹም በድጋሚ ኢየሩሳሌምን ይኖሩባታል፤ እናም እርሷም የርሱት ምድራቸው ትሆናለች።

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

፩ እናም እውነት እላችኋለሁ፡ እነዚህ ነገሮች፣ ህዝቤን የእስራኤልን ቤት፣ ለረጅም ጊዜ ከተበተኑበት የምሰበሰቡት፣ እናም በድጋሚም ፅዮንንም በመካከላቸው የምመሰርትበት የሚፈፀሙበትን ጊዜ ታውቁ ዘንድ ምልክትን እሰጣችኋለሁ—

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ለምልክት እንዲሆናችሁ የምሰጣችሁ ነገር ይህ ነው—እውነት እላችኋለሁ የያዕቆብ ቤት ስለሆኑት እነዚህ ሰዎች በተመለከተ፣ እናም በእነርሱም ስለሚበተኑት ህዝቦቹ በተመለከተ እነዚህን የምነግራችሁና፣ ከዚህ በኋላም በራሴና፣ አብም በሚሰጣችሁ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል አማካኝነት የሚታወጁላችሁ ነገሮች ያውቁ ዘንድ ለአህዛብ እንዲያውቁት ይደረጋል፤

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

፫ እውነት፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፡ በአብ አማካኝነት እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዲያውቁ በሚደረግበት እናም በአብም ከእነርሱም ወደ እናንተ በሚመጣበት ጊዜ፤

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

፬ እነዚህ ነገሮች ከእነርሱ ለዘራችሁ ቅሪት ይመጡ ዘንድ፤ ይኸውም አብ ከህዝቡ ከእስራኤል ቤት ጋር የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ይፈፀም ዘንድ፣ ይህ እነርሱ በዜች ምድር ይደራጁ ዘንድ፣ እናም በአብ ኃይልም ነፃ ሰዎች በመሆን ይቋቋሙ ዘንድ፣ ይህ የአብ ጥበብ ነውና።

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

፭ ስለዚህ፣ ይህም ሥራ እናም በመካከላቸው ከዚህም በኋላ የሚሰራው በአህዛብ አማካኝነት በክፋታቸው እምነት አጥተው ለመነሙት ለዘሮቻችሁ በሚደርሱበት ጊዜ፤

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

፮ ኃይሉን ለአህዛብ ያሳይ ዘንድ፣ ይህም ከአህዛብ እንዲመጣ፣ ይኸውም አህዛብ ልባቸውን ካላጠጠሩ፣ ንሰሃ ቢገቡና በሰሜ ቢጠመቁ እናም የትምህርቱን እውነተኛ ነጥቦች ቢያውቁ፤ ከህዝቦቹም ከእስራኤል ቤት ጋር እንዲቆጠሩ የአብ ፈቃድ ነውና፤

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

፯ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሚሆኑበት ጊዜ ዘሮቻችሁ እነዚህን ነገሮች ማወቅ ይጀምራሉ—ይህም የእስራኤል ቤት ለሆኑት የገባው ቃል ኪዳን እንዲፈፀም የአብ ስራ እንደተጀመረ እንዲያውቁ ዘንድ ለምልክት ይሆንላቸዋል።

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

፳፮ እናም ያ ቀን በሚመጣበትም ጊዜም ነገሥታት አፋቸውን ይዘጋሉ፤ ያልተነገራቸውን ያያሉና፤ እናም ያልሰሙትን ያሰተውላሉን።

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

፳፱ በዚያን ቀን፣ ለእኔም ሲል አብ ሥራን ይሰራል፣ ሥራውም በመካከላቸው ታላቅ እንዲሁም ድንቅ ሥራ ይሆናል፤ እናም አንድ ሰው ለእነርሱ ቢያውጅላቸውም በእነርሱ መካከል ይህን የማያምኑ ይኖራሉ።

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

፲ እገር ግን እነሆ፣ የአገልጋዬ ህይወት በእጄ ትሆናለች፤ ስለዚህ ምንም እንኳን በእነርሱ የተነሳ እርሱ ቢጠፋም፣ አይጎዱትም። ይሁን እንጂ እርሱን አፈውሰዋለሁ፤ ማስተዋለም ከዲያብሎስ ሴራ የበለጠ መሆኑን አሳያቸዋለሁ።

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

፲፩ ስለዚህ አብም እርሱን ወደ አህዛብ እንዲያመጣው ባደረገው፣ እናም ለአህዛብ ያመጣው ዘንድ ስልጣንን በሰጠው ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ በሆነኩት በእኔ ቃል የማያምን፣ (ሙሴ እንደተናገረውም ይፈጸማል) የቃል ኪዳን ህዝብ ከሆኑት ከህዝቦቹም መካከል ይለያል።

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

፲፪ እናም ህዝቤ የያዕቆብ ቅርት የሆኑት ከአህዛብ መካከል ይሆናሉ፤ አዎን በመካከላቸው በዲር አውሬዎች መካከል እንዳለ አንበሳ፣ በቦታች መንጋ መካከል ከሄደ እንደሚረጋግጣቸውና፣ እንደሚቆራርጣቸው የአንበሳ ግልገል ይሆናሉ፣ እናም ማንም ለማዳን አይቻለውም።

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

፲፫ እጃቸው በጠላቶቻቸው ላይ ከፍ ይላል፣ እናም ጠላቶቻቸው ሁሉ ይጠፋሉ።

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

፲፬ አዎን፣ ንሰሃ ካልገቡ ለአህዛብ ወዮላቸው፤ አብም እንዲህ ይሆናል ይላል፣ በዚያም ቀን ፈረሶቹን ከመካከላቸው አጠፋለሁ፣ ስረገሎቻቸውንም አሰብራለሁ።

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

፲፭ እናም የምድራችሁን ከተሞች አጠፋለሁና ምሽጎቻችሁን በሙሉ አፈራርሳለሁ፤

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

፲፮ እናም መተትንም ከምድራችሁ አጠፋለሁና፣ ምዋርተኞችም ከእንግዲህ አይኖሩችሁም፤

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

፲፯ የተቀረፀውን ምስላችሁን እና ሐውልቶቻችሁንም ደግሞ በመካከላችሁ አጠፋለሁ፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ የእጃቻችሁን ስራ አታመልኩም፤

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

፲፰ እናም የማምለኪያ ፀፀዶቻችሁንም ከመካከላችሁ እንቅላለሁ፣ ከተማዎቻችሁንም አፈርሳለሁ።

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ሀሰቶችም፣ ማጭበርበርም፣ ምቀኝነትም፣ ፀብም፣ የካህናት ተንኮል፣ እናም ዝሙት ሁሉ ከእንግዲህ ይወገዳሉ።

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

፳፯ ኡብም እንዲህም ይሆናልና ይላል፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ በዚያን ቀን ንሰሃ ያልገባ፣ እናም ወደ ተወደደው ልጄ ያልመጣ ከህዝቤ መካከል እለየዋለሁ፤

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

፳፬ እናም አረመኔዎች ላይ እንደማደርገውም፣ በእነርሱም ላይ ተለማምደው በማያውቁት ዓይነት ቁጣ እና መዓት እበቀላቸዋለሁ።

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

፳፭ ነገር ግን ንሰሃ ከገቡና ቃሉን ካዳመጡ፣ እናም ልባቸውንም ካላጠጠሩ፣ ቤተክርስቲያኔን በእነርሱ መካከል እመስርታለሁና፣ ወደ ቃልኪዳኑ ይመጣሉ፣ እናም ለርስታቸውም ምድሪቷን ከሰጠኋቸው ከእነዚህ ከያዕቆብ ቅሪቶች ጋር ይቆጠራሉ።

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

፳፫ እናም የያዕቆብ ቅሪት የሆኑ ህዝቦቹንና፣ ደግሞ የሚመቱትን የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን ሁሉ፣ እነርሱም ኡዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ተብላ የምትጠራውን ከተማ ይመስርቱ ዘንድ ይረዳሉ።

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

፳፬ እናም ከዚያም በምድረ ገፅ ላይ በሙሉ የተበተኑትን፣ በኡዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ይሰባሰቡ ዘንድ ህዝቦቹን ይረዳሉ።

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

፳፭ እና ከዚያም የሰማይ ኃይልም በእነርሱ መካከል ይወርዳል፤ እናም ደግሞ እኔም በመካከላቸው እሆናለሁ።

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

፳፮ እናም በዚያን ቀንም ይህም ወንጌል በዚህ ህዝብ ቅሪት በሆኑት መካከል በሚሰበክበት ወቅት የኡብ ስራ ይጀመራል። እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ በዚያን ቀን በተበተኑት ህዝቦቹ መካከል፣ አዎን፣ ኡብ ከኢየሩሳሌም ባሰወጣቸው፣ በጠፉት ነገዶችም መካከል ቢሆን የኡብ ስራ ይጀመራል።

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

፳፯ አዎን፣ ኡብን በሰሜ ይጠሩት ዘንድ ወደ እኔም እንዲመጡ መንገዱን ለማዘጋጀት በተበተኑት ህዝቦቹ ሁሉ መካከል ስራው ከኡብ ጋር ይጀመራል።

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

፳፰ አዎን፣ እናም ህዝቡም ወደ ራሱ ሀገር፣ ወደ ርስት ምድሩ ይሰበሰብ ዘንድ መንገድን በማዘጋጀት በሀገሪቱ ሁሉ መካከል ከኡብ ጋር ስራው ይጀመራል።

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

፳፱ እናም እነርሱም ከሁሉም ሀገሮች ይወጣሉ፤ እናም በችኮላም ሆነ በመኮብለል እይሄዱም፣ ኡብም እኔም በፊታቸው እሄዳለሁም፣ በኋላቸውም ጠባቂአቸው እሆናለሁ ይላልና።

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፪

፩ እናም የተፃፈውም እንዲህ ይፈፀማል፡ እንቺ ያልወለድሽ መካን ሆይ ዘምሪ፤ እንቺ ያላማጥሽ እልል በይ፤ እናም በዘምሪ ጩኸ፤ ባል ካላት ይልቅ ፈት የሆነችው ልጆች በዝተዋልና ይላል ጌታ።

፪ የድንኳንሽን ሰፍራ አሰፊ፤ መጋረጃዎችሽንም ይዘርጉ፤ አትቆጥቢ፤ ገመድሽን አሰረዝሚና ካሰሞችሽንም አፅኚ፤

፫ በቀኝና በግራም ትሰፋፊያለሽ፤ እናም ዘርችሽም አህዛብን ይወርሳሉና የፈረሱትን ከተሞች መናሪያ ያደርጋሉ።

፬ አታፍሪምና አትፍሪ፤ እንድታፍሪ ስለማይደረግ ዝም አትበይ፤ የልጅነትሽን እፍረት ትረሺዋለሽ፤ የልጅነትሽን ብሉሽነትሽን ውቅት ከእንግዲህ አታስታውሽም፤ የመበለትነትሽንም ውቅት ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ አታሰቢውም።

፭ ፈጣሪሽ ባልሽ ነው፤ ሰሙም የሰራዊት ጌታ ነው፤ እናም የእስራኤል ቅዱስ የሆነውም አዳኝሽ ነው—የምድር ሁሉ አምላክ ተብሎም ይጠራል።

፮ ጌታ እንደተተወችና እንደተበሳጩች መንፈስ፤ እናም በልጅነት እንደጣሉአት ሚስት ጠርቶሻል ይላል አምላክሽ።

፯ ለጥቂት ጊዜ ጣልኩሽ፤ ነገር ግን በታላቅ ምህረት እስበሰብሻለሁ።

፰ በጥቂት ቁጣ ለቅፅበት ፊቴን ከአንቺ ሰወርኩ፤ ነገር ግን በዘለዓለም ቸርነት እምርሻለሁ ይላል ጌታ አዳኝሽ።

፱ ይህ ለእኔ እንደ ኖህ ውኃ ነው፤ የኖህ ውሃ ደግሞ በምድር ላይ እንዳያልፍ እንደማልሁ እንዲሁ አንቺን እንዳልቆጣ እንዳልዘልፍሽም ምያለሁ።

፲ ተራሮች ይፈርሳሉ፤ ኮረብቶችም ይወገዳሉ፤ ቸርነቴ ግን ከአንቺ ዘንድ አያልፍም፤ የሰላሜም ቃል ኪዳን አይወገድም ይላል መሃሪሽ የሆነ ጌታ።

፲፩ እንቺ የተቸገርሽ ሆይ፤ በእውሎ ነፋስም የተናወጥሽ፤ ያልተፀናናሽም! እነሆ፤ ድንጋዮችሽን ሸላልሜ እንገባለሁ፤ በሰንጠርም ጌጥ እመስርትሻለሁ።

፲፪ የግንብሽንም ጉልላት በቀይ ዕንቁ፤ በሮችሽንም በሚያብረቀርቅ ዕንቁ፤ ዳርቻሽንም ሁሉ በከበሩ ድንጋዮች እስራለሁ።

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

፲፫ እናም ልጆችሽ ሁሉ ከእግዚአብሔር የተማሩ ይሆናሉ፤ እናም የልጆችሽም ሰላም ታላቅ ይሆናል።

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

፲፬ በፅድቅ ትታነዲያለሽ፤ ከግፍ አድራጊ አትፈሪምና ድንጋጤም ወደ እንቺ አይቀርብም።

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ በእርግጥም ባንቺ ላይ ይሰበሰባሉ ነገር ግን ከእኔ ዘንድ አይሆንም፤ በእንቺም ላይ የሚሰበሰቡ ሁሉ ከእንቺ የተነሳ ይወድቃሉ።

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

፲፮ እነሆ፣ ፍሙን በወናፍ የሚያናፋ ለሰራውም መሳሪያ የሚያወጣ ብር ሰሪን እኔ ፈጥሬአለሁ።

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

፲፯ በእንቺ ላይ የተሰራ መሳሪያ ሁሉ አይከናወንም፣ በፍርድም በሚነሳብሽ ምላስ ሁሉ ትፈርጂበታለሽ። የጌታ ባሪያዎች ቅርስ ይህ ነው፤ ጽድቃቸውም ከእኔ ዘንድ ነው ይላል ጌታ።

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፫

፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ፈልጉ። አዎን፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በትጋት እንድትፈልጉ ትዕዛዝ እሰጣችኋለሁ፤ የኢሳይያስ ቃላት ታላቅ ናቸውና።

፪ የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን ህዝቦቹን በተመለከተ፣ ስለሁሉም ነገሮች በእርግጥ ተናግሯል፤ ስለዚህ ለአህዛብ ደግሞ መናገሩ አስፈላጊ ነው።

፫ እናም የተናገራቸው፣ እንዲሁም በተናገራቸው ቃላት መሰረት፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች ሆነዋልም፣ ይሆናሉም።

፬ ስለዚህ ቃሉን ልብ ብላችሁ አድምጡ፤ የተናገርኳችሁንም ነገሮች ፃፉ፤ እናም በአብ ጊዜና ፈቃድ መሰረት እነርሱ ወደ አህዛብ ይሄዳሉ።

፭ እናም ቃሉን የሚሰማና ጎሰሃ የሚገባ እናም የሚጠመቅ እርሱ ይድናል። ነቢያትን ፈልጓቸው፣ ስለነዚህ ነገሮች የሚመሰክሩ ብዙዎች በዚያ ናቸውና።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በድጋሚ በተናገራቸው ጊዜ፣ የተቀበሉአቸውን ቅዱሳን መፃህፍት በጥልቀት ካሰረዳቸው በኋላ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ እነሆ፣ እናንተ ያልጻፍኳቸው፣ እንድትፀፉ የፈለግሁት ሌሎች ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍት አሉ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለኔፊም እንዲህ አለው፡ ያስቀመጥከውን መዝገብ አምጣ።

፰ እናም ኔፊም መዛግብቱን ባመጣና ከፊቱ ባደረገውም ጊዜ፣ ኢየሱስ ተመለከታቸውና እንዲህ አለ፡

፱ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ አገልጋዬን ላማናዊውን ሳሙኤል በዛን ቀን አብ በእኔ ሰሙን በሚያሰክብርበት ጊዜ ብዙ የሞቱ ቅዱሳን እንደሚነሱና ለብዙዎች እንደሚታዩ፣ እናም እነርሱንም እንደሚያስተምሩ ለዚህ ህዝብ እንዲመሰክር አዘዝኩት። እናም ይህ አልነበረምን? ብሎ ተናገራቸው።

፲ እናም ደቀመዛሙርቱ እንዲህ ሲሉ መለሱለት፡ አዎን፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ሳሙኤል በቃልህ መሰረት ተንብዮ ነበር፣ እናም ሁሉም ተፈጽመው ነበር።

፲፩ እናም ኢየሱስ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ብዙዎች ቅዱሳን እንደተነሱና፣ ለብዙዎች እንደተገለጡና እነርሱን እንዳስተማሩ እንዴት አልተፃፉም?

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፊም ይህ ነገር እንዳልተፃፈ አስታወሰ።

3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም መፃፍ እንዳለበት አዘዘ፤ ስለዚህ እርሱ እንዳዘዘውም ተፃፈ።

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም እነርሱ የፃፉትን ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍትን በሙሉ በአንድ ላይ በአስረዳቸው ጊዜ፣ እርሱም ለእነርሱ ያስረዳቸውን ነገሮች ማስተማር እንዳለባቸው አዘዛቸው።

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፬

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሚነግራቸውን፣ አብም ለሚልኪያስ የሰጠውን ቃላት እንዲጽፉት አዘዛቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከጻፉትም በኋላ አሰረዳቸው። እናም እንዲህ በማለት ለእነርሱም የነገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፡ አብም ለሚልኪያስ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው—እነሆ፣ መልዕክተኛዬን እልከዋለሁ፣ እርሱም መንገዱን ከፊቴ ያዘጋጃል፣ እናም የምትፈልጉት ጌታም በድንገት ወደ መቅደሱ ይመጣል፤ ያውም የምትወዱት የቃል ኪዳን መልዕክተኛ፣ እነሆ፣ ይመጣል፣ ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

፪ ነገር ግን የሚመጣበትን ቀን መታገስ የሚችልና በተገለጠ ጊዜም የሚቆም ማን ነው? እርሱ እንደ አንጥረኛ እሳት እናም እንደ አጣቢ የሚያጠራ ሳሙና ነውና።

፫ እናም እርሱም ብርን እንደሚያነጥርና እንደሚያጠራ ሰው ይቀመጣል፤ የሌዊንም ልጆች ያጠራል፣ እንደ ወርቅና ብርም ያነጥራቸዋል፣ እነርሱም ለጌታ በፅድቅ መስዋዕት የሚያቀርቡ ይሆናሉ።

፬ ጌታም እንደ ድሮው ዘመንና እንደቀደሙት ዓመታት በይሁዳና በእየሩሳሌም መስዋዕት ደስ ይለዋል።

፭ እናም ለፍርድ ወደ እናንተ እቀርባለሁ፤ እናም በመተተኞችና፣ በአመንዝሮች፣ በሀሰትም በሚሞሉና፣ የምንደኛውን ደምዝ በሚከለክሉ፣ እናም መበለቲቱንና ድሃ አደጉን በሚያሰጨንቁ፣ እንዲሁም በመጸተኛውም ፍርድን በሚያጣምሙ እኔንም በማይፈሩ ላይ ፈጣን ምስክር እሆንባቸዋለሁ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ።

፮ እኔ ጌታ ነኝና አልለወጣም፤ ስለዚህ እናንተ የያዕቆብ ልጆች የጠፋችሁ አይደላችሁም።

፯ ከአባቶቻችሁ ዘመን ጀምሮ ከሰርዓቴ ፈቀቅ ብላችኋል፣ እናም አልጠበቃችኋቸውም። ወደ እኔ ተመለሱና እኔ ወደ እናንተ እመለሳለሁ ይላል የሰራዊት ጌታ። እናንተ ግን የምንመለሰው ወዴት ነው? ብላችኋል።

፰ ሰው እግዚአብሔርን ይሰርቃልን? እናንተ ግን እኔን ሰርቃችኋል። ነገር ግን እንዴት ነው አንተን የሰርቅነው? ብላችኋል። በእስራትና በበኩራት ነው።

፱ እናንተ፣ ይህ ሀገር ሁሉ እኔን ሰርቋልና በእርግጥን ርጉሞች ናችሁ።

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

፲ በቤቴ ውስጥ መብል እንዲሆን አሰራቴን ሁሉ ወደ ጎተራው አግቡ፤ የሰማይንም መሰኮት ባልከፍትላችሁ በረከቴንም አትረፍርፌ ባላፈሰላችሁ በዚህ ፈትኑኝ ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

፲፩ እናም ስለእናንተ ነቀዙን እገሰፃለሁ፣ እናም የምድራችሁን ፍሬ አያጠፋም፣ በእርሻችሁም ያለው ወይን ፍሬውን አያረገፍም ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

፲፪ እናም የተድላ ምድር ትሆናላችሁና፣ ሀገር ሁሉ ብፁዓን ብለው ይጠሩአችኋል ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

፲፫ ቃላችሁ በእኔ ላይ ድፍረት ሆኖአል ይላል ጌታ። እናንተ ግን፣ በአንተ ላይ የተናገርኩት ምንድነው? ብላችኋል።

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

፲፬ እናንተ እግዚአብሔርን ማገልገል ከንቱ ነው፣ ስርአቶቼን በመጠበቅ በሠራዊት ጌታ ፊት ሃዘንተኞች ሆነን በመራመድ ምን ይረባናል? ብላችኋል።

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

፲፭ እናም አሁን የሚታበዩትን ሰዎች ብፁዓን ብለው ይጠሩአቸዋል፤ አዎን ክፉንም የሚሰሩ ጸንተዋል፤ አዎን እግዚአብሔርን የሚፈታተኑ ይለቀቃሉ።

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

፲፮ ጌታን የሚፈሩ እርሰ በርሳቸው ሁል ጊዜ ይነጋገራሉ፤ እናም ጌታ አደመጠ፤ እናም ሰማም፤ ጌታን ለሚፈሩ ስሙንም ለሚያሰቡ የመታሰቢያ መጽሐፍ በፊቱ ተፃፈ።

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

፲፯ እናም ጌጤን ስሰራ በዚያን ቀን የእኔ ይሆናሉ ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ፤ እናም ሰው የሚያገለግለውን ልጅን እንደሚምር እንዲሁ እምራቸዋለሁ።

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

፲፰ ተመልሳችሁም በፃድቁና በኃጢአተኛው መካከል፣ ለእግዚአብሔር በሚገዛውና በማይገዛው መካከል ትለያላችሁ።

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፭

፩ እነሆም፣ እንደ ምድጃ እሳት የሚነድ ቀን ይመጣል፤ እናም ትዕቢተኞች ሁሉ አዎን፣ እናም ኃጢአትን የሚሰሩ ሁሉ ገለባ ይሆናሉ፤ የሚመጣውም ቀን ያቃጣላቸዋል፤ ሥርንና ቅርንጫፍንም አይተውላቸውም ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

፪ ነገር ግን ሰሜን ለምትፈሩ፣ ለእናንተ የፅድቅም ልጅ ፈውሰን በክንፎቹ ይዞ ይነሳል፤ እናንተም ትወጣላችሁ እናም እንደጥጃም በበረት ታድጋላችሁ።

፫ እናም ክፋዎችን ትረግጡአችዋላችሁ፤ እናም ይህንን በምስራብ ቀን በደለኞች ከእግራችሁ ሥር አመድ ይሆናሉ፣ ይላል የሠራዊት ጌታ።

፬ ለእስራኤል ሁሉ ሰርዓትንና ፍርድን አድርጌ በኮሬብ ያዘዘሁትን የባሪያዬን የሙሴን ህግ አሰቡ።

፭ እነሆ፣ ታላቁና የሚያሰፈራው የጌታ ቀን ሳይመጣ ነቢዩ ኤልያሰን እልክላችኋለሁ፤

፮ እናም ምድርን በእርግማን እንዳልመታ እርሱ የአባቶችን ልብ ወደ ልጆች፣ የልጆችንም ልብ ወደ አባቶች ይመልሳል።

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፭

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ነገሮች በተናገራቸው ጊዜ እነዚህን ለህዝቡ አብራራ፤ እናም ትልቅ እንዲሁም ትንሽ የሆኑትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች አብራራላቸው።

፪ እናም እንዲህ አለ፡ እናንተ የሌላችሁን እነዚህ ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍት አብ እንድሰጣችሁ አዟል፤ ለመጨረሻ ትውልድ መስጠት እንደሚገባቸው የእርሱ ጥበብ ነው።

፫ እናም ከመጀመሪያው ጀምሮ በክብሩ እስከሚመጣ ድረስ ያሉትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች—አዎን፣ በምድር ገፅ ላይ የሚመጡትን ነገሮች ሁሉ፣ የምድር ማዕድናትም በታላቅ ሙቀት እስከሚቀልጡ ድረስና፣ ምድርም እንደ መጽሐፍ ጥቅልል እስከምትጠቀለል፣ እናም ሰማይና ምድርም እስከሚያልፉ እንኳን አብራራላቸው፤

፬ እናም ሀገር ሁሉ፣ እናም ነገዶች ሁሉ፣ እናም ሁሉም ህዝቦችና ቋንቋ በሙሉ መልካም ይሁኑም መጥፎ፣ እንደሰራቸው እንዲፈረድባቸው በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ስለሚቆሙበት ታላቁና በመጨረሻው ቀንም እንኳን—

፭ መልካም ከሆኑም፣ ለዘለዓለማዊው ህይወት ትንሳኤ፤ ክፉ ከሆኑም፣ ወደኩነም ትንሳኤ፤ ከአለም በፊት በነበረው ክርስቶስ ምህረትና፣ ፍትህ፣ እና ቅድስና መሰረት፣ እንደኛው በእንድ እጅ እናም ሌላኛው በሌላ እጅ በመሆን እነዚህ የተገናኙ ናቸው።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ በዚህ መጽሐፍ ውስጥ ኢየሱስ በእውነት ለህዝቡ ካስተማራቸው ነገሮች አንድ መቶኛው እንኳን ሊፃፍ አልተቻለም፤

፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ የኔፊ ሠሌዳዎች ህዝቡን ስላስተማራቸው ነገሮች በይበልጥ ይዘዋል።

፰ እናም እኔ የጻፍኳቸው እነዚህ ነገሮች፣ እርሱ ካስተማራቸው ነገሮች ጥቂቶች ናቸው፤ እናም እነርሱም ኢየሱስ በተናገራቸው ቃላት መሰረት እነዚህ ለዚህ ህዝብ በድጋሚ ከአህዛብ ይመጡ ዘንድ ፅፌአቸዋለሁ።

፱ እናም እምነታቸውን በመጀመሪያ እንዲፈትኑበት ይህን መቀበላቸው አስፈላጊ ስለሆነ፣ ይህን በተቀበሉበት ጊዜ፣ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚያምኗቸው ከሆነ ከዚያም ታላላቅ የሆኑት ነገሮች ይገለጹላቸዋል።

፲ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች የማያምኑ ከሆኑ፣ ታላላቆቹ ነገሮችም እነርሱን ይኮንኑ ዘንድ አይገለጹላቸውም።

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

፲፪ እነሆ፣ በኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ የተፃፉትን ሁሉ ለመፃፍ ተዘጋጅቼ ነበር፣ ነገር ግን ጌታ እንዲህ በማለት ከልክሎኛል፣ የህዝቡን እምነት እፈትናለሁ።

፲፫ ስለዚህ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ በጌታ የታዘዘኩባቸውን ነገሮች እፀፋለሁ። እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርሞን ንግግራን አበቃለሁ፤ እናም የታዘዘኩባቸውን ነገሮች መፃፊን እቀጥላለሁ።

፲፬ ስለዚህ፣ ጌታም ለሶስት ቀናት በእውነት ህዝቡን እንዳስተማረ እንድትመለከቱ እፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም ከዚያ በኋላ በተደጋጋሚ ራሱን አሳይቷቸዋል፣ እናም በተደጋጋሚም ዳቦ በመቁረስ ባርኮ ሰጥቷቸዋል።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የተነገረላቸውን ሰዎች ልጆችም እየሱስ አስተማራቸውና አገለገላቸው፣ እናም እንደበታቸውን ፈታላቸውና፣ ለህዝቡ እርሱ ከገለጸላቸው የበለጡትን ለአባቶቻቸው ታላቅና አስገራሚ የሆኑ ነገሮችን ተናገሩ፤ እናም ለመናገር እንዲችሉም እንደበታቸውን ፈታላቸው።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ሰማይም ካረገ በኋላ— ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ እራሱን ገለጸላቸው፣ እናም በሽተኞቻቸውንና ሽባዎችን በሙሉ ከፈወሰና፣ የዕውሮችን ዐይን ካበራ፣ እናም የደንቆሮን ጆሮዎች ከከፈተና፣ ሁሉንም ዐይነት ፈውሶች በመካከላቸው ካደረገ በኋላ፣ እናም እንድን ሰው ከሞት ካሰነሳና ኃይሉንም ካሳያቸው በኋላ ወደአብ ሄደ—

፲፯ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለው ቀን ህዝቡ በእንድ ላይ ተሰበሰቡ፣ እናም እነዚህን ልጆች ተመለከቱአቸውና፣ አዳመጡአቸው፤ አዎን፣ ህፃናቱም አፋቸውን ከፈቱና፣ አሰደናቂ ነገሮችን ተናገሩ፤ እናም የተናገሩአቸውን ነገሮች ማንም እንዳይፀፍ ተከልክሏል።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እየሱስ የመረጣቸው ደቀመዛሙርት ከዚያን ጊዜ በኋላ ወደ እነርሱ የመጡትን ሰዎች ሁሉ ማጥመቅና ማስተማር ጀመሩ፤ እናም በእየሱስ ስም የተጠመቁት ሰዎች በሙሉ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ተሞልተው ነበር።

፲፱ እናም ብዙዎች ሊፃፉ በህግ ያልተፈቀዱትን፣ ሊነገሩ የማይችሉ ነገሮችን ተመልክተዋልም፣ ስምተዋልም።

፳ እናም እንዳቸው ሌላኛውን አገለገሉና፣ አስተማሩ፤ እንዲሁም እያንዳንዱ ሰውም እርስ በርስ በፍትህ በማገልገል፣ በመካከላቸው ሁሉም ነገሮች በጋራ ነበሩአቸው።

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

፳፻ ለናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እንዳዘዛቸው ሁሉንም
ነገሮች አደረጉ።

፳፩ ለናም በኢየሱስ ስም የተጠመቁት የክርስቶስ
ቤተክርስቲያን ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር።

And it came to pass that they did do all things even
as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus
were called the church of Christ.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት በተጓዙበት እናም ስለተመለከቱአቸውና ስለሰሙአቸው ነገሮች በሰበኩበትና፣ በኢየሱስ ስም ባጠመቁበት ወቅት፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ደቀመዛሙርቱ በአንድ ላይ ተሰባሰበው ነበር፣ እናም በብርቱ ፀሎታቸውና ጾማቸው አንድ ሆነው ነበር።

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

፪ እናም ኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርቱ ወደ አብ በሰሙ በመጠለያቸው በድጋሚ ራሱን አሳያቸው፤ እናም ኢየሱስ መጣና በመካከላቸው ቆመ፣ እንዲህም አላቸው፣ ምን እንድስጣችሁ ትፈልጋላችሁ?

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

፫ እናም እንዲህ አሉት፣ ጌታ ይህንን ቤተክርስቲያን የምንጠራበትን ስም እንድትነግረን እንፈልጋለን፤ ምክንያቱም ይህንን በተመለከተ በህዝቡ መካከል ጥል አለና።

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

፬ እናም ጌታም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ አውነት፣ አውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ ህዝቡ ስለዚህ ነገር ለምን ያጉረመርማል እንዲሁም ይጣላል?

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

፭ ስሜ የሆነውን፣ የክርስቶስን ስም በአራሳቸው ላይ መውሰድ እንዳለባቸው ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍትን አላነበቡምን? በዚህ ስም በመጨረሻው ዘመን ትጠሩበታላችሁና፤

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

፮ እናም ስሜን በራሱ ላይ የወሰደና፣ እስከመጨረሻው በዚህ የፀና በመጨረሻው ዘመን እርሱ ይድናል።

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

፯ ስለዚህ፣ ማንኛውንም ነገር ስታደርጉ፣ በስሜ አድርጉት፤ ስለዚህ ቤተክርስቲያኗን በስሜ ጥሯት፤ እናም ወደ አብም በስሜ ፀልዩ እርሱም ለእኔም ሲል ቤተክርስቲያኗን ይባርካታል።

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

፰ እናም በስሜ ካልተጠራ የእኔ ቤተክርስቲያን እንዴት ሊሆን ይችላል? ቤተክርስቲያኗ በሙሴ ስም ከተጠራች የሙሴ ቤተክርስቲያን ትሆናለች፤ ወይም በሰው ስም ከተጠራች የሰው ቤተክርስቲያን ትሆናለች፤ ነገር ግን በወንጌሉ ላይ የተገነቡ ከሆኑ፣ በስሜ ከተጠራች የእኔ ቤተክርስቲያን ትሆናለች።

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

፱ እውነት እላችኋለሁ፣ በወንጌሉ ላይ ታንፃችኋል፤ ስለዚህ የምታደርጉትን ማንኛውንም ነገር በስሜ ትጠራላችሁ፤ ስለዚህ ለቤተክርስቲያኗ ወደ አብ በስሜ ከፀለያችሁ አብ ይሰማችኋል፤

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

፲ እናም ቤተክርስቲያኗ በወንጌሉ ላይ ከታነፀች አብም ስራውን ይገልፀባታል።

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

፲፩ ነገር ግን በወንጌሌ ላይ ካልታነፀች፣ እናም በሰዎች ስራ ላይ፣ ወይም በዲያብሎስ ስራ ላይ ከታነፀች፣ እውነት እላችኋለሁ ለጊዜው በሰራቸው ደስታን ያገኛሉ፣ እናም ከጥቂት ጊዜም በኋላ ፍፃሜአቸው ይመጣልም፣ እናም ይፈረካከሳሉም፣ መመለስ በማይቻልበት እሳት ውስጥም ይወድቃሉ።

፲፪ ስራቸው ይከተላቸዋልና፣ በሰራቸው ምክንያትም ተቆርጠው ወድቀዋልና፤ ስለዚህ የነገርኳችሁን ነገሮች አስታውሱ።

፲፫ እነሆ ወንጌሉን ሰጥቻችኋለሁ፣ እናም ለእናንተ የሰጠኋችሁ ወንጌልም ይህ ነው—ወደ ዓለም የመጣሁት የአባቴን ፈቃድ ለመፈፀም ነው፣ ምክንያቱም አባቴ ልኮኛልና።

፲፬ አባቴም በመሰቀል እስቀል ዘንድ ልኮኛል፤ እናም በመሰቀል ላይ ከተሰቀልኩ በኋላ፣ ሰዎችን ሁሉ ወደ ራሴ አመጣ ዘንድ፣ እኔ በሰዎች እንደተሰቀልኩ በአብ አማካኝነት ሰዎች ይነሱ ዘንድ፣ መልካምም ይሁኑ መጥፎ በሰራቸው እንዲፈረድባቸው በእኔ ፊት ለመቆም ይችሉ ዘንድ፣ ተሰቅያለሁ—

፲፭ እናም ለዚህም ምክንያት ተሰቀልኩኝ፤ ስለዚህ፣ በአብ ስልጣን መሰረት ሰዎች በሙሉ በሰራቸው ይፈረድባቸው ዘንድ ወደ እኔ እንዲመጡ አደረግሁ።

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ማንኛውም ንስሃ የገባና በሰሜ የተጠመቀ ይሆናል፤ እናም እስከመጨረሻው ከፀናም እነሆ ዓለምን የምፈርድበት ቀን ስትመጣ በአብ ፊት ከበደል የነፃ አደርገዋለሁ።

፲፯ እናም እስከመጨረሻው ፀንቶ የማይቀጥል ግን በአብ ፍትህ የተነሳ፣ ተቆርጦ መጨረሻ ወደሌለው፣ ወደእሳቱ የሚጣል እርሱ ነው።

፲፰ እናም ለሰው ልጆች የሰጣት ይህች ቃል ናት። እናም በዚህ የተነሳ የተሰጠውን ቃላት ይፈፀማል፣ እናም አይዋሸም፣ ነገር ግን ቃሉን በሙሉ ይፈፀማል።

፲፱ እናም በመንግስተ ሰማይ ምንም እርኩስ ነገር ሊገባ አይቻለውም፤ ስለዚህ በእምነታቸው እናም ለኃጢአታቸው ሁሉ ንስሃ በመግባታቸውና እስከመጨረሻው ባላቸው ታማኝነት በደሜ ልብሳቸውን ካጠቡት በስተቀር በእረፍቱ የሚገባ ማንም የለም።

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilled the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilled all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

፳፯ እንግዲህ ትዕዛዜ ይህኛ ናት፡ በምድር ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ ንስሃ ግቡ፡ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስን በመቀበል ትቀደሱ ዘንድ፤ በመጨረሻው ቀን በፊቴ ያለእንከን ትቆሙ ዘንድ ወደ እኔ ኑ፡ እናም በሰሜ ተጠመቁ።

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

፳፬ እውነት፣ እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ ይህ የእኔ ወንጌል ነው፤ እናም በቤተክርስቲያንም መሰራት ያለባችሁንም ነገሮች ታውቃላችሁና፤ እኔ ስሰራው ያያችሁትን ስራ እናንተም ደግሞ ስሩ፤ ስሰራ ያያችሁትን ስራ እናንተም ያን ታደርጋላችሁ፤

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

፳፭ ስለዚህ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች ከሰራችሁ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ ትላላችሁና።

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

፳፫ ከተከለከሉት በስተቀር ሰላያችኋቸው እናም ስለሰማችኋቸው ነገሮች ፃፉ።

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

፳፬ ወደ ፊት የሚሆን የእነዚህን ሰዎች ስራ ቀድሞ እንደነበረው አድርጋችሁ ፃፉት።

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

፳፭ እነሆም፣ ከተፃፉት እናም ከሚፃፉት መጽሐፍት ይህ ህዝብ ይፈረድበታል፣ ምክንያቱም በእነርሱ አማካኝነት ስራዎቻቸው ለሰዎች ይታወቃሉና።

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

፳፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ሁሉም ነገሮች በአብ ተጽፈዋል፤ ስለዚህ በተፃፉት መጽሐፍት መሠረትም ዓለም ይፈረድበታል።

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

፳፯ እናም ጸድቅ በሚሆነው ለእናንተ በስጠኋችሁ ፍርድ መሰረት በዚህ ህዝብ እንደምትፈረዱባቸው ታውቃላችሁ። ስለዚህ፣ እናንተ ምን ዐይነት ሰዎች መሆን ይገባችኋል? እውነት አላችኋለሁ እንደ እኔ ሁኑ።

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

፳፰ እናም እንግዲህ ወደ አብ እሄዳለሁ። እናም እውነት አላችኋለሁ፣ አብን ማናቸውንም ነገሮች በሰሜ ብትጠይቁት ለእናንተ ይሰጣችኋል።

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

፳፱ ስለዚህ፣ ለምኑ፣ እናም ይሰጣችኋል፤ እንኳኑ እናም ይከፈትላችኋል፤ የሚጠይቅ ያገኛልና፤ እናም ለሚያንኳኳም ይከፈትለታልና።

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

፴ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ በእናንተና ደግሞ በዚህ ትውልድ ምክንያት ሙሉ እስከሚሆን ድረስ ደስታዬ ታላቅ ነው፤ እምን፣ እናም በእናንተና በዚህ ትውልድ ምክንያት አብና ደግሞ ቅዱስ የሆኑ መላዕክቶች ሁሉ ተደሰተዋል፤ ምክንያቱም ከእነርሱም ማንም አልጠፋምና።

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

፴፩ እነሆ፣ ምክንያቱም በዚህ ትውልድ በህይወት ስላሉት ስለእነርሱ እንደተናገርኩ እንድትረዱ እፈልጋለሁ፣ እናም ማናቸውም አይጠፉም፤ እናም በእነርሱ ሙሉ ደስታዬን አግኝቻለሁ።

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

፲፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከዚህ ትውልድ አራተኛው ትውልድ ልክ በጥፋት ልጅም እንደሆነው በምርኮ ሰለሚወሰዱ፣ እኔን አሳዝኖኛል፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ለብርና ለወርቅ፣ እናም በብልም ለሚበላሸውና ሌቦች ሊሰብሩትና ሊሰርቁት ለሚችሉት ይሸጡኛል። እናም በዚያን ቀን ሰራቸውንም በራሳቸው ላይ በመመለስ እጎበኛቸዋለሁ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ ይህንን ንግግሩን በጨረሰበት ወቅት ለደቀመዛሙርቱ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ በጠበበው ደጅ ግቡ፤ እናም ወደ ህይወት የሚወስደው ደጅ የጠበበ፣ መንገዱም የቀጠነ ስለሆነ፣ የሚያገኙትም ጥቂቶች ናቸውና፤ ነገር ግን ወደ ሞት የሚወስደው ደጅ ሰፊ መንገዱም ትልቅ ነው፣ እናም ምሽቱ እስከሚመጣ ሰዎችም መሰራት እስከማይችሉበት ድረስ ወደ እርሱም የሚገቡ ብዙ ናቸው።

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስ እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረበት ጊዜ ለደቀ መዛሙርት እንዲህ ሲል አንድ በአንድ ተናገራቸው፡ ወደ አባቴ ከሄድኩኝ በኋላ ከእኔ የምትፈልጉት ምንድነው?

፪ እናም ከሦስቱ በስተቀር ሌሎች በሙሉ እንዲህ ሲሉ ተናገሩ፡ አንድ ሰው በህይወት የሚቆይበትን ያህል ጊዜ ከቆየን በኋላ፣ በእንተም የተጠራንበት አገልግሎታችን መጨረሻው ሲሆን፣ በፍጥነትም ወደአንተ መንግስትም እንመጣ ዘንድ እንፈልጋለን።

፫ እናም እርሱም አላቸው፡ ከእኔ ይህን ነገር በመፈለጋችሁ እናንተ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሰባ ሁለት ዓመት ከሆናችሁ በኋላ ወደ መንግስቱም ትመጣላችሁ፤ እናም ከእኔ ጋር እረፍትንም ታገኛላችሁ።

፬ እናም እነርሱን በተናገራቸው ጊዜም፣ ወደ ሦስቱ መለስ አለና እንዲህ አላቸው፡ ወደ አባቴ ሰሄድ ምን እንዳደርግላችሁ ትፈልጋላችሁ?

፭ እናም የፈለጉትንም ለእርሱ ለመናገር ባለመድፈራቸው በልባቸው አዘነው ነበር።

፮ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ አላቸው፡ እነሆ፣ ያሰባችሁትን አውቃለሁ፣ እናም እኔም በአይሁዶች ከመስቀሌ በፊት በአገልግሎቴ ወቅት ከእኔ ጋር የነበረውን የተወደደው የሐንስ የፈለገውን ነገር ፈልጋችኋል።

፯ ስለዚህ፣ እናንተ ይበልጥ የተባረካችሁ ናችሁ፣ ሞትን በጭራሽ አትቀምሱምና፤ ነገር ግን በአብ ፈቃድ መሰረት ሁሉም ነገሮች ይፈጸሙ ዘንድ በክብር በሰማይ ኃይል እስከምመጣ ድረስ ለሰው ልጆች የሚያደርጋቸውን የአብን ስራዎች በሙሉ ለመመልከት ትኖራላችሁ።

፰ እናም የሞት ስቃይ በጭራሽ አይደርስባችሁም፤ ነገር ግን በክብር በምመጣበት ወቅት ከሟችነት ሟች ወዳልሆነው በቅጽበት ትለወጣላችሁ፤ እናም በአባቴም መንግስት የተባረካችሁ ትሆናላችሁ።

፱ እናም በድጋሚ፣ በሰጋ በምትቆዩበት ወቅትም ህመምን፣ ለዓለምም ኃጢያት ካልሆነ በቀር ህዘን አታውቁም፤ እናም ይህንን ሁሉ የማደርገው ከእኔ በፈለጋችሁት ነገሮች ምክንያት ነው፤ ምክንያቱም ዓለም እንዳለች በቆየችበት ወቅት ነፍሳትን ወደእኔ ለማምጣት ፈልጋችኋልና።

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

፲ እናም በዚህ የተነሳ ደስታችሁ ሙሉ ይሆናል፤ በአባቴም መንግሥት ትቀመጣላችሁ፤ እዋን አብም ሙሉ ደስታን እንደሰጠኝ ደስታችሁ ሙሉ ይሆናል፤ እናም እኔ እንደአባቴ እንደሆንኩ እናንተም እንደ እኔ ትሆናላችሁ፤ እናም አብና እኔም እንድ ነን፤

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

፲፩ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስም ስለአብና ስለእኔ ይመስክራል፤ አብም በእኔ የተነሳ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ለሰው ልጆች ይሰጣል።

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኢየሱስም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረበት ወቅት፣ በምድር ላይ ከሚቆዩት ከሦስቱ በሰተቀር፣ እያንዳንዳቸውን በጣቱ ነካ እናም ሔደ።

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

፲፫ እናም እነሆ፣ ሰማያት ተከፈቱና፣ እነርሱ ወደሰማይ ተነጠቁና ለመነገር የማይችሉ ነገሮችን ተመለከቱ፣ እናም ሰሙ።

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

፲፬ እናም እንዳይናገሩም ተከልክለው ነበር፤ የተመለከቷቸውንና የሰሟቸውን ነገሮች ለመናገር እንዲችሉ ስልጣንም አልተሰጣቸውም፤

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

፲፭ እናም በሰጋም ሆነ ከሰጋ ውጪ መሆናቸውን ለማወቅ አልቻሉም፤ የእግዚአብሔር የሆኑትን ነገሮች ለመመልከት እንዲችሉ ለእነርሱ ከሰጋዊ ሰውነት ሟች ወዳልሆነው ሰውነት የተለወጡ መሰላቸው።

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

፲፮ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ በምድር ገጽ ላይ ያገለግሉ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ በሰማይ በተሰጣቸው ትዕዛዝ ምክንያት ስለሰሙአቸው እናም ስለተመለከቱአቸው ነገሮች አላስተማሩም።

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ከተለወጡበት ጊዜ ጀምሮ ሟችም ሆኑ የማይሞቱ እኔም አላውቅም፤

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

፲፰ ነገር ግን በተሰጡት ታሪክ መሰረት ይህን ያህል አውቃለሁ—እናም ህዝቡን ሁሉ በማስተማር፣ በሰበካቸው የሚያምኑ ብዙዎችን ከቤተክርስቲያና ጋር በማቀላቀል፣ በማጥመቅ በምድር ገጽ ተጉዘዋል፤ እናም የተጠመቁም ሁሉ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ተቀብለዋል።

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

፲፱ እናም ከቤተክርስቲያና ባልሆኑት ወደ ወህኒ ተጥለዋል። እናም ሁለት ቦታም በመከፈላቸው እስር ቤቶቹም ሊይዟቸው አልቻሉም።

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

፳ እናም ወደ ምድርም ውስጥ ተጣሉ፤ ነገር ግን ምድሪቱንም በእግዚአብሔር ቃል መቼ፤ በዚህም በኃይሉ ከመራቱ ጥልቅ ድንው ነበር፤ እናም እነርሱን በበቂ ሁኔታ ሊይዝ የሚችል ጉድጓድ ለመቆፈር አልቻሉም።

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

፳፩ እናም ሦስት ጊዜም በእቶኑ ውስጥ ተወረወሩ፤ እናም ምንም ጉዳት አልደረሰባቸውም።

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

፳፪ እናም ሁለት ጊዜ በዱር አውሬ ዋሻ ተጣሉ፤ እናም እነሆ ልጅ ከሚጠባ የበግ ጠቦትጋር እንደሚጫወተው ከአውሬዎች ጋር ይጫወቱ ነበር፤ እናም ምንም ጉዳት አልደረሰባቸውም።

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፊ ሰዎች መካከል ሔዱና፤ በምድረ ገጽ ላይም ለሁሉም ሰዎች የክርስቶስን ወንጌል አስተማሩ፤ እናም እነርሱ ወደ ጌታ ተለወጡና፤ ከክርስቶስ ቤተክርስቲያንም ጋር ተቀላቀሉ፤ እንደ ኢየሱስ ቃልም ያ ትውልድ በሙሉ እንደዚህ ተባርኮ ነበር።

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

፳፬ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ለጊዜው እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ ንግግሬን አቆማለሁ።

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

፳፭ እነሆ፣ ሞትን ቀምስው የማያውቁትን ሰዎች ስማቸውን ልፅፍ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ጌታ ከለከለኝ፤ ስለዚህ ከዓለም ተደብቀዎልና ስማቸውን አልጽፍም።

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

፳፮ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ አይቻቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እኔንም አስተምረውኛል።

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

፳፯ እናም እነሆ ከአህዛብ መካከል ይሆናሉ፣ አህዛብም እያውቋቸውም።

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

፳፰ ደግሞም ከአይሁዶች መካከል ይሆናሉ፣ እናም አይሁዶችም እያውቋቸውም።

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል፣ ፍላጎታቸው ይሟላ ዘንድና ደግሞም በውስጣቸው ባለው አሳማኝ በሆነው የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ምክንያት፣ ጌታ በጥበቡ ብቁ መሆኑን በሚመስለው፣ ለተበተኑት የእስራኤል ነገዶች በሙሉና፣ ለሁሉም ሀገር፣ ነገድ፣ ቋንቋና ህዝብ ያገለግላሉ፤ እናም ደግሞ ከመካከላቸው ብዙ ነፍሳትን ወደ ኢየሱስ ያመጣሉ።

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

፴ እናም እነርሱም እንደ እግዚአብሔር መላዕክቶች ናቸው፤ እናም በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ ኦብ ከጸለዩ መልካም በሚመስላቸው ለማንኛውም ሰው እራሳቸውን ለማሳየት ይችላሉ።

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

፴፩ ስለዚህ፣ ሰዎች ሁሉ በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት በእርግጥ መቆም ከሚገባቸው ከታላቁ እና ከሚመጣው ቀን በፊት፣ ታላቅ እንዲሁም ድንቅ ስራዎች በእነርሱ ይከናወናሉ፤

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

፴፪ አዎን ከፍርድ ቀን በፊት እንኳን በአህዛብ መካከል በእነርሱ አማካኝነት ታላቅ እና ድንቅ ስራ ይሰራል።

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

፴፫ እናም የክርስቶስን ድንቅ ሰራዎች ታሪክ በሙሉ የሚናገሩት ቅዱሳን መጻሕፍት ካሉአችሁ፣ በክርስቶስ ቃላት መሰረት እነዚህ ነገሮች በእርግጥ እንደሚመጡ ታውቃላችሁ።

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

፴፬ እናም የኢየሱስንና ደግሞ እርሱ የመረጣቸውንና በመካከላቸው የላካቸውን ቃላት ለማያዳምጡ ወዮላቸው፤ የኢየሱስን ቃላትና የላካቸውን ቃላት የማይቀበሉ እርሱንም አይቀበሉም፤ እናም ስለዚህ እርሱም በመጨረሻው ቀን አይቀበላቸውም፤

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

፴፭ እናም እነርሱ ባይወለዱ ይሻላቸው ነበር። ደህንነት ለማምጣት በሰዎች እግር ስር የተረገጠውን እግዚአብሔር ቁጣ ፍርድ ለማሰወገድ ይቻላል ብላችሁ ትገምታላችሁን?

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

፴፮ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ስለመረጣቸው፣ አዎን፣ በሰማያት ስለተወሰዱት ስለሆሰቱ፣ እንደተናገርኩት ከሟችነት ወደማይሞተው መንፃታቸውን አላውቅም—

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

፴፯ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ከጻፍኩት በኋላ ጌታን ስለእነርሱ ጠይቁዋለሁ እና ለእኔም በሰውነታቸው ላይ ለውጥ መደረጉ አስፈላጊ መሆኑን አለበለዚያም ሞትን መቅመስ እንዳለባቸው ገልጻልኛል፤

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

፴፰ ስለዚህ፣ ሞትን እንዳይቀምሱ፣ በዓለም ኃጢያት ካልሆነ በቀር በህመም ሆነ በሀዘን እንዳይሰቃዩ በሰውነታቸው ላይ ለውጥ ተደርጓል።

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

፴፱ እንግዲህ ይህ ለውጥ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከሚከናወነው ለውጥ ጋር እኩል አይደለም፤ ነገር ግን ስይጣን በእነርሱ ላይ ስልጣን እንዳይኖረው፣ እነርሱንም መፈተን እንዳይቻለው፣ ለውጥ በእነርሱ ላይ ተደርጓል፤ እናም በሰጋቸው ተቀድሰዋል፣ ቅዱስም ነበሩ እናም የምድርም ኃይላትም እነርሱን ለመያዝ አይቻላቸውም።

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

፵ እናም የክርስቶስ የፍርድ ቀንም እስከሚመጣ በዚህ ሁኔታ ይቆያሉ፤ እናም በዚያን ቀንም ታላቅ ለውጥን ይቀበሉና ከዚህ በኋላም ከአብ መንግሥትም ላለመውጣት ነገር ግን ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር በሰማያት ለዘለዓለም ለመኖር ይቀበላሉ።

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

፫ ኔፊ ፳፱

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፤ እነዚህ ነገሮች በቃሉ መሰረት ወደ አህዛብ መምጣታቸው በጥበቡ ጌታ ተገቢ መሆናቸውን በሚመለከትበት ጊዜ፣ አብም ከእስራኤል ልጆች ጋር በድጋሚ ወደ ትውልድ ምድራቸው ለመመለስ ቃል ኪዳን የገባውን መፈጸም እንደጀመረ ታውቃላችሁ።

፪ እናም በቅዱሳን ነቢያት የተነገሩት የጌታ ቃልም በሙሉ እንደሚፈጸሙ ታውቃላችሁ፤ እናም ጌታ ወደ እስራኤል ልጆች የሚመጣበት ጊዜውን አዘገየ ማለት አያስፈልጋችሁም።

፫ እናም የተነገሩት ቃላትም ከንቱ ናቸው ብላችሁ በልባችሁ አትገምቱ፣ ምክንያቱም እነሆ ጌታ ለእስራኤል ቤት ለህዝቡ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውሳልና።

፬ እናም እነዚህ የተባሉት በመካከላችሁ ሲመጡ በምትመለከቱበት ጊዜ፣ ከዚያም የጌታን ስራ ልትወቅሱ አይገባችሁም፣ ምክንያቱም የፍትህ ጎራዴ በቀኝ እጁ ናትና፤ እናም እነሆ፣ በዚያን ቀን ስራውን የምትወቅሱ ከሆነ በቅርቡይህችሁ እንድታሸንፋችሁ ያደርጋል።

፭ የጌታን ስራ የሚወቅስ ወዮለት፣ አዎን፣ ክርስቶስን እና ስራዎቹን ለሚክድ ወዮለት!

፮ አዎን፣ የጌታን ራዕይ ለሚክድ፣ እናም ጌታ ከእንግዲህ በራዕይ፣ ወይንም በትንቢት፣ ወይም በሰጦታ፣ ወይም በልሳን ወይም በፈውስ፣ ወይንም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል አይሰራም ለሚል ወዮለት!

፯ አዎን፣ እናም በዚያን ቀን ጥቅምን ለማግኘት፣ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስም ከእንግዲህ ድንቅ ነገር አይሰራም ለሚል ወዮለት፤ ይህንን የሚያደርግ እንደጥፋት ልጅ ይሆናልና፣ ለእርሱም በክርቶስ ቃል መሰረት ምህረት አይኖረውምና!

፰ አዎን፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ ልታገረመርሙ፣ እንዲሁም ልትወቅሱ፣ አይሁዶችንም ሆነ፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪት በሆኑት ላይ ትቀልዱም ዘንድ አይገባችሁም፤ እነሆም ጌታ ለእነርሱ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውሳል፣ እናም በመሃል እንደገባውም ይፈጽምላቸዋል።

፱ ስለዚህ ጌታም ለእስራኤል ቤት የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ለማሟላት ፍትሁን ለመፈጸም እንዳይችል ቀኝ እጁን ወደግራው ለመመለስ ይቻላልናል በማለት መገመት የለባችሁም።

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

፫ ኔፊ ሺ

፩ እናንተ አህዛብ ሆይ፣ ሰሙ፤ እናም እናንተን በተመለከተ እንድናገር ያዘዘኝን ህያው የሆነው የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ የእየሱስ ክርስቶስን ቃላት አድምጡ፤ እነሆም እንዲህ ብዬም እንድፀፍ አዘኛል።

፪ አህዛብ ሁሉ ከኃጢያት መንገዳችሁ ተመለሱ፤ እናም ከክፉ ሰራዎቻችሁ፣ ከውሸታችሁና፣ ከአታላይነታችሁ፣ እናም ከዝሙት ተግባራችሁና፣ በድብቅ ከምትፈፀሙት ርኩሰት፣ በጣዖት ማምለካችሁም፣ ከግድያችሁም፣ ከካህናት ተንኮላችሁም፣ ከምቀኝነታችሁም፣ ከፀበኝነታችሁም፣ እናም ከሁሉም ኃጢአቶቻችሁና ርኩሰታችሁ ሁሉ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ እናም ለኃጢአቶቻችሁ ስርየትን ትቀበሉና፣ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ትሞሉ ዘንድ፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ከሆኑት ህዝቦቹ ጋርም ትቆጠሩ ዘንድ ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እናም በሰሜ ተጠመቁ።

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

አራተኛው ኔፊ

የኔፊ መፅሐፍ

ከኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ደቀመዛሙርት አንዱ የነበረው የኔፊ ልጅ

በእርሱ መዛግብት መሰረት የነበረው የኔፊ ህዝብ ታሪክ።

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሠላሳ አራተኛው ዓመትና፣ ደግሞ ሠላሳ አምስተኛው ዓመት አለፈ፣ እናም እነሆ የኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት በምድሪቱ ዙሪያ በሁሉም ሰፍራ የክርስቶስን ቤተክርስቲያን መሰረቱ። እናም ወደ እነርሱ የመጡት፣ ለጋጠላቸውም ከልባቸው ጎሳ ለገቡት ሰዎች ሁሉ በኢየሱስ ስም ተጠመቁ፣ እናም ደግሞ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ተቀበሉ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ገፅ የነበሩት ለማናውያንም ሆኑ ኔፋውያን በሙሉ በሠላሳ ስድስተኛው ዓመት ወደ ጌታ ተለወጡና፣ በመካከላቸው ፀብሞ ሆነ ጥላቻ አልነበረም፣ እናም እያንዳንዱ ሰው እርስ በርስ በቅን ይሰራ ነበር።

፫ እናም ሁሉም ነገሮች በጋራ ነበሩአቸው፣ ስለዚህ ድሃና ሃብታም፣ ግዙጥና ነፃ አልነበረም፣ ነገር ግን ሁሉም ነፃና ሰማያዊውን ሰጦታ ተቀባይ ነበሩ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሠላሳ ሠባተኛውም ዓመት ደግሞ አለፈ፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ሠላም ሰፈነ።

፭ እናም በኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት አማካኝነት ታላቅና ድንቅ ሥራዎች ይሰሩ ነበር፣ ስለዚህ ህመምተኞችን ይፈውሱ፣ እናም ሙታዮችን ያስነሱና፣ ሸባውን እንዲራመድ ያደርጉ፣ እናም ዐይነ ሰው ለርሃን እንዲያገኝና፣ ደንቆሮ እንዲሰማ ያደርጉ ነበር፤ እናም ሁሉንም አይነት ታዕምራቶችን በሰው ልጆች መካከል ያከናውኑ ነበር፤ እናም በክርስቶስ ስም ካልሆነ በቀር በማንም ታምራቶችን አልሰሩም።

፮ እና በዚህ ሠላሳ ስምንተኛው ዓመት አለፈና፣ ደግሞ ሠላሳ ዘጠነኛው፣ እናም አርባ አንደኛውና፣ አርባ ሁለተኛው ዓመት አለፈ፣ አዎን፣ አርባ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት እስከሚያልፍ ድረስና፣ ደግሞ ሃምሳ አንደኛውና፣ ሃምሳ ሁለተኛው፣ አዎን፣ እናም ሃምሳ ዘጠነኛው ዓመትም እስከሚያልፍ ድረስ እንዲህ ሆነ።

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

፮ እናም ጌታ በምድሪቱ ላይ እጅግ እንዲበለፀጉ
እደረጋቸው፤ አዎን፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ከተሞች
በተቃጠሉበት ሥፍራ ከተሞችን በድጋሚ አቋቋሙ።

፳ አዎን፤ ያቺን ታላቋን የዛራሔምላ ከተማንም በድጋሚ
እንድትገነባ አደረጉ።

፳፯ ነገር ግን የሰጠው ብዙ ከተሞች ነበሩ፤ እናም
በቦታውም ውሃ ይፈልቅ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ከተሞች
ሊታደሱ አልተቻላቸውም።

፲ እናም አሁን፤ እነሆ፤ እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፊ ህዝቦች
ተጠናክሩ፤ እናም በጣም በፍጥነት ተባዙና፤ እጅግ
መልካም እንዲሁም ያማሩ ህዝቦች ሆኑ።

፲፩ እናም ተጋቡና፤ ለጋብቻም ተሰጡ፤ እናም ጌታ በብዙ
በገባላቸው ቃል ኪዳኖች ተባረኩ።

፲፪ እናም ከእንግዲህ በሙሴ ህግ ሰራዎችና ሥርዓት
መሠረት አልተራመዱም፤ ሥርዓቶቹንም አይከተሉም
ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ከጌታቸውና ከእምላካቸው
በተቀበሉአቸው ትዕዛዛት፤ ያለማቋረጥ በያማቸውና፤
በጸሎታቸው፤ እንዲሁም በየወቅቱ ለመጸለይና የጌታን
ቃል ለመሰማት በመሰብሰብ ይራመዱ ነበር።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ህዝቦች መካከል ሁሉ
ምንም ፀብ አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን በኢየሱስ
ደቀመዛሙርት መካከል ኃያል የሆኑ ተአምራት ይሰሩ
ነበር።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰባ አንደኛው እንዲሁም ሰባ
ሁለተኛው ዓመት አለፈ፤ አዎን፤ በአጠቃላይ ሰባ
ዘጠነኛው ዓመት አለፈ፤ አዎን መቶ ዓመታት አለፉ፤
እናም ኢየሱስ በምድር እንዲቆዩ ከመረጣቸው ከሦስቱ
በሰተቀር ሁሉም የኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት ወደ
እግዚአብሔር ገነት ሄደዋል፤ እናም በእነርሱም ቦታ
የተሾሙ ሌሎች ደቀመዛሙርት ነበሩ፤ እናም ደግሞ
የዚያም ትውልድ ብዙዎች ሞቱ።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በህዝቡ ልብ ውስጥ ባለው
የእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር የተነሳ በምድሪቱ ፀብ አልነበረም።

፲፮ እናም ቅናት፣ ቁጣ፣ ሁከት፣ ዝሙት፣ መዋሸትም፣
ግድያም ሆነ ዝሙትን የሚቀሰቅሰ ምንም ነገር
አልነበረም፤ እናም በእርግጥ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ
ከተፈጠሩት ሰዎች መካከል እንደዚህ ያለ ደስተኛ ሊሆን
የቻለ ህዝብ አልነበረም።

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the
land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again
where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause
to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk,
and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore
these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people
of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceed-
ingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and de-
lightsome people.

And they were married, and given in marriage,
and were blessed according to the multitude of the
promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the perfor-
mances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they
did walk after the commandments which they had
received from their Lord and their God, continuing
in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft
both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention
among all the people, in all the land; but there were
mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of
Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year
passed away, and also the seventy and second year,
yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had
passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed
away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had cho-
sen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were
the three who should tarry; and there were other dis-
ciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that
generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention
in the land, because of the love of God which did
dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tu-
mults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor
any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could
not be a happier people among all the people who
had been created by the hand of God.

፲፮ ሌቦችም ሆኑ ገዳዮች፣ ላማናውያንም ሆኑ ማንኛውም ዓይነት በመደብ የተለዩ ሰዎች አልነበሩም፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉም በአንድነት የክርስቶስ ልጆች፣ እናም የእግዚአብሔርንም መንግሥት ወራሾች ነበሩ።

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

፲፱ እናም እነርሱ እንዴት የተባረኩ ነበሩ! ምክንያቱም ጌታ በሰራዎቻቸው ሁሉ ባርኳቸዋልና፤ እዎን፣ አንድ መቶ አስረኛው ዓመት እስኪያልፍ እንኳን ተባርከዋል፤ በልፅገዋልም፤ እናም ከክርስቶስ ጉብኝት ጀምሮ የመጀመሪያው ትውልድ አልፎአልና፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ፀብ አልነበረም።

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህንን የመጨረሻ መዝገብ ጠብቆ ያቆየው (እናም በኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ ነበር ያስቀመጣቸው) ኔሬ ሞተና ልጁ እሞፅ በእርሱ ቦታ አስቀመጠው፤ እናም እሞፅም ደግሞ በኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ ጠበቃቸው።

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

፳፩ እናም ለሰማንያ አራት ዓመታት አስቀመጠው፣ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኑ ላይ ከተነሱትና የላማናውያንን ሰም ከወሰዱት ጥቂት ሰዎች በቀር በምድሪቱ አሁንም ሠላም ነበር፤ ስለዚህ በምድሪቱ ላይ በድጋሚ ላማናውያን ሆኑ።

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እሞፅም ደግሞ ሞተ (እናም ይህ ክርስቶስ ከመጣ ከመቶ ዘጠና አራት ዓመት በኋላ ነበር) እናም ልጁ እሞፅ በእርሱ ምትክ መዛግብቱን ጠበቀ፤ እናም ደግሞ በኔሬ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ ጠበቃቸው፤ እናም ይህም ደግሞ ይህ መፅሐፍ በሆነው በኔሬ መጽሐፍ ላይ ተፅፏል።

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁለት መቶ ዓመታት አለፉ፤ እናም ከጥቂቶች በስተቀር ሁለተኛውም ትውልድ በሙሉ አለፈ።

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

፳፬ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ህዝቡም እንደተባዙ፣ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ በሙሉ እስከተሰራጩ ና፣ በክርስቶስ ባገኙት ብልፅግናም እጅግ ሀብታሞች እንደሆኑ እንድታውቁ እፈልጋለሁ።

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

፳፭ እናም አሁን፣ በሁለት መቶ አንደኛው ዓመት በመካከላቸው በኩራት የተወጣጠሩ፣ ይኸውም ውድ ልብሶችንና መልካም ዕንቁ ከሆኑት ሁሉ እንዲሁም የዓለምን መልካም የሆኑ ነገሮችን የሚለብሱ ነበሩ።

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

፳፮ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ በኋላ በመካከላቸው የጋራ የሆኑ ዕቃዎች እንዲሁም ንብረቶች አልነበሯቸውም።

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

፳፯ እናም በመደብ መከፋፈል ጀመሩ፤ እናም ለራሳቸው ጥቅም ሲሉ ቤተክርስቲያን መስራት ጀመሩ፤ እናም የክርስቶስን እውነተኛ ቤተክርስቲያንም መካድ ጀመሩ።

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁለት መቶ አስረኛው ዓመት እንዳለፈም በምድሪቱ ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያኖች ነበሩ፤ እያንዳንዱም ክርስቶስንም እናውቃለን የሚሉ ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያኖችም ነበሩ፤ እናም ይሁን እንጂ የወንጌሉን አብዛኛውን ክፍል ክደዋል፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋቶች ተቀብለዋል፤ እናም እርሱ ብቁ ባለመሆኑ የተከለከለውን ቅዱስ የሆነውን ሰጥተዋልና።

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

፳፰ እናም በክፋታቸውም የተነሳና ልባቸውን በተቆጣጠረው በሰይጣን ኃይል የተነሳ ይህች ቤተክርስቲያን እጅግ ተሰፋፋች።

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

፳፱ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ክርስቶስን የሚክድ ሌላ ቤተክርስቲያን ነበር፤ እናም በትህትናቸውና በክርስቶስ ባላቸው እምነት የተነሳ እውነተኛ የሆነችውን የክርስቶስን ቤተክርስቲያን አሳደዱ፤ እናም በመካከላቸው ብዙ ተአምራትንም በመስራታቸው ጠሉዋቸው።

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

፴ ስለዚህ ከእነርሱ ጋር በቀሩት የኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት ላይ ኃይልና ስልጣናቸውን ተጠቀሙ፣ ወህኒ ቤትም ጣሉአቸው፤ ነገር ግን በውስጣቸው ባለው በእግዚአብሔር ቃል ኃይል ወህኒ ቤቱ ሁለት ቦታ ተከፈለ፣ እናም በመካከላቸው ኃይል ተአምራትን መስራት ቀጠሉ።

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

፴፩ ይሁን እንጂ፣ እናም እነዚህ ሁሉ አስደናቂ ነገሮች ቢኖሩም እንኳን፣ ሰዎቹ ልባቸውን አጠጥረው ነበር፣ እናም በእየሩሳሌም የነበሩት አይሁዶች በቃሉ መሠረት ኢየሱስን ለመግደል እንደፈለጉት ሁሉ እነርሱን ለመግደል ፈለጉ።

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

፴፪ እናም በእሳት ዓምድም ውስጥ ጣሉአቸውና፣ ምንም ጉዳት ሳይደርስባቸው ወጡ።

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

፴፫ እናም ደግሞ በዱር አራዊት ዋሻ ጣሉአቸውና፣ እነሆ ልጅ ከሚጠባ የበግ ጠቦትጋር እንደሚጫወተው ከአውራጃዎች ጋር ይጫወቱ ነበር፣ እናም ምንም ጉዳት ሳይደርስባቸው ከመካከላቸው ወጡ።

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

፴፬ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ሰዎቹ በብዙ ካህናትና ሃሰተኛ ነቢያት ብዙ ቤተክርስቲያኖችን እንዲሰሩና ሁሉንም አይነት ክፋቶች እንዲሰሩ በመመራታቸው ልባቸውን አጠጥረውት ነበር። እናም የኢየሱስን ህዝቦችንም መቼ፤ ነገር ግን የኢየሱስ ሰዎች መልሰው አልመቱአቸውም ነበር። እናም ከዓመት ዓመት፣ ሁለት መቶ ሰላሳ ዓመት እስከሚያልፍ ድረስ እምነት በማጣትና በክፋቶቻቸው መነመኑ።

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

፴፭ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት፤ እያንዳንዱ በሁለት መቶ ሠላሳ አንደኛው ዓመት፣ በህዝቡ መካከል ታላቅ የሆነ መከፋፈል ነበር።

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት ኔፋውያን ተብለው የሚጠሩ ሰዎች ተነሱና፤ እነርሱም በክርስቶስ እውነተኛ አማኞች ነበሩ፤ እናም በመካከላቸው በላማናውያን —ያዕቆባውያንና፣ ዮሴፋውያንና፣ እናም ዞራማውያን ተብለው የሚጠሩ ነበሩ፤

፳፯ ስለዚህ በክርስቶስ እውነተኛ አማኞች እናም የክርስቶስ እውነተኛ አምላኪዎች (ከእነርሱም መካከል በምድር የቀሩት ሦስቱ የኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት ነበሩ) ኔፋውያንና፣ ያዕቆባውያንና፣ እናም ዮሴፋውያንና፣ ዞራማውያን ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር።

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወንጌሉን ያልተቀበሉት ላማናውያን፣ ልሙኤላውያንና፣ እስማኤላውያን ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር፤ እናም እምነት አጥተው አልመነውም፣ ነገር ግን በክርስቶስ ወንጌል ላይ በፈቃደኝነት እምፀዋል፤ እናም አባቶቻቸው ከመጀመሪያው ጀምረው እንደመነመኑት፣ እነርሱ ልጆቻቸውን እንዲያምኑ አስተምረዋቸዋል።

፳፱ እናም ይህም የነበረው ከመጀመሪያም እንደነበረው የአባቶቻቸው ክፋትና ርኩሰት ምክንያት ነው። እናም ከጥንት ጀምሮ ላማናውያን የኔፊን ልጆች እንዲጠሉ እንደተማሩት የእግዚአብሔርን ልጆች እንዲጠሉ ተማሩ።

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁለት መቶ አርባ አራተኛው ዓመት አለፈ፣ እናም የህዝቡም ጉዳይ እንዲህ ነበር። እናም ከህዝቡ ይበልጡን ክፋ የነበሩት የበረቱ ሆኑና፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ሰዎች ይበልጥ እጅግ ብዙ ሆኑ።

፴፩ እናም እሁንም ለራሳቸው ቤተክርስቲያንን መሰራት ቀጠሉ፣ በከበሩ ነገሮችም አስጌጡአቸው። በዚህም ሁለት መቶ ሃምሳ ዓመት፣ እናም ደግሞ ሁለት መቶ ስልሳ ዓመታትም አለፉ።

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ክፋዎች የሆኑት የጋድያንቶን ቡድኖች ሚስጥር መሃላንና ውህደትን በድጋሚ መገንባት ጀመሩ።

፴፫ እናም ደግሞ የኔፊ ህዝብ ተብለው የሚጠሩት እጅግ ሀብታሞች በመሆናቸው መኩራት ጀመሩ፣ እናም እንደወንድሞቻቸው እንደላማናውያን ከንቱ ሆኑ።

፴፬ እናም ከዚህ ጊዜ ጀምሮ ደቀመዛሙርቱም ስለዓለም ኃጢአት ማዘን ጀመሩ።

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሦስት መቶ ዓመታት ካለፉ በኋላ፣ የኔፊ እንዲሁም የላማናውያን ሰዎች በተመሳሳይ ሁኔታ እጅግ ክፋዎች ሆኑ።

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

፱፻፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ተሰራጨ፤ እናም ከኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት በቀር ፃድቅ የነበረ ማንም አልነበረም። እናም በመጋዘናቸው በርካታ ወርቆችንና ብሮችን አከማችተው ነበር፤ እናም ማንኛውንም ሸቀጦቻቸውን ይገበያዩ ነበር።

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

፱፻፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሦስት መቶ አምስት አመታት ካለፉ በኋላ፣ (እናም ህዝቡ አሁንም በክፋታቸው ቀጥለዋል) አሞፅ ሞተ፤ ወንድሙ አማሮንም መዛግብቱን በእርሱ ምትክ ጠበቀ።

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

፱፻፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሦስት መቶ ሃያኛው ዓመት ካለፈ በኋላ፣ አማሮን በመንፈስ ቅዱስ በመገፋፋቱ፣ ቅዱስ የሆኑትን መዛግብት ደበቀ—አዎን፣ ቅዱሳን የነበሩትን ከትውልድ እስከ ትውልድ ሲተላለፉ የመጡትን መዝገቦች ሁሉ—ክርስቶስ ከመጣ ከሦስት መቶ ሀያ ዓመት ጀምሮ ያሉትን ጭምር ደበቀ፤

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

፱፻፶ እናም በጌታ ትንቢትና ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት በድጋሚ ወደ ያዕቆብ ቤት ቅሪት ይመጡ ዘንድ በጌታ ደበቃቸው። እናም የአማሮን መዝገብ ፍፃሜ ይህ ነው።

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

መፅሐፈ ሞርሞን

The Book of Mormon

ሞርሞን ፩

Mormon 1

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ስላየኋቸውና ስለሰማኋቸው ነገሮች ታሪክ ፃፍኩ፣ እናም መፅሐፈ ሞርሞን ብዬ ጠራሁት።

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

፪ እናም አማርን በጌታ መዛግብቱን ሊደብቅ ባለበት ጊዜ፣ ወደ እኔ መጣ፣ (እኔም አስር ዓመቱ ስለነበርና ሕዝቦቼ እንደተማሩት በመጠኑ መማር ጀመርኩ) እናም አማርን እንዲህ አለኝ፡ እንደምገምተው አንተ አስተዋይ እንዲሁም ያስተማሩህን በፍጥነት የምትረዳ ልጅ ነህ፤

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

፫ ስለዚህ፣ ሃያ አራት ዓመት ሲሆንህ ስለነዚህ ሰዎች የተመለከትካቸውን ነገሮች እንድታስታውስ አፈልጋለሁ፤ እናም በዚያም ዕድሜም ስትደርስ ሺም ተብላ በምትጠራ ኮረብታ ወደ አንቱም ምድር ሂድ፤ እናም በዚያ ይህንን ሕዝብ በተመለከተ ቅዱስ የሆኑ የተፃፉትን ሁሉ በጌታ እዚያ ደብዳቤዎቻቸውን ይጻፉ።

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

፬ እናም እነሆ፣ የኔፊን ሠሌዳዎች ለራስህ ትወስዳለህና የተቀሩትን በነበሩበት ሥፍራ ትተቸዋለህ፤ ስለነዚህ ሰዎች የተመለከትካቸውን ነገሮች በሙሉ በኔፊ ሠሌዳ ላይ ትፅፋለህ።

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

፭ እናም እኔ ሞርሞን፣ የኔፊ ዝርያ በመሆኔ (እናም የአባቴም ስም ሞርሞን ነበር) አማርን ያዘዘኝን ነገሮች በሙሉ አስታወስኩ።

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አስራ አንድ አመት ሲሆነኝ፣ በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል እስከ ዛራሄምላ ምድርም በአባቴ ተወስድኩኝ።

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

፯ ምድሪቱ በሙሉ በህንፃ ተሸፍናለች፣ እናም ህዝቡም እንደባህር አሸዋ በቁጥር በዝተው ነበር።

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመት ኔፋውያንና፣ ያዕቆባውያንና፣ እናም ዮሴፋውያንና፣ ዞራማውያንን ባሉበት በኔፋውያን መካከል ጦርነት ተጀመረ፤ እናም ይህም ጦርነት በኔፋውያንና፣ በላማናውያንም፣ በልሙኤላውያንና፣ እንዲሁም በእስማኤላውያን መካከል ነበር።

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

፱ እንግዲህ ላማናውያንና፣ ልሙኤላውያንና፣ እናም እስማኤላውያንና፣ ላማናውያን ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር፣ እናም ሁለቱ ቡድኖችም ኔፋውያን እናም ላማናውያን ነበሩ።

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጦርነቱም በሲዳም ውሃ በዛራሔምላ ዳርቻ በመካከላቸው ተጀመረ።

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን ሠላሳ ሺህ እስከሚበልጡ ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚህ ዓመትም ብዙ ጦርነቶች ነበሩአቸው፣ በዚህም ኔፋውያንም ላማናውያንን አሸነፉአቸውና ብዙዎችን ገደሉአቸው።

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን ዕቅዳቸውን ተወና፣ በምድሪቱም ላይ ሠላም ነበር፤ እናም ለአራት ዓመታት ሠላም ሰፍኗል፣ ስለዚህ ምንም ደም መፋሰስ አልነበረም።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

፲፫ ነገር ግን ኃጢያት በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ሠፈነ፣ በዚህም የተነሳ ጌታ የተወደዱ ደቀመዛሙርቱን ወሰደ፣ እናም በህዝቡም ክፋት የተነሳ የተዓምር ሥራና ፈውስ ቆመ።

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

፲፬ እናም ከጌታም ምንም ዐይነት ሰጦታዎች አልነበሩም፣ እናም በክፋቶቻቸው እናም ባለማመናቸው የተነሳ መንፈስ ቅዱስ በማንም ላይ አልመጣም ነበር።

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

፲፭ እናም አሰራ አምስት ዓመት ሲሆነኝና ጥቂት አስተዋይ በመሆኔ በጌታ ተጎብኝኜ ነበር፣ እናም የኢየሱስን ቸርነት ቀምሼ እውቄም ነበር።

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

፲፮ እናም ይህን ሕዝብ ለመሰበክ ጥረት አደርገን ነበር፣ ነገር ግን አንደበቱ ተዘጋና፣ እንዳልሰብክላቸውም ተከልክዬ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም እነሆ ወደው በአምላካቸው ላይ እምፀው ነበርና፤ እናም በክፋታቸው የተነሳ የተወደዱ ደቀመዛሙርት ከምድሪቱ ተወሰደዋል።

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

፲፯ ነገር ግን እኔ በመካከላቸው ቀረሁ፣ ነገር ግን በልባቸው ጠጣርነት ምክንያት እንዳልሰብክላቸው ተከለክልኩ፤ እናም በልባቸው ጠጣርነት የተነሳ ምድሪቱ ተረገማ ነበር።

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

፲፰ እናም እነዚህ ከላማናውያን መካከል የነበሩት የጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች፣ ምድሪቱን ወረሩአት፤ በዚህም የተነሳ በዚያን ሥፍራ ይኖሩ የነበሩት ሀብቶቻቸውን በመሬት ውስጥ ቀበሩ፤ እናም ለመያዝ እንዳይችሉና በድጋሚ እንዳይዙ ወይም እንዳያገኙ ጌታ ምድሪቷን ስለረገማት እነዚህም የማይጨበጡ ሆኑ።

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ መናፍሰትን ጠሪዎችና ጠንቋዮች፣ እንዲሁም አሰማተኞች ነበሩ፤ እናም የአቢናዲና ደግሞ የላማናዊው ሳሙኤል ቃል ሁሉ እስከሚፈፀም የክፋው ሥልጣን በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ላይ ይሰራ ነበር።

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

ሞርሞን ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያው ዓመት በኔፋውያንና በላማናውያን መካከል በድጋሚ ጦርነት ሆነ። እናም ወጣት ብሆንም እንኳን በአቋሜ ትልቅ ነበርኩ፤ ስለዚህ የኔሬ ሕዝብ መሪያቸው እንዲሁም የሠራዊቶቻቸው መሪ እንደሆን ሾሙኝ።

፪ ስለዚህ እንዲህ ሆነ በአስራ ስድስተኛው ዓመቱ በላማናውያን ላይ የኔፋውያን የጦሩ መሪ በመሆን ሔድኩ፤ ስለዚህ ሦስት መቶ ሃያ ስድስት ዓመታት አለፉ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ሃያ ስድስተኛው ዓመት ላማናውያን እጅግ ታላቅ በሆነ ኃይል በእኛ ላይ መጡ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ወታደሮቹን አስፈራሩአቸው፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱም አልተዋጉም፤ እናም በስተሰሜን ወዳሉት ሀገሮችም ማፈገፈግ ጀመሩ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ አንጎላ ከተማ መጣንና፣ ከተማዋንም ወሰድን፣ እናም አራሳችንን ከላማናውያን ለመከላከል ዝግጅት አደረግን። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ፣ በጉልበታችን ያህችን ከተማ ምሽጋችን አደረግናት፤ ነገር ግን ምንም እንኳን ምሽጋችን እንዲህ ቢሆንም ላማናውያን በእኛ ላይ መጡና ከከተማዋ አባረሩን።

፭ እናም ደግሞ ከዳዊት ምድርም አባረሩን።

፮ እናም እኛም ዘመትንና፣ በባሕሩ ዳርቻ በስተሰምዕራብ ጫፍ ወደሚገኘው ወደ ኢያሱ ምድር መጣን።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝባችንን በአንድ ላይ እንዲሆን እንደረግ ዘንድ በተቻለ ፍጥነት በአንድነት ተሰበሰብን።

፰ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ምድሪቱ በዘራፊዎች እንዲሁም በላማናውያን ተሞልታ ነበር፤ እናም ታላቅ ጥፋት በህዝቤ ላይ የተመዘዘ ቢሆንም፣ ስለክፉ ስራዎቻቸው ንሰሃ አልገቡም፣ ስለዚህ በኔፋውያንና ደግሞ በላማናውያን በኩል በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ደም መፋሰስና አልቂት ሆነ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ህዝቡ በህግና በስርዓት ላይ ያምፅ ነበር።

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

፱ እናም እንግዲህ፤ ለማናውያን ንጉስ ነበራቸው፤ ስሙም አሮን ይባል ነበር፤ እናም ከአርባ አራት ሺህ ወታደሮቹ ጋር በአኛ ላይ መጣ። እናም እነሆ፤ በአርባ ሁለት ሺዎች ተቋቋሞኩት። እንዲህም ሆነ ከፊቱ እስኪሸሸ በሠራዊቱ እሸነፍኩት። እናም እነሆ፤ ይህ ሁሉ ተፈፀሟል፤ ሦስት መቶ ሠላሳ ዓመታትም አለፉ።

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን ለክፋታቸው ንስሃ መግባት ጀመሩና፤ በነቢዩ ሳሙኤል እንደተተነበየው መጮህ ጀመሩ፤ እነሆ በሌቦቹና በዘራፊዎች፤ እናም በገዳዮቹና፤ በእስማተኞች፤ እንዲሁም በምድሪቱ ባሉት ጠንቋዮች የተነሳ ማንም ሰው የራሱ የሆነውን ለመጠበቅ አልተቻለውምና።

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

፲፩ በእነዚህ ነገሮች ምክንያት በምድር በሙሉ፤ በተለይ ከሌሎቹ በበለጠ በኔሬ ሕዝብ መካከል፤ ሀዘን እናም ልቅሶ ሆነ።

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ሞርሞን፤ በጌታ ፊት ለቅሶአቸውንና ሀዘናቸውን በተመለከትኩ ጊዜ፤ የጌታን ምህረት እንዲሁም ታጋሽነት በማወቅም፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ እንደገና ፃድቃን ይሆኑ ዘንድ ለእነርሱ መሃሪ እንደሆነ በመገመቴ፤ ልቤ በውስጤ ሀሴት ማድረግ ጀመረኝ።

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

፲፫ ነገር ግን እነሆ ደስታዬ ከንቱ ነበር፤ ምክንያቱም ሀዘናቸው በእግዚአብሔር ቸርነት ለንስሃ አልነበረምና፤ ነገር ግን የባለኩነኔ ሀዘን ነበር ምክንያቱም ጌታ ሁልጊዜም በኃጢያት ደስታን እንዲቀበሉ አልፈቀደላቸውም ነበር።

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

፲፬ እናም በተሰበረ ልብና በተዋረደ መንፈስ ወደ ኢየሱስም አልመጡም፤ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔርን ይረግሙታል እናም ሞትን ይመኛሉ። ይሁን እንጂ በህይወት ለመቆየት በጎራዴአቸው ይታገላሉ።

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሀዘኔም በድጋሚ ወደ እኔ ተመለሰ፤ በጊዜያዊም እንዲሁም በመንፈሳዊ የጸጋ ቀናቸው ማለፉን ተመልክቻለሁ፤ በሺዎች የሚቆጠሩት በገሃድ በአምላካቸው ላይ በማመፃቸው፤ ሲገደሉና እንደፍግ ሰውነታቸው በመሬት ላይ ሲቆለል ተመልክቻለሁና። እና በዚህ ሦስት መቶ አርባ አራት ዓመት አለፈ።

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ አርባ አምስተኛው ዓመትም ኔፋውያን ከላማናውያን ፊት መሸሽ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ሲያፈገፍጉም እነርሱን ማቆም ከመቻሉ በፊት በያሾን ምድር እስከሚመጡ ድረስ ተከተሉአቸው።

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

፲፯ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የጄሸን ከተማ አማርኛም መዛግብቱ እንዲይጠፋ ለጌታ ያሰቀመጠበት ምድር አጠገብ ነበር። እናም እነሆ አማርኛ እንዳዘዘኝ አደረግሁና፣ የኔፊን ሠሌዳ ወሰድኩኝ፣ እናም አማርኛ እንዳዘዘኝ ታሪኩን ጻፍኩኝ።

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

፲፰ እናም በኔፊ ሠሌዳ ላይ ስለክፋቶችና ስለ ርኩሶቶች በሙሉ ታሪኩን ጻፍኩ፤ ነገር ግን የሰዎችን ባሕሪ ለማየት ከቻልኩበት ዕድሜዬ ጀምሮ በዐይኔ የማያቋርጥ ክፋትና ርኩሶትን በመመልከት በነዚህ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ ስለክፋታቸውና ርኩሶታቸው የነበረውን ታሪክ በሙሉ ከመጻፍ ተቆጥቤ ነበር።

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

፲፱ እናም በክፋቶቻቸው የተነሳ ለእኔም ወዮልኝ፤ ምክንያቱም በዘመኔ ሁሉ በክፋታቸው የተነሳ ልቤ በሀዘን ተሞልታለኝና፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በመጨረሻው ቀን ከፍ እንደምል አውቀዋለሁ።

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያ ዓመትም የኔፊን ሰዎች ታድነውና ተባርረው ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሺም ምድር ተብላ በምትጠራው በሰተሰሜን እስከምንወጣ ድረስ ተባርረን።

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሺምን ከተማ ምሽግ አደረግናትና፣ ሕዝባችንን ከጥፋት እናድን ዘንድ በሚቻለው መጠን በእንድ ላይ ሰበሰብን።

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ አርባ ስድስተኛው ዓመት በድጋሚ ወደ እኛ መምጣታቸውን ጀመሩ።

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሕዝቤ በላማናውያን ፊት በድፍረት እንዲቆሙና፣ ለሚሰቶቻቸውና፣ ለልጆቻቸው፣ ለመኖሪያቸውና ለቤታቸው እንዲዋጉ በታላቅ ሀይል ተናገርኩአቸው፣ እናም አበረታቷቸው።

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

፳፬ እና ቃሌም በጥቂቱ አበረታታቸው፣ በዚህም የተነሳ ከላማናውያን ፊት አልሸሹም ነበር፣ ነገር ግን በፊታቸው በድፍረት ቆመው ነበር።

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሠላሳ ሺህ ወታደሮቻችን ጋር ነበር ከሃምሳ ሺህ ወታደሮች ጋር የገጠምነው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በፊታቸው በፅናትም ቆምን እነርሱም ከፊታችን ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሸሹ ጊዜ ከወታደሮቻችን ጋር ተከተልናቸው፣ እናም በድጋሚ አገኛናቸውና አሸናፊናቸው፤ ይሁን እንጂ የጌታ ብርታት ከእኛ ጋር አልነበረም፤ እዎን፣ የጌታ መንፈስ ከእኛ ጋር ስላልነበረ በብቻችን ነበርን፣ በዚህም፤ ስለዚህ ልክ እንደ ወንድሞቻችን ደካሞች ሆነን ነበር።

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

፳፮ እናም በህዝቦቼም ክፋትና ርኩሳት የተነሳ በደረሰው ታላቅ መቅሰፍት ልቤ አዝና ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ በላማናውያንና በጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች ላይ የትውልድ ምድራችንን በድጋሚ አስከምንወስድ ድረስ ሄድን።

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

፳፯ እናም ሦስት መቶ እርባ ዘጠነኛው ዓመት አለፈ። እናም በሦስት መቶ ሃምሳኛው ዓመት ከላማናውያንና ከጋድያንቶን ዘራፊዎች ጋር ስምምነት አደረግንና፣ የትውልድ ምድራችንንም ተከፋፈልን።

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

፳፱ እናም ላማናውያን በስተሰሜን በኩል ያለውን መሬት ሰጡን፤ እዎን፣ በቀጭኑ ማለፊያ ወደ ምድሪቱ ደቡብ የሚያመራውን ጭምር። እናም ለላማናውያን በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ ያለውን ሁሉ ሰጠናቸው።

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

ሞርሞን ፫

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን አሥር ተጨማሪ ዓመታት አስከሚያልፍ ድረስ በድጋሚ ለመዋጋት አልተመለሱም። እናም እነሆ፣ ሞድሪቱንና የጦር መሳሪያዎችን ለጦርነት ጊዜ እንዲያዘጋጁ የሕዝቦቹ ነፋውያን ጉልበታቸውን ተጠቀሙ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ ለዚህ ሕዝብ ጩኸ—ንሰሃ ግቡና፣ ወደእኔ ኑ፣ እናም ተጠመቁና፣ ቤተክርስቲያኔን በድጋሚ ሥሩ፣ እናም ትድናላችሁ።

፫ እናም ለዚህ ሕዝብ ጩኸ፣ ነገር ግን በከንቱ ነበር፤ እናም እነርሱም ጌታ እንዳዳናቸውና ለንሰሃም ዕድል የሰጣቸው እርሱ እንደነበር አልተረዱም። እናም እነሆ በጌታ በአምላካቸውም ላይ ልባቸውን አጠጥረውት ነበር።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ይህ አስረኛው ዓመት፣ በአጠቃላይ ክርስቶስ ከመጣ ሦስት መቶ ስልሳ ዓመት ካለፈ በኋላ የላማናውያን ንጉሥ ደብዳቤ ላከልኝ፣ ይኸውም እነርሱ ከእኛ ጋር ለጦርነት በድጋሚ ለመምጣት እንደሚዘጋጁ እንዳውቅ ነበር።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሕዝቤንም በዳርቻው ባለችው ከተማ በቀጭኑ ማለፊያ በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል በሚወስደው ወደ ወደመችው ሞድር በአንድነት እራሳቸውን እንዲሰበሰቡ አደረግሁ።

፮ እናም ላማናውያን ማንኛውንም ሞድራችንን እንዳይወስዱብን ወታደሮቻቸውን እናስቆማቸውን ዘንድ ሠራዊታችንን እዚያ አስቀመጥን፤ ስለዚህ ባለን ኃይል ሁሉ ተጠቅመን መሸግንባቸው።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ስልሳ አንደኛው ዓመት ላማናውያን ከእኛ ጋር ለመዋጋት ወደ ወደመችው ከተማ ወረዱ፤ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያን ዓመት በድጋሚ ወደራሳቸው ሞድር እስኪመለሱ አሸንፍናቸው።

፰ እናም በሦስት መቶ ስልሳ ሁለተኛው ዓመት በድጋሚ ለመዋጋት መጡ። እናም በድጋሚ አሸንፍናቸውና፣ ብዙ ቁጥር ያላቸውንም ገደልናቸው፣ ሙታናቸውም ወደ ባሕር ተጣሉ።

፱ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ህዝቤ ነፋውያን ባደረጉት በዚህ ታላቅ ነገር፣ በጉልበታቸው ተኩራሩና በሰማያት ፊትም በጠላቶቻቸው የተገደሉትን የወንድሞቻቸውን ደም እንደሚበቀሉ መማል ጀመሩ።

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

፲ እናም ከጠላቶቻቸው ጋር ለመዋጋትና ከምድረገፅም እነርሱን ለማጥፋት በሰማያትና ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር ዙፋን መሀላን አደረጉ።

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ፣ ሞርሞን፣ በዚህ ህዝብ ክፋትና እርኩሰት የተነሳ ከእግዚአብሔር የዚህ ህዝብ አዛዥና መሪ በፍጹም አልሆንም አልኩኝ።

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

፲፪ እነሆ፣ እነርሱን መርቼ ነበር፣ ኃጢአተኞች ቢሆኑም በብዙ ጊዜ በጦርነት መራራቸውና፣ በውስጤ ባለው በእግዚአብሔር ፍቅር ክልሌ በሙሉ ወደድኳቸው፤ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ ነፍሴ ለእምላኬ ስለእነርሱ ፀሎትን ታፈሰ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ልባቸውን በማጠጠራቸው ይህ በእምነት አልነበረም።

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

፲፫ እናም ለሦስት ጊዜም ከጠላቶቻቸው እጅ አስለቅቄአቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እነርሱ ለኃጢአተኞቻቸው ንስሃ አልገቡም ነበር።

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

፲፬ በጌታችንና በአዳኞችን በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ የተከለከሉትን በሙሉ በማሉ ጊዜ፣ እናም ከጠላቶቻቸው ጋር ለመዋጋትና የወንድሞቻቸውን ደም አራሳቸው ሊበቀሉ በሚሄዱበት ጊዜ፣ እነሆ የጌታ ድምፅ ወደ እኔም እንዲህ ሲል መጣ፣

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

፲፭ በቀል የእኔ ነው፣ እናም ራሴ እከፍለዋለሁ፤ እናም ምክንያቱም ይህ ሕዝብ እኔ ካዳንኳቸው በኋላ ንስሃ ስላልገቡ፣ እነሆ፣ እነርሱ ከምድረ ገፅ ይጠፋሉ።

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚም ጠላቶቼ ላይ ለመሄድ በጥብቅ ተቃወምኩ፤ ልክ ጌታ እንዳዘዘኝ አደረግሁም፤ እናም ስለሚመጡት ነገሮች ስለመሰከረው የመንፈስ መገለጥ መሰረት፣ ስላየኋቸውና ስለሰማኋቸው ነገሮች ለዓለም ለመግለፅ ብቸኛ ምስክር በመሆን ቆምኩኝ።

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

፲፯ ስለዚህ ለእናንተ ለአህዛብና ደግሞ ሥራው በሚጀመርበት ጊዜ ወደ ትውልድ ምድራችሁ ለመመለስ ለምትዘጋጁት የእስራኤል ቤት ለሆናችሁት እጽፋለሁ፤

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

፲፰ አዎን፤ እነሆ፣ ለሁሉም ለዓለም ዳርቻ፣ አዎን፣ በኢየሩሳሌም ምድር ኢየሱስ በመረጣቸው በእስራ ሁለቱ ደቀመዛሙርት እንደሰራችሁ ወደሚፈረድባችሁ ወደ እናንተ አስራ ሁለት የእስራኤል ነገዶች እጽፋለሁ።

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

፲፱ እናም በዚህች ምድር ኢየሱስ በመረጣቸው በአስራ ሁለቱ ወደሚፈረድባቸው የሕዝቦች ቅሪት ደግሞ እጽፋለሁ፤ እናም እነርሱም ኢየሱስ በኢየሩሳሌም በመረጣቸው ይፈረድባቸዋል።

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

፳ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች መንፈስ ለእኔ ይገልፀልኛል፤ ስለዚህ ለሁላችሁም እጽፋለሁ። በዚህም ምክንያት ሁላችሁም፣ አዎን፣ የአዳም ቤተሰብ የሆኑት እያንዳንዱ ነፍስ በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት መቆም እንዳለባችሁ እንድታውቁ እጽፋለሁ፤ እናም መልካምም ይሁን መጥፎ እንደሰራችሁ እንዲፈረድባችሁ መቆም አለባችሁ።

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

፳፩ እናም ደግሞ በመካከላችሁ በሚሆነው የክርስቶስን ወንጌል ታምኑ ዘንድ፤ እናም ደግሞ የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን ሕዝብ የሆኑት አይሁዶች ከተመለከቱት፣ እናም ከሰሙት፣ ከገደሉት ከኢየሱስ በተጨማሪ፣ የጥንቱ ክርስቶስና የጥንቱ አምላካቸው እንደነበረ ሌላ ምስክር ይኖራቸዋል።

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

፳፪ እናም በዓለም ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ ንስሃ እንድትገቡና በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ለመቆም እንድትዘጋጁ ለማሳመን እፈልጋለሁ።

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

ሞርሞን ፬

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ስልሳ ሦስተኛው ዓመት ኔፋውያን ከወደመው ምድር ወጥተው ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ከሠራዊታቸው ጋር ሄዱ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኔፋውያን ሠራዊቶች በድጋሚ ወደ ወደመችው ምድር ተገፍተው ተመለሱ። እናም በደከሙበት ጊዜ፣ ምንም ያልደከማቸው የላማናውያን ሠራዊቶች መጡባቸው፤ እናም አስቃቂ ጦርነት አደረጉ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ላማናውያን የወደመችውን ከተማ ወሰዱ፣ እናም ብዙ ኔፋውያንን ገደሉና፣ ብዙ እስረኞችንም ወሰዱ።

፫ እናም ቀሪዎቹ ሸሹና ከቴአንኩም ከተማ ነዋሪዎች ጋር ተቀላቀሉ። እንግዲህ የቴአንኩም ከተማም በባሕሩ ዳርቻ ነበረች፤ እንዲሁም ደግሞ በወደመችው ከተማ አጠገብ ነበረች።

፬ እናም የኔፋውያን ወታደሮች ላማናውያንን ለማጥቃት በመሔዳቸው መመታት ተጀመሩ፤ ይህ ባይሆን ኖሮ ላማናውያን በእነርሱ ላይ ኃይል ሊኖራቸው አይችልም ነበርና።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ቅጣት በክፉዎች ላይ ይደርሳል፤ እናም ኃጥአን የሚቀጡት በኃጢአተኞች ነው፣ ምክንያቱም ኃጥአን ናቸው የሰው ልጆችን ልብ ለደም መፋሰስ የሚቀስቅሱትና።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን በቴአንኩም ከተማ ላይ ጥቃት ለማካሄድ ዝግጅት አደረጉ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ሦልሳ አራተኛው ዓመት ላማናውያን የቴአንኩምን ከተማ ይወሰዱ ዘንድ ወደ ቴአንኩም ከተማ መጡ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኔፋውያን ተሸነፉና ተገፍተው ተመለሱ። እናም ኔፋውያን ላማናውያንን ማባረራቸውን በተመለከቱ ጊዜ በጥንካሬአቸው በድጋሚ ተኩራሩ፤ በጉልበታቸውም ተማምነው ወደፊት ቀጠሉና፣ በድጋሚ የወደመችውን ከተማ ወሰዱ።

፱ እናም እንግዲህ እነዚህ ነገሮች በሙሉ ተፈፀመዋል፣ እናም በኔፋውያንም ሆነ በላማናውያን በኩል በሺህ የሚቆጠሩ ተገደሉ።

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሦስት መቶ ሥልሳ ስድስት ዓመት አለፈ፤ ላማናውያንም በድጋሚ ኔፋውያንን ለመውጋት መጡ፤ እናም ኔፋውያን ለሰሯቸው ክፉ ሥራዎች ንስሃ ገና አልገቡም፤ ነገር ግን ያለማቋረጥ በክፋታቸው ቀጠሉ።

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

፲፩ እናም በኔፋውያን እንዲሁም በላማናውያን መካከል አስቃቂ የነበረውን ደም መፋሰስና ዕልቂት በአንደበት ለመግለፅም ሆነ ለሰው ሁኔታውን ሙሉ ለሙሉ ለመፃፍ በጣም አሰቸጋሪ ነበር፤ እናም የሁሉም ልብ የጠጠረ ነበር ስለዚህ ያለማቋረጥ በሚፈሰው ደም ተደሰቱ።

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

፲፪ እናም በጌታ ቃል መሰረት፣ በእነዚህ ሰዎች መካከል እንደነበረው አይነት ታላቅ ክፋት በሌላም ልጆች ሆነ በእስራኤል ቤት ሁሉ መካከል በጭራሽ አልነበረም።

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን የወደመኝውን ከተማ ወሰዱ፤ እናም ይህም የሆነበት ምክንያት ቁጥራቸው ከኔፋውያን ይበልጥ ስለነበር ነው።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

፲፬ እናም ደግሞ ወደ ቴአንኩም ከተማ ዘመቱና፣ ነዋሪዎችን አስወጡ፣ እናም ከሴቶችና ልጆች በተጨማሪ ብዙ እስረኞችን ወሰዱ፣ እናም ለሚያመልኩት ጣዖት መስዋዕት አቀረቡባቸው።

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ሥልሳ ሰባተኛው ዓመት፣ ኔፋውያን ላማናውያን ሴቶቻቸውንና ልጆቻቸውን መስዋዕት ስላደረጉባቸው ላማናውያንን በእጅጉ አጠቁአቸው፤ ስለዚህ በድጋሚ ላማናውያንን አሸንፋአቸውና ከምድራቸውም አባረሩአቸው።

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

፲፮ እናም እስከ ሦስት መቶ ሰባ አምስተኛው ዓመት ድረስ ላማናውያን በድጋሚ ኔፋውያንን አልወጉአቸውም።

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

፲፯ እናም በዚህ ዓመት ባላቸው ኃይል ሁሉ ኔፋውያንን ወጉአቸው፤ እናም በቁጥርም ብዙ በመሆናቸው አልተቆጠሩም ነበር።

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

፲፰ እናም ከዚህ ጊዜም ጀምሮ ኔፋውያን በላማናውያን ላይ ድል አላገኙም፤ ነገር ግን ጤዛ በፀሀይ እንደሚበተን እነርሱም መጥፋት ጀመሩ።

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን የወደመኝውን ከተማ አጠቁ፤ እናም እጅግ አስቃቂ የሆነ ውጊያ በወደመኝው ምድር ነበር፣ በዚያም ኔፋውያንን አሸንፋአቸው።

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

፳፮ እናም በድጋሚ እነርሱ ከፊታቸው ሸሹና፣ ወደ ቦአዝ ከተማም መጡ፤ እናም በዚያም ላማናውያንን በድፍረት ተቋቋሙ፤ ስለዚህ ላማናውያንም በእነርሱ ላይ በድጋሚ እስከሚመጡ ድረስ አላሸነፉአቸውም ነበር።

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-
somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

፳፯ እናም ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ ወደ እነርሱ በመጡ ጊዜ፣ ኔፋውያን ተባረሩና፣ በታላቅ ሁኔታም ተገደሉ፤ ሴቶቻቸውና ልጆቻቸው በድጋሚ ለጣዖት መስዋዕት ተደረጉ።

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an ex-
ceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኔፋውያን በድጋሚ በከተማዋም ሆነ በየመንደሩ ያሉትን ነዋሪዎቻቸውን በሙሉ ወሰደው ከፊታቸው ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

፳፱ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ፣ ሞርሞን፣ ላማናውያን ምድሪቱን ለማጥፋት እንደተቃረቡ በመገንዘቤ፤ ስለዚህ ወደሸም ኮረብታ ሄድኩና፣ አማሮን ለጌታ የደበቀውን መዛግብት በሙሉ ወሰድኩ።

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

ሞርሞን ፮

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከኔፋውያን መካከል ሔድኩና፣ እነርሱን ከእነግዲህ አልረዳቸውም ብዬ ለገባሁት መሃላ ንሰሃ ገባሁ፤ እናም በድጋሚም በወታደሮቻቸው ላይ ስልጣን ሰጡኝ ምክንያቱም እኔ ከሰቃያቸው ለማሰለቀቅ የምችል አድርገው ይገምቱ ስለነበር ነው።

፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ተሰፋ አልነበረኝም፣ ምክንያቱም የጌታ ቅጣት በእነርሱ ላይ እንደሚመጣ አውቅ ነበርና፤ እነርሱ ስለኃጢአቶቻቸው ንሰሃ አልገቡምና፣ ነገር ግን ወደ ፈጣሪያቸው ፀሎት ሳያደርጉ ለህይወታቸው ይታገሉ ነበርና።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ላማናውያን እኛ ወደ ዮርዳኖስ ከተማ ሰንሸሽ በእኛ ላይ መጡብን፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ስለተሸነፉ በዚያን ጊዜ ከተማዋን የራሳቸው አላደረጉም።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ መጡብን፣ እኛም ከተማዋን ተቆጣጥረን ነበር። እናም ደግሞ በኔፋውያን ተይዘው የነበሩ ሌሎች ከተሞች፣ የምድራችንን ነዋሪዎች ለማጥፋት ከእኛ በፊት የነበሩትን ስፍራዎች ለመያዝ የማያስችሏቸው ጠንካራ ምሽጎች ነበሩ።

፭ ነገር ግን እንዲህ ሆነ ባለፍንበት ምድር ሁሉና፣ ያልተሰባሰቡት ነዋሪዎች በላማናውያን ጠፉ፣ እናም ከተሞቻቸውና መንደሮቻቸው በአሳት ተቃጠሉ፤ እናም ሦስት መቶ ሰባ ዘጠኝ ዓመት በዚህ አለፈ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሦስት መቶ ሰማንያኛው ዓመት፣ ላማናውያን በድጋሚ ሊዋጉን መጡ፣ እኛም በድፍረት ተቋቋምናቸው፤ ነገር ግን ይህ ሁሉ ከንቱ ነበር፣ ምክንያቱም በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ ስለነበሩ የኔፋውያን ህዝቦች በእግራቸው ሥር ረገገጡአቸው።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚ ሸሽንና፣ ሸሽታቸው ከላማናውያን ፈጣን የነበሩት አመለጡና፣ ከላማናውያን ሸሽተው ሊያመልጡ ያልቻሉት ተጠረጉና ጠፉ።

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

፳፯ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ፣ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ የሰዎች ነፍስ በፊቴ እንደነበረው በዐይኔ እንደተመለከትኩት አስቃቂ የሆነ የደም መፋሰስና ዕልቂት ዓይነት ሰቃይ እንዲጣል አልፈልግም፤ ነገር ግን እነዚህ ነገሮች በእርግጥ እንዲታወቁ መደረጉንና፣ የተደበቁት ሁሉም ነገሮች በሰገነት መገለጥ እንዳለባቸው በማወቅ፣

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

፳፰ እናም ደግሞ የዚህ ህዝብ ቅሪት የሆኑትና ደግሞ ጌታ ይበትኗቸዋል ብሎ የተናገራቸው፣ እናም ይህም ህዝብ በመካከላቸው ዋጋ እንደሌላቸው እንደሚቆረጡ ጌታ የተናገረባቸው አህዛብ እነዚህን ነገሮች ማወቅ እንዳለባቸው ስለማውቅ—ስለዚህ በተቀበልኩት ትዕዛዝ ምክንያትና፣ ደግሞ በዚህ ህዝብ ክፋትም ታላቅ ሀዘን እንዳይኖራቸው፣ ስላየኋቸው ነገሮች በሙሉ ለመፃፍ ባለመድፈሪ ትንሽ ታሪክ አሳጥሪ እፅፋለሁ።

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

፳፱ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህን ለዘራቸውና፣ ደግሞ የእስራኤል ቤት ለሚንከባከቧቸውና በረከታቸውን ስለሚገነዘቡት እናም ከየት እንደሚመጣ ለሚያውቁትም አህዛብም እናገራለሁ።

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

፴፬ እንደነዚህ አይነቶች በእስራኤል ቤት መቅሰፍት እንደሚያዝኑ አውቃለሁና፤ እዎን፣ በዚህ ህዝብ መጥፋትም ያዝናሉ፤ ህዝቡም በኢየሱስ ተቀባይነትን ያገኙ ዘንድ ንስሃ ባለመግባታቸውም ያዝናሉ።

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

፴፭ እንግዲህ እነዚህ ነገሮች የዕቅድ ቤት ቅሪት ለሆኑት የተፃፉ ናቸው፤ እናም በዚህም ስርዓት የተጻፈው ክፋት ወደእነርሱ ወደፊት እንደሚያመጣቸው በእግዚአብሔር በመታወቁ ነው፤ እናም በራሱ ጊዜ ይገለጡ ዘንድ በጌታም ተደብቀዋል።

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

፴፮ እናም ይህ እኔ የተቀበልኩት ትዕዛዝ ነው፤ እናም እነሆ ጌታ በጥበቡ ተሰማሚነቱን በተመለከተ ጊዜ በጌታ ትዕዛዝ መሰረት ይመጣሉ።

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

፴፱ እናም እነሆ፣ ከአይሁዶች መካከል ወደማያምኑት ይሄዳሉ፤ ለዚህ ዓላማም ይሄዳሉ—ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ፣ የህያው እግዚአብሔር ልጅ መሆኑን ለማሳመን፤ አብም ቃል ኪዳኑ ይፈፀም ዘንድ አይሁዶችን እንዲሁም የእስራኤል ቤት የሆኑትን በሙሉ ጌታ አምላካቸው ወደሰጣቸው ወደ ትውልድ ምድራቸው ለመመለስ ታላቅና ዘላለማዊ ዓላማውን በሚወደው በልጁ አማካይነት እንደሚያመጣ ለማሳመን፤

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

፲፮ እናም ደግሞ የዚህ ህዝብ ዘር የሆኑትም ከእነዚህ የሚሄድላቸውን ወንጌሉን ይበልጥ እንዲያምኑ ዘንድ፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ ህዝብ ይበተናል፤ እናም ጨለማ፣ የጎደፈ፣ እናም ከመካከላችን ከነበረው ነገር በላይ፣ አዎን፣ በላማናውያን መካከል ከነበረው የበለጠ ለመግለፅ በማያሰችል ሁኔታ የሚያሰጠሉ ይሆናሉና፤ እናም ይህም የሆነው ባለማመናቸውና ጣዖት አምላኪ በመሆናቸው ነው።

፲፱ እነሆም፣ የጌታ መንፈስ ከእባቶቻቸው ጋር መሰራቱን አቁሟል፤ እናም በዓለም ውስጥ ያለክርስቶስና ያለእግዚአብሔር ናቸውና፤ እናም ገለባ በነፋስ ፊት እንደሚሆነው ይበተናሉና።

፳፬ በእንደ ወቅት አስደሳች ሰዎች ነበሩ፣ እንዲሁም ክርስቶስም እረኛቸው ነበር፤ አዎን፣ በእግዚአብሔር አብም እንኳን ተመርተው ነበር።

፳፯ ነገር ግን አሁንም እነሆ፣ ገለባ በነፋስ ፊት እንደሚወሰደው ወይም ሽራ እናም መሃለቁ ሳይኖራት ወይም ቀጽዘፊም እንደሌሎባት በሞገድ እንደምትናወጥ ጀልባ እነርሱም በሰይጣን ተመርተዋል፤ እናም እርሷም እንደዚህ እንደሆነች፣ እነርሱም ናቸው።

፳፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ጌታም በምድሪቷ ለመቀበል የሚችሉትን በረከት አስቀምጦላቸዋል፣ አሁንም ምድሪቱን ይዘዋታልና።

፳፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እነርሱም በአሁኑ ይባረራሉና ይበተናሉ፤ እናም በአሁኑ ከተባረሩ ከተበተኑ በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ከአብርሃም እንዲሁም ከአሰራኤል ቤት በሙሉ ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውሳል።

፳፻ እናም ደግሞ ጌታ በፊቱ ለእነርሱ የተቀመጠለትን የፃድቃኖች ፀሎት ያስታውሳል።

፷፬ እና እንግዲህ አሁን ሆይ፣ ንስሃ ካልገባችሁና ክፉ ስራችሁን ካልተዋችሁ በቀር በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በፊት እንዴት ለመቆም ትችላላችሁ?

፷፮ በእግዚአብሔር እጅ መሆናችሁን አታውቁምን? ስልጣን ሁሉ የእርሱ መሆኑንና በታላቅ ትዕዛዙም ምድር በእንድነት እንደ መጽሐፍ ጥቅልል የምትጠቀለል መሆኗን አታውቁምን?

፷፱ ስለዚህ፣ እናንተ ንስሃ ግቡ፣ እናም በፊቱም ራሳችሁን አዋርዱ፣ ያለበለዚያ ፍርድ በላያችሁ እንዲይመጣባችሁ—ያለበለዚያ የያዕቆብ ዘር ቅሪት የሆኑት በመካከላችሁ እንደእንበሳ ይመጣሉ፣ እናም ይበጩጩቋችኋልና፣ ሊያድን የሚችል አይኖርም።

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

ሞርሞን ፮

፩ እናም እንግዲህ የህዝቦቹ የኔፋውያንን ጥፋት በተመለከተ ታሪኬን እጨርሳለሁ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከላማናውያን ፊት ዘመትን።

፪ እናም እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ለላማናዊው ንጉሰ ደብዳቤ ፃፍኩና፣ ከሞራ ተብሎ በሚጠራው ኮረብታ አካባቢ በከሞራ ሞድር ህዝባችንን እንድንሰበሰብ እንዲፈቀድልንና ከእነርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት እንድንችል መፈለገን ጠየቅሁ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የላማናውያን ንጉሰ እንደፈለግሁት ሞ ፈቀደልኝ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ከሞራ ሞድር ሄድንና፣ በከሞራ ኮረብታ ዙሪያ ድንጋናችንን ተከልን፤ እናም ሞድሪቱም ብዙ ውሀዎች፣ ወንዞችና፣ ምንጮች ነበሩባት፤ እናም እዚህ በላማናውያን ላይ ብልጫ እንደምንይዝ ተስፋ አደረግን።

፭ እናም ሦስት መቶ ሰማንያ አራት ዓመታት በአለፈ ጊዜ፣ የተቀሩትን ህዝቦቻችንን በከሞራ ሞድር ሰበሰብን።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝባችንን በሙሉ በእንድነት በከሞራ ሞድር በሰበሰብን ጊዜ፣ እነሆ እኔ ሞርሞን፣ ማርጀት ጀመርኩ፤ የሕዝቤም የመጨረሻው ትግል መሆኑን በማወቅና፣ በአባቶቻችን የተረከብነውን ቅዱስ የሆነ መዝገብ በላማናውያን እጅ እንዳይገባ በጌታ በመታዘዜ (ምክንያቱም ላማናውያን ያጠፏቸዋል) ስለዚህ ይህን መዝገብ ከኔሬ ስሌዳ ላይ ፃፍኩት፣ እናም ለልጄ ለሞርኒ ከሰጠኋቸው ከእነዚህ ትንንሾች ሠሌዳዎች በቀር በጌታ የተሰጠኝን መዛግብት በሙሉ በከሞራ ኮረብታ ውስጥ ደበቅኋቸው።

፯ እናም እንግዲህ ህዝቦቹ ከነሚሰቶቻቸውና፣ ከነልጆቻቸው፣ አሁን የላማናውያን ወታደሮች ወደ እነርሱ ሲዘምቱ ተመለከቱ፤ እናም የክፉዎችን ሁሉ ደረት በሚሞላው አሰቃቂ ሞት ፍርሀት እነርሱን ለመቀበል ይጠባበቁ ነበር።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱ እኛን ለመውጋት መጡና፣ በቁጥር ብዙ ስለነበሩ እያንዳንዱ ነፍስ በፍርሃት ተሞልታ ነበር።

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡንም በጎራዳና፣ በደጋን፣ እናም በቀሰትና፣ በምሳር፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉም ዓይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች አጠቁለቸው።

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰዎቻችን ተገደሉ፤ አዎን፣ ከእኔ ጋር የነበሩት አስር ሺዎች ሳይቀሩ ተገደሉ፤ እኔ ቆሰዬ በመካከላቸው ወደቅሁ፤ እናም በአጠገቤ አለፋና፣ አልገደሉኝም።

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

፲፩ እናም በመካከላችን ሄዱና ከሃያ አራታችን በስተቀር (ከመካከላቸውም ልጄ ሞሮኒ ነበር) ሁሉንም ህዝቦቹን ገደሉና እኛ ከሞቱት ህዝቦቻችን በመትረፋችን፣ ላማናውያን ወደ ጦር ሰፍራቸው ሲመለሱ፣ በነጋታው ከከሞራ ኮረብታ ጫፍ ላይ እኔ በፊታቸው ሆኜ አመራቸው የነበሩትን የተገደሉትን አስር ሺህ ህዝቦቹን ተመለከትን።

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ በልጄ ሞሮኒ ይመሩ የነበሩ አስር ሺህ የሚሆኑ ህዝቦቹን ተመለከትናቸው።

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

፲፫ እናም እነሆ አስር ሺህ የሚሆኑ የጊድጊድና ሰዎች ወድቀዋል፣ እናም እርሱም ደግሞ በመካከላቸው ነበር።

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

፲፬ እናም ላማም ከአስር ሺዎቹ ጋር ወድቋል፤ ጊልጋልም ከአስር ሺዎቹ ጋር ወድቋል፤ እናም ላምሀም ከአስር ሺዎቹ ጋር ወድቋል፤ ዩኔዩም ከአስር ሺዎች ጋር ወድቋል፤ እናም ቁሜሊህምና፣ ሞሮኒሃምና፣ አንቲዩነምና፣ ሺብሎምና፣ እናም ሼምና፣ ጆሹ፣ እያንዳንዳቸው ከአስር ሺዎቻቸው ጋር ወደቁ።

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከእያንዳንዳቸው አስር ሺዎች ጋር በጎራዳ የተገደሉ አስር መሪዎች ነበሩ፤ አዎን፣ ከእኔ ጋር ከነበሩት ከሃያ አራቱ፣ እናም ደግሞ በሃገሪቱ በስተደቡብ ካመለጡት ጥቂቶችና፣ ወደ ላማናውያንን ከከዱት ጥቂቶች በስተቀር፣ ሁሉም ህዝቦቹ ወድቀዋል፤ እናም ሥጋቸውና፣ አጥንታቸው፣ እንዲሁም ደማቸው በምድረ ገፅ ላይ ሆኖ፣ በምድሪቱ ላይ እንዲበሰብሱና፣ እንዲበላሹ እናም ወደ እናት ምድርም እንዲመለሱ በገዳዮቻቸው እጅ ተተዉ።

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

፲፮ እናም ነፍሴ ሕዝቤ በመገደሉ በጭንቀት ተከፈለች፣ እናም እንዲህ ስል ጮኸኩ፦

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

፲፯ እናንተ መልክ መልካሞች ሆይ፣ ከጌታ መንገድ እንዴት ልትለዩ ቻላችሁ! እናንተ መልክ መልካሞች ሆይ፣ እናንተን ለመቀበል ከንደቼን ዘርግቶ የቆመውን ኢየሱስን እንዴት ልትቃወሙት ቻላችሁ!

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

፲፰ እነሆ፣ ይህንን ባታደርጉ ኖሮ፣ አትወድቁም ነበር። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ወድቃችኋል እናም ስለሞታችሁ እተክዛለሁ።

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

፲፱ እናንተ መልክ መልካም ወንዶችና ሴት ልጆች ሆይ፤
አባቶችና እናቶች ሆይ፤ እናም ባሎችና ሚስቶች ሆይ፤
እናንተ መልክ መልካም የሆናችሁ፤ እንዴት ልትወድቁ
ቻላችሁ!

፳ ነገር ግን እነሆ፤ እናንተ ጠፍታችኋል፤ እናም የእኔ ሀዘን
እናንተን ሊመልሳችሁ አይችልም።

፳፩ እናም ሟች የሆነው ሰውነታችሁ በቅርቡ ህያው
የሚሆንበት ቀን ይመጣል፤ እናም ይህ ሰውነት ዛሬ
የሚበሰብሰበው የሆነው በቅርቡ የማይበሰብሰበው ሰውነት
በመሆን ይለወጣል፤ እናም በሰራችሁ መሰረት
ሊፈረድባችሁ በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት መቆም
ይኖርባችኋል፤ እናም እናንተ ፃድቅ ብትሆኑ፤ ከዚያም
ከእናንተ በፊት ካለፉት አባቶቻችሁም ጋር የተባረካችሁ
ትሆናላችሁ።

፳፪ አቤቱ ከዚህ ታላቅ ጥፋት በፊት ንሰሃ በገባችሁ ኖር።
ነገር ግን እነሆ፤ እናንተ አልፋችኋል፤ እናም አብ፤ አዎን
ዘለአለማዊው የሰማይ አባት የእናንተን ሁኔታ ያውቃል፤
እናም እርሱም እንደ ፍርድና ምህረቱ ያደርግላችኋል።

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and moth-
ers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it
that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot
bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must
put on immortality, and these bodies which are now
moldering in corruption must soon become incor-
ruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the
judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to
your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then
are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone be-
fore you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruc-
tion had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone,
and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven,
knoweth your state; and he doeth with you accord-
ing to his justice and mercy.

ሞርሞን ፯

፩ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ የአባቶቻቸውን ነገሮች ያውቁ ዘንድ እግዚአብሔር ቃሉን ከሰጣቸው፣ ለነዚህ ለተረፉት የዚህ ሕዝብ ቅሪት ለሆኑት ጥቂት እናገራለሁ፤ አዎን፣ የእስራኤል ቤት ቅሪት ለሆናችሁ ለእናንተ እናገራለሁ፤ እናም የምናገራቸው ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው።

፪ እናንተ ከእስራኤል ቤት መሆናችሁን አወቁ።

፫ ንሰሃ መግባት እንዳለባችሁ፣ አለበለዚያ ለመዳን እንደማትችሉ አወቁ።

፬ የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን መጣል እንዳለባችሁ አወቁ፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ በደም መፍሰስ በሞንም አትደሰቱ፣ እናም ከእንግዲህ እግዚአብሔር ካላዘዘችሁ በሰተቀር የጦር መሳሪያዎቻችሁን በድጋሚ አታንሱ።

፭ አባቶቻችሁ ያወቁትን ለማወቅና፣ እናም ለኃጢአቶቻችሁ ሁሉና ለክፋቶቻችሁ ንሰሃ መግባት እንዳለባችሁ፣ እናም በአይሁዶች የተገደለው ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ መሆኑንና፣ እርሱም በአብ ኃይል ዳግሞ እንደተነሳ፣ ስለዚህ በመቃብር ላይ ድል እንዳደረገ ማመን እንዳለባችሁ አወቁ፣ እናም ደግሞ በእርሱም የሞት መውጊያ ተውጣለች።

፮ እናም እርሱም ሰውም በፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ለመቆም የሚነሳበትን የሙታንን ትንሣኤ ያመጣል።

፯ እናም በእርሱም ፊት በፍርድ ቀን ጥፋተኛ ሳይሆን የሚገኝ፣ አንድ አምላክ የሆኑትን፣ አብ፣ እናም ወልድ፣ እናም መንፈስ ቅዱስን መጨረሻ በሌለው ደስታ ያለማቋረጥ ከበላይ ዘማሪዎች ጋር ለማወደስ በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት በፊቱ እንዲኖር የሚሰጥበትን ለዓለም ቤዛነትን አምጥቷል።

፰ ስለዚህ ንሰሃ ግቡና፣ በኢየሱስ ስም ተጠመቁ፣ እናም በዚህ መዝገብ ብቻ ሳይሆን ነገር ግን ከአይሁዶች ለአህዛብ የሚመጣውን መዝገብ ውስጥ የተመሰረተውን የክርስቶስን ወንጌል በጥብቅ ያዙ፣ ይህም መዝገብ ከአህዛብ ለእናንተ ይመጣል።

፱ እነሆም፣ ይህም እናንተ እንድታምኑበት ነው የተፃፈው፤ እናም ያንን የምታምኑት ከሆነ፣ ይህንንም ደግሞ ታምናላችሁ፤ እናም ይህንን የምታምኑ ከሆነ ስለአባቶቻችሁና፣ ደግሞ በእግዚአብሔር አማካኝነት በመካከላቸው የተሰራውን ድንቅ ሥራዎች ጭምር ታውቃላችሁ።

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

እናም ደግሞ የያዕቆብ ዘር ቅሪት መሆናችሁን
 ታውቃላችሁ፤ ስለዚህ ከመጀመሪያዎቹ የቃል ኪዳን
 ህዝቦች ጋር ተቆጥራችኋል፤ እናም በክርስቶስ የምታምኑ
 ከሆነ፣ እናም እርሱ በሰጠው ትእዛዝ መሰረት፣
 የእዳኛችንን ምሳሌ በመከተል መጀመሪያ በውኃ በኋላም
 በእሳትና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ የምትጠመቁ ከሆነ በፍርድ ቀን
 ለእናንተ መልካም ይሆንላችኋል። አሜን።

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the
 seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the
 people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye be-
 lieve in Christ, and are baptized, first with water,
 then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the
 example of our Savior, according to that which he
 hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the
 day of judgment. Amen.

ሞርሞን ፰

፩ እነሆ እኔ ሞሮኒ፣ የአባቴ የሞርሞንን ታሪክ እፈፅማለሁ። እነሆ፣ የምፅፋቸው ጥቂት ነገሮች ብቻ ነው ያሉኝ፣ እነዚህም ነገሮች አባቴ ያዘዘኝ ናቸው።

፪ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲህ ሆነ በከሞራ ከነበረው ታላቅና ከፍተኛ ጦርነት በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ በሃገሪቱ በሰተደቡብ በኩል የሸሹት ኔፋውያን ሁሉም እስከሚጠፉ ድረስ በላማናውያን ታድነው ነበር።

፫ እናም አባቴ ደግሞ በእነርሱ ተገደለና፣ የሕዝቤን አሳዛኝ የሆነ ታሪክ ለመጻፍ እንኳ ብቻዬን ቀረሁ። ነገር ግን፣ እነሆ እነርሱ አልፈዋል፣ እናም እኔ የአባቴን ትዕዛዝ እፈፅማለሁ። እናም ይግደሉኝ አይግደሉኝ፣ ምንም አላውቅም።

፬ ስለዚህ እፅፋለሁ እናም መዛግብቴን በመሬት ውስጥ እደብቃለሁ፤ እናም የትም መሄዴ አስፈላጊ አይደለም።

፭ እነሆ፣ አባቴ ይህን ታሪክ ፅፏል፣ ዓላማውንም ፅፏል። እናም እነሆ፣ በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ ቦታ ካገኘሁ እኔም እፅፈዋለሁ፣ ነገር ግን ቦታ አላገኘሁም፤ የብረት አፈርም የለኝም፣ ምክንያቱም ብቻዬን ነኝና። አባቴና ዘመዶቹ ሁሉ በጦርነት ተገደለዋል፤ እናም ወዳጆችም ሆኑ የምሄድበት የለኝም፤ እናም ጌታ ምን ያህል በህይወት እንድቆይ እንደሚፈቅድልኝ አላውቅም።

፮ እነሆ፣ ጌታችን እናም አዳኞችን ወደ ምድር ከመጣ አራት መቶ ዓመታት አልፈዋል።

፯ እናም እነሆ ላማናውያን ሕዝቦቹን ኔፋውያንን በሙሉ እስከሚሞቱ ድረስ ከከተማ ከተማ እንዲሁም ከቦታ ቦታ አባረሩአቸው፤ እናም ውድቀታቸውም ታላቅ ነበር፤ አዎን፣ የህዝቤ የኔፋውያን ጥፋት ታላቅና የሚያስገርም ነበር።

፰ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህንን ያደረገው የጌታ እጅ ነው። እናም ደግሞ እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን እርስ በርሳቸው በጦርነት ላይ ናቸው፤ እናም ምድሪቱ በሙሉ የማያቋርጥ ግድያና ደም መፋሰስ ነበረባት፤ እናም ማንም የጦርነቱን ፍፃሜ አያውቅም።

፱ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ ከላማናውያንና በምድሪቱ ላይ ይኖሩ ከነበሩት ሌቦች በሰተቀር ማንም ባለመኖሩ ስለእነርሱ ከዚህ በላይ የምለው የለኝም።

፲ እናም የሰዎቹ ክፋትም ታላቅ በመሆኑ ጌታ በህዝቡ መካከል እንዲቀሩ እስካልፈቀደላቸው ጊዜ ድረስ በምድሪቱ ከቀሩት ከኢየሱስ ደቀመዛሙርት በቀር እውነተኛውን እግዚአብሔር የሚያውቅ ማንም የለም፤ እናም በምድር ገፅ ላይ የት መሆናቸውንም ማንም ሰው አያውቅም።

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

፲፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ አባቴና እኔ ተመልክተናቸዋል፣ እናም እነርሱም እኛን አገልግለውናል።

፲፪ እናም ይህንን መዝገብ አግኝቶ ውሰጡ ባሉት ጉድለቶች ምክንያት ያልኮነው ከዚህ የበለጠ ታላቅ የሆኑ ነገሮችን ያውቃል። እነሆ፣ እኔ ሞሮኒ ነኝ፤ እናም የሚቻል ቢሆን ኖሮ ሁሉንም ነገር አንድ-ታውቁ አደርጋለሁ።

፲፫ እነሆ፣ ይህንን ሕዝብ በተመለከተ ንግግሬን አቆማለሁ። እኔ የሞርሞን ልጅ ነኝ፣ እናም አባቴም የኔፊ ዘር ነበር።

፲፬ እናም ለጌታ ሰል ይህንን መዝገብ የደበቅሁት እኔ ነኝ፤ በጌታ ትዕዛዝም የተነሳ ሰሌዳዎቹ ዋጋ የላቸውም። ምክንያቱም እርሱ በእውነት ማንም ቢሆን ጥቅም ያገኝበት ዘንድ አይቀበለውም ብሏልና፤ ነገር ግን መዛግብቱ ታላቅ ዋጋ አላቸው፤ እናም እንዲታወቁ የሚያደርጋቸው ቢኖር ጌታ እርሱን ይባርከዋል።

፲፭ በእግዚአብሔር ካልተሰጠው በሰተቀር ማንም ወደ ብርሃን ሊያወጣቸው ኃይል ሊኖረው አይችልም፤ ምክንያቱም በእግዚአብሔር ለክብሩ በቀናነት ይደረግ ዘንድ ወይም ለጥንቱና ለረጅም ጊዜ ለተበተኑት የጌታ የቃል ኪዳን ልጆች ደህንነት እንዲሆን ፈቃዱ ነውና።

፲፮ እናም ይህ ነገር ወደ ብርሃን እንዲመጣ የሚያደርግ እርሱ የተባረከ ነው፤ በእግዚአብሔር ቃልም መሰረት ከጨለማው ወደ ብርሃን ይመጣልና፤ እዋን ይህም ከምድር ይወጣል፣ እናም በጨለማው ውስጥም ሆኖ ያበራል፣ በሕዝቡም ይታወቃል፣ ይህም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ይደረጋል።

፲፯ እናም ሰህተት ቢኖር እነርሱም የሰው ልጆች ሰህተት ናቸው። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኛ ምንም አይነት ሰህተት አናውቅም፤ ይሁን እንጂ እግዚአብሔር ሁሉንም ነገር ያውቃል፤ ስለዚህ፣ የሚያሰኩንው ቢኖር በሲኦል እሳት አደጋ ላይ እንዳይሆን ይጠንቀቅ።

፲፰ እናም አሳዩኝ አለበለዚያ ትመታላችሁ ብሎ ለሚናገር—በጌታ የተከለከለውን እርሱ እያዘዘ መሆኑንም ይጠንቀቅ።

፲፱ እነሆም፣ በፍጥነት የሚፈረድ በእርሱም ላይ እንደዚህ በፍጥነት ይፈረድበታል፤ ምክንያቱም ደመወዙም እንደሰራው ይሆናልና፤ ስለዚህ፣ የሚማታ እርሱ በድጋሚ በጌታ ይመታል።

፳ ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍት የሚሉትን ተመልክቱ—ሰው አይምታ፣ ወይም አይፍረድ፤ ፍርድ የእኔ ናትና ይላል ጌታ፣ እናም ደግሞ በቀልም የእኔ ናት እናም እኔ እከፍለዋለሁ።

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

፳፩ እናም በጌታ ሥራ ላይና፣ የእስራኤል ቤት በሆኑት በጌታ የቃል ኪዳን ሕዝብ ላይ በቁጣ የሚናገርና ፀብን የሚያነሳ፣ እናም የጌታን ሥራ እናጠፋለን፣ ጌታም ከእስራኤል ቤት ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን እያስታውሰም—በማለት የሚናገረው እርሱ ለመቆረጥና በእሳት ላይ ለመጣል አደጋ ላይ ነው፤

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

፳፪ ምክንያቱም የጌታ ቃል ኪዳን በሙሉ እስከሚፈጸም ድረስ ዘለዓለማዊው ዓላማው ይቀጥላል።

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

፳፫ የኢሳይያስን ትንቢት መርምሩ። እነሆ፣ እኔ ልፅፋቸው አልችልም። አዎን፣ እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ ከእኔ በፊት የነበሩት ይህችን ምድር ወርሰው የነበሩት ቅዱሳን ይጮኻሉ፣ አዎን፣ ከትቢያውም እንኳን ቢሆን ወደ ጌታ ይጮኻሉ፤ እናም ጌታ ህያው እንደሆነ ከእነርሱ ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውሳል።

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

፳፬ እናም ፀሎታቸውም ስለወንድሞቻቸውም እንደሆነ ያውቃል። እናም እምነታቸውን ያውቃል፣ ምክንያቱም በሰሙ ተራሮችን ማንቀሳቀስ ይችላሉና፤ እናም በሰሙም ምድርን ማናወጥ ይቻላቸዋልና፤ እናም በቃሉ ኃይልም ወህኒዎችም ወደምድር እንዲፈርሱ አድርጓል፤ አዎን፣ የጋለው ምድጃ እንኳ ሊጎዳቸው አልተቻለውም፤ የዱር አራዊትም ሆኑ መርዛማም እባቦች በቃሉ ኃይል ሊጎዱቸው አልቻሉም።

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ፀሎታቸውም ደግሞ ጌታ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንዲያመጣ ለፈቀደለት ለእርሱ ጥቅም ነበር።

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

፳፮ እናም ማንም ሰው እነዚህ ነገሮች አይመጡም በማለት ሊናገር አይገባውም፣ በእርግጥ ይመጣሉና፣ ጌታ ተናግሮታልና፤ በጌታ እጅ ከመሬት ውስጥ ይወጣሉ፣ እናም ማንም ሊገታው አይቻለውም፤ ታዕምራቶች ቆመዋል በሚባልበትም በዚያን ቀን ይመጣል፤ እናም ይህም እንደ ሰው ከሞት እንደሚናገር አይነት ሆኖ ይመጣል።

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

፳፯ እናም በምስጢራዊው ሴራዎች እና በጨለማው ስራዎች የተነሳ የቅዱሳንም ደም ወደ ጌታ በሚጮሁበት በዚያን ቀን ይመጣል።

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

፳፰ አዎን፣ የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ሲካድና፣ ቤተክርስቲያኖችም ሲረክሱ፣ እናም በልባቸው ኩራት በሚወጡበት ቀን ይመጣል፤ አዎን፣ የቤተክርስቲያን መሪዎችና መምህራን በልባቸው ኩራት በሚወጡበት፣ የቤተክርስቲያናቸው በሆኑት ሰዎች ላይ በሚመቀኙበትም ቀን ይመጣል።

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

፳፱ አዎን፣ በዚያን ቀን በባዕድ ምድር ስለ እሳትና፣ ስለጎይሎች ነፋስ፣ እናም ስለ ጭሱ ጭጋግ በሚወራበት ጊዜ ይመጣል።

፴ እናም በተለያዩ ቦታዎችም ደግሞ ስለ ጦርነቶች፣ የጦርነት ወራሮች እናም የምድር መናወጥ ይሰማሉ።

፴፩ አዎን፣ በምድር ገጽ ላይ ታላቅ መበከል በሚሆንበት ቀን ይመጣል፤ በዚያን ጊዜም ግድያና፣ ዝርፊያና፣ ሀሰት፣ እናም ማጭበርበርና፣ ዝሙት፣ እናም ሁሉም ዓይነት እርኩስቶች ይኖራሉ፤ በዚያም ጊዜ ብዙዎችም እንዲህ ይላሉ፡ ይህንን አድርጉ ወይም ያንኛውን አድርጉ ምንም አይደለም፣ ምክንያቱም እንደነዚህ ዓይነቶቹን በመጨረሻው ቀን ጌታ ይደግፋቸዋልና። ነገር ግን ለእነዚህ አይነቶች ወዮላቸው፣ በመራራ መርዝ እና በዓመፅ እስራት ውስጥ ናቸውና።

፴፪ አዎን፣ በዚያን ቀን፣ ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እናም በገንዘባችሁም ኃጢአታችሁ ይቅር ይባልላችኋል፣ የሚሉ ቤተክርስቲያናት የሚሰሩበት ቀን ይመጣል።

፴፫ እናንተ ክፉና ጠማሞች እናም አንገተ ደንዳና የሆናችሁ ህዝቦች ሆይ፣ ለራሳችሁ ጥቅም ለማግኘት ስትሉ ቤተክርስቲያንን ለምን ሠራችሁ? በነፍሳችሁ ላይ ኩነትን ያመጣባችሁ ዘንድ ቅዱስ የሆነውን የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል ለምን ቀየራችሁት? እነሆ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ራዕይ ላይ ተሰፋ አድርጉ፤ እነሆም በዚያን ቀንም እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ የሚፈጸሙበት ጊዜ ይመጣል።

፴፬ እነሆ፣ ጌታ በዚያን ቀን እነዚህ ነገሮች በመካከላችሁ በሚመጡበት ጊዜ በቅርቡ መምጣት ስላለባቸው ታላቅ እና አስገራሚ ነገሮች ለእኔ እሳይቶኛል።

፴፭ እነሆ፣ እናንተ እዚህ እንዳላችሁ አድርጌ እናገራችኋለሁ፣ እናም እናንተ ግን የላችሁም። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እናንተን አሳይቶኛል፣ እናም እኔም ስራችሁን አውቃለሁ።

፴፮ እናም በልባችሁ ኩራት እንደምትራመዱ አውቃለሁ፤ እናም ከጥቂቶች በስተቀር ያማሩ ልብሶችን በመልበስ፣ በመቅናትና፣ በፀብ፣ እናም በተንኮልና፣ በስቃይ፣ እንዲሁም በሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋቶች በመፈፀም ራሳቸውን በልባቸው ኩራት ከፍ የማያደርጉ የሉም። በልባችሁ ኩራት የተነሳ ቤተክርስቲያኖቻችሁ፣ አዎን፣ እያንዳንዱም የተበከለ ሆኗልና።

፴፯ እነሆም፣ እናንተ ገንዘብና፣ ንብረቶቻችሁን፣ እናም ያማሩ ልብሶቻችሁንና፣ የቤተክርስቲያኖቻችሁን ማሰባጠን ከድሆች፣ እናም ከተቸገሩት፣ ከታመሙትና ከሚሰቃዩት በላይ ትወዳላችሁ።

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

፴፰ ራሳችሁን ለማይረባ ነገር የሸጣችሁ እናንተ የተበላሻችሁ፣ እናንተ ግብዞች፣ እናንት መምህራን ሆይ፣ ለምን ቅዱስ የሆነውን የእግዚአብሔርን ቤተክርስቲያን ትበክሉታላችሁ? የክርስቶስን ስም በእራሳቸው ላይ ለመውሰድ ለምን ታፍራላችሁ? በዓለም ክብር የተነሳ ከማይጠፋው ስቃይ የበለጠ መጨረሻ የሌለው ደስታ ዋጋው ትልቅ መሆኑን ለምን አታሰቡም?

፴፱ እናም የተራቡና፣ የተቸገሩ፣ እናም የታረዙና፣ የታመሙ፣ እንዲሁም ስቃይ ያለባቸው በእናንተ በኩል ሳታስተውሏቸው እንዲያልፉ እየፈቀዱችሁ ህይወት በሌላቸው ነገሮች ለምን ራሳችሁን ታስጌጣላችሁ?

፵ አዎን፣ ጥቅምን ለማግኘትና ባሏ የሞተባት ሴት በጌታ ፊት እንድታዝን፣ እናም ደግሞ አሳዳጊ የሌላቸው በጌታ ፊት እንዲያዝኑና፣ ደግሞ በእናንተ ላይም ለበቀል ከምድር የአባቶቻቸውና የባሎቻቸው ደም ወደ ጌታ እንዲጮህ ሚስጢራዊውን እርኩስት ለምን ትሰራላችሁ?

፵፩ እነሆ፣ የበቀል ጎራዴ በላያችሁ ላይ ያንዣብባል፣ እናም የፃድቃኖችን ደም በበቀል በእናንተ ላይ የሚመልሰበት ጊዜ ወዲያው ይመጣል፣ ከዚህም በኋላ ጨኸታቸውን መቋቋም አይችሉምና።

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

ሞርሞን ፱

፩ እናም አሁን፣ ደግሞ በክርስቶስ ስለሚገኝኩት እናገራለሁ።

፪ እነሆ፣ በመገባትህ ቀን ታምናላችሁ—እነሆ፣ ጌታ ሲመጣ፣ አዎን በዚያ፣ በታላቁ ቀን መሬት እንደ ጥቅልል በምትጠቀለልበት ጊዜ እናም አለቶችም በታላቅ ሙቀት በሚቀልጡበት ጊዜ፣ አዎን፣ በዚያ ታላቅ ቀን በእግዚአብሔር በግ ፊት በምትቆሙ ጊዜ— እግዚአብሔር የለም ትላላችሁን?

፫ ክርስቶስን መካዳችሁን ትቀጥሉበታላችሁ፣ ወይንም የእግዚአብሔርን በግ ለማየት ይቻላችኋል? ጥፋታችሁን እያወቃችሁ ከእርሱ ጋር ለመኖር ታስባላችሁን? ህጉን በማንኛውም እንደጣሳችሁ ነፍሳችሁ አውቃ በምትቆስል ጊዜ ከቅዱሱ ጋር በመኖር ደስተኛ መሆን እንደምትችሉ ታስባላችሁን?

፬ እነሆ፣ የተበከለ ህሊና በፊቱ እያላችሁ ከቅዱስ እና ፍትህ እግዚአብሔር ጋር መኖር ከተኮነኩት ነፍሳት ጋር በሲኦል ከመኖር በላይ አስቃቂ ነው እላችኋለሁ።

፭ እነሆም፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ራቁታችሁን መሆናችሁን፣ እናም ደግሞ የእግዚአብሔር ክብርና፣ የእየሱስ ክርስቶስ ቅዱስነት ለማየት በምትመጡበት ጊዜ፣ በእናንተ ላይ የማይጠፋን እሳት ያቀጣጥላል።

፮ እናንተ የማታምኑ ሆይ፣ ወደ ጌታ ተመለሱ፤ ምናልባት በመጨረሻውና በዚያ በታላቁ ቀን እንከን የሌላችሁ፣ ንፁህ፣ መልካም፣ እናም በበጎ ደም የፀዳችሁ ሆናችሁ ትገኙ ዘንድ ወደ አብ በኢየሱስ ስም በኃይል ጩሁ።

፯ እናም እናንተ የእግዚአብሔርን ራዕይ ለካዳችሁና፣ እንርሱ ተፈፀመዋል፣ ራዕዮች፣ ትንቢቶች፣ ሰጦታዎችም ሆነ፣ መፈወስ፣ እናም በልሳን መናገርም ሆነ፣ በልሳን የሚናገሩትን መተርጎም ቆሟል የምትሉትን በድጋሚ እናገራችኋለሁ፤

፰ እነሆ እኔ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚክድ የክርስቶስን ወንጌል እያውቅም፣ አዎን፣ ቅዱሳን መጽሐፍትንም አላነበበም፣ ይህም ቢሆን እንኳን አልተረዱትም።

፱ እግዚአብሔር ትናንትና፣ ዛሬም እንዲሁም ለዘለዓለም እንደ እንደሆነ እናም በእርሱም የመቀያየርም ሆነ የመለወጥ ጥላ አለመኖሩን አላነበብንምን?

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

፲ እናም አሁን፣ ለራሳችሁ የሚለዋወጥና በእርሱም የመለዋወጥ ጥላ ያለበትን አምላክ የምታሰቡ ከሆነ፣ የተአምራት አምላክ ያልሆነውን አምላክ ለራሳችሁ አሰባችኋል።

፲፩ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ለእናንተም የተአምራት አምላክ፣ እንዲሁም የአብርሃምን አምላክ፣ እናም የይስሃቅን አምላክ፣ እናም የያዕቆብን አምላክን አሳያችኋለሁ፤ እርሱም ሰማይና ምድርን፣ እናም በውስጡም ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ የፈጠረ አምላክ ነው።

፲፪ እነሆ፣ እርሱ አዳምን ፈጠረና፣ በአዳም ምክንያት የሰው ልጅ ውድቀት መጣ። እናም በሰው ልጅ መውደቅ የተነሳ፣ አብና ወልድ የሆነው ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ መጣ፤ እናም በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ አማካኝነትም ለሰው ልጅ ቤዛነት መጣ።

፲፫ እናም በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ አማካኝነት ለሰዎች ቤዛነት በመምጣቱ፣ ወደ ጌታም ፊት ተመልሰዋል፤ አዎን፣ ሁሉም ሰዎች የዳኑበት በዚህም ነው፣ የክርስቶስ ሞት ትንሣኤን አመጣ፣ ይህም መጨረሻ ከሌለው እንቅልፍ ቤዛነት አመጣ፣ መለከቱ ሲነፋ ሰዎች ሁሉ ከዚህ እንቅልፍ በእግዚአብሔር ኃይል ይነቃሉ፣ እናም ትልልቆችም ሆኑ ትንንሾች የሆኑት ይመጣሉ፣ እናም ዘላለማዊ ከሆነው የሞት ሰንሰለት በመዳንና በመፈታት፣ ይህም ሞት ጊዜአዊው ሞት ነው፣ በፍርድ ወንበር ፊት ሁሉም ይቆማሉ።

፲፬ እናም የቅዱሱ ፍርድ በእነርሱ ላይ ይመጣል፤ ንፁህ ያልሆነውም አሁን ንፁህ ሳይሆን የሚቀርበት ጊዜ ይመጣል፤ እናም ፃድቅ የሆነው አሁንም ፃድቅ ይሆናል፤ ደስተኛ የነበረውም አሁን ደስተኛ ይሆናል፤ እንዲሁም ደስተኛ ያልነበረው አሁንም ደስተኛ አይሆንም።

፲፭ እናም አሁን፣ እናንተ ለራሳችሁ ምንም ተአምራትን መሰራት የማይችል አምላክን ያሰባችሁ ሁሉ፣ እንዲህ ስል አጠይቃችኋለሁ። እኔ የተናገርኳቸው እነዚህ ነገሮች ሁሉ አልፈዋልን? መጨረሻው መጥቷልን? እነሆ አይደለም አላችኋለሁ፤ እናም እግዚአብሔር የተአምራት አምላክ መሆኑን አላቆመም።

፲፮ እነሆ፣ እግዚአብሔር የሰራቸው በዐይናችን ድንቅ አይደሉምን? አዎን፣ እናም ድንቅ የሆነውን የእግዚአብሔር ሥራዎች የሚገባው ማነው?

፲፯ በቃሉ ሰማይና ምድር መፈጠሩ፤ እናም ቃሉ ባለው ኃይል የሰው ልጅ ከመሬት አፈር መፈጠሩ፤ እናም በቃሉ ኃይል ተአምራት መሠራቱ ተአምር አይደለም የሚል ማነው?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

፲፰ እናም ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ብዙ ተአምራትን አልሰራም የሚለው ማነው? እናም በሐዋርያቶቹ እጅ ብዙ ተአምራት ተሰርተው ነበር።

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

፲፱ እናም በዚያ ጊዜ ተአምራቶች ተደርገው ከሆነ፣ እግዚአብሔርስ የተአምራት አምላክ መሆኑን ለምን ያቆማል እናም ግን የሚይለው ለምላክ ሊሆን ይችላል? እንዲሁም እነሆ እላችኋለሁ እርሱ አይለውጥም፣ የሚለው ለምን ከሆነ አምላክነቱን ያቆማል፣ እናም አምላክነቱን አያቆምም፣ የተአምራትም አምላክ ነው።

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

፳ እናም በሰው ልጆች መካከል ተአምራት መሰራቱን ያቆመበት ምክንያት እነርሱ እምነት አጥተው በመመንመናቸው፣ እናም ከትክክለኛው መንገድ በመራቃቸውና፣ የሚያምኑበትን አምላክ ባለማወቃቸው ነው።

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

፳፩ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ ምንም ባለመጠራጠር በክርስቶስ የሚያምን፣ በክርስቶስ ስም አብን ማንኛውንም ነገር ከጠየቀ ለእርሱ ይሰጠዋል፤ እናም ይህ ቃል ኪዳን ለሁሉም፣ እንዲሁም እስከ አለም ዳርቻ እንኳን ነው።

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

፳፪ እነሆም የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እስከምፅአቱ ለሚቆዩትም ደቀ መዛሙርቱ፣ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞ ለሁሉም ደቀመዛሙርት ህዝቡ እየሰሙት እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ ወደ ዓለም ሁሉ ሂዱና፣ ለፍጥረት ሁሉ ወንጌልን ሰበኩ።

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

፳፫ እናም ያመነና የተጠመቀም ይድናል፤ ያላመነ ግን ይኮነናል፤

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

፳፬ እናም ያመኑትን እነዚህ ምልክቶች ይከተሏቸዋል— በሰሜ አጋንንትን ያወጣሉ፤ በአዲስ ልሳንም ይናገራሉ፤ መርዛማ እባቦችንም ያነሳሉ፤ እናም የሚገድልን ነገር ቢጠጡም አይጎዳቸውም፤ እጃቸውን በህመምተኞች ላይ ይጭናሉና ያድኗቸዋል፤

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

፳፭ እናም ምንም ሳይጠራጠር በሰሜ የሚያምን ቢኖር፣ ለእርሱ እስከ ዓለም ዳርቻ ቃሉን ሁሉ ማረጋገጫ አደርግለታለሁ።

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

፳፮ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እነሆ፣ የጌታን ሥራ የሚቃወም ማን ነው? ንግግሩን ለየሚክድ ማን ነው? ሁሉን ቻይ በሆነው በጌታ ኃይል ላይ የሚነሳስ ማን ነው? የጌታን ሥራ የሚንቅ ማን ነው? የክርስቶስን ልጆች የሚንቅ ማን ነው? እነሆ፣ የጌታን ሥራ የምትንቁ ሁሉ፣ ትገረማላችሁ እናም ትጠፋላችሁ።

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

፳፯ እቤቱ አትናቁና አትገረሙ፤ ነገር ግን የጌታን ቃላት እድምጡት፤ እናም፣ በሰሙም የምትፈልጉትን ነገር አብን በኢየሱስ ስም ጠይቁት። አትጠራጠሩ፣ ነገር ግን የምታምኑ ሁኑ፣ በጥንት ጊዜ እንደነበሩት ሰዎች በእምነት ጀምሩ፤ እናም በሙሉ ልባችሁ ሆናችሁ ወደ ጌታ ኑ፤ እናም በፍርሃትና በመንቀጥቀጥ በፊቱ የራሳችሁን መዳን ፈፀሙ።

፳፰ በሙከራ ጊዜያችሁም ብልህ ሁኑ፤ የጎደፉ ነገሮችን በሙሉ ከላያችሁ ላይ አራግፉ፤ ለምቶቶቻችሁ ማሰፈፀሚያ በክፉ አትጠይቁ፤ ነገር ግን ወደ ፈተና እንዳትገቡ ዘንድ፣ ነገር ግን እናንተ እውነተኛውን እናም ህያውን እግዚአብሔር ታገለግሉ ዘንድ በማይነቃነቀው ፅናታችሁ ጠይቁ።

፳፱ ብቁ ሳትሆኑ እንዳትጠመቁም ተጠንቀቁ፤ የክርስቶስንም ቅዱስ ቁርባን ብቁ ሳትሆኑ ላለመቁረስ ተጠንቀቁ፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉንም ነገሮች ስታደርጉ በብቁነት ማድረጋችሁን ተመልከቱ፤ ስታደርጉም በህያው እግዚአብሔር ልጅ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስም አድርጉት፤ እናም ይህን ካደረጋችሁና፣ እስከመጨረሻ ፅኑ ከሆናችሁ በምንም ዓይነት እናንተ አትጣሉም።

፴ እነሆ፣ ሙታን ሆኜ እንደምናገረው እናገራችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እናንተ የእኔ ቃል እንደሚኖራችሁ አውቃለሁ።

፴፩ በጉድለቶቼ ምክንያት አትኮንኑኝ፣ አባቴንም በጉድለቶቼ አትኮንኑት፣ ከእርሱም በፊት ሲጽፉ የነበሩትንም አትኮንኑኦቻቸው፤ ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔር እኛ ከነበርነው የበለጠ ብልህ ለመሆን ትማሩ ዘንድ ፍፁም አለመሆናችንን ስለገለፀላችሁ ምስጋና አቅርቦለት እንጂ።

፴፪ እናም አሁን፣ እነሆ፣ በመካከላችን በንግግራችን ስርዐት መሰረት የተላለፉልንና የቀየርናቸው የተለወጡ ግብፃውያን ተብለው በሚጠሩት ፊደላት እንደችሎታችን ይህንን መዝገብ ፅፈናል።

፴፫ እናም ስሌዳዎቻችን በበቂ ሁኔታ ትልቅ ቢሆኑ ኖሮ በዕብራውያን እንፅፈው ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ዕብራውያንም ደግሞ በእኛ ተለውጧል፤ እናም በዕብራውያን መፃፍ ብንችል ኖሮ፣ እነሆ፣ በመዛግብቶቻችን ውስጥ ስህተት አታገኙም ነበር።

፴፬ ነገር ግን ጌታ የፃፍናቸውን ነገሮች ያውቃል፣ እናም ደግሞ ማንም ሌላ ሰው ቋንቋችንን እያውቅም፤ እናም ምክንያቱም ማንም ሌላ ሰው ቋንቋችንን ባለማወቁ፣ ስለዚህ እርሱም የሚተረጉምበትን መንገድ አዘጋጅቷል።

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

፲፭ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች እምነት አጥተው የመነመኑትን ወንድሞቻችንን ደም ከልብሶቻችን ላይ እናነፃ ዘንድ የተፃፉ ናቸው።

፲፮ እናም እነሆ፣ ወንድሞቻችንን በተመለከተ እነዚህን ነገሮች፣ አዎን፣ ክርስቶስን ወደማወቅ ይመለሱ ዘንድ፣ የፈለግናቸው በምድሪቱ ይኖሩ በነበሩት ቅዱሳን ሁሉ ፀሎት መሰረት ነው።

፲፯ እናም ጌታ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስም ፀሎታቸው እንደ እምነታቸው እንዲመለስላቸው ያድርግ፤ እግዚአብሔር አብም ከእስራኤል ቤት ጋር የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ያስታውስ፤ እናም በክርስቶስ ስም ባላቸው እምነት በኩል ለዘላለም ይባርካቸው። አሜን።

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

መፅሐፈ ኤተር

በንጉሥ ሞዛያ ዘመን በሊምሂ ሰዎች ከተገኙት ከሃያ አራቱ ሠሌዳዎች ላይ የተወሰደ የያሬዳውያን ታሪክ።

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiah.

ኤተር ፩

፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እኔ ሞሮኒ፣ ከዚህች ሃገር ከሰሜን በኩል በጌታ እጅ ጠፍተው የነበሩትን የጥንት ሰዎች ታሪክ መስጠቴን አቀጥላለሁ።

፪ እናም መፅሐፈ ኤተር ከተባለው በሊምሂ ሰዎች ከተገኘው ከሃያ አራተኛው ሠሌዳ ላይ የራሴን ዘገባ እወስዳለሁ።

፫ እናም ስለዓለም መፈጠር የሚያውራው፣ እናም ደግሞ ስለአዳም፣ እናም ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከ ታላቁ ግንብ ድረስ ያለው ታሪክ፣ እናም እስከዚያም ጊዜ ድረስ በሰው ልጆች መካከል የሆኑት ማናቸውንም ነገሮች የያዘው የዚህ መዝገብ የመጀመሪያ ክፍል እኔ እንደሞገሞተው በእይሁዶች መካከል ይገኛል—

፬ ስለዚህ ከአዳም ዘመን ጀምሮ እስከዚያን ጊዜ የተከናወኑትን ነገሮች አልፎም፤ ነገር ግን በሰሌዳዎቹ ላይ አሉ፤ እናም እነርሱን ያገኘ ታሪኩን በሙሉ ያውቅ ዘንድ ኃይል ይኖረዋል።

፭ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ እኔ ታሪኩን በሙሉ አልናገርም፣ ነገር ግን ከግንብ ጀምሮ እስከጠፋበት ጊዜ ድረስ ያለውን የታሪክ ክፍል ብቻ አሰጣለሁ።

፮ እናም በዚህ መንገድ ዘገባውን አሰጣለሁ። ይህንን ታሪክ የፃፈው ኤተር ነበር፣ እናም እርሱም የቆሪያንቶር ወገን ነበር።

፯ ቆሪያንቶር የሞሮን ልጅ ነበር።

፰ እና ሞሮንም የኤተም ልጅ ነበር።

፱ እናም ኤተም የአሃህ ልጅ ነበር።

፲ አሃህ የሴት ልጅ ነበር።

፲፩ እና ሴት የሺብሎን ልጅ ነበር።

፲፪ እና ሺብሎን የቆም ልጅ ነበር።

፲፫ እና ቆም የቆሪያንቶም ልጅ ነበር።

፲፬ እና ቆሪያንቶምም የአምኒጋዳ ልጅ ነበር።

፲፭ እና አምኒጋዳ የአሮን ልጅ ነበር።

፲፮ እና አሮን የሔርቶም ልጅ የነበረው የሔት ወገን ነበር።

፲፯ እና ሔርቶም የሊብ ልጅ ነበር።

Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limbi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblön.

And Shiblön was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

፲፰ እና ሊብ የኪሽ ልጅ ነበር።
 ፲፱ እና ኪሽም የቆሮም ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳ ቆሮም የሌዊ ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፩ እና ሌዊ የቂም ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፪ እና ቂም የሞሪያንተን ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፫ እና ሞሪያንተን የሪፕላኪሽ ወገን ነበር።
 ፳፬ እና ሪፕላኪሽ የሼዝ ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፭ እና ሼዝ የሔት ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፮ እና ሔት የቆም ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፯ እና ቆም የቆሪያንቴም ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፰ እና ቆሪያንቴም የኤመር ልጅ ነበር።
 ፳፱ እና ኤመር የኦመር ልጅ ነበር።
 ፴ እና ኦመር የሹል ልጅ ነበር።
 ፴፩ እና ሹል የቂብ ልጅ ነበር።
 ፴፪ እናም ቂብም የያሬድ ልጅ የነበረው የኦሪያ ልጅ ነበር።

And Lib was the son of Kish.
 And Kish was the son of Corom.
 And Corom was the son of Levi.
 And Levi was the son of Kim.
 And Kim was the son of Morianton.
 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.
 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
 And Shez was the son of Heth.
 And Heth was the son of Com.
 And Com was the son of Coriantum.
 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
 And Emer was the son of Omer.
 And Omer was the son of Shule.
 And Shule was the son of Kib.
 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

፴፫ ጌታ የህዝቡን ቋንቋ በቀላቀለበት እናም በምድሪቱ ገፅ ሁሉ ላይም እንዲሠራጩ በቁጣው በማለ ጊዜ ከታላቁ ግንብ ያሬድ ከወንድሞቹ፣ እናም ከቤተሰቦቹ ጋር በመሆን ከሌሎች እና ከቤታሰቦቻቸው ጋር መጣ፣ እናም እንደጌታ ቃልም ህዝቡ ተበትኖ ነበር።

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

፴፬ እናም የያሬድ ወንድም ትልቅ እናም ኃያል ሰው በመሆኑ፣ እናም በጌታም በይበልጥ የሚወደድ በመሆኑ፣ ያሬድ ወንድሙም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፣ የተናገረውንም እንዳንረዳ እርሱ የምንናገረውን እንዳይቀላቅልብን ወደ ጌታ ጩህ።

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ወደ ጌታ ጩኸ፣ እናም ጌታም ለያሬድ አዘነለት፤ ስለዚህ የያሬድን ቋንቋ አልቀላቀለበትም፤ እናም የያሬድና የወንድሙ ቋንቋ አልተቀላቀለባቸውም።

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

፴፮ ከዚያም ያሬድ ለወንድሙ እንዲህ አለ፣ እናም ከወዳጆቻችንም ላይ ቁጣውን ይመልስ ዘንድ ቋንቋቸውን እንዳይቀላቅልባቸው በድጋሚ ወደ ጌታ ጩህ።

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ወደ ጌታ ጩኸ፣ እናም ጌታ ለወዳጆቹ እናም ደግሞ ለቤተሰቦቹ ራራላቸው፣ ስለዚህ ቋንቋቸውን አልቀላቀለባቸውም።

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

፴፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያሬድ ለወንድሙ በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረ፤ ሂድ እናም ጌታ ከምድሪቱ ወዴት እንደሚያስወጣን ጠይቀው፤ እናም ከምድሪቱ የሚያስወጣን ከሆነ ወዴት መሄድ እንዳለብን ወደ እርሱ ጨህ። እናም ምናልባት ከምድር ሁሉ ወደ ተመረጠችው ስፍራ ጌታ እንደሚወስድን ማን ያውቃል? እናም እንደዚያ የሚሆን ቢሆን ለውርሳችን እንቀበለው ዘንድ ለጌታ ታማኞች እንሁን።

፴፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በያሬድ አንደበት በተነገረው መሰረት የያሬድ ወንድም ወደ ጌታ ጮኸ።

፵ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ የያሬድን ወንድም ሰማው፤ እናም ለእርሱም አዘነለት፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፤

፵፩ ሂድ እናም መንጋዎቻችሁን ሴት እናም ወንድ የሆኑትን ከሁሉም ዓይነት በአንድ ላይ ሰብሰብ፤ እናም ደግሞ በምድር ላይ ካሉት ዘር ፍሬዎች ከሁሉም ዓይነት ያሉትን፤ እናም ቤታሰቦችህን፤ እናም ደግሞ ወንድምህን ያሬድ እና ቤተሰቦን፤ እናም ደግሞ ወዳጆችህን እና ቤተሰቦቻቸውን፤ እናም የያሬድን ወዳጆች እናም ቤተሰቦች በሙሉ በአንድነት ሰብሰብ።

፵፪ እናም ይህንን በምታደርግበት ጊዜ ከፊታቸው በመሆን በሰተሰሜን ወዳለው ሸለቆ አብረሃቸው ትጓዛለህ። እናም እዚያ ቦታም አገኝህለህ፤ እናም ከምድሪቱ ሁሉ በላይ ወደ ተመረጠችው ስፍራም በምትሄድበትም ጊዜ ከፊትህ እሄዳለሁ።

፵፫ እናም እዚያ አንተንና ዘርችህን እባርካለሁ፤ እናም ከዘርችህም፤ እናም ከወንድምህ ዘር፤ እናም ከአንተ ጋር ከሚሄዱትም፤ ለራሴ ታላቅ ሀገር አስነሳለሁ። እናም ከምድር ገፅ ላይ ሁሉ ከአንተ ዘር ለራሴ ካበዛኋቸው የበለጠ ታላቅ ሀገር አይኖርም። እናም ይህንንም አደርገልሃለሁ ምክንያቱም ለነዚህ ለረጅም ጊዜያት ወደ እኔ ስለጮህክ ነው።

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

ኤተር ፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሴት እናም ወንድ ከሆኑት ከሁሉም ዓይነት በአንድ ላይ ከሰበሰቧቸው ከመንጋዎቻቸው ጋር ያራድ እና ወንድሙ፣ እናም ቤተሰቦቻቸው፣ እናም ደግሞ የያሬድ ወዳጆች፣ እናም ወንድሞቹ እና የእርሱ ቤተሰቦች፣ በሽለቆው በሰተሰሜን በኩል ሄዱ፤ (እና ሽለቆውም በጎያሉ አዳኝ ስም ናምሩድ ተብሎ ይጠራ ነበር)።

፪ እናም ደግሞ ወጥመድ ዘረጉ እናም የሰማይ አዕዋፋትን ያዙ፤ እናም መንጠቆአቸውን ደግሞ አዘጋጁ፣ በእነዚህም የውሀዎችን ዓሣ ተሸክሙ።

፫ እናም እነርሱ ደግሞ በትርጉም የንብ ቀፎ የሚባለውን ደዘረት ተሸክመው ነበር፤ እናም የንብ መንጋዎችን እናም በምድር ላይ ያሉትን ነገሮች ሁሉ፣ የሁሉም አይነት ዘሮችን እንደዚህ ተሸክመው ነበር።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወደ ናምሩድ ሽለቆ በወረዱ ጊዜ ጌታ መጣ እናም ከያሬድ ወንድም ጋር ተነጋገረ፤ እናም እርሱ በደመና ውስጥ ነበር፣ እናም የያሬድ ወንድምም አላየውም።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም ከዚህ በፊት ማንም ሰው ስፍርበት ወዳልነበረበት ሥፍራ ወደ ምድረበዳው እንዲሄዱ አዘዛቸው፤ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም መራቸው፤ እናም በደመና ውስጥ ቆሞ እነጋገራቸው፣ እናም ወዳት መሔድ እንዳለባቸውም አቅጣጫውን አሳያቸው።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድረበዳው ውስጥ ተጓዙ፣ እናም ያለማቋረጥም በጌታ እጅ በመመራት፣ ብዙ ውሀዎችን ያቋረጡበትን ጀልባ ሰሩ።

፯ እናም ጌታ ከባህሩ ባሻገር ወዳለው ምድረበዳ እንዲቆሙ አልፈቀደላቸውም፣ ነገር ግን ወደ ቃል ኪዳን ምድር እንዲመጡ ይፈልግ ነበር፤ ምድሪቷም ከሌሎች ቦታዎች በላይ የተመረጠች ነበረች፤ ጌታ አምላክም ፃድቅ ለሆኑ ሰዎች ያስቀመጣት ነበረች።

፰ እናም ይህችን የቃል ኪዳን ምድር የራሱ ያደረገ ከዚያን ጊዜ ጀምሮ እስከዘላለም እውነተኛ እናም አንድ የሆነውን አምላክ ማገልገል እንዳለበት ለያሬድ ወንድም በቁጣው ማለላት፤ አለበለዚያ የቁጣው ሙላት በደረሰ ጊዜ እነርሱ ይወገዳሉ።

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

፱ እናም እንግዲህ፤ ይህችን ምድር በተመለከተ የቃል ኪዳን ምድር ስለመሆን የእግዚአብሔርን ድንጋጌ ለመመልከት ይቻላል፤ እናም ማንም ይህችን ምድር የራሱ ያደረገ ሀገር እግዚአብሔርን ያገለግላል፤ አለበለዚያ የቁጣው ሙሉት በእነርሱ ላይ በሆነ ጊዜ ይወገዳሉ። እናም በክፋት በተሞሉ ጊዜም የቁጣው መዓት በእነርሱ ላይ ይሆናል።

፲ እነሆም፣ ይህች ምድር ከሌሎች ምድሮች ሁሉ በላይ የተመረጠች ናት፤ ስለዚህ የያዛት ሁሉ እግዚአብሔርን ያገለግላል አለበለዚያ ይወገዳል፤ ምክንያቱም ይህ ዘላለማዊ የሆነ የእግዚአብሔር ድንጋጌ ነው። እናም ምድሪቱ በሰው ልጆች መካከል በክፋት በተሞላች ጊዜ ነው የሚወገዱት።

፲፩ እናም እህዛብ ሆይ ፍፃሜው እስከሚደርስ ንሰሃ እንድትገቡ እናም ክፋታችሁን ታቆሙ ዘንድ፤ ስለዚህ የምድሪቱ ነዋሪዎች ከዚህ ቀደም እንዳደረጉት የእግዚአብሔር ቁጣ ሙሉን በራሳችሁ ላይ እንዳይመጣ የእግዚአብሔርን ድንጋጌ ታውቁ ዘንድ ይህ ለእናንተ ይመጣል—

፲፪ እነሆ፣ ይህች የተመረጠች ምድር ናት፤ እናም በጸፍናቸው ነገሮች የተገለጸውን የምድሪቷን አምላክ እየሱስ ክርስቶስን ካገለገሉ፣ ምድሪቷን የያዘ ማንኛውም ሀገር ከባርነት እናም ከምርኮ፣ እናም ከሰማይ በታች ካሉት ሌሎች ሀገሮች ነፃ ይሆናል።

፲፫ እናም እንግዲህ ታሪኬን እቀጥላለሁ፤ እነሆም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም ያሬድን፣ እና ወንድሙን ምድሪቷን ወደ ከፈለው ወደ ታላቁ ባሕር አመጣቸው። እናም ወደ ባሕሩም በመጡ ጊዜ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤ እናም የቦታውን ሥም ሞሪያንኩመር ብለው ጠሩት፤ እናም በድንኳኑ ኖሩ፣ እናም ለአራት ዓመታት ያህልም በባህሩ ዳርቻ በድንኳን ኖሩ።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በአራተኛው ዓመት መጨረሻ ጌታ በድጋሚ ወደ ያሬድ ወንድም መጣ፣ እናም በዳመናው ውስጥ ቆሞ ከእርሱ ጋር ተነጋገረ። እናም ጌታም ለሦስት ሰዓታት ያህል ከያሬድ ወንድም ጋር ተነጋገረ፣ እናም የጌታን ሥም ለመጥራት ባለማስታወሱ ገሰጸው።

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

፲፮ እናም የያሬድ ወንድም ለሰራው ክፋት ንስሃ ገባ፤ እናም ከእርሱ ጋር ለነበሩት ወንድሞቹ ሲል የጌታን ሥም ጠራ። እናም ጌታ እንዲህ አለው፦ አንተን እናም ወንድሞችህን ስለኃጢአታቸው ይቅር እላቸዋለሁ፤ ነገር ግን ከእንግዲህ ኃጢአት አትሰራ፤ መንፈሴ ሁል ጊዜ ከሰዎች ጋር እንደማይሆንም አስታውስ፤ ስለዚህ እስከምትበሰል ኃጢአት ከሰራህ ከጌታ ፊት ተለይተህ ትጠፋለህ። እናም ውርስ በምሰጥህ ምድር ላይ ያሉኝ ሀሳቦች እነዚህ ናቸው፤ ምክንያቱም ይህች ከሌሎች ምድሮች ሁሉ በላይ የተመረጠች ምድር ናትና።

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

፲፬ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ አለ፦ ሂድ እናም ከዚህ በፊት እንደሰራኸው አይነት ጀልባን ሥራ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቹ ወደሥራቸው ሔዱ፤ እናም ጌታ እንደዘዛቸው ቀደም ሲል እንደሰሩት አድርገው ጀልባዎችን ሰሩ። እናም ትንንሽ ነበሩ፤ እናም ወፍ በውሃ ላይ እንደሚቀለው ያህል እነርሱም በውሃ ላይ ቀላል ነበሩ።

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

፲፯ እናም እነዚህም በጣም ጥብቅ ሆነው ተሰርተዋል፤ እንዲሁም ልክ እንደ ሣህን ውሃ ለመያዝ ይችሉ ነበር፤ እናም ሥራቸውም ልክ እንደሳህን የጠበቀ ነበር፤ እናም ጎሮቹም እንደሳህን የጠበቀ ነበሩ፤ እናም ጫፎቹም የሾሉ ነበሩ፤ እናም ላዩ እንደሳህን የጠበቀ ነበር፤ እናም እርዝመቱም የዛፍ እርዝማኔን ያክል ነበር፤ እናም መዝጊያው በሚዘጋበት ጊዜም እንደሳህን የጠበቀ ነበር።

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ወደ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ፦ ጌታ ሆይ ያዘዝከኝን ሥራዎች አከናውኛለሁ፤ እናም እንደመራኸኝም አድርጌ ጀልባዎችን ሠርቻለሁ።

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

፲፱ እናም እነሆ፣ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ በውስጣቸው ብርሃን የለም፤ ወዴት እንቅዘፍ? እናም ደግሞ በውስጣቸው ካለው አየር በስተቀር ለመተንፈስ ስለማንችል ልንሞት እንችላለን፤ ስለዚህ እንሞታለን።

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

፳ እናም ጌታ ለያሬድ ወንድም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፦ እነሆ፣ ከላይና ከታች ቀዳዳ ታበጃለህ፤ እናም አየር በምታጣ ጊዜም ቀዳዳውን ከፍተህ አየር ታገኛለህ። እናም ውሃው ወደ አንተ ከመጣብህ፣ እነሆ፣ በጥፋት ውሀ እንዳትጠፋ ቀዳዳውን ትደፍነዋለህ።

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

፳፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ጌታ ባዘዘው መሰረት አደረገ።

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

፳፪ እናም በድጋሚ ወደ ጌታ እንዲህ በማለት ጮኸ፡ አቤቱ ጌታዬ እነሆ ያዘዘከኝን አድርጌአለሁ፤ ለህዝቤም ጀልባዎችን አዘጋጅቻለሁ፤ እናም እነሆ በውስጣቸውም ብርሃን የለም። እነሆ አቤቱ ጌታዬ ይህንን ታላቅ ውሃ በጨለማው እንድናቋርጥ ትፈቅዳለህን?

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

፳፫ እናም ጌታ ለያሬድ ወንድም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ በጀልባው ውስጥ ብርሃን እንዲኖር ምን እንዳደርግልህ ትፈልጋለህ? እነሆም፣ መስኮት ሊኖረው አይችልም፣ ምክንያቱም ትሰባበራላችሁና፤ በእሳት ብርሃን መሄድ ስለሌለባችሁ እሳትም ለመያዝ አትችሉም።

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

፳፬ እነሆ፣ በባሕሩ መሃል እንደአሳ ነባሪ ትሆናላችሁ፤ እንደተራራ ከፍ የሚለውም ማዕበል ያጋጫችኋል። ይሁን እንጂ በድጋሚ ከባህሩ ውስጥ አወጣችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ነፋሱ ከአፌ የሚመጣ ነውና፣ እናም ደግሞ ዝናቡንና ጎርፉን እኔ ልኬዋለሁና።

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

፳፭ እናም እነሆ፣ ከእነዚህ ነገሮች እንድትጠበቁ አዘጋጃችኋለሁ፤ ለባህሩ ማዕበል፣ እናም የሚመጣውን ነፋስ፣ እናም የሚመጣባችሁን የጥፋት ውሀ እኔ ካላዘጋጀኋችሁ በቀር ይህንን ጥልቅ ባህር ልታቋርጡት አትችሉም። ስለዚህ በባህሩ ጥልቅ ስትሰጥሙ ብርሃን ታገኙ ዘንድ ምን እንዳደርግልህ ትፈልጋለህ?

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

ኤተር ፫

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ተራራውም እጅግ ከፍ ያለ በመሆኑ ሹለም ተብሎ ወደሚጠራው ተራራ ሔደ (እንግዲህ የተዘጋጀው ጀልባ ብዛት ስምንት ነበር) እናም ከአለት አሰራ ሰድሰት ትናንሽ ድንጋዮች አቅልጦ አወጣ፤ እናም እነርሱም የነጡ፣ እናም እንደመሰታወት ብሩህ ነበሩ፤ እናም እርሱም ተሸክሞ ወደ ተራራው ጫፍ ወሰዳቸው፣ እናም ወደ ጌታ በድጋሚ እንዲህ ሲል ጮኸ።

፪ አቤቱ ጌታዬ በጥፋት ውሀ መከበብ አለባችሁ ብለሃል። እንግዲህ እነሆ ጌታ ሆይ፣ አገልጋይህ በፊትህ ደካማ በመሆኑ አትቆጣው፤ ምክንያቱም አንተ ቅዱስ እንደሆንክ እናም በሰማይ እንደምትኖር፤ እናም እኛ ባንተ ፊት ከንቱዎች እንደሆንን እናውቃለን፤ በውድቀትም የተነሳ ተፈጥሮአችን ያለማቋረጥ ክፉ ሆኗል፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ እንደፈለግነውም ከአንተ እንቀበል ዘንድ አንተን እንድንጠራ ትዕዛዝ ሰጥተኸናል።

፫ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ በክፋታችን ቀጥተኸናል፣ እናም አባረኸናል፣ እናም ለእነዚህ ብዙ ዓመታትም በምድረበዳው ነበርን፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ አንተ ለእኛ መሃሪ ነህ። አቤቱ ጌታ፣ በአዘኔታም ተመልከተኝ፣ እናም ከህዝብህም ቁጣህን መልሰ፣ እናም በዚህ ማዕበላዊ ባህር በጨለማ እንዲጓዙ አትፍቀድ፤ ነገር ግን ከድንጋይ ያቀለጥኳቸው እነዚህ ነገሮች ተመልከት።

፬ እናም ጌታ ሆይ፣ ስልጣን ሁሉ እንዳለህ፣ እናም ለሰዎች ጥቅምም ማንኛውንም ማድረግ እንደምትችል አውቃለሁ፤ ስለዚህ አቤቱ ጌታ፣ እነዚህን ድንጋዮች በጣትህ ንካቸው፣ እናም በጨለማም እንዲያበሩ አዘጋጃቸው፤ እናም ባዘጋጀነው ጀልባ ላይም ባህሩን በምናቋርጥበት ጊዜ ብርሃን ይሰጡን ዘንድ ያበሩልናል።

፭ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ይህንን ማድረግ ትችላላህ። ሰዎች በእስተሳሰባቸው እነስተኛ እድርገው የሚያዩትን ታላቅ ኃይል ለማሳየት እንደምትችል እናውቃለን።

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ እጅን ዘርግቶ ድንጋዮቹን እንድ በአንድ በጣቱ ነካቸው። እናም መጋረጃው ከያሬድ ወንድም ዐይን ላይ ተወገደ፣ እናም የጌታን ጣት ተመለከተ፤ እናም ይህ ሥጋና ደም እንደለበሰ እንደ ሰው ጣት ነበር፤ እናም የያሬድ ወንድም በፍርሃት በመዋጡ በጌታ ፊት ወደቀ።

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

፯ እናም ጌታ የያሬድ ወንድም በመሬት ላይ መውደቁን ተመለከተ፤ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረ፡ ተነሳ ለምን ትወድቃለህ?

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

፰ እናም ለጌታ እንዲህ አለው፡ የጌታን ጣት ተመለከትኩ፣ እናም ይመታኛል ብዬ ፈራሁኝ፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ሥጋና ደም እንዳለውም አላውቅም ነበርና።

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

፱ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ አለው፡ በእምነትህ የተነሳ ሥጋና ደም እንደምለብሰህ ተመለከትህ፤ እናም ከዚህ በፊት ማንም ሰው እንደአንተ ያለ ታላቅ እምነት ያለው በጭራሽ በፊቱ አልመጣም፤ ይህ ባይሆን ኖሮ ጣቱን ለማየት አትችልም ነበር። ከዚህ የበለጠን ነገር አይተሃልን?

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

፲ እርሱም እንዲህ ብሎ መለሰለት፡ አላየሁም፤ ጌታ ሆይ፡ ራስህን አሳየኝ።

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

፲፩ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ አለው፡ የምናገርህን ቃላት ታምናለህን?

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

፲፪ እናም እርሱ እንዲህ ሲል መለሰለት፡ አዎን፣ ጌታ ሆይ፡ አንተ እውነት እንደምትናገር አውቃለሁ፤ አንተ የእውነት አምላክ ነህና፣ ለመዋሸት አትችልም።

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

፲፫ እናም እርሱም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ጌታ ራሱን አሳየው፣ እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ እነዚህን ነገሮች በማወቅህ አንተ ከመውደቅ ድነሃል፤ ስለዚህ እኔ ባለሁበት ተመልሰህል፣ ስለዚህም ራሴን አሳይቼህለሁ።

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

፲፬ እነሆ፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ህዝቤን ለማዳን የተዘጋጀሁ እኔ ነኝ። እነሆ፣ እኔ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ነኝ። እኔ አብም ወልድም ነኝ። በእኔም የሰው ዘር በሙሉ፣ እንዲሁም በሰሜም የሚያምኑትም፣ የዘለዓለም ህይወትን ያገኛሉ፤ እናም እነርሱም ወንድና ሴት ልጆቹም ይሆናሉ።

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

፲፭ እናም እኔ ለፈጠርኩት ሰው በጭራሽ ራሴን አላሳየሁም፤ ምክንያቱም ማንም አንተ እንዳደረግኸው በእኔ ያመነ አልነበረምና። አንተ በእኔ አምሳል መፈጠርህን ተመልክተሃልን? አዎን፣ ሰዎች ሁሉ እንኳ በመጀመሪያ የተፈጠሩት በእኔ አምሳል ነው።

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

፲፮ እነሆ፣ ይህ ሰውነት፣ አሁን የተመለከትከው፣ መንፈሳዊው ሰውነት ነው፤ እናም ሰውን የፈጠርኩት በመንፈስ እካሌ አምሳል ነው፤ እናም በመንፈስ ለአንተ እንደታየሁት ለህዝቤም በሥጋ እታያለሁ።

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

፲፱ እናም እንግዲህ እንዳልኩት እኔ ሞርኒ ስለተፃፉት ስለነዚህ ነገሮች ሙሉ ታሪክን መፃፍ አልችልም፤ ስለዚህ ኢየሱስ ለኔፋውያን እራሱን እንዳሳየው በዚህ መልክ ለዚህ ሰው ራሱን በመንፈስ አሳይቷል ማለቱ ይበቃኛል።

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

፳ እናም እርሱም ለኔፋውያን እንዳስተማራቸው አስተምሮታል፤ እናም ይህን ሁሉ ያደረገው ጌታ ብዙ ታላላቅ ስራዎችን ባሳየው ምክንያት ይህ ሰው አምላክ መሆኑን ያውቅ ዘንድ ነው።

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

፳፱ እናም ይህ ሰው ከነበረው እውቀትም የተነሳ በመጋረጃው ውስጥ ከመመልከት ሊጠበቅ አልቻለም፤ እናም የኢየሱስን ጣት ተመለከተ፤ በተመለከተም ጊዜ በፍርሃት ወደቀ፤ ምክንያቱም የጌታ ጣት መሆኑን አውቋል፤ እናም እንግዲህ እምነት የለውም፣ ምክንያቱም ምንም ባለመጠራጠር ያውቃለና።

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

፷ ስለዚህ፣ ይህን የእግዚአብሔር ፍፁም የሆነ እውቀት ስላለው፣ በመጋረጃው ውስጥ ሊጠበቅ አልተቻለውም፤ ስለዚህ ኢየሱስን ተመለከተው፤ እናም እርሱም አስተማረው።

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

፷፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ የያሬድን ወንድም እንዲህ አለው፣ እነሆ፣ ሰሜን በሥጋ ሆኜ ለማስከበር አስከምመጣበት ጊዜ ድረስ እነዚህ ያየሃቸውን እናም የሰማሃቸውን ነገሮች ወደዓለም እንዲሄዱ አትፍቀድ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ያየሃቸውን እናም የሰማሃቸውን ነገሮች አስቀምጥ፣ እናም ለማንም አታሳይ።

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

፷፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ወደ እኔ በምትመጣበት ጊዜም ፃፈው፣ እናም ማንም ሊተረጉማቸው እንዳይችልም አሸገው፤ ምክንያቱም ለማንበብ በማይቻል ቋንቋ ትጽፋቸዋለህና።

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

፷፫ እናም እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ሁለት ድንጋዮች አስጥሃለሁ፣ እናም ደግሞ ከምትጽፋቸው ነገሮች ጋር ትቀብራቸዋለህ።

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

፷፬ እነሆም የምትጽፈው ቋንቋ አምታትቼዋለሁ፤ ስለዚህ አንተ የምትፀፋቸውን ነገሮች በራሴ ጊዜም እነዚህ ድንጋዮች ለሰዎች አይኖች እንዲያደምቋቸው አደርጋለሁ።

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

፳፭ እናም ጌታም እነዚህን ቃላት በተናገረ ጊዜ፣ ለያሬድ ወንድም የምድር ፍጡር የሆኑትን ሁሉ፣ እናም ደግሞ ሊሆኑ የሚችሉትን በሙሉ አሳየው፤ እናም እስከምድር ዳርቻም ከያሬድ ወንድም ፊት አልደበቀውም።

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

፳፮ ከዚህ በፊትም በእርሱ የሚያምን ከሆነ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ሊያሳየው እንደሚችል ተናግሮታልና—ለእርሱም ያሳየዋል፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ ከእርሱ ሊደብቅ የሚቻለው ምንም ነገር የለም፤ ምክንያቱም ጌታ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ሊያሳየው እንደሚችል ያውቃልና።

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

፳፯ እናም ጌታ እንዲህ አለው፡ እነዚህን ነገሮች ፃፍ፣ እናም አትማቸው፣ እናም የራሴ ጊዜ ሲደርስ ለሰው ልጆች አሳያቸዋለሁ።

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም የተቀበላቸውን ሁለት ድንጋዮች እንዲያሸጋቸው እናም ጌታም ለሰው ልጆች እስከሚያሳያቸው እርሱ ለማንም እንዳያሳያቸው አዘዘው።

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

ኤፋር ፬

፩ እናም ጌታም የያሬድን ወንድም ጌታ ካለበት ተራራ ወርዶ እንዲመጣ፣ እናም ያያቸውን ነገሮች እንዲፀፍ አዘዘው፤ እርሱም በመስቀል ላይ እስከሚሰቀል ወደ ሰው ልጆች እንዳይመጡ ተከልክለዋል፤ እናም በዚህም የተነሳ ክርስቶስ ለህዝቡ እራሱን እስኪገልፅ ወደ ዓለም መምጣት ስለሌለባቸው ንጉስ ሞዛያ ጠበቃቸው።

፪ እናም ክርስቶስም በእውነት እራሱን ለህዝቡ ከገለፀ በኋላ ጽሑፎቹ እንዲገለጡ አዘዘ።

፫ እናም፣ እንግዲህ፣ ከዚያን በኋላ፣ ሁሉም እምነት አጥተው መነመኑ፤ እናም ከላማናውያን በስተቀር ማንም አልነበረም፣ እናም እነርሱም የክርስቶስን ወንጌል አስወግደዋል፤ ስለዚህ እኔ በድጋሚ ጽሑፎችን በመሬት ውስጥ እንድደብቅ ታዘዝኩ።

፬ እነሆ፣ በእነዚህ ሰሌዳዎች ላይ የያሬድ ወንድም የተመለከታቸውን ነገሮችን ፅፌአለሁ፤ እናም ለያሬድ ወንድም ከተገለፀው በላይ የተገለፁ ታላቅ የሆኑ ነገሮች በጭራሽ አልነበሩም።

፭ ስለዚህ ጌታም እንድፀፋቸው አዘኛል፤ እናም ፅፌአቸዋለሁ። እናም እንዳሸጋቸው አዘኛል፤ እናም ደግሞ ትርጉሙን እንዳሸግ አዘኛል፤ እናም በጌታም ትዕዛዝ በመመራት ተርጓሚዎቹን አሸግኟቸው።

፮ ጌታም እንዲህ ብሎኛልና፡ አህዛብ ለክፋቶቻቸው ንስህ እስከሚገቡበት ቀን እናም በጌታም ፊት ንፁህ እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ ወደ እነርሱ አይሄዱም።

፯ እናም ጌታም እንዲህ አለ፡ በእኔ እንዲነጹ ዘንድ፣ በዚያን ቀንም የያሬድ ወንድም እንዳደረገው በእኔ ታማኝ ይሁኑ፤ ከዚያም በኋላ እኔም የያሬድ ወንድም የተመለከታቸውን ነገሮች፣ እንዲሁም ራዕዮቼን በሙሉ እገልፀላቸዋለሁ ይላል የሰማይና የምድር አባት፣ እናም በእነርሱ ውስጥ ያሉትን ሁሉንም ነገሮች የፈጠረ የእግዚአብሔር ልጅ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ።

፰ እናም ከጌታ ቃል ጋር የሚከራከር፣ የተረገመ ይሁን፤ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚክድ፣ የተረገመ ይሁን፤ ምንም ታላቅ ነገሮችን ለእነርሱ አላሳያቸውም፣ ይላል ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ፤ የምናገራችሁም እኔ ነኝና።

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

፱ እናም በእኔ ትዕዛዝ ሰማያት ይከፈታሉ እንዲሁም ይዘጋሉ፤ በቃሉም ምድር ትንቀጠቀጣለች፤ እናም በትዕዛዜ ነዋሪዎችዋ በእሳትም እንኳን ቢሆን ይጠፋሉ።

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

፲ እናም ቃላቴን የማያምን ደቀመዛሙርቶቼንም እያምንም፤ እናም ይህን የማልናገር ከሆነ እናንተ ፍረዲ፤ ምክንያቱም በመጨረሻው ቀን እኔ እንደምናገር ታውቃላችሁና።

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

፲፩ ነገር ግን እኔ የተናገርኳቸውን እነዚህን ነገሮች የሚያምን በመንፈሴ መገለጥ እጎበኘኛለሁ፤ እናም እርሱ ያውቃል እናም ይመሰክራል። ምክንያቱም በመንፈሴ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውን መሆናቸውን ያውቃል፤ ሰዎች መልካም እንዲሰሩም ይገፋፋቸዋልና።

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

፲፪ እናም ሰዎች መልካምን ነገር እንዲሰሩ የሚገፋፋ ከእኔ የሆነ ነው፤ ከእኔ ካልሆነ በቀር መልካም የሆነ ከማንም አይመጣምና። እኔ ሰዎችን መልካም ወደሆነው ሁሉ የምመራ ነኝ፤ ቃሉን የማያምን በእኔ እያምንም—እኔም እንደሆንኩኝ እያምንም፤ እናም በእኔ የማያምን በላከኝ በኩል እያምንም። እነሆም፣ እኔ አባት ነኝ፤ የዓለምም ብርሃን፣ ህይወትም፣ እውነትም ነኝ።

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

፲፫ እህዛብ ሆይ ወደ እኔ ኑ፤ እናም ታላቅ የሆኑትን ነገሮች፣ ባለማመንም የተደበቁትን እውቀቶች እንድታውቁ አሳያችኋለሁ።

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

፲፬ እናንት የእስራኤል ቤት ሆይ፣ ወደ እኔ ኑ፤ እናም አብ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ምን ያህል ታላቅ ነገሮችን እንዳዘጋጀላችሁ ይገለፅላችኋል፤ እናም እናንተ ባለማመናችሁ ምክንያት ሊደርሱ አልቻሉም።

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ በክፋታችሁ በአስቃቂ ሁኔታ እንድትቀሩ እናም በልባችሁ ጠጣርነት እናም በእምሮአችሁ መታወር እንድትቀሩ የሚያደርጋችሁን የአለማመን መጋረጃ ስትቀዱት፣ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ታላቁ እና አስደናቂው ነገር ከእናንተ የተደበቀው—እዎን፣ በተሰበረ ልብ እና በተቀረደ መንፈስ፣ አብን በሰሜ ስትጠሩት፣ አብ ለአባቶቻችሁ፣ አቤቴ ለእስራኤል ቤት፣ የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን እንደሚያስታውስ ታውቃላችሁ።

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

፲፮ እናም በአገልጋዬ በዮሐንስ እንዲፃፉ ያደረግኳቸው ራዕዮቹ በሰዎች ሁሉ ፊት ይከፈታሉ። እነዚህን ነገሮች በምትመለከቱበት ጊዜ በእርግጥ ስራ የሚገለጡበት ጊዜ መቃረቡን ማወቃችሁን አስታውሱ።

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

፲፯ ስለዚህ፣ ይህንን መዝገብ በምትቀበሉበት ጊዜ የአብ ሥራ በምድር ላይ መጀመሩን ታውቃላችሁ።

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

፲፰ ስለዚህ፣ እስከምድር ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ ንሰሃ ግቡ፣ እናም ወደ እኔም ኑ፣ እናም ወንጌሉን እመኑ፣ እናም በሰሜ ተጠመቁ፤ ያመነ እናም የተጠመቀ ይድናልና፤ ያላመነ ግን ይኮነናል፤ እናም በሰሜ የሚያምኑትን ምልክቶች ይከተሏቸዋል።

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

፲፱ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀን ለሰሜ ታማኝ ሆኖ የሚገኝ የተባረከ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮ ለእርሱ በተዘጋጀለት መንግሥት ለመኖር እርሱ ከፍ ይላልና። እናም እነሆ ይህን የምናገረው እኔ ነኝ። አሜን።

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

ኤፋር ፮

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞሮኒ ባሰታወስኩኝ መጠን የታዘዘካቸውን ቃላት ፅፎአለሁ፤ እናም ያተሞክረውን ነገሮች ነገርኳችሁ፤ ስለዚህ ትተረጉሟቸው ዘንድም አትንኳቸው፤ ከጊዜ ወደ ጊዜም በእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ ካልሆነ በቀርም ተከልክለዋልና።

፪ እናም እነሆ፣ ይህንን ሥራ ለማምጣት ለሚረዱአችሁ ስሌዳዎቹን ታሳዩአቸው ዘንድ ዕድሉም ይኖራችኋል፤

፫ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልም ለሦስቱ የሚታዩ ይሆናሉ፤ ስለዚህ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት መሆናቸውን በእርግጥ ያውቃሉ።

፬ እናም በሦስት ሰዎች አንደበት፣ እናም በሦስቱ ምስክርነት እናም የእግዚአብሔር ኃይል በሚታይበት በዚህ ሥራ፣ እናም ደግሞ በአብ እናም በወልድ፣ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ በሚመሰክርበት ቃል እነዚህ ነገሮች ይፀናሉ፤ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀንም ይህ ሁሉ በዓለም ላይ ለምስክርነት ይቆያል።

፭ እናም እነርሱ ንስሃ ቢገቡ፣ እናም በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ አብ ቢመለሱ፤ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥትም ተቀባይነትን ያገኛሉ።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ፣ በእነዚህ ነገሮች ላይ ስልጣን ከሌለኝ እናንተ ፍረዱብኝ፤ ምክንያቱም እኔን ስትመለከቱኝ ስልጣን እንዳለኝ ታውቃላችሁና፣ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀን በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እንቆማለን። አሜን።

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

ኤተር ፮

፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እኔ ሞርኒ፣ የያሬድን እና የወንድሙን ዘገባ መስጠቴን አቀጥላለሁ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድ ወንድም ወደ ተራራው ተሸክሞ የወሰዳቸውን ድንጋዮች ጌታ ካዘጋጀቸው በኋላ፣ የያሬድ ወንድም ከተራራው ላይ ወረደ፣ እናም ድንጋዮቹን በጀልባዎች ውስጥ እያንዳንዱን በጫፋ ላይ አስቀመጠው፤ እናም እነሆ፣ ድንጋዮቹም ለመርከቡ ብርሃን ሰጡ።

፫ እናም ታላቁንም ውሃ በጨለማ እንዳያቋርጡ ዘንድ ጌታ ድንጋዮቹን ለወንዶች፣ ለሴቶች እና ለህፃናት ብርሃን እንዲሰጡ በጨለማም እንዲያበሩ አደረገ።

፬ በውኃ ላይ በሚቆዩበት ጊዜ የሚኖሩበት የተለያዩ የምግብ ዓይነቶችን አዘጋጅተው ነበር፣ እናም ደግሞ ለበጎቻቸው፣ እናም ለመንጋዎቻቸው፣ እናም ለያዙአቸው አራዊቶች ወይም እንሰሳቶች፣ ወይም ወፎች ሁሉ ምግብ ይዘው ነበር—እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ካደረጉ በኋላ፣ እራሳቸውን ለጌታ ጥበቃ አሳልፈው በመስጠት፣ ወደ ውሀ መጓዣቸው ወይም በጀልባዎቻቸው ሄዱ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታ እግዚአብሔርም ወደ ቃል ኪዳኗ ምድር በሚያመራው በውኃው ገፅ ላይ ኃይለኛ ነፋስ እንዲነፍስ አደረገ፤ እናም ከነፋሱም በፊት በባህሩ ሞገድ ተወስደው ነበር።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በእነርሱ ላይ ባረፈው በተራራማው ማዕበል እናም ደግሞ በኃያሉ ነፋስ ምክንያት በመጣው በታላቁና ኃይለኛው አውሎ ነፋስ ብዙ ጊዜ ባህሩ ውስጥ ተቀብረው ነበር።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጀልባዎቻቸው እንደሆነን የጠበቁ ስለነበሩ፣ እናም ደግሞ እንደኖህ መርከብም የጠበቁ ስለነበሩ፣ ወደ ጥልቅ ውሀውም በሚቀበሩበትም ጊዜ የሚጎዳቸው ውኃ አልነበረም፤ ስለዚህ በበርካታ ውኃም በተከበቡም ጊዜ ወደ ጌታ ጮሁ እናም እርሱም በድጋሚ ከብዙ ውሀዎች በላይ አወጣቸው።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም በውኃው ላይ በነበሩበት ጊዜ ነፋሱ ወደ ቃል ኪዳኗ ምድር መንፈሱን በጭራሽ አላቆመም፤ እናም ከነፋሱ በፊትም እንደዚህ ተገፋ።

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

፱ እናም ጌታን በዝማሬ ያወድሱት ነበር፤ አዎን፣ የያሬድ ወንድም ጌታን በዝማሬ ያወድሰው ነበር፤ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ ጌታን ያመሰግነው እናም ያወድሰው ነበር፤ እናም ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ ጌታን ማወደሳቸውን አላቆሙም ነበር።

፲ እናም በዚህ ወደ ፊት ሄዱ፤ እናም ምንም የባህር አውሬም ሊሰብራቸው አልቻለም፣ አሳ ነባሪም ሊጎዳቸው አልቻለም፤ እናም በውኃው ከላይ በኩል እንዲሁም ከታችም ቢሆኑም ያለማቋረጥ ብርሃን ነበራቸው።

፲፩ እናም ለሦስት መቶ አርባ አራት ቀናት በውኃው ላይ ይጓዙ ነበር።

፲፪ እናም በቃል ኪዳኗ ምድር ዳርቻም አረፉ። እናም በቃል ኪዳኗ ምድር እግራቸውን ባሳረፉ ጊዜ በምድሪቷ ላይ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ አደረጉ፣ እናም በጌታ ፊት እራሳቸውን አዋረዱ፣ እና ጌታም በእነርሱ ላይ ምህረቱን ያበዛ በመሆኑ በፊቱ የደሰታ እንባቸውን አፈሰሱ።

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱም ላይ ተሰራጩ እናም እርሻ ጀመሩ።

፲፬ እናም ያሬድ አራት ወንዶች ልጆች ነበሩት፤ እናም እነርሱም ያቆም፤ እናም ጊልጋ፣ እናም ማሃ እናም ኦሪያ ተብለው ይጠሩ ነበር።

፲፭ እናም ደግሞ የያሬድ ወንድም ወንድና ሴት ልጆችን ወለደ።

፲፮ እናም የያሬድ ወዳጆች እናም ወንድሞቹ በቁጥር ሃያ ሁለት ነፍሳት ነበሩ፤ እናም እነርሱ ደግሞ ወደ ቃልኪዳኗ ምድር ከመምጣታቸው በፊት ወንድና ሴት ልጆችን ወልደው ነበር፤ እናም ስለዚህ ብዙ መሆን ጀምረው ነበር።

፲፯ እናም እነርሱም በጌታ ፊት በትህትና መራመድን ተምረው ነበር፤ እናም ከላይ ከሰማይም ደግሞ ተምረው ነበር።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ላይ መስፋፋት፣ እናም መባዛት፣ እናም ምድሪቷን ማረስ ጀመሩ፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይ ጠነከሩ።

፲፱ እናም የያሬድ ወንድም አረጀ፣ እናም በቅርቡም ወደ መቃብር መውረድ እንዳለበት ተመለከተ፤ ስለዚህ ለያሬድ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረው፡ ሕዝባችንን እንድንቆጥር፣ ወደ መቃብራችን ከመውረዳችን በፊት ከአኛ የሚፈልጉትን እናውቅ ዘንድ ህዝቦቻችንን በአንድነት እንሰብሰባቸው።

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

፳፩ እናም በዚህም መሰረት ህዝቡም በአንድነት ተሰባሰቡ ነበር። እንግዲህ የያሬድ ወንድም ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቹ በቁጥር ሃያ ሁለት ነፍሳት ነበሩ፤ እናም የያሬድ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቹ አስራ ሁለት ነበሩ፤ እናም አራት ወንድ ልጆች ነበሩት።

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያሬድና ወንድሙም ህዝባቸውን ቆጠሩ፤ እናም ከቆጠሩአቸው በኋላም ወደ መቃብር ከመውረዳቸው በፊት ከእነርሱ የሚፈልጓቸውን ነገሮች ለማወቅ ፈለጉ።

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም የፈለጉት ከልጆቻቸው አንዱን በእነርሱ ላይ ንጉስ አድርገው እንዲቀቡት ነበር።

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

፳፬ እናም አሁን እነሆ፣ ይህ ለእነርሱ አሳዛኝ ነበር። እናም የያሬድ ወንድም እንዲህ አላቸው፣ በእርግጥ ይህ ነገር ወደ ግዛት ያመራል።

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

፳፭ ነገር ግን ያሬድ ለወንድሙ እንዲህ አለው፣ ንጉስ ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ፍቀድላቸው። እናም ስለዚህ እንዲህ አላቸው፣ ከወንዶች ልጆቻችን እናንተም የፈለጋችሁትን አንድን ንጉስ ምረጡ።

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድን ወንድም የበኩር ልጁን መረጡ፤ ስሙም ፓጋግ ይባል ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ንጉሳቸው መሆንን አልተቀበለውም፣ እናም ንጉሳቸው አልሆነም። እናም ህዝቡ አባቱ እንዲገፋፋው ፈለጉ፣ ነገር ግን አባቱ አላስገደደውም፤ እናም እርሱም ማንንም ሰው ንጉስ ሆኑ ብለው እንዳያስገድዱ አዘዛቸው።

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የፓጋግን ወንድሞች በሙሉ መረጡአቸው፣ እናም እነርሱም ንጉስ ለመሆን አልፈለጉም።

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከአንዱ በስተቀር የያሬድ ወንድም ልጆች ሁሉም አልፈለጉም፤ እናም ኦሪያ በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ ለመሆን ተቀብቶ ነበር።

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

፳፱ እናም እርሱ መንገስ ጀመረ፣ እናም ህዝቦቹ መበልፀግ ጀመሩ፤ እናም እጅግ ሀብታም ሆኑ።

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያሬድ እንዲሁም ደግሞ ወንድሙም ሞቱ፤

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

፴፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኦሪያ በጌታ ፊት እራሱን ዝቅ አድርጎ ተራመደ፣ እናም ጌታም ለአባቱ ምን ያህል ድንቅ ነገሮችን እንዳደረገ አስታወሰ፤ እናም ደግሞ ጌታ ለአባቶቻቸው ምን ያህል ታላላቅ ነገሮችን እንዳደረገላቸው ለህዝቡ አስተማራቸው።

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

ኤተር ፯

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኦሪያ በዘመኑ ሁሉ በፀድቅ በምድሪቱ ላይ ፍርድን ፈፀሟል፤ ዘመኑም እጅግ ብዙ ነበር።

፪ እናም ወንዶች እና ሴቶች ልጆችንም ወለደ፤ አዎን፣ ሠላሳ አንድ ልጆችን ወለደ፤ ከእነርሱ መካከል ሃያ ሦስቱ ወንዶች ልጆች ነበሩ።

፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ደግሞ በእርጅናው ጊዜ ቁብን ወለደ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቁብም በእርሱ ቦታ ነገሰ፤ እናም ቁብ ቆሪሆርን ወለደ።

፬ እናም ቆሪሆርም ሠላሳ ሁለት ዓመት በሞላው ጊዜ በአባቱ ላይ አመፀ፣ እናም ሄደ እናም በኔሆር ምድር ተቀመጠ፤ እናም እርሱም ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፣ እናም እነርሱም እጅግ ያማሩ ሆኑ፤ ስለዚህ ቆሪሆርንም ብዙ ሰዎች እንዲከተሉት ወደ እርሱ ሳቡ።

፭ እናም ሠራዊቱን በሰበሰበ ጊዜም ንጉሱ ወደሚኖርበት ወደ ሞሮን ምድር መጣ፣ እናም ምርኮኛ አድርገው ወሰዱት፣ ይህም የያሬድ ወንድም እነርሱ ምርኮኛ ይሆናሉ ያለው ይፈፀም ዘንድ ሆነ።

፮ ንጉሱ የተቀመጠበት የሞሮን ምድር በኔፋውያን የወደመች ተብላ ከምትጠራው ምድር አጠገብ ነበረች።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቁብም በጣም እስከሚያረጅ ድረስ ቁብ እናም ህዝቡ በቆሪሆር በልጁ ስር በምርኮ ተቀምጠው ኖሩ፤ ይህን እንጂ ቁብም በምርኮ በነበረበት ወቅት በእርጅናው ሹልን ወለደ።

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሹልም በወንድሙ ተቆጥቶ ነበር፣ እናም ሹልም በረታ እናም በሰው ሀይልም ጠንክሮ ኃያል ሆነ፤ እናም በፍርዱም እንዲሁ ኃያል ነበር።

፱ ስለዚህ ወደ ኤፍሬም ኮረብታ ወጣ፣ እናም ከኮረብታው ብረት አቅልጦ አወጣ፣ እናም ከእርሱ ጋር ለሄዱትም ከብረቱ ጎራዴን ስራላቸው፤ እናም በጎራዴም ካሰታጠቃቸው በኋላ ወደ ኔሆር ከተማ ተመለሰ፣ እናም ከወንድሙ ቆሪሆር ጋር ተዋጋ፣ በዚህም መንገድ መንግሥቱን አገኘ እናም ለአባቱ ቁብም መለሰለት።

፲ እናም እንግዲህ ሹል ባደረገው ነገር ምክንያት አባቱ መንግሥቱን ለእርሱ ሰጠው፤ ስለዚህ በአባቱ ምትክም መንገስ ጀመረ።

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሹልም በፅድቅ ፍርድን ይፈጽም ነበር፤ እናም ህዝቡም በቁጥር እጅግ ብዙ በመሆናቸው በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ አገዛዙን አስፋፋ።

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሹልም ደግሞ ብዙ ወንዶችንና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ።

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

፲፫ እናም ቆሪሆርም ለሰራቸው ብዙ ክፋቶች ንስሃ ገባ፤ ስለዚህ ሹልም በመንግስቱ ሥልጣንን ሰጠው።

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪሆርም ብዙ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆች ነበሩት። እናም ከቆሪሆር ወንድ ልጆች መካከልም አንዱ ኖህ የሚባል ነበር።

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኖህም በንጉሱ በሹል፣ እናም ደግሞ በአባቱ ቆሪሆር ላይ አመፀ፤ ወንድሙ ቆሆርን፣ እናም ደግሞ ወንድሞቹን ሁሉ እናም ብዙ ሰዎችን ወደራሱ ሳበ።

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

፲፮ እናም ኖህም ከንጉሱ ሹል ጋር ተዋጋ፤ እናም በመጀመሪያ የትውልድ ቦታቸው የነበረውን አገን፤ እናም በዚያም የምድሪቱ ክፍል ላይ ንጉስ ሆነ።

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በድጋሚም ከንጉሱ ከሹል ጋር ተዋጋ፤ እናም ንጉስ ሹልን ወሰደ፣ እናም ወደ ሞሮን ሞርኮኛ አድርጎ ወሰደው።

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኖህም ሊገድለው በተዘጋጀ ጊዜ የሹል ልጆች በምሽት አድፍጠው ወደ ኖህ ቤት ገብተው ገደሉት፣ እናም የወህኒ ቤቱን በር ሰበሩ እናም አባታቸውን አወጡት፣ እናም በራሱ መንግስትም በዙፋኑ ላይ መልሰው አስቀመጡት።

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

፲፱ ስለዚህ፣ የኖህም ልጅ በእርሱ ሞትክ መንግስቱን ገነባ፤ ይሁን እንጂ በንጉስ ሹል ላይ ከዚያ በኋላ ኃይልን አላገኙም፤ እናም በንጉስ ሹል አገዛዝ ሥር የነበሩ ሕዝቦች እጅግ በለፀጉ እናም በኃይል ጠነከሩ።

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

፳ እናም ሀገሩም ተከፋፈለ፤ እናም ሁለት መንግስት ነበሩ፣ የሹል መንግስት እናም የኖህ ልጅ የሆነው የቆሆር መንግስት።

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

፳፩ እናም የኖህ ልጅ ቆሆር ህዝቡም ከሹል ጋር እንዲዋጉ አደረገ፤ በዚያም ሹልም ድልን አገኘ፣ እናም ቆሆርን ገደለው።

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

፳፪ እናም እንግዲህ ቆሆርም ናምሩድ የሚባል ልጅ ነበረው፤ እናም ናምሩድም የቆሆርን መንግስት ለሹል ሰጠው፣ እናም በሹል አመለካከትም ተወዳጅ ሆነ፤ ስለዚህ ሹል ታላቅ ድጋፍን ሰጠው፤ እናም በሹል መንግስት ውስጥ እንደ ፍላጎቱ አደረገ።

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

፳፫ እናም ደግሞ በሹል ንግስናም የህዝቡ ክፋትና የጣዖት ማምለክ በምድሪቱ ላይ እርግማን እንደሚያመጣ፤ እናም ህዝቡም ንስሃ ካልገባ እንደሚጠፋ የሚተነበዩ በህዝቡ መካከል ከጌታ የተላኩ ነቢያት መጡ።

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም ነቢያትን ሰደቡአቸው፤ እናም ተሳለቁባቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ንጉስ ሹልም ነቢያቱን በተሳደቡት ሁሉ ላይ ፍርድን ፈረደ።

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

፳፭ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይም በፈለጉበት ቦታ ለመሄድ ለነቢያት ኃይልን ለመስጠት ህጉ በሰራ ላይ እንዲውል አደረገ፤ እናም በዚህም የተነሳ ህዝቡ ንስሃ ገባ።

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

፳፮ እናም ህዝቡም ለክፋታቸው እና ለጣዖት ማምለካቸው ንስሃ በመግባታቸው ጌታ አተረፋቸው፤ እናም በድጋሚ በምድሪቱ ላይ መበልጸግ ጀመሩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሹልም በእርጅናው ሴቶች እናም ወንዶች ልጆችን ወለደ።

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

፳፯ እናም በሹል ዘመን ምንም አይነት ተጨማሪ ጦርነት አልነበረም፤ እናም ጌታም ወደ ቃል ኪዳኗ ምድር ጥልቅ የነበረውን ታላቅ ባህር በማሳለፍ ለአባቶቹ ያደረገውን ታላቅ ነገር አስታወሰ፤ ስለዚህ በዘመኑ ሁሉ በፅድቅ ፍርድን አከናወነ።

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

ኤተር ፰

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ኦመርን ወለደ፤ ኦመርም በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ። እናም ኦመር ያሬድን ወለደ፤ እናም ያሬድ ወንድ እና ሴት ልጆችን ወለደ።

፪ እናም ያሬድ በአባቱ ላይ አመፀ፣ እናም ሔደ እናም በሔት ምድር ኖረ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የመንግሥቱን ግማሽ እስከሚያገኝ ድረስ በአጭብርባሪ ቃላቶቹ ብዙ ሰዎችን ሸነገላቸው።

፫ እናም የመንግሥቱን ግማሽ ባገኘ ጊዜ ከአባቱ ጋር ተዋጋ፣ እናም አባቱን በምርኮ ወሰደው፣ እናም በምርኮም እንዲያገለግል አደረገው፤

፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ኦመር በነገሰበት ጊዜ ዘመኑን አጋማሽ በምርኮ ላይ ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ ከእነርሱ መካከልም ኤስረምና ቆሪያንተመር ነበሩ፤

፭ እናም በወንድማቸው በያሬድ ሥራዎች እጅግ ተቆጥተው ነበር፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ወታደሮችን አዘጋጁ እናም ከያሬድ ጋር ተዋጉ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከእርሱም ጋር በምሽት ተዋጉ።

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የያሬድን ወታደሮች በገደሉአቸው ጊዜ እርሱንም ለመግደል ተቃርበው ነበር፤ እናም እርሱም እንዲያገድሉት፣ እናም መንግሥቱንም ትቶ ለአባቱ እንደሚሰጥ ተማፀናቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ህይወቱ እንዲተርፍ አደረጉ።

፯ እናም እንግዲህ ያሬድም መንግሥቱን ስላጣ እጅግ አዘነ፣ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ልቡን በመንግሥቱ ላይ እናም በዓለም ክብር ላይ አድርጎ ነበርና።

፰ እንግዲህ የያሬድ ሴት ልጅ ብልጥ ነበረች፣ እናም የአባቷን ሃዘንም ተመልክታ የአባቷን መንግሥት ማዳን የምትችልበትን ዕቅድ ለመቀየስ አሰበች።

፱ እንግዲህ የያሬድ ሴት ልጅም እጅግ መልክ መልካም ነበረች። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለአባቷም እንዲህ ሰትል ተናገረችው፡ በምን ምክንያት ነው አባቱ በኃይል ያዘነው? አባቶቻችን ታላቁን ጥልቅ አቋርጠው ያመጧቸውን መዛግብት አላነበባቸውም? እነሆ፣ በሚሰጡራዊው ዕቅዳቸው መንግሥታቸውን እናም ታላቁን ክብራቸውን እንዳገኙ የሚናገር የጥንቶቹን በተመለከተ ታሪክ የለምን?

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

፲ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ስለዚህ አባቴም አኪሽ የቁምኖርን ልጅ ይጥራ፤ እናም እነሆ፤ እኔ ቆንጆ ነኝ፣ እናም በፊቴም እወዛወዛለሁ፣ እናም አስደስተዋለሁ፣ ስለዚህ ለሚሰትነት ይፈልገኛል፤ ስለዚህ እኔን ለሚሰትነት እንድትሰጠው ይፈልግሁል፣ ከዚያም እንዲህ በለው፣ የንጉሱን የአባቴን ራስ የምታመጣልኝ ከሆነ እርሷን እሰጥሃለሁ።

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

፲፩ እናም እንግዲህ ኦመር ለአኪሽ ወዳጅ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ያሬድ አኪሽን በጠራው ጊዜ የያሬድ ሴት ልጅ በፊቴ ተወዛወዘች እናም አስደስተችው፣ በዚህም የተነሳ ለሚሰትነት ፈለገች። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለያሬድም እንዲህ አለው፣ እርሷን ለሚሰትነት ሰጠኝ።

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

፲፪ እናም ያሬድ እንዲህ አለው፣ የንጉሱን የአባቴን ራስ የምታመጣልኝ ከሆነ እርሷን እሰጥሃለሁ።

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አኪሽ በያሬድ ቤት ዘመዶቹን በሙሉ ሰበሰባቸው፤ እናም እንዲህ ሲል ተናገራቸው፣ እኔ በምፈልግባችሁ ነገር ለእኔ ታማኝ ለመሆን ትምሉልኛላችሁን?

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አኪሽ ከፈለገው እርዳታ የተለየን የሚፈልግ ራሱን እንዲያጣ፣ እነርሱ ሁሉም በሰማይ እምላክ፣ እናም ደግሞ በሰማያት፣ እናም ደግሞ በምድር እናም በህይወታቸው መሃላን አደረጉ፤ እናም አኪሽ ለእነርሱ ያሳወቀውን ማንኛውን ነገር የሚገልፅ እርሱም ህይወቱን ያጣል።

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም ከአኪሽ ጋር ተስማምተው ነበር። እናም አኪሽ በጥንት ጊዜ ሥልጣንን ይፈልጉ በነበሩት የተሰጣቸውን ከመጀመሪያው ገዳይ በነበረው በቃየን የተላለፈውን መሃላ እንዲገቡ አደረጋቸው።

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

፲፮ እናም እነርሱም ይህንን መሃላ ለህዝባቸው ለመሰጠት፤ እነርሱንም በጨለማ ለማቆየት፤ ሥልጣንን ለማግኘት የሚፈልጉትን ለመርዳት፤ እናም ለመግደል፣ እናም ለመዝረፍ፣ እናም ለመዋሽት፣ እናም ሁሉንም ዓይነት ክፋቶችን እና ዝሙት ለመፈፀም በዲያብሎስ ሃይል ተጠብቀው ነበር።

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

፲፯ እናም የጥንት የሆኑትን ነገሮች በሙሉ እንዲፈልግ ያደረገችው የያሬድ ሴት ልጅ ነበረች፤ እናም ያሬድ በአኪሽ ልብ ውስጥ ይህንን አስቀመጠ፤ ስለዚህ፣ አኪሽም ለነገዶቹ እናም ጓደኞቹም የፈለገውን ነገር እንዲያደርጉለት መልካም በሆነ በተስፋ ቃል በመምራት መሃላን አስገባቸው።

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም በጥንት ጊዜ እንደነበሩት ሚስጢራዊ ሴራን አቋቋሙ፤ ህብረቱም በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከሁሉም በላይ የከፋና የረከሰ ነው።

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

፲፱ ጌታም በሚስጢራዊ ሴራዎች አይሰራም፣ ወይም ሰዎችም ደም እንዲያፈሱ አይፈቅድም፣ ነገር ግን ከሰው መፈጠር ጀምሮ ይህንን ተግባር ከልክሏል።

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

፳ እናም እንግዲህ፣ እኔ ሞርኒ፣ የመሃላውን አይነትም እንዲሁም ህብረቱን አልፎም፣ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ በህዝቡ ሁሉ የነበሩ መሆናቸውን እንዳውቅ ተደርጌአለሁና፣ እናም በላማናውያንም መካከል አሉ።

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

፳፩ እናም አሁን እኔ ለምናገርላቸው ሰዎች እናም ደግሞ ለኔፊ ሕዝብ ጥፋት ምክንያት ሆነዋል።

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

፳፪ እናም በሁሉም ሀገር እስከሚሰራጩ ድረስ፣ ሥልጣንን እናም ጥቅምን ለማግኘት እንደዚህ አይነትን ሚስጢራዊ ሴራዎች የሚደግፍ ማንኛውም ሀገር፣ እነሆ ይጠፋል፤ ምክንያቱም ደማቸው በእነርሱ የፈሰሰባቸው ቅዱሳንን በእነርሱ ላይ ለበቀል ሁልጊዜም ከምድር እንዲጮኹ እናም ተመልሶም እንዳይበቀላቸው ጌታ አይፈቅድምና።

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

፳፫ ስለሆነም፣ አህዛብ ሆይ፣ ስለዚህ ለኃጢአቶቻችሁ ንስሃ ትገቡ ዘንድ፣ እናም ሥልጣንን እና ጥቅምን ለማግኘት የተሰሩት እነዚህ የግድያ ህብረቶችም ከእናንተ በላይ እንዲሆኑ እንዳትፈቅዱላቸው እነዚህ ነገሮች ለእናንተ መታየታቸው ለእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ ነው— እናም አዎን፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች እንዲሆኑም ከፈቀዳችሁ ሥራው አዎን፣ የጥፋት ሥራም በእናንተ ላይ ይሆናል፣ አዎን፣ የዘላለማዊው አምላክ የፍርድ ጎራዴ እናንተን ለመፈንቀል እና ለማጥፋት በላያችሁ ላይ ይወድቃል።

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

፳፬ ስለሆነም፣ በዚህ በእናንተ መካከል በመጣው ሚስጢራዊው ሴራ የተነሳ እነዚህን ነገሮች በእናንተ ላይ መምጣታቸውን በምትመለከቱበት ጊዜ፣ ስለአስቃቂ ሁኔታችሁ ሰሜታችሁን እንድታነቁ ዘንድ ጌታ ያዛችኋል፤ ወይም በተገደሉት ደማቸውም መፍሰስም የተነሳ ወዮላቸው፤ ምክንያቱም በዚህ ላይ እናም ደግሞ ይህን ባቋቋሙት ላይ ለበቀል ከመሬት ይጮሃሉና።

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ይሆናል ሚስጢራዊውን ህብረት የመሰረተ የምድርን፣ የሀገሪቷን እና የህዝቡን ነፃነት ለመጣል ይፈልጋል፤ እናም የሀሰት አባት በሆነው፣ እንዲሁም የመጀመሪያ ወላጆቻችንን ያታለለው፣ አዎን፣ ይኸው ሀሰተኛ በሆነው የሰውን ልጅ ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ ባሳሳተው፣ ከመጀመሪያ ጀምሮ የሰዎችንም ልብ ነቢያትን እንዲገድሉ አደባቸው፣ በድንጋይ እንዲወግሩ አደባቸው፣ እናም እንዲጥሏቸው ባጠጠረው በሀሰት አባት በዲያብሎስ የተገነባ ስለሆነ፣ ይህም የህዝብን ሁሉ ጥፋት ያመጣል።

፳፮ ስለዚህ፣ ክፉ ነገርም ይወገድ ዘንድ፣ እናም ስይጣንም በሰው ልጆች ልብ ላይ ኃይል የማያገኝበት፣ ነገር ግን ያለማቋረጥ መልካም ነገርን ለመሰራት የሚገፋፋበት፣ ወደ ሁሉም ፅድቁ ምንጭ መጥተው የሚድኑበት ጊዜ ይመጣ ዘንድ እኔ ሞሮኒ እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድፅፍ ታዘዝኩ።

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

ኤተር ፱

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞሮኒ ታሪኬን እቀጥላለሁ። ስለዚህ፣ እነሆ፣ እንዲህ ሆነ በእኪሽ እናም በወዳጆቹ ሚስጥራዊ ሴራዎች ምክንያት፤ እነሆ፣ የእመርን መንግስት ገለበጡት።

፪ ይህን እንጂ፤ ጌታ የእመርንና የእርሱን ጥፋት ለማይፈልጉት፣ ለወንዶችና ለሴቶች ልጆቹ መሃሪ ነበር።

፫ እና ጌታ ኦመር ምድሪቷን ለቆ እንዲወጣ በህልሙ አስጠነቀቀው፤ ስለሆነም ኦመር ከቤተሰቦቹ ጋር ምድሪቱን ለቆ ወጣ፤ እናም ለብዙ ቀናትም ተጓዘ፣ እናም ወደ ሺም ኮረብታ መጥቶ ኔፋውያን በጠፋበት ቦታ ደረሱ። እናም ከዚያም ወደምስራቅ ሄደ፤ እናም በባህሩ ዳርቻም አብሎም ተብሎ በሚጠራው ቦታ ደረሰ እናም በዚያ ሰፍራ ድንኳኑን ተከለ፣ ደግሞ ከያሬድና ከቤተሰቦቹ በስተቀር ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቹ እናም ሁሉም ቤተሰቦቹ ድንኳኖቻቸውን ተከሉ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ያሬድም በክፋት እጅ በህዝቡ ላይ ንጉስ ሆኖ ተቀባ፤ እናም ለእኪሽም ሴት ልጁን ለሚሰትነት ሰጠው።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኪሽም አማቱን ለመግደል ፈለገ፤ እናም በጥንት ጊዜ በማሉት መሃላም እንርሱን እርዳታ ጠየቃቸው፣ እናም አማቱ በዙፋኑ ላይ ተቀምጦ ህዝቡን እየተነጋገረ እያለ ገድለውት ለእርሱም ራሱን ሰጡት።

፮ ሚስጥራዊው እናም የጎጢአተኞቹ ሕብረት እጅግ በዝቶ ስለነበር፣ የሁሉንም ሕዝብ ልብ አበላሽቶ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ያሬድ በዙፋኑ ላይ ተገደለ፣ እናም እኪሽ በእርሱ ቦታ ነገሰ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኪሽም በወንድ ልጁ መቅናት ጀመረ፤ ስለዚህ በወህኒ ቤትም ዘጋው፣ እናም እስከሚሞትም ድረስ ትንሽ ምግብ በመስጠት አቆየው።

፰ እናም እንግዲህ እንዲሞት የተሰቃየው ልጅ ወንድም (ሰሙም ኒምራህ ነበር) አባቱ በወንድሙ ላይ ባደረገው ነገር ተቆጣ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኒምራህ ጥቂት ቁጥር ያላቸውን ሰዎች በአንድነት ሰበሰበ፣ እናም ከምድሪቱ ሸሸ፣ እናም ሄደና ከኦመር ጋር ኖረ።

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አኪሽም ሌሎች ወንዶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ እናም በሀዘቡም እምነትን አገኘ፤ ይሁን እንጂ እርሱ እንደፈለገው ሁሉንም አይነት ክፋት ለማድረግ ምለውለታል።

፲፩ አሁን አኪሽ ሥልጣን እንደሚፈልግ ሁሉ፣ የአኪሽ ሀዘብም ጥቅም ለማግኘት ይፈልጉ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ የአኪሽ ወንዶች ልጆች በገንዘባቸው ብዙ ሰዎች እንዲከተሉአቸው ሳቡአቸው።

፲፪ እናም ለብዙ ዓመታት የቆየ ጦርነትም በአኪሽ ወንድ ልጆች እና በአኪሽ መካከል ተጀመረ፤ እምነ፣ በዚያን መንግሥት ስር የነበሩት ሰዎች፤ እምነ ከሰላሳዎቹ ሰዎች እናም ከአመር ቤት ጋር ከሸሹት ሰዎች በስተቀር ሁሉም ጠፋ።

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ አመር በድጋሚ ወደ ርስት ምድሩ ተመለሰ።

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አመርም አረጀ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ በእርጅናው ወቅት ኤመርን ወለደ፤ እናም በእርሱም ምትክ እንዲነገስ ንጉስ እንዲሆን ኤመርን ቀባው።

፲፭ እናም ኤመር ንጉስ እንዲሆን ከቀባው በኋላ ለሁለት ዓመታት ያህል በምድሪቱ ላይ ሠላምን አገኘ፤ እናም በሀዘን የተሞሉ እጅግ ብዙ የሆኑ ቀናትን እየተመለከተ ከኖረ በኋላ ሞተ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኤመርም በእርሱ ቦታ ነገሰ እናም የአባቱንም አርአያ ተከተለ።

፲፮ እናም ጌታ አርግማኑን ከምድሪቱ በድጋሚ ማሰወገድ ጀመረ፣ እናም በኤመር አገዛዝም የኤመር ቤት እጅግ በልፅጎ ነበር፤ እናም ለሰልሳ ሁለት ዓመታትም እጅግ ሀብታም እስከሚሆኑ ድረስ እጅግ ጠንካሮች ሆነው ነበር፤

፲፯ ከሁሉም ዓይነት ፍራፍሬ፣ እናም እህል፣ እናም ሃር፣ እናም መልካም ናይላን፣ እናም ወርቅ፣ እናም ብር፣ እናም የከበሩ ነገሮች ነበሯቸው፤

፲፰ እናም ደግሞ ሁሉም ዓይነት የቀንድ ከብት፣ በሬዎች እናም ላሞች፣ እናም በግ፣ እናም አሳማ፣ እናም ፍየሎች፣ እናም ደግሞ ለሰዎች ለምግብነት ጠቃሚ የሆኑ በርካታ ሌሎች እንስሳት ነበሯቸው።

፲፱ እናም ደግሞ ፈረሶች፣ እናም አህዮች፣ እናም ዝሆኖች፣ እናም ኩረሎም፣ እናም ኮሞም፣ ነበሩአቸው፤ ሁሉም እናም በተለይ ዝሆኖቹ፣ እናም ኩረሎሞቹም እንዲሁም ኩሞሞቹ ለሰዎች ጠቃሚ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

፳፫ እናም ጌታም በዚህች ከምድር ሁሉ በላይ በተመረጠችው መሬት ላይ በረከቱን እንደዚህ እፍሰሶአል፤ እናም እርሱም ይህችን ምድር የያዘ ለጌታ እንደሚይዝ አለበለዚያ ግን በክፋት በደረሱ ጊዜ ግን እንደሚጠፋ አዘቸዋል፤ እንደዚህ አይነቶቹም ላይ፣ አለ ጌታ፣ የቁጣዬን ሙሉት አፈሰሳለሁና።

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

፳፬ እናም ኤመር በዘመኑ ሁሉ በፅድቅ ፍርድን ፈፅሟል፤ እናም ብዙ ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ እናም ቆሪያንቱምን ወለደ፣ እናም በእርሱ ቦታም እንዲነግሰ ቀባው።

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

፳፭ እናም ቆሪያንቱም በእርሱ ምትክ እንዲነግሰ ከቀባው በኋላ፣ ለአራት ዓመት ኖረ፣ እናም በምድሪቱም ላይ ሠላምን ተመለከተ፤ አዎን፣ እናም ደግሞም የጸድቅነትን ልጅ ተመልክቷል፣ እናም በዘመኑም ተደሰቷል፣ እናም ከብሯል፣ እናም በሰላም ሞተ።

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንቱም የአባቱን ዲካ ተከተለ፤ እናም ብዙ ታላላቅ ከተሞችን መሰረተ፣ እናም በዘመኑ ሁሉ ለህዝቡ መልካም የነበረውን አበረከተ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጣም እስከሚያረጅም ድረስ ልጆች አልነበሩትም።

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሚስቱም መቶ ሁለት ዓመት ሲሆናት ሞተች። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንቱም በእርጅናው ወጣት አገልጋይ የሆነችን አገባ፣ እናም ወንዶች እና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ ስለዚህ አንድ መቶ አርባ ሁለት ዓመት እስከሚሆነው ድረስ ኖረ።

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆምን ወለደ፣ እናም ቆምም በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ፤ እናም እርሱም ለዓርባ ዘጠኝ ዓመታት ነገሰ፤ እናም እርሱም ሌሎች ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ።

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

፳፱ እናም ህዝቡም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ እንደገና ተሰራጩ፣ እናም በድጋሚ በምድሪቱ ላይ እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ኃጢያት ተጀመረ፤ እናም ሌሎችም አባቱን ለማጥፋት የጥንቱን ሚስጥራዊ ዕቅድ በድጋሚ ማቀፍ ጀመረ።

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

፳፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም አባቱን በራሱ ጎራዴ በመግደል ከዙፋኑ ላይ አወረደው፤ እናም እርሱ በምትኩ ነገሰ።

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

፳፯ እናም እነርሱም የጌታን መንገድ ማዘጋጀት እንዳለባቸው፣ አለበለዚያ በምድሪቱ ላይ እርግማን እንደሚመጣ፣ አዎን ንስሃ ካልገቡ ታላቅ ረሃብ እንደሚሆን በዚህም ብዙዎች እንደሚጠፉ የሚናገሩ፣ ለንስሃ የሚጮኹ ነቢያት በድጋሚም በምድሪቱ ላይ መጡ።

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

፳፱ ነገር ግን ህዝቡ የነቢያቱን ቃላት አላመኑም፤ ነገር ግን እነርሱን አባረሩአቸው፤ እናም ጥቂቶቹን በጉድጓድ ጣሉአቸው፤ እናም እንዲሞቱ ተወኔቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነዚህን ነገሮች ሁሉ ያደረጉትም በንጉሱ ሔት ትዕዛዝ መሰረት ነበር።

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱም ላይ ታላቅ ድርቅ ተጀመረ፤ እናም ነዋሪዎቹም በድርቁ የተነሳ እጅግ ፈጣን በሆነ ሁኔታ ማለቅ ጀመሩ፤ በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ምንም ዝናብ አልነበረምና።

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ደግሞ መርዛማ አባቦች መጡ፤ እናም ብዙ ሰዎችን ነደፉአቸው። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከብቶቻቸውም ከመርዛማው አባቦች ፊት በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል በኔፋውያን ዛራሔምላ ተብሎ ወደሚጠራው ሸሹ።

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚሸሹበት ጊዜም ብዙዎች ሞቱ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ጥቂቶቹም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል የሸሹ ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

፴፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም አባቦቹ በማሳደድ እንዳይከተሉአቸው፣ ነገር ግን ህዝቡ ማለፍ እንዳይችሉ፣ ለማለፍ የሚጥሩትም በመርዛማዎቹ አባቦች ምክንያት እንዲወድቁ እንዲያሰናክሏቸው አደረገ።

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም አራዊቶች ያለፉበትን መንገድ ተከተሉ፤ እናም ሁሉንም እስኪመገቡ ድረስ የወዳደቁትን የከብት ሰጋዎች ይመገቡ ነበር። እንግዲህ ህዝቡም መጥፋት እንዳለባቸው በተመለከቱ ጊዜ ለጥፋቶቻቸው ንሰሃ መግባት ጀመሩ፤ እናም ወደ ጌታ ጮኹ።

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

፴፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በጌታም ፊት እራሳቸውን በብቃት ዝቅ ሲያደርጉ፣ እርሱም በምድሪቱ ገፅ ላይ ዝናብ ላከ፤ እናም ህዝቡም በድጋሚ ነፍስ ዘሩ፤ እናም በምድሪቱም ዙሪያ ሁሉ እናም በሃገሪቱ በስተሰሜን ፍራፍሬ በቀለ። እናም ጌታም ከረሃብ እነርሱን በመጠበቅ ኃይሉን አሳያቸው።

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

ኤተር ፲

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሼዝ የሔት ዘር የነበረው—ሔት በረሃቡ ሞቷል፡ እናም ከሼዝ በስተቀር ቤተሰቡ በሙሉ ሞቷል— ስለዚህ፡ ሼዝም የተጎዱትን ሰዎች ማጠናከር ጀመረ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሼዝም የአባቶቹን አሟሟት አስታወሰ፤ እናም እርሱም ጸድቃዊ የሆነ መንግስት መሰረተ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ ጌታ ያሬድን እና ወንድሙን ባህሩን አሻግሮ ሲያመጣቸው ያደረገውን ያስታውሳልና፤ እናም እርሱም የጌታን መንገድ ተከተለ፤ እናም እርሱም ወንዶችን እና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ።

፫ እናም ታላቁ ልጁ፣ ሼዝ ተብሎ የሚጠራው በእርሱ ላይ ተነሳበት፤ ይሁን እንጂ ሼዝም እጅግ ሀብታም በመሆኑ በሌሎች ተገደለ፡ ይህም ለአባቱ ሠላምን በድጋሚ አስገኘ።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አባቱም በምድሪቱ ላይ ብዙ ከተሞችን አቋቋመ፡ እናም ህዝቡ በድጋሚ በምድሪቱ ላይ ተሰራጩ። እናም ሼዝም እጅግ እስከሚያረጅ ድረስ ኖረ፤ እናም ሪፕላኪሽን ወለደ። እናም እርሱ ሞተ፤ እናም ሪፕላኪሽ በእርሱ ቦታ ነገሰ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሪፕላኪሽም በጌታ ዐይን የሚሰራው ትክክል አልነበረም፤ ምክንያቱም ብዙ ሚስቶች እና እቁባቶች ነበሩትና፤ እናም በሰዎች ትከሻም ለመሸከም የማይቻል አሳረፈ፡ አዎን፣ ሰዎችንም ከባድ ቀረጥ ይቀርጣቸው ነበር፤ እናም በቀረጡም የሚያምሩ የተሰፋፋ ህንጻዎች ይገነባ ነበር።

፮ እናም ለራሱም እጅግ የሚያምር ዙፋን ሠራ፤ እናም ብዙ ወህኒ ቤቶችንም ሠራ እናም ቀረጥ የማይከፍሉትንም ሰዎች ወህኒ ቤት አስገባቸው፤ እናም ቀረጥ ለመክፈል የማይችልም እስር ቤት እንዲገባ ይደረጋል፤ እናም እርሱም እራሳቸውን እንዲደግፉ ያለማቋረጥ እንዲሰሩ አደረጋቸው፤ እናም ለመሰራት ፈቃደኛ ያልሆነውንም እንዲሞት አደረገ።

፯ ስለሆነም መልካም የሆኑ ሰራውን በሙሉ አገኘ፤ አዎን፣ መልካም የሆነውን ወርቅም በእስር ቤት እንዲጣራ አደረገ፤ እናም የሚያምረውን የእጅ ሥራም በእስር ቤት እንዲሠራ አደረገ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዝሙቱ እናም በእርኩስቱ ህዝቡን አሳዘና ነበር።

፰ እናም ለእርባ ሁለት ዓመታት በነገሰ ጊዜ ህዝቡ በአመፅ በእርሱ ላይ ተነሳተውበት ነበር፤ እናም በድጋሚም በምድሪቱ ላይ ጦርነት ተጀመረ፤ በዚህም ሪፕላኪሽ ተገደለ፡ እናም ዘርቹ ከምድሪቱ ተባረሩ።

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከብዙ ዓመታት በኋላ፣ ሞሪያንተን (የሪፕላክሽ ዘር የነበረው) ህዝቡ የተቃወማቸውን ወታደሮች በአንድነት ሰበሰቡ፣ እናም ወደፊት ሔደ እናም ከህዝቡም ጋር ተዋጋ፤ እናም እርሱም በብዙ ከተሞች ላይ ሥልጣን አገኘ፤ እናም ጦርነቱም እጅግ የሚያሳዝን ነበር፤ እናም ለብዙ ዓመታትም ቆየ፤ እናም እርሱም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ሥልጣንን አገኘ፣ እናም በምድሪቱ ላይም እራሱን ንጉስ አደረገ።

፲ እናም እራሱንም ንጉስ ካደረገ በኋላ የህዝቡን ሸክም አቀለለ፣ በዚህም በህዝቡ አመለካከት ተወዳጅነትን አገኘ፣ እናም እነርሱም ንጉሳቸው አድርገው ቀቡት።

፲፩ እናም ህዝቡን በፍትህ ገዛ፣ ነገር ግን በርካታ ዝሙትን ስለሚፈፀም ለራሱ ትክክል አላደረገም፤ ስለዚህ ከጌታ ፊት ተለየ።

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሪያንተን ብዙ ከተሞችን ሠራ፣ እናም ህዝቡም በእርሱ ንግሰናም በህንፃዎች፣ እናም በወርቅ፣ እናም በብር፣ እናም እህል በማብቀል፣ እናም ከብቶችን በማርባት፣ እጅግ ሀብታሞች ሆኑ፣ እናም እንደዚህ አይነት ነገሮችም እንደቀደሙት ጊዜያት ሆኑላቸው።

፲፫ እናም ሞሪያንተን እጅግ ታላቅ ለሆነ እድሜ ሮረ፣ እና ከዚያም ቁምን ወለደ፤ እናም ቁምም በአባቱ ሞትክ ነገሰ፤ እናም ለሰምንት ዓመታት ነገሰ፣ እናም አባቱም ሞተ። እንዲህ ሆነ ቁም በፅድቅ አልነገሰም፣ ስለሆነም በጌታ አልተወደደም።

፲፬ እናም ወንድሙም በአመፅ ተነሳበት፣ በዚህም በእስር እንዲሆን አደረገው፤ እናም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በእስር ቤት ተቀመጠ፤ እናም በእስር እያለ ወንዶች እና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፣ እናም በእርጅናውም ሌዊን ወለደ፤ እናም ሞተ።

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌዊ አባቱ ከሞተ በኋላ ለእርባ ሁለት ዓመታት በእስር ቤት አገለገለ። እናም ከምድሪቱ ንጉስ ጋር ተዋጋ፣ እናም በዚህ መንግሥቱን ለራሱ አገኘ።

፲፮ እናም መንግሥቱንም እራሱ ካገኘው በኋላ በጌታ ዐይን መልካም የሆነውን አደረገ፤ እናም ህዝቦቹ በምድሪቱ ላይ በለፀጉ፣ እናም እስከ እርጅናውም በመልካም ሁኔታ ሮረ፤ እናም ሴቶችን እና ወንዶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ እናም ደግሞ በእርሱ ሞትክ ንጉስ አድርጎ የቀባውን ቆሮምን ወለደ።

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆይቶም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በጌታ ፊት መልካም የሆነውን ነገርን ሠራ፤ እናም ብዙ ሴቶች እና ወንዶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ እናም ለረጅም ጊዜ በምድር ላይ ከኖረ በኋላ፣ ልክ እንደሌሎቹ ምድራዊያን ሁሉ ህይወቱ አለፈች፤ እናም ኪሽም በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ።

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኪሽም ደግሞ ሞተ፣ እናም ሊብ በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሊብም ደግሞ በጌታ ፊት መልካም የሆነን ነገር አደረገ። እናም በሊብ ዘመን መርዛማዎቹም አባቦች ጠፍተው ነበር። ስለሆነም ህዝቡም በምድሪቱ በስተደቡብ በኩል ምግብ ለማደን ተጓዙ፣ ምክንያቱም በጫካ አውሬዎች ተሸፍኖ ነበርና። እናም ሊብም ደግሞ ታላቅ አዳኝ ሆነ።

፳ እናም በምድሪቱ ቀጭን በሆነው፣ ምድሪቱን የሚከፍለው ባህር ባለበት ሥፍራ አጠገብ ታላቅ ከተማን ሠሩ።

፳፩ እናም በምድሪቱም በስተደቡብ በኩል ያለውን ምድረበዳ የዱር አውሬ ለማግኘት ሲሉ ጠበቁት። እናም በስተሰሜን ያለው ምድር በሙሉ በነዋሪዎች ተሸፍኗል።

፳፪ እናም እነርሱም እጅግ ሠራተኞች ነበሩ፤ እናም እርሰ በርሳቸውም ጥቅምን ያገኙ ዘንድ ይጓዙ፣ እናም ይሸጡ፣ እናም ይለዋወጡ ነበር።

፳፫ እናም በሁሉም አይነት የብረት አፈር፣ እናም ወርቅ፣ እናም ብር፣ እናም ብረት፣ እናም ነሀስ፣ እናም ሁሉም አይነት ብረታ ብረቶች ይሰሩ ነበር፤ እናም ከመሬትም ቆፍረው ያወጡት ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ ከወርቅ፣ እናም ከብር፣ እናም ከብረት፣ እናም ከመዳብ የብረት አፈር ለማግኘት አፈር ይቆልሉ ነበር። እናም መልካም ሥራዎችን ሁሉ ሠርተዋል።

፳፬ እናም ሀርና የተፈተለ ጥሩ በፍታ ነበሯቸው፤ እናም ዕርቃናቸውን ይሸፍኑበትም ዘንድ ሁሉንም አይነት ልብሶች ሠሩ።

፳፭ እናም መሬቱን ለማረስ፣ እናም እርሰውም ለመዝራት፤ ለመስብስብ፣ እናም ለመቆፈር፣ እናም ደግሞ ለመውቃት ሁሉንም አይነት መሳሪያዎች ሠሩ።

፳፮ እናም በእንሰሳቶቹም ተረድተው ሰራቸውን ለመስራት ሁሉንም መሳሪያዎች ሠሩ።

፳፯ እናም ሁሉንም አይነት የጦር መሳሪያዎች ሠሩ። እናም እጅግ አስገራሚ የእጅ ሥራዎችን ሁሉ ሠሩ።

፳፰ እናም ማንኛውም ህዝብ ከዚህ የበለጠ ሊባረክ እናም በጌታም እጅ በጭራሽ ሊሳካለት አይቻለውም። እናም ከምድሪቱም ይበልጥ በተመረጠችው ምድር ላይ ነበሩም፣ ጌታ ይህን ተናግሯልና።

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሊብ ለብዙ ዓመታት ኖረ፣ እናም ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆችን ወለደ፤ እናም ደግሞ እርሱም ሔርቶምን ወለደ።

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሔርቶምም በአባቱ ምትክ ነገሰ። እናም ሔርቶም ለሃያ አራት ዓመታት በነገሰ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ መንግሥቱ ከእርሱ ተወሰደ። እናም ለብዙ ዓመታት፣ አዎን በቀሪው ዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዛት አገለገለ።

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

፴፩ እናም ሔትን ወለደ፣ እናም ሔትም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዛት ኖረ። እናም ሔትም አርገን ወለደ፣ እናም አርገም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በእስር ኖረ፤ እናም እርሱም አምኒጋዳን ወለደ፣ እናም አምኒጋዳም ደግሞ በዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዛት ኖረ፤ እናም እርሱም ቆሪያንቱምን ወለደ፣ እናም ቆሪያንቱምም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዛት ኖረ፤ እናም እርሱም ቆምን ወለደ።

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆምም ከመንግሥቱ ግማሽ የሚሆነውን ወደ እርሱ ሳብ። እናም እርሱም በግማሽ መንግሥቱ ለአርባ ሁለት ዓመታት ነገሠ፤ እናም እርሱም ከንጉሱ አምጊድ ጋር ለመዋጋት ሔደ፤ እናም እነርሱም ለብዙ ዓመታት ተዋጉ፣ በዚያን ጊዜም ቆም በአምጊድ ላይ ኃይልን አገኘ እናም በተቀረው መንግሥት ላይም ኃይልን አገኘ።

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

፴፫ እናም በቆም ዘመንም በምድሪቱ ዘራፊዎች መምጣት ጀመሩ፤ እናም የጥንቱን ዕቅድ ተከተሉ፤ እናም እንደጥንቱም መሃላቸውን ፈፀሙ፣ እናም መንግሥቱን ለማጥፋት በድጋሚ ተመኙ።

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

፴፬ እንግዲህ ቆምም ከእነርሱ ጋር ለረጅም ጊዜ ተዋጋ፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ አላሸነፋቸውም ነበር።

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

ኤተር 16

፩ እናም ደግሞ በቆም ዘመን ብዙ ነቢያት ተነሱ፤ እናም ያ ታላቅ ህዝብም ንስሃ ካልገባ እናም ወደጌታ ካልተመለሱ፤ እናም ግድያቸውን እናም ክፋታቸውን ካላቆሙ እንደሚጠፉ ትንቢት ተናገሩ።

፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ነቢያቱም በህዝቡ ተቀባይነትን አልገኙም ነበር፤ እናም ህዝቡም ለገደሏቸው ሰለፈሉት የቆምን ጥበቃ ለማግኘት ወደ እርሱ ሸሹ።

፫ እናም ለቆምም ብዙ ነገሮችን ተነበዩለት፤ እናም እርሱም በቀሪው ዘመኑ ሁሉ የተባረከ ነበር።

፬ እናም በመልካም እርጅና ሁኔታ ውስጥ ኖረ፤ እናም ሺብሎምንም ወለደ፤ ሺብሎምም በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ። እናም የሺብሎምም ወንድም በእርሱ ላይ አመጠበት፤ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ እጅግ ታላቅ የሆነ ጦርነትም ተጀመረ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሺብሎም ወንድምም ሰለህዝቡ መጥፋት የተነበዩት ነቢያት በሙሉ እንዲገደሉ አደረገ፤

፮ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ታላቅ መቅሰፍት ሆነ፤ ምክንያቱም ለኃጢአታቸውም ንስሃ ካልገቡ ታላቅ እርግጫን በምድሪቱ ላይ፤ እናም ደግሞ በህዝቡ ላይ እንደሚሆን፤ እናም ከዚህ በፊት በምድር ላይ ታይቶ የማይታወቅ ታላቅ ጥፋትም በመካከላቸው እንደሚሆን፤ እናም ንስሃ ካልገቡ አጥንቶቻቸውም በመሬት ላይ እንደተራራ እንደሚቆሉም መሰክረዋል።

፯ እናም በክፋው ህብረታቸው የተነሳ የጌታን ድምፅ አላዳመጡም፤ ስለዚህ፤ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ጦርነት እናም ፀብ ተጀመረ፤ እናም ደግሞ ብዙ ረሃብ እና ቸነፈር ሆነ፤ በዚህም የተነሳ ታላቅ ጥፋት ከዚህ በፊት በምድር ላይ ታይቶ የማይታወቅ ሆነ፤ እናም ይህ ሁሉ የሆነው በሺብሎም ዘመን ነበር።

፰ እናም ህዝቡም ለጥፋቶቻቸው ንስሃ መግባት ጀመሩ፤ እናም ይህንንም ባደረጉ ጊዜ ጌታ በእነርሱ ላይ ምህረት አደረገላቸው።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺብሎም ተገደለ፤ እናም ሴትም ወደ ምርኮ ተወሰደ፤ እናም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በምርኮ ኖረ።

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inasmuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ልጁ አሃህ መንግሥቱን አገኘ፤ እናም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በህዝቡ ላይ ነገሰ። እናም እርሱም በዘመኑ ብዙ አይነት ክፋቶችን አደረገ፤ በዚያም ብዙ ደም እንዲፈሰ አደረገ፤ እናም የእርሱም ዘመን ጥቂት ነበር።

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

፲፩ እናም ኤተም፣ የአሃህ ወገን በመሆኑም መንግሥቱን አገኘ፤ እናም እርሱም ደግሞ በዘመኑ መጥፎ የሆነውን አደረገ።

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በኤተም ዘመን ብዙ ነቢያቶች መጡ፣ እናም በህዝቡም ላይ ትንቢትን ተናገሩ፤ አዎን፣ ለኃጢአቶቻቸው ንሰሃ ካልገቡ በስተቀር ጌታ ፈፅሞ ከምድር ላይ እንደሚያጠፋቸውም ተነበዩ።

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም ልባቸውን አጠጠሩ፤ እናም ቃላቸውንም አላዳመጡም፤ እናም ነቢያቶቹም አዙ። እናም ከህዝቡ መካከል ወጡ።

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኤተም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በክፋት ፍርድን ፈፀመ፤ እናም ሞሮንን ወለደ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮንም በእርሱ ምትክ ነገሰ፤ ሞሮንም በጌታ ፊት መጥፎ የሆነውን አደረገ።

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሰልጣንን እናም ጥቅምን ለማግኘት በተቋቋመው ሚስጢራዊ ሴራ የተነሳ በህዝቡ መካከል አመፅ ተነሳ፤ እናም በእነርሱም መካከል በክፋት ኃያል የሆነ ሰው ተነሳ፣ እናም እርሱም ከሞሮን ጋር ተዋጋ፣ ከዚያም የመንግሥቱን ግማሽ አሸነፈ፤ እናም እርሱም ለብዙ ዓመታት ግማሹን መንግሥት አስተዳደረ።

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሞሮንም አሸነፈው፣ እናም መንግሥቱን በድጋሚ ያዘ።

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌላም ኃያል ሰው ተነሳ፤ እርሱም የያሬድ ወንድም ወገን ነበር።

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱም ሞሮንን በማሸነፍ መንግሥቱን ያዘ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ሞሮን በተቀረው ዘመኑ በግዙት ኖረ፤ እናም እርሱም ቆሪያንቶር ወለደ።

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንቶር በዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዙት ኖረ።

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

፳፮ እናም በቆሪያንቶርም ዘመን ደግሞ ብዙ ነቢያቶች ተነሱ፤ እናም ታላቅ እናም አሰገራሚ ነገሮችን ተነበዩ፤ እናም ወደ ህዝቡም ለንሰሃ ጮኹ፤ እናም ንሰሃ ካልገቡ በሰተቀር ጌታ እግዚአብሔርም እነርሱን ፈፅሞ በማጥፋት ፍርድን እንደሚፈፀም ተናገሩ፤

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

፳፯ እናም ጌታ እግዚአብሔር በሰልጣኑ አባቶቻቸውን እንዳመጣ ሌሎች ሰዎች ምድሪቱን እንዲወርሱ እንደሚልክ ወይም እንደሚያመጣ ተናገሩ።

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

፳፱ እናም እነርሱም በሚሰጡራዊው ህብረት እናም ክፉ በሆነው እርኩስታቸው የነቢያቱን ቃላት በሙሉ አልተቀበሉም።

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

፳፻ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንቶር ኤተርን ወለደ፤ እናም በዘመኑ ሁሉ በግዛት ኖሮ ሞተ።

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

ኤተር 1፪

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የኤተር ዘመን በቆሪያንተመር ዘመን ነበር፤ እናም ቆሪያንተመር በምድሪቱ በሙሉ ላይ ንጉስ ነበር።

፪ እናም ኤተርም የጌታ ነቢይ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ ኤተር በቆሪያንተመር ዘመን ተነሳ፤ እናም ለህዝቡ መተንበይ ጀመረ፤ በውስጡ በነበረው የጌታ መንፈስ መንስኤ ሊታገት አይቻልም።

፫ እርሱም ከማለዳ ጀምሮ ፀሐይ እስከምትጠልቅ ህዝቡም ንሰሃ በመግባት በእግዚአብሔር እንዲያምኑ አለበለዚያ እንደሚጠፋ በመምከር፤ ለእነርሱም በእምነት ሁሉም ነገሮች ለመሟላት እንደሚችሉ በመንገር ጮኹ—

፬ ስለሆነም፣ በእግዚአብሔር የሚያምን በእርግጥ ለተሻለ ዓለም፣ አዎን፣ በእግዚአብሔር ቀኝ እጅ በኩል ያለውን ስፍራ እንኳ ለመግኘት ተስፋ ይኖረዋል፤ ይኸውም ተስፋ በእምነት የሚመጣ ነው፤ ተስፋም ለሰዎች ነፍስ እንደመሃልቅ ነው፤ እነርሱንም ፅኑ እና የማይነቃነቁ እንዲሆኑ እናም ሁልጊዜም በርካታ መልካም ነገሮችን እንዲሰሩ፤ እግዚአብሔርንም እንዲያከብሩ ያደርጋቸዋል።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኤተር ታላቅ እና አስገራሚ ነገሮችን ለህዝቡ ተነበየላቸው፤ እነርሱ ግን ሰላላዩት አላመኑበትም።

፮ እናም አሁን፣ እኔ ሞሮኒ፣ ስለነዚህ ነገሮች በመጠኑ እናገራለሁ፤ እምነት ተስፋ የምናደርጋቸው ነገሮች ነገር ግን የማናያቸው መሆኑን ለዓለምም አሳያለሁ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ሰላላያችሁ አትከራከሩ፣ ምክንያቱም እምነታችሁ እስከሚፈተን ድረስ ምሰክርነትን አትቀበሉም።

፯ ምክንያቱም ክርስቶስ ከሞት ከተነሳ በኋላ እራሱን ለአባቶቻችን ያሳየው በእምነት ነበር፤ እነርሱም በእርሱ እምነት እስከሚኖራቸው ድረስ እራሱን አልገለጹላቸውም፤ ስለሆነም፣ እንዳንደቹ በእርሱ ላይ እምነት ሳይኖራቸው አልቀረም፣ ምክንያቱም እራሱን ለዓለም አላሳየም።

፰ ነገር ግን ሰዎች በማመናቸው እራሱን ለዓለም አሳይቷል፣ እናም የአብንም ስም አክብሯል፣ እና ሌሎች ከሰማያዊው ስጦታ ይካፈሉ ዘንድ፣ ባልተመለከቷቸውም ነገሮች ተስፋ ያደርጉ ዘንድ መንገዱን አዘጋጅቷል።

፱ ስለዚህ፣ እናንተ ደግሞ ተስፋን ማድረግ፣ እናም እምነት ካላችሁ ከሰጦታው ተካፋዮች ለመሆን ትችላላችሁ።

፲ እነሆ የጥንቶቹም ቅዱስ ወደሆነው የእግዚአብሔር ስርዓት የሚጠሩት በእምነታቸው ነበር።

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

፲፩ ስለሆነም፣ በእምነት ነበር የሙሴ ህግ የተሰጠው። ነገር ግን እግዚአብሔርም በልጁ ሰጦታም ይበልጥ የተመረጠውን መንገድ አዘጋጅቷል፤ እናም ይህም የተሟላው በእምነት ነው።

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

፲፪ በሰው ልጆች መካከል እምነት ከሌለ እግዚአብሔር በመካከላቸው ተአምር መሰራት አይችልም፤ ስለሆነም እስከሚያምኑ ድረስ እራሱን አልገለጸላቸውም።

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

፲፫ እነሆ፣ የአልማ እና የአሙሌቅ እምነትም ነው ወህኒ ቤቱ ወደምድር እንዲወድቅ ያደረገው።

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

፲፬ እነሆ፣ የኔፊና የሌሂ እምነት ነበር ላማናውያንን እንዲለወጡ ያደረገው፣ ስለሆነም እነርሱም በእሳት እና በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ተጠመቁ።

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

፲፭ እነሆ፣ የአምን እና የወንድሙ እምነት ነበር ታላቅ የሆነ ተአምር በላማናውያን መካከል የሠራው።

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

፲፮ አምን፣ ከክርስቶስ በፊት የነበሩትም እንኳን እናም ደግሞ ከእርሱ በኋላ የነበሩት ተአምር የሚሰሩት ሁሉም የሰሯቸው በእምነት ነበር።

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

፲፯ እናም ሦስቱ ደቀመዛሙርት ሞትን እንዳይቀምሱ ቃል ኪዳን የተገባላቸው በእምነት ነበር፤ እናም እምነት እስከሚኖራቸው ድረስ ቃልኪዳኑን አላገኙም ነበር።

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

፲፰ እናም በማንኛውም ጊዜም እንኳን እምነት እስከሚኖራቸው ድረስ ተአምራትን ማንም አልሰራም፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱ አስቀድመው በእግዚአብሔር ልጅ እምነዋል።

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

፲፱ እናም ክርስቶስ ከመምጣቱም በፊት እንኳን በእምነታቸው እጅግ የበረቱ ብዙዎች ነበሩ፤ እነርሱም በመጋረጃው ስር ሊጠበቁ አልተቻሉም፤ ነገር ግን በእውነትም በእምነት አይን ያዩአቸውን ነገሮች በዐይናቸው አይተዋል እናም ተደሰተዋል።

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

፳ እናም እነሆ፣ በዚህ መዝገብ ውስጥም ከእነዚህ አንዱ የያሬድን ወንድም መሆኑን አይተናል፤ እርሱም በእግዚአብሔር እምነቱ ታላቅ በመሆኑ እግዚአብሔርም በጣቶቹ ሲያመለክት፣ ለእርሱም በተናገራቸው ቃላት ምክንያት፣ ከያሬድ ወንድም አይታ ሊደብቀው አልቻለም፤ ቃላቱንም እርሱ በእምነቱ ያገኛቸው ነበሩ።

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

፳፩ እናም የያሬድ ወንድም የጌታን ጣት ከተመለከተ በኋላ፣ የያሬድ ወንድም በእምነቱ ቃል ኪዳን ስለተቀበለ፣ ጌታ ከእርሱ ምንም ነገር ከአይታው ሊሰውርበትም አልቻለም፤ ስለዚህ እርሱም ሁሉንም ነገሮች አሳየው ምክንያቱም ከመጋረጃው ውጪ ከእንግዲህ ሊያስቀምጠው አይቻለውምና።

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

፳፪ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በአህዛብ አማካኝነት ለወንድሞቻቸው እንዲመጡ አባቶቻችን ቃል ኪዳንን ያገኙት በእምነት ነው፤ ስለዚህ ጌታ፣ አዎን ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስም እንኳን፣ እኔን አዘኛል።

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ስል ተናገርኩት፣ ጌታ ሆይ፣ ስንፅፍ ደካሞች በመሆናችን አህዛብ ይሳለቁብናል፤ ጌታ በእምነታችን በሚገባ እንድንናገር አድርጎናል፣ ነገር ግን በጽሁፍ ኃያላን እንድንሆን አላደረገንምና፤ መንፈስ ቅዱስንም ስለሰጠሃቸው እነዚህን ሰዎች ሁሉ ብዙ ለመናገር እንዲችሉ አድርገኻቸዋልና።

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

፳፬ እናም በእጆቻችን አስቸጋሪነት ምክንያትም ትንሽ ብቻ እንድንፅፍ አድርገኸናል። እነሆ፣ እንደያሬድ ወንድም በይበልጥ መፃፍ እንድንችል አላደረግኸንም፣ ምክንያቱም ሰዎች እንዲያነቡት የሚገፋፉበት ኃያል እንዲሆኑ እርሱ የፃፋቸውን ነገሮች እንዳንተው ሁሉ ኃያል አድርገሃቸዋል።

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

፳፭ ቃላቶቻችንን ደግሞ መፃፍ አስከማንችል ድረስ ኃያል እና ታላቅ አደረክ፤ ስለዚህ በምንፅፍበት ጊዜም ደካማነታችንን እንመለከታለን፣ እናም ቃላቶቻችን በምናስቀምጥበትም እንደናቀፋለን፤ እናም አህዛብ በቃላችን እንደሚሳለቁብን አፈራለሁ።

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

፳፮ እናም ይህን በምናገርበት ጊዜ፣ ጌታ እንዲህ ሲል ተናገረኝ፣ ሞቾች ይሳለቃሉ ነገር ግን ያዘናሉ፤ እናም ፀጋዬ ለየሆሆች በቂ ነው፣ እነርሱም በድካማችሁ ብልጫ አይወስዱባችሁም።

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

፳፯ እናም ሰዎች ወደ እኔ የሚመጡ ከሆኑ ድክመታቸውን አሳያቸዋለሁ። ሰዎች ትሁት እንዲሆኑ ድካምን አስጣቸዋለሁ፤ እናም ፀጋዬም እራሳቸውን በፊቴ ዝቅ ላደረጉ ሁሉ በቂ ነው፤ እነርሱም በፊቴ እራሳቸውን ዝቅ ካደረጉ፣ እናም በእኔም እምነት ካላቸው፣ ከዚያም ደካማ የሆኑትን ለእነርሱ ጠንካራ እንዲሆኑ አደርጋለሁ።

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

፳፰ እነሆ፣ ለአህዛብ ድካማቸውን አሳያቸዋለሁ፣ እናም እምነት፣ ተስፋ እና ልግሰና ወደ እኔ—የፅድቅ ምንጭ ሁሉ ወደሆነው እንደሚያመጣቸው አሳያቸዋለሁ።

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

፳፱ እናም እኔ ሞርኒ፣ እነዚህን ቃላት በመሰማቴ ተፅዕኖኸኝ ነበር እናም እንዲህ አልኩኝ፣ አቤቴ ጌታ የፅድቅ ፈቃድህ ይከናወናል፤ ምክንያቱም አንተ ለሰው ልጆች እንደእምነታቸው እንደምታከናውን አውቃለሁና፤

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

፴ የያሬድ ወንድም የዜሪንን ተራራ ተንቀሳቀሰ ሲለው—እርሱም ተንቀሳቀሶ ነበር። እናም እምነት ባይኖረው አይንቀሳቀስም ነበር። ስለዚህ አንተም ለሰዎች እንደ እምነታቸው ትሰራለህ።

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

፲፩ ሞክንያቱም ለደቀመዛሙርቱም ራስህን እንደዚህ አሳይተሃል፤ ባንተም ካመኑ እናም በሰምህ ከተናገሩ በኋላ ራስህን በታላቅ ኃይል አሳይተሃቸዋልና።

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

፲፪ እናም ደግሞ ለሰዎች ቤት፣ አዎን፣ በአባትህም ቤት እንኳን ማዘጋጀትህን መናገርህን አስታውሳለሁ፤ በዚህም ሰው የላቀ ተስፋ ይኖረው ዘንድ ነው፤ ስለሆነም ሰው ተስፋ ማድረግ ይገባዋል፣ አለበለዚያ አንተ ያዘጋጀኸውን ሥፍራ በውርስ ሊቀበል አይችልም።

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

፲፫ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሰዎች ልጆች ሰፍራቸውን ለማዘጋጀት እንደገና ታነሳው ዘንድ ህይወትህን አሳልፏል ለአለም እስከመሰጠት ድረስ ዓለምን መውደድህን መናገርህን አስታውሳለሁ።

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

፲፬ እናም አሁን ይህ ለሰዎች ልጆች የነበረህ ፍቅር ልግሰና እንደሆነ አውቃለሁ፤ ስለዚህ ሰዎች ልግሰና ከሌላቸው በአባትህ መኖሪያ ያዘጋጀኸውን ሰፍራ ሊወርሱ አይችሉም።

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

፲፭ ስለዚህ፣ እኛ ደካሞች በመሆናችን አህዛብ ልግሰና ከሌላቸው ትፈትናቸዋለህ እናም ተሰጦአቸውም ይወሰድባቸዋል፤ አዎን፣ ያንን የተቀበሉትንም እንኳን፣ እናም በብዛት ላላቸውም ይጨመርላቸዋል ያልከውን በዚህ ነገር አውቀዋለሁ።

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ አህዛብ ልግሰና ይኖራቸው ዘንድ ጸጋ እንዲሰጣቸው ወደ ጌታ ጸለይሁ።

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ጌታም እንዲህ አለኝ፡ ልግሰና ከሌላቸው አንተ ግድ የለህም፣ አንተ ታማኝ ነበርክ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ልብሰህ ይነፃል። እናም ድካምህን በማየትህ በአባቱ ቤት ባዘጋጀሁልህ ቦታ እንድትቀመጥ ጠንካራ ትደረጋለህ።

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

፲፰ እናም አሁን እኔ ሞርኒ፣ አህዛቦችን አዎን እናም ደግሞ የምወዳቸው ወንድሞቼን በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት እስካገኛቸው አስናበታችኋለሁ፤ በዚያም ሰዎችም በሙሉ ልብሶቼ በእናንተ ደም እንዳልተበከሉ ያውቃሉ።

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

፲፱ እና ከዚያም ኢየሱስን ማየቴን ታውቃለችሁ፣ እናም እርሱም ፊት ለፊት ተናግሮኛል፣ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች በተመለከተ አንድ ሰው ለሌላ እንደሚናገርም፣ በራሴ ቋንቋ በግልፅ በትህትና ነግሮኛል፤

፳ እናም በፀሁፍ ደካማ በመሆኔም ጥቂቱን ብቻ ፅፌአለሁ።

፳፩ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ነቢያት እና ሐዋርያት የፃፉለትን ይህንን ኢየሱስን እንድትፈልጉት እመክራችኋለሁ፤ በዚህም የእግዚአብሔር አብ ፀጋ፣ እናም ደግሞ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስና፣ ሰለእነርሱ የሚመሰክረው መንፈስ ቅዱስ በእናንተ ውስጥና፣ ከእናንተ ጋር ለዘላለም ይኑር። አሜን።

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

ኤተር ፲፫

Ether 13

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እኔ ሞርኒ፣ የዓፍኩላቸውን ሰዎች ጥፋት በተመለከተ ታሪኬን ለመጨረስ እቀጥላለሁ።

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

፪ እነሆ፣ እነርሱም የኤተርን ቃላት በሙሉ አልተቀበሉም፤ እርሱ ሰው ከተፈጠረ ጊዜ ጀምሮ ሁሉንም ነገሮች በእውነት ነግሮአቸዋል፤ እናም ውኃውም ከምድሪቱ ገፅ ከሸሸ በኋላ ከሁሉም መሬት በላይ የተመረጠች ምድር፣ በጌታ የተመረጠች ምድር እንደሆነች፤ ስለሆነም ጌታ በዚህች ምድሪቱ ላይ የሚኖሩት ሰዎች ሁሉ እንዲያገለግሉት ይፈልጋል፤

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

፫ እናም ይህም የጌታ ቅዱስ የማምለኪያ ቦታ፣ ከሰማይም የምትወርደው የአዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ሰፍራ እንደነበረችም ነግሮአቸዋል።

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

፬ እነሆ፣ ኤተር የክርስቶስን ቀናት ተመልክቷል፣ እናም በዚህች ምድር ላይም ስለአዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌምም በተመለከተ ተናግሯል።

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

፭ እናም ደግሞ ስለእስራኤል ቤት፣ እናም ሌሃ ስለመጣበት ስለኢየሩሳሌም በተመለከተ ተናግሯል— ጠላቶቹም ከተደመሰሰ በኋላ ቅዱሲቷ ከተማ ለጌታ በድጋሚ እንደምትገነባ፤ ስለዚህ ኢየሩሳሌም በጥንት ጊዜ የነበረች በመሆኗ አዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ልትሆን እንደማትችል፤ ነገር ግን በድጋሚ መገንባት እንደሚገባት፣ እናም የጌታ ቅዱስ ከተማ እንደምትሆን፤ እናም ይህችም ለእስራኤል ቤትም እንደምትገነባ ተናግሯል—

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come— after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

፮ እናም ለዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪቶችም አዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም በዚች ምድር ትገነባለች፣ ለዚህም ነገር ምሳሌ ነበር፤

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

፯ ዮሴፍ አባቱን ወደ ግብፅ እንዳመጣው እርሱም በዚያው ሞቷል፤ ስለዚህ ለዮሴፍ አባት እንዳይጠፋ መሃሪ እንደሆነለት ሁሉ የዮሴፍ ዘርም እንዳይጠፋ መሃሪ ለመሆን፣ ጌታ የዮሴፍን ዘር ቅሪት ከኢየሩሳሌም አስወጥቷል።

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

፰ ስለዚህ፣ የዮሴፍ ቤት ቅሪት በዚህ ምድር ላይ ይገነባሉ፤ ይህችም ለእነርሱ የውርስ ምድር ትሆናለች፤ እናም እንደ ጥንቷ ኢየሩሳሌምም ቅዱስ ከተማ ለጌታ ይገነባሉ፤ እናም ምድር አስከምታልፍ መጨረሻዋ እስከሚሆን ድረስ ከእንግዲህ ወዲህ አይቀላቀሉም።

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

፱ እናም አዲስ ሰማይ እና አዲስ ምድር ይኖራል፤ እናም የጥንቶቹ ከማለፋቸው በስተቀር እንደ ጥንቱ ይሆናሉ፣ እናም ሁሉም ነገሮች አዲስ ሆነዋል።

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

፲ እናም አዲሲቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ትመሰረታለች፤ እናም በእርሷም የሚኖሩባት የተባረኩ ይሆናሉ፤ ምክንያቱም በበጉ ደም ልብሳቸው የነፃው እነርሱ ናቸውና፤ እናም እነርሱም ከእስራኤል ቤት ከነበሩት ከዮሴፍ ዘር ቅሪት ጋር ተቆጥረዋልና።

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

፲፩ እናም ደግሞ የጥንቷ ኢየሩሳሌም ትመሰረታለች፤ እናም በውስጧ የሚኖሩትም የተባረኩ ናቸው። በበጉ ደም ታጥበዋልና፤ እናም እነርሱም ነበሩ ተበትነው የነበሩት፤ እናም በምድሪቷ በአራቱም ማዕዘናት፤ እናም ከሃገሪቱ ከሰባተኛው ከአብርሃም ጋር የገባውን የቃል ኪዳን በረከት ተካፋዮች የሆኑት።

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

፲፪ እናም እነዚህ ነገሮች በሚመጡበት ጊዜ እንዲህ የሚሉት ቅዱሳን መፃሕፍት ይፈጸማሉ። መጨረሻ የሚሆኑት በመጀመሪያ የነበሩት ነበሩ፤ እናም በመጨረሻ የነበሩት መጀመሪያ የሚሆኑም ነበሩ።

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

፲፫ እናም ከዚህ የበለጠን ልጽፍ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን ተከልክያለሁ፤ ነገር ግን የኤተር ትንቢቶች ታላቅና አስደናቂዎች ነበሩ፤ ነገር ግን ምንም የማይረባ አድርገው ቆጠሩት እናም አውጥተው ጣሉት፤ እናም በቀንም እራሱን በድንጋይ ዋሻ ደበቀ፤ እናም በምሽት በመሄድ ለህዝቡ መሆን ስለሚገባቸው ነገሮች ይመለከታል።

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

፲፬ እናም በድንጋይ ዋሻ ውስጥ በተቀመጠ ጊዜ በምሽት በህዝቡ ላይ የሚመጣውን ጥፋት በመመልከት የሚቀሩትን የዚህን ታሪክ ቃል ፃፈ።

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱንም ከህዝቡ መካከል ባሰወጡበት ዓመት በህዝቡ መካከል ታላቅ ጦርነት ተጀመረ፤ ምክንያቱም የተነሳሱ ኃያላን የሆኑ እናም ይነገሩ በነበሩት ሚስጢራዊ የክፋት እቅዳቸውም ቆሪያንተመርን ለማጥፋት የፈለጉ ብዙ ሰዎች ነበሩና።

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

፲፮ እናም እንግዲህ የጦርነትን ጥበብ እናም የዓለምን ማጭበርበር ሁሉ ቆሪያንተመር ከአጠና በኋላ፤ ስለዚህ ለገድሉት ከፈለጉት ጋር ተዋጋ።

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

፲፯ ነገር ግን መልክ መልካም የሆኑት የቆሆር ወንዶችም ሆኑ ሴቶች ልጆቹ እንዲሁም እርሱም ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ የቆሪያም መልክ መልካም ወንዶችና ሴቶች ልጆቹ ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ እናም በአጠቃላይ መልክ መልካም ከሆኑት በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ካሉት ወንዶች እና ሴቶች ልጆች ማንም ንስሃ የገባ አልነበረም።

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

፲፰ ስለሆነም፣ እንዲህ ሆነ ኤተር በድንጋይ ዋሻ በኖረበት በመጀመሪያው እመት፣ መንግስቱን ያገኙ ዘንድ ከቆሪያንተመር ላይ በሚዋጉት በሚሰጡራዊው ሴራዎች በጎራዴ የተገደሉ ብዙ ሰዎች ነበሩ።

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቆሪያንተመር ልጆችም ብዙ ተዋጉ፣ ብዙም ደም ፈሰሰቸው።

፳ እናም በሁለተኛው ዓመት ወደ ቆሪያንተመር እንዲሔድ እና እርሱ እና ቤተሰቦቹም በሙሉ ንስሃ ከገቡ ጌታ ለእርሱ መንግስቱን እንደሚሰጠው ህዝቡንም እንደሚያድን በመናገር እንዲተነብይ የጌታ ቃል ለኤተር መጣ—

፳፩ አለበለዚያ ግን ይጠፋሉ፣ እናም ከእርሱ በስተቀር ቤተሰቦቹ በሙሉ ይጠፋሉ። እናም እርሱም ሌሎች ህዝቦች ምድሪቱን ለውርስ እንደሚቀበሉ የተነገረውን ትንቢት በተመለከተ ሲፈጸም እንዲያይ ብቻ በህይወት ይቆያል፤ እናም ቆሪያንተመርም በእነርሱ ይቀበራል፤ እናም ከቆሪያንተመር በስተቀር እያንዳንዱ ነፍሱም ይጠፋል።

፳፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመርም፣ ቤተሰቦቹም፣ እንዲሁ ህዝቡ ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ እናም ጦርነቱም አልቆመም፤ እነርሱም ኤተርን ለመግደል ፈለጉ፣ ነገር ግን እርሱ ሸሸ፣ እናም በድንጋይ ዋሻ ውስጥ በድጋሚ ራሱን ደበቀ።

፳፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሻረድ ተነሳ፣ እርሱም ደግሞ ከቆሪያንተመር ጋር ተዋጋ፤ እናም አሸነፈው፣ በሦስተኛውም ዓመት ወደ ግዙት አሰገባው።

፳፬ እናም የቆሪያንተመር ወንድ ልጆች በአራተኛው ዓመት ሻረድን አሸነፉት፣ እናም በድጋሚ ለአባታቸው መንግስትን አሰገኙ።

፳፭ እንግዲህ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ጦርነት ተጀመረ፤ እያንዳንዱ ሰው ከቡድኑ ጋር በመሆን ለሚፈለገው ነገር ተዋጋ።

፳፮ እናም ዘራፊዎች ነበሩ፤ እናም በአጠቃላይ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሁሉም ዓይነት ክፋቶች ነበሩ።

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር በሻረድ እጅግ ተቆጣቶ ነበር፤ እናም በድጋሚም ከእርሱ ጋር ለመዋጋት ከጦሩ ጋር ሄደ፤ እናም እነርሱም በታላቅ ቁጣ ተገናኙ፤ እናም በገልጋል ሸለቆም ተገናኙ፤ እናም ጦርነቱም እጅግ የከፋ ነበር።

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሻረድ ከእርሱ ጋር ለሦስት ቀናት ተዋጋ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር አሸነፈው፣ እናም በሔሽሎን ሜዳ እስከሚመጣም ድረስ አሳደደው።

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሜዳማው ቦታም ሻረድ ተዋጋው፤ እናም ቆሪያንተመርን አሸነፈው፣ እናም መልሶ ወደ ጊልጋል ሸለቆ አሳደደው።

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

፴ እናም ቆሪያንተመር በጊልጋል ሸለቆ በድጋሚ ከሻረድ ጋር ተዋጋ፣ እናም በዚያም ሻረድን አሸነፈው እናም ገደለው።

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

፴፩ እናም ሻረድም ቆሪያንተመርን ጭኑ ላይ አቆሰለው፤ እርሱም ለሁለት ዓመታት በድጋሚ ወደ ጦርነቱ አልተመለሰም ነበር፤ በዚህም ጊዜ በምድሪቱ ላይ የነበሩት ሰዎች ሁሉ የደም መፋሰስ ያደርጉ ነበር፣ እናም እነርሱንም የሚያቆማቸው ማንም አልነበረም።

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

ኤፋር 10

፩ እናም እንግዲህ በህዝቡም ክፋት የተነሳ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ታላቅ እርግማን ሆነ፤ በዚህም አንድ ሰው መሳሪያውን ወይም ጎራዳውን በራሱ መደርደሪያ ካሰቀመጠ፣ ወይም ማሰቀመጥ በሚችልበት ሰፍራ ካደረገ፣ እነሆ፣ በሚቀጥለው ቀን እያገኘውም፣ ስለዚህ እርግማኑ በምድሪቱ ላይ ታላቅ ሆኗል።

፪ ስለዚህ እያንዳንዱ የራሱ የሆነውን በእጁ አጥብቆ ይይዛል፣ እናም ለሌላ አያበድርም እንዲሁም ከሌላም አይበደርም፤ እናም እያንዳንዱ ሰው ንብረቱን፣ እናም ህይወቱን፣ እናም የሚሰቱን እናም የልጁን ህይወት ለመጠበቅ የጎራዳውን እጅ ብቅኝ እጁ ይይዛል።

፫ እናም እንግዲህ ከሁለት ዓመት በኋላ፣ እናም ሻረድ ከሞተም በኋላ፣ እነሆ፣ የሻረድ ወንድም ተነሳ፣ እናም ከቆሪያንተመር ጋር ተዋጋ፣ በዚህም ቆሪያንተመርም አሸነፈው እናም ወደ አኪሽ ምድረበዳም አሳደደው።

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሻረድ ወንድም በአኪሽ ምድረበዳ ሙሰጥ ከእርሱ ጋር ተዋጋ፤ እናም ጦርነቱም እጅግ የከፋ ነበር፣ እናም ብዙ ሺዎችም በጎራዳው ወደቁ።

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ምድረበዳውን ከበበ፤ እናም የሻረድ ወንድም በምሽት ከምድረበዳው ሄደ እናም የሰከሩትን የቆሪያንተመርን ወታደሮች በከፊል ገደሉአቸው።

፮ እናም ወደ ሞሮን ምድር ሔደ፣ እናም እራሱን በቆሪያንተመር ዙፋን አሰቀመጠ።

፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ለሁለት ዓመታት ከወታደሮቹ ጋር በምድረበዳው ኖረ፤ በዚያም ሥፍራ ለወታደሮቹ ጥንካሬ ተቀበለ።

፰ እንግዲህ የሻረድ ወንድም ጌልኦድ የሚባለው ደግሞ በሚሰጠራዊ ሴራዎች የተነሳ ለሠራዊቱ ብርታትን አገኘ።

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዙፋኑ ላይ ተቀምጦ ሳለ ሊቀ ካህኑ ገደለው።

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሚሰጠራዊ ሴራዎች አንዱ በሚሰጠራዊው መተላለፊያ ቦታ ሙሰጥ ገደለው፣ እናም መንግሥቱን ለራሱ አደረገ፤ እናም ስሙም ሊብ ይባል ነበር፤ እናም ሊብም ከህዝቡ ሁሉ ሰዎች መካከል በላይ ጠንካራ አቋም የነበረው ሰው ነበር።

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሌብ የመጀመሪያ ዓመት፣ ቆሪያንተመር ወደ ሞሮን ምድር መጣ፣ እናም ከሌብ ጋር ተዋጋ።

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከሌብም ጋር ተዋጋ፤ ሌብም በእጁ ላይ መትቶ አቆሰለው፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የቆሪያንተመር ሠራዊቶች ሌብን ገፉት፣ እርሱም በባህሩ ዳርቻ ወደ ወሰኑ ሸሸ።

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ተከተለው፤ እናም ሌብም በባህሩ ዳርቻ ከእርሱ ጋር ተዋጋ።

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

፲፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሌብ የቆሪያንተመርን ወታደሮች መታቸው፣ እነርሱም በድጋሚ ወደ አኪሽ ምድረበዳ ሸሹ።

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እርሱ ወደ አጎሽ መስክ እስከሚመጣ ድረስ ሌብ ተከተለው። እናም ቆሪያንተመር ከሌብ በፊት ሲሸሸም በምድሯ በዚያ ክፍል የነበሩትን ህዝቦች በሙሉ ይዞ ሄደ ነበር።

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

፲፮ እናም ወደ አጎሽ መስክ በመጣም ጊዜ ከሌብ ጋር ተዋጋ፣ እናም እስከሚሞት ድረስም መታው፤ ይሁን እንጂ፣ የሌብ ወንድም በቆሪያንተመር ላይ በምትኩ መጣበት፣ እናም ጦርነቱም እጅግ የከፋ ሆነ፤ በዚህም ቆሪያንተመር በድጋሚ ከሌብ ወንድም ሠራዊት ፊት ሸሸ።

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

፲፯ እናም የሌብ ወንድም ስሙ ሺዝ ይባል ነበር። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺዝ ቆሪያንተመርን አሳደደው፣ እናም ብዙ ከተሞችንም ድል አደረገ፣ እናም ሴቶችን እና ልጆችን ገደለ፣ እና ከተሞችንም አቃጠለ።

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

፲፰ እናም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ ሺዝ ተፈራ፤ እምነ፣ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ጩኸት ሆነ—የሺዝን ሠራዊት ማን ሊቋቋም ይቻለዋል? እነሆ፣ የምድሪቱ ገፅ በፊቱ ጠረጋት!

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

፲፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይም ህዝቡ ከሠራዊቱ ጋር በአንድነት ተሰባሰቡ።

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

፳ እናም እነርሱም የተከፋፈሉ ነበሩ፤ እናም ግማሹ ወደ ሺዝ ወታደሮች ሸሹ፣ ግማሹ ወደ ቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮች ሸሹ።

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

፳፩ እናም ጦርነቱ እጅግ ታላቅ እና ረጅም ስለነበር፣ እናም ደም መፋሰሱ እና እልቂቱ እይታም እጅግ ለረጅም ጊዜ ስለነበር፣ ምድሪቱም ገጽታዋ በሙሉ በሙታን ተሸፍኖ ነበር።

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

፳፪ እናም ፈጣን ጦርነት ስለነበር ሙታንን ለመቅበር የቀረ ማንም አልነበረም፤ ነገር ግን የወንዶችን፣ የሴቶችን፣ እና የልጆችን ሙታኖቻቸውን በምድር ገፅ ላይ እንደተዘረገ፣ ለስጋ ትል ምግብ እንዲሆኑ በመተው ከደም ማፋሰስ ወደ ደም ማፋሰስ ዘመቱ።

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

፳፫ እናም የዚህ ሽታም በምድሪቱ ሁሉ ላይ፣ እንዲሁም በምድሩ ገጽ ላይ ሁሉ ሆነ፤ ስለዚህ ህዝቡ በሽታው ምክንያት በምሽት ሆነ እንዲሁም በቀን ተቸግረው ነበር።

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

፳፬ ይሁን እንጂ፣ ሺዝ ቆሪያንተመርን ማሳደዱን አልተወም፤ የተገደለውን የወንድሙን ደም በቆሪያንተመር ላይ ለመበቀል፣ እናም ጌታ ቆሪያንተመር በጎራዴ እንደማይሞት ለኤተር ነግሮት በነበረው ቃል ላይ ለመበቀል፣ በመሃላ አራሱን አነሳሰቶ ነበርና።

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

፳፭ እናም በቁጣው ሙላት ጌታ እንደጎበኛቸው፣ እናም ክፋቶቻቸው እና እርኩሶቶቻቸው ለዘላለማዊው ጥፋታቸው መንገድ እንዳዘጋጁ እንመለከታለን።

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺዝ ቆሪያንተመርን በስተምሰራቅ በኩል እስከባህሩ ዳርቻ ወሰን አሳደደው፣ እናም ለሦስት ቀናትም ከሺዝ ጋር ተዋጋ።

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

፳፯ እናም በሺዝ ወታደሮች መካከል ጥፋቱ አስቃቂ ስለነበር ህዝቡ መፍራት ጀመሩ፣ እናም ከቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮች ፊት መሸሽ ጀመሩ፤ እናም ወደ ቆሪያር ምድር ሸሹ፣ እናም በፊታቸው የነበሩትን ነዋሪዎች ከእነርሱ ጋር ያልተቀላቀሉትን በሙሉ ጠረጉአቸው።

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

፳፰ እናም በቆሪያር ሸለቆ ውስጥ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤ እናም ቆሪያንተመርም ድንኳኑን በሹር ሸለቆ ተከለ። እንግዲህ የሹር ሸለቆ ከቆምኖር ኮረብታ አጠገብ ነበር፤ ስለዚህ፣ ቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮቹን በቆምኖር ኮረብታ ላይ በአንድነት ሰበሰባቸው፣ እናም የሺዝን ወታደሮች ለጦርነት ለመጋበዝ መለከትን ነፋ።

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

፳፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እነርሱም መጡ፣ ነገር ግን በድጋሚ ወደ ኋላ አባረሩአቸው፤ እናም ለሁለተኛ ጊዜ መጡ፤ እናም ለሁለተኛ ጊዜም ተባረሩ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሦስተኛ ጊዜ በድጋሚ መጡ፤ እናም ጦርነቱም እጅግ የከፋ ሆነ።

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺዝም ቆሪያንተመርን መትቶ በበርካታ ቦታዎች ላይ አቆሰለው፤ እናም ቆሪያንተመር ደም ስለፈሰሰው እራሱን ሳተ፣ እናም የሞተም ይመስል ስለነበር በሽከማ ተወሰደ።

፳፩ እንግዲህ በሁለቱም በኩል የሞቱት ወንዶች፣ ሴቶችና ልጆች ብዙ ስለነበሩ፣ ሺዝ ወታደሮቹ የቆሪያንተመርን ወታደሮች እንዲያባርሩ አዘዙ፤ ስለዚህ እነርሱም ወደ ጦር ሰፈሩቸው ተመለሱ።

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ቁሰሉ እንደዳነለት፣ ኤተር ለእርሱ የተናገራቸውን ቃላት ማስታወስ ጀመረ።

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

፪ ከህዝቦቹም ወደ ሁለት ሚሊዮን የሚጠጉት በጎራዴው እንደተገደሉ ተመለከተ፣ እናም በልቡም ማዘን ጀመረ፤ አዎን፣ ሁለት ሚሊዮን ኃያላን ሰዎች፣ እናም ደግሞ ሚስቶቻቸው እና ልጆቻቸውም ጭምር ተገድለው ነበር።

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

፫ ለሰራቸውም ክፋቶች ንስሃ መግባት ጀመረ፤ ሁሉንም በነቢያት እንደበት የተነገሩትን ቃላቶች ማስታወስ ጀመረ፤ እናም እያንዳንዱም የተናገሩአቸው እንደተፈጸሙ ተመለከተ፤ እናም ነፍሱ አዘነች፣ እናም መፅናናትን ለመቀበል አልቻለም።

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺዝ ህዝቡን እንዲያድንለት፣ እናም ለህዝቡም ህይወት ሲል መንግሥቱን እንደሚሰጠው በመፈለግ ደብዳቤ ፃፈለት።

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሺዝ ደብዳቤውን ሲቀበል ለቆሪያንተመር ራሱን የሰጠ እንደሆነ በራሱ ጎራዴ እንደሚገድለው እናም የህዝቡንም ህይወት እንደሚያተርፍ ደብዳቤን ፃፈለት።

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ህዝቡም ለክፋታቸው ንስሃ አልገቡም፤ እናም የቆሪያንተመር ህዝቦች በሺዝ ህዝቦች በቁጣ ተነሳሰተው ነበር፤ እናም የሺዝ ህዝብም በቆሪያንተመር ህዝቦች ላይ በቁጣ ተነሳሰተው ነበር፤ ስለዚህ የሺዝ ህዝቦች ከቆሪያንተመር ህዝቦች ጋር ተዋጉ።

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

፯ እናም ቆሪያንተመርም ሊሸነፍ እንደተቃረበ በተመለከተ ጊዜ በድጋሚ ከሺዝ ሰዎች ፊት ሸሸ።

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመርም ትርጓሜውም ትልቅ፣ ወይንም ከሁሉም የሚበልጥ ማለት ወደሆነው ወደ ሪፕሊያንኩም ውኃ መጣ፤ ስለዚህ፣ ወደዚህ ውኃ በመጡ ጊዜ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤ እናም ደግሞ ሺዝ ድንኳኑን በእነርሱ አጠገብ ተከለ፤ እናም ከዚያም በሚቀጥለው ቀን ለውጊያ መጡ።

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

፱ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ እጅግ የከፋ ውጊያን አደረጉ፤ በዚያም ቆሪያንተመር በድጋሚ ቆሰለ፣ እናም ብዙም ደም ስለፈሰሰው እራሱን በመሳት ወደቀ።

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

፲ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮች የሺዝን ወታደሮች በኃይል አጠቁአቸው፣ ስለዚህ እሸነፋአቸው፣ እናም ከፊታቸውም እንዲሸሹ አደረጉአቸው፤ እናም እንርሱም በሰተደቡብ በኩል ሸሹ፣ እናም አጋዝ ተብሎ በሚጠራው ሰፍራ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ።

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

፲፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮችም በራማህ ኮረብታ ድንኳናቸውን ተከሉ፤ እናም በዚያን ኮረብታ ነበር አባቴ ሞርሞን ቅዱስ የሆነውን መዛግብት ለጌታ የደበቀው።

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

፲፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከኤተር በሰተቀር ከሞት የተረፉትን ሰዎች በሙሉ በእንድ ላይ በምድሪቱ ላይ ሰበሰቡአቸው።

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

፲፫ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ኤተር የህዝቡን ሥራ ሁሉ ተመለከተ፤ እናም በቆሪያንተመር በኩል የነበሩት ሰዎችም ከቆሪያንተመር ወታደሮች ጋር በእንድነት ተሰባሰበው እንደነበር ተመለከተ፤ እናም በሺዝ በኩል የነበሩት ሰዎችም በሺዝ ወታደሮች በኩል በእንድ ላይ ተሰባሰበው ነበር።

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

፲፬ ስለሆነም፣ እናም በምድሪቷ ፊት ላይ የነበሩትን ሁሉ ያገኙ ዘንድ፣ እናም ለመቀበል የሚችሉትን ጥንካሬዎች ሁሉ ለመቀበል፣ ህዝቡን ለዓራት አመታት ሰበሰቡአቸው።

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

፲፭ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ሁሉም እያንዳንዳቸው ከነሚስቶቻቸው፣ እናም ከእልጆቻቸው ከፈለጉት ወታደሮች ጋር በተሰበሰቡበት ጊዜ—ወንዶች፣ ሴቶች እና ልጆች የጦር መሳሪያ በመታጠቅ፤ ጋሻዎችን፣ እናም የደረት ኪሶችን፣ እናም ኮፍያን በመታጠቅ፣ እናም ማንኛውንም ዓይነት የጦር አልባሳትን በመልበስ—እያንዳንዱም ከሌላው ጋር ለመዋጋት ዘመቱ፤ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ ተዋጉ፣ ሆኖም ግን አላሸነፉም።

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

፲፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ ደክመው ነበር፣ እናም ወደ ጦር ሰፈራቸውም ተመለሱ፤ እናም ወደ ጦር ሰፈራቸውም ከተመለሱ በኋላ፣ ለሞቱት ወገኖቻቸው ይጮኹ፣ እንዲሁም ያለቅሱ ነበር፤ እናም ጩኸታቸው እናም ለቅሶአቸው ታላቅ በመሆኑ አየሩን እጅግ የሚሰነጥቅ ታላቅ ኃይል ነበረው።

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

፲፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በሚቀጥለውም ቀን ዳግም ለውጊያ ሄዱ፣ እናም ያም ቀን ታላቅና አስፈሪ ነበር፤ ይሁን እንጂ አላሸነፉም፣ እናም በድጋሚ ምሽት በሆነበት ጊዜም ህዝቦቻቸው ስለሞቱባቸው አካባቢውን በጩኸትና በልቅሶ ረበሹት።

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

፲፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመርም በድጋሚ ለውጊያ ወደእርሱ እንዲይመጣ፣ ነገር ግን መንግሥቱን እንዲይዝ፣ እናም የህዝቡን ህይወት እንዲያተርፍለት በመጠየቅ ለሺዝ ደብዳቤ በድጋሚ ፃፈለት።

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

፲፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የጌታ መንፈስ ከእነርሱ ጋር መሆኑን አቆመ፣ እናም ስይጣንም በሰዎች ልብ ሙሉ ስልጣን ነበረው፤ ልባቸውን በማጠጠራቸው፣ አዕምሮአቸውን በማሳወራቸው እንዲጠፉ ዘንድ ተስፋ ቆርጠው ነበርና፤ ስለሆነም በድጋሚ ወደጦርነት ሄዱ።

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

፳ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያን ቀን በሙሉ ተዋጉ፤ እናም ምሽት ሲሆን ጎራዴአቸውን ይዘው ተኙ።

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

፳፩ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀንም ምሽት እስከሚሆን ድረስ ተዋጉ።

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

፳፪ እናም ምሽቱ ሲመጣ ልክ ወይን ጠጥቶ እንደሰከረ ሰው በቁጣ ሰክረው ነበር፤ እናም ጎራዴአቸውን ይዘው በድጋሚ ተኙ።

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

፳፫ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀን በድጋሚ ተዋጉ፤ እናም ምሽቱም በመጣም ጊዜ ከቆሪያንተመር ሰዎች ከሃምሳ ሁለቱ እናም ከሺዝ ሰዎች ስልሳ ዘጠኙ በስተቀር በጎራዴ ተመትተው ወደቁ።

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

፳፬ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ በዚያን ምሽትም ጎራዴአቸውን እንደያዙ ተኙ፣ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀን በድጋሚ ተዋጉ፣ እናም ቀኑን ሙሉ በኃይል፣ በጎራዴአቸው እና በጋሻዎቻቸው ተዋጉ።

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

፳፭ እናም ምሽት በሆነም ጊዜ ሠላሳ ሁለት የሺዝ ሰዎች፣ እንዲሁም ሃያ ሰባት የቆሪያንተመር ሰዎች ብቻ ነበሩ።

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

፳፮ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ምግባቸውን በልተው ተኙ፣ እናም በሚቀጥለውም ቀን ለሞት ተዘጋጁ። እናም እነርሱም እንደሰዎች ጥንካሬ ትላልቅ እና ኃያላን ሰዎች ነበሩ።

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

፳፯ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ለሦስት ሰዓታትም ተዋጉ፣ እናም ደም ስለፈሰሳቸው እራሳቸውን ሳቱ።

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

፳፰ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የቆሪያንተመር ሰዎች ለመራመድ የሚያስችላቸውን በቂ ብርታት ባገኙ ጊዜ ህይወታቸውን ለማትረፍ ሊሸሹ ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እነሆ ሺዝ ተነሳ፣ እናም ደግሞ የእርሱ ሰዎች ተነሱ፣ እናም ቆሪያንተመርን ለመግደል አለበለዚያም በጎራዴው እንደሚጠፉ በቁጣው ማለ።

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

፳፱ ስለሆነም፣ እነርሱን ተከተላቸው፣ እናም በሚቀጥለው ቀን ደረሰባቸው፤ እናም በድጋሚ በጎራዴ ተዋጉ። እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ከቆሪያንተመር እና ከሺዝ በሰተቀር ሁሉም በጎራዴው በወደቁ ጊዜ፣ እነሆ፣ ሺዝ ደም ስለፈሰሰው እራሱን ሰቶ ነበር።

፴ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር ጎራዴውን በመመርኮዝ ለጊዜ ትንሽ አረፈ፣ እናም የሺዝን አራስ ቆረጠ።

፴፩ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ የሺዝን ራስ በመምታት ከቆረጠ በኋላ፣ ሺዝ በእጆቹ በመመርኮዝ ተነሳ፣ እናም ወደቀ፤ እናም ለመተንፈስ ከታገለም በኋላ ሞተ።

፴፪ እናም እንዲህ ሆነ ቆሪያንተመር በመሬቱ ላይ ወደቀ፣ እናም ህይወት የሌለውም መሰለ።

፴፫ እናም ጌታ ኤተርን ተናገረው፤ እናም እንዲህ አለው፡ ወደፊት ሂድ። እናም እርሱም ወደ ፊት ሄደ፣ እናም የጌታ ቃል በሙሉ መፈፀሙንም ተመለከተ፤ እናም ታሪኩንም ጨረሰ፤ (እኔም መቶኛውን ክፍል አልፍኩም) እናም የሊምሂ ሰዎች እንዲያገኙት በማድረግም ደበቀው።

፴፬ እንግዲህ በኤተር የተፃፉት የመጨረሻዎቹ ቃላት እነዚህ ናቸው፡ ጌታ እኔ እንድቀየር ከፈቀደ ወይም በሰጋ የጌታን ፈቃድ እንድፈጽም ቢያደርግ፣ እኔ በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት የምድን ከሆነ ሌላው ምንም አይደለም። አሜን።

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

መፅሐፈ ሞርኒ

ሞርኒ ፩

፩ እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርኒ፣ የያሬዳውያንን ሰዎች ታሪክ አሳጥሮ መጻፉን ከጨረሰኩ በኋላ፣ ከዚህ የበለጠ እፅፋለሁ ብዬ አላሰብኩም ነበር፤ ነገር ግን እስካሁንም አልጠፋሁም፤ እናም ለማናውያን ያጠፋኛል ብዬ በመፍራቴ ራሴን አላሳወቅሁም።

፪ እነሆም፣ በመካከላቸው ያሉት ጦርነቶችም እጅግ ኃይለኛ ናቸው፤ እናም በጥላቻቸው ሞክንያትም ክርስቶስን የማይክዱትን ኔፋውያን እያንዳንዳቸውን ይገድላሉ።

፫ እናም እኔ፣ ሞርኒ፣ ክርስቶስን አልክደውም፤ ስለዚህ ለህይወቴ ደህንነትም ስል በምቅለው ቦታ ሁሉ እዘዋወራለሁ።

፬ ስለዚህ ከገመትኩት ተቃራኒ የሆኑ ጥቂት ነገሮችን እፅፋለሁ፤ ከዚህ የበለጠ እንድፅፍ አልጠብቅም ነበርና፤ ነገር ግን በጌታ ፈቃድ ወደፊት እንድ ቀን ለወንድሞቼ ለላማናውያን ምናልባት ይጠቅማቸው ዘንድ ከዚህ የበለጠ ጥቂት ነገሮችን እጽፋለሁ።

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

ሞርጊ ፪

፩ ክርስቶስ ለመረጣቸው አስራ ሁለቱ ደቀመዛሙርት እጁን በመጫን የተናገራቸው ቃላት—

፪ እናም በሰማቸውም በመጥራት እንዲህ አላቸው፦ በብርቱ ፀሎት አብን በሰሜ ጥሩት፤ እናም ይህንንም ካደረጋችሁ በኋላ እጆችሁን በምትጭኑበት ላይ መንፈስ ቅዱስን ለመስጠት ስልጣን ይኖራችኋል፤ እናም በሰሜም ትሰጡታላችሁ፤ ይህንንም ሐዋርያቶቼ ያደርጉታልና።

፫ እንግዲህ ክርስቶስ በመጀመሪያም እራሱን ለእነርሱ ሲገልፅ እነዚህን ቃላት ተናገሯል፤ እናም ህዝቡም አላዳመጡም፤ ነገር ግን ደቀመዛሙርቱ አዳምጠውታል፤ እናም እጆቻቸውን በጫኑባቸው በሙሉ መንፈስ ቅዱስ ወረደባቸው።

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

ሞሮኒ ፫

፩ የቤተክርስቲያኗ ሽማግሌዎች ተብለው የሚጠሩት ደቀመዛሙርት ካህናትን እና መምህራንን የሚሾሙበት ስርዓት—

፪ ወደ አብ በክርስቶስ ስም ከፀላዩ በኋላ፣ እጃቸውን ጭነውባቸው እንዲህ አሉ፦

፫ በእየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስም ካህን እንድትሆን (መምህር ከሆነ መምህር እንድትሆን)፣ ንሱሃን እናም በእየሱስ ክርስቶስ ለኃጢአታቸው ስርየትን በሰሙ እስከመጨረሻው በእምነት በመፅናት እንደሚያገኙ እንድትሰብክ እሾምሃለሁ። አሜን።

፬ እናም በዚህ ስርዓት ለሰዎች በእግዚአብሔር ስጦታና ጥሪ መሰረት ካህናትን እናም መምህራንን ይሾሙ ነበር፤ እናም በውስጣቸው ባለው በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይልም ሾሙአቸው።

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

ሞርጊ ፬

፩ ሸማግሌዎቻቸው እናም ካህናቶቻቸው የክርስቶስን ስጋና ደም ለቤተክርስቲያን በመባረክ የሚያስተላልፉት ስርዓት፤ እናም በረከቱንም የሚያደርጉት እንደ ክርስቶስ ትዕዛዝ ነው። ስለዚህ ስርዓቱም ትክክል እንደሆነም እናውቃለን፤ እናም ሸማግሌው ወይም ካህኑ ይባርኩታል—

፪ እናም ከቤተክርስቲያኗ አባላትም ጋር ይንበረከካሉ። እናም በክርስቶስ ስምም እንዲህ ሲሉ ወደ አብ ይጸልያሉ።

፫ አቤቱ ዘለዓለማዊ አባት እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ ይህንን ዳቦ ለሚቋደሱት ነፍሳት ሁሉ የልጅህን አካል በማስታወስ እንዲበሉት እና፣ አቤቱ ዘለዓለማዊ አባት እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ እነርሱ የልጅህን ስም በላያቸው ላይ ለመውሰድ ፈቃደኞች መሆናቸውን፣ እና ሁልጊዜ እርሱን እንደሚያስታውሱና እርሱ የሰጣቸውን ትእዛዛት እንደሚጠብቁ ለእነተም ይመስክሩ ዘንድ፣ በዚህም የእርሱ መንፈስ ሁልጊዜ እንዲኖራቸው ትባርከውና ትቀድሱው ዘንድ በልጅህ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስም እንጠይቅሃለን። አሜን።

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

ሞርጊ ፮

፩ ወይኑን የሚባረክበትም ስርዓት—እነሆ ዋንጫውን ወስደው እንዲህ ይላሉ፦

፪ እቤቱ ዘለዓለማዊ አባት እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ ይህንን ወይን የሚጠጡት ነፍሳት ሁሉ ለእነርሱ የፈሰሰውን የልጅህን ደም በማስታወስ ያደርጉት ዘንድ፣ ሁልጊዜ እርሱን እንደሚያስታውሱ ለአንተም፣ እቤቱ ዘለዓለማዊ አባት እግዚአብሔር ሆይ፣ ይመሰክሩ ዘንድ፣ በዚህም የእርሱ መንፈስ እንዲኖራቸው፣ ትባርከውና ትቀድሱው ዘንድ በልጅህ በኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስም እንጠይቅሃለን። አሜን።

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

ሞርጊ ፮

፩ እናም አሁን ጥምቀትን በተመለከተ እናገራለሁ። እነሆ ሽማግሌዎች፣ ካህናት፣ እናም መምህራን ተጠምቀዋል፤ እናም ለእዚህም ብቁ የሆኑ ትክክለኛ ፍሬ የሚያመጡ ካልሆኑ በስተቀር እነርሱ አይጠመቁም።

፪ በተሰበረ ልብ እናም በተዋረደ መንፈስ ካልመጡ እናም ለኃጢአታቸው በሙሉ በእውነት ንስሃ እንደገቡ ለቤተክርስቲያኗ ካልመሰከሩ በስተቀር ወደ ጥምቀቱ ማንንም አልተቀበሉም።

፫ እናም የክርስቶስን ስም ካልለበሱ እናም እስከመጨረሻውም እርሱን ለማገልገል ካልወሰኑ በቀር ማንንም በጥምቀት አልተቀበሉም።

፬ እናም ከተጠመቁ እናም የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል በላያቸው ላይ ከሰራ እናም ካነፃቸው በኋላ፣ ከክርስቶስ ቤተክርስቲያን ህዝቦች ጋር ተቆጥረዋል፤ እናም እነርሱን በትክክለኛው መንገድ ለማቆየት፣ የእምነታቸው ደራሲ እና ፈፃሚ በሆነው በክርስቶስ በጎ ሥራ ላይ ብቻ በመደገፍ ፀሎታቸውን ያለማቋረጥ እንዲሟቁጥሉ ለመጠበቅ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን መልካም ቃል በመመገብ ይታወሱ ዘንድ ስማቸው ተወሰደዋል።

፭ እናም ለመጻፍም እናም ለመጸለይ፣ እናም እያንዳንዳቸው ለነፍሳቸው ደህንነት እርስ በርሳቸው እንዲናገሩ ዘንድ ሁል ጊዜ በቤተክርስቲያን ይገኛሉ።

፮ እናም ጌታ ኢየሱስን ለማስታወስ ዳቦውን እና ወይንን ለመካፈል፣ ሁልጊዜ በእንድነት ይሰበሰቡ ነበር።

፯ እናም በመካከላቸው ክፉ ነገር እንዳይኖርም በጥብቅ ይጠነቀቃሉ፤ በመካከላቸው ክፉ ነገር ሲያደርጉ የተገኙ፣ እናም በቤተክርስቲያኗ ሦስት ምስክሮች በሽማግሌዎች ፊት ከተወቀሱ፣ እናም ንስሃም ካልገቡ፣ እናም ካልተናዘዙ ስማቸው ይሰረዛል፣ እናም ከክርስቶስ ስዎች ጋርም አይቆጠሩም።

፰ ነገር ግን በእውነተኛ ፍላጎት ንስሃ ሁል ጊዜም ከገቡ፣ እናም ይቅርታን ከፈለጉ ይቅር ይባላሉ።

፱ እናም ስብሰባዎችም በቤተክርስቲያኗ በመንፈስ ስራዎች እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ይመራል፤ የመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይልም እንዲሰብኩ፣ ወይም እንዲያስጠነቅቁ፣ ወይም እንዲጸልዩ፣ ወይም ወደጌታ እንዲማግኙ ወይም እንዲዘምሩ ይመራቸዋል፣ እንዲሁም ይፈጸማል።

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

ሞርጊ ፯

፩ እናም እንግዲህ እኔ ሞርጊ፣ አባቴ ሞርሞን ስለእምነት፣ ተስፋ እና ልግሰና ከተናገራቸው ቃላት ጥቂቱን እፅፋለሁ፤ ለማምለኪያ በሰሩት ቦታም በምኩራብ ባስተማራቸው ጊዜ ለህዝቡ በዚህ አይነት ተናግሮአልና።

፪ እናም እንግዲህ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ እኔ ሞርሞን እናገራችኋለሁ፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር አብ ፀጋ እናም በጌታችን በእየሱስ ክርስቶስ እናም በቅዱሱ ፈቃድ፣ በተጠራሁበትም ሥጦታ ምክንያት በዚህ ጊዜ እንድናገራችሁ ተፈቅዶልኛል።

፫ ስለዚህ፣ የቤተክርስቲያኗ አባላት ለሆናችሁ፤ ስላማዊ የክርስቶስ ተከታይ ለሆናችሁ እናም ከዚህን ጊዜ ጀምሮ በሰማይ ከእርሱ ጋር ታርፉ ዘንድ፣ በጌታ በእረፍቱም ለመግባት እንድትችሉ በቂ ተስፋ ላገኛችሁ ይህን እናገራችኋለሁ።

፬ እናም እንግዲህ ወንድሞቼ፣ ከሰዎች ልጆች ጋር ባላችሁ ስላማዊ ሂደት ምክንያት ስለእናንተ እንደዚህ እፈርዳለሁ።

፭ በሥራዎቻቸው ታውቁአቸዋላችሁ የሚለውንም የእግዚአብሔር ቃል አስታውሳለሁ፤ ሥራዎቻቸው መልካም ከሆኑ እነርሱም ደግሞ መልካም ናቸውና።

፮ እነሆም፣ እግዚአብሔርም ክፉ የሆነ ሰው መልካም የሆነን ለመስራት አይቻለውም ብሏል፤ እርሱም ስጦታን ቢያቀርብ እንዲሁም ወደ እግዚአብሔር ቢፀልይ ከእውነተኛ ፍላጎት ካልሆነ በቀር ምንም አይጠቅመውም።

፯ እነሆም፣ ለእርሱም እንደፀድቅ አይቆጠርለትም።

፰ እነሆም፣ ክፉ የሆነ ሰው ስጦታ የሚሰጥ ከሆነ፣ በመሰሰት ያደርጋል፤ ስለዚህ ስጦታውን ለራሱ እንዳስቀረውም አይነት ይቆጠርለታል፤ ስለዚህ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት እንደክፉ ይቆጠራል።

፱ እናም በተመሳሳይ ደግሞ ሰው በእውነት ከልቡ በመፈለግ ካልፀለየ በመጥፎ ይቆጠርለታል፤ አዎን፣ እናም ለእርሱ ምንም አይጠቅመውም፣ ምክንያቱም እግዚአብሔር እንደዚህ አይነቱን ማንም አይቀበልምና።

፲ ስለዚህ፣ መጥፎ የሆነ ሰው መልካም የሆነውን ለመስራት አይቻለውምና፤ መልካም ስጦታም አይሰጥም።

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

፲፪ እነሆም፣ መራራ ምንጭ መልካም ውኃን ሊያፈልቅ አይቻለውም፤ ወይም መልካም ምንጭም መራራን ውሃ ሊያፈልቅ አይቻለውም፤ ስለዚህ፣ የዲያብሎስ አገልጋይ የሆነ ሰውም ክርስቶስን ለመከተል አይችልም፤ እናም ክርስቶስን የሚከተል ከሆነ የዲያብሎስ አገልጋይ ሊሆን አይችልም።

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ መልካም የሆኑ ነገሮች በሙሉ ከእግዚአብሔር ይመጣሉ፤ እናም መጥፎ የሆኑም ከዲያብሎስ ይመጣሉ፤ ዲያብሎስ የእግዚአብሔር ጠላት በመሆኑ፣ ያለማቋረጥ ከእርሱ ጋር ይዋጋል፤ እናም ሰዎች ኃጢአት እንዲሰሩ እናም ያለማቋረጥ ክፉ የሆኑትን እንዲሰሩ ይጋብዛቸዋል፤ እንዲሁም ይገፋፋቸዋል።

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

፲፬ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የእግዚአብሔር የሆነ ያለማቋረጥ መልካምን እንዲሰሩ ይጋብዛል እናም ይገፋፋል፤ ስለዚህ፣ መልካምን ለመስራት፣ እናም እግዚአብሔርን እንድናፈቅ እናም እንድናገለግለው የሚጋብዝ እናም የሚገፋፋ ማንኛውም ነገር ከእግዚአብሔር የሆነ ነው።

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

፲፭ ስለዚህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ አድምጡ፣ ክፉ የሆነው ከእግዚአብሔር ነው በማለት፣ ወይንም መልካምና ከእግዚአብሔር የሆነውን ከዲያብሎስ ነው በማለት አትፍረዱ።

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

፲፮ እነሆም፣ ወንድሞቼ፣ ጥሩውን ከመጥፎ ለይታችሁ ታውቁ ዘንድ እንድትፈረዱ ተሰጥቷችኋል፤ እናም ፍፁም በሆነ ዕውቀት ልታውቁ እንድትችሉ፣ ጥሩውን ከመጥፎ የመፍረጃ መንገድ ጨለማን ከብርሃን ለይቶ እንደሚያሳይ ያህል ግልፅ ነው።

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

፲፯ እነሆም፣ እያንዳንዱ ሰው መልካሙን ከመጥፎው ለይቶ ያውቅ ዘንድ የክርስቶስ መንፈስ ተሰጥቶታል፤ ስለዚህ፣ እንዴት እንደምትፈረዱም መንገዱን አሳያችኋለሁ፤ መልካም ነገሮችን ለማድረግ የሚጋብዝ እናም በክርስቶስ ሰዎች እንዲያምኑ ለማሳመን የሚያደርግ የተላከው በክርስቶስ ኃይል እና ስጦታ አማካኝነት ነው፤ ስለዚህ ይህ ከእግዚአብሔር መሆኑን ፍፁም በሆነ ዕውቀት ታውቃላችሁ።

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

፲፰ ነገር ግን ሰዎች መጥፎ እንዲሰሩ፤ እናም በክርስቶስ እንዲያምኑ፣ እናም እንዲክዱት፣ እናም እግዚአብሔርን እንዲያገለግሉ የሚያሳምናቸው፣ ይህም ከዲያብሎስ መሆኑን ፍፁም በሆነ ዕውቀት ልታውቁ ትችላላችሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በዚህ ሁኔታ ዲያብሎስ ይሰራልና፣ እርሱም ማንንም ሰው መልካም እንዲሰራ አይገፋፋም፣ አንድም አይገፋፋም፤ መላዕክቶቹም ቢሆኑ ይህንን አያደርጉም፤ እራሳቸውን የእርሱ ያደረጉትም ቢሆኑ እንዲህ አያደርጉም።

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

፲፰ እናም እንግዲህ፡ ወንድሞቼ፡ በእርግጥ የምትፈርዱበትን ብርሃን ማወቃችሁን በመመልከት፡ ብርሃኑም የክርስቶስ ብርሃን ነው፡ በሰህተት እንደማትፈርዱ እርግጠኞች ሁኑ፤ ምክንያቱም በምትፈርዱበት ፍርድ ደግሞ ይፈረድባችኋል።

፲፱ ስለዚህ፡ ወንድሞቼ በክርስቶስ ብርሃን መልካሙን ከመጥፎው ታውቁ ዘንድ በትጋት እንድትፈልጉ እለምናችኋለሁ፤ እናም መልካም የሆኑትን ሁሉ የምትይዙ ከሆነ፡ እናም ካልኮነናችሁት፡ በእርግጥ እናንተ የክርስቶስ ልጆች ትሆናላችሁ።

፳ እናም አሁን፡ ወንድሞቼ፡ እንዴትስ መልካም የሆኑትን ሁሉ ለመያዝ ይቻላችኋል?

፳፩ እናም አሁን እናገራለሁ ስላልኩት እምነት በተመለከተ እናገራለሁ፤ እናም መልካም የሆኑትን ነገሮች የምትይዙበትን መንገዱን እነግራችኋለሁ።

፳፪ እነሆም፡ አግዚአብሔር ሁሉን ነገር ከዘለዓለም አስከ ዘለዓለም በማወቁ፡ እነሆ፡ እርሱም የሰው ልጆችን እንዲያገለግሉ፡ የክርስቶስን መምጣት በተመለከተ እንዲገልጹ መላዕክትን ልኳል፤ እናም በክርስቶስ መልካም ነገር በሙሉ ይመጣል።

፳፫ እናም አግዚአብሔር ደግሞ በእንደበቱ ለነቢያት ክርስቶስ እንደሚመጣ ተናግሯቸዋል።

፳፬ እናም እነሆ፡ መልካም ነገሮችን ለሰው ልጆች የገለጠበት የተለያዩ መንገዶች ነበሩት፤ እናም መልካም የሆኑ ነገሮች በሙሉ የሚመጡት ከክርስቶስ ነው፤ አለበለዚያ ሰዎች የወደቁ ናቸው፡ እናም መልካም ነገርም ወደ እነርሱ ሊመጣ አይቻለውም።

፳፭ ስለዚህ፡ በመላዕክት አገልግሎት አማካይነት እናም ከአግዚአብሔርም እንደበት በሚወጡት በእያንዳንዱ ቃላት፡ ሰዎች በክርስቶስ ታማኝ መሆን ጀምረዋል፤ እናም በእምነታቸውም መልካም የሆኑትን ነገሮች በሙሉ ለማግኘት ችለዋል፤ እናም ይህም የሚሆነው ክርስቶስ እስከሚመጣ ድረስ ነው።

፳፮ እናም እርሱም ከመጣ በኋላ ሰዎች ደግሞ በሰሙ በማመናቸው ድነዋል፤ እናም በእምነታቸው የአግዚአብሔር ልጆች ሆነዋል። እናም ክርስቶስ በእርግጥም ህያው እንደሆነ ለአባቶቻችን እነዚህን ቃላት እንዲህ ሲል ተናግሯል፡ በሰሜ ትክክል የሆነውን ማንኛውንም ነገር በእምነት እናገኛለን በማለት አብን ከጠየቃችሁት፤ እነሆ ለእናንተ ይሰጣችኋል።

፳፯ ስለሆነም፡ የተወደዱት ወንድሞቼ፡ ክርስቶስ ወደ ሰማይ በማረገ እናም አብን በሰዎች ልጆች ላይ ያለውን ምህረት ለመጠየቅ በአግዚአብሔር ቀኝ እጅ በኩል በመቀመጡ ተአምራት ቆመዋልን?

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

፳፰ እርሱም የህጉን ፍፃሜ አሟልቶታል፤ እናም በእርሱ እምነት ያላቸውን በሙሉ የእርሱ አድርጓል፤ እናም በእርሱ እምነት ያላቸው መልካሙን ነገር በሙሉ ይይዛሉ፤ ስለሆነም እርሱም ለሰው ልጆች ጉዳይ ጠበቃ ይሆናል፤ እናም ለዘላለም በሰማያት ይኖራል።

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

፳፱ እናም ይህንን በማድረግ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ተአምራት ቆመዋልን? እነሆ አልቆሙም አላችኋለሁ፤ መላዕክቶችም ቢሆኑ የሰው ልጆችን ማገልገላቸውን አላቆሙም።

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

፴ እነሆም፣ እነርሱም በትእዛዙ ቃል መሰረት ለማገልገል፤ ጠንካራ እምነት እና በመለኮታዊነት አስተያየት በሙሉ ፅኑ አዕምሮ ላላቸው እራሳቸውን ለማሳየት ለእርሱ የተገዙ ናቸው።

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

፴፩ እናም በአገልግሎታቸውም ኃላፊነታቸው ሰዎችን ወደ ንስሃ መጥራት፣ እናም አብም ለሰው ልጆች የገባውን የቃል ኪዳን ስራ ለማከናወን እና ለመፈፀም፣ በጌታ ለተመረጡት አገልጋዮችም ምስክርነታቸውን ይሰጡ ዘንድ የክርስቶስን ቃል ለመናገር በሰው ልጆች መካከል መንገዱን ለማዘጋጀት ነው።

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

፴፪ እናም ይህንን በማድረግ፣ የተቀሩት ሰዎች በክርስቶስ እምነት እንዲኖራቸው፣ ባለው ሀይል መሰረትም መንፈስ ቅዱስ በልባቸው ስፍራ እንዲነካረው ጌታ እምላክ መንገዱን ያዘጋጀል፤ እናም በዚህም ስርዓት አብ ለሰው ልጆች የገባውን ቃል ኪዳን ይፈፀማል።

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

፴፫ እናም ክርስቶስ እንዲህ ብሏል፡ በእኔ እምነት ካላችሁ እኔ አስፈላጊ የሆነውን ማንኛውንም ነገር ለመስራት ኃይል ይኖራችኋል።

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

፴፬ እናም እንዲህ ብሏል፡ እስከ ምድር ዳርቻ ያላችሁ ሁሉ ንስሃ ግቡ፣ እናም ወደ እኔ ኑ፣ እናም በሰሜ ተጠመቁ፣ እናም ትድኑም ዘንድ በእኔ እምነት ይኑራችሁ።

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

፴፭ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ሁኔታው እንዲህ ከሆነ የተናገርኳችሁ እነዚህ ነገሮች እውነት ከሆኑ፣ እናም እውነት መሆናቸውንም እግዚአብሔር በኃይል እናም በታላቅ ክብር በመጨረሻው ቀን ካሳያችሁ፣ እናም እውነት ከሆኑ የተአምራቱ ቀን ቆሟልን?

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

፴፮ መላዕክትስ ለሰው ልጆች መታየታቸውን አቆመዋልን? ወይስ እግዚአብሔር የመንፈስ ቅዱስን ኃይሉን ከእነርሱ አርቋልን? ወይስ እስከመጨረሻው ወይንም መሬት እስካለች፣ ወይም በምድር ላይ ለመዳን አንድ ሰው እስካለ ድረስ ይህን ያደርጋልን?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

፴፯ እነሆ አያሰቀርም እላችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም ተአምራት የሚከናወኑት በእምነት ነው፤ እናም መላዕክቶችም ለሰዎች የሚታዩት እና የሚያገለግሉት በእምነት ነው፤ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ካቆሙ ለሰው ልጆች ወዮላቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እነዚህ ነገሮች የሚቆሙት ባለማመናቸው ነው፣ እናም ሁሉም ከንቱ ይሆናል።

፴፰ እንደ ክርስቶስ ቃል በእርሱ እምነት ከሌላቸው ማንም ሰው ለመዳን አይችልም፤ ስለሆነም፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ከቆሙ፣ እምነትም ደግሞ ይቆማል፤ እናም የሰዎች ሁኔታ አስቃቂ ይሆናል፣ ምክንያቱም ቤዛነት እንዳልተፈፀመ ሆነው ይቆያሉና።

፴፱ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፤ ስለእናንተ የተሻሉትን ነገሮች አፈርዳለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እናንተ የዋህ በመሆናችሁ በክርስቶስ እምነት እንዳላችሁ አፈርዳለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም በእርሱ እምነት ከሌላችሁ ከቤተክርስቲያኑ ሰዎች ጋር ለመቆጠር ብቁ አትሆኑምና።

፵ እናም የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ በድጋሚ ተስፋን በተመለከተ እናገራችኋለሁ። ተስፋ ከሌላችሁ እምነትን እንዴት ለማግኘት ይቻላችኋል?

፵፩ እናም ተስፋ የምታደርጉበት ምንድነው? እነሆ በክርስቶስ የኃጢያት ክፍያ እናም በትንሳኤው ኃይል ለዘለዓለም ህይወት እንዲኖራችሁ ተስፋ ይኑራችሁ እላችኋለሁ፤ እናም ይህም በእርሱ ባላችሁ እምነት ለእናንተ በገባላችሁ ቃል ኪዳን መሰረት ነው።

፵፪ ስለሆነም፣ አንድ ሰው እምነት ካለው ተስፋ ሊኖረው ይገባል፤ ያለ እምነት ምንም ዓይነት ተስፋ ሊኖር አይችልምና።

፵፫ እናም በድጋሚ፣ እነሆ እንዲህ እላችኋለሁ፣ የዋህ እና በልቡ የሚራራ ካልሆነ በስተቀር እምነት እና ተስፋ ሊኖረው አይችልም።

፵፬ ከሆነ ግን እምነቱ እና ተስፋው ከንቱ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም በልቡ የሚራራ እናም የዋህ ካልሆነ በጌታ ፊት ተቀባይነት አይኖረውምና፤ እናም ሰው የዋህ እናም በልቡ የሚራራ፣ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ነው ብሎ የሚመሰክር ከሆነ እርሱ ልግስና ሊኖረው ይገባዋል፤ ልግስና ግን ከሌለው እርሱ ከንቱ ነውና፤ ስለሆነም ልግስና ሊኖረው ይገባል።

፵፭ እናም ልግስና ትታገላለች፣ እናም ደግ ናት፣ እናም አትቀናም፣ እናም በኩራት አትወጠርም፣ የራሷን አትፈልግም፤ በቀላሉ አትቆጣም፣ ክፉ አታሰብም፣ እናም በመጥፎ ስራ አትደስትም፣ ነገር ግን በእውነት ትደስታለች፣ ሁሉንም ነገሮች ትታገላለች፣ በሁሉም ነገሮች ታምናለች ሁሉንም ነገሮች ተስፋ ታደርጋለች፣ በሁሉም ነገሮች ትፀናለች።

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

፳፭ ስለዚህም፣ የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ ልግሰና ከሌላችሁ ከንቱዎች ሳችሁ፣ ልግሰና አትወድቅምና። ስለሆነም ከሁሉም በላይ ታላቅ የሆነችውን ልግሰናን ያዙ፤ ሁሉም ነገሮች መውደቅ አለባቸውና—

፳፮ ነገር ግን ልግሰና ንፁህ የክርስቶስ ፍቅር ናት፣ እናም እስከዘለዓለም ትፀናለች፤ እናም በመጨረሻው ቀንም እርሷን የያዘ መልካም ይሆንለታል።

፳፯ ስለሆነም የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ፣ በልጁ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ እውነተኛ ተከታዮች ሁሉ ላይ በሚያፈሰው በዚህ ፍቅር ትሞሉ ዘንድ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ልጆች ትሆኑ ዘንድ፣ እርሱ እንደሆነ እናየዋለንና፣ እርሱ በሚመጣበትም ጊዜ እንደ እርሱ እንሆን ዘንድ፣ ይህም ተስፋ ይኖረን ዘንድ፣ ልክ እርሱ ንጹህ እንደሆነ እኛም ንጹህ እንሆን ዘንድ በኃይል በሙሉ ልባችሁ ሀይል ወደ አብ ፀልዩ። አሜን።

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

ሞርጊ ፰

፩ አባቴ ሞርሞን ለእኔ ለሞርጊ የፃፈልኝ ደብዳቤ፤ እናም የተፃፈልኝ ወዲያው ለአገልግሎት ከተጠራሁ በኋላ ነበር። እናም በዚህም ሁኔታ እንዲህ ሲል ነበር የፃፈልኝ፡

፪ የተወደድክ ልጄ ሞርጊ፣ ጌታህ ኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ስለአንተ ስለሚያሰብልህ እናም ለአገልግሎት እናም ለቅዱሱ ስራው ስለጠራህ እጅግ ተደስቻለሁ።

፫ እናም በቅዱሱ ልጄ በኢየሱስ ስም ወደ እግዚአብሔር አብ ያለማቋረጥ በመጸለይ፣ እርሱም ወደር በሌለው ቸርነቱ እንዲሁም ፀጋው እስከመጨረሻው በእምነት የፀናህ እንድትሆን ይጠብቅህ ዘንድ፣ ሁል ጊዜ በፀሎቴ ስለአንተ አስባለሁ።

፬ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ እጅግ ያሳዘነኝን ነገር በተመለከተ እነግርሃለሁ፤ በመካከላችሁ ክርክር በመነሳቱ እኔን አሳዘኛል።

፭ እውነቱን እንደተረዳሁት ከሆነ፣ የህጻናትን ጥምቀት በሚመለከት በመካከላችሁ ክርክር ነበር።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ፣ ልጄ ይህ ታላቅ ስህተትም ከመካከላችሁ እንዲወገድ ተግተህ እንድትሰራ እፈልጋለሁ፤ ለዚህ ስልም ይህንን ደብዳቤ የፍኩልሁ።

፯ ስለእነዚህን ነገሮች ካንተ ካወቅሁኝ በኋላ ሁኔታውን በሚመለከት ጌታን ወዲያው ጠየቅኩኝ። እናም የጌታ ቃልም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል እንዲህ ሲል መጣልኝ፡

፰ የአዳኝህን፣ የጌታህን እናም የአምላክህን የክርስቶስን ቃል አድምጥ። እነሆ፣ ወደ ዓለም የመጣሁት ፃድቃንን ሳይሆን ኃጢአተኞችን ንስሃ እንዲገቡ ልጠራ ነው፤ ሕመምተኞች እንጂ ብርቱዎች ባለ መድኃኒት አያስፈልጋቸውም፤ ስለሆነም፣ ህፃናት ፍፁማን ናቸው፤ ኃጢአትንም ለመፈፀም አይችሉምና፤ ስለሆነም፣ የአዳም እርግማን ከእነርሱ በእኔ ተወስዷል፤ በእነርሱ ላይ ምንም ኃይል የለውም፤ የግርዘት ህግም በእኔ ተሸሯል።

፱ እናም በዚህ ሁኔታ ነው መንፈስ ቅዱስ የእግዚአብሔርን ቃል የገለጠልኝ፤ ስለሆነም፣ የተወደድክ ልጄ፣ ህፃናትን ማጥመቅህ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት ከባድ ፊዝ መሆኑን አውቃለሁ።

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

፲ እነሆ ይህንን ነገር እንድታስተምር እልሃለሁ—ንሰሀ መግባትን እና ጥምቀትን ተጠያቂ ለሆኑት እና ኃጢያትን ለሚፈጽሙት፤ አዎን፣ ወላጆች ንሰሃ መግባት እናም መጠመቅ እንዳለባቸው፣ እናም እንደ ህፃናቱ ልጆቻቸው እራሳቸውን የዋህ እንዲያደርጉ አስተምራቸው፣ እናም ሁሉም ከህፃናት ከልጆቻቸው ጋር ይድናሉ።

፲፩ እናም ህፃናት ልጆቻቸው ጥምቀትም ሆነ ንሰሃ እያሰፈረባቸውም። እነሆ ለንሰሃ መጠመቅ ትዕዛዙን ለመፈፀም እናም ለኃጢያት ስርየት ነው።

፲፪ ነገር ግን ህፃናት ልጆች በክርስቶስ ከዓለም መፈጠር ጀምሮም ህያው ናቸው፤ ይህ ባይሆን ኖሮ፣ እግዚአብሔር ፍትህ የሌለው እናም ደግሞ የሚለወጥ አምላክ እናም ለሰዎች የሚያደላ ነው፤ ምን ያህል ህፃናትስ ጥምቀትን ሳያገኙ ሞተዋልና!

፲፫ ስለዚህ፣ ህፃናት ያለጥምቀት መደን ባይቻላቸው ኖሮ እነዚህም መጨረሻ ወደሌለው ገሃነም ይሄዱ ነበር።

፲፬ እነሆ እንዲህ እልህለሁ፤ ህፃናት መጠመቅ እንዳለባቸው የሚገምት እርሱ በመራራው መርዝ እናም በክፋት ስንሰለት ውስጥ ነው፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ እምነት፣ ተስፋም ሆነ ልግሰና የለውምና፣ ስለዚህ፣ ይህንን እያሰበ ከሞተም፣ እርሱ ወደ ሲኦል መውረድ አለበት።

፲፭ እግዚአብሔር በጥምቀት እንድን ልጅ ያድናል፤ እናም ያልተጠመቁት ሌሎች ግን ይጠፋሉ ብሎ ማሰብ የከፋ ኃጢያት ነው።

፲፮ በዚህ ሁኔታ የጌታን መንገድ ለሚበክሉት ወዮላቸው፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ንሰሃ ካልገቡ ይጠፋሉና። እነሆ፣ ከእግዚአብሔር ሰልጣን ስለተሰጠኝ በድፍረት እናገራለሁ፤ እናም ሰው ለማድረግ የሚችለውን አልፏል፤ ምክንያቱም ፍፁም የሆነ ፍቅር ፍርሃትን ሁሉ አውጥቶ ይጥላልና።

፲፯ እናም እኔ ዘለዓለማዊ ፍቅር በሆነው ልግሰና ተሞልቻለሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ ህፃናት ሁሉ ለእኔ የሚመሳሰሉ ናቸው፤ ስለሆነም፣ ህፃናትን ፍፁም በሆነ ፍቅር እወዳቸዋለሁ፤ እናም ሁሉም ተመሳሳይ ናቸው እናም ከደህንነቱም ተካፋዮች ናቸው።

፲፰ እግዚአብሔር የማያደላ እናም የማይለወጥ አምላክ እንደሆነ አውቃለሁ፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ ከዘለዓለም እስከዘለዓለም በሙሉ አይለወጥም።

፲፱ ህፃናት ንሰሃ ለመግባት አይችሉም፤ ስለሆነም፣ ለእነርሱ ንፁህ የሆነውን የእግዚአብሔርን ምህረት መካድ የከፋ ኃጢያት ነው፤ ምክንያቱም በምህረቱ ሁሉም ህያው ሆነዋልና።

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

፳፯ እናም ህፃናት መጠመቅ አለባቸው የሚል የክርስቶስን የኃጢአት ክፍያ የካደ ነው፤ እናም የእርሱን የኃጢአት ክፍያ እናም የቤዛነቱን ኃይል እንደምንም ንቀውታል።

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

፳፩ እነርሱም በሞት፣ በሲኦል፣ እናም መጨረሻ በሌለው ቅጣት አደጋ ላይ በመሆናቸው ወዮላቸው። በድፍረት እናገራለሁ፤ እግዚአብሔርም አዘኛል። እነርሱን ስሙ እናም አድምጡ፣ አለበለዚያ በክርስቶስ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት በእናንተ ላይ ለምስክር ይቆማሉና።

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

፳፪ እነሆ ህፃናት በሙሉ፣ እናም ደግሞ ህጉ የሌላቸው ሁሉ በክርስቶስ ህያው ናቸውና። ምክንያቱም የቤዛነት ኃይል ህጉ ለሌላቸው ሁሉ ይመጣልና፤ ስለሆነም ያልተኮነ ወይንም ኩነኔ የሌለበት ንስሃ ለመግባት አይችልም፤ እናም ለእንደዚህ አይነቱ ሰው ጥምቀት ምንም ጥቅም የለውም—

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

፳፫ ነገር ግን ይህ በእግዚአብሔር ፊት መሳሰለቅ፣ የክርስቶስን ምህረት እናም የመንፈስ ቅዱሱን ኃይል መካድ፣ እናም በሞት ስራ ላይ ተሰፋ ማድረግ ነው።

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

፳፬ እነሆ ልጄ ይህ ነገር መሆን የለበትም፤ ምክንያቱም ንስሃ የሚያስፈልገው በኩነኔ እናም በተጣሰው ህግ እርግማን ሥር ላሉት ነውና።

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

፳፭ እናም የንስሃ የመጀመሪያው ፍሬ ጥምቀት ነው፤ እናም ጥምቀት የሚመጣው በእምነት ትዕዛዙን በመፈፀም ነው፤ እናም ትዕዛዙን መፈፀም የኃጢአት ስርየትን ያመጣል፤

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

፳፮ እናም የኃጢአት ስርየት የዋህነትን፣ እና የልብ ርህራሄን ያመጣል፤ እናም የዋህነት እናም የልብ ርህራሄ በመንፈስ ቅዱስ መጎብኘትን ያመጣል፤ ይህም አፅናኝ በተሰፋ እናም በፍፁም ፍቅር ይሞላል፣ ይህም ፍቅር ቅዱሳን በሙሉ ከእግዚአብሔር ጋር የሚኖሩበት መጨረሻው እስከሚመጣ በትጋት በመፀለይ ይጸናል።

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

፳፯ እነሆ፣ ልጄ፣ ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመዋጋት ወዲያው ካልሄድኩ በድጋሚ እፅፍልሃለሁ። እነሆ፣ የዚህ ሀገር ወይም የኔፋውያን ኩራት፣ ንስሃ ካልገቡ በቀር እንደሚጠፉ አረጋግጣለሁ።

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

፳፰ ልጄ ንስሃ ይመጣላቸው ዘንድ ለእነርሱ ፀልይላቸው። ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ መንፈስ ከእነርሱ ጋር መስራቱን እንዳያቆም እፈራለሁ፤ እናም በዚህች ምድርም ደግሞ ሁሉንም ከእግዚአብሔር የመጣውን ኃይልና ስልጣን ለማናቅ ይፈልጋሉ፤ እናም እነርሱም መንፈስ ቅዱስን ክደዋል።

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

፳፱ እናም ልጄ፣ ታላቁን እውቀት አንቀበልም ካሉ በኋላ፣
እነርሱ በነቢያት የተነገሩትን ትንቢቶች፣ እናም ደግሞ
በአዳኞችን በራሱ የተነገሩትን ቃላት ይፈፀሙ ዘንድ
በፍጥነት መጥፋት አለባቸው።

፴ ልጄ እስከምፅፍልህ ወይንም በድጋሚ እስከማገኝህ
ድረስ ደህና ሁን። አሜን።

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son,
they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the
prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as
well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or
shall meet you again. Amen.

ሞሮኒ ፱

Moroni 9

፩ የተወደድክ ልጄ እስካሁን በህይወት ያለሁ መሆኔን ታውቅ ዘንድ በድጋሚ ይህንን ፃፍኩልህ፤ ነገር ግን አሳዛኝ ስለሆነው ነገር በመጠኑ እፅፋለሁ።

፪ እነሆም፣ ከላማናውያን ጋር ድልን ያላገኘንበት አስቃቂ የሆነ ውጊያ አድርጌ ነበር፤ እናም አርኬክንቱስ፣ ደግሞም ሉራም፣ እና ኤምሮን በጎራዳው ወደቁ፤ እዎን፣ እናም በርካታ የተመረጡ ጀግናቻችንን አጥተናል።

፫ እናም እንግዲህ እነሆ ልጄ፣ ላማናውያን እነዚህን ሰዎች ያጠፋላቸዋል ብዬ እፈራለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እነርሱ ንስህ አልገቡም እናም ስይጣንም ዘወትር እርስ በእርሳቸው እንዲበጣበጡ እያደረጋቸው ነውና።

፬ እነሆ፣ እኔም ያለማቋረጥ ከእነርሱ ጋር እየሰራሁ ነኝ፣ የእግዚአብሔርንም ቃል በኃይል ቃል ስናገር እነርሱ ይንቀጠቀጣሉ እናም ይቆጡኛል፤ እናም በኃይል ቃል ባልተናገርኳቸውም ጊዜ በቃሉ ላይ ልባቸውን ያጠጥራሉ፤ ስለሆነም የጌታ መንፈስ ከእነርሱ ጋር መሆኑን ያቆማል ብዬ እፈራለሁ።

፭ እነርሱም እጅግ በኃይል ተቆጥተው ስለነበር ሞትንም ቢሆን የማይፈሩ መሰለውኛል፤ እርስ በርሳቸውም የነበራቸውን ፍቅር አጥተዋል፤ እናም ለፀብና ያለማቋረጥ ለመበቀል ጥማት አላቸው።

፮ እናም እንግዲህ፣ የተወደድክ ልጄ፣ እነርሱ ልባቸውን ቢያጠጥሩም እኛ ተግተን እንሰራ፤ መሰራት ካቆምን እንኮነናለንና፤ የፅድቅ ጠላት የሆነውን ሁሉ እናሸንፍ ዘንድ፣ እናም ነፍሳችንን በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት እናሳርፍ ዘንድ፣ በዚህ በጭቃ ሰውነታችን የምናከናውንው ስራ አለንና።

፯ እናም አሁን ስለዚህ ህዝብ ስቃይ በመጠኑ እፅፋለሁ። ከአምሮን ባገኘሁት እውቀት መሠረት እነሆ፣ ላማናውያን ከሼሪዛ ግንብ የወሰዱአቸው ብዙ እስረኞች አሉአቸው፤ ወንዶችም፣ እናም ሴቶችም፣ እናም ልጆችም ነበሩ።

፰ እናም የእነዚህ ሴቶችና የልጆቹ ባሎችንና አባቶች ተገድለዋል፤ እናም ሴቶችን የባሎቻቸውን ስጋ እንዲበሉ እናም ልጆችም የአባቶቻቸውን ስጋ እንዲበሉ አደረጉአቸው፤ እናም ከጥቂት በስተቀር ምንም ውኃ አይሰጡአቸውም ነበር።

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

፱ እናም ለማናውያን ይህ ታላቅ እርኩስት ቢኖርባቸውም በሞሪያንቱም ካሉት ከኛ ህዝብ ጥፋት አይበልጥም። እነሆ ብዙ የላማናውያን ሴት ልጆችም በምርኮ ወሰደው ነበርና፤ እናም ከሁሉም ነገሮች በላይ የተወደሰ እና የተከበረ፣ እንዲሁም ድንግልነታቸውን እና ምግባረ ጥሩነታቸው ከወሰዱባቸው በኋላ—

፲ እናም ይህን ካደረጉ በኋላ፣ ጭካኔ በተሞላበት ሁኔታ ገደሉአቸው፤ ሰውነታቸውንም እስከሚሞቱ አስቃዩአቸው፤ እናም ይህንን ካደረጉ በኋላ፣ ልባቸው ጠጣር በመሆኑ እንደዱር አውሬ ስጋቸውን በጨቁአቸው፤ እናም ይህንንም ያደረጉት ጀግንነታቸውን ለማሳየት ነበር።

፲፩ አቤቱ የተወደድክ ልጄ፣ እንደዚህ አይነቶቹ ሰዎች እንዴት ያልሰለጠኑ ሊሆኑ ተቻላቸው—

፲፪ (እናም ደግሞ ጥቂት ዓመታት አለፉ፣ እናም ሰዎቹም የሰለጠኑ እናም መልካም ሰዎች ነበሩ)

፲፫ ነገር ግን አቤቱ ልጄ ከእንደዚህ ዓይነት ህዝብ ደስታ እንዴት በእርኩስነት ሊገኝ ይችላል—

፲፬ እግዚአብሔርሰ እጆቼን በፍርድ ከእኛ ላይ አያነሳም ብለን እንዴት እንጠብቃለን?

፲፭ እነሆ፣ ልቤ፣ ለዚህ ህዝብ ወየለት ብላ ታላቅሳለች። አቤቱ እግዚአብሔር ቅጣትህን ፈፅሞ እናም ኃጢአታቸውን እናም እርኩስቶቻቸውን ከፊትህ ደብቅላቸው!

፲፮ እናም በድጋሚ ልጄ፣ በሼሪዛ የቀሩ ብዙ ባልቴቶች እና ሴት ልጆቻቸው አሉ፤ እናም እነዚያን ላማናውያን ያልወሰዱቸውን ሰንቆች፤ እነሆ፣ የዜኔሬ ወታደሮችም ወሰዱአቸው እናም በየደረሱበት ስፍራም ምግብ ፈልገው እንዲያገኙ ተወክላቸው፤ እናም በጉዞአቸውም ብዙ አረጋውያን ሴቶች እራሳቸውን ሳቱ እናም ሞቱ።

፲፯ እናም ከእኔም ጋር የነበሩት ወታደሮች ደካሞች ናቸው፤ እናም የላማናውያን ወታደሮች በሼሪዛ እና በእኔ መካከል ናቸው፤ ወደ አሮን ወታደር የሸሹት በሙሉ በእነርሱ ጨካኝነት ወድቀዋል።

፲፰ አቤቱ የህዝቡ ጥፋት እንዴት ይገርማል! እነርሱም ምህረትም ሆነ ስርዓት የላቸውም። እነሆ፣ ነገር ግን እኔ ወንድ ነኝ፣ እናም የወንድ ጥንካሬም ብቻ ነው ያለኝ፣ እናም ከዚህ በኋላም ትዕዛዜን እንዲቀበሉ ላሰገድዳቸው አልችልም።

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

፲፱ እናም በብልግናቸው ጠንካሮች ሆኑ፤ እናም በሁሉም ነገር ጨካኝ በመሆናቸው ህፃናትንም ሆነ ሽማግሌዎችን አላስተረፉም፤ መልካም ከሆነው በስተቀር በሁሉም ነገር ይደስታሉ፤ እናም የሴቶቻችን እናም የልጆቻችን ስቃይ በምድር ገፅታ ላይ ከነበረው ከማንኛውም የበለጠ ነው፤ አዎን፣ በአንደበት ለመናገርም ሆነ ለመፃፍ የሚቻል አይደለም።

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

፳ እናም እንግዲህ ልጄ፣ በዚህ አስከፊ በሆነ ሁኔታ ከዚህ በላይ አልቆይም። እነሆ፣ አንተ የህዝብህን ኃጢያት ታውቃለህ፤ እነርሱም መሰረታዊ መርሆች እንደሌላቸው እናም ሰሜት እንደሌላቸው ታውቃለህ፤ እናም ክፋቶቻቸውም ከላማናውያን በላይ ናቸው።

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

፳፩ እነሆ ልጄ፣ እግዚአብሔርም ይመታኛል ብዬ በመፍራቴ እነርሱን ብቁ ናቸው ብዬ ለመመስከር አልችልም።

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

፳፪ ነገር ግን እነሆ፣ ልጄ፣ ለእግዚአብሔር ስለአንተ እመስክራለሁ፣ እናም አንተም እንደምትድን በክርስቶስ እምነት አለኝ፤ እናም ህዝቡም ወደ እርሱ ሲመለሱ ወይንም ፈፀመው ሲጠፉ እንድትመስክር እግዚአብሔርም ህይወትህን እንዲያተርፍ እፀልያለሁ፣ ንስሀ ካልገቡ እና ወደ እርሱ ካልተመለሱ መጥፋት እንዳለባቸው አውቃለሁና።

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

፳፫ እናም በልቦቻቸው ሙሉ ፈቃድ፣ ደም እና በቀል በመሻታቸው፣ ከጠፉ ጥፋታቸው እንደ ያሬዳውያን ይሆናል።

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

፳፬ እናም የሚጠፉም ከሆነ፣ ብዙ ወንድሞቻችን ከላማናውያን ጋር ለመቀላቀል እንደሔዱ እናም ከዚህም ደግሞ የበለጡ ብዙዎች እንደሚሄዱ እናውቃለን፤ ስለሆነም፣ አንተ ከተረፍክ እናም እኔ ከጠፋሁ እናም አንተን ካላየሁ ነገሮችን በመጠኑ ጻፍ፤ ነገር ግን ለአንተ የምሰጥህ ቅዱስ መዛግብት ስላሉኝ በቅርቡ እንደማይህ ተስፋ አለኝ።

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

፳፭ ልጄ በክርስቶስ የታመንክ ሁን፤ እናም የፃፍኳቸውም ነገሮች አንተን ለሞት እስከሚያደርሱ አያሳዝኑህ፤ ነገር ግን ክርስቶስ ከፍ ያድርግህ፣ እናም ሰቃዩ፣ እናም ሞቱ፣ እናም ሰውነቱን ለአባታችን ማሳየቱ፣ እናም ምህረቱ እናም ፅናቱ፣ እናም ለክብሩ እናም ለዘላለማዊ ህይወት ያለው ተስፋ ለዘላለም በአዕምሮህ ይኑር።

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

፳፮ እናም በሰማያት ዙፋኑ ከፍ ያለው የእግዚአብሔር ኦብ፣ እናም ሁሉም ነገር በእርሱ የሚገዙ እስከሚሆን ድረስ በኃይሉ በቀኝ እጅ በኩል የተቀመጠው የጌታችን የኢየሱስ ክርስቶስ ፀጋ ለዘላለም ከአንተ ጋር ይሁን እናም ይኑር። አሜን።

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

ሞሮኒ ፲

፩ አሁን እኔ ሞሮኒ፣ መልካም የመሰለኝን በመጠኑ እፅፋለሁ፤ ለወንድሞቼ ለላማናውያንም እፅፋለሁ፤ እናም ስለክርስቶስ መምጣት ምልክት ከተሰጠ አራት መቶ ሃያ ዓመት ማለፉን እንዲያውቁ እፈልጋለሁ።

፪ እናም እናንተን በጥብቅ በመምከር ጥቂት ከተናገርኳችሁ በኋላ እነዚህን መዛግብት አትማቸዋለሁ።

፫ እነሆ፣ እነዚህን ነገሮች በምታነቡበት ጊዜ፣ ይህን እንድታነቡ በእግዚአብሔር ጥበብ ከሆነ፣ ጌታም ለሰው ልጆች ከአዳም መፈጠር ጀምሮ እነዚህን ነገሮች እስከምትቀበሉአቸው ጊዜ ድረስ ምን ያህል መሃሪ እንደነበረ እንድታስታውሱ በጥብቅ እመክራችኋለሁ፣ እናም በልባችሁ ይህን አሰላሰሉ።

፬ እናም እነዚህንም ነገሮች በምትቀበሉበት ጊዜ፣ እነዚህ ነገሮች ሀሰት እንደሆኑ ዘለዓለማዊ አብ እግዚአብሔርን በክርስቶስ ስም እንድትጠይቁት አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ፤ እናም በቅን ልባችሁ፤ ከእውነተኛ ፍላጎት፣ በክርስቶስ አምናችሁ ከጠየቃችሁት በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል እውነቱን ይገልፅላችኋል።

፭ እናም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል የሁሉንም ነገር እውነታ ታውቁታላችሁ።

፮ እናም መልካም የሆነ ማንኛውም ነገር ጻድቅ እና እውነተኛ ነው፤ ስለሆነም፣ መልካም የሆነ ማንም ክርስቶስን አይክድም፤ ነገር ግን እርሱ መሆኑን ያረጋግጣል።

፯ እናም እርሱ መሆኑንም በመንፈስ ቅዱስ ኃይል ታውቃላችሁ፤ ስለሆነም፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል እንዳትክዱ በጥብቅ እመክራችኋለሁ፤ ምክንያቱም እርሱ፣ በሰው ልጆች አምነት መሰረት፣ በኃይሉ ዛሬም እንዲሁም ነገም፣ እናም እስከዘለዓለም በአንድ አይነት ይሰራልና።

፰ እናም በድጋሚ ወንድሞቼ፣ የእግዚአብሔር ሰጦታዎች እንዳትክዱአቸው አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ፣ ብዙ ናቸውና፤ እና እነርሱም የሚመጡት ከአንድ እግዚአብሔር ነው። እናም እነዚህ ሰጦታዎች የሚገለጡበት የተለያዩ መንገዶች አሉ፤ ነገር ግን ሁሉን በሁሉ የሚያደርገው እግዚአብሔር አንድ ነው፤ እናም ለሰው በእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ቅዱስ መገለጥ ለጥቅሙ ይሰጠዋል።

፱ እነሆም፣ ለአንዱ የጥበብን ቃል ያስተምር ዘንድ፣ የእግዚአብሔር መንፈስ ይሰጠዋል።

፲ እናም ለሌላው፣ ለእርሱም በዚያው መንፈስ የእውቀትን ቃል ያስተምር ዘንድ ይሰጠዋል።

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

፲፩ እናም ለሌላው እጅግ ታላቅ ዕምነት፤ ለሌላውም በዚያው መንፈስ የመፈወስ ስጦታ ይሰጠዋል፤

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

፲፪ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሌላው፣ ታላላቅ ተአምራትን ያደርግ ዘንድ ይሰጠዋል፤

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

፲፫ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሌላው ስለሁሉም ነገሮች ትንቢት እንዲናገር ይሰጠዋል፤

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

፲፬ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሌላው፣ መላዕክትን የማየት እናም የመንፈስ አገልጋይነት ይሰጠዋል፤

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

፲፭ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሌላው ሁሉንም ዓይነት ልሳን ይሰጠዋል፤

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

፲፮ እናም በድጋሚ፣ ለሌላው፣ ቋንቋዎችን እናም የተለያየ ዓይነት ልሳን የተነገሩትን መተርጎም ይሰጠዋል።

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

፲፯ እናም እነዚህ ሁሉ ስጦታዎች የሚመጡት በክርስቶስ መንፈስ አማካኝነት ነው፤ እናም እነርሱም ለእያንዳንዱ ሰው ለብቻው እያካፈለ እንደፈቃዱ ይመጣሉ።

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

፲፰ እናም የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ መልካም ስጦታ ሁሉ ከክርስቶስ እንደሚመጣ እንድታስታውሱ አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ።

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

፲፱ እናም የተወደዳችሁ ወንድሞቼ እርሱ ዛሬም እናም ነገም እናም ለዘላለም አንድ አይነት እንደሆነ፣ እናም የተናገርኳቸው መንፈሳዊ የሆኑት እነዚህ ስጦታዎች በሙሉ ምድር እስካለች የሰው ልጆች እምነት ካላጡ በስተቀር ፈፅሞ መኖራቸውን እንደማያቆሙ እንድታስታውሱ አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ።

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

፳ ስለሆነም፣ እምነት ሊኖር ይገባል፤ እናም እምነት ካለ ተስፋም ደግሞ ሊኖር ይገባል፤ እናም ተስፋም ደግሞ ካለ ልግስና መኖር አለበት።

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

፳፩ እናም እናንተ ልግስና ከሌላችሁ በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት በምንም መንገድ ልትድኑ አይቻላችሁም፤ ወይም እምነት ከሌላችሁ በእግዚአብሔር መንግስት ለመዳን አትችሉም፤ ወይም ተስፋም ከሌላችሁ ለመዳን አይቻላችሁም።

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

፳፪ እናም ተስፋ ከሌላችሁ በተስፋ መቁረጥ ላይም መሆን አለባችሁ፣ እናም ተስፋ መቁረጥም የሚመጣው በክፋት ነው።

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

፳፫ እናም ክርስቶስ ለአባቶቻችን በእውነት እንዲህ ሲል ተናግሯቸዋል፡ እናንተም እምነት ካላችሁ ለእኔ አስፈላጊ የሆነውን ለማድረግ ይቻላችኋል።

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

፳፬ እናም አሁን እስከአለም ጫፍ ላሉት ሁሉ እንዲህ ስል እናገራለሁ—የእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ስጦታ በእናንተ መካከል መሆኑን የሚያቆምበት ቀን ከመጣ፣ ይህም የሚሆነው እምነት በማጣት ምክንያት ነው።

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

፳፭ እናም እንዲህ ከሆነ ለሰው ልጆች ወዮላቸው፤ ከእናንተ መካከል አንድም እንኳን ቢሆን መልካም የሚሰራ ምንም የለምና። ከመካከላችሁ መልካምን የሚያደርግ አንድ እንኳን ቢኖር፣ እርሱም በእግዚአብሔር ኃይልና ሰጦታ ይሰራል።

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

፳፮ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች ለሚያሰወግዱት እናም ለሚሞቱ ወዮላቸው፣ ምክንያቱም ከነኃጢአታቸው ይሞታሉ እናም በእግዚአብሔር መንግሥት አይደኑምና፤ እናም እኔም የተናገርኩት በክርስቶስ ቃል መሰረት ነው፤ እናም ሀሰትን አልተናገርኩም።

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

፳፯ እናም እነዚህን ነገሮች እንድታሰታውሱ አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ፤ እኔ ሀሰት እንዳልተናገርኩ የምታውቁበት ቀን በፍጥነት ይመጣል፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፍርድ ወንበርም ታዩኛላችሁና፤ እናም ጌታ አምላክ እንዲህ ሲል ይናገራችኋል፡ ከሙታን እንደሚጮህ፣ አዎን፣ አንድ ሰው ከመሬት እንደሚናገር በዚህ ሰው የተፃፉትን ቃላት ለእናንተ አላወጅኩላችሁምን?

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

፳፰ ትንቢቶች ይፈጸሙ ዘንድ እነዚህን ነገሮች ለእናንተ አውጃለሁ። እናም እነሆ፣ እነርሱም ከዘለዓለማዊው አምላክ እንደበት ይወጣሉ፤ እናም ቃሉም ከትውልድ ወደ ትውልድ ያፏጫል።

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

፳፱ እናም እግዚአብሔርም የፃፍኩት እውነት እንደሆነ ያሳያችኋል።

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

፴ እናም በድጋሚ ወደ ክርስቶስ እንድትመጡ፣ እናም እያንዳንዱን መልካሙን ሰጦታ እንድትይዙ፣ እናም ክፉውን ሰጦታ ወይም እርኩስን ነገር እንዳትነኩ አጥብቄ እመክራችኋለሁ።

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

፴፩ እናም እስራኤል ሆይ ንቂ ከመሬት ተነሽ፤ አዎን፣ እናም አቤቱ የፅዮን ሴት ልጅ፣ የሚያምረውን መገናፀፊያሽን ልበሽ፤ እናም ከዚህም በኋላ እንዳትቀላቀሊ፣ የዘለዓለማዊ አባት ለአንቺ፣ አቤቱ የእስራኤል ቤት፣ የገባው ቃል ኪዳን ይሟላም ዘንድ ካሰማዎችሽን አጥብቄ እናም ወሰንሽንም ለዘለዓለም አሰፊ፤ ከእንግዲህም አታፍሪም።

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

፴፪ አዎን፣ ወደ ክርስቶስ ኑ፣ እናም በእርሱም ፍፁማን ሁኑ፣ እናም ኃጢአተኝነትን በሙሉ ለእራሳችሁ ካዱ፤ እናም ለራሳችሁ ኃጢአተኝነትን በሙሉ ከካዳችሁ፣ እናም በሙሉ ኃይላችሁ፣ እዕምሮአችሁ እና ጉልበታችሁ እግዚአብሔርን ከወደዳችሁ፣ ፀጋው ለእናንተ ይበቃችኋል፣ በፀጋውም በክርስቶስ ፍፁም ትሆናላችሁ፤ እናም በእግዚአብሔር ፀጋ በክርስቶስ ፍፁም ከሆናችሁ፣ የእግዚአብሔርን ኃይል በምንም መልኩ አትክዱትም።

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

፴፫ እናም በድጋሚ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፀጋ በክርስቶስ ፍፁሙን ከሆናችሁ፣ እናም ኃይሉን ካልካዳችሁ፣ በእግዚአብሔር ፀጋ፣ ለኃጢአታችሁ ሰርዮት አብ በገባው ቃል ኪዳን ውስጥ ባለው በክርስቶስ ደም መፍሰስ ያለ እንከን ቅዱስ ትሆኑ ዘንድ በክርስቶስ ትቀደሳላችሁ።

፴፬ እናም አሁን ሁላችሁንም እስናበታችኋለሁ። መንፈስና ሰጋዬም በአንድነት እስኪገናኝ፣ እናም ለህያዋን እና ለሙታን ዘለዓለማዊ ዳኛ በሆነው በታላቁ ያህዌህ እስደሳቹ የፍርድ ወንበር ፊት እናንተን ለመገናኘት ድል አድርጌ ወደ ሰማይ እስከምመጣ ድረስ፣ በቅርብ ወደ እግዚአብሔር ገነት ለማረፍ እሄዳለሁ። አሜን።

ተፈፀመ

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

The End